Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2011 with funding from
University of Toronto

http://www.archive.org/details/polychroniconran08higd

The Institute of Mediaeval Studies
LIBRARY
Toronto, Ontario

The Institute of Mediaeval Studies
LIBRARY

RERUM BRITANNICARUM MEDII ÆVI SCRIPTORES,

OR

CHRONICLES AND MEMORIALS OF GREAT BRITAIN AND IRELAND

DURING

THE MIDDLE AGES.

P 939. Wt. 16310.

THE CHRONICLES AND MEMORIALS

OF

GREAT BRITAIN AND IRELAND

DURING THE MIDDLE AGES.

PUBLISHED BY THE AUTHORITY OF HER MAJESTY'S TREASURY, UNDER THE DIRECTION OF THE MASTER OF THE ROLLS.

On the 26th of January 1857, the Master of the Rolls submitted to the Treasury a proposal for the publication of materials for the History of this Country from the Invasion of the Romans to the reign of Henry VIII.

The Master of the Rolls suggested that these materials should be selected for publication under competent editors without reference to periodical or chronological arrangement, without mutilation or abridgment, preference being given, in the first instance, to such materials as were most scarce and valuable.

He proposed that each chronicle or historical document to be edited should be treated in the same way as if the editor were engaged on an Editio Princeps; and for this purpose the most correct text should be formed from an accurate collation of the best MSS.

To render the work more generally useful, the Master of the Rolls suggested that the editor should give an account of the MSS. employed by him, of their age and their peculiarities; that he should add to the work a brief account of the life and times of the author, and any remarks necessary to explain the chronology; but no other note or comment was to be allowed, except what might be necessary to establish the correctness of the text.

The works to be published in octavo, separately, as they were finished; the whole responsibility of the task resting upon the editors, who were to be chosen by the Master of the Rolls with the sanction of the Treasury.

The Lords of Her Majesty's Treasury, after a careful consideration of the subject, expressed their opinion in a Treasury Minute, dated February 9, 1857, that the plan recommended by the Master of the Rolls "was well calculated for the accomplishment of this important national object, in an effectual and satisfactory manner, within a reasonable time, and provided proper attention be paid to economy, in making the detailed arrangements, without unnecessary expense."

They expressed their approbation of the proposal that each Chronicle and historical document should be edited in such a manner as to represent with all possible correctness the text of each writer, derived from a collation of the best MSS., and that no notes should be added, except such as were illustrative of the various readings. They suggested, however, that the preface to each work should contain, in addition to the particulars proposed by the Master of the Rolls, a biographical account of the author, so far as authentic materials existed for that purpose, and an estimate of his historical credibility and value.

Rolls House,
December 1857.

POLYCHRONICON RANULPHI HIGDEN MONACHI CESTRENSIS;

TOGETHER WITH THE

ENGLISH TRANSLATIONS OF JOHN TREVISA AND OF AN UNKNOWN WRITER OF THE FIFTEENTH CENTURY.

EDITED

BY

REV. JOSEPH RAWSON LUMBY, D.D.,
NORRISIAN PROFESSOR OF DIVINITY, FELLOW AND DEAN OF ST. CATHARINE'S COLLEGE, AND LATE FELLOW OF MAGDALEN COLLEGE, CAMBRIDGE.

VOL. VIII.

PUBLISHED BY THE AUTHORITY OF THE LORDS COMMISSIONERS OF HER MAJESTY'S TREASURY, UNDER THE DIRECTION OF THE MASTER OF THE ROLLS.

LONDON:
LONGMAN & Co., PATERNOSTER ROW; TRÜBNER & Co., LUDGATE HILL;
ALSO BY
PARKER & Co., OXFORD; AND MACMILLAN & Co., CAMBRIDGE;
A. & C. BLACK, AND DOUGLAS & FOULIS, EDINBURGH;
AND A. THOM, DUBLIN.

1882.

THE INSTITUTE OF MEDIAEVAL STUDIES
ST. MICHAEL'S COLLEGE
LIBRARY
JAN 12 1950
15408

Printed by
EYRE and SPOTTISWOODE, Her Majesty's Printers.
For Her Majesty's Stationery Office.

CONTENTS.

	Page
Introduction - - - - - -	vii
Summary of Contents - - - - -	xxxi
Polychronicon Ranulphi Higden, Liber Septimus, Cap. xix - - - - -	2
Appendix I. - - - - - -	355
——— II. - - - - - -	407
——— III. - - - - - -	429
——— IV. - - - - - -	522

INTRODUCTION.

DA
25
.B8
V.41

INTRODUCTION.

THE present volume, containing chapters xix–xliv of Book VII., brings to an end the text of Higden. In four Appendices are given portions of the MSS. cited in the notes as A and B, in which the history is continued for some years; also the remainder of the text of the Harleian MS., 2261, for which no corresponding Latin was given either in the MS. from which the present text is printed or in any of those which have been collated with it. The fourth appendix consists of the eighth book of Higden's Polychronicon, which is printed *in extenso* to show how far and in what manner this chronicle was continued for English readers.

The period comprised in these final chapters extends from the beginning of the pontificate of Celestine II. (A.D. 1143) to the treaty for peace between France and England after the surrender of Calais to King Edward III. (A.D. 1347).

The united duration of the pontificates of Celestine II. and Lucius II. covered little more than a year of troubled Italian history,[1] of which trouble Higden only gives a

Book VII Cap. XIX

[1] The troubles were caused by the party who had embraced the opinions of Arnold of Brescia, and held that the pope ought to be deprived of temporal authority. In consequence of this agitation the Roman Senate had just been re-established (A.D. 1143), and this inroad upon his authority had so affected Innocent II. that he did not long survive it. Then followed two popes in little more than a year, and Eugenius III. after them.

hint when he says that the next pope, Eugenius III., was not consecrated in Rome from fear of the senators. Within about a year the pope became reconciled to the newly established senate, though he afterwards was obliged to leave the capital. Higden notices this pope's connexion with Bernard of Clairvaux, who dedicated one of his treatises to him.

Of English history this chapter contains only a notice of the reconciliation to king Stephen of the earl of Chester[1]; of an incursion of Welshmen into England, which inroads were common in Stephen's reign; and of the king's coronation at Lincoln.

The chapter is mainly occupied with the history and character of Louis VII., king of France, who at this time, in conjunction with the emperor Conrad III., set out on the Second Crusade. Higden notices how the Crusaders suffered through the treachery of the emperor of Constantinople, and gives a hint at some of the means[2] employed for the destruction of the soldiery, when he says, "*multi gustata farina calce mixta defuncti sunt*," but deals much more in detail with the virtuous character of the French monarch than with the sufferings of the host. The chapter closes with an account of four famous ecclesiastics of the time, Hugh of St. Victor, Richard of St. Victor, Gratian of Bologna, and Peter Lombard. The works of the first named are given with some fulness, the best known being his treatise *on the Sacraments*.

[1] On the character and doings of Ralph (or Randolf), Earl of Chester, see Freeman, *Norm. Conq.*, v. 311.

[2] Manuel Comnenus was now on the Byzantine throne, and he had engaged by treaty that the Crusaders should be hospitably received and supplied with provisions, but poisonous ingredients were frequently mingled in the bread supplied, the sick were murdered, stragglers cut off, bridges broken down, and Louis was induced to allow the emperor to go on before him, a proceeding which did as much as anything to render the second Crusade abortive.

Of the other three Higden mentions little more than the names.[1]

The accession of Frederic Barbarossa is noticed in the briefest terms, just an intimation being given of his contests with the papal power and of his final submission.[2] Mention is then made of his share in third Crusade, and of his death, and the death[3] of his son in that expedition. Pope Anastasius IV. is mentioned because in his brief pontificate there died the celebrated abbat Bernard of Clairvaux,[4] to whose deeds, virtues, and writings a large portion of this chapter is devoted. The death of Ralph, earl of Chester, is noticed, and that his son and successor Cap. xx

[1] Hugh of St. Victor died A.D. 1142. Richard of St. Victor, by birth a Scotchman, was one of the mystic writers of the middle ages, and died A.D. 1173. The *Epitome* or *Decretals* of Gratian of Bologna mentioned in Higden's text was drawn up about the year 1130. Their compiler is said to have spent 24 years on his work, the title of which is *Concordantia discordantium Canonum*. Peter Lombard, the famous *Magister Sententiarum*, became eventually bishop of Paris, and died in 1164. His great work "the Book of the Sentences" treats of all the chief questions then debated in the schools of philosophy and theology, and illustrates them by quotations from the Fathers. It soon became the great authority, and was commented on by many of the schoolmen.

[2] The Emperor Frederic reigned from A.D. 1152–1190. Higden does not hint that the conflict of Barbarossa was not only with pope Alexander III., but also with his predecessor Adrian IV.

[3] The course of the emperor through Europe and Asia Minor, though retarded by many acts of treacherous hostility had been very triumphant. Among other deeds he defeated the Sultan of Iconium, and forced him to sue for peace. He was drowned in the Cilician stream Calycadnus, either falling from his horse into the waters, or imprudently bathing there. (See Higden's text, p. 76.) His son, the duke of Suabia, led the German troops on, but died of disease along with thousands of his way-worn followers under the walls of Acre.

[4] Bernard of Clairvaux, who died in A.D. 1153, was no doubt the first churchman of his age. His birthplace was Fontaine in Burgundy. His monastery produced, during his lifetime, men such that one pope, six cardinals, and more than 30 bishops were chosen from its members. Bernard was also the great preacher of the second Crusade. He is generally reckoned the last of the Fathers of the Church.

was Hugh II., and we are told of king Stephen's death at Faversham, and that in his time occurred one of those visits to the other world, of which so much was made in those days, as evidence for the happiness of the virtuous and the misery of the wicked after death.

Cap. XXI.

This chapter is occupied solely with the accession, character, and actions of Henry II. of England. His victory over William the Lion, king of Scotland, and the extent of his dominions, as well as the unhappy relations between him and his children are the subjects on which Higden dwells.

Cap. XXII.

Continuing his notices of the papacy, Higden mentions several particulars concerning Adrian IV.,[1] the only Englishman who ever was pope, and in the course of the chapter tells of his successor, Alexander III., against whom the emperor Frederic maintained the cause of an anti-pope.[2] Among wonders, the chronicle tells of a sign of the cross appearing in the moon, and how there were seen at midday in the sky three circles and two suns. The hand of St. James was brought as a precious relic to the abbey of Reading, and at the destruction of Milan by the emperor Frederic, the bishop of Cologne brought from that city to Cologne the bodies of the three wise men.[3]

Of the acts of king Henry II. we have mention made of an invasion of Wales, and of his quarrel with Becket, but not so much is said of Becket's death as might have been expected, only that after it the king's fortune turned for the worse, but was somewhat improved by his pilgrimage to the martyr's tomb.

---

[1] Pope from A.D. 1154–1159.

[2] This was Victor IV., and after his death Paschal, and then Calixtus. The people of Rome and the kings of France and England sided with Alexander, who died after a life of incessant turmoil in A.D. 1181.

[3] What are said to be their skulls are still shown at Cologne, but the bodies have disappeared.

Of famous men there are notices in this chapter of Joachim,[1] an abbat in Calabria, and of Petrus Comestor.[2] There is some notice taken by the chronicler of king Henry's attempts at reform in Ireland, and mention is made at some length of certain warnings which were sent to him through holy men that he should amend his own life, all of which the king appears to have disregarded. Fair Rosamond's death, her burial at Godstow, and her epitaph close the chapter.

The events which are noticed in this chapter nearly all relate to England, and include the homage to Henry, paid at York, by William, king of Scotland; the election of Richard, prior of Dover, to the archbishopric of Canterbury; the means[3] employed by king Henry to avoid the fulfilment of his pledge to take part in the Crusades. Some allusion is also made to the reason of the king's quarrels with his sons, after which a large portion of the chapter is given to the account (copied from Giraldus Cambrensis) of the discovery of the body of king Arthur. The closing part of the chapter is an obituary containing notices of the death of pope Alexander III., who was succeeded by Lucius III. (A.D. 1181–1185); of Hugh earl of Chester, and of the succession of his son Ralph, the third earl of that

Cap. XXIII.

---

[1] This Joachim was the famous abbat of Flora, whose teaching concerning the doctrine of the Trinity was condemned in the second canon of the fourth Lateran Council A.D., 1215. He died at an advanced age in the first or second year of the 13th century, and was generally regarded, as Higden's text notices, for a person inspired, because of the prophetic language which he introduced into his works about passing events, and some of which turned out to be true.

[2] Petrus Comestor, to whose work Higden in the earlier books makes frequent reference, was ultimately Chancellor of Paris. His principal book is entitled *Historia Scholastica*, and is an abridgement of Sacred History. It was a book commonly read in schools, hence its name. The author died in 1198.

[3] *Ambresbury* of the text (p. 58) is Amesbury in Wiltshire, and *Whetham* is Witham near Salisbury, now known as Charterhouse-Witham in Selwood.

name; also of the death of the king's eldest son Henry,[1] of whom much laudation is given in some Latin verses.

Cap. XXIV. The succession of Baldwin, bishop of Worcester, to the see of Canterbury is the next event recorded, of whose character, and of his dispute with the monks of Canterbury Higden tells, following it by the mention of the death of pope Lucius, whose successors Urban III. (1185–1187), Gregory VIII. (1187–1188), and Clement III. (1188–1191) are all noticed in this chapter. The first of the three died of grief at the capture of Jerusalem by the Saracens; the second took a warm interest in the progress of the Crusades. In connexion with this subject Higden notices a bootless visit to England of Heraclius,[2] patriarch of Jerusalem, to seek the help of King Henry; and also that a great movement took place in the world in consequence of the capture of Jerusalem, multitudes taking the vow of the cross upon them, notable among whom was prince Richard of England. Mention having been made of Henry V., son of Frederic Barbarossa, as emperor of Germany, the chronicler anticipates events by speaking of the detention by this monarch of Richard of England, when he was returning from the Crusades. After a brief notice of the disputes between England and France, in which Henry was opposed by his own children, who took the side of the French king, the chapter closes with the mention of Henry's death (A.D. 1189), and the story of how blood began to flow from the father's corpse when his son and successor stood by it.

Cap. XXV. Higden here draws from Stephen of Canterbury his account of king Richard, in which he tells of the slaughter made of the Jews[3] at the time of his coronation, and of

[1] Henry had been already crowned king before his father's death, according to a custom common enough in France and Germany but rare in England. See Freeman, *Norm. Conq.*, v. 665.

[2] This Heraclius, who was before archbishop of Cæsarea, was by birth a Frenchman, and had been created patriarch in 1180.

[3] Higden says (p. 90) that the persecution was only from greed, *non sincere, id est, causa fidei.*

the persecution which raged against that people after the king had crossed to France on his way to the Holy Land; of Richard's kindness to his brother John, and of that prince's ingratitude. He tells how for the administration of England Richard appointed the bishops [1] of Durham and Ely co-regents, and makes the reflection that a bishop might be more fitly employed than in caring for temporal matters. He relates too somewhat of the tyrannical and unbecoming expedients to which Richard resorted to raise money for the Crusades, declaring that he would sell London if he could but find a purchaser. The rest of the chapter is devoted to some notice of the rapacious and tyrannical acts of the bishop of Ely, who despoiled his colleague of all share in the regency and disgusted both nobles and people by his rapacity and insolence. At the close of this chapter the Harleian MS. 2,261, has particulars, mainly relative to an embassy from France to Issac the emperor of Constantinople, for which the MSS. of Higden give no text.

The Hugo, episcopus Cestrensis (p. 92), about whose name the MSS. give some curious variations of orthography, was Hugh [2] of Nonant, bishop of Coventry, for a time, as Higden relates, a main counsellor of the chancellor, but he afterwards became a friend of prince John.

The first event here noticed is the pontificate of Celestine III. (A.D. 1191–1198), and the form and terms in which he crowned [3] the new emperor, Henry VI. His arrogant and unseemly display of power, narrated by all the English chroniclers, has been thought by some to be an invention, intended to degrade Henry, whom the English hated for his treatment of Richard I. But such conduct in a pope is not unparalleled. Cap. xxvi.

[1] The bishop of Durham was Hugh Pudsey; the bishop of Ely, William Longchamp.

[2] For an account of the character and career of this prelate, see Stubbs' *Hoveden* iii., p. 53.

[3] Henry probably procured his coronation by Celestine through influencing the election to the Papal throne in his favour, and by annexing Tivoli to the temporal possessions of the Holy See.

Higden next notices the tyrannical conduct of William Longchamp, the bishop of Ely, for which at length he became so detested that he was[1] forced to fly the kingdom. Special mention is made of the hindrances caused by the chancellor to the consecration of Geoffrey[2] Plantagenet, the king's half brother, to the archbishopric of York, and how Eleanor the queen and the archbishop[3] of Rouen obtained the king's authority, while Richard was in Sicily, to deprive the chancellor of his authority, but too little is said by Higden to give any notion of the importance of the events to which he so briefly alludes.[4] The chapter concludes with a short mention of the journey of Richard and the French king to the Holy Land, and some account of the reasons for their quarrel.

Cap. xxvii. Here Higden relates the capture of Acre, the insult said to have been given to the standard of the duke[5] of Austria, owing to which that prince made his way home again. He tells also more of the disagreements between the two kings of France and England, and how the former on his road home tried to procure from the pope a dispensation from the oath he had given not to take advantage of Richard's absence from England, and endeavoured to win over the Danes to grant to him the ancient claims which that people, in former days, had made on England.

---

[1] The whole history of Longchamp, and the authorities at far greater length than in Higden, are given in *Roger de Hoveden*. See Stubbs' *Introduction* to Vol. iii., p. 40., seqq.

[2] Geoffrey was said to be the son of fair Rosamund, born in 1151, and consecrated archbishop at 40 years of age.

[3] This archbishop was Walter of Coutances, whom Longchamp calls "The Pilate of Rouen."

[4] On the character of the whole proceedings a most excellent idea will be gained from Canon Stubbs' Preface to *Roger de Hoveden*, Vol. iii.

[5] Leopold, duke of Austria, was brother-in-law of Isaac, the despot of Cyprus, whom Richard had put down on his way to Palestine, and so he was not likely to have a good feeling towards the English King.

Want of means forced king Richard to come home, and after a treaty with Saladin for three years he bade adieu to the scene of his glory.[1] In attempting to cross overland through Europe, he was taken prisoner[2] by duke Leopold, but that prince made over his captive to the emperor of Germany, who had the king removed to Speyer. Richard is visited here by William Longchamp and Herbert, bishop of Salisbury, who, on his return to England, is made archbishop of Canterbury in the room of Baldwin. At length[3] the terms of release are agreed on, and hostages are left for the payment of the ransom, and Richard is free. Great taxation was needed to raise the ransom. But the ransomed monarch did not hurry to England, he stayed at Swine in Flanders, and only reached Sandwich on March 13th. Higden next briefly mentions the king's conduct towards his brother, and the arrangements made for the coronation.[4] After this event Richard crosses to France to prosecute the war there, yet both parties agree to suspend hostilities for a while,[5] but the English army did not return home. Cap. XXVIII.

[1] Higden makes no mention of the events which followed the departure of the king of France. The victory near Azotus was such as to justify the boast of king Richard that in forty campaigns Saladin had never sustained so severe a defeat. The reason why it was decided that the troops should withdraw is not easy to discover, but it is clear that Richard was much mortified at having to do so. The last defeat of the infidels was during the course of the withdrawal, at the siege of Jaffa, where, according both to Christian and Mahommedan accounts, the English king performed wondrous feats of personal heroism.

[2] The prison to which Richard was committed was the fortress of Tyernstein on the Danube. That which Higden names (p. 122) *Trivallis* was Trifels in Rhenish Bavaria, to which place the king was moved by the emperor from Speyer.

[3] The date was June 29, 1193, not in January as in Higden's text, page 128, and the King did not leave Speyer till the following February 2nd.

[4] This took place at Winchester, April 17, 1194.

[5] The terms of the truce are given *in extenso* in *Hoveden*, iii., pp. 257, seqq.

Cap. xxix. In this chapter Higden deals mainly with the marvellous, telling first of one Stephen, a procurator of king Richard in Anjou, who by a spirit was deceived into the belief that the king would never return from the Holy Land, and accordingly allowed himself in all sorts of extortion in his office. To this the writer adds other instances of like misleading on the part of evil spirits. He then tells of the death[1] of the duke of Austria before he received the sum due to him as king Richard's captor. The chapter closes with solemn warnings brought to king Richard that he should amend his life, the words of warning being reported from the mouth of a demon who proclaimed himself to be always about the king, and that his office was to grieve mankind.

Cap. xxx. The story of William Fitz-Osbert is given at some length. But Higden does not fail to dwell on all the details which are able to detract from the character of this man, who set himself forth as the champion of the poor against the rich. Hoveden,[2] on the contrary, has no word of disparagement, but dwells on the severity of the archbishop Hubert towards the discontented populace, the discontent having its source in the extortionate demands made everywhere on account of the king's ransom. At the beginning of the chapter mention is made of the abbat of Caen, and his complaints of the king's officers.[3]

[1] Of the last days of Leopold, duke of Austria, a full account is given by *Hoveden*, iii., 276 (Stubbs), how having broken his leg he could find no one to amputate it, and at last compelled his chamberlain to hew off his foot, and how absolution was refused him by the clergy till he had promised to release the English hostages.

[2] Ed. Stubbs, iv. p. 5, 6. Hoveden says that William had crossed the sea and appealed to the king, and that this was the cause of the archbishop's rage against him. Nothing is said in Hoveden of the respect paid to the spot on which William was executed, on which Higden dwells so fully.

[3] This was abbat Robert who was the eleventh abbat of St. Stephen's and one of the officers of the Norman exchequer.

First is noticed the interview of Richard with Fulk of Neuilly, who exhorts him to a change of life, but receives from the king a jeering answer.[1] After this follows a panegyric on Rees, prince of Wales, then a notice of the accession of Innocent III. to the papal throne (1198–1216), and of the discord which ensued in consequence of the vacancy of the Imperial throne by the death of Henry VI. Otho IV. was elected (A.D. 1198), but his election was opposed by Philip, duke of Suabia, the brother of the late emperor. The next emperor (Frederic II.) is also just mentioned here.[2] The rest of the chapter is occupied with the well-known story of Wydomar of Limoges; how he found a treasure, which king Richard claimed, and, when Wydomar refused him more than a part of it, undertook the siege of the viscount's castle of Chaluz, in which undertaking he received his death wound. The romantic details of the pardon of the man who shot him are given fully. Then follow two laudatory epitaphs.[3] Cap. xxxi.

---

[1] This Fulk was a great and deservedly famous preacher, who did much good by his exhortations to repentance. He was subsequently imprisoned through the hatred of the clergy of Lisieux, whose corrupt lives he rebuked severely, but was marvellously enabled to escape. He was an earnest preacher of the Crusades, and died A.D. 1202.

[2] Though he did not succeed till A.D. 1212, Higden seems to count the years from 1198 to 1208 as the regnal years of Philip, whose claims to the empire were supported in some quarters, for he makes Otho to be succeeded by Frederic II. after a reign of only four years.

[3] Not all the epitaphs of King Richard were laudatory, as may be seen in *Hoveden*, iv. 84 (Stubbs). One specimen of a different character is subjoined.

Virus, avaritia, scelus, enormisque libido,
Fœda fames, atrox elatio, cæca cupido
Annis regnarunt bis quinis: arcubalista
Arte, manu, telo, prostravit viribus ista.

Hoveden, instead of the *Carcolum* or *Carlcolum* of Higden's text, gives *apud Charroa* as the place where the *viscera* of the king were buried. Matthew Paris, *Chron. Maj.* ii. 451 (Luard) omits any mention of a third place of burial.

Cap. xxxii. John succeeds his brother, and at once seizes on Richard's treasure.[1] He sends messengers[2] to England while he continues in France to order his affairs there. Anjou is given up to Arthur, and Arthur himself is committed by his mother to the care of the king of France. John is invested[3] as duke of Normandy, and on his arrival in England he was crowned at Westminster by archbishop Hubert,[4] whom he made his chancellor.

Hoveden tells us who the "quidam" of Higden (p. 174, line 1) was. It was the famous justiciary, Hugh Bardulf, who had played such an important part in the events of the previous reign. Higden notices the return of John to France and his designs on the life of his nephew Arthur, with the circumstance of his divorce[5] from Hawisia of Gloucester, and his marriage with Isabella of Angoulême. The taking of a carucage on all the land in England is next noticed, and also that the effect of John's divorce was to lead to the like course on the part of Ralph, earl of Chester. Mention is made of the commencement of the Tartar power, and of the capture of Constantinople, which closed the fourth crusade. A few lines are given to the history of the emperor Frederic II., and we read that he fell under the sentence of excommunication from pope Honorius III., and his successor Gregory IX., and that his share in the

[1] *Hoveden*, iv. 86 (Stubbs) says it was given up to him by Robert de Tumeham, the guardian thereof at Chinon.

[2] Along with archbishop Hubert, whom Higden mentions, there was sent also William Marshall, count of Strigul.

[3] This took place 25 April 1199. The coronation on 27 May.

[4] *Hoveden*, iv. 88, mentions that the bishops of London, Rochester, Norwich, Lincoln, Ely, Winchester, Exeter, Chichester, Coventry, Bath, Salisbury, Durham, St. Andrew's, Llandaff, as well as the archbishops of Dublin and Ragusa, were present at the coronation. The last-named Bernard of Ragusa was soon after presented to the administration and revenues of the vacant see of Carlisle.

[5] The divorce was pronounced by the three French bishops of Bourdeaux, Poitiers, and Saintes.

Crusades spread more desolation than comfort; then deposed by Innocent IV. he fled into Apulia and died.[1] The rest of the chapter is occupied by the history of two holy men, Hugh, bishop of Lincoln, and Eustace, abbat of Flay. The former had been prior of Witham Charterhouse, and had played a conspicuous part in the events of king Richard's reign. The latter, who had been the friend and companion of Fulk of Neuilly, though a mighty preacher and a worker of miracles, was not acceptable in England, and returned[2] to Normandy. The last circumstance noticed in the chapter is the appearance in the sky of five moons at the same time.

In this chapter we have a very brief outline of the events of king John's reign, his war with the king of France, his refusal to accept Langton as archbishop of Canterbury, and the papal interdict which followed thereon, with a notice of the king's submission, the departure of Pandulph and the French power, and the death of king John at Newark. The story of his being poisoned by a monk at Swineshead Abbey is mentioned, but only as a common rumour. Cap. XXXIII.

[1] The death of Frederic was on 13 Dec. 1250; Higden's notice of him gives but a very faint notion of the struggles in which he took part. He succeeded to the empire in 1216 and had promised the pope (Honorius III.) to undertake a crusade. He cared nothing for the undertaking, but the pope brought about a marriage between him and Tolanta, daughter of John, count of Brienne, who was heiress to the shadowy title of the kingdom of Jerusalem. After this Frederic sailed for Palestine, but only made a three days' voyage, and then returned. Thinking the excuse for this conduct a subterfuge the next pope Gregory IX. excommunicated him, and summoned a council to confirm the sentence. The emperor contrived to intercept and imprison most of those who were summoned, and the mortification at this result is said to have killed the pope. Celestine IV. was pope but eighteen days, but with the next pontiff, Innocent IV., Frederic, though formerly on terms of friendship, was constantly in hostility till his death.

[2] For a much fuller account of the preaching and works of Eustace. See *Hoveden* iv., 123, seqq. One of his reforms was the suppression of Sunday trading in London. He also ordered alms-boxes to be put up in churches.

The other matters incidentally mentioned comprise the founding of the order[1] of Dominican preachers, the birth of king John's son Henry, and the enumeration of the rest of the royal family, the arrival in England of some of the Albigenses, and a statement that some of them were burned alive, followed by a notice of the incursion of the Saracens into Spain.[2] Mention is made of the founding of the Franciscan order or *Friars minor*, which was the work of Francis[3] of Assisi in Umbria. Pope Innocent gave his approbation to the order in 1210, and this body, with the Dominicans, became afterwards the stay and support of the Church of Rome. King John's execution of Peter of Pontefract is just alluded to, and the character of that hermit given.[4] The death of pope Innocent III. and the succession of Honorius (A.D. 1216) are the only further historical events recorded in the chapter.

CAP. XXXIV. Henry III. succeeds his father at the age of nine years, and mention is made of his chief advisers,[5] of whom the

[1] The order was established in 1215 by Dominic de Guzman, a Spanish noble. The preachers were first organised for the conversion of heretics. Some alterations were made in the original constitution before the founder's death in 1221. Dominic was canonized in 1235, and his order subsequently had the entire conduct of the tribunal of the Inquisition. See Helyot, *Histoire des Ordres Monastiques*, iii., 207, &c.

[2] This invasion was under Mohammed, son of Yacub ibn Yusuf, in 1210. The Moslems were in the end defeated, and Mohammed went back to Morocco, where he was subsequently poisoned.

[3] The name of Francis was really John, son of Peter, Bernardoni. He was born in 1182, and obtained the name *François, i.e.*, the Frenchman, from his early proficiency in that language, and from this it is that the order is styled.

[4] Among the predictions of this Peter was one, uttered in January 1213, that on the following Ascension-day John should be cast out of his kingdom. And it proved true, for it was the very day before Ascension-day that the crown was resigned to the papal legate. Peter was dragged at the tail of a horse from the prison of Corfe to the town of Warham and there hanged together with his son.

[5] The papal legate mentioned on p. 198, was Gualo (see p. 194); the bishop of Winchester was bishop Peter; Ralph was the earl of Chester, and William Marshal the earl of Pembroke there alluded to.

earl of Chester reduced the French king Louis to such straits after the capture of England that he made terms and retired from the land. The clergy who had sided with Louis were not included in the absolution given to the laity, but deprived or referred to the judgment of the Roman curia. The capture of Damietta (A.D. 1219) is next noticed, and that Ralph, earl of Chester, took part in this Crusade.[1] Matthew of Paris tells us (iii. 56) that Ralph spent two years abroad. Higden next notices the translation of the remains of Thomas à Becket, and the expenses which Stephen the archbishop incurred to do honour to the occasion.[2] The translation took place July 7, 1220. Alexander II. of Scotland is married to Joanna the elder sister of the English king. We are next told of the punishment inflicted by a council at Oxford on some fanatic who called himself Jesus, and who showed on his body the wounds of the crucifixion. Some mention is made of Henry's exactions of taxation from the nobles and people of England, and that the Friars Minor came into England in his reign. Next follows the election of Gregory IX. to the Pontificate (A.D. 1227), and we are told somewhat of his doings. Then the death of Stephen Langton is noticed, and that his successor was Richard, Chancellor of Lincoln.[3] The death and literary labours of William Alvernensis, first chancellor and afterwards bishop of Paris; the death of Ralph, earl of Chester, who was succeeded by his nephew; the erection by king Henry of St. John's Hostel in Oxford; and the death of Richard, archbishop of Canterbury, and the election to that see of Edmund of Abingdon, who died abroad, and was buried in Burgundy, complete the chronicle of events in this chapter, bring-

[1] For a full account of the labours of this siege, see Matt. Paris, *Chronica Majora*, iii., pp. 44–54.

[2] Matt. Paris mentions the nobles and bishops, as well as the king, who were present at the ceremony, but does not allude to the extravagant outlay made thereon.

[3] Higden does not mention the previous choice by the monks of Canterbury of Walter of Eynsham to be archbishop, which election was quashed by the pope.

ing the history down to the seventeenth year of Henry III.

Cap. xxxv. Very little is said in this chapter of English history, the marriage of Frederic the emperor to the sister of the English king, and Henry's own marriage to Eleanor of Provence, are among the opening notices, along with which is mentioned the story of the crucifixion of a child by the Jews at Norwich. The family history of the earl of Chester claims Higden's notice as usual, and he records the quarrel of the scholars of Oxford with the retinue of Ottobon, the Papal legate, as he passed through the city. The birth of Edward, king Henry's first-born son, is also chronicled. The record then passes to the brief account of the Tartar invasion into Hungary and Pannonia,[1] and then to the list of successive popes, Celestine IV. (1241, A.D.), and Innocent IV. (1243, A.D.) mentioning, however, little but their names. The death of archbishop Edmund, however, supplies a theme on which the chronicler dwells for several pages, the birth parentage, self-denial, and holiness of the saintly prelate being illustrated by anecdotes of various kinds.

Cap. xxxvi. Higden recurs, for a brief space, to the deeds of pope Innocent IV., among which the most noteworthy was the assembling of a council at Lyons, in which a decree for the deposition of Frederic the emperor was passed.[2] St. Edmund of Canterbury was canonised at this council. A marvellous story is related of the conversion of a Jew at Toledo. This is followed by a short notice of the disturbances and disruptions which followed on the death of the emperor Frederic II., in which pope Innocent played no small part. Manfred,[3] the illegitimate

[1] For a more complete notice of this inroad see Matth. Paris, *Chron. Maj.* iii., 488.

[2] Matt. Paris (*Abbr. Chron.* iii. 289) mentions that the pope had come to Lyons with great difficulty, and afterwards (p. 295) gives an account of the English representatives who were sent thither.

[3] Manfred was son of Frederic by the marchioness of Montferrat, and after his father's death was regent of Sicily, and showed great strategic skill and power of government though only eighteen years of age. His death took place at the battle of Grandella, near Benevento, in 1266.

son of Frederic, is just noticed, as well as his occupation of the two Sicilies and his early death, though in the briefest manner. After the mention of the conquest of Damietta by the king of France (Louis IX.) on his way to the Holy Land, and a notice of the death of William Longsword,[1] the chronicler turns to the story of Robert Grosstete and his conflict with the papal power. The learning of this famous bishop of Lincoln is specially dwelt on.

On the papal throne Innocent IV. was succeeded by Alexander IV. (A.D. 1254), and about the same time peace was made between the king of England and Llewellin, prince of Wales, after which the chronicler alludes to that favouritism and enrichment of his relatives on the part of the English king which led in the end to the Barons' wars. The accession of Urban IV. (A.D. 1261) to the papal throne is recorded, and the chapter closes with an unsavoury anecdote of the death of a too strict Jew.

Of the Barons' wars Higden just mentions that the cause was the king's non-observance of the provisions of Oxford. The battle of Lewes, the capture and subsequent escape of prince Edward, and after that the battle of Evesham, are chronicled, and allusion made to the miracles imputed to Simon Montfort after his death. In 1265 pope Clement IV. succeeded pope Urban IV., and more than the wonted amount of space is devoted to his history and character, special mention being made of his having previously been married. The visit to England of the papal legate Ottobon[2] is dwelt on at some length, no doubt because of the demands made by him upon the country in the pope's name. He

Cap. xxxvii

[1] William Longsword, who was in command of a body of English nobles, was killed at Mansoura during the advance of the Crusaders from Damietta, towards Cairo, and from that time the misfortunes of the Crusaders began.

[2] This was Ottoboni de Freschi, who became pope under the title of Adrian V., but only enjoyed the papal throne for about five weeks.

went away from England, says Higden, with immense treasure.

Next is noticed the setting out of prince Edward for the Crusades, about which time died pope Clement IV., and was succeeded by Gregory X.[1] (A.D. 1271). This pontiff took great interest in the Crusades, and called a general council at Lyons,[2] where he laboured for the reunion of the Greek and Latin churches, which appeared to him the best means of recovering the Holy Land. Higden also notices another purpose for which the council was summoned, viz., the reformation of the discipline of the church, and of the manners of the clergy. The pope himself attempted some reform among the mendicant orders. The chapter closes with brief mention of the death of king Henry III., the election of Robert Culwarby to the archbishopric of Canterbury, and the unfortunate issue of the Crusade and the death of its most prominent member, the king of France, Louis IX.

Cap. XXXVIII.

Just mentioning the Coronation of King Edward I. on his return from the Holy Land, the chronicle passes on to the death of pope Gregory X., who was succeeded in 1276 by Innocent V. He only occupied the papal chair for five months, while his successor Adrian V. reigned only as many weeks. Then followed John XXI., who, after a pontificate of eight months, was killed by the fall of a new building in his palace at Viterbo. The next pope, Nicholas III., held his throne for three years, during which time he made Robert Culwarby a cardinal, and put into the archbishopric of Canterbury in his place John of Peckham. At this period the king of England built or repaired Flint Castle and other places in Wales, and banished all the Jews out of England, accusing them

[1] This was Theobald of Placentia, archdeacon of Liege. When elected he was with prince Edward of England among the Crusaders.

[2] This second council of Lyons met in May 1274, and it comprehended a greater number of deputies from all parts of Europe than had ever before been assembled on a similar occasion.

of clipping the coin, and of fraudulent exchanges. Higden also mentions the statute of mortmain and the efforts of king Edward to improve the coinage. In noticing the succession of popes, he puts Honorius IV. next after Nicholas III., thus omitting Martin IV. altogether.[1] The success of king Edward in Wales is noticed, and two epitaphs on prince Llewellin are given which show his character from a Welsh and an English point of view. The birth of Edward prince of Wales at Caernarvon finds mention next, and the accession to the papal throne of pope Nicholas IV. (A.D. 1288), and after him of Celestine V.[2] (A.D. 1294), who having been a poor hermit in Calabria, was urged to accept the pontifical dignity, but soon resigned it and went back to his former life. The chapter closes with the death of Alexander III., the king of Scotland, an event which opened the way for the interference in Scotch affairs of the king of England because of the disputes concerning the succession.

Higden here recites the various authorities, derived from earlier chroniclers, for Edward's claim to be lord superior of Scotland, and therefore to have a right in such a case as now occurred to adjudicate on the claims Cap. xxxix.

[1] It was during his pontificate that the massacre, known as "the Sicilian Vespers," took place. This was on March 30th, 1282. Palermo was in the hands of the French, and the inhabitants of the island of Sicily were forbidden to carry arms. In consequence of an insult offered to a young Sicilian girl by a French soldier the Sicilians attacked the procession which was on its way to the Vesper service in the church of Monte Reale, about three miles from Palermo, and killed every Frenchman whom they found, being about 200. Then, hurrying to Palermo, they massacred about 4,000 of the French in the city during that night. Though appealed to by the ecclesiastics of Palermo, the pope refused the city all grace for their evil deed, though they addressed him in the words of the Litany, "O Lamb of God, that "takest away the sins of the world, "have mercy upon us."

[2] Very little is known of his pontificate, except that he was the founder of a religious order under the name of the "Congregation of "St. Damian," which afterwards took the title of "the Order of the "Celestines" from the founder.

made to the Crown. After this right had been admitted he decided in favour of John Balliol, who did him homage accordingly.

The death of John of Peckham, archbishop of Canterbury, and the elevation of Robert of Winchelsea to that see, is noticed, as well as the subjugation of the Welsh prince Madoc, and king Edward's seizure of the treasures of the monasteries.

Cap. xl. Boniface VIII. succeeds to the pontificate (A.D. 1294), and Higden dwells on the means which he had used to procure the resignation of his predecessor in the papacy. The stern character of the pope is also recorded, and his quarrel with the king of France (Philip IV.) as well as the conduct of William de Nogaret,[1] though the details thereof, and the manner of the pope's death, do not agree with other records.[2] The conduct of John Balliol, which led to his deposition, is next noticed, as also the rise of Wallace and the battle of Falkirk with other troubles in Scotland, and shortly afterwards comes the mention of Wallace's capture and death. Then is recorded the succession to the pontificate of Benedict X.[3] (A.D. 1303), and after that of Clement V. (A.D. 1305), the latter pope being the first who changed the papal seat from Rome to Avignon. The chapter concludes with a notice of the appointment of the inquisition known as *trayl bastoun*, the murder of John Comyn by Robert

[1] In all MSS. the name is written Longaret.

[2] The cause of the hostility between the king of France and the pope was the arrogant manner in which the pontiff made use of menaces to bring about peace between France and England. After many stages of quarrelling Nogaret, a French knight, with a body of armed followers, entered Anagni, in which town the pope was residing, broke into the papal chamber of audience and captured the pontiff. For three days they kept him prisoner, and he refused all food. Then the people of Anagni rose and drove out the Frenchmen. But the shock was too much for a man of eighty-six, and the pope died a month after his release.

[3] In Higden's text always Benedict III.

Bruce, and the banishment of Piers Gaveston from England, all compressed into a very few lines.

King Edward I. died at Burgh-upon-Sands, near Carlisle, and his son immediately recalled and enriched the banished Gaveston. A description follows of the character of Edward II. from which no good could be augured for the new reign. The beheading of Gaveston, the death of archbishop Robert of Winchelsea, and the appointment in his stead of Thomas of Cobham, the king's advance into Scotland and defeat of Bannockburn take up the rest of the brief chapter. Cap. XLI.

Of John XXII., who succeeded Clement V. on the papal throne, Higden makes mention that he fostered learning, and tells of his quarrel with the duke of Bavaria, who had secured for himself the election to the empire of Germany. But the story of the king of England's favourites, Hugh Despenser, father and son, fills most of the chapter, which closes at the point where the queen and her son are proclaimed outlaws, because they will not return from France for fear of the influence of the favourites. Cap. XLII.

Here we have a short notice of queen Isabella's return with Mortimer; how Edward having in vain appealed to the loyalty of his people flees, but is captured in Wales. Then many of his adherents were taken, among whom were the two Despensers, who were executed without trial. The captured king is formally deposed, and Edward III. proclaimed. Cap. XLIII.

Here we come to the first notice[1] of the closing of the history which has for some pages been only the briefest register of chief events. The MSS. C. and D. end here. Cap. XLIV.

The story, as continued, notices the coronation of the new monarch, and the murder of his father in Berkeley Castle, the execution of Edmund of Woodstock, earl of

[1] *Explicit historia* in the text, p. 324, is an indication that in some copies the work ended with the accession of Edward III.

Kent, and the king's uncle, the birth of Edward prince of Wales, who is called by Higden Edward IV., because the events which followed in English history were yet in the future, and the young prince would naturally be looked upon as the successor to the throne. The execution of Roger Mortimer is next chronicled, and after that the battle of Gledesmore, which placed Edward Balliol on the Scottish throne, and in the next year that victory over the Scots at Halidown Hill, whereby the kingdom of Scotland was made very dependent on England, king and nobles alike doing homage to Edward at Newcastle-on-Tyne.

The death of pope John XXII., and the speedy election of Benedict XII. (A.D. 1334) as his successor, are next recorded. Edward prince of Wales is made duke of Cornwall, and five earls created in the same parliament. Without any special notice of king Edward's claim to the crown of France, there is mentioned the rise of a great discord between France and England, but the various crossings of the English king to Flanders, and the alliances which he there made, are recorded in such a way as to show that very little was known of what was intended or doing.

The accession of Clement VI. to the papal throne (1342) gives occasion for the mention of king Edward's statute against papal provisions; then a few sentences are devoted to the battle of Crecy, and to the advantage which the Scots took of King Edward's absence to rebel, but were defeated through the energy of the queen; and Higden closes his chronicle with the mention of that terrible pestilence which visited Europe, and England[1] as severely as any country, in the year 1348.

Translating from a form of MS. which is given in the Appendix (pp. 407, seqq.), Trevisa carries on the story

[1] In London alone the deaths are said to have amounted to fifty thousand, an immense number considering the small amount of the population at this time.

for a few pages farther to the peace of Bretigni, but in the most meagre style, and then concludes with a thankful notice of the date at which his long work of translation came to an end.

Under this short continuation of Trevisa has been printed the parallel portion of the close of Caxton's seventh book (pp. 347–352). On p. 353 will be found Caxton's statement, concerning his own *eighth* book. He laments that he has "ryght lytel mater," but gives as his authorities: (1) the "*Fasciculus Temporum*" and (2) another book called "*Aureus de Universo.*" The former of these I have found[1] and noted on the margin of the eighth book, which forms the last portion of the Appendix to this volume, such portions of information as are drawn from it. It will be seen that they are very few, and relate mainly to the history of the papacy and to the succession in the German empire. But what book is meant by "*Aureus de Universo*" I have not yet been able to discover.[2] That the reader might be in possession of the whole of those MSS. and other authorities which have been specially used in this edition, the continuation of Higden, according to MS. A., is given in the Appendix pp. 355, seqq., the continuation of B. on pp. 407, seqq. The portion of the Harleian MS. which differs from the other translations on pp. 429, seqq., and the eighth book of Caxton, pp. 522–587.

In bringing to a close my work on the text of Higden, I have the very pleasant duty of acknowledging the

[1] The edition of the Fasciculus, to which I have referred, carries down the history to 1524. It was printed in Paris, "*Expensis honesti viri* "*Johannis parvi Universitatis* "*Parrhisiensis bibliopolæ jurati.*"

[2] There is a note in Dibbin's edition of Ames's Typographical Antiquities in which the work is stated to be the treatise of Petrus Aureolus, which bears the title of "*Compendium literalis sensus totius* "*seu divinæ Scripturæ.*" This is wrong in spite of the triumphant character of the note, and there is no other work of Petrus Aureolus which is likely to contain contributions to the history of England and France in times of the Houses of York and Lancaster.

great kindness of all those from whose treasures the MSS. have been borrowed, especially the University Library, and the library of St. John's College in Cambridge, whose officers have allowed me to keep in my possession their MSS. for many years. A similar favour was accorded me by Dr. Sebastian Evans, whose MS. of the text of Higden though late in date is very correctly written. To acknowledge fully the kind advice and help of the many friends to whom I have from time to time applied would need a large extension of this preface, but I ought specially to name Dr. Luard, the Registrary of the University of Cambridge, who has given me his criticisms and notes for correction on every volume which I have printed.

The next and closing volume will contain the Index, preceded by Glossaries of the peculiar words found in the Latin of Higden and in the English of Trevisa, the Harleian MS. or Caxton.

J. Rawson Lumby.

Cambridge, 17 May 1882.

SUMMARY OF CONTENTS.

BOOK THE SEVENTH—(*continued*).

Cap. XIX.

Papal, English and French history.

Pontificate of popes Celestine II., Lucius II. and Eugenius III. Some notice of the last named. Ralph of Chester reconciled to king Stephen. Welshmen invade the province of Chester. The Crusaders and their fortunes. Of Louis VII. of France. Anecdote of Hugo of St. Victor. List of his works. Notice of Richard of St. Victor, of Gratian of Bologna, and of his brother-german, Peter Lombard, Master of the sentences. pp. 2–12.

Cap. XX.

Teuton and Roman affairs. Death of king Stephen.

Frederick I. made emperor of Germany. His feud with pope Alexander III. His death and the death of his son. Of pope Anastasius. Of the death of St. Bernard of Clairvaux. Notices of his deeds and sayings. Death of Ralph, earl of Chester. He is succeeded by his son Hugh. King Stephen dies. How a knight named Owen entered St. Patrick's purgatory. He tells of what he saw there. - - - - pp. 12–22.

Cap. XXI.

Of the kings of England.

Accession of Henry II. His description and character. He conquers William, king of Scotland. Extent of his dominions in Britain and France. Of his wife, queen Eleanor, and his children. Of his ill success. Why he had bishops in his retinue and court. Of the countess of Anjou, mother of Geoffrey Plantagenet. St. Bernard's prophecy concerning king Henry. Of the painting in king Henry's chamber at Winchester, and the meaning thereof. - - - - - - pp. 22–36.

Cap. XXII.

Papal history. Death of Thomas archbishop of Canterbury.

Adrian IV. is pope. His history. Death of the king of Scotland. A cross is seen in the moon. St. James' hand is brought to Reading abbey. King Henry invades Scotland. Alexander III. is pope. He succoured Thomas-a-Becket when in exile. King Henry's eldest son marries a princess of France. Thomas of London made archbishop of Canterbury. Abbat Joachim flourished now in Calabria. Of his writings and prophecies. Three circles and two suns seen in heaven. Petrus Comestor flourished. Of his writings. The bodies of the Magi brought to Cologne. Martyrdom of St. Thomas of Canterbury. Epitaphs written on him. Misfortunes of the kingdom. Revelations sent to king Henry to warn him that he should reform his life. Reforms demanded for the kingdom. The king visits Becket's tomb. Of fair Rosamond. Her epitaph. Of the wondrous coffin in which she was buried. - - - pp. 38–54.

Cap. XXIII.

Of king Henry II. Finding of the body of king Arthur.

William, king of Scotland, does homage to Henry II. at York. Of the election of a new archbishop of Canterbury. His sudden death. King Henry compounds for his vow to become a crusader. Of fair Rosamond. Of Henry's relations with his sons. A priest at Andover struck by lightning. The body of king Arthur was found in this reign. Description of the bones. Lucius III. is pope. Death of Hugh, earl of Chester. Death and epitaph of king Henry's eldest son. - - pp. 54–66.

Cap. XXIV.

Of archbishop Baldwin. Deeds and death of king Henry II.

Archbishop Baldwin. His abstinence. Anecdotes of him. Urban III. is made pope. Heraclius, patriarch of Jerusalem, comes to England to seek aid against the Saracens. Henry II. declines to go on a crusade. Parting speech of the disappointed patriarch. Prince John sent into Ireland. Jerusalem taken by the Saracens. A crusade undertaken. Gregory VIII. becomes pope, and after him Clement III. Christ is seen hanging on a cross in the air at Dunstable. The emperor Frederick sets out to the Holy Land, but is drowned on the way. Henry V. becomes emperor. He imprisons Richard I.

of England. Discord between the kings of France and England. Death of Henry II. of England. His corpse bled when Richard, his son, stood by it. A marvel before his death. pp. 66–80.

Cap. XXV.

Richard I., king of England. Of William, bishop of Ely.

Richard I. succeeds to the throne. His life was written by Stephen of Canterbury. He is crowned in London. Massacre of the Jews at the time of the coronation. His favour toward his brother John. The bishops of Durham and Ely put in charge of the realm. To raise money for the crusade king Richard resigns the castles of Berwick and Rokesburgh to the king of Scotland. He would have sold London for the same purpose. William, bishop of Ely, as chancellor, entrusted with the care of England. King Richard crosses to Normandy. A cross seen in the sky at Dunstable. Sufferings of the Jews in England. Evil doings of William, bishop of Ely. He sentences the monks of Coventry to be expelled. Of Hugh, bishop of Chester, and how he obtained the power over the monastery at Coventry. Death of bishop Hugh. pp. 82–96.

Cap. XXVI.

Papal history. Of Richard I., king of England.

Celestine III. is made pope. He crowns Henry V. emperor. Doings of William, bishop of Ely, as guardian of England. Measures taken against him by prince John and others. William flees in disguise. His attempt to return hindered by queen Eleanor and the archbishops of Rouen and York. The kings of England and France set out for the Holy Land. Richard marries Berengaria, daughter of the king of Navarre. He goes to Cyprus and afterwards to Acre. Quarrel between him and the king of France. Causes thereof. - - - pp. 98–110.

Cap. XXVII.

Plots of the French king against king Richard.

Capture of Acre. The prisoners differently treated by the two conquerors. The French king goes home. He attempts to fix

on king Richard the charge of murder. Tries to seduce the Danes from their alliance with England. Richard prepares to return to England. Reflections on the issue of the crusade. pp. 112–120.

Cap. XXVIII.

Return of Richard, king of England.

Truce for three years between Richard and Saladin. Richard comes to Cyprus. He sends his queen home by sea and attempts to return by land. He is taken by the duke of Austria. The French king excites prince John and the emperor of Germany against Richard. Richard is committed to the power of the emperor. William, bishop of Ely, comes to king Richard, but is not well received. Hubert, bishop of Salisbury, visits the king and is made archbishop of Canterbury. Of the character of archbishop Baldwin. King Richard is set at liberty. His ransom, and the means taken for raising it. King Richard comes to London. His proceedings against prince John. Richard is crowned, and goes to war with France. Prince John is pardoned at the intercession of queen Eleanor. Revival of tournaments in spite of the pope's prohibition. - - - - - - pp. 120–132.

Cap. XXIX.

Of Stephen, procurator of Anjou, and of Richard, king of England.

Stephen, procurator of Anjou, misled by a necromancer, thinks he may act outrageously to the king's subjects, but is killed. Of others who have been deceived by demons and evil spirits. Death of the duke of Austria before he receives king Richard's ransom. King Richard amends his life. Of a warning which he received. Great council at York held by archbishop Hubert. pp. 132–144.

Cap. XXX.

Of William, called Longbeard.

The abbat of Caen warns king Richard of the wrongdoings of his officers. William, of the long beard, warned him of the insolence of the rich, and their oppression of the poor. The

abbat came to London, but his sudden death put an end to his efforts for reform. William Longbeard was by birth a Londoner. His ability. His ingratitude. He has a large following of the common people. His conspiracy and the efforts of archbishop Hubert against him. William styles himself "Saviour of the people." His execution. Miracles reported to be wrought by portions of his chains and of the gibbet where he was hanged. Conflicting reports of William's character. Hubert, the archbishop, pronounces the church's curse on him. - - - - - pp. 144–156.

CAP. XXXI.

Death of Rees, prince of Wales, and of Richard, king of England.

Falco the priest's speech to king Richard. The king's answer. Death and epitaph of Rees, prince of Wales. Innocent III. is made pope. Of his writings. Death of the emperor of Germany. Dissensions concerning the succession. Otho made emperor, but soon put down in favour of Frederic, king of Apulia. Wydomar, viscount of Limoges, finds a treasure in his lands. This is claimed by king Richard. War in consequence of Wydomar's refusal to resign it. Richard shot by Bertrand Gurdoun. He dies. His epitaphs. pp. 158–168.

CAP. XXXII.

John, king of England. Death of Hugh, bishop of Lincoln.

Prince John succeeds his brother. A party in favour of Arthur, his nephew. John is crowned by Hubert, the archbishop. He visits Normandy. Partizans of John and of Arthur. John is divorced from his first wife and marries Isabella of Angoulême. Taxation on English land. Ralph, earl of Chester, divorces his wife. The rise of the Tartars. Capture of Constantinople by the French. Of the emperor Frederic II. Storms of rain, thunder, and hail. Death of Hugh, bishop of Lincoln. His funeral, and of those who were present thereat. Notice of bishop Hugh. Of Eustace, abbat of Falaise, his miracles and his preaching, and death. Five moons seen at once.

pp. 170–184.

CAP. XXXIII.

Acts and death of John, king of England.

King John puts to death his nephew Arthur, and imprisons Arthur's sister. The king of France seizes the French pos-

sessions of the English king. Commencement of the order of Dominican preachers. A severe winter. King John marries his illegitimate daughter to Llewellin of Wales. Death of Hubert, archbishop of Canterbury. Dispute about the election of his successor. Stephen Langton appointed by the pope. Vision of Master Maurice in South Wales. Birth of king John's eldest son. Enumeration of his subsequent family, and of the husbands of his daughters. England under the papal interdict. Albigenses in England. The Saracens cross from Africa into Spain. Papal message to divers nations against the Saracens. Order of Franciscan friars commenced. The king of France occupies the shores of Normandy with an army. A papal legate comes to England. King John's submission to the pope. Stephen Langton comes to England. King John's conduct to Piers of Pontefract. Account of Piers and his visions. King John takes the castle of Rochester out of the hands of his opponents. The nobles invite Louis of France into England. The papal legate excommunicates prince Louis. Death of pope Innocent. Honorius III. made pope. King John dies at Newark. Rumours that he was killed by poison. pp. 184–196.

CAP. XXXIV.

Henry III., king of England. Death of Stephen Langton.

Henry, son of king John, succeeds to the crown at nine years old. Retirement from England of prince Louis of France. Punishment of the partizans of Louis. Ralph, earl of Chester, goes to Jerusalem. Damietta taken by the Christians. New buildings of king Henry, and of Ralph, earl of Chester. Translation of the body of St. Thomas of Canterbury. Cost thereof very great. The king of Scotland marries the sister of the king of England. A violent storm of wind. One who called himself Jesus put to death at Abberbury. A son of David, earl of Scotland, marries a Welsh princess. Of taxation in England. Franciscan friars. Gregory IX. is made pope. Acts of this pope. Death of Stephen, archbishop of Canterbury. He is succeeded by Richard, dean of Lincoln. Of William of Alverne and his writings. A strange darkness in St. Paul's, in London. Liberties granted to Englishmen by the king. Death of Ralph, earl of Chester. He is succeeded by his sister's son. Notice of the sisters of Ralph and of their husbands. King Henry builds St. John's hostel at Oxford. Death of Richard, archbishop of Canterbury. Edmond of Abingdon was his successor. He died after an episcopate of eight years. - - - - - pp. 196–208.

Cap. XXXV.

Of king Henry, and of St. Edmund, the archbishop.

Frederic, the emperor, marries the sister of the king of England. The Jews accused of crucifying a boy at Norwich. King Henry marries Eleanor of Provence. Death of John, earl of Chester, without issue. Disposition of his lands. A papal legate in England. Benefits therefrom. Quarrel between the legate's train and the scholars of Oxford. The Oxford men are excommunicated and the privileges of the university withdrawn, but they are afterwards pardoned. A pretended madman tries to kill the king. He is executed. Edward, the eldest son of king Henry, born. The Tartars in Hungary and Pannonia. Celestine IV. is pope. Then Innocent IV. The crown of thorns brought to France. The papal legate taken prisoner by the Emperor. King Henry visits Wales. Edmund, the archbishop, dying, is succeeded by Boniface. Account of archbishop Edmund and his holy life. Anecdotes of him, and of his liberality. His manner of living and his devotions. Miracles wrought by him. Story of his election to the archbishopric. His humility and purity. Of his last sickness.

pp. 208–234.

Cap. XXXVI.

Of Pontifical and English history.

Innocent IV., pope, his acts and writings. Story of a wondrous book found by a Jew of Toledo in his garden. Dearth in England. Translation of St. Edmund. Death of the emperor Frederic. His natural son Manfred succeeds, but is put down and slain by Charles, the brother of the king of France. Of the election to the empire. Blood of Christ sent from Jerusalem to England. A procession made to it. Louis of France sets out on a crusade and takes Damietta. Great drought. Of Robert Grosstete, bishop of Lincoln. His death. Story of his refusal to admit the pope's nominee to a canonry at Lincoln. Reasons why Grosstete was not canonized. Alexander IV. is pope. Peace between Wales and England. Commencement of Montfort's rebellion. King Henry gives up Normandy to the French. Urban IV. is pope. Some notice of his history. A Jew dies in a jakes. - - - - pp. 234–246.

Cap. XXXVII.

War between king Henry and the nobles of England.

The war began because Henry would not abide by the ordinances of the Parliament of Oxford. Prisoners held by the nobles.

Foreigners driven from England. The king of France is made referee. The nobles do not accept his award. Battle of Lewes. Capture of king Henry, Richard, duke of Cornwall, and prince Edward. Chester put into the hands of Simon Montfort. Narrative of prince Edward's escape. Battle of Evesham. Death of Simon Montfort. Story of miracles wrought after his death. The soldiers of Simon hold Kenilworth Castle for half a year. Clement IV. is made pope. After his death there was no pope for more than three years. Notice of the acts of pope Clement. Of the arrival of a papal legate in England. His counsel to king Henry. The legate puts London and Chichester under an interdict. This legate Ottobon was afterwards pope. The sultan of Babylon invades Armenia and takes Antioch. Death of pope Clement. Translation of St. Edward the Confessor. Taxation in England. Prince Edward goes to the Holy Land. Gregory X. is made pope. Of his council at Lyons, and of his enactments. Death of king Henry of England; also of Boniface, archbishop of Canterbury. Robert Kilwarby is his successor. Louis of France and his sons set out for the Holy Land. Prayer of the king of France.

pp. 246–260.

CAP. XXXVIII.

Of the kings of England and of the popes of Rome.

Prince Edward returns from the Holy Land. His coronation. Homage of the king of Scotland. Innocent V. is made pope. His previous history. Adrian V. is made pope. He had been papal legate in England. John XXI. is made pope. Of his fame. He is succeeded by Nicholas III. King Edward invades Wales. Submission of king Llewellin. Pope Nicholas makes archbishop Kilwarby a cardinal. John of Peckham is made archbishop. Jews punished for clipping the coinage. Statute of Mortmain. New coinage, fulfilling one of Merlin's prophecies. Honorius IV. is made pope. How David, prince of Wales, rebelled against king Edward. Conquest of Wales. Capture of David. Verses on prince Llewellin. English law observed in Wales. A son is born to king Edward at Carnarvon. Nicholas IV. is pope. Great drought. Much merchandise set on fire at St. Botulph's. Stormy weather. New taxation on the churches of England. Jews banished from England. Celestine V. is made pope, but soon resigns. Death of Alexander, king of Scotland. - - pp. 260–272.

Cap. XXXIX.

Disputed succession in Scotland. King of England chief lord of Scotland.

King Alexander of Scotland dies without children. Search for evidence of the claim of the English king to be lord of Scotland. Various sources of evidence. Numerous acknowledgments of lordship made by kings of Scotland. Edward's claim to lordship. It is acknowledged by Scotland. He appoints John Balliol king of Scotland. Death of archbishop Peckham. Robert of Winchelsey is next archbishop. War in Wales. Anglesea captured. Madoc, the Welsh leader, captured and brought to London. Peace in Wales. The king seizes the monastic treasures, and much wool. A dearth. pp. 272–282.

Cap. XL.

Of Papal history.

Boniface VIII. is made pope. His fifth year was a jubilee. Of the works of this pope. A prophecy concerning him, and the manner of its fulfilment. John Balliol rises against the king of England. Of William Wallace and the war with Scotland. The English king sails into Flanders. Reasons for the step. Debased coinage condemned. Death of Edmund, earl of Cornwall. Many pilgrims to Rome. William Wallace executed. King Edward lays his rights over Scotland before the pope. Benedict XI. is made pope. A verse concerning his name. Clement V. succeeds to the pontificate. His deeds. He removed the papal seat from Rome to Avignon. The inquisition of *trail bastoun*. Robert Bruce slays John Comyn at Dumfries. King Edward marches against Bruce. Piers Gaveston banished from England. - - pp. 282–294.

Cap. XLI.

England under Edward II.

Death of Edward I. This had been foreseen in a vision by Robert, archbishop of Canterbury. Edward II. is made king. Piers Gaveston recalled, and enriched. Coronation of Edward II. Character of the new king. His extravagances. He had many misfortunes, only Wales was not in rebellion. Piers Gaveston

driven to Ireland by the nobles. He returns, but is taken and beheaded at Gaversiche, near Warwick. A provincial council assembled by the archbishop. Measures thereof. Death of Robert, the archbishop. There was first chosen Thomas of Cobham to succeed him, but afterwards Walter Raynald, the royal treasurer. King Edward marches into Scotland, but is defeated at Stirling. Edward Bruce, brother of Robert Bruce, invades Ireland, but is soon slain. Rising in Lancashire against Thomas, earl of Lancaster. - pp. 296–306.

Cap. XLII.

Of the Papacy, and of king Edward II. of England.

John XXII. is made pope. His literary labours. His claims on benefices. His wars with the duke of Bavaria. A great murrain. Of a certain John who called himself heir of England. Robert Bruce excommunicated and Scotland placed under an interdict. Of Hugh Despenser, father and son. They are in high favour with the king, but are banished. The king soon recalls them. The revolt of some nobles on this account. Capture and execution of the earl of Lancaster. His character and virtues. By some he is evil spoken of. The Despensers in great favour. A parliament. The king marches against Scotland, but loses many men through disease and privation. The Scots follow the retiring army and take Norham Castle, and almost capture the king's person. Andrew of Harkley executed at Carlisle. Escape of Roger Mortimer from the Tower. The queen of England sent on a mission to France. Edward, prince of Wales, also sent over to do homage to the king of France. Neither mother nor son return till the Despensers are banished. - - - - pp. 306–318.

Cap. XLIII.

Of the return of the queen of England.

The queen, the prince of Wales, and Roger Mortimer return and land in Essex. King Edward retires into West Wales. The royal treasurer executed. The Tower of London seized for the queen and her son. Bristol Castle captured, and with it the elder Despenser. His execution, and that of the earl of Arundel. Capture of the king. The younger Despenser

taken and executed. Message from the parliament renouncing their allegiance to king Edward. Edward, prince of Wales, is crowned king of England. - - - - pp. 318–322.

Cap. XLIV.

Edward III., king of England. War against the Scots.

King Edward was crowned at Westminster during his father's lifetime. Auspicious commencement of his reign. Note of the end of Higden's History. Edward II. removed to Berkeley Castle. His murder. Various estimate of his character. Edmund of Woodstock, the king's uncle, is beheaded. A son born to Edward III. Roger Mortimer captured at Nottingham. His execution. Battle of Gledesmore. The king of England helps the king of Scotland. Scotch troops conquered by the English at Halidon. Berwick surrendered to the king of England. Edward Balliol does homage to the English king at Newcastle-on-Tyne. King Edward in Scotland. Death of pope John XXII. Benedict XII. is made pope. King Edward creates his son duke of Cornwall. He also creates five earls. War between France and England. King Edward crosses into Flanders. Goes to Cologne. The alliances which he made. He invades the north of France. Great cold and frost. King Edward returns to England. A parliament. Its enactments. Condition of the country. The king returns to Flanders. Is met by the French fleet. A naval battle. The French thoroughly defeated. King Edward's progress in northern France. Many of his men die in Brittany. Two cardinals sent from Rome to mediate between France and England. Tempest as the king returns to England. Death of pope Benedict. Clement VI. is his successor. His difference with the king of England. Statute against papal provisions. King Edward puts to sea without announcing whither he is going. He lands in northern Normandy. His progress there. Battle of Crecy. Victory of the English. Siege of Calais. Defeat of the Scots. Capture of David Bruce and other Scottish leaders. Surrender of Calais. Storm as the king of England returns home. His prayer to the Virgin. A great mortality at this time, especially at Avignon and in the seaboard towns of England and Ireland. - - - - pp. 324–346.

Continuation of Trevisa's Translation, with Caxton's version subjoined. - - - - - - pp. 347–353.

Appendix I. Continuation of Latin Text as given in MS. A. pp. 355–406.

Appendix II. Continuation of Latin Text as given in MS. B. pp. 407–428.

Appendix III. Continuation of English translation as given in MS. Harl. 2,261 - - - - - pp. 429–521.

Appendix IV. The eighth book of the Polychronicon from Caxton. - - - - - - - pp. 522–587.

POLYCHRONICON RANULPHI HIGDEN MONACHI CESTRENSIS.

P 939. Wt. 16310.

POLYCHRONICON RANULPHI HIGDEN MONACHI CESTRENSIS.

LIBER SEPTIMUS.

Cap. XIX.

[*De pontificibus Romanis, quædam de rebus Anglicis, et de Ludovico Franciæ rege.*]

Celestinus secundus post Innocentium secundum sedit papa[1] mensibus quinque, post quem Lucius[2] mensibus xi. Eugenius tertius sedit papa annis octo mensibus quinque. Hic cum primum esset discipulus beati Bernardi, et postmodo abbas Sancti Anastasii juxta Romam, ex insperato ad ecclesiam Sancti Cesarii veniens per cardinales electus est, sed propter metum senatorum extra[3] urbem consecratus est.[4] Hic cruce signavit Lodowycum regem Franciæ, Remis in Gallia concilium celebravit, ad quem et sanctus Bernardus abbas[5] scripsit libros de Consideratione. *Henricus, libro viii.* Ranul-

[1] *annis octo*, add. A. wrongly, see line 3.
[2] *qui et Giraldus*, add. C.D.
[3] *juxta*, A.
[4] *est*] om. A.
[5] *abbas*] om. A.C.D.

Trevisa's Translation.

Capitulum nonum decimum.

After þe secounde Innocencius þe secounde Celestinus was pope fyve[1] monþes. After hym Lucius xi.[2] monthes. Þe pridde Eugenius was pope fyve monþes, after hym Lucius: þis was first[3] seynt Bernard his disciple, and after abbot of Seint Anastasy bysides Rome, and cam unwar to Seynt Cesarius cherche, and was i-chose[4] by þe cardinales, but for drede of þe senatoures he was i-sacred[5] wiþoute þe citee. Þis signededе[6] Lowys kyng of Fraunce wiþ croys,[7] and made a counsaille[8] at Reme in Fraunce; also to hym seynt Bernard þe abbot wroot þe bookes De consideratione. *Henricus, libro* 8°.[9] Ranulp[10] consul

Trevisa.

Anonymous Translation of the Fifteenth Century.

Capitulum nonum decimum.

Celestinus the secunde succeded Innocencius secunde pope v. monethes, whom Lucius did succede xi. monethes. Eugenius the secunde was pope viii. yere and v. monethes. This pope, somme tyme the disciple of blissede Bernard, and after abbot of Seynte Anastatius nye to Rome, and commynge for devocion to the churche of Seynte Cesarius, was electe into þe pope by the cardinalls, and consecrate withoute the walles of the cite for drede of þe senators. This pope marked Lodowicus kynge of Fraunce with the signe of the crosse, and kepede a cownesaile at Remis in Fraunce; to whom seynte Bernard did write bookes of Consideracions. *Henricus, libro octavo.* Ranulphus erle of Chestre commynge to Wal-

MS. Harl. 2261.

[1] *vyf*, γ.
[2] *enleven*, Cx.
[3] *vurste*, γ.
[4] *chocen*, Cx.
[5] *a was ysacred*, γ.
[6] *sygned*, Cv.
[7] *cros*, β.
[8] *conseil*, β.
[9] *nono*, Cx.
[10] *Ranulph*, Cx.

phus consul Cestrensis cum magnis[1] militum copiis apud Walingford veniens cum rege concordatus est. Sed cito post in parliamento Northamptonensi dolose captus est, nec liberari potuit donec castrum Lincolniæ reddidisset. Interim Walenses vastaverunt provinciam Cestrensem, sed apud Wycum[2] Malbanum intercepti sunt, et post modicum[3] rex Stephanus in urbe Lincolniæ coronatus est, quod nulli regum[4] contigeret. Eoque anno[5] Conradus imperator, Lodowicus rex Franciæ, comes Flandriæ et multi alii[6] cruce signati [ad Terram Sanctam iter arripuerunt, qui][7] viam terræ magis quam maris eligentes, transita Hungaria, per dolum imperatoris Constantinopolitam perditi sunt. Nam multi, gustata farina calce mixta, defuncti sunt, ceteri multi[8] aut gladio aut fame propter eorum luxuriam et rapinam consumpti sunt.[9] *Giraldus, distinctione prima, capitulo octavo decimo.* Rediens tandem Lodowycus de Terra Sancta cum ex diutina continentia et coitus defectu, prout medici dicebant, ægritudinem incurreret, suasumque sibi foret per medicos et prælatos ut ob nimiam distantiam

Nota hic de continentia regis Lodowyci.

---

[1] *magnis*] om. A.

[2] *Wicum*, A.C.D.

[3] *et post modicum*] Quo et anno, C.D.

[4] *regum*] prædecessorum suorum, C.D.

[5] *circa Pentecosten*, add. C.D.

[6] *alii*] Angli, C.D.

[7] From C.D. (not in A. or B.).

[8] *multi*] pœne omnes, C.D.

[9] *pauci tum humiles divina gratia adjuti multa in Hispaniis contra Saracenos gloriose egerunt*, add. C.D.

of Chestre come to Wallyngforde wiþ meny kny3tes, and was accorded wiþ the kyng. But sone þerafter he was gilefulliche[1] i-take in þe parlement at Norhamptoun, and my3t nou3t be delyvered or[2] he hadde i-3olde[3] up þe castel of Lyncolne. Þat tyme Walsche men destroyed þe province of Chestre, but at Wycombmalban[4] þey were i-kilde;[5] sone þer after kyng Stephene was i-crowned at Lyncolne, and happede no kyng so byforehonde.[6] Also þat 3ere Conradus þe emperour, Lowys kyng of Fraunce, þe erle of Flandres, and meny oþer þat hadde i-take þe cros to þe Holy Lond, chese[7] þe londe way, and nou3t þe water wey, and passed by Hungery, and were betrayhed by fraude of þe emperour of Constantynnoble, for meny of hem tastede mete and[8] i-medled[9] with lyme and deide, and meny oþere were dede by swerd of werre,[10] and honged for robynge and revynge and lecherie. *Giraldus, distinctione prima, capitulo* 18°. Lowys kyng of Fraunce cam homward[11] out of þe Holy Lond, and wor þe[12] sike[13] for long covetise[14] and defaute of womman, as leches seide, and leches and prelates counsailled[15] hym

Trevisa.

---

yngeforde with a grete hoste was acorded with the kynge, but after that he was taken by treason in a parliament at Northampton, and cowthe not be delyverede tylle he hade taken to the kynge the castell of Lincoln. And after that kyng Steven was crownede in the cite of Lincolne, whiche thynge was not seen afore. In whiche yere Conradus the emperour, the kynge of Fraunce, the erle of Flaundres, and mony oþer noble men toke their wey by Hungary to the Holy Londe, whiche were betrayede by treason of the emperour of Constantinopole, for mony men eitenge brede mixte with lyme diede þerof: somme men were sleyne, somme men diede for extorcion and synne. *Giraldus, distinctione prima, capitulo octavo decimo.* Lodowicus kynge of Fraunce returnede from the Holy Londe labored in grete infirmite causede by continence as phisicions seide, f. 357 a.

MS. Harl. 2261.

---

[1] *gylfolliche*, γ.
[2] *er*, β.
[3] *yolden*, Cx.
[4] *Wicum Malban*, β.; *Wycumalban*, Cx.
[5] *y-keld*, α.; *ykeld*, γ.; *kylde*, Cx.
[6] *byfore*, Cx.
[7] *chuese*, γ.; *chesed*, Cx.
[8] *and*] om. β., γ., and Cx.
[9] *mele medled*, β.; *mele ymelled*, γ.; *mele medlyd*, Cx.
[10] *of werre*] om. Cx., which reads *by swerde and honger for robbyng*, &c.
[11] *hamward*, β. and γ.
[12] *werþ seke*, β.
[13] *syke*, γ.
[14] *continence*, α., β., γ., and Cx.
[15] *counceilide*, β.

reginæ puella aliqua uteretur, respondit, " Malo mori " castus quam vivere adulter." Et sic totum Deo committens cito convaluit. Dum[1] autem aliquando clericus quidam privilegium papale[2] ei attulisset quod in omni cathedrali ecclesia regni sui primam vacaturam[3] haberet cum fructibus medio tempore provenientibus, ille statim litteras combussit, dicens se malle tales litteras comburere quam animam suam in inferno torqueri. At dum[4] idem princeps qualibet sexta feria in pane et aqua jejunaret, suasum est illi hoc[5] jejunium dimittere et centum pauperes tali die reficere. Quibus[6] respondit, " Bene volumus quod tali die [tot pauperes][7] vel " plures[8] pascantur, sed jejunium nostrum solvere no- " lumus. Nam absque eo[9] quod animæ confert, corpori " tamen[10] plurimum prodest. Tot enim superflua per " totam hebdomadam corpori ingerimus quod purgatio " et quies unius diei multum valet tam ad pellendum

---

[1] *Huic semel*, C.D.
[2] *papale*] om. B.
[3] *collationem*, C.D.
[4] *At cum*, A.B.
[5] *ei tale*, B.
[6] *bene*, A.
[7] *tot pauperes*, from A.C.D.
[8] *tali die*, B.
[9] *hoc*, B.
[10] *utique*, B.

to take a wenche[1] for he was fer from[2] þe queene. "Me is "levere to[3] deie," quoþ he, "chast[4] þan lyve[5] in spouse-"breche;"[6] and so he al put in[7] Goddes honde, and was hole anon. In þat[8] tyme a clerk come to hym and brouȝt with hym privelege of þe pope þat he schulde in everiche cathedral cherche of his realme abil[9] þe firste benefice[10] þat voydede, wiþ þe fruyt and prophetes[11] in þe mene tyme. Anon he þrew þe lettre[12] into þe fuyre, and seide þat hym were levere brenne suche lettres þan abil his soule[13] i-tormented in helle. Þe same prince faste every[14] Friday[15] to brede and water, and men counsailled hym to fede an hondred pore men in[16] þe Friday, and leve þe[17] fastynge. "We wil[18] gladliche,"[19] quoþ he, "fede "so meny pore men, oþer moo, but oure fastynge wil we[20] "nouȝt breke. For al wiþoute þe preef[21] þat it doop to þe soule, "hit profiteþ moche[22] to þe body also: we doop al þe[23] woke "[so moche[24] and so meny][25] superfluytes into þe body þat "purgacioun and reste of oon day helpeþ moche to pulle[26] of

TREVISA.

---

wherefore he was movede to use somme maide; to whom he seide, "Y hade lever dye in chastite then lyve in adultery;" and after that he was recurede anoon. A clerke bryngynge to the seide kynge the privelege that he scholde rejoyce the investitures of prelates and the frutes of theire churches for theire vacacion he toke the lettres[27] then that his sawle scholde be punyschede in helle þerfore. Also the seide kynge usynge to faste in the vj. fery in brede and water, was movede to leve that faste and to norische a c. poore men that day; whom he answerde seyenge: "We wylle that so mony poore men be "norischede in þat day, but ȝitte we wylle not breke oure "faste, for withowte that goode that hit causethe to the sawle, "the reste of that day helpethe moche to avoide superfluous

MS. HARL 2261.

---

[1] *weynche*, γ.
[2] *vram*, γ.
[3] *to*] om. α.
[4] *chaaste*, β.
[5] *lybbe*, γ.
[6] *spousebrekyng*, Cx.
[7] *pot al in*, γ.
[8] *þat*] a, Cx.
[9] *reme habbe*, γ.; *reme have*, Cx.
[10] *vurste benefis*, γ.
[11] *prouffytes*, Cx.
[12] *þruw þe letters*, γ.; *lettres*, Cx.
[13] *habbe hys soul*, γ.
[14] *everech*, β.
[15] *day*, α.
[16] *in*] on, Cx.
[17] *þe*] that, Cx.
[18] *wold*, Cx.
[19] *We wolleþ gladlich*, β.
[20] *ur vastynge wol we*, γ.
[21] *prouffyte*, Cx.
[22] *profitiþ myche*, β.
[23] *al þe*] every, Cx.
[24] *al weke so mych*, β.
[25] From α., β., γ., and Cx.
[26] *potte*, γ.; *putte*, Cx.
[27] Sic in MS. Evidently some words are wanting.

" superfluum quam ad provocandum appetitum." Mortuo tandem isto Lodowyco metricus quidam stili compendio tale epitaphium rhetorico stemmate ornatum scripsit et tanquam ad filium suum Philippum apostrophans patrem sepultum ostendens ait:[1]

Versus de Lodowyco ad filium suum Philippum.[2]

" *Hunc superes tu qui superes successor honoris,*

" *Degener es si degeneres a laude prioris.*"

Gratiæ MCXLVIII. Stephani XIII.

Circa hæc tempora obiit magister Hugo de Sancto Victore, monachus et prior Sancti Victoris, juxta Parisium, litteris et religione summus; de quo ferunt quod cum in extrema infirmitate laboraret et nullum cibum retinere posset, corpus tamen Dominicum sibi dari instanter postulavit: fratres vero ejus turbationem sedare volentes simplicem oblatam non consecratam[3] attulerunt. Quod ille in spiritu recognoscens ait, " Deus " misereatur vestri, fratres; cur mihi illudere voluistis? " iste non est Dominus meus." Mox illi eucharistiam consecratam attulerunt, quod ille videns, sed[4] retinere non

---

[1] *ostendens ait*] om. A.
[2] A.B.C.D. omit heading.
[3] *et*, B.
[4] *et*, B.

" superfluite, and also to make more [1] scharper appetit." When þis Lowys was dede a versefiour [2] wroot on his tombe in schort stile [3] and [4] writynge i-hi3t wiþ faire speche of rethorik, and tornede his speche as it were to his sone Philip, and schewed hym his fader [5] þat lay i-buried þere, and seide, TREVISA.

Nunc superes tu qui superes successor honoris,
Degener es si degeneres a laude prioris,

ut patet per versum.[6] Þat is to menynge :[7] Þou overlevest þis þat art above successor of worschippe, þou art unkynde [8] if þou gost out of kynde [of the praysing] [9] of þy forefader.[10] Aboute þat tyme deide maister Hughe [11] de Seint Victor, monk and priour of Seynt Victor besides Parys, a profite [12] man of lettrure and of religioun. Of hym it is i-seide þat whan he was sike in his deeth evel, and my3te noþer holde mete ne drynke, he axede besiliche [13] and prayed to 3eve hym Goddes body. His breþeren wolde cese [14] his crienge,[15] and brou3t hym an obley [16] þat was nou3t i-sacred; he knewe it in his spirit, and seide, " God for3if [17] it 3ow with [18] breþeren, why wolde 3e " begile me? þis is nou3t my Lord." Anon þey brou3te an obley þat was i-sacred; he seigh it and my3t nou3t holde it, and haf [19]

" humors receyvid in the weke afore, and also to gendre an " appetite." Hugo de Sancto Victore diede abowte this tyme, monke and prior of Seynte Victor nye to Parise, an excellent man in connynge and religion; of whom hit is rehersed that this holy man laborynge in extreme infirmite, and trowblede moche with debilite of stomake, desyrede oftetymes of his breþer that he my3hte receyve his Maker. The breþer of the monastery willynge to satisfye his mynde, brou3hte to hym a lofe not consecrate. This hooly man perceyvynge that in spirite or sawle, seide to his breþer, " God have mercy on yow, " why do ye skorne me? this is not my Maker:" and after that thei brou3hte to hym the verey body of Criste. The holy man seenge his Maker, and havynge noo my3hte to receyve MS. HARL. 2261.

---

[1] *þe, α.* and Cx.
[2] *versfyour, γ.*; *vercifyour*, Cx.
[3] *style*, Cx.
[4] *and*] a, Cx.
[5] *vader, γ.*
[6] *ut . . . versum*] om. *α.* and Cx.
[7] *to saye*, Cx.
[8] *unkunde, γ.*
[9] From *β.*, *γ.*, and Cx.
[10] *vorvader, γ.*
[11] *Huwe, β.*
[12] *an perfi3t, α.*; *parfite, β.*; *parfyght*, Cx.
[13] *bisiliche, β.*
[14] *ceese, β.*
[15] *cryyng, γ.*
[16] *oubleye*, Cx.
[17] *vor3eve, γ.*
[18] *with*] om. *α.* and *γ.*
[19] *haaf, β.*; *heved*, Cx.

valens, erectis manibus ait: "Ascendat Filius ad Patrem et spiritus ad Deum qui creavit illum;"[1] et statim expiravit et corpus Domini disparuit. *Ranulphus.* Volunt tamen alii quod cum iste Hugo propter jugem vomitum non posset eucharistiam retinere, et hac de causa fratres ei verum sacramentum[2] afferre[3] noluissent, rogavit eos ut saltem super latus ejus sacramentum ponerent. Quo facto latus infirmi se aperuit et[4] hostia corpori se immersit. Iste dum vixit multa egregia opuscula dictavit,[5] utpote De sacramentis, De archa Noe, De institutione noviciorum, De arrha animæ, De studio sapientiæ, quæ intitulatur Didascalion,[6] et De laude crucis. Tam valida erat glacies quod Thamisia potuit transiri cum equo.[7] His temporibus floruit Ricardus de Sancto Victore. Hoc etiam anno magister Gracianus de Tuscia natus, monachus Sancti Proculi in Bononia, compilavit decreta, sicut dicit Hugucio 2. Q. 6. forma. Ejus frater ger-

---

[1] *cum*, A.
[2] *veram eucharistiam*, B.
[3] *porrigere*, C.D.
[4] *per lateris aperturam*, add C.D.
[5] *scripsit*, C.D.
[6] *Didascalicon*, C.D.
[7] *Tam . . . equo*] om. C.D.

up his handes[1] and seide, "I praye þat þe Sone goo up to þe "Fader, and þe spirit to God þat made hym of nouȝt;" and [so][2] he ȝelde up þe goost, and oure Lordes body vanesched[3] out of sight. ℟. Bote som men wolde[4] mene[5] þat þis Hughe myȝte nouȝt holde it, and haf up his hondes and seide,[6] for he was castynge alway,[7] and þerfore his breþeren wolde nouȝt brynge þe verray[8] sacrament, and he prayede him[9] specialliche þat þey wolde sette þe sacrament uppon his side, and whan þey hadde so done þe seke manis side opened, and þe sacrament worþ in by hymself.[10] Þis made newe[11] good bookes, De sacramentis, De archa Noe, De institucione novicorum,[12] De arra animæ, De studio sapientiæ, þat is i-cleped[13] Didascalion,[14] and De laude crucis he made a book also. Frost[15] and yse was[16] so strong þat hors myȝte passe over Tempse[17] þis ȝere. Maister[18] Gracianus de Tuscia, monk of Banonia,[19] [was borne;][20] he compilede and gadrede þe book of decrees, so seiþ Hughe, 2. q. 6 forma. His broþer-german

Trevisa.

---

hym, extendynge his hondes into hevyn seide: "The Sonne "may ascende to the Fader, and the sawle to God that create "hit;" and that seide he diede, and the body of Criste evanesched. ℟. Somme men say that this holy man, perceyvynge that he myȝhte not receyve his Maker for feblenesse of his stomake, preide his breþer to putte the sacramente to his syde: that doen his side openede, and the hoste wente into his body. This clerke made mony noble werkes, as of þe sacramentes, of the arke of Noe or schippe, of the institucion of novices, of the erroure of the sawle, of the study of sapience, whiche is callede Didascalon, and of the lawde of the crosse. Maister Gracian, borne in Tuschia, and monke of Seynte Proculus in Bonony, compilede the decrees in this yere, as Hugo seythe, secunda quæstio, sexta forma. And maister Petir

MS. Harl. 2261.

f. 357 b.

---

[1] *have op hys hondes*, γ.
[2] From Cx.
[3] *vansede*, γ.
[4] *wole*, β.
[5] *wene*, α.
[6] *it . . . seide*] om. α. and Cx.
[7] *aweye*, Cx.
[8] *verrey*, β.
[9] *hem*, Cx.
[10] *hit silf*, β.; *went in by hit self*, Cx.
[11] *newe*] many, Cx.
[12] *noviciorum*, Cx.
[13] *þat is i-cleped*] om. Cx.
[14] *Didascalicon*, β.; *Dydascalycon*, Cx.
[15] *Forst*, β.
[16] *Vorst and ys was*, γ.
[17] *Temse*, β.
[18] *Temse. Þis yere maister*, Cx.
[19] *Bononia*, Cx.
[20] From Cx.

manus[1] magister Petrus Lumbardus, episcopus Parisiensis, compilavit quatuor libros sententiarum, Psalterium quoque et Pauli epistolas glossavit.

Cap. XX.

[*De rebus Teutonicis et Romanis. De Sancto Bernardo. Mors Stephani regis Angliæ.*]

Gratiæ MCLI. Stephani XVI.

Fredericus primus post Conradum imperavit[2] Teutonicis et Romanis triginta septem annis. Hic post

---

[1] *germanus*] om. C.D. | [2] *imperavit*] om. B.

maister Pers[1] Lombard,[2] bisshop of Parys, compilede and made þe foure bookes of sentence, and glosede þe psawter[3] and Paules[4] pistles also. TREVISA. ——

Capitulum vicesimum.

AFFTER Conradus þe firste Frederik was emperour of Almayns and of Romayns seven and þritty ȝere. After pope

---

Lumbard, his broþer german, bischop of Paris, compilede iiij. bookes of the sentence, and glosede the sawter and the epistoles of Paule.[5] Lodowicus kynge of Fraunce was departede from Elianor his qwene in that thei were nye of bloode, as the seide kynge did swere, of whom he gate ij. doȝhters: Mary, whom the erle Cretense hade mariede; and Aclides, whom Theobaldus the erle Blesense mariede afterwarde. Henricus the duke of Normandy and erle of Gascoigne, metynge this lady goynge towarde the cuntre of her nativite, toke her unto his wife, and after that Aquitanny returnede to the bloode of Ynglonde. That matrimony inducede grete discorde betwene kynges of Ynglonde and of Fraunce. This Henricus duke of Normandy gate of the seide qwene William, Henricus, Richard, Galfride, Philippe, and Iohn, tweyne of whom, William and Philip died in theire tendre age, and the other ij. sonnes were promotede by succession to regalle dignite. And Galfride the iiij^{the} sonne occupiede the cownte of Briteyne by the tyme of his lyfe. Also he gate of her iiij. doȝhters, oon of whom was mariede to the kynge of Castell, of whom Blanche come, modere of Seynte Lodowicus kynge, an oþer was maryede to Alexander emperoure off Constantinopole. The thrydde was maryede to the duke of Saxony, of whom Otho themperoure of Rome come; the iiij^{the} was maryede to the erle Tholosan, of whom Reymund come, the doȝhter of whom Alfonsus erle Pictavense, broþer of seynte Lewes kynge of Fraunce, toke into his wife. MS. HARL. 2261. ——

Capitulum vicesimum.

FREDERICUS the firste, after Conradus, was emperoure off Alemayne and of Rome xxvij. yere. This emperoure did

---

[1] *Peres*, Cx.
[2] *Peres Lumbard*, γ.
[3] *sauter*, β.; *gloosed the sauter*, Cx.
[4] *Poules*, β. and Cx.
[5] The additional sentences in chap. xix. are peculiar to the Harl. MS.

mortem Adriani papæ, qui eum coronaverat, pessime egit cum Alexandro,[1] in præjudicium ejus quatuor schismaticis apostolicis successive adhærendo; regem quoque Francorum, ad quem papa confugerat, cum valida manu Dacorum et Boemiorum oppugnavit. Sed Ricardo[2] rege Anglorum opem[3] ferente repulsus est. Unde[4] et Mediolanum, cujus tunc muri erant altissimi, sub anno gratiæ millesimo centesimo lxii. funditus destruxit. Hic tandem[5] post multas vexationes papæ illatas, timens sibi[6] de rebellione Lumbardorum, veniam a papa petiit, et tanquam ad delictorum emendam cruce signatus Terram Sanctam adiit, ubi juxta Armeniam in parvo[7] flumine submersus est, et apud Tyrum[8] sepultus; filiusque ejus illustris juvenis[9] in obsidendo Ptolomaidam, quod est Acon, defunctus est, totaque pœne nobilitas[10] obiit. *De pontificibus Romanorum.*[11] Anastasius post

---

[1] *papa*, add B.
[2] *Ricardo*] om. A.
[3] *regi Francorum*, add C.D.
[4] *Unde*] om. B.
[5] *tamen*, A.B.
[6] *sibi*] om. A.
[7] *magno*, B.
[8] *Tirum*, A.
[9] *juvenis*] om. B.
[10] *Christianorum*, ins. A.B.; *quæ regem Francorum Philippum et regem Angliæ Ricardum secuta fuerat*, add C.D.
[11] A.B.C.D. omit heading.

Adrianus deeþ, þat hym hadde crowned, þis was grevous[1] to pope Alisaundre, ffor in prejudice of hym he helde with foure[2] false popes everiche[3] after oþer. Also for þe pope was flowe[4] to þe kyng of Fraunce, he fauȝte aȝenst þe kyng of Fraunce wiþ a grete strengþe of Bemeners[5] and of Danes, but he was i-put[6] of by help of Richard kyng of Engelond. When[7] þe ȝere of oure Lord enlevene hondred and sexty and two[8] he com to Melan, þat was hiȝest i-walled of eny toun, and destroyed[9] it streiȝt[10] to þe grounde. At þe laste, after þat þis hadde i-doo þe pope meny grete[11] greves, þe rebelnesse he dradde[12] of þe Lombardes,[13] and prayeden[14] forȝifnes of þe pope, and took þe cros on[15] his flesch to þe Holy Lond, as it were in amendement of his synne; and he was i-drenched[16] þere in[17] a litel ryver besides Armenye, and i-buried at Tirus; and his sone, a noble ȝongelynge, deide at þe sege of Ptholomayda, þat is Acon, and nyh al þe nobilte[18] of Cristen men deide þat tyme. After

Trevisa.

---

mony wicked dedes after the dethe of Alexander þe pope, whiche hade crownede hym or Adrian in drawenge to iiij. men electe into the pope ageyne the lawe of God, and trowblede soore the kynge of Fraunce, to whom the pope fledde for socoure. Neverthelesse he was expulsede from Fraunce by helpe of Richarde kynge of Ynglonde, but afore his departynge he destroyede utterly þe walles of the cite Mediolan, in the yere of oure Lorde God a M.c. lxij. This emperoure, after grete tribulacion and iniury doen to þe pope, and dredynge the rebellion of Lumbardes, askede forȝifnesse of þe pope, and soe he was merkede there with the signe of the crosse that he myȝhte goe to the Holy Londe, where he was drownede soone after in a lytelle water nye to Armeny, and was beryede at the cite callede Tirus. And a noble yonge man his sonne diede at the sege of the cite of Acon, and allemoste alle the nobilite of Cristen peple. Anastasius the thridde succedid

MS. Harl. 2261.

f. 358 b.

---

[1] *a grevous enemy*, β., γ., and Cx.
[2] *huld wyþ vour*, γ.
[3] *eche*, Cx.
[4] *aflowe*, β.; *fledde*, Cx.
[5] *Boemes*, β. and Cx.
[6] *y-pot*, γ.
[7] *þanne*, β.; *Than*, Cx.
[8] *tweyne*, Cx.
[9] *destruyed*, β.
[10] *downe*, Cx.
[11] *grete*] om. Cx.
[12] Transposed in α., β., γ., and Cx.
[13] *Lumbardus*, γ.
[14] *prayd*, Cx.
[15] *in*, Cx.
[16] *adreynt*, β.
[17] *drowned in*, Cx.
[18] *noblete*, β.; *nobelte*, γ.

Eugenium sedit papa quasi annis duobus, quo quidem anno obiit sanctus Bernardus abbas Clarevallensis, qui [1] Burgundia castro Fontanis oriundus, filius strenui militis, materno primum lacte, deinde cibis grossioribus enutritus fuerat. Tandem sub anno gratiæ M°.c°. xii°., a constitutione ordinis Cisterciensis xv°, ætatis suæ xxiio., cum xxx^a^ sociis Cistercium ingreditur; post quintum conversionis suæ annum abbas Clarevallensis destinatur; ubi supra humanam consuetudinem vigilans, nullum tempus se dixit magis perdere quam quando dormivit; somnum morti comparans, stertentes et incomposite dormientes vix tolerabat. Ad cibum tanquam ad tormentum accessit, propter magnam abstinentiam magna ex parte ciborum discretionem amiserat,[2] ita quidem ut oleum pro vino, sanguinem pro butyro aliquando [3] sumeret, dixitque solam aquam sibi sapere, eo quod fauces suas [4] refrigerabat. Quicquid de scripturis didicerat maxime in silvis et in agris meditando et orando

---

[1] *in*, add A.B.
[2] *amisit*, B.
[3] *aliquando* before *oleum*, B.
[4] *ejus*, A.

Eugenius, Anastasius was pope as it were two ȝere; þat ȝere deide seint Bernard, abbot of Clerevaus,[1] þat was i-bore in Burgoyne in þe castel of Fonteyns; he was a noble kny ȝtes sone, and was first i-fed[2] wiþ his owne moder melk,[3] and afterward i-norsched wiþ gretter metes. Þan the ȝere of oure Lord enlevene hondred and twelve; after þe bygynnynge of þe ordre of Cisterciensis, þat is þe ordre of white monkes, fiftene; of his owne age two and twenty, he entred into Cisterci wiþ þritty felawes; and after þe fifte ȝere of his conversacioun he was[4] abbot of Clervaus; þere he usede wakynge passynge þe usage of mankynde,[5] he saide þat he lost no tyme more þan whan he sleepe, and he likned deeþ to sleep; [unneþe he[6] myȝte suffre hem þat rowtede and ferde[7] foule[8] in here[9] sleep; he wente to mete as hit were to torment. For greet abstenaunce þat he usede he hadde lost his taast[10] and savoure of mete and of drinke, so þat he wolde take oyle in stede of wyn and blood in stede of buttre.[11] He wolde seie[12] þat he[13] savered water, for hit kelede his mouþ and his jowes. Al þat he lernede[14] of scripture he drank hit in wodes and in fyldes[15] in his meditatiouns and bedes. He knowlechede none oþer

TREVISA.

Eugenius the pope ij. yere. In whiche yere seynte Bernarde diede, abbot Clarevall, whiche entrede the ordre Cisterciense with xxx. felawes in the xxij^{ti} yere of his age, and was made abbot Clarevall after the v^{the} yere of his conversion. Where he wakede as excedynge þe nature of man, seyenge that he loste noo tyme but when he slepede, assimblenge slepe to dethe; whiche wente also to his meite as to tormente, insomoche that he hade loste discrecion of meytes for his huge abstinence, takynge and drynkynge oyle ofte tymes for wyne, seyenge þat þer was noo licoure that savoured his mowthe or that he myȝhte discerne in that hit made his chekes colde. And that connynge that he hade he gate hit by meditacions and preiers in woodes and feldes, seyenge ofte that he hade noo

MS. HARL. 2261.

---

[1] *Clervaulx*, Cx.
[2] *vurste yved*, γ.
[3] *moders mylk*, Cx.
[4] *was ordeyned*, β. and Cx.
[5] *mankuynde*, γ.
[6] *unnethe that he*, Cx.
[7] *aferde*, Cx.
[8] *furde voule*, γ.
[9] *his*, Cx.
[10] *taste*, Cx.
[11] *boter*, β.; *botter*, Cx.
[12] *sygge þat hym saverede*, γ.
[13] *him*, Cx.
[14] *lurnde*, γ.
[15] *veldes*, γ.; *feldes*, Cx.

hauserat, nec alios se habuisse[1] magistros quam quercus et fagos fatebatur. In vestibus ejus paupertas, sed absque sordibus fuit. Aiebat enim vestes fore animi indices, aut negligentis aut inaniter gloriantis. Proverbium illud frequenter ore, sed corde semper tenebat: "Qui facit quod nemo mirantur omnes." Noviciis religionem intrare volentibus dicere consueverat,[2] "Si ad "ea quæ intus sunt festinatis, hic foris dimittete corpora "quæ[3] sæculo attulistis,[4] soli spiritus ingrediantur, "caro autem non prodest quicquam." Quandocumque ad episcopandum[5] invitabatur, respondere solebat[6] se suum non esse, sed aliorum servitio deputatum. Semper inveniebatur aut orans, aut legens, aut scribens, aut meditans, aut fratres suos verbo ædificans. Tandem sub[7] anno gratiæ M°.C°.LIII^tio[8] morti appropinquans,[9] tria fratribus suis[10] observanda reliquit, quæ[11] et ipse pro modulo suo in vita sua observasse asseruit, dicens, "Neminem scandalizare volui, sed et si scandalum sur-

---

[1] *habere*, A.
[2] *consuevit*, B.
[3] *de*, A.; *a*, B.
[4] *attulistis*] om. A.
[5] *episcopatum*, C.D.
[6] *solebat*] om. B.
[7] *sub*] om. B.
[8] *liiij^to*, A.
[9] *propinquans*, A.
[10] *suis*] om. B.
[11] *quæque*, A.

maystres[1] but okes and beches. In his clopynge was povêrte wipouten eny filpe.[2] He seide þat clopinge is juge and witnes of hert and þou3t, of negligence oþer of pryde and veynglorie; þat proverbe is ofte had[3] in his mouþ and alwey in his herte, "Alle men wondreþ of hym þat doþ as noon "oþer dooþ." To þe novis[4] þat schulde come to religioun he wolde seie, "3if 3e bene[5] hieþ[6] to þat þat is wiþ ynne, "leveþ[7] here wiþ oute þe bodyes þat 3e brou3te of þe world,[8] "þe spirites schal entre,[9] flesche doþ no profy3t." As ofte as me prayede hym to be bisshop he seide þat he was not his owne man,[10] but þat he was y-ordeyned to þe service of oþere men.][11] Alway he was i-wont[12] oþer biddynge, oþer redynge, oþer writynge, oþer in meditaciouns, oþer prechynge and techynge his breþeren. [Þe 3ere of oure Lord enleven hondred and two[13] and fifty, whan his deþ nei3hede, he bitook his breþeren][11] þre poyntes to kepe, and seide þat he hadde kepte hem in þis[14] wise al his lyf tyme, and seide,[15] "I wolde no man sclaundre, TREVISA.

---

techer but okes and beche tres. The seide holy man hade poore clothes, but thei were clene, seyenge that the clothynge of man did represente his lyfe, usynge to say ofte this proverbe: "A man that doethe a thynge whiche noon other man usethe, "causethe alle men to mervayle." Seynte Bernarde was wonte to say to novices willynge to entre into that religion in this wise: "If ye intende to kepe the observaunce of the "religion, leve youre bodies here whom ye have brou3hte from "the worlde, and lete the sawles entre into religion as ac-"cordynge to theym, for the body profitethe not." This holy[16] was founde at alle tymes other preyenge, redynge, wrytynge, in meditacion, other in techynge his brether. At the laste he knowynge in spiritte dethe to drawe nere, in the yere of oure Lorde God a M.c. and liiiti, callynge his breþer to hym, monyschede theyme to kepe iij. thynges, whom he seide to have kepede in alle his life after his powere. "I wyllede not in my MS. HARL. 2261.

---

[1] *þat he had*, add. β.
[2] *vylþe*, γ.
[3] *he hade oft*, Cx.
[4] *novyce*, Cx.
[5] *bene*] om. β.
[6] *Ef 3e hy3eþ*, γ.; *Yf ye hye*, Cx.
[7] *leveth*, Cx.
[8] *worl*, γ.
[9] *intre*, γ.
[10] *man*] om. Cx.
[11] From α., β., γ., and Cx.
[12] *was founde*, Cx.
[13] *thre*, Cx.
[14] *þis*] his, β.; hys, γ.
[15] *saide*, α.
[16] Sic in MS.

" rexit, sedavi ut potui. Minus sensui[1] meo quam " alieno judicio credidi. Læsus de lædente vindictam " non repetii."[2] Bernardus igitur multorum tractatuum[3] potissime in[4] his quæ de Incarnatione Christi sunt egregius conscriptor, multorumque miraculorum patrator [centum sexaginta monasteriorum constructor, obdormivit in Domino].[5] Hoc quoque anno obiit Ranulphus[6] secundus cognomento de Gervous,[7] quartus post conquestum Angliæ comes Cestrensis;[8] cui successit filius suus Hugo II[us] qui præfuit in ducatu illo viginti novem annis, et multa strenue egit. Hoc etiam anno obiit rex Stephanus. Apud monasterium de Faveresham in Cantia,[9] quod ipse a fundamentis construxerat,[10] sepultus est.[11] *Ranulphus.*[12] In[13] diebus istius Stephani miles quidam[14] Owenus nomine intravit purgatorium Patricii secundi, abbatis non episcopi. Qui rediens mansit in negotiis Ludensis monasterii ordinis Cisterciensis in Hibernia, et narravit gaudia et pœnas

---

[1] *sensui*, from A.B.; *censui*, MS.
[2] *expetii*, B.C.
[3] *tractum*, A.; *tractatuum*, from B. *tractuum*, MS.
[4] *de*, A.
[5] From C.D.
[6] *Arnulphus*, A.
[7] *Geruous*, B.
[8] *Cestriæ*, B.
[9] *juxta Cantuariam*, C.D.
[10] *exstruxerat ibique*, B.
[11] *est*] om. A.
[12] *Ranulphus*] om. B.
[13] *In . . . Hiberniæ*] om. C.D.
[14] *miles quidam*] om. A.

" but ȝif eny sclaundre were i-rise[1] I cessed hit what I myȝte ; " I trowede myn owne wit lasse þan oþer men doop[2] ; ȝif I[3] " were i-greved I asked no wreche of hym þat hadde i-greved " me." Bernard wroot meny nobil bookes, and specialliche of þe Incarnacioun of Crist, and dede[4] meny miracles,[5] and bulde[6] sixty[7] abbayes, and passed out of þis world[8] to oure Lord of hevene. Also þat ȝere deide þe secounde Ranulph, þat heet Gervous[9] by his surname, he was þe fourþe[10] eorle of Chestre after þe conquest: his sone þe secounde Hughe was lord after hym in þat ducherie nyne and twenty ȝere, and dede meny grete dedes. Also þat ȝere deide kyng Stephene[11] in Kent, in þe abbay of Feveresham,[12] þat he hadde i-bulde[13] out of[14] þe grounde. In þis Stephene his tyme a knyȝt þat hiȝte Oweyn[15] wente into purgatorie of þe secounde Patrik, abbot and nouȝt bisshop. He come aȝen and dwelled in þe nedes[16] of þe abbay[17] Ludens[18] of white monkes in Irlond, and tolde of joye and of

Trevisa.

" lyfe to sclawnder eny man, and if y hade knowlege of eny " sclawnder y did sease hit to my powere. Also y toke lesse " credence to myne awne wytte then to the reason of an other " man ; also y askede never vengeaunce on a man that hurte " and trowblede me." And so this blissede seynte Bernarde, noble wryter, specially of those thynges whiche towche the incarnacion of Criste, the doer also of mony miracles, and the edifyer of a c. and lx. monasterys, diede in Criste. Ranulphus, the iiij[the] erle of Chestre after the Conqueste, dyed in this yere, whom Hew the secunde, and sonne to hym, did succede xxix. yere, which did mony noble thynges in his lyfe. Also kynge Steven diede in the same yere at the monastery of Faverisham in Kente, whiche monastery he edifiede and founded, and was beryede þer. In the tyme of this kynge a knyȝhte, Owen by name, entrede into the purgatory of seynte Patrikk abbot, whiche returnede from that purgatory taryede after in the

MS. Harl. 2261. f. 358 b

[1] *aryse*, Cx.
[2] *other mennes dome*, Cx.
[3] *ich*, β.
[4] *dude*, γ.
[5] *myraclis*, β.
[6] *buylded*, Cx.
[7] *þrescore*, β.
[8] *worl*, γ.
[9] *Gernons*, α. ; *hight Gercious*, Cx.
[10] *vurde*, γ.
[11] *Steven*, Cx.
[12] *Faversham*, β.
[13] *he buylded*, Cx. ; *up*, add. β.
[14] *y-buld op of*, γ.
[15] *Owen*, Cx.
[16] *nede*, γ.
[17] *of*, add. β.
[18] *Ludene*, Cx.

quæ[1] viderat, sicut habetur supra, libro primo, capitulo xxx° quarto,[2] De prodigiis Hiberniæ.[3]

Cap. XXI.

De Regibus Angliæ.

Gratiæ MCLV. Henrici II. primo.

Mortuo Stephano rege[4] successit Henricus secundus, filius imperatricis, nepos Henrici primi, ex filia imperatrice et Galfrido Plantagenet comite Andegaviæ progenitus. Cujus mores et actus, virtutes et vitia, Giraldus Cambrensis in suis distinctionibus describit, sic inquiens: " Meticulosa plane res est in illum allegare qui potest " relegare, illum multis verbis describere qui uno verbo " potest proscribere. Gratiosum[5] quippe foret, et vires " nostras prorsus excedens, veritatem in singulis non sup- " primere, et in nullo principis animum exacerbare. Erat " nempe[6] hic Henricus vir subrufus, amplo capite et " pectore, oculis glaucis, voce quassa, corpore carnoso, cibo " tamen et potu parcus, et ut pinguedinem reprimeret

---

[1] *quas*, A.

[2] *quinto*, B.

[3] B. adds: " Tempore istius " regis Stephani circa annum gra- " tiæ millesimo centesimo quadra- " gesimo sexto fundatum erat apud " Newhous primum monasterium " ordinis Præmonstratensium in " Anglia, qui nuper tempore Hen- " rici regis primi in Landavensi " diocæsi exordium sumpsit sub " patre Norberto qui fuit Coloni- " ensis. *Versus. Sub patre Nor-* " *berto Præmonstrate viget ordo.* " Hoc anno puer quidam Willel- " mus nomine apud Norwicum a " Judæis crucifigitur."

[4] *rege*] om. A.

[5] *Gracianum*, A.

[6] *namque*, B.

peynes þat he hadde i-seie, as it is i-seide to forehonde[1] in þe firste book,[2] capitulo 34° of þe wondres of Irlond. TREVISA.

Capitulum vicesimum primum.

WHEN[3] Steven was dede þe secounde Henry was kyng. Þis Henry was þe [firste][4] Henries nevew, þe eldest sone of his douȝter þe emperesse and of Gelfray Plantagenet, erle of Angoye.[5] His maneres and his dedes, his vertues and his vices, Girald Cambrencis in his distinccioums diseryveþ, and saiþ in þis manere. Dredeful it is to allegge aȝenst hym þat may [put out of lond, and to discreve hym wiþ meny wordes þat may][6] excile a man wiþ oo[7] word. Hit[8] were a gracious þing and passinge oure wit and oure[9] strengþe to telle out þe soþe in alle his dedes and offende þe princes herte in no manere poynt. Þis Henry was somdel[10] redisshe, wiþ a large face and brest[11] and ȝelow eyȝen and a dym voys, and fleschely[12] of body, and took boþe[13] scarsliche of mete and [of][6] drinke;

---

monastery Ludense of the ordre Cisterciense in Yrlonde, rehersynge ioyes and peynes that he see. MS. HARL. 2261.

Capitulum vicesimum primum.

KYNGE Steven ded, Henricus the secunde, sonne of the empresse and of Galfride Plantagenet, erle of Gascoigne, succedid. The maners, actes, vertues, and vices of whom Giralde off Wales describethe in his distincions, seyenge: "Hit is a drede-" fulle thynge to allegate ageyne hym that may putte to exile, " and to describe hym in mony wordes that may condempne a " man with oon worde." But hit were a gracious thynge, and as excedynge my discrecion to wryte the trawthe of this prince in alle his condicions, and not to displease somme parties. This Henry kynge of Ynglonde was a corpulente man, large in hedde and breste, with yelowe eien, and with a grete voice; lytelle in meite and drynke to represse his fattenesse, vexenge

---

[1] *sayd byfore*, Cx.
[2] *book*] om. Cx.
[3] *Thanne*, Cx.
[4] From α., β., and Cx.; *vurste*, γ.
[5] *Anjoye*, β.; *Ageo*, γ.; *Angeo*, Cx.
[6] From α., β. and Cx.
[7] *a*, Cx.
[8] *That*, Cx.
[9] *ur wyt and ur*, γ.
[10] *somwhat*, Cx.
[11] *bryst*, α.; *fas and brust*, γ.
[12] *fleschy*, β.
[13] *but*, Cx.

" corpus suum vexatione, venatione, statione, deambu-
" latione vexabat; statura mediocris; eloquens et litte-
" ratus. In armata militia strenuus, in togata [1] providus;
" in bellis ambigua fata [2] formidans, humanior semper
" militi extincto quam superstiti, plus mortuos lugens
" quam vivos amans. Urgentibus incommodis nemo
" benignior, resumpta securitate nemo rigidior; acer in
" indomitos, clemens interdum in subactos; durus in
" domesticos, profusus in extraneos; largus in publico,
" parcus in privato. Quem semel exosum aut dilectum
" haberet, vix ad [4] contrarium flecteretur; verbi spon-
" taneus transgressor; morosus ad cuncta [4] responsor;
" quietis amator, sed nobilitatis oppressor; justitiæ ven-
" ditor et dilator, fidei transgressor, verbo varius et
" versutus. Adulter publicus, ecclesiæ malleus, Deo
" semper ingratus, discordiam inter filios summopere
" fovebat,[5] solum sibi ex eorum discidio pacem sperans
" provenire. Si tamen excursuum suorum metæ que-

---

[1] *togata*] rogata, A.; om. C.D.
[2] *facta*, C.D.
[3] *in*, A.
[4] *cautus*, C.D.
[5] *movebat*, B.

and forto allegge[1] fatnesse he travailled his body wiþ besynesse of[2] hontynge, wiþ stondynge and[3] wandrynge. He was of mene stature, resonabel[4] of speche, and wel i-lettred, nobel and orped in kny3thode, and wise in counsaille and in bataille, and dradde douteful destonye; more manliche and curteys to kny3tes[5] when[6] þey were dede þan whiles þey were[7] onlyve. [He schewede more sorwe for men when þey were dede þan love while þey were of lyve.][8] No man was more goodliche þan he in mescheef, and whan he hadde nede of sturnes[9] no man was more sterne þan he. [He][8] was cruel[10] to hem þat was nou3t i-chasted, and somtyme mylde to his sugettes; hard to his famulers,[11] and freherted to straungers; large of 3iftes outward, and scars in privete;[12] whom he hated oþer loved ones, unneþe he wolde torne to þe contrarie; he wolde wilfulliche passe his owne word; slow in all manere answere, and loved wel pees and quyet; he bare doun gentil men, and solde and taried ri3twisnesse; unstedefast of fay,[13] chaungeable[14] and gileful of word; open spousebrekere, þe harmere[15] of holy cherche, alway unkynde[16] to God; he norsched[17] strif amonges his sones wiþ al besynesse, and hopede to have pees hym self, have love[18] by stryf of his children. 3if he[19] axede

TREVISA.

---

his body with huntynge, walkynge, and stondenge; of a meane stature, eloquente and litterate. This kynge dredde also fortune in batells, more manly ageyne a dedde kny3hte then ageyne a man beynge in lyfe; sorowenge dedde men and luffynge lytelle men in lyfe; and if he luffede a man or did hate hym, he scholde not be movede ly3htely to the contrary. This kynge was also a voluntary trangressor of his worde and promyse; luffer of ease and reste; the oppressor of nobilite, the seller of ry3hteuousnes, a open advouterer, unkynde alle tymes to God; luffynge discorde betwene his childer, supposynge þerby to

MS. HARL. 2261.

f. 359 a.

---

[1] *alledge*, Cx.
[2] *of*] wiþ, β.; with, Cx.
[3] *wiþ*, α.
[4] *renable*, β. and Cx.; *renabel*, γ.
[5] *kny3t*, α. and Cx.
[6] *when*] om. α.
[7] *while he was*, α. and Cx.
[8] From α., β., γ., and Cx.
[9] *whanne he had efte surte no man*, β.; *whanne a hadde efte surte*, γ.; *and whan he hadde efte suerte noo man*, Cx.
[10] *cruwel*, β.
[11] *famylers*, α.
[12] *privyte*, β.
[13] *feiþ*, β.; *feyth*, Cx.
[14] *changehabel*, γ.
[15] *hamer*, β.
[16] *unkuynde*, γ.
[17] *norsede*, γ.
[18] *have love*] aloon, β.; alone, γ. and Cx.
[19] *me*, β.; *men*, Cx.

" rantur, prius deerit orbis quam aderit finis; animoso
" quippe pectori [1] cessare poterunt terræ, cessare nesciunt
" victoriæ, nec deerunt triumphi sed materia trium-
" phandi. In utraque militia, Martis scilicet et Mi-
" nervæ, singulariter effulsit; terras quippe hereditareas
" potenter pacificavit, Hiberniam potenti classe subjuga-
" vit, Scotiæ regnum capto rege Willelmo [2] suo regno
" adjiciens; ab [3] australi oceano usque ad boreales Or-
" cadum insulas quasi sub [4] una [5] monarchia terras con-
" cludens, imperium suum egregie dilatavit. Quod [6]
" quidem post tempora Julii Cæsaris nulli legitur con-
" tigisse. In transmarinis partibus præter Normanniam,
" Aquitanniam, Andegaviam, Cenomanniam, quæ eum
" paternali [7] jure contigerant, Pictaviam quoque et Gas-
" coniam [8] usque ad Pireneos Hispaniæ montes, quæ ei
" matrimonialiter obvenerant, Alverniam cum quibus-
" dam aliis terris suo dominatui subegit: solebat quoque
" inter confabulandum dicere totum mundum uni potenti
" viro satis parum esse. Reges Hispaniæ ad sedandas [9]
" discordias suas in hunc regem compromiserunt. Et
" quamvis in nonnullis ejus successibus cuncta quietis
" obstacula felicis ominis auspicio quasi exquisito [10]
" fortunæ favore ad vota fuerant summota,[11] nonnulla
" tamen quasi fato infausto sibi contigerunt, ad ejus

---

[1] *pecc'oi*, B.
[2] *præter solitum*, C.D.
[3] *sub*, B.
[4] *sub*] om. B.
[5] *una*] om. A.
[6] *Quod*] om. B.
[7] *patrimoniali*, C.D.
[8] *Vasconiam*, C.D.
[9] *sedandum*, A.
[10] *ex quæsito*, A.
[11] *submota*, B.; *semota*, C.D.

of alle his grete dedes, þe world schulde raþer faille þan [1] we schulde make an ende; londes may cese [to a bolde herte, but victoryes conneþ [2] nouȝt cese]; [3] triumphis and praysing schal not faille, but þe matir of wynnynge of worschippe may faille. He was peerles and passynge in chyvalrie, in werre, and in leccherie; he pesede myȝtiliche þe londes of his heritage, and wan Irlond myȝtily with [4] strengþe. He took William kyng of Scotlonde, and joynede [5] þe kyngdom of Scotlond to his owne. From þe souþ occean to þe norþ Irlond [6] of Orcades he closede all þe londes as it were under a [7] principate, and sprad so nobilliche his empere, and made it ful wide. After Julius Cesar me redeþ of no man þat so happede. Byȝonde þe see, wiþoute Normandie, Gyan, Angoye, [8] and Cenomannia [9] þat fel [10] to hym by riȝt of his fader, and also Peytow and Gascoyne anon to þe mountes Pirenees, þe hilles of Spayne, þat fel to hym by mariage, he made suget to his lordschippe Alverne and oþer londes. He used to say [11] þat all þe world is litel [12] inow [13] for oon man þat is strong and myȝty. Þe kynges of Spayne forto cese stryf putte her querel uppon þe [14] kynges dome. Meny of his dedes þat were al aȝen þe pees he brouȝt to ende at his owne wille, as it were by warnynge of gracious eure [15] and by a chose [16] wirker [17] of fortune. But meny þinges passed [18] hym as it were ungracious [19] to his owne

Trevisa.

---

have reste. Neverthelesse he flourede moche in chevallery of Mart and of Minerva singulerly, for he stablede in pease his londes longynge to hym by inheritaunce, subduynge Irlonde to hym, the realme of Scottelonde also, and toke William kynge of hit, concludynge his empire from the sowthe occean unto the northe yles of Orcades as under oon monarchye, whiche thynge was not seen from Iulius Cesar unto that tyme; also he subduede to hym in the partes behynde see Pictavia, Gascoigne, unto the hilles Pirene of Speyne and Alvernia, with other londes also by reason of his mariage. This kynge was wonte

MS. Harl. 2261.

---

[1] *þat*, .
[2] *kunneþ*, β.; *cunneþ*, γ.; *can*, Cx.
[3] From α., γ., and Cx.
[4] *by*, Cx.
[5] *innede*, γ.
[6] *ilondes*, β.; *ylondes*, γ.; *Ilandes*, Cx.
[7] *oon*, β.; *one*, Cx.
[8] *Angeo*, Cx.
[9] *Chynon in Toureyne*, Cx.
[10] *vul*, γ.
[11] *forto sygge*, γ.
[12] *lyte*, γ.
[13] *ynowȝ*, β.
[14] *þe*] *þis*, β.
[15] *cur*, β. and γ.
[16] *chosen*, β. and Cx.
[17] *worcher*, β.
[18] *happyd*, Cx.
[19] *ungraciousliche*, β.; *ungraciously*, Cx.

" quidem humiliationem si tamen pœnitens fieret; sin
" autem obstinatus, carne propria carnifex cruciaretur.
" In primis nempe Alienoram Francorum reginam
" domino suo Lodowyco indebite subtraxit, sibique de
" facto,[1] cum de jure non posset, copulavit; de qua
" pater suus Galfridus[2] eum prohibuerat ne eam tan-
" geret, pro eo quod dum senescallus regis Francorum
" fuerat eam cognovisset. Ex ea tamen Henricus iste
" tres filias et sex[3] inclitos filios suscitavit: quarum
" primam Matildam duci Saxoniæ, secundam Alieno-
" ram[4] regi Hispaniæ, tertiam Johannam Willelmo,
" regi Siciliæ, copulavit; duobus quoque filiis suis præ-
" mature sublatis, in reliquis quatuor usque ad mortem
" meruit perturbari." At cum xxv. annis pæne regna-
verat, sex lustra data sunt[5] ad mundanam gloriam, ad
conversionis tolerantiam, ad devotionis experientiam;
septimum vero lustrum tanquam reprobo et ingrato

---

[1] *sibique defuncto illo*, A.
[2] *Andegavensis ne eam tangeret omnino*, C.D.
[3] *vij.*, B.
[4] *Helienoram*, A.
[5] *ei*, B.

mekenesse, ȝif he wolde be repentaunt,[1] and elles for[2] he schulde be torment in his owne flesche, þe cruel bocher.[3] First he took wrongfulliche Eleanore þe queene from here[4] lord Lowys, kyng of Fraunce [and wedded here in dede þouȝ he myȝte nouȝt by þe lawe, and his owne fader Geffray forbede[5] hym, and saide þat he schulde nouȝt touche here, for he had y-lay by here hym self whiles he was þe kynges styward of Fraunce.][6] Noþeles þis Henry gat on here þre douȝtres and sexe nobel sones. Þe firste douȝter Molde he maried to þe duke of Saxon, þe secounde Elianore to þe kyng of Spayne, and þe þridde John[7] to William kyng of Secile.[8] Alle his[9] sones were hasteliche i-take from hym, and he was worþeliche destourbed and greved by þe oþer foure to his lyfes ende. He regnede nyh fyve and þritty ȝere, and so he hadde þritty ȝere y-ȝeven hym to worldliche blisse and likynge, to suffraunce of conversioun,[10] and to assay of devocioun; and þe ȝere þat were[11] over þe þritty ȝere [were][12] i-ȝeve hym too greef and to wreche as to an evel man and an[13] unkynde. For

TREVISA.

---

to say that alle the worlde were unnethe sufficiant to oon myȝty prince. In the firste he toke awey, ageyne the lawe of God, Elianor wife to Lodowicus kynge of Fraunce, and toke her to his wife ageyne the lawe, of whiche thynge he was prohibit by hys fader, in that he synnede with her when he was stuarde in the kynges courte of Fraunce. Neverthelesse this Henricus gate of her vj. noble sonnes, and iij. doȝhters, Matilda the eldeste, whom he maryede to the duke of Saxony; Alienore, the secunde doȝhter, to the kynge of Speyne; and he maryede also Iohan, the thrydde doȝhter, to the kynge of Sicille. And ij. of his sonnes dedde in theire yowthe, he was trowblede moche with the oþer iiij. sonnes unto the tyme of his dethe. Thritty yere of vj. lustres were ȝiffen to this kynge unto worldely glory, to the tolleraunce of conversion, to the experience of devocion. And other v. yere was ȝiffen to hym by Godde to vengeaunce for his unkyndenesse and wickede lyfe.

MS. HARL. 2261.

---

[1] *repentauȝt*, α.
[2] *ellus vor*, γ.
[3] *cruwel bochour*, β.; *cruwel bocheur*, γ.
[4] *vram hure*, γ.
[5] *forbad*, Cx.
[6] From α. and Cx.
[7] *Johan*, β. and Cx.
[8] *Scicil*, Cx.
[9] *Also two*, α.; *Also his twey*, Cx.
[10] *conversacion*, Cx.
[11] *weren*, α.
[12] From α., β., γ., and Cx.
[13] *an*] om. β.

inflictum est ad vindictam. Secundo namque septimi lustri anno evanuit conatus ejus quem circa Johannis filii sui in Hiberniam missionem paravit. Tertio anno qui nunquam prius quicquam amiserat jam Alverniam[1] contra regem Franciæ perdidit, quarto anno Biturícam, quinto[2] urbes Cenomanniam et Turonensem[3] cum castellis multis et seipsum. Consueverat quoque rex iste religiosos episcopos ad colloquia sua etiam in transmarinis partibus et in martiis negotiis secum circumducere, et eorum magis quam militum consiliis uti. Quod et fecit duplici de causa. Primo ut curia sua[4] adventantibus legatis venerabilior appareret. Secundo quia prius semper[5] temptabat pacem quam arma; idcirco[6] cum adjectione pecuniæ[7] suos fecit mediatores. Verum quia ecclesiasticas dignitates aliquando indignis contulerat, ut famam suam quodammodo redimeret, Baldwynum Cicestrensem,[8] Cisterciensis ordinis monachum, ad Cantuariensem sedem, et Hugonem Cartusiensis ordinis priorem ad sedem Lincolniæ promovit. Hos duos quasi semper ad consilia[9] adhibuit. Ut autem

---

[1] *Alverniam*, A.; om. B.
[2] *anno*, add. B.
[3] *Turonem*, A.
[4] *ad curiam sudm*, A.
[5] *semper*] om. A.
[6] *tales*, add. C.D.
[7] *pecuniæ*] om. A.
[8] *Cicestrensem*] om. A.B.
[9] *secum*, add C.D.

in þe secounde ȝere his [1] fyve ȝere his strengþe passed away [2] and [3] he hadde i-ordeyned aboute þe sendynge of his sone John into Irlond, and þe þridde he þat lefte [4] nevere þing lost Alverne aȝenst þe kyng of Fraunce; þe fourþe ȝere he loste Bythuricam, þe fifte ȝere he loste [5] Cenomannia [6] and Turon and many castelles þerto, and hym self [also].[7] This kyng usede to have in his speche of tretys religious bisshoppes, and lad hem wiþ hem byȝonde [8] þe see in dedes of armes, and dede [9] more by counsail of hem þan by counsail of knyȝtes. And þat he dede for two skilles, ferst for his court schulde seme þe more real [10] and nobil to messangeres [11] and legates þat come þerto; þe secounde skille for alway he assayed raþer þes þan wepen and armure, þerfore he made suche medyatoures with puttynge too of money. Also for he hadde somtyme y-ȝeve [12] dignitees of holy cherche to unworþy persones, forto wynne his fame aȝe he made Baldewyn þe whiȝte monk archbisshop of Caunterbury, and Hugh,[13] prioure of þe Charthouse,[14] bisshop of Lyncoln. He hadde þese tweyne as hit were alway to counsail. For every man þat redeþ in book

Trevisa.

For in the xxxiij. yere of his reigne he loste Alvernia ageyne the kynge of Fraunce, whiche losede never grownde afore; and in the xxxiiij^ti yere he loste Bithurica, and in the nexte yere foloynge the cites Cenomanny and Turonense with mony other castells, and hym selfe also. This kynge usede to have religious men moche of his cownsaille, and to use the cownsaile of theyme raþer then of oþer noble and discrete knyȝhtes, havynge theym in his cowrte that he myȝhte be more commendede of legates sende to hym from the pope or from other grete princes and estates. And also for an other cause, that he myȝhte redeme and recure his fame whiche he hade loste in that he hade ȝiffen dignites of the churche to unworthy persons; whiche promotede Baldewyne, prior of the ordre Cisterciense, unto the seete off Lincoln. And that the reder of this processe

MS. Harl. 2261.

f. 359. b.

---

[1] *of þis, α.*; *of these,* Cx.
[2] *and*] þat, *β.*
[3] *strengþe vansede away þat, γ.*; *the strength vanysshed aweye that,* Cx.
[4] *loste, α.*; *lost, β.* and Cx.
[5] *þe citees,* add. *β.*
[6] *Cenomanniaca, α.*
[7] From *α., β., γ.,* and Cx.
[8] *byȝunde, γ.*
[9] *dude, γ.*
[10] *rial, β.*
[11] *messagers,* Cx.
[12] *yeven,* Cx.
[13] *Huwe, β.* and *γ.*
[14] *Chartherous,* Cx.

lector quisquam tam regis hujus quam filiorum suorum infaustos exitus minus obstupeat, consideretur origo regis hujus ex parte utriusque parentis, necnon et uxoris suæ conditio de qua filios[1] suscitavit. Comitissa quædam Andegaviæ, de cujus sobole Galfridus Plantagenet[2] processit, ob solam corporis speciem fuerat desponsata, raro tamen ad ecclesiam accessit, sed et tunc vix usque ad secreta missæ moram faciebat; hoc dum a comite marito suo notaretur, die quadam detenta est in ecclesia a quatuor militibus. At illa rejecto pallio per quod tenebatur, relictisque ibidem duobus filiis suis, quos sub dextro angulo pallii tunc fovebat, cum reliquis duobus filiis, quos ad sinistram[3] tenebat, per fenestram ecclesiæ cunctis intuentibus evolavit, nec usquam[4] comparuit. Istud postmodum Ricardus rex Angliæ referre solebat, asserens non esse mirandum si de tali genere[5] procedentes mutuo sese infestent,[6] tanquam de diabolo

---

[1] *genuit filios*, A.
[2] *pater regis hujus*, add. C.D.
[3] *sub sinistra sua*, B.
[4] *unquam*, B
[5] *progenie*, C.D.
[6] *infestant*, B

schulde have þe lesse wonder of þe ungracious issue[1] and ende of þis kyng and of his sones, we[2] schal take hede of þis kynges bygynnynge, and wherof he come boþe on[3] fader syde and moder side. Also of þe condicioun of his wyf,[4] on whom he gate his sones. Geffray Plantegenet come of þe children of a cuntesse[5] of Anioye[6] þat was y-spoused onliche for fayrnesse of body. Sche wolde selden[7] come at cherche, and þan unneþ sche[8] wolde abyde þe secretes of þe messe. Þe erle hir housbonde toke hir,[9] and was war of þat doynge, and ordeynede foure kny3tes to holde here in cherche, and sche[8] þrewe awey here mantel þat sche[10] was y-holde[11] by, and lefte þere here two sones under here ry3t side of hir mantel, and wiþ here oþer two sones þat sche hadde under þe left[12] side of here mantel sche flau3[13] out at the wyndowe of þe[14] cherche in si3t of alle men, and was nevere y-seyn after þat tyme. Afterward Richard kyng of Engelond tolde ofte þis tale, and saide þat hit was no wonder þou3 þey þat comeþ[15] of suche a kuynde[16] greved everich oþer, as þey þat comeþ[15] of þe devel and schulde goo

Trevisa.

---

scholde not mervayle of the unhappy departynge of this kynge and of his childer, the originalle of hym schalle be expressede bothe of the parte of his fader and of his moder. A cowntesse of Gascoigne, of the childe of whom Galfride Plantagenet, fader to this kynge, come, was maryede oonly for her beawte, whiche cowntesse used to comme but selde to the churche, and when sche come to the churche sche taryede unnethe to the secretes of the masse. That thynge perceyvede of the erle her lorde, he causede her to be holden in the church by iiij. kny3htes. But sche castynge awey here palle, and levynge ij. sonnes in that churche whom she noryschede in the ry3hte parte of her mantell, toke with her ij. childer whom sche hade on the lyfte side of the palle, and did flye owte by a wyndowe of the churche, alle the peple in the churche seenge her, and appered not after. And Richarde kynge of Ynglonde was wonte to say that hit was not to be mervaylede that men and peple commen of that stokke scholde trowblede eiche oþer, as

MS. Harl. 2261.

---

[1] *ysseu*, γ.
[2] *me*, β.; *men*, Cx.
[3] *on*] in, β. and γ.
[4] *lif*, β. and Cx. wrongly.
[5] *countesse*, β.; *contas*, γ.
[6] *Angeo*, Cx.
[7] *Heo wolde seelde*, β.; *Hue wolde selde*, γ.
[8] *heo*, β.
[9] *heede*, β.
[10] *hue*, γ. (quater).
[11] *holden*, Cx.
[12] *lift*, β.
[13] *fly3*, β.; *fleuh*, Cx.
[14] *atte chirche wyndow*, Cx.
[15] *come*, β., and Cx. bis.
[16] *kunde*, γ.

venientes et ad diabolum ituri. Unde et clericus quidam a rege Henrico ad filium suum comitem Britanniæ Gaufridum pro pace reformanda missus hæc[1] a filio audivit: " Ut quid me venisti exheredare de " jure meo nativo, num ignoras hoc nobis naturaliter " fore proprium et ab atavis insertum ut nullus nostrum " alterum diligat? Noli ergo[2] laborare ut naturam ex- " pellas." Item mater hujus regis Henrici vivente priori marito, imperatore scilicet Henrico heremitice peregrinante, nupsit altero, scilicet Galfrido, de quibus iste rex processit.[3] De isto quoque Henrico quondam infantulo et in curia regis Francorum[4] nutrito beatus Bernardus abbas de eo sic prophetavit, præsente rege: " De diabolo " venit, et ad diabolum ibit;" notans per hoc tam tyrannidem patris sui Gaufridi, quia[5] Sagiensem episcopum eunuchaverat, quam etiam istius Henrici futuram atrocitatem qua in beatum Thomam desæviret. Ad hæc Gaufridus pater[6] ejus illa Alienora[7] abusus fuerat, quam iste Henricus, filius suus,[8] postmodum duxerat.[9] Pater etiam hujus[10] Alienoræ, comes Pictavensis,

---

[1] *hoc*, A.; om. B.

[2] *frustra*, A.

[3] *Postquam imperator Alemanniæ Henricus quartus, cui mater hujus Henrici copulata fuerat, post tyrannidem in patrem suum carnalem et papam Paschalem expletam ipsam sponte reliquisset, et vitam heremiticam apud Cestriam delegisset, imperatrix reversa vivente adhuc marito nupsit Galfrido Andegavensi*, add. C.D.

[4] *Francorum*] om. B.

[5] *qua*, A.B.

[6] *hujus regis*, A.B.

[7] *Elienora*, A.

[8] *in uxorem*, A.

[9] *et super hoc ne eam duceret filium suum præmunierat*, add. C.D.

[1] *reginæ*, add. C.D.

to þe devel. Also in a tyme kyng Henry sente a clerk to his sone Gaufrede erle of Britayne forto refourme and make ful pees,[1] and þe sone answered þe clerk in þis manere: "Why "art þu come to desherite me of my ryȝt[2] of my kynde burþe? "knowest þou nouȝt þat hit longeþ to us propurliche by "kynde, and hit is y-pyȝt uppon us by kynde of oure fore- "fadres,[2] þat noon of us schulde love oþer? þan travayle þou "nouȝt an[4] ydel to put awey kynde." Also þis kyng Henryes moder was y-wedded to þis Geffray, lyvynge here[5] raþer housbonde, þat was a pilgrim and lyvede as an hermyte, and þis kyng Henry come of hem tweyne in þis lattere mariage. Also of þis Henry while he was a child y-norsched in þe kynges court of Fraunce, seynt Bernard þe abbot propheciede and saide in presence of þe kyng, "Of þe devel he come, and to þe "devel he schal;" and menede[6] þerby boþe þe tyraundise[7] of his fader Geffray þat geldede the bisshop of Sagye,[8] and his owne cruelnesse þat slouȝ seynt Thomas of Caunterbury. And ȝit his fader Geffray hadde y-laye by þis Elianore[9] þat his sone this Henry wedded afterwards. Also this Elianores fader, TREVISA.

---

commynge from the develle and to goe to hym. Also a clerke sende from kynge Henricus to Gaufride his sonne, erle of Brieyne, for the reformacion of pease herde the seide erle seye to hym, "Whereto commes thow to putte me owte from my na- "turalle enheritaunce? knoweste not thow that hit is naturalle "to us and a properte by linialle descense that oon of us scholde "trowble an other? þerfore laboure noo more to expelle nature." Also Matilda empresse was maryede to Galfride Plantagenet, Henricus themperoure here howsebond beynge an heremite and in lyve, by whiche Galfride this kynge was geten. Of whiche kynge beynge in tendre age in the kynges courte of Fraunce seynte Bernarde propheciede, seyenge afore the kynge, "He "come from the devell, and he schalle goe to the develle," assignenge in that the cruellenesse of Gaufride where in he toke awey the stonys of the bischop Sagniense, and also the cruellenesse of this Henricus to comme, in that he scholde schewe crudelite ageyne seynte Thomas of Caunterbery. Also the fader of this Alienor, the erle Pictavense, toke awey MS. HARL. 2261. f. 360 a.

---

[1] *vol pes*, γ.
[2] *of my ryȝt*, Cx.
[3] *of fornfaders*, Cx.
[4] *an*] in, β. and Cx.
[5] *hyr*, Cx.
[6] *moeved*, Cx.
[7] *iirauntrie*, β.; *tyraundys*, γ.; *tyrauntrye*, Cx.
[8] *Sagre*, Cx.
[9] *þues Alienor*, γ.

uxorem sui viceeomitis vi rapuit et, marito vivente, in uxorem duxit, quem dum quidam vir sanctus pro[1] hac re increpasset et minime profecisset, adjecit, "Nusquam " proles de vobis veniens felicem fructum faciat."[2] Contigerat[3] aliquando in camera hujus regis Wyntoniæ[4] multipliciter picturata[5] locum vacuum jussu regis relinqui, ubi rex postmodum aquilam cum quatuor pullis[1] insidentibus depingi fecit, quorum tres unguibus et rostris parentem lacerabant, sed quartus paternis oculis eruendis[6] acrius insistebat. Requisitus rex quid hoc protenderit, ait, "Hi quatuor pulli filii mei sunt, qui " me usque ad mortem persequi non cessabunt, sed[7] " potissime ille novissimus Johannes, quem modo carius " amplector, neci meæ acrius insudabit."[8]

---

[1] *pro . . . pullis*] om. A.
[2] *faciet*, B.
[3] *Contigit*, B.
[4] *Henrici regis apud Wyntoniam*, B.
[5] *ornamento decorata*, C.D.
[6] *eruendis*, from A.; *eruendum*, MS.
[7] *et*, A.
[8] *acrius me torquebit*, C.D.

eorle of Peytho,[1] raveschedd[2] his owne viscountes[3] wyf, and wedded here levynge[4] her housbonde. In a tyme an holy man blamed hym [for][5] þat dede, and it vayled[6] nouȝt; þanne þe good man prayed þat nevere childe þat come of hem schulde brynge forþ gracious fruyt. It happede in a tyme at Wynchestre in þis kyng Henries chambre þat was dyversliche i-peynted [that one place was lefte unpaynted][7] by the kynges heste, þere þe kyng heet afterward peynte an egle wiþ foure briddes;[8] [þe þre briddes][9] cracched[10] and rent[11] þe fader with billes and wiþ clawes,[12] bote þe fourþe bridde besied hym faste to cracche out his fader eyȝen. Me axede of þe kyng[13] what þis[14] wolde mene. "Þese[14] foure bryddes," quoþ þe kyng, "beeþ myn foure sones, þat wil[15] not cese to pursewe[16] me "anon to the deep, and nameliche þis laste John, whom I "loved[17] now moost, schal most scharpliche awayte and caste "for my deeth." Trevisa.

---

by myȝhte the wife of his shiref, and mariede here to his wife, here howsebonde beynge in lyfe. An holy man rebukynge hym and profitynge not his lyfe, seide in this wyse: "There "schalle never oon of youre childer make an happy ende." Also hit happede a voide place as of picture to be lefte in the kynges chamber at Wynchestre, peyntede ryally in other places, where the kynge causede an eagle to be peyntede with iiij. bryddes, thre of whom did bete the egle with theire talauntes and wynges, and the iiij^{the} laborede moche to putte owte the eien of that egle. The kynge inquired what that thynge scholde portende, ansuered "These iiij. bryddes be my childer, whiche "schalle not sease to trowble me unto my dethe, and specially "my yongeste sonne Iohn, whom I luffe moste now, schalle "laboure and intende my dethe and destruccion." MS. Harl. 2261.

---

[1] *Peytow*, β.; *Peytowe*, Cx.
[2] *raveste*, γ.
[3] *schirreves*, β.; *vicounte*, γ.; *shyrreves*, Cx.
[4] *lyvyng*, Cx.
[5] From Cx.
[6] *avayled*, β.; *availed*, Cx.
[7] From Cx.; *þat on plas was left unpeynt*, γ.
[8] *breddes*, γ.
[9] From α., β., γ., and Cx.
[10] *cratched*, Cx., bis.
[11] *torent*, β. and Cx.
[12] *clouwes*, γ.
[13] *of þe kyng*] hym, Cx.
[14] *þues*, ., bis.
[15] *wole*, β.
[16] *pursywe*, γ.
[17] *ich love*, β.; *I love*, Cx.

Cap. XXII.

De pontificibus Romanorum. Martinus.[1] [*De morte Thomæ Cantuariensis et quædam de Henrico Angliæ rege.*]

Adrianus quartus post Anastasium, natione Anglus, sedit papa annis quatuor. Hunc tradit fama vulgata[2] nativum fuisse abbatis Sancti Albani in Anglia, et dum monachatum ibidem expostularet repulsum fuisse.[3] Qui tandem litteris et moribus insistens[4] Albanensis episcopus primo effectus[5] est, deinde apud Wormaciam legatione fungens provinciam illam convertit ad fidem; demum papa effectus, propter vulnerationem unius cardinalis totam urbem Romam supposuit interdicto; Willelmum regem Siciliæ excommunicavit, et ad summissionem coegit. Hic primus omnium virorum apostolicorum cum cardinalibus moram fecit in urbe veteri.[6]

Gratiæ MCLVI. Henrici II. II. Rex Scotiæ[7] et fere omnes primates Angliæ obierunt. Mense Octobri apparuit signum crucis in luna. Et

---

[1] A.B. omit title. A. also omits reference.

[2] *vulgatum*, B.

[3] *abbatis . . . fuisse*] om. B.

[4] *clarus existens*, B.

[5] *factus*, B.

[6] *Circa idem tempus urbs Ascalonia capitur a Christianis. Hoc anno*, ins. B.; *multa privilegia Sancti Albani concessit monasterio. Hoc anno rex*, &c., add. C.D.

[7] *Scotiæ*] om. B.

TREVISA.

Capitulum vicesimum secundum.

AFFTER Anastasius, þe ferþe[1] Adrian, a man of Englische nacioun, was pope foure ȝere. Þe comoun[2] fame telleþ þat þis was þe abbotes bonde man of Seynt Albones in Engelond, and þat he prayed somtyme þat he moste somtyme[3] be[4] monk in þe[5] abbay, and was put of and forsake, but he ȝaf hym to clergie[6] and to good þewes, and was i-made bisshop Albanensis. In a tyme he was i-made legat to Warmancia,[7] and converted þat province to þe riȝt byleve. At the laste i-was[8] made pope, and for the woundynge of a[9] cardynal he enterdited all þe citee of Rome. He cursede William kyng of Cecile[10] [and compellyd hym to submytte hym to his grace. This was the fyrst pope that dwellyd][11] wiþ þe cardinales in þe olde citee. Þe [kyng of][12] Scotlond deide, and nyh alle þe lordes of Engelond. In[13] þe monþe of Octobre þe signe of þe cros was i-seyne[14] in þe mone. Seynt Jame þe apostles hond was[15]

MS. HARL. 2261.

Capitulum vicesimum secundum.

ADRIAN the iiij^{the}, borne in Ynglonde, succedid Anastasius the pope iiij. yere. Somme men say this pope was the native man of thabbot of Seynte Alban in Ynglonde, whiche willynge to have bene monke þer and was refusede, wente over see, and for his connynge and vertu he was made firste bischoppe Albanense, and sende in message to Wormacia converte þat province to the feithe of Criste. And after that this Adrian made pope interdicte alle the cite of Rome for þe dethe of oon cardinalle, and excommunicate William kynge of Sicille, compellynge hym to submitte hym. This pope taryede firste in the olde cite with the cardinalles of alle the bischoppes of Rome. The kynge of Scottelonde and allemoste alle the primates of Ynglonde diede in this yere: also in the monethe of October a signe of the crosse apperede in the moone. Kynge Henricus brouȝte an hoste firste into

---

[1] *fourth*, Cx.
[2] *comyn*, β.
[3] *somtyme*] om. β.
[4] *he myght be*, Cx.
[5] þ^{t}, α.
[6] *clergi*, γ.
[7] *Wormacia*, β., γ., and Cx.
[8] *he was*, Cx.
[9] *a*] oon, β.
[10] *Sicil*, β.
[11] From γ. and Cx.; *and compelled hym to submitte hym to his grace. Þis was þe first pope þat woned*, add. β.
[12] From α., β., γ., and Cx.
[13] *In*, α.
[14] *yseye*, γ.
[15] *was*] is, β.

delata est manus sancti Jacobi apostoli ad monasterium
Gratiæ MCLVII. Henrici II. III. Radingiæ.[1] Hoc anno rex Henricus duxit primo exercitum in Walliam, firmavit castrum de Rutholan, et fundavit monasterium de Basingwork.[2] *De pontificibus.*[3]
Gratiæ MCLIX. Henrici II. V. Alexander tertius post Adrianum sedit papa annis viginti duobus. Qui superavit quatuor schismaticos apostolicos[4] quos imperator Fredericus erexerat. Hic etiam concordavit Fredericum et Emanuelem Constantinopolitanum et regem Siculorum; Thomam[5]
Gratiæ MCLX. Henrici II. VI. Cantuariensem in exilio fovit.[6] Henricus primogenitus hujus regis desponsavit filiam regis Franciæ. Apud
Gratiæ MCLXI. Henrici II. VII. Gloverniam quidam puer crucifixus est a Judæis.[7]
Gratiæ MCLXII. Henrici II. VIII. Obiit Theobaldus archiepiscopus,[8] et consecratus est Thomas Londoniensis, regis cancellarius, vi. nonas Junii, ac tertio post hoc anno exivit de Anglia; septimo quoque anno exilii rediit et martyrizatus. Cujus vitam descripserunt quatuor viri famosi, sicut patet in vita sua. Circa hunc annum floruit abbas Joachim in Calabria, qui super Apocalypsim et libros pro-

---

[1] *Rex . . Radingiæ*] om. C.D.
[2] *Gasinwerk*, B.; *super ripam maris*, add C.D.
[3] A.B.C.D. omit heading.
[4] *apostolicos*, from A.C.D., *apostolos*, MS.
[5] *quoque*, B.
[6] *et roboravit*, C.D.
[7] *Apud . . . Judæis*] om. C.D.
[8] *Cantuariensis*, B.

brou3t to þe abbot [1] of Redynge. Þat 3ere kyng Henry lad first an oost into Wales, and made a strong castel at Roþelan,[2] and foundede þe abbay of Basyngw.[3] After Adrian, þe þridde Alisaundre was pope xxii. 3ere: he overcome foure false popes þat Frederik þe emperour had i-sette up. Also þis accordeþ Frederik and Emanuel of Constantynnoble and þe kyng of Secile, and socrede[4] Thomas of Caunturbury whan he was exiled. Henry þis kynges eldest sone wedded þe kynges dou3ter of Fraunce. At Glowcestre Jewes nailled a childe to þe roode. Theobald þe archebisshop deide, and Thomas of Londoun þe kynges chauncelere was i-sacred archebisshop þe secounde day of Juyn, and þe þridde 3ere [þere] [5] after he went out of Engelond, and come a3en þe sevenþe 3ere of his exciling, and was i-martired. Foure famous men discreved his lyf and his dedes as it is i-written in his lyf. Aboute þat 3ere abbot Joochym [6] was in his floures in Calabria: he wroot þe exposicioun uppon þe Apocolips [7] and uppon þe bookes of pro- TREVISA.

Wales in this yere, and made a castelle at Ruthlan, and founded the monastery of Basyngwere. Alexander the secunde succedid pope Adrian xxij. yere, whiche overcome the iiij. popes electe ageyne the lawe, whom Frederyke the emperour hade erecte; also he accorded Frederyke with Emmanuel emperoure of Constantinopole, and Thomas kynge of Sicille, and noryschede moche seynte Thomas of Cawnterbery in his exile. Also Henricus the eldeste sonne off this kynge Henry maryede the do3hter of the kynge off Fraunce. Also a childe was crucifiede of the Iewes in this yere at Gloucestre. Theobaldus archebischop of Cawnterbery diede in this yere, and seynte Thomas was consecrate the vj^the^ nones of Iunius, in the thrydde yere folowynge departynge from Ynglonde, and come to Ynglonde ageyne in the seventhe yere of his exile, in whiche yere he was martiri3ate; the lyfe of whom iiij famose clerkes did wryte, as hit is schewede in his lyfe. And Matildis the empresse, modere to kynge Henricus, dyed in the yere of oure Lorde a M.clxvij.[8] Ioachim the abbot was abowte this tyme in Calabria, whiche did write comentes on the Apocalips and MS. HARL. 2261. f. 360 b.

---

[1] *abbay*, Cx.
[2] *Ruthlan*, β.; *Rutland*, Cx.
[3] *Basyngwerk*, β. and Cx.
[4] *sokered*, β.; *sukerde*, γ.; *socurcd*, Cx.
[5] From α., β., γ., and Cx.
[6] *Ioachym*, β.; *Joachim*, γ.; *Joachyn*, Cx.
[7] *Apocalips*, β.; *Apocalypsis*, Cx.
[8] For this sentence no Latin appears in any MS. which I have examined.

phetarum scripsit commenta, prædixit quoque imperatori Frederico et cæteris regibus Terram Sanctam adeuntibus[1] quod parum ibidem proficerent, eo quod nondum tempus liberationis[2] advenisset. Fertur etiam de isto[3] quod quasi prophetice effigiavit mores, actus, et numerum omnium virorum[4] apostolicorum qui futuri forent in ecclesia.[5] Ejus tamen opinio contra magistrum sententiarum scribentis reprobatur, sicut patet[6] in principio decretalium per Gregorium nonum. [7] Quarto-

Gratiæ MCLXIIII. Henrici II. X.

decimo[8] kalendis Octobris circa hora primam visi sunt in cœlo tres circuli et duo soles.[9] Quo anno orta est dissensio inter regem et Thomam Cantuariensem[10] archiepiscopum.[11] Floruit his diebus in Francia magister Petrus Comestor, qui utriusque Testamenti historiam contexuit,[12] quæ scholastica dicitur: scripsit etiam allegorias[13] super utrumque Testamentum, et etiam sermones insignes reliquit; allegorias etiam suas redegit

Gratiæ MCLXVIII. Henrici II. XIIII.

in librum metricum quem intitulavit Auroram.[14] Ranulphus Coloniensis episcopus transvexit de Mediolano, per Fredericum nuper destructa, tria magorum corpora

---

[1] *ad Terram Sanctam tendentibus*, B.
[2] *nondum*, B.
[3] *Joachim*, B.
[4] *virorum*] om. B.
[5] *Dei*, add. C.D.
[6] *patet*] om. A.
[7] *Hoc anno*, B.
[8] *Quartodecimo . . . archiepiscopum*] om. C.D.
[9] *et circa solem tres circuli*, B.
[10] *Cantuariensem*] om. B.
[11] *Cantuariensem archiepiscopum*] om. A.
[12] *texuit*, B.
[13] *allegoria*, A.
[14] *reliquit . . . Auroram*] om. C.D.

phetes. Also he warnede Frederik þe emperour þat[1] oþer kynges þat went to þe Holy Lond þat þey schulde nouȝt profite þere but litel at þat tyme, for the tyme of þe deliveraunce was nouȝt ȝit i-comen. Me seiþ also þat[2] þis Joachyn þat he descryvede as it were by prophecie þe maneres and dedes and[3] nombre of all popes þat schulde be in holy chirche. But þere he wroot aȝenst þe maister of þe[4] sentence, his opinoun was reproved, as it were[5] i-write in þe bygynnynge of decrees[6] by þe nynþe Gregory. Þe xii. day tofore Octobre aboute prime were i-seyn þre cercles[7] in hevene and two sonnes; þat ȝere roose þe stryf bytwene þe kyng and Thomas. Þat tyme was maister Peres[8] Comestor[9] in his floures in Fraunce; he wroot a storye of þe[10] eyþer Testament, þat hatte[11] Historia Scolastica. Also he wroot allegorias uppon[12] eyþer Testament, þat is a book of goostliche understondynge. Also he made a nobil book of sermouns, and made afterward his allegorias in a book of metre, and cleped þe book Aurora.[13] Rauph[14] bisshop of Coloyne[15] brouȝt þe bodies of þe [þre][16] kynges of Coloyne[15] out of Melan þat was destroyed by Frederyk. Þis bodies

TREVISA.

---

bookes of the prophetes, whiche seide to Fredericus thempe- MS. HARL.
roure and to oþer kynges that thei scholde profite but lytelle 2261.
in the Holy Londe, for the tyme of delyveraunce was not commen. Neverthelesse the oppinion of this Ioachim ageyne the maister of sentenceȝ is reprovede, as hit is schewede in the begynnynge of the decretalles by Gregory the ix. Thre cercles and ij. sonnes were seen in the firmament in this yere abowt oon after none the xiiij^{the} kalendes of October, in whiche yere a grete dissencion was movede betwene kynge Henricus the secunde and seynte Thomas. Petrus Commester florischede this tyme in Fraunce, whiche did wryte the story of either Testament, whiche is callede the story scolasticalle, and allegoryes on either Testament, whiche allegoryes he redacte into a booke of metre, whom he callede Aurora. Radulphus bischop of Colon brouȝhte from Mediolan, destroyede by Frederyke thempe-roure, the bodies of thre kynges to Colony. The bodies of

---

[1] *þat*] and, β. and Cx.
[2] *þat*] of, β.
[3] *of*, Cx.
[4] *þe*] om. β.
[5] *is*, α., β., and Cx.
[6] *decretales*, α.; *decretals*, β. and Cx.
[7] *cerkels*, γ.
[8] *Pyers*, Cx.
[9] *Piers Comestorye*, α.
[10] *þe*] om. α., β., and Cx.
[11] *hight*, Cx.
[12] *oppon*, γ.
[13] *Auroica*, Cx.
[14] *Raph*, β. and γ.; *Raaf*, Cx.
[15] *Coleyn*, β.; *Colayn*, γ., bis.
[16] From α., β., γ. and, Cx.

usque Coloniam. Hæc nempe corpora primitus de Persida ad Constantinopolim, et inde per Sergium papam usque Mediolanum transvecta fuerant. Hoc anno martyrizatus est Thomas Cantuariensis. De quo quidam sic metrice scripsit.[1]

Anno milleno centeno septuageno
Anglorum primas corruit ense Thomas.

Alius sic.

Quis moritur? Præsul. Cur? Pro grege. Qualiter? Ense.
Quando? Natali. Quis locus? Ara Dei.

Alius sic.

Pro Christi sponsa, Christi sub tempore, Christi
In templo, Christi verus amator obit.[2]

[3]Post cujus mortem cœpit sors regia attenuari; nam anno sequenti rex adivit Hiberniam, quam potenter subjugavit; volente papa consilia per loca celebravit, maxime apud Cassiliam, ubi primas Armachanus ob

---

[1] *quidam sic*, A.; *sic ait*, B.

[2] C.D. invert the order of these pieces.

[3] *Giraldus*, add. B.

were first i-brouȝt out of Pers to Constantynnoble, and þan by þe pope Sergius þey were i-brouȝt to Melan. Þis ȝere was Thomas of Caunturbury i-martired: of hym oon seiþ in þis manere: TREVISA.

"*Anno milleno centeno septuageno*
"*Anglorum primas coruit*[1] *ense Thomas.*"

Þat is to menynge: þe ȝere of oure Lord enleven hondred and seventy Thomas deide by a swerd primat of Englische men. Anoþer seiþ in þis manere:

"*Qui*[2] *moritur? Præsul. Cur? Pro grege. Qualiter?*
"*Ense.*
"*Quando? Natali. Quis locus?*[3] *Ara est*[4] *Dei.*"

An Englische man[5] who deieþ? A bisshop. Why? For þe folk?[6] How? Wiþ a swerd. Whane? At mydwynter. At what place? At Goddis auȝter. Anoþer seiþ in þis manere:

"*Pro Christi sponsa,* [*Christi*][7] *sub tempore, Christi*
"*In templo, Christi verus amator obit.*"

Þat is to menynge: for Cristes spouse, in Cristes tyme, in Cristes temple, Cristes trewe lyver[8] deide.[9] *Giraldus.* After his deeþ þe kynges fortune bygan to wiþdrawe, for þe ȝere after þe kyng wente into Irlond þat he hadde myȝteliche[10] i-wonne, and made þere counsailles in meny places[11] by þe popes wille, and nameliche at Cassile,[12] þen[13] was nouȝt þe primat of

---

these three kynges were brouȝte firste from Persida to Constantinopole, and from that cite to Mediolan by Sergius the pope. Seynte Thomas of Cawnterbery was martiriȝate in this yere, of whom a metricion rehersethe in this wise:— MS. HARL. 2261.

"Quis moritur? Presul. Cur? Pro grege. Qualiter? Ense.
"Quando? Natali. Quis locus? Ara Dei."

Giraldus in Itinerario. After the dethe of whome the myȝhte and powere of the kynge began to decrease, for in the yere folowynge the kynge wente in Yrlonde and kepede diverse cownsailes þer by licence of the pope, and specially at Cassilia,

---

[1] *corruit*, β., γ., and Cx.
[2] *Quis*, α. and β.
[3] *Quo loco?*, Cx.
[4] *est*] om. α., β., and Cx.
[5] *man*] om. β. and Cx.
[6] *vlok*, γ.
[7] From β. and Cx.
[8] *lover*, α. and Cx.; *lovyer*, β.
[9] *lovyer dyeþ*, γ.
[10] *myghtely*, Cx.
[11] *plas*, γ.
[12] *Cassil*, Cx.
[13] *þere*, α., β., and Cx

corporis invalitudinem tunc non affuit, qui vaccam candidam, cujus lacte dumtaxat fovebatur, secum semper circumduxit.[1] Hanc itaque insulam rex[2] pro posse reformabat, maxime quoad tria, quoad officium ecclesiasticum[3] modulandum, quoad decimas præstandum, et quoad ritum matrimonialem. Ibi[4] tunc statutum est ut morientes in præsentia vicinorum testium condant testamentum,[5] et bona sua mobilia, si uxores et liberos habeant, deducto ære[6] alieno et stipendiis servientium, in tres partes dividantur, quarum una liberis, alia[7] uxori, tertia sibi et exequiis designetur; si vero liberis aut uxore careat, bona in duas partes dividantur. *De revelationibus regis Henrici monstratis.*[8] Regi[9] de Hibernia reverso cœperunt revelationes fieri, potissime de vita sua corrigenda; primo per quendam senem apud castrum de[10] Caerdyf in Wallia, Dominica in albis, octavo die Paschæ, ubi post missam auditam, dum rex ad equum suum accederet, astitit ei vir quidam flavus, tonsura rotunda, macer et procerus, tunica alba vestitus,

Gratiæ MCLXXI. Henrici II. XVII.

---

[1] *duxit*, A.
[2] *rex*] om. B.
[3] *ecclesiasticum*] om. A.
[4] *nempe inter cætera sancitum est quod morientes*, add. C.D.
[5] *testamentum*] om. B.
[6] *ære*, from B.C.D.; *ope*, MS.
[7] *altera*, B.
[8] A.B.C.D. omit heading.
[9] *Henrico*, B.
[10] *castrum de*] om. B.

Armach[1] for febilnesse of his body: þis primat ladde wiþ hym a white kowe alway aboute, and was susteyned onliche by melk of þat white kow. He reformede al þis Irlond[2] wiþ al his myȝt, specialliche in þre poyntes, in rulynge of þe office of holy chirche, in trewe[3] paienge of tyþe[4] to holy chirche, and in all[5] laweful usage of wedlok. Þoo it was þere i-ordeyned þat men þat deieþ schulde make here testament in presence of here neigheboures,[6] and ȝif þe man þat deieþ have a wyf and children he schulde[7] firste caste what he oweþ and is detted[8] to oþere men and to servauntes for here hire, and þe oþer deel of his nobles[9] schulde be deled in þre, and oon party is[10] ordeyned for his children, þat oþer for his wyf, and þe þridde to brynge hym on[11] erþe and to doo for his soule: ȝif he be wiþoute wyf oþer wiþoute children his catel schulde be deled atweyne.[12] Whanne þe kyng come out of Irlond he bygan to have revelaciouns, and specialliche for[13] he schulde amende his lyf: firste in þe castel of Kerdyf[14] in Walys þe Sonday next after Ester day, whan the kyng hadde i-herd masse and wente to his hors, þere stood[15] a pale[16] man wiþ rounde tonsure,[17] lene and

TREVISA.

---

at whiche cownsaile Armachanus the primate was not for grete infirmite. Where he reformede that cuntre, specially to thre thynges, after his powere, to the servyce of God, to ȝiffe theire tythes, and to dewe matrimonye. Also hit was ordeynede þer that men laborynge in extreme infirmite scholde make theire testamente in the presence off diverse wittenesse and neiȝhebors, and to divide theire goodes movable into thre partes, if thei have wife and childer, oon parte to childer, an other to his wife, the thrydde parte to his beryynge. And if he hade noo wife, his goodes scholde be divided but into ij. partes. The kynge returnede from Yrlonde, mony revelacions were schewede for the correccion of his life, firste by an olde man at the castell of Caerdif in Wales, in the viij. day of Ester after masse. When that the kynge scholde have take his horse, a man yelowe in coloure and pale of face, of semely

MS. HARL. 2261. f. 361 a.

---

[1] *Armarch*, γ.; *Arnach*, Cx.
[2] *þat ylond*, β. and γ.; *al that yland*, Cx.
[3] *truwe*, γ.
[4] *teþing*, β.; *teþyng*, γ.; *tethyng*, Cx,
[5] *all*] om. Cx.
[6] *neiȝbors*, β.
[7] *childern a scholde*, γ.
[8] *detty*, β. and γ.; *hys dettys*, Cx.
[9] *meobles*, β. and Cx.
[10] *is*] schuld be, β.; sholde be, Cx.
[11] *on*] in, β. and Cx.; an, γ.
[12] *in tweyne*, Cx.
[13] *for*] bycause that, Cx.
[14] *Cardef*, Cx.
[15] *stonde*, Cx.
[16] *pal*, γ.
[17] *tonsour*, Cx.

nudisque pedibus, qui regem Teutonica lingua sic affatur. *Gode olde gige.*[1] Deinde sic prosequitur, " Salutat [te] Christus[2] et pia mater ejus, Johannes " Baptista et Petrus, mandantes firmiter ne per ter- " ras ditionis tuæ fiant mercatus aut opera servilia[3] " diebus Dominicis, exceptis his quæ ad usum[4] cibo- " rum pertinent; quod si observareris, quicquid ince- " peris feliciter complebis."[5] Rex autem dixit Gallice illi militi qui frenum suum tenebat, " Inquire a " rustico isto an hæc[6] somniaverit." At dum hoc Anglice exponeret, subjecit ille lingua priori, " Sive hoc " somniaverim sive non, vide quis dies sit hodie, quia " nisi hæc feceris, et vitam tuam[7] correxeris, tales " infra præsentem annum rumores audies quod usque " ad exitum tuum inde dolebis." His dictis vir ille

---

[1] *Gode old kige,* A.; *God old kyge,* B.; *kynge,* C.D.

[2] *Salutat te Christus,* from A.; *Salutat salutat te Christus,* B.

[3] *in,* B.

[4] *quo ad cibum,* A.

[5] *implebis,* B.

[6] *hoc,* A.

[7] *tuam*] om. B.

long, barefoot, i-cloped in a white kirtel. He spak to þe kyng in Duche[1] speche in þis manere, and seide, "*Good old kyng,*" and þan he told forþ his tale in þis wise: "Crist gretep þe and "his moder childe,[2] and John þe Baptiste[3] and Peter, and "comaundeþ hiȝliche þat no chepynges be i-holde noþer se- "veral[4] werkes i-doo in þe Sonday in þy[5] landes of þy "lordschippe, out take þat nedes moste be done to mete.[6] "ȝif þow doost as I telle, al þat þou bygunnest[7] þow schalt "brynge to a gracious ende." Þe kyng speke Frensche[8] to þe knyȝte þat hilde his bridel, and seide, "Axe of þis clerk[9] ȝif he "haþ i-mette[10] al þis þat he telleþ;" and he expowned it on[11] Englische. Þan þe man spak in þe forsaide[12] tonge, and seide, "Wheþer I have i-mette[10] þis tale or nouȝt, take þou "hede what day it is to day, for but þou doo as I ytelle and "amende þy lyf þou schalt here suche tydinges[13] wiþ ynne "þis ȝere þat þou schalt be sory perfore to þy lyves ende." TREVISA.

---

stature, in a white coote and barefotte, stode nye to the kynge, and spake to hym in the langage of Almaynes, "Gode old "kyge, Criste salutethe yow and his moder Mary, seynte John "Baptiste and seynte Petur, commaundenge þe that marchan- "dyse be not usede thro alle thy realme in Sonnedayes, auther "servile labours, those thynges excepte which perteyne to tho "lyfe of man; and if thow kepe these thynges thow schalle "ende welle that thynge thow dose begynne." The kynge herynge this, seide in Frenche to the knyȝhte holdynge his brydelle, "Inquire of this chorle wheþer he did dreame this or "nay." That doen, the man seide to the kynge ageyne in the same langage aforeseide, "Wheþer y dreamede þis or nay, "remembre welle this day, for withowte thow kepe that y have "seide to the and amende thy lyfe, thow schalle here suche "tythynges with ynne this yere that thow schalle repent "theyme by alle the daies of thy lyfe." This seide the man MS. HARL. 2261.

---

[1] *Duchys*, β.

[2] *mylde*, α. and β.; *myld*, Cx.

[3] *Joon Baptist*, β.; *Iohan Baptist*, Cx.

[4] *servyle*, β. and Cx.

[5] *þe*, α., β., and Cx.

[6] *þat nediþ to þe use of greiþinge of mete*, β.; *to þe use of greyþyng of mete*, γ.; *oute take doynge that nedith to the usage of dyghtynge of meete*, Cx.

[7] *begynnest*, Cx.

[8] *Freyns*, γ.

[9] *cherle*, β.; *cherl*, γ.; *chorle*, Cx.

[10] *ymet*, β. and γ., bis; *hath ydremed*, Cx.

[11] *on*] an, β.

[12] *vorseyde*, γ.

[13] *tyþyngus*, γ.

disparuit, et infra annum tres regis filii, Henricus, Gaufridus, et Ricardus, ad regem Franciæ contra patrem proprium diverterunt; rex Scotiæ, comes Cestriæ, et comes Leycestriæ contra regem surrexerunt. Multæ quoque aliæ præmunitiones[1] regi fiebant; sed et[2] omnia ille[3] parvipendebat. Secundo namque præmunivit eum quidam Hibernicus cum adjectione signorum secretissimorum, et tertio quidam miles de Lindesey, Philippus de Estreby,[4] transito mari Gallico exposuit regi in Normannia septem articulos quos emendaret; quod si faceret, honorifice per septennium regnaret, et crucem Christi de[5] ejus hostibus eriperet alioquin in quarto anno ignominiose obiret. Tria prima fuerunt quæ juravit in coronatione sua observare, videlicet, de ecclesia tuenda, de justis legibus statuendis; et ne aliquem[6] sine judicio[7] damnaret. Quartum fuit de ablatis hereditatibus restituendis; quintum de justitia

[1] *divinitus*, add C.D.
[2] *et*] om. B.
[3] *illa*, B.
[4] *Esterbe*, A.; *Estderby*, C.D.
[5] *ab*, B.
[6] *quamvis reum*, C.D
[7] *causa*, A.

Þe man vanysched[1] when þis was seide, and wiþ ynne þe ȝere[2] þe kynges sones Henry, Gaufre,[3] and Richard turned to the kyng of Fraunce aȝenst here owne fader; þe kyng of Scotlond, þe eorle of Chestre, and þe erle of Leycetre ryse[4] aȝenst þe kyng. And þe kyng hadde meny oþer[5] warnynges, but he sette litel by al.[6] For þe secounde tyme an Irische[7] man warnede hym and tolde hym tokenes þat were most trewe priveliche.[8] Þe pridde tyme a knyȝt of Lyndeseie, Phelip of Chescherby,[9] passede the Frensche[10] see and com to þe kyng into Normandie, and expowned hym þere sevene articles þat he schulde amende, and ȝif þat he dede[11] he schulde regne worþiliche[12] sevene ȝere, and he schulde wynne þe holy croys of[13] his enemyes; and elles he schulde schameliche deie in þe fourþe ȝere. Þre þe firste were þe articules þat he hadde i-swore in his crownynge, þat he schulde holde: oon was of meyntenynge of holy chirche, þat oþer of riȝtful lawes, þe pridde þat he schulde no man dampne wiþouten dome; þe ferþe þat he schulde restore aȝen heritages þat he hadde bynomen; þe fifte

Trevisa.

---

departede from the kynge. And with in the seide yere thre sonnes of the kynge, Henricus Gaufride and Ricardus, turnede to the kynge of Fraunce ageyne theire awne fader. Then the kynge of Scottes, the erle of Chestre, and the erle of Leicestre did ryse ageyne the kynge: and mony oþer monicions were hade for correccion of his life, but he despisede theyme. A man of Yrlonde movede the kynge to correcte his lyfe in schewynge to the kynge secrete tokynnes. And in the thrydde tyme a knyȝhte of Lindisey, Philippe Estreby, movede the kynge to amende vij. thynges, seyenge that and if he wolde amende theyme he scholde reigne in honoure by vij. yere folowynge, and delyver the crosse of Criste from his enemyes. And if he wolde not amende theyme, he seide to the kynge þat he scholde dye in the iiij. yere folowynge with grete schame. Thre of the vij. thynges or articles he promysede to observe in his coronacion, as to defende the churche, of trewe lawes to be ordeynede, and not to condempne eny man withowte ryȝhteuous juggemente. The iiij^the^ was to restore goodes taken awey and enheritaunceȝ.

MS. Harl. 2261.

f. 361 b.

---

[1] *vansede*, γ.
[2] *the thre yeres*, Cx.
[3] *Gaufred*, Cx.
[4] *reysed*, Cx.
[5] *oþer*] om. Cx.
[6] *by al*] therby, Cx.
[7] *Yrysch*, γ.
[8] *trewe priveliche*] pryvy, Cx. *were most privy*, β.; *were most prive*, γ.
[9] *Chesterby*, α.; *Chestreby*, β. and Cx.
[10] *Vreynse*, γ.
[11] *ef a dude*, γ.
[12] *worshipfully*, Cx.
[13] *yf*] and, Cx.

facienda sine pretio; sextum de reddendis stipendiis ministrorum; septimum de Judæis[1] expellendis, parte pecuniæ ad exeundum eis relicta. Sed rege non correcto, insurrexerunt in eum validi et fortes,[2] scilicet tres filii sui cum Francorum rege. Sed postquam rex Henricus tumbam beati Thomæ martyris nudis pedibus humiliter[3] visitasset, Willelmus rex Scotiæ apud Alnewyk, et duo comites Cestrensis[4] et Leycestriæ capti sunt.[5] Hac plaga biennali vix sedata[6] non divinæ miserationi sed proprio brachio hoc[7] ascripsit. Et qui dudum incarcerata regina suâ Alianora adulter fuerat occultus, jam factus[8] est manifestus, palam et impudenter Rosemunda puella abutens. Huic nempe puellæ spectatissimæ fecerat[9] rex apud Wodestok mirabilis architecturæ cameram opere[10] Dædalino sinuatam,[11] ne forsan a regina facile deprehenderetur, sed illa cito post[12] obiit, et apud Godestowe juxta[13]

---

[1] *de terra sua*, add C.D.

[2] *Nam Henricus primogenitus nuper coronatus, junctis secum duobus fratribus suis et rege Franciæ, cujus filiam desponsaverat, capit inquietare patrem*, add. C.D.

[3] *humiliter*] om. B.

[4] *Cestriæ*, A.; *scilicet Cestriæ*, B.

[5] B. adds: "qui rege in par-
" tibus transmarinis contra regem
" Franciæ et tres filios suos terras
" suas ibidem hostiliter invadentes
" dimicantes, Angliam deprædantes
" et multa mala facientes ipsum
" regem exterminare satagebant."

[6] *rex se et sua interim contra tot et tam validos adversarios viriliter defensabat, quod tamen*, B.

[7] *hoc*] om. B.

[8] *fastus*, B.

[9] *fecerat*] om. B.

[10] *opere . . . sinuatam*] om. C.D.

[11] *similem*, B.

[12] *post*] om. B.

[13] *prope*, B.

[that he sholde doo ryght withoute meede; the syxthe][1] þat he schulde paie þe wages of his servauntes; þe sevenþe þat he schulde doo [þe][2] Jewes[3] out of Engelond and leve hem somwhat of money to wende out of þe[4] lond. But þe kyng was nouȝt amended, þerfore aroos[5] aȝenst hym [þre][2] strong men and myȝti, his owne þre sones, wiþ þe kyng of Fraunce. But whan kyng Henry had i-visited mekeliche Thomas þe martires tombe, William þe kyng of Scotland and þe two eorles of Chestre and of Lincolne were i-take at Alnewik.[6] Þis meschief durede two ȝere, and was unneþe i-cessed, and he accounted þe cesynge þer of to his owne strengþe, and nouȝt to Goddes mercy, and he þat hadde prisoned his wif Eleanore þe queene, and was priveliche a spouse brekere,[7] leveþ now[8] openliche[9] in spousebreche,[10] and is nouȝt aschamed to mysuse þe wenche[11] Rosamound. To þis faire wenche þe kyng made at[12] Wodestoke a chambre of wonder craft, wonderliche[13] i-made by Dedalus[14] werke, leste þe queene schulde fynde[15] and take Rosamounde: but þe wenche deide soue, and is i-buried in þe

Trevisa.

The v^the^ article was to do ryȝhteuous withowte eny price. The vi^the^ was to pay dewte to his ministres. The vij. was to expelle the Iewes, levynge to theym parte of theire goodes to goe furthe with alle. But the kynge not correcte by this, myȝhty men did ryse ageyne hym, his thre sonnes with the kynge of Fraunce. And so the kynge mekynge hym selfe, and visitynge with grete mekenesse the tumbe of seynte Thomas of Cawnterbery on his bare feete, hade victory at Alnewike, and William kynge of Scottes was taken þer, and the erles of Chestre and of Leicestre. That victory had, he ascribede hit to his power, and not to God, and beynge afore a secrete advouterer, was knowen after that for an open advouterer, abusynge Rosamunde, that beautuous woman. To whom he made a mervellous chambre at Wodestoke, after the werke Dedalyne, that sche scholde not be taken lyȝhtely of the qwene. But þe seide Rosamunde diede soone after, and was beryede in þe

MS. Harl. 2261.

---

[1] From Cx.; *þat he schuld do ryȝt wiþoute mede, þe sixte, β.*; *þat a scholde do ryȝt wiþoute myde, þe syxte, γ.*

[2] From α., β., γ., and Cx.

[3] *Juwes, γ.*

[4] þe] om. β.

[5] *roos, α.*

[6] *Alnewyc, γ.*

[7] *and*, wrongly inserted in MS. om. γ.

[8] *now* from β. and γ. *nouȝt* MS.

[9] *and lyved now openly*, Cx.

[10] *spousbruche, γ.*

[11] *weynche, γ.*

[12] *at*, from α., β., and Cx. *a* MS.

[13] *wonder slilyche, α.*; *wonder slyȝlich, β.*; *slylych, γ.*; *slyly*, Cx.

[14] *dudulus, α.*

[15] *vynde, γ.*

Oxoniam in capitulo monialium sepulta est[1] cum tali epitaphio. *Versus de Rosamunda.*[2]

Hic jacet in tumba Rosa mundi non rosa munda,
Non redolet sed olet quod redolere solet.

Cista ejusdem puellæ vix bipedalis mensuræ sed mirabilis architecturæ[3] ibidem cernitur, in qua conflictus pugilum, gestus animalium, volatus avium, saltus piscium, absque hominis[4] impulsu conspiciuntur.[5]

Cap. XXIII.

[*Quædam de rege Henrico secundo, et de inventione corporis Arthuri regis.*]

Hoc quoque anno, tertiodecimo kalendas Septembris, apud Eboracum Willelmus rex Scotiæ,[6] de consensu procerum et prælatorum suorum, fecit homagium regi Angliæ Henrico. Cavit etiam idem[7] rex Willelmus litteris suis patentibus quod ipse et successores sui et homines Scotiæ facerent homagium, ligiamentum, et

---

[1] *est*] om. B.

[2] A.B. omit heading.

[3] *adhuc*, C.D.

[4] *cogitationis adminiculo jugiter se movendum usque hodie visuntur*, C.D.

[5] C.D. add: "Hoc anno annuente rege conventus Cantuariæ elegit fratrem Ricardum Dovorienses priorem in archiepiscopum. Cui sub anno pontificatus sui undecimo apparuit ei Dominus in visu dicens; Tu dissipasti bona ecclesiæ meæ, et ego extirpabo te de terra; unde ille præterritus obiit octavo post hoc die." (See p. 56.)

[6] *Willelmus rex Scotiæ*] om. A.

[7] *igitur ibidem*, B.

chapitre hous at Godestowe besides Oxenforde wiþ siche a writynge on her tombe : TREVISA.

" *Hic jacet in tumba rosa mundi, non rosa munda.*
" *Non redolet, sed olet, quæ redolere solet.*"

Þat is, Here lieþ [1] in tombe þe rose of þe world, nouȝt a clene rose; it smelleþ nouȝt swete, but it stinkeþ, þat was wont to smelle ful swete. Þis wenche [2] hadde a litel cofre scarsliche of two foot long, i-made by a wonder craft, þat is ȝit i-seyn þere. Þerynne it semeþ þat geantes [3] fiȝten,[4] bestes stertelleþ,[5] foules fleeþ [6] and fisches meoven [7] wiþ oute manis hond meovynge.[8]

Capitulum vicesimum tertium.

Also þis ȝere at ȝork, þe twelfþe [9] day tofore Septembre, William kyng of Scotland, by assent of lordes and prelates of his londe dede [10] homage to Henry kyng of Engelond. Also þis kyng William seiþ in his own [11] lettre [12] patent þat he and his successoures and men of Scotlond schulde doo homage lege-

---

monastery of Godestowe, nye to Oxonforde, with this epitaphy :— MS. HARL. 2261.

" Hic jacet in tumba rosa mundi, non rosa munda.
" Non redolet sed olet quæ redolere solet."

The beryalle of this Rosamunde is of a mervellous architecture, for conflictes of champions, fliȝhtes of bryddes, lepynge of fisches is to beholden in hit, withowte the handeworke other impulsion of man.

Capitulum vicesimum tertium.

In this yere, the xiij. kalendes of September, William kynge of Scottes, by the cownsaile of his noble men and of prelates, made homage to Henricus the secunde and kynge of Ynglonde at Yorke. Also the seide kynge of Scottes schewede by his letters patent that he, his successours, and men of Scotlonde awe to make homage, ligiament, and fidelite to kynges of f. 362 a.

---

[1] *liþ*, β.
[2] *weynche*, γ.
[3] *geauntes*, β.
[4] *vyȝteþ*, γ.; *geauntes fyghtyn*, Cx.
[5] *startleþ*, γ ; *startlyn*, Cx.
[6] *vlueþ*, γ.; *fleyn*, Cx.
[7] *lepeþ*, β. and γ.; *leepe*, Cx.
[8] *withoute ony mannes moevynge*, Cx.
[9] *twellyfth*, Cx.
[10] *dide*, β.; *made*, γ.
[11] *own*] om. Cx.
[12] *lettres*, β.; *letters*, γ.

fidelitatem regibus Angliæ quotiens super hoc requirerentur, et in signum hujus subjectionis rex Scotiæ obtulit capellum et sellam [1] suam [2] super altare sancti [3] Petri in ecclesia [4] Eboracensi, quæ ibidem usque hodie conservantur. Et adjecerunt proceres Scotiæ cum juramento quod si aliquando rex Scotiæ a fidelitate prædicta resiliret, ipsi contra regem Scotiæ [5] insurgerent donec resipisceret. Quam quidem compositionem Gregorius papa in diversis rescriptis regibus Angliæ et Scotiæ directis mandavit firmiter observari. Et ad declarationem hujus subjectionis rex Scotiæ [6] cum prælatis suis venit ad parliamentum regis Henrici apud Northamtoniam. Et post hæc [7] venit ad regem Henricum in Normannia. *De electione Cantuariensis archiepiscopi.* [8] Hoc [9] etiam anno annuente rege conventus Cantuariensis elegit fratrem Ricardum [10] Dovoriensem priorem in archiepiscopum. Cui sub anno pontificii sui [11] undecimo apparuit Dominus in visu dicens:[12] "Tu dissipasti bona ecclesiæ meæ, et " ego extirpabo te de terra." [13] Inde perterritus obiit

---

[1] *cellam*, A.
[2] *suam*] om. B.
[3] *beati*, B.
[4] *cathedrali*, B.
[5] *cum*, B.
[6] *Willelmus*, add. C.D.
[7] *hoc*, B.
[8] A.B. omit title.
[9] *Hoc . . . die*] om. C.D.
[10] *Dorobernensem alias*, ins. B.
[11] *sui*] om. B.
[12] *in visu dicens*] from A.B.
[13] *qui*, B.

aunce[1] and feaute[2] to the kynges of Engelond also ofte as þey ben þerof[3] required. In token of þis subjeccioun þe kyng of Scotlond offrede his hatte and his sadel uppon seint Petres auȝter[4] in þe chirche of ȝork, þat beeþ ȝit i-kepte þere anon to þis day. And ȝit herto þe lordes of Scotlond swore þat ȝif þe kyng of Scotlond wolde be[5] withdrawe hym in eny tyme from þat feiþ,[6] þey wolde rise aȝenst hym [and be ageynst hym][7] alwey til he be torned aȝen. Pope Gregorye in dyverse writynges þat he sent to þe kynges of Engelond and of Scotlond charged hiȝly[8] þat þe composicioun schulde be stedfastliche i-holde. And for þe declaracioun of þis subjeccioun þe kyng of Scotlonde and his prelates come to Norhamptoun to kyng Henries parlement, and þerafter he come to kyng Henry into Normandie. Also þis ȝere by assent of þe kyng þe covent of Caunturbury chose[9] Richard priour of Dovoure to be archebisshop. In þe enlevenþe ȝere of his bisshopriche oure Lord appered to hym and seide, "Þou hast i-wasted þe goodes of "my cherche, and I schal root[10] þe out of þe erþe:" þan he

TREVISA.

Ynglonde as so ofte as thei were requirede; into a signe of whiche subjeccion the kynge of Scottes offrede his cappe and sadelle on the awter of seynt Petyr at Yorke; whiche thynges be kepede þer unto this tyme; also the gentillemen of Scottelande adjecte to with an othe that and if the kynge of Scottes brake his othe thei scholde ryse ageyne hym tylle that he scholde returne to his promisse and fidelite made. Whiche composicion pope Gregory sende redacte into a forme to the kynges of Ynglonde and of Scottes, commandynge that composicion to be observede. To the declaracion of þis subjeccion the kynge of Scottes come with his prelates to the parliamente off kynge Henricus at Northampton, and after that to Normandy to kynge Henricus. The convente of Cawnterbery electe Ricardus, prior of theire place, to the archebischop of Cawnterbery by licence of þe kynge; to whom Criste apperede in the xj^the^ yere of his presidency in a vision, seyenge to hym: "Thow hase dispende and wastede ylle the goodes of my "churche, wherefor y schalle take the from this worlde;"

MS. HARL. 2261.

---

[1] *lygiauns*, γ.
[2] *fewty*, Cx.
[3] *þerto*, β.; *they be therto*, Cx.
[4] *aulter*, Cx.
[5] *be*] om. α., β., and Cx.
[6] *fey*, β.
[7] From Cx.
[8] *heyhely*, Cx.
[9] *chese*, γ.; *cheese*, Cx.
[10] *rote*, Cx.

post hoc octava die. Crucis obsequium, quod dudum rex Henricus in partibus transmarinis sumpserat, et postmodum coram duobus cardinalibus se[1] post triennium persecuturum juraverat, lapso triennio misit Romam ad protelandum frustratorie[2] fallax propositum,[3] sub eo tamen colore,[4] ut tria monasteria construeret in Anglia, quod et isto modo fiet,[5] canonicos sæculares de Waltham[6] ad conventualem redegit[7] vitam; moniales de Ambresbury[8] extirpavit, alias de transmarinis partibus intrudendo; domum Cartusiensis ordinis apud Whetham[9] juxta Sarisburiensem exiliter instauravit. Hic et[10] receperat dudum[11] in custodia[12] filiam[13] regis Francorum ut eam filio suo[14] Pictavensi comiti copularet; Verum quia post mortem Rosamundæ puellæ[15] illa[16] abusus fuerat, Ricardus filius suus matrimonium recusavit. Proinde proposuit rex hanc puellam duxisse, qua de causa Huguntionem cardinalem ad divorciandum

Gratiæ MCLXXXI. Henrici II. XXI.

[1] *se*] om. B.
[2] *fuscatorie*, C.D.
[3] *negotium*, B.
[4] *colore*] om. A.
[5] *fecit*, A.B.
[6] *juxta Londoniam*, add. C.D.
[7] *reddidit*, A.
[8] *Ambirsbyry juxta Sarum*, C.D.
[9] *Witham*, B.C.D.
[10] *etiam*, A.
[11] *rex Henricus*, C.D.
[12] *sua*, B.
[13] *Ludovici*, add. C.D.
[14] *Ricardo*, add. B.C.D.
[15] *puellæ*] om. A.
[16] *ista Francigena*, C.D.

was aferde, and deide þe xviii.[1] day þerafter. Þe charge of al[2] travaille of þe takynge of þe cros þat Henry [þe][3] kyng hadde i-take somtyme by3onde þe see, and swore afterward byfore[4] two cardynales þat he wolde pursue[5] it after two[6] 3ere, when þe[7] 3ere were i-passed[8] he sent to Rome forto have lenger delay and[9] idel[10] of his giltful[11] doynge, and þat by suche a feyned colour, þat he schulde make þre abbayes in Engelond, and so he dede in þis manere: of seculer chanouns of Waltham he made chanouns ruler;[12] and dede away þe mynchouns[13] of Ambresbury, and brou3t þider oþer mynchouns[13] from by-3onde þe see; and restored sympelliche[14] þe Chartre Hous[15] at Witham besides Salisbury. Also he hadde i-fonge somtyme to kepynge þe kynges dou3ter of Fraunce, for he schulde marie hire to his sone Richard eorle of Peytow and of Angeoy.[16] But after þe deth of Rosamounde he lay by þis[17] mayde, þerfore his sone Richard refusede[18] þe mariage; þerfore þe kyng caste to wedde þis wenche,[19] and þerfore he prayed Hugucio[20] þe cardinal

Trevisa.

and so he dyede thro þat fere in the viij[the] day folowynge. Kynge Henricus sende to Rome to be discharged of the promyse that he made to go the holy Londe, in this condicion, that he wolde edifye iij. monasterys in Ynglonde. Whiche monasterys he made in this wise: for the firste he expelled canons seculer from Waltham, and putte chanons reguler into that monastery. For the secunde he putte awey the myncheons of Ambresbery, and putte other myncheons of behynde the se in hit. And for the thrydde, he instaurede a place of the ordre Cartusiense at Wytham, nye to Salisbery. Also the seide kynge Henricus receyvede late in to his kepynge the do3hter of the kynge of Fraunce, that he scholde marye her to Ricardus his sonne erle Pictavense. But in that he usede to synne with that mayde after the dethe of Rosamunde, Ricardus his sonne refusede to mary with her. Wherefore the kynge was in purpose to have maryede that mayde to his wyffe, insomoche that he desirede Hugucion the

MS. Harl. 2261.

---

[1] *ei3te, β.*; *ey3te, γ.*; *eyght*, Cx.
[2] *al*] þe, *β.*
[3] From *β.*
[4] *tofore, α.* and *β.*
[5] *poursue*, Cx.
[6] *þre, β.*; *thre*, Cx.
[7] *thre*, Cx.
[8] *a passed, β.*
[9] *and*] an, *β.*; in, Cx.
[10] *an ydel, γ.*
[11] *gylfol, β.* and *γ.*; *gyleful*, Cx.
[12] *reuler, γ.*; *reguler*, Cx.
[13] *monchons, β.*, bis; *mynchens, γ.*, bis; *menchons*, Cx., bis.
[14] *sympleeh, β.*; *semplelyche, γ.*
[15] *Charthous, β.*; *Chartrous*, Cx.
[16] *and of Angeoy*] om. *β.* and Cx.
[17] *þues, γ.*
[18] *recused, β.*
[19] *þues wynche, γ.*
[20] *Huguncio*, Cx.

inter ipsum et reginam Alienoram invitavit, ut sic, majori Francorum favore fretus, filios proprios exheredaret. Postmodum ingruente bello inter ipsum et regem Franciæ pro castello Radingi,[1] petiit rex Henricus puellam prædictam ad opus Johannis filii sui una cum comitatibus Pictaviæ et Andegaviæ. Sed rex Franciæ spretas hujus legationis litteras transmisit Ricardo[2] inspiciendas. Qua de causa inexorabile odium inter patrem et filium est exortum.[3] Audita sunt insolita tonitrua die[4] Natalis Domini. Et[5] sacerdos quidam apud Andovere in Hampteshire in medio populi extinctus est de fulmine, nullo alio attacto: sed porci videbantur discurrere inter eos. [6]Tempestas grandinea consumpsit aves, animalia et homines, nocte[7] Magdalenæ. *Giraldus, distinctione xvi.*[8] His nostris diebus corpus regis[9] Arthuri, quod quasi fantasticum et in fine

Gratiæ MCLXXVII. Henrici II. XXIII.

---

[1] *Radulphi*, A.B.C.D.
[2] *comiti*, C.D.
[3] *ortum*, B.; C.D. add: "Hugo "comes Cestriæ conquæsivit terram "de Bromfeld."
[4] *nocte*, A.B.
[5] *Et . . . cos*] om. C.D.
[6] *Hoc etiam anno*, add C.D.
[7] *beatæ Mariæ*, add B.; *die Mariæ*, C.D.
[8] *prima*, A.
[9] *regis*] om. B.

for to come and make devors[1] bytwene hym and Elianore þe queene, for he[2] hopede so to have more help and favoure of Frenchemen to disherite his owne sones moder.[3] [Afterward felle werre bytwene hem[4] and þe kyng of Fraunce for Castel Raph, and kyng Henry axede þis wenche[5] to wedde here to his sone John, and axed wiþ here þe erldom[6] of Peitou and of Anioye.[7] But þe kyng of Fraunce assented nouȝt to þis askynge, but he sente[8] [þe][8] lettres to Richard, for[9] he schulde hem see. Perfore roos a greet[10] werre[11] bytwixe þe fader and þe sone.][12] Grislich þondringe was i-herd in a mydwynter nyȝt at Andevere in Hampschire; a preost was i-smyte to þe deeþ wiþ liȝtnynge in þe myddel of þe peple, and non oþer man was i-touched, and swyn were i-seie among hem renne[13] up and doun; tempest of haille[14] slouȝ foules, bestes, and men in a Mary[15] Magdeleyns[16] nyȝt. *Giraldus, distinctio* 16. Þis tyme, þat was in oure tyme, kyng Arthures body [was founden][17] þat was

TREVISA.

cardinalle to have commen to Ynglonde, and to have made specialle labor to hym to make a divorce betwene hym and Alienor his wife, that he myȝhte thro that mariage rejoyce the favor of the kynge of Fraunce and prevayle ageyne his sonnes. After that a batelle lyke to folowe for the castelle of Radin, betwene the kynge of Ynglonde and the kynge of Fraunce, kynge Henricus desirede the doȝhter of the kynge of Fraunce to Iohn his sonne with the cowntes Andegavy and of Pictavia. But the kynge of Fraunce despisynge those letters sende theyme to Richarde his sonne, for whiche wrytynge a wikkede hate and a malicious was movede betwene the fader and þe sonne. Thundres to be mervaylede were herde on Cristemasse nyȝhte in this yere in Ynglonde, and a preste at Andover in Hampteschire with the lyȝhtenge in the myddes of the hoste, noon oþer man towchede, but hit semede that swyne did renne amonge theyme. A grete tempeste of hayle consumede bestes, bryddes, and men in the nyȝhte of Mary Magdalen. *Giraldus, distinctione sextadecima.* The body off kynge Arthure was founde this tyme

MS. HARL. 2261. f. 362 b.

[1] *divorse*, β.
[2] *sche*, α.
[3] *moder*] om. α., β., γ., and Cx.
[4] *hym*, β. and Cx.
[5] *þues weyneche*, γ.
[6] *erldoms*, β. and γ.
[7] *Angeo*, Cx.
[8] From β.
[9] *bycause*, Cx.
[10] *grisliche*, β.
[11] *a grisely wreth*, Cx.
[12] From α., γ., and Cx.
[13] *eorne*, γ.
[14] *hawel*, β. and γ.; *hayel*, Cx.
[15] *Mary*] om. β. and γ.
[16] *Maudelaynes*, α.; *Maudeleyn*, Cx.
[17] From Cx.

Nota hic de Arturo quomodo erat sepultus.

tanquam ad longinqua[1] deductum fabulæ Britannicæ adhuc venturum confinxerunt, apud Glastoniam inter duas lapideas pyramides in sacro cimeterio quondam erectas, profunde in terra[2] quercu concava reconditum, et signatum miris indiciis, est inventum, et in ecclesia honorifice translatum, marmoreoque tumulo decenter collocatum, ubi et crux plumbea lapide suppositis litteris insculptas[3] interius ad lapidem versas, quas ego vidi et contrectavi, continebat sub hac forma: "*Hic* "*jacet sepultus inclitus rex Arthurus cum Wenevera*[4] "*uxore sua secunda in insula Avalona.*"[5] Sic autem erant ossa distincta ut duæ[6] partes sepulchri versus caput ossa viri continebant tertia pars versus pedes ossa mulieris conclusit, ubi et,[7] trica-comæ mulieris flava cum integritate pristina et colore reperta fuit, quam cum[8]

---

[1] *per spiritum*, add. C.D.
[2] *profunde in terra*] om. B.
[3] *superposito litteras insculptas*, A.
[4] *Wenor*ª, B.
[5] *Avelana*, A.; *Avelona*, B.
[6] *duæ*] om. B.
[7] *ubi et*] ut, A.
[8] *ut*, B.

i-counted as it were fantastik, and i-brouȝt as it were a fire[1] at an ende, and fabil of Britouns i-feyned þat he schulde efte come and be kyng. At Glastyngbury bytwene tweie[2] pilers þat were arered of stoon somtyme in þe holy cherche hawe,[3] by wonder tokenes and warnynges þis Arthures body was founde i-buried and i-naked[4] in an holouȝ stoone[5] deep in þe eorþe, and so he was i-take up and translated worschipfulliche into þe cherche, and i-leyd honestliche in a tombe of marbil stoon: þere was i-founde a croys of leede, and a stoon þeruppon, and lettres i-wrete wiþynne in þe croys i-torned toward the stoon, þe whiche[6] lettres I handeled[7] and I radde[8] in þis manere foorme: *Hic jacet sepultus inclitus rex Arthurus cum Wennerva uxore sua secunda* [*in*][9] *insula Avalona:* þat is, here lyþ i-buried þe nobil kyng Arthur wiþ his secounde wyf Wennerver[10] in þe ilond of[11] Avalon. Þe bones were i-leide in þe grave so þat þe tweie deles of the grave toward þe heed conteyned þe manis bones, and þe þridde deel toward þe feet conteyned þe womman bones; þere þe ȝelew heere[12] of þe womman trasses[13] was i-founde hoole and sounde, wiþ fresche[14] colour and hewe[15] as it hadde somtyme; but a monk

[1] *afer, β.*; *a ver, γ.*; *fer,* Cx.
[2] *two, α.* and Cx.
[3] *heye, β.*; *hygh,* Cx.
[4] *i-marked, α.* and *γ.*; *marked, β.* and Cx.
[5] *ook, α.*; *oke, β.* and Cx.; *holuȝ oke, γ.*
[6] *whoche, γ.*
[7] *ich handled, β.*
[8] *I radde*] redde, *α.*; rad, *β.*; radde, *γ.*; radde and handled, Cx.
[9] From Cx.
[10] *Wennever, α., β., γ.,* and Cx.
[11] *þe ilond of*] om. Cx.
[12] *ȝelowe tresses, β.*; *ȝelou tresses, γ.*; *yelow tresses of the womans heere,* Cx.
[13] *here, β.*; *her, γ.*
[14] *vreysche, γ.*
[15] *huw, γ.*

TREVISA.

at Glaston, betwene ij. berialles of ston in the churche yerde, putte depe into the erthe in an holowe oke, and was translate into the churche and put into a beryalle of marbole, conteynenge in the seide olde beryalle a crosse of ledde havynge þis wrytynge in hit: "The noble kynge Arthure with Guenera "his secunde wif lyethe beryede here in the yle Avalon." The boones of theyme were so distincte that ij. partes of the beryalle towarde the hedde contenede the boones of Arthure, and the thrydde parte towarde the feete conclusede the boones of his wife, where thre yelow heres of the same woman were founde noo thynge chaungede in coloure by moisture of the erthe. And a monke of that place takynge

MS. HARL. 2261.

monachus unus avide cum manu attraxisset, tota statim in pulverem decidit.[1] Audierat namque rex iste[2] Henricus a quodam historico cantore Britannico quod profunde in terra circiter xv.[3] pedes corpus Arthuri invenirent in quercu concava. Idcirco autem tam profunde humatus fuerat ne a Saxonibus sibi æmulis[4] facile reperiretur. Et ideo[5] litteræ veritatis indices interius versus[6] lapidem sculptæ erant. Et est notandum quod tibiæ Arthuri tunc nobis ostensæ tibiam et genu longissimi hominis tunc reperti tribus digitis excedebat, spatium quoque intercilii inter duos oculos[7] palmalem latitudinem continebat. In cujus capite x^cc^ vulnerum cicatrices apparebant. Quæ omnia præter unum solum quod letale videbatur[8] in unam cicatricem concurrebant. Jerusalem capta est a Saracenis et destructa.

Gratiæ MCLXXX. Henrici II. XXVI. *De pontificibus Romanorum.*[9] Lucius tertius post Alexandrum sedit papa annis iiii^or^ mensibus iii^bus^.[10]

Gratiæ MCLXXXI. Henrici II. XXVII. Quo anno obiit Hugo comes Cestriæ apud Leek, cui successit filius suus Ranulphus tertius L^ta^ annis. Hoc

---

[1] *condidit*, B.
[2] *iste*] om. B.
[3] *xvi.*, C.D.
[4] *quos tantopere debellavit*, C.
[5] *inde*.
[6] *interius ad*, C.D.
[7] *inter duos oculos*] om. A.; *capitis ipsius*, ins. C.D.
[8] *quod . . . videbatur*] om. B.
[9] *Jerusalem . . . Romanorum*] om. A.; B. omits title.
[10] *tribus*] om. B.

touched it coveitousliche wiþ his hond, and anon it fel[1] al into poudre. Þis kyng Henry hadde i-hed[2] somtyme of a Britoun þat knewe stories and was a synger of gestes, þat kyng Arthures body schulde be founde in an holou3 ook[3] aboute a[4] fiftene foot[5] deep in þe erþe: he was i-buried so depe[6] leste þey[7] were li3tliche i-founde of þe Saxons þat were his enemyes. And þerfore lettres were i-wrete and i-graved wiþ ynne toward þe stoon, to be iuge and witnesse of þe soþenesse and truþe. And also have mynde þat Arthures scheen[8] boon þat was þe[9] i-schewed was lenger by þre ynches þan þe leg and þe kne of þe lengest[10] man þat was þoo[11] i-founde. Also þe space of his forhede bytwene his tweye ey3en[12] was a spanne brood. Also in his heed were i-seyne[13] wemmes of ten woundes, and it semede þat þey come alle into oon wemme [outake þe wemme][14] of oon wounde. Ierusalem is take and destroyed of þe Sarsyns. After Alisaundre, þe þridde Lucius was pope a 3ere and foure monþes; þat 3ere deide Hughe[15] erle of Chestre at Leek; his sone þe þridde Ranulph was eorle after hym fifty 3ere. Also þat 3ere deide Henry, þat was the kynges eldest sone: of hym oon

TREVISA.

theyme gredily in hys honde, thei were redacte sodenly into powdre. For this kynge Henricus herde oftetymes mynstrells of the Britons synge afore hym that kynge Arthure scholde be beryede depe in the erthe by the space of xv. foote in an holowe oke, for cause that he scholde not be founde li3htely by the Saxons enemyes to hym. Also hit is to be attended that the boon of the legge of Arthur, schewede to us at that tyme, excedede the boon of the legge of any man in this tyme by iij. fyngers, and the space betwene his browes contenede the palme of an honde in brodenesse. In the hedde of whom x. signes of grete woundes did appere, whiche semede to mete in oon, oon wounde excepte. Ierusalem was taken and destroyede by the Saracenys. Lucius the thrydde succedid pope Alexander iiij. yere and ij. monethes. In whiche yere Hew erle of Chestre diede at Leek, whom Ranulphus his sonne did succede xlvij. yere. Henricus the eldeste sonne of

MS. HARL. 2261.

f. 363 a.

[1] *fel*] to fil, β.
[2] *y-herd*, α.; *herde*, β. and Cx.
[3] *oke*, β.; *holow oke*, Cx.
[4] *a*] om. Cx.
[5] *vot*, γ.
[6] *duepe*, γ.
[7] *he*, Cx.
[8] *Arthur his schyne*, α.; *schyn*, β.
[9] *thenne*, Cx.
[10] *lynguste*, γ.
[11] *than*, Cx.
[12] *yen*, γ.
[13] *seen*, β.
[14] From α., β., γ., and Cx.
[15] *Huwe*, γ.

Gratiæ MCLXXXII. Henrici II. XXVIII.

etiam [anno][1] obiit Henricus[2] primogenitus regis,[3] de quo quidam cecinit.[4] *Versus de Henrici regis primogenito.*[5]

Omnis honoris honos, decor et decus urbis et orbis;
Militiæ splendor, gloria, lumen, apex;
Julius ingenio, virtutibus Hector, Achilles
Viribus, Augustus moribus, ore Paris.

Cap. XXIV.

[*Baldewynus archiepiscopus. De gestis et morte Henrici secundi regis Angliæ.*]

Gratiæ MCLXXXIV. Henrici II. XXX.

Hoc anno mortuo Ricardo Cantuariensi archiepiscopo successit Baldewynus, Wygorniensis tunc episcopus, de consensu regis et omnium episcoporum, reclamantibus tamen monachis Cantuariensibus. De[6] eo fertur quod a primo die quo factus est monachus Cisterciensis usque[7] ad obitum[8] nunquam carnes comedit. Unde et illi aliquando itineranti occurrit quædam vetula macilenta acquirens[9] ab eo an verum esset quod carnes non comederet. "Verum est," inquit. At illa: "Immo falsum est,

---

[1] *anno*] from A.B.
[2] *juvenis quondam coronatus*, add. C.D.
[3] *Angliæ*, B.; *Henrici cunctis generosus*, add. C.D.
[4] *sic cecinit*, A.; *sic metrice*, B.
[5] A.B.C.D. omit heading.
[6] *De . . . tibi* (page 68)] om C.D.
[7] *usque ad obitum*] om. A.
[8] *suum*, B.
[9] *inquirens*, A.B.

seide in þis manere: "*Omnis honoris honos, decor et decus urbis* TREVISA.
"*et orbis;*" þat is, [Worschip][1] of al worschippe, fairnes[2]
and worschippe of þe citee and of þe worlde[3] [wyde].[4] "*Mi-*
"*licie splendor, gloria, lumen, apex;*" þat is, to[5] schynynge
and blis, liȝt and heed of chivalrie. "*Julius ingenio, virtutibus*
"*Hector, Achilles viribus, Augustis*[6] *moribus, ore Paris;*"
þat is, Julius in witte, Ector in vertues, Achilles in strengþe,
Augustus in þewes, Parys in mouth.

Capitulum vicesimum quartum.

THIS ȝere whan Richard archebisshop of Canturbury was dede, Baldewyn bisshop of Wircestre[7] was archebisshop after hym by assent of þe kyng and of alle þe bisshoppes. But þe monkes of Canturbury wiþ seide it wiþ all þat þey myȝte. Of hym it is i-seide þat he ete nevere flesche from þe firste day þat he was i-made white monke to his lyfes ende. Þan[8] in a tyme by þe wey an olde lene womman mette hym, and axede[9] ȝif it were sooth þat he ete no manere flesche. "It
"is sooþ," quoþ he. "Hit is false," quoþ heo,[10] "for þow

---

kynge Henricus the secunde diede in this yere, whom a MS. HARL. 2261.
metricion dothe commende in this wyse:

"Omnis honoris honos, decor et decus urbis et orbis;
"Militiæ splendor, gloria, lumen, apex.
"Iulius ingenio, virtutibus Hector, Achilles
"Viribus, Augustus moribus, ore Paris.

Capitulum vicesimum quartum.

RYCHARDE archebischop of Cawnterbery dedde, Baldewyne bischoppe of Worcestre was electe by consente of the kynge and of alle bischoppes, but monkes of Cawnterbery were contrarious. To whom hit is seide that he did never eite flesche from the tyme that he was made monke unto his dethe; whom a olde woman mette in a tyme, inquirynge of hym wheþer hit were tru that he did eite noo flesche. The bischoppe seide hit was tru. The woman seide, "Hit is fals, thow hase eiten me

---

[1] From β.; *Worschyp*, γ.
[2] *feyrnes*, α.; *veyrnes*, γ.
[3] *worl*, γ.
[4] From α., β., γ., and Cx.
[5] *to*] om. α., β., γ., and Cx.
[6] *Augustus*, α., β., and Cx.
[7] *Wyrcetre*, Cx.
[8] Þan] om. α., β., and Cx.
[9] *axide*, β.
[10] *quaþ hue*, γ.

" quia comedisti carnes meas usque ad ossa; nam[1] de-
" cani tui abstulerunt a me vaccam meam unicam unde
" sustentabar."[2] Cui:[3] " Vere, vere, favente Domino,[4]
" æque bona vacca reddetur tibi." Quarto anno præsulatus sui orta dissensione inter ipsum et conventum Cantuariensem propter nova ædificia et basilicam constructam juxta muros monachorum, in qua designavit clericos sæculares, assignando[5] eis prebendas de ecclesiis[6] monachorum, compulsus est ipse per papam Urbanum ædificia[7] tollere. Undè translata sunt apud Lambitham[8] juxta Londoniam, ex opposito Westimonasterii. Tandem iste Baldewynus crucis legatione fungens sub anno gratiæ M° C° LXXXVIII. Walliam intravit, et in cunctis cathedralibus ecclesiis, quod usque tunc visum non fuerat, pontificalibus indutus[9] celebravit. *De pontificibus Romanorum.*[10] Urbanus tertius post Lucium sedit papa quasi duobus annis, qui obiit ex dolore pro captione Jerusalem[11] per Saracenos. Quo in tempore venit Heraclius[12] patriarcha Jerosolomitanus in Angliam

Gratiæ MCLXXXV. Henrici II. XXXI.

---

[1] *nam*] om. A.
[2] *sustentabatur*, B.
[3] *ille*, B.
[4] *Deo*, A.
[5] *in . . . assignando*] om. C.D.
[6] *ecclesia*, B.
[7] *illa*, add. B.
[8] *Lambythe*, B.; *Lamitham*, C.D.
[9] *indutus*] om. A.; *missas*, ins. C.D.
[10] A.B.C.D. omit heading.
[11] *concepto*, add. C.D.
[12] *Eraclius*, A.

" hast i-ete my flesche [1] anon to þe bones; ffor I ne [2] hadde [3] " but oon kowe [4] þat I was susteyned by, and þy Danes [5] " haþ [6] bynome me þat kow." He answerde and seide, " Truly by þe grace of God þou schalt have as good a kow as " þat [7] was." Þe fourþe [8] ȝere of his bisshopriche fil stryf bytwene hym and þe covent [9] of Caunterbury, for newe houses and cherches [10] þat was i-bulde [11] faste by þe monken [12] walles, in þe whiche cherche he hadde i-ordeyned seculer clerkes, and assignede [13] hem provendres of þe monkene [12] cherches; þan he was compelled to take awey þe bulders,[14] and þey were translated to Lambhyþe [15] faste by Londoun aforne [16] Westmynstre þat [17] ȝere of oure Lord elevene hondred foure score and eiȝte. Þis Baldewyn [18] had þe office of [19] legacie of þe cros and wente into Wales, and songe in every cathedral chirche of Wales a masse in pontificalibus, and þat was nevere i-seie tofore þat tyme. After Lucius, þe þridde Urban was pope as it were two ȝere; he deide for sorwe þat Ierusalem was i-take of þe Sarsyns. Þat tyme com Heraclius patriark of Ierusalem into Engelonde to kyng Henry, and prayed hym help aȝenst þe

Trevisa.

" to the bare boones, for thy officers have taken a kowe awey " from me, with whom y was norischede." The bischop seide, " Truly thro the favor of God thow schalle have as goode a " kowe restorede to the." A dissencion sprange betwene hym and the monkes of Cawnterbery for a newe place nye to theym in whom he hade intended to have putte prebendaryes, and to have assignede to þeim prebendes of þe monkes. Neverthelesse he was compelled by pope Urban to take downe that place made, whom he brouȝhte to Lambithe nye to London, anendes Westemynstre. Urbanus the thrydde succedid Lucius the pope as ij. yere, whiche dyede thro sorowe for the takynge of Ierusalem. In whiche tyme Heraclius patriarke of Ierusalem comme to Ynglonde to kynge Henricus, askenge helpe ageyne

MS. Harl. 2261.

---

[1] *vleysch*, γ.
[2] *ne*] om. Cx.
[3] *nadde*, β.
[4] *knowe*, α.; *cowe*, β.
[5] *denes*, α.; *deenes*, β. and Cx.; *dyens*, γ.
[6] *haveþ*, α.
[7] *sche*, α. and Cx.; *heo*, β.; *hue*, γ.
[8] *vurde*, γ.
[9] *convent*, Cx.
[10] *hous and cherche*, α. and β.
[11] *were buyld*, Cx.
[12] *monkes*, β. and Cx.
[13] *ordeyned*, Cx.
[14] *buldes*, α.; *buyldes*, β.; *byldyng*, Cx.
[15] *Lamphythe vaste*, γ.
[16] *avorne*, γ.
[17] *þat*] þe, β.; the, Cx.
[18] *Baudwyn*, Cx.
[19] *þe*, α.

ad regem Henricum, petens auxilium contra Saracenos ex parte omnium[1] Christianorum orientalium, offerens ei[2] claves urbis sacrae[3] Dominicique sepulcri cum vexillo regio et cum litteris[4] Lucii papae monitoriis, ac juramenti regii super hoc prius praestiti commemoratoriis;[5] sed rex responsum usque Londoniam prorogabat. Tandem cum multi ad praedicationem patriarchae ac Baldewyni[6] cruce signarentur, rex Henricus respondit quod terras suas absque tutela deserere non posset, nec Francorum rapacitati eas exponere, sed proficisci volentes abundanter de suis respiceretur.[7] Cui patriarcha: "Nihil " agis, rex; principem quaerimus, non pecuniam: quælibet " paene pars mundi pecuniam nobis mittit, sed principem " nulla.[8] Virum igitur petimus quo pecunia indigeat, " non pecuniam quae viro."[9] Recessit igitur patriarcha spe frustratus; quem rex[10] usque ad mare[11] prosequebatur, ut vel consuetis blandiciis offensum[12] mitigaret.

---

[1] *procerum*, add. C.D.
[2] *sibi*, A.
[3] *sacri*, A.
[4] *libris*, A.
[5] *commemoratoriis*] from A.B. C.D.; *commemoratores*, MS.,
[6] *archiepiscopi*, B.
[7] *de suo respiceret*, A.
[8] *nulla*] om. A.
[9] *eget*, A.B.
[10] *rex*] om. A.
[11] *Dovoriam*, C.D.
[12] *offensum*] om. B.

Sarasyns in þe name of al [þe][1] Cristen men of þe est londes, and profrede hym[2] þe keyes of þe holy citee [and][3] of oure Lordes grave, wiþ þe kynges baner, and lettres of Lucius þe pope þat counsailled and charged hym þat he schulde take þat iournay, and hadde[4] mynde of þe ooth þat he hadde i-made; but þe kyng putte[5] over his answere forto he cam to Londoun, and by þe prechynge of the patriark and of Baldewyn þe archebisshop meny took þe cros to þe holy lond. But Henry answerde and seide þat he myȝte nouȝt forsok[6] and leve his landes wiþ oute warde and kepynge, noþer sette hem[7] to be[8] pray to be[8] robberie of Frensche men, but he wolde ȝeve largeliche of his to men[9] þat wolde [thyder][3] wende. "Kyng," quoþ þe patriark, "it is nouȝt þat þou doost: we "seche þ and aske þ[10] a prince,[11] and nouȝt money; nygh every "lond of þe world sende þ us money, but no lond[12] sende þ "us a prince; þanne we axe þ a man þat nede þ money, and "nouȝt money þat nede þ a man;" and so þe patriark goo þ his way, and his hope his[13] lost; [and þe kyng folwe þ hym anon to þe see, for he wolde wiþ fayre wordes, as he coupe wel, plese þe

Trevisa.

---

the Saracenys in the name of Criste, schewynge to hym the keyes of that hooly cite, and of the sepulcre of oure Lorde, and letters also of the promisse of that kynge made to go to the holy Londe. The kynge made promyse to ȝiffe an answere at London, and soone after þat moche peple merkede with the signe of the crosse at the prechynge off Baldewyne the archebischoppe; the kynge seide he myȝhte not leve his cuntre withowte a governoure ageyn the cruellenes of men of Fraunce. But he seide he wolde ȝiffe grete goodes to men that wolde goe. To whom the patriarke seide, "Þow dose noȝhte: we "desire a prince, and not money, for every parte of the worlde "sendethe money to us, but we gette noo prince. Wherefore "we desyre a prynce that nedethe money, and not money that "nedethe a prynce." And so the patriarke returnede from the londe, whom the kynge folowede unto the see to mitigate his

MS. Harl 2261. f. 363 b.

---

[1] From β.
[2] *hym*] om. Cx.
[3] From Cx.
[4] *made*, Cx.
[5] *pot*, γ.
[6] *vorsake*, γ.; *forsake*, Cx.
[7] *ham*, γ., bis.
[8] *be*] the, Cx., bis.
[9] *hem*, α. and β.; *theym*, Cx.
[10] *axed*, α.; *axeþ*, β.
[11] *prins*, γ., bis.
[12] *man*, Cx.
[13] *is*, β.

Cui ait patriarcha, "Hactenus regnasti gloriose, sed "amodo Ipse te deseret quem tu deseruisti. Recole[1] "quæ tibi Dominus contulit et quali Illi[2] rependisti,[1] "quomodo regi Franciæ infidus fuisti,[3] beatum Thomam "occidisti, et[4] tunc[5] protectionem Christianorum ab- "jecisti."[4] Cumque rex ad hæc[6] excandesceret,[7] obtulit ei patriarcha caput suum et collum dicens: "Fac de "me quod de Thoma fecisti. Adeo volo occidi a te in "Anglia sicut a Saracenis in Syria, quia tu[8] omni "Saraceno pejor es." Cui rex: "Si omnes homines mei "unum corpus essent, unoque[9] ore loquerentur, non "auderent talia mihi dicere." Cui ille:[10] "Non est "mirum, quia tua non te diligunt, prædam non hominem "sequitur turba ista." Tunc rex: "Recedere non "possum, quia tunc[11] filii mei insurgerent in absentem."[12] Cui ille: "Nec mirum, quia de diabolo venerunt et

---

[1] *Recole . . . rependisti*] om. C.D.
[2] *ei*, B.
[3] *et*, B.
[4] *et . . . abjecisti*] om. C.D.
[5] *nunc*, B.
[6] *ad hæc*] om. B.
[7] *ad hæc verba* C.D.
[8] *tamen*, B.
[9] *uno quoque*, A.
[10] *Cui ille*] om. B.
[11] *tunc*] om. A.B.
[12] *absentes*, B.

patriark þat was agreved. But þe patriark spak to þe kyng and seide, "Hyderto[1] þou hast y-regned gloriousliche, but here- "after He wil forsake þe þat þou hast forsake. Þenke and "have mynde[2] what oure Lord haþ y-ȝeve the, and what þou "hast y-ȝelde[3] Hym aȝe, how þou were false to þe kyng of "Fraunce and slouȝ seynt Thomas, and now þou forsakest þe "defens and protectioun of Cristene men." Þe kyng was wrooþ wiþ þese wordes; þe patriark sigh[4] þat, and profrede hym his heed and his necke, and seide, "Do by me ryȝt as þou "dedest[5] by Thomas, for me is as leef[6] by y-slawe[7] of þe in "Engelond as of Sarsyns in Siria, for þou art wors þan eny "Sarsyn." "Þeyȝ al my men," quoþ þe kyng, "were oon body "and speke wiþ oon mouþe, þey dorste nouȝt speke to me "suche wordes." "No wonder," quoþ þe patriark, "for þei "loveþ þyne[8] and nouȝt þe. Þis peple[9] folweþ[10] pray, and "nouȝt a man."][11] Þan þe kyng seide, "I may nouȝt "[wende][12] out of my londes, for myn owne sones wolde arise "aȝenst me when I were absent." "No wonder," quoþ þe patriark, "for of þe devel þey come, and to þe devel þey

Trevisa.

passion and tribulacion. To whom the patryarke seide, "Kynge, "thow hase reignede in grete honoure unto this tyme, but "from this tyme Criste schalle leve the, whom thow hase "forsaken. Remembre what þinges God hathe ȝiffen to the, "and how thow hase made recompensacion, fals to the kynge "of Fraunce, and did sle seynte Thomas, and now thow de- "spises the proteccion of Cristen peple." The kynge vexede with this communication, the patriarke offrede his hede and his nekke to hym, seyenge, "Do to me as thow did to Thomas, "for hit is as leef to me to be sleyne of the in Ynglonde as "of the Saracenys in Siria, for thow arte wors then eny "Saracene." To whom the kynge seide, "And if alle my men "were oon man, and spake with oon mowthe, thei durste not "say in this wise to me." The kynge seide, "Y may not "departe now, for my sonnes wolde trowble my realme in my "absence." The patriarke seide, "Hit is noo mervayle, for "thei comme from the develle, and thei scholde go to hym also."

MS. Harl. 2261.

---

[1] *Hederto* β; *Huderto*, γ.
[2] *munde*, γ.
[3] *yolden*, Cx.
[4] *sawe*, Cx.
[5] *dudest*, γ.
[6] *vor me ys as luf*, γ.
[7] *lef be slayn*, β.
[8] *love thyn*, Cx.
[9] *pupel*, γ.
[10] *folewiþ*, β.
[11] From α., β., and Cx.
[12] From β. and Cx.

" ad diabolum ibunt."[1] Hoc anno misit rex Johannem filium suum in Hiberniam, sed[2] parum ibi proficiens reversus est. *De captione Jerusalem per Saracenos.*[3]

Gratiæ MCLXXXVII. Henrici II. XXXIII. Hoc anno kalendas Maii Saraceni ceperunt Jerusalem, crucem sanctam asportantes, occideruntque magistrum militiæ Templi cum multis nobilibus.[4] Quo audito, multi per orbem sunt cruce signati, inter quos Ricardus Pictaviensis filius hujus[5] regis Henrici cruce signatur, et Baldewynus archiepiscopus hac de causa Walliam intravit, ut supra tactum est.[6] In cujus comitatu erat magister Giraldus Cambrensis archidiaconus Landavensis, qui statum et ritum Cambrigenæ gentis in itinerario[7] descripsit,[8] sicut nuper cum Johanne regis filio Hiberniam missus statum et ritum gentis illius in sua topographia descripserat.[9] Gregorius octavus post Urbanum sedit papa mensibus quatuor,[10] qui pro subsidio Terræ Sanctæ multas misit epistolas; cui successit Clemens tertius, qui sedit papa annis tribus.

Gratiæ MCLXXXVIII. Henrici II. XXXIIII.

Miraculum.[11] Hoc anno[12] Christus visibiliter apparuit in aere cruce pendens apud Dunstapulum[13] in Anglia videntibus multis.[14] Quo etiam anno rex Henricus fecit Ranulphum comitem Cestrensem[15] fore militem, et dedit ei in uxorem Constantiam comitissam

---

[1] *sicut et tu cum illis,* ins. C.D.
[2] *sed . . . Saracenos*] om. C.D.
[3] A.B. omit heading.
[4] *personis,* C.D.
[5] *hujus*] om. A.
[6] *ut . . . est*] om. C.D.
[7] *illo,* A.
[8] *describit,* B.
[9] *descripsit,* B.
[10] *quatuor*] mense uno diebus viginti octo, B.
[11] *Miraculum*] om. A.B.
[12] *Jesus,* A.B.
[13] *Dunstaple,* C.D.
[14] *ab hora meridiana usque ad noctem,* add C.D.
[15] *Cestriæ,* A.B.

" schulleþ."[1] Þis ȝere þe kyng sente his sone John into Irlond, but he dede litel profite þere, and come hoom aȝe. Þis ȝere, þe firste day of May, Sarcyns took Ierusalem, and bere awey þe holy cros, and slowȝ þe maister of þe[2] chevalrie of þe Temple and meny holy[3] men. Whanne þat was i-wost[4] among Cristen men, meny took þe cros to þe Holy Lond in al þe world wide. Among þe whiche[5] Richard of Peytow, kyng Henries sone, took þe crosse also, and for þe same cause Baldewyn þe archebisshop wente into Wales as it is i-touched toforehond. In his company was Gerald Cambrensis, archedecon of Landaf, þat descreved þe maneres of Walsche[6] men in his book þat hatte Itenerarius,[7] as he hadde toforehonde discreved þe staat and maneres of Irischemen in his book þat hatte[8] Topographia, whanne he was i-send wiþ Iohn kyng Henries sone into Irlond. After Urban, þe eyȝte Gregory was pope foure monþes; he sent meny lettres and pistles for socour of þe Holy Lond. After hym þe þridde Clement was pope þre ȝere. Þis ȝere at Dunstapil[9] in Engelond meny men sigh[10] oure Lord[11] Iesus Crist in þe aier[12] honge in[13] þe cros. Also þis ȝere Henry made Ranulph erle of Chestre knyȝt, and ȝaf hym to wyf Constauns contas[14] of Bretayne, þe loove[15] of his sone

TREVISA.

Kynge Henricus sende John his sonne into Yrlonde in þis yere, and returnede ageyne with lytelle profite. The Saracenys toke Jerusalem in this yere, takynge the holy cross with theyme, and did slee the maister of the Temple with mony noble men. That understonde, mony Cristen peple were merkede to go to the holy Londe, amonge whom Ricardus erle Pictavense, sonne of this kynge Henricus, was merkede with the signe of the crosse. Gregorius þe viiij[the] succedid pope Urban iiij. monethes, whiche sende mony epistoles for the subsidy of the holy Londe; whom Clement the thrydde did succede iij. yere. Oure Savioure Criste Iesus apperede visibly in the aiere hongynge on the crosse at Dunstaple in Ynglonde, moche peple seenge that syȝhte. In whiche yere kynge Henricus made Ranulphus erle of Chestre knyȝhte, and toke to his wife Constance the

MS. HARL. 2261.

---

[1] *schullen*, α.; *hy scholdeþ*, γ.; *shal*, Cx.
[2] *þe*] om. β.
[3] *nobil*, α.; *noble*, Cx.
[4] *wyst*, Cx.
[5] *whoche*, γ.
[6] *Walysch*, γ.
[7] *Itinerarius*, Cx.
[8] *Itenerarius . . . hatte*] om. α.
[9] *Dunstaple*, Cx.
[10] *sawe*, Cx.
[11] *sye ur Lord*, γ.
[12] *eyr*, β. and Cx.
[13] *on*, α. and Cx.
[14] *the contesse*, Cx.
[15] *wydowe*, Cx.

Gratiæ MCLXXXIX. Henrici II. XXXV.

Britanniæ, relictam Gaufridi filii sui, cum tota Britannia Minore et cum comitatu Richemundiæ. Reges[1] Franciæ et Angliæ et Ricardus Pictaviæ[2] comes, cum aliis multis nobilibus,[3] die sancti Gregorii cruce signantur, ad numerum centum quinquaginta trium millium.[4] Quo anno Fredericus[5] imperator, dum Terram Sanctam excommunicatus [adiret],[6] duxit exercitum suum per Constantinopolim;[7] sed ob nimium æstum in quodam flumine Armeniæ, quod dicitur Gula Sathanæ, se balneans, extinctus est; vel secundum alios equo suo impingente in aquam cecidit et submersus est: apud Tyrum sepelitur. Primogenitus suus in illa expeditione sublatus est.[8] Successit ad imperium Teutonicorum alter filius ejus Henricus quintus, qui regnavit octo annis, et subjugavit Apuliam[9] et[10] Siciliam. Sed quia regem Angliæ Ricardum[11] de Terra Sancta revertentem de carcere suo nisi data pecunia multa liberare noluerat, excommunicatus est[12] a papa Celestino. Sub qua sententia decedens sepeliri non poterat,[13] nisi aut reddita Ricardo regi pecunia

---

[1] *Rex Angliæ Henricus et rex Franciæ Philippus*, C.D.

[2] *comes Pictavensis*, B.

[3] *insignibus personis ad numerum* 143,000, C.D.

[4] [*c. l. iij.*], A.

[5] *primus*, add. C.D.

[6] *adiret*] from A.B.

[7] *adiret, per terram Alexis imperatoris Constantinopolitani exercitum suum duxit*, C.D.

[8] *Filio quoque primogenito suo, illustri juvene, in eadem expeditione sublato*, add C.D.

[9] *imperium . . . Apuliam*] om. B.

[10] *et*] om. A.

[11] *Ricardum*] om. B.

[12] *est*] om. B.

[13] *potuit*, B.

Gaufred, wiþ al Litel Britayne in [1] þe erldom of Rechemound.[2] Þe kynges of Engelond and of Fraunce, Richard eorle of Peytow, and meny oþer noble men to þe nombre of an hondred þowsand and foure [score] [3] þowsand, took þe cros on seynt Gregory his day. Þat ȝere Frederik þe emperour wente acorsed to þe Holy Lond, and lad his oost by Constantynnoble; bote for grete hete he bathed hym in a ryver of Armenye þat hatte Gula Sathane, þat is, Sathanas is þrote, and [there] [3] Frederik was adreynt; [4] oþer as som men telleþ his hors stombled and fel [5] into þe water, and so was he adreynt, [4] and was i-buried at Tirus: his eldest sone was dede in þe same iournay, and his oþer sone, þe fifte Henry, was emperour of Almayne after hym, and regnede eiȝte ȝere, and wan Apulia and Cicilia, [6] and was acorsed of pope Celestinus, for Richard kyng of Engelond was i-take whan he cam from þe Holy Lond, and i-holde in þis [7] emperours prisoun, and myȝte nouȝt be delivered wiþ oute a grete somme of money; and þe emperour deide in þe same corsynge, and myȝt nouȝt be i-buried wiþ oute assent of kyng Richard, and [8] bote þat money were i-payde

Trevisa.

---

cowntesse of Briteyne, doȝhter of Gaufride his sonne, with Briteyne the lesse, and with the cowntee of Rychemund. Kynges of Ynglonde and of Fraunce were merkede with the signe of þe crosse, and Ricardus erle Pictavense, in the feste of seynte George, and other peple unto the nowmbre of cliij[ti] M. Frederyke þe emperoure excommunicate goynge to the holy Londe and bryngynge hys hoste by Constantinopole, bathynge in a water nye to Armeny called Glotony of Sathanas, was drownede in hit, and somme men say by the spurrynge of his horse, and was beryede at Tyrus. And his eldeste sonne diede at the sege of Achon and Henricus the v[the], an oþer sonne, was emperoure in Alemayne viij. yere, whiche subduede to hym Apulia and Sicille. Neverthelesse the seide emperoure was excommunicate by Celestinus the pope, in that he toke kynge Richarde commynge from the holy Londe, and wolde not delyver hym untylle that he hade paiede a grete rawnson. Whiche emperoure dyenge in that sentence, cowthe not be beryede untylle the seide summe receyvede were paiede to kynge

MS. Harl 2261. f. 364 a.

---

[1] *in*] and, Cx.
[2] *Rychemond*, Cx.
[3] From Cx.
[4] *drowned*, Cx., bis.
[5] *stomlede and ful*, γ.
[6] *Sicilia*, α. and β.
[7] *the*, Cx.
[8] *and . . . Richard*] om. Cx.

recepta, aut de permissione Ricardi[1] terræ traderetur. Hoc quoque anno orta dissensione inter reges Angliæ et Franciæ, tota illa pecunia quæ ad profectionem Jerosolimitanam ex rerum decimatione collecta fuerat absumpta est. Nam apud urbem Cenomanniam[2] convenientibus contra[3] regem Angliæ rege Franciæ et Ricardo Pictavensi,[4] rex Henricus fecit suburbium succendi ad cautelam ne hostibus suis foret ad præsidium, vis venti retorta convertit flammam in urbem, et totam combussit, et regem Henricum exire coegit. Qui in redeundo[5] talia dixit:[6] "Quia tu, Deus, urbem de "mundo[7] quam plus dilexi hodie tam turpiter a[8] me "abstulisti, ego tibi reddam talionem; nam de cætero "auferam a te id quod in me plus tibi placere deberet, "quod est cor meum."[9] Demum apud Turonensem febre correptus pacem regis Francorum sub hac forma optavit, quod gratiæ regis Francorum salvo honore suo regnique sui corona libenter se submitteret [sed frustra, quia pacem aliter non obtineret nisi gratiæ regis absolute se submitteret.[10]][11] Et merito hoc sibi

[1] *Ricardi*] regis, B.; om. A.
[2] *Cennomannicam*, A.B.
[3] *Henricum*, B.
[4] *comite*, B.
[5] *recedendo*, B.
[6] *fertur dixisse*, B.
[7] *de mundo*] om. B.
[8] *de*, A.
[9] *quod . . . meum*] om. C.D.
[10] *non obtinuit nisi gratiæ regis Francorum absolute se submittendo*, C.D.
[11] from A.

aȝen to kyng Richard. Also þat ȝere fel[1] stryf bytwene þe kynges of Engelond and of Fraunce, and al þe money was i-wasted þat was arered in demes[2] for þe iorney in[3] goyng to Ierusalem; for at þe citee Cenomannia þe kyng of Fraunce and Richard eorle of Peytow come aȝenst þe kyng of Engelonde, and kyng Henry made sette þe subesbes[4] afyre,[5] for a cautel of[6] his enemyes schulde have[7] no socour þerynne, bote þe strengþe of þe wynde droof þe leye[8] of þe fuyre into þe toun,[9] and brende up al þe cite, and compelled kyng Henry to goo out of þe citee; and þe kyng in his goynge from þe citee spak suche wordes and seide: "For þou, God,[10] hast bynome me "þis day þe citee þat I[11] most loved in þis world,[12] I schal quyte "þe. For after þis tyme I schal byneme[13] þe þing þat schulde "most plese þe yn me, þat is myn herte." At þe laste at Turon he was i-take wiþ a fevere, and desired to have pees wiþ þe kyng of Fraunce in suche a manere, þat he wolde gladliche put hym self in þe kyng of Fraunce his grace savynge his owne worschippe and þe crowne of his reamne;[14] but al for noȝt, for

Trevisa.

Richarde, or withowte he wolde ȝiffe licence that he scholde be beryede. A dissencion movede in this yere betwene the kynges of Ynglonde and of Fraunce, the money gedrede for the holy Londe was soone wastede. For the kynge of Fraunce and Ricardus erle his sonne, commynge ageyne kynge Henricus, the seide kynge causede the subarbes of the cite of Cenomanny to be brente, that the kynge of Fraunce scholde have noo socoure by hit. But the wynde returnede sette alle the cite in fyre, and compellede kynge Henricus to go from hit; whiche seide in departynge, "Thow God, in that thow hase taken from me "that y luffede beste in this day so fowle, I schalle recompense "the in lyke wyse. For after this tyme y schalle take from "the that thynge whiche þow luffes beste in man, that is myn "herte." At the laste this kynge vexede soore with the fevers at the cite Turonense, desirede to have pease of the kynge of Fraunce in this wyse, that he wolde submitte hym to his grace, his honoure and crowne of his realme salvede. But hit was in

MS. Harl. 2261.

---

[1] *fil*, β.; *vul*, γ.
[2] *of dymes*, α., β., γ., and Cx.
[3] *and*, α., β., and Cx.
[4] *subarbes*, α., β., and Cx.; *suburbarbes*, γ.
[5] *afuyr*, β.; *avuyr*, γ.
[6] *for*, α. and β.; *bycause*, Cx.
[7] *habbe*, γ.
[8] *lye*, β.; *layte*, Cx.
[9] *citee*, α.; *cite*, β.; *cyte*, Cx.
[10] *God*] om. β.
[11] *ich*, γ.
[12] *worl*, γ.
[13] *benyme*, Cx.
[14] *and his rewme*, β.; *regme*, γ.; *and his royamme*, Cx.

provenit quia illud verbum "salvo honore Dei[1] et ordinis "sui dignitate, et ecclesiæ[2] libertate" Thomæ non concessit.[3] Igitur[4] cum apud Chynonense[5] castrum rex Henricus decederet, omnes circumstantes ita rapacitati indulserunt ut corpus ejus[6] diu jaceret, nudum donec puer quidam inferiores corporis partes pallio brevi contegeret. Et tunc videbatur[7] cognomen ejus adimpletum quo ab[8] infantia vocabatur Henricus Courtmantel. Nam iste primus omnium[9] curta mantilla ab Andegavia transvexit in Angliam. Ferebant quoque de eo qui funeri astabant quod quamdiu[10] Ricardus filius suus paterno astaret[11] cadaveri, utraque patris naris sanguinem distillavit. Per octo dies ante obitum hujus regis pisces de quodam stagno Normanniæ exilientes nocturno tempore cum tanto strepitu sunt congressi, ut homines vicini ad spectaculum venientes[12] vix[13] unum piscem superstitem reperirent.[14]

---

[1] *suo*, B.

[2] *suæ*, B.

[3] *beato*, ins. B.; *rex iste semper impugnavit. Igitur*, &c., C.D.

[4] *Igitur cum iste rex Henricus filius imperatricis xxxiij. annis regnasset, anno Domini m.clxxxix., mense Julii, in octabas Apostolorum Petri et Pauli, apud Chunonense castrum febre invalescente obiit princeps inter reges orbis terrarum nominatissimus. ac in multitudine prolis felicissimus, nisi in eum qui ex ejus femore exierunt insurrexissent*, B.

[5] *Cinonense*, A.

[6] *regis*, B.

[7] *Henricus in curto mantello. Nam iste*, &c., C.D.

[8] *ab*] om. A.

[9] *primo*, B.

[10] *q^am*, A.

[11] *astabat*, B.

[12] *ubi mane facto*, C.D.

[13] *vix*] om. B.

[14] C.D. insert here a passage from the beginning of cap. xxvi.

he myȝte gete noo pees but if he wolde wiþ oute [eny][1] condicioun putte hym in þe kynges grace; and it was wel worthy, for he grauntede nouȝt to Thomas þis word, "savynge þe worschippe "of God and þe dignetee of his ordre and þe fredom[2] of holy "chirche." Þan kyng Henry deide in the castel Chinonens,[3] and al þat were aboute hym ȝaf hem so to robberye and to bryberie[4] þat þe kynges body lay naked long tyme, ffor to a childe heled[5] þe neþer parties of his body wiþ a schort cloke: it þo semede þat his surname was fulfilled þat he hadde of his childhode, Henry schort cloke, þat hatte schort mantel byȝonde[6] þe see. For þis was þe firste þat brouȝt schort clokes out of Angoye[7] into Engelond. Also þey þat were þere as he was dede, tolde þat al þe while þat his sone stood by his fader body, þe fader [boþe][8] nostrilles[9] bledde dropes of blood. Eyȝte dayes tofore þis kynges deep visches[10] leep out of a pond in Normandie, and fouȝte[11] strongliche to gidres wiþ so greet noyse þat men of þe contray aboute come þider out of everich side for to se þe wonder, and fonde unneþe eny fisch [alyve].[12] TREVISA.

---

veyne, for he cowthe not have grace in eny wise withowte he wolde submitte hym to his grace utterly; and by meryte, for he grauntede not to seynte Thomas þat worde, "salvynge the honor "of God, the dignite of his ordre and liberte off the churche." Wherefore kynge Henricus dyenge at þe castelle of Chinonense, men beynge abowte ȝafe to grete attendaunce to take and purchase goodes, that the body of the kynge was bare by a longe season and space, untylle that a childe coverede the inferialle partes of his body. And then his name Courtmantell was fullefyllede, for the seide kynge brouȝthe a schorte mantell firste from Gascoigne unto Ynglonde. And somme men say þat while Ricardus his sonne was presente by that corse bothe the nostrelles of the kynge distillede bloode. Also by viij. daies afore the dethe of this kynge, fysches in a water in Normandy made so grete noyse with lepynge, that men commynge to see that syȝhte cowthe fynde unnethe oon fische in lyfe. MS. HARL. 2261. f. 364 b.

---

[1] From α. and β.; *ony*, Cx.
[2] *vredom*, γ.
[3] *Cynonens*, Cx.
[4] *briborye*, α.; *brybury*, γ.
[5] *coveryd*, Cx.
[6] *byȝunde*, γ.
[7] *Angeo*, Cx.
[8] From β. and γ.
[9] *noseþurlles*, γ; *nosetherles*, Cx.
[10] *ffisses*, α.; *fisches*, β.. *fysshes*, Cx.
[11] *vouȝte*, γ.
[12] From β., γ., and Cx.

Cap. XXV.

[Ricardus rex Angliæ. Judæorum exitium. De Willelmo Eliensi episcopo.]

Gratiæ MCXC. Ricardi primo.

Mortuo Henrico rege apud Fontem [1] Ebrardi et [2] sepulto, successit filius suus Ricardus, per decem annos regnaturus. Cujus mores et actus Stephanus Cantuariensis luculenter descripsit. At ne præsens historia careat insigniis tanti ducis, libellum Stephani cursim studui deflorare. Rex igitur iste rebus transmarinis mature dispositis Angliam redit [3] coronandus. In cujus adventu carceres relaxantur. Coronatur quoque Londoniæ a Baldewyno Cantuariensi [4] tertio nonas Septembris, qui dies ex prisca gentilium superstitione malus vel Egyptiacus dicitur, tanquam quodam Judaici eventus præsagio. Nam dies ille Judæis Angligenis exitialis fuisse dinoscitur. Convenerant ad hæc solemnia multi Judæorum, ne forte habita sub priore rege [6] felicitas minus eis arrideret sub novo.[7] Illis tamen interdixit rex ingressum ecclesiæ dum coronaretur, et ingressum palatii dum epularetur. Rege tamen epulante quidam

---

[1] *Waltham*, C.D.
[2] *et*] om. B.
[3] *rediit*, B.
[4] *archiepiscopo*, A.
[5] *tam a quodam*, B.
[6] *Henrico*, add. C.D.
[7] *icono*, B.

Capitulum vicesimum quintum. TREVISA.

KYNG Henry is deed at Fontenbraud,[1] and his sone Richard was kyng after hym, and regnede ten ȝere. Stephene[2] of Canturbury discreved cleerliche his manere and his dedes, and for þis storye schulde [not][3] mysse þe noble dedes of so greet a duke, I have studied[4] to take þe floures of Stevenes book. Þis kyng ordeyned redeliche[5] his þinges byȝonde þe see, and cam into Engelond for to be crowned. In his comynge prisouns were i-oponed and he was i-crowned at Londoun of Baldewyn, archebisshop of Caunterbury, þe þridde day of Septembre, þe whiche is acounted an evel day by þe veyn bileve and usage of mysbileved men, as is i-cleped [in][6] þe kalender dayes[7] dies Egipciacus, and dies malus, an evel day by þe veyn bileve,[8] as it were a day of bodynge of evel[9] happes to þe Iewes; [for þe Iewes[10] of Engelond þat[11] hadde[12] evel][13] happes þat day. Meny [Iewes][13] come to þis solempnite leste þe welþe þat þei hadde under þe olde kyng schulde be wiþdrawe in þe newe kynges tyme. But þe kyng heet and comaundede þat þe Iewes schulde nouȝt come into þe chirche while he were i-crowned noþer into þe paleys while he were at mete. But while þe kyng

Capitulum vicesimum quintum. MS. HARL. 2261.

KYNGE Henricus dedde, and beryede at Founte Ebrard, Ricardus his sonne succedid, reignynge by x. yere. The maners and actes off whom Steven of Cawnterbery describethe excellentely. This kynge was crownede at London, of Baldewyne archebischop of Cawnterbery, in the thrydde nones of September, callede an unhappy day, after the olde ryte of Gentiles. For that day was unhappy day to the Iues beynge in Ynglonde, where a grete multitude of theym were commyn to London to see the solemnite of the coronacion, dredynge specially leste thei scholde have lesse favor in the tyme of thys kynge then thei hade in the tyme of his fader. The kynge prohibite the Iewes to entre into the churche when he was crownede, and also when he was at meyte that thei scholde not come to his palyce. Neverthe-

[1] *Fontenebraud*, β.; *Fontenebrad*, γ.; *Fonteverard*, Cx.
[2] *Steven*, Cx.
[3] From α.; *nouȝt*, β.
[4] *y-studed*, γ.
[5] *redyly*, Cx.
[6] From α., β., γ., and Cx.
[7] *dayes*] om. Cx.
[8] *by . . . bileve*] om. α. and Cx.
[9] From α. and Cx., tris.
[10] *Juwes*, γ., et infra.
[11] *þat*] om. α. and β.
[12] *hadden*, β.
[13] From β. and γ.

Judæorum inter cæteros tumultuantes fores regias introibant, quorum unus dum pugno percutitur, turba indisciplinata credens regem talia mandasse, lignis et lapidibus Judæos cecidit et in fugam compulit. Et hoc gratus rumor, tanquam si rex exterminari Judeos jussisset, totam percurrit urbem, moxque fremens populus domus ubi trepidi confugerant Judæi oppugnat, incendit, spoliat neque propter mandata regia desistit. At licet immensitas tantæ rabiei si dissimulata et inulta transiret primordia regiæ majestatis plurimum denigraret, propter infinitam tamen reorum multitudinem dissimulari oportuit quod vindicari non potuit; pace tandem[1] utcumque[2] Judæis data, illico rex vacantes dignitates confert fratri quoque[3] suo Johanni, præter id quod ex dono paterno[4] in Hibernia et Normannia receperat,[5] provincias Cornubiæ, Devoniæ, Notyngham, Lancastre con-

---

[1] *tandem*] om. B.
[2] *utrobique*, C.D.
[3] *fratri suoque*, A.
[4] *paterno*] om. B.
[5] *perceperat*, B.

was at mete som of þe Iewes parsed [1] among opere and come with ynne þe paleys gate,[2] and oon of hem was i-smete wiþ a manis feest.[3] Þan þe rabbisshe [4] peple [5] wende þat þe kyng had so i-hote, and up wiþ staves, battes, and stoones, and leide on þe Iewes and madde hem to flee. Here of sprank [6] likynge tidynges [7] into al þe citee, as þey þe kyng hadde i-hote, and [8] up with staves to destroye þe Iewes. And þe peple, resynge and crienge, breck [9] up þe hous þere þe Iewes were i-flowe [10] for drede, and brende and spoylede and took what þey myȝte, and wolde nouȝt leve for þe kynges sendynge.[11] But [12] outrage of so greet woodnesse ȝif it were i-suffred schulde passe meny cruel dedes, and blenschede [13] moche þe bygynnynge of þe kyng.[14] But for þe grete multitude of hem þat were gilty [15] he moste lete [16] passe what he myȝt nouȝt take of ful [17] wreche. At þe laste þe Iewes had pees i-graunted, and anon þe kyng ȝeveþ dignetees þat voydeþ.[18] And al wiþ oute þat his broþer Iohn hadde of his fader ȝifte in Irlond and in Normandie, he ȝaf hym þe provinces of Cornewayle, of Devenschire, of Notingham, of Lancastre. Also he ȝaf hym þe eorles douȝter

Trevisa.

lesse the kynge beynge at meyte, somme of the Iewes entrede into his palice amonge other men, and oon of theym hurte by a ministre of the kynge, a grete multitude of peple off the cite supposynge the kynge to have commaunded that, did sle a grete multitude of the Iewes with bylles and wepyn suche as they myȝhte gette, and brente the howses to whom the Iewes were fledde, and wolde not leve in eny wyse: but pease was ȝiffen to the Iewes at the laste, a grete multitude of theyme sleyne afore. After that the kynge ȝafe to Iohn his broþer dignites beynge vacant, as the provinces of Cornewaile, Devonschire, of Notyngham and of Lancastre, withowte oþer ȝiftes of his fader in Normandy and in Yrloude. After that this kynge Ricar-

MS. Harl. 2261.

[1] *perside*, β.; *presede*, γ.; *pressed*, Cx.
[2] *ȝate*, α.
[3] *vuest*, γ.; *fyste*, Cx.
[4] *rabbisch*, β.; *rabyssh*, Cx.
[5] *rabysch pupel*, γ.
[6] *sprang*, Cx.
[7] *tiþingis*, β.; *tyþyngus*, γ.; *thynges*, Cx.
[8] *and . . . staves*] om. α., β., and Cx.
[9] *brake*, Cx.
[10] *fledde*, Cx.
[11] *sonde*, α.
[12] þe, α., β., and Cx.
[13] *blemesched*, β.; *blemsede*, γ.; *blemysshed*, Cx.
[14] *of þe kyng*] om. β.; α. and Cx. have "þe kynges begynnynge."
[15] *gulty*, γ.
[16] *late*, α.
[17] *ful*, from α., β., and Cx.; *for*
[18] *avoideþ*, β.; *avoydeth*, Cx.

tulit. Sed et filiam comitis Gloverniæ in tertio gradu consanguineam cum integritate paterni juris copulavit. Sed [1] indulta [2] tetrarchia fecit ingratum et infidum etiam ambire monarchiam. Regni quoque procurationem Dunelmensi commisit episcopo, qui tamen decentius [3] divino incubuisset officio quam regio succubuisset ministerio, cum nemo possit secundum Evangelium utrique domino prout dignum est [4] deservire. Si enim velit episcopus ut utrique cœlesti et terreno regi [5] placeat, ad utrumque [6] se dividere, certe Rex cœlestis, qui sibi vult ex tota anima deserviri, ministerium dividuum [7] non approbat. Quid [8] etiam si episcopus nec saltem dimidius quæ Dei sunt exequatur, sed vices suas indignis et remissis executoribus committat ut ipse terreno palatio vel foro totus inserviat? [9] nam nec [10] terreni principis ratiocinia quisquam dimidius sufficienter administrat.[11]. Cæterum ut sumptus propensiores versus Jerosolimam [12] rex sibi congereret, resignavit regi Scottorum castella de Berewyk [13] et Rokebur [14] pro decem milibus librarum,[15] pellexit [16] etiam [17] pecuniosum illum Dunelmensem episcopum veteranum ut pro innumera pecunia propriam emeret provinciam. Unde solebat rex jocundo dicere, "De vetusto episcopo feci novitium " comitem, mirus ego artifex." [18] Consimili astu rex plu-

---

[1] *et*, A.
[2] *fratri*, add A.B.
[3] *decentius*] om. A.; *consulcius proprio tanquam*, C.D.
[4] *prout dignum est*] om. B.
[5] *regi*] om. B.
[6] *officium*, C.D.
[7] *divinum*, A.
[8] *Quin*, A.
[9] *inserveat*, A.
[10] *nunc*, B.
[11] *ministrat*, B.
[12] *Jerosolimatanam profectionem rex*, &c., C.D.
[13] *Berewic*, A.
[14] *Rokisburia*, A.; *Rokesburgh*, B.; *Rokeburgham*, C.D.
[15] *per* 1000 *marcis*, C.D.
[16] *pelegit*, A.
[17] *etiam*] om. B.
[18] *confeci*, C.D.

of Gloucetre to wif, þat was his cosyn in þe þridde degree,[1] wiþ al her fader lordschippe. Þe lordschepe of þe fourþe deel[2] þat was i-ȝove,[3] i-made[4] hym unkynde and untrewe, and desired[5] þe hool kyngdom. Þe kyng committed þe destourbance[6] of þe reawme[7] to þe bisshop of Durham, þat schulde more skilfulliche and semeliche occupie hym self in Goddis service þan in þe kynges service. For þe gospel seiþ þat no man may serve eiþer lord at þe fulle[8] as he schulde, þey þe bisshop wolde to dele hym self for to plese eiþer kyng of hevene and of erþe. Certeynliche þe Kyng of hevene alloweþ nouȝt service þat is so to-deled, for he wolde[9] be served with al þe myȝt of þe[10] soule. And what ȝif þe bisshop þat is but half i-ȝeve to Goddes service doþ nouȝt his service ne[11] his offys[12] as he schulde, but ordeyneþ unworþy and recheles persons in his sted,[13] for he wol[14] serve holiche[15] in þe paleys oþer in þe[10] feyre and court. For in[16] non half man makeþ good[17] at þe fulle[18] of þe acountes of an erþelich prince. Also þe kynge for to have þe more large spens[19] toward Ierusalem, he resignede þe castelles of Berwik and of Rokesburgh to þe kyng of Scotlond for ten þowsand pound. Also he begiled þe olde man þe riche bisshop of Durham, and made hym begge[20] his [owne][21] province for a greet somme of money. Þerfore þe kyng seide ofte in his game, "I am a wonder crafty man, for "I have i-made a newe eorle of an olde bisshop." By suche

TREVISA.

---

dus resignede to the kynge of Scottes the castells of Berwik and of Rokysbery for x. M. li. that he myȝhte have goodes sufficiaunte with hym into the holy Londe, and receyvyde also of the olde ryche bischoppe of Dirham as goodes with owte nowmbre for the province of Dirham. And the kynge was wonte to say in disporte that he hade made a novice an erle by goode crafte, and so by that meanes the kynge gate grete

MS. HARL. 2261, f. 365. a.

---

[1] *gree*, α.
[2] *vurde del*, γ.
[3] *iȝeve him*, β.
[4] *i-*] om. α.; *yeven hym made him*, Cx.
[5] *desire*, α. and β.; *desyre*, γ. and Cx.
[6] *governaunce*, Cx.
[7] *rewme*, β.
[8] *twey iordes at ful*, Cx.
[9] *wil*, α.
[10] *þe*] om. α. and γ.
[11] *his . . . ne*] om. α., β., and Cx.
[12] *office*, β.
[13] *stude*, β.
[14] *wolde*, α. and Cx.
[15] *holiliche*, β.
[16] *in*] om. γ.
[17] *God*, Cx.
[18] *atte volle*, γ.
[19] *spence*, β. and Cx.
[20] *bigge*, β.; *bye*, Cx.
[21] From α., β., γ.

rimorum sacculos exhausit, detrahendo dignitates et prædia regia ac si animam redeundi non haberet. Cumque propter hoc ab amicis familiari ausu increparetur, respondit, "Londoniam venderem si emptorem suffi-"cientem reperirem."[1] Eo quoque proclivius[2] emebant plurimi quo rex nunquam repatriare credebatur.[3] Ipse nempe a summo pontifice potestatem acceperat ut a quibus vellet crucem assumptam detrahere posset; unde[4] et multa librarum millia adquisivit. Rex ergo[5] commisso, ut putabatur negligenter, regni gubernaculo Willelmo Helyensi[6] episcopo, cancellario[7] suo, ante[8] Natale Domini Normanniam transfretavit. Quo[9] tempore apparuit signum crucis in cœlo apud Dunstapul,[10] et cito post visa est forma crucis per aliquod spatium a vexillo recedere. Interpretetur qui poterit signi prodigium, cujus didici esse simplex narrator, non præsagus interpretator. Cum igitur reges Angliæ[11] et Franciæ post firmatum inter se fœdus apud Turonensem Galliæ æstatem[12] ad proficiscendum expectarent,[13] zelus Christianorum adversus Judæos in Anglia respiravit,[14] non

[1] *invenirem*, A.

[2] *pro colloquiis*, B.

[3] *Nam immoderato armorum usu confractus et tot usturis perevaporandis humoribus superfluis cauteriatus, tanto consumendus itinere credebatur. Rex autem Richardus a summo*, &c., C.D.

[4] *unde*] om. B.

[5] *igitur*, A.B.

[6] *Eliensi*, A.

[7] *cancellarioque suo*, A.

[8] *ad*, B.

[9] *Diebus illis visa est in strata publica apud Dunstaple meridiana hora imago crucifixi in æthere vexillo depicta. Et cito post*, &c., C.D.

[10] *Dunstapel*, A.

[11] *Reges igitur Angliæ*, B.

[12] *proximum*, C.D.

[13] *exportaverunt*, B.

[14] *zelus . . . respiravit*] om. B.

manere while and speche he emptede[1] meny men purses and bagges, and solde dignetees and lordschippes þat longede to þe kyng, as þey3 he þou3te nevere for to come a3en. In a tyme his frendes[2] þat were homliche wiþ hym blamede hym perfore, and he answerde and seide: "I[3] wolde selle[4] Londoun, "and I my3te fynde a chapman[5] þat my3te wel paye." Meny men bou3te wiþ þe bettre wil, for me[6] trowed þat þe kyng wolde nevere come a3en hom.[7] He hadde i-fonge[8] power of þe pope þat he my3te beneme[9] þe crosse whome[10] [þat][11] he wolde, and þerby he gat many þowsand pound. Þan the kyng as it semed bytook rechelesliche þe governaunce[12] of his kyngdom to his chaunceller, bisshop of Hely, and seilled into Normandie tofore mydwynter tyde. Þat tyme at Dunstapil[13] þe signe of þe cros was i-seie in hevene, and sone þerafter þe schap of þe cros was i-seie forsake þe baner and passe somwhat of space þerfrom,[14] telle who þat wil what it my3te mene, for I have i-lerned to telle þis wonder, and not to discreve what it schulde mene. Þanne þe kynges of Engelond and of Fraunce after þat þey hadde i-made suerte bytwene hem tweyne, þat[15] dwelled[16] at Turon in Fraunce forto abide somer, to wende in þe wey to þe Holy Land nou3t onliche in[17] holy entent and for

TREVISA.

goodes. This kynge Richarde, rebukede of his frendes for suche thynges, seyde, "I wolde selle London and if y cowthe "fynde a byer sufficiaunte." And moche peple boughte diverse possessions of the kynge, thenkynge that he scholde not have commen ageyn. This kynge hade also licence of the pope to discharge men that were merkede with the crosse, whereby he receyvede mony M[l] li. After that the kynge toke the governayle of þe realme negligentely, as hit was supposede, unto the bischop of Hely his chawnceler, and saylede into Normandy afore the feste of Cristemasse. In whiche tyme a signe of the crosse apperede at Dunstaple in the firmamente, and soone after the forme or similitude of the crosse was seen as to departe by a certeyn season and space from the baner.

MS. HARL. 2261.

[1] *ampted*, β.; *amptede*, γ.
[2] *vrendes*, γ.
[3] *Ich*, β., bis.
[4] *sille*, γ.
[5] *chepman*, γ.
[6] *they*, Cx.
[7] *hom*] om. Cx.; *home a3en*, α.
[8] *i-fonge*] om. α.; *take*, Cx.
[9] *bynyme*, α. and β.; *byneme*, Cx.
[10] *whome*, from Cx.; *whan*, MS.
[11] From α., β., γ., and Cx.
[12] *governynge*, α., β., and Cx.
[13] *Dunstaple*, Cx.
[14] *þarvram*, γ.
[15] *þey*, α. and Cx.; *þei*, β.
[16] *hy dwelde*, γ.
[17] *for*, Cx.

quidem sincere, id est, causa fidei, tantum, sed eorum vel æmulando felicitatem vel inhiando fortunæ, Dei quidem justitia talia minime approbante, sed decenter ordinante ut hoc modo gentis perfidæ coerceret insolentiam. Verum [1] præter ea quæ apud Linnam et Lincolniam in rebus et personis Judæi pertulerant, apud Eboracum quidem [2] post [3] diutinam obsidionem et afflictionem [4] Raby, magister Judæorum, incidit venas quadringentorum Judæorum, suas [5] quoque proprias venas et guttur uxoris suæ detruncavit.[6] Sed [7] et apud Stamfort [8] cæsis aut expilatis Judæis, Johannes quidam audacissimus Christianus cum multis spoliis [7] Northantoniam divertit, ubi et ambitu pecuniæ allatæ latenter occisus est ab hospite suo, corpusque ejus de nocte projectum est extra urbem, occisore fugiente. Mox somniantibus vetulis [9] atque apparentibus ibidem fallacibus [10] signorum præstigiis illi martyris meritum simplices homines tribuerunt,[11] sepulcrum defuncti solemnibus excubiis et [12] muneribus honorantes.[13] Ridebatur hoc a prudentibus, sed tamen gratum fuit hoc clericis

---

[1] *Verum . . . pertulerant*] om. B., which has: "His temporibus "advenientes Stanfordiam ad nun- "dinas tempore Quadragesimali "quidam juvenes versus Jerosoli- "mam cruce signati, indignantes "quod Judæi, crucis Christi inimici, "quorum magna multitudo tunc "illam inhabitabant, tam multa "bona possidebant, cum ipsi sic "profecturi ad tanti itineris labo- "rem sumptus necessarios non "haberent, arbitrantes quod se ob- "sequium præstare Deo si hostes "ejus impeterent, audaciter in eos "irruerunt, unde aliquibus ex eis "cæsis, cæteri in castellum fugerunt "prædones cum sui operis emolu- "mento abierunt, nullo se tantis "ausibus opponente; quod audien- "tes cives Lincolniæ, conglobati in "Judæos ibidem cohabitantes ex- "arserunt."

[2] *etiam*, B.

[3] *primo;* A.

[4] *conflictum*, B.

[5] *suasque*, B.

[6] *sicque obierunt*, C.D.

[7] *Sed . . . spoliis*] Quidam Christianus Johannes cum spoliis Judæorum apud Stanfordiam cæsorum seu expilatorum, B.

[8] *Staumforth*, A.; *a Staffordia*, C.D.

[9] *vetulis*, from A.B.; *ventulis*, MS.

[10] *fallaciis*, B.

[11] *attribuerant*, B.

[12] *et*] from A.B.

[13] *honorantes*] om. B.

cause of [þe][1] fey, but for to[2] desire of her owne helthe[3] and hope of greet hap and fortune.[4] Bote þe riȝtwisnesse of God allowep non suche [a][5] manere doynge, but semeliche God ordeynep þat outrage[6] [pryde][7] of mysbileved men schulde be alayde in þat manere. [Also wiþ oute þe meschef and woo[8] þat Iewes suffrede in here body and catel at Lyncolne and at Lynne, ȝet at ȝork after a longe sege and greet meschef and woo, Raby, mayster of Iewes, forkutte þe veynes of foure hondred Iewes, and his owne veynes also, and his wifes[9] þrote.][7] Also at Staunforde[10] Iewes were i-bete, i-slawe, and i-spild.[11] And oon Iohn, moost hardy of Cristen men, com to Northamptoun wiþ many grete prayes; þere his hostiler slowȝ hym priveliche by nyȝt for covetise of money þat he hadde i-brouȝt, and þrew þe body by nyȝte wiþ oute[12] þe citee, and fleyȝ[13] awey as a þef[14] schulde. Þanne olde wyfes metten, and þere were i-seie wonder[15] false siȝtes and[16] fals tokenes,[17] and þe sely men bere an[18] honde þat it was for þe holynesse of þat man, þat þey hilde a verray martir, and worschipped þe sepulcre of þe dede man wiþ solempne wacches and ȝiftes; bote wise men lowh[19] hem to scorne; bote clerkes of þe place were wel apaide þerwith, ffor þey hadde profiȝt þerby. Þis was i-tolde þe bisshop, and anon he forbeed[20] þe doynge of symple men uppon the[21] peyne of cursynge, and[22] þe greet boost of coveytous men and of hir false martir. In þe mene tyme, while kyng Richard was absent, William bisshop of Hely, þe kynges chaunceller, procuratour of þe rewme,[23] þe popes legat in Engelond i-made for money, he hilde lowe[24] the

Trevisa.

This kynge departede into the holy Londe, William bischop of Hely, chawnceller to the kynge, protector of the realme, and legate of the pope made for money, oppressede moche the clergy,

MS. Harl. 2261.

---

[1] From α., β., γ., and Cx.
[2] *to*] om. α., β., and Cx.
[3] *welþe*, α., β., and Cx.
[4] *strengþe*, α. and β.
[5] From α.
[6] *outrageous*, Cx.
[7] From α., β., and Cx.
[8] *and woo*] om. Cx.
[9] *veynes*, Cx., wrongly.
[10] *Stanfort*, γ.
[11] *y-piled*, α. and β.; *pylled*, Cx.
[12] *into*, α.
[13] *fled*, Cx.
[14] *þef*, γ.
[15] *wondres*, α.
[16] *of*, α., β., and Cx.
[17] *vals syȝtes of vals toknes*, γ.
[18] *on*, α. and Cx.
[19] *louȝ*, α. and β.; *lough*, Cx.
[20] *vorbud*, γ.
[21] *the*] om. α., β., and Cx.
[22] *and*, from Cx.; *þat*, MS.
[23] *reme*, Cx.
[24] *louȝ*, α.

inde victitantibus[1] gratia commodorum. Res defertur ad episcopum, qui statim continuata simplicium studio et cupidorum falsi[2] martyris insignia profanavit. Inter hæc rege Ricardo absente, Willelmus Helyensis[3] episcopus, regis cancellarius et regni procurator, ac apostolicæ sedis mediante pecunia in Angliam legatus, clerum oppressit, regis prætendens potestatem; plebem depressit,[4] Romanam ostendens auctoritatem; cum mille equis procedebat, monasteria contributionibus et hospitationibus[5] gravabat, regni majores sibi affines efficiebat, utramque sedem metropolitanam ad libitum suum prosternebat. Nam ante adventum regis Ricardi in Terram Sanctam, Baldewynus[6] archiepiscopus Cantuariensis apud Tyrum decesserat,[7] ac[8] Eboracensem electum, fratrem regis Galfridum, jam per decem annos impedierat ne consecretur. Quin etiam apud Dovoriam appulsum Galfridum,[9] direptis rebus, de monasterio Sancti Martini extrahi et in turri regia trudi[10] fecerat. Sed et[11] apud Westimonasterium tanquam papæ legatus et regni procurator concilium celebravit. In quo complex ejus[12] Hugo Nociaunt,[13] episcopus Cestrensis,[14] querelam deposuit quod monachi Conventrenses sanguinem suum coram altari fudissent.[15] Unde decrevit Willelmus Helyensis monachos de Conventrensi[16] fore eliminandos, et clericos præbendarios instituendos. Hac ergo occasione captata[17]

---

[1] *nutantibus*, C.D.
[2] *typo*, C.D.
[3] *Eliensis*, A.
[4] Slightly transposed in B.
[5] *hospitalitatibus*, C.D.
[6] *Theobaldus*, C.D.
[7] *decessit*, B.
[8] *et Eboracensis, ecclesiæ jam per decem annos vacantis noviter electum fratrem regis Galfridum ne consecraretur diu impedierat; quin etiam*, &c., C.D.
[9] *Galfridum*] om. A.
[10] *intrudi*, A.
[11] *et*] om. B.
[12] *ejus*] om. A.
[13] *Nonant*, A.B.
[14] *Cestriæ*, B.
[15] *fuderunt*, B.
[16] *Conventre*, C.D.
[17] *capta*, B.

clergie, and spak by þe kynges power, and bare down þe kynges[1] peple, and schewed auctorite of þe pope of Rome, and rood wiþ a þowsand hors.[2] He greved abbayes with paymentis and with ȝiftes, and made his allye[3] þe grettest of þe lond; eiþer primat his see he hilde lowȝ[4] inow at his owne wille, for Baldewyn þe archebisshop of Caunterbury deide at Tyrus[5] tofore þe comynge of þe kyng to[6] þe Holy Lond, and þe kynges broþer Geffray, elyt[7] of ȝork, he hadde i-let ten ȝere þat he was nouȝt i-sacred. And also Giffray londede at Dovere, and he bynam his catel, and drowȝ hym out of Seynt Martyns abbay, and putte hym in þe kynges tour; and made a counsaile at Westmynstre as þe kynges procuratour and þe popes legat. Þere his fautour Hewe Nonant,[8] bisshop of Chestre, putte forþ a pleynt þat [þe][9] monkes of Coventre had i-sched[10] his blood riȝt tofore þe hiȝe auȝter; þerfore William bisshop of Hely demede þat monkes schulde be putte awey from Coventre, and clerkes i-brouȝt þider þat lyveþ by provendres. By occasioun herof þis Hewe, þat was gylful of wit, schameles and hardy in evel dedes, connynge in lettrure and

TREVISA.

portendynge the power of the kynge, depressynge the peple, schewynge his auctorite, rydynge with a m[l]. horses, and vexenge monasterys moche thro hospitalite of hym and of his peple. This made the noble men of the realme accordynge to hym, destroyenge the seetes of Cawnterbery and of Yorke at his pleasure; for Baldewinus the archebischop of Cawnterbery wente into the holy Londe, and diede at the cite of Tirus, for the excesse usede by the bischop of Hely. Also he lette Gaufride, broþer to the kynge, electe to the seete of Yorke by x. yere, and putte hym in prison; after that kepynge a cownsayle at Westmynster as proctor of a realme and legate of the pope. In whiche cownsaile a felowe to hym, Hewe Nonant bischop of Chestre, made compleynte that monkes of Coventre wolde have sleyne hym afore the hie awter. Þat herde William bischoppe of Hely made a decrete that the monkes of the place scholde be putte aweye, and clerkes prebendaryes to be putte into hit. This occasion hade, this bischop of Chestre, a bolde man and withowte schame,

MS. HARL. 2261.

[1] *comoun*, α.; *comyn*, β. and Cx.
[2] *horses*, β. and Cx.
[3] *allyes*, β. and Cx.
[4] *lowe*, Cx..
[5] *Troys*, Cx.
[6] *fro*, Cx.
[7] *electe*, Cx.
[8] *Novant*, γ.; *Hughe Novaunt*, Cx.
[9] From α., β., and Cx.
[10] *shadde*, Cx.

præfatus Hugo, callidus homo et inverecundus, audax [1] ad ausus [2] improbos, litteratura eloquentiaque instructus, qui [3] inter priorem et conventum Conventrensis semper discordias seminaverat, jam manu armata monachos expulit tanquam enormium criminum reos; moxque ad apostolicam sedem instructos direxit [4] responsales, cum litteris episcoporum attestantibus, quod monachi Conventrenses deserta Christi militia ad sæculum essent relapsi.[5] Unde petiit [6] papa liberam de ordinatione illius monasterii facultatem. Romanus vero pontifex, sub tanta expectatione si aliquis forte ex parte monachorum adveniens in contrarium allegaret, per sex menses sententiam suspendit, sed sumptuum inopia retardans monachos, votum episcopi consummavit. Monachi tandem vel sero venientes, quamvis violentæ expulsionis injuriam diutius [7] deplorarent, prævalente tandem [8] episcopi potentia, astu, et pecunia, per annos plurimos monachi [9] dispersi, rebus eorum in præbendas clericorum redactis, prout poterant inopes victitabant. Quamobrem de isto Hugone episcopo, apud Beccum in Normannia die Parasceues decubante, tradit fama [10] quòd cum neminem sibi pœnitentiam imponere volentem reperisset, dixisse fertur, "Et ego meipsum pro male erratis meis

---

[1] *audax*] om. A.
[2] *usus*, C.D.; *ad improbos ausus*, A.
[3] *quæ*, A.
[4] *direxit*] om. B.
[5] *relapsi*] om. B.
[6] *domino*, add B.
[7] *diutinus*, B.
[8] *tamen*, A.
[9] *late*, add. C.D.
[10] *in extremis laborante tradit fama*, C.D.

faire speche, and had alway i-made debaat and strif bytwene the priour and þe covent of Coventre, now wiþ strengþe of men of armes he put out þe monkes as passing evel deers, and gulty of huge[1] trespas, and sente anon to the court of Rome men of answere ful[2] informed, wiþ lettres of bisshops witnessynge þat þe monkes had forsake Cristes chivalry, and were afalle[3] to worldliche likynge; þerfore he prayed of þe pope fre power of þe ordenaunce[4] of þat abbay. Þe pope abood sixe monþes wiþ þe sentence for to abide ȝif eny man wolde come and speke for þe monkes, bote defaute of spense[5] lette þe monkes, and made þat þe bisshop had al his wille. Þe monkes come unneþe at þe laste, whan þey had [longe][6] i-wope[7] þe wrong of her violent out puttynge; but þe bisshoppes myȝt and power hadde þe[8] maistrye by money and by sleiþe, and meny ȝeres þe monkes were disperbled,[9] and what þey hadde was i-ordeyned to provendres to[10] clerkes, and þey lyved poorliche, and gat her liflode as þey myȝte. Þerfore whan þis bisshop [Hew][11] woorþ seek[12] at Becco in Normandie in a Good Friday, and myȝte no man fynde þat wolde sette hym penaunce, as it is i-seide, [þan he seide],[6] "And I deme myself

TREVISA.

---

whiche sawede alleweyes discorde betwene the prior and the,[13] takynge with hym a grete multitude of armede men, expellede the monkes, and sende messyngers to the pope with testimony of diverse bischoppes how the monkes of Coventre levynge the servyce of Criste returnede to the worlde, desirenge licence of the pope that he myȝhte dispose that place to hys pleasure. But the pope suspende the sentence in that mater by v. monethes, if eny of the monkes of þat place wolde comme and allegate ageyne that supplicacion, and so the bischop obteynede his desire. Of this bischoppe of Chestre men may rede, laborynge in soore passions and infirmite at Beccun in Normandy on goode Friday, and fyndynge noo man that wolde ȝiffe to hym penaunce for his synnes, he seide openly, I iugge

MS. HARL. 2261. f. 365 b.

---

[1] *hoge*, γ.; *hughes*, Cx.
[2] *vol*, γ.
[3] *avalle*, γ.
[4] *prayed the pope of free ordenaunce*, Cx.
[5] *spences*, β. and Cx.
[6] From α., β., and Cx.
[7] *ywept*, β.; *wepte*, Cx.
[8] *no*, α.
[9] *disparpled*, β. and Cx.
[10] *to*] of, β. and Cx.
[11] From α. and γ.; *Hugo*, β.; *Hughe*, Cx.
[12] *seke*, β.; *syk*, γ.
[13] Sic.

" adjudico usque ad diem judicii pœna purgatoriæ
" cruciandum."[1]

[1] C.D. insert : " Sed de quodam
" cœnobii Coventriæ monacho tra-
" dunt, qui causam domus suæ in-
" stanter sed infructuose diucius
" in curia Romana agitabat, quod
" cum eum ad fores papales jugiter
" incumbentem papa egrediens sic
" alloqueretur, Cur, miser, fores
" nostras indesinenter sic observas ;
" Pater, inquit, expecto mortem
" vestram, nam vobis defunctis,
" bonus forsan succederet, qui
" nobis obtritis justitiam exhiberet.
" In hoc verbo compunctus pon-
" tifex, qui inde exacerbari puta-
" batur causam jussit ad plenum
" agitari et ventilari."

to ligge[1] in þe peyne of purgatorie for myn evel dedes anon "to þe day of doome." TREVISA.

---

my sawle to be in the peynes of purgatory unto the day of iuggement for my synnes. In the yere of oure Lorde God MC. lxxxviij. William kynge of Scottes sende messyngers to Clement the pope, and obteynede letters of proteccion of the seide pope that the churches of Scotlonde scholde not be subiecte to eny other but to the churche of Rome. Messyngers of the kynge of Fraunce sende to Ysacus emperoure of Constantinopole, returnede to theire kynge in this yere, and rehersede that the soldan Yconyke mariede his doȝhter to the sonne of the Saladyne, expressynge also þat Daniel the prophete of Constantinopole hade pophecyede that men of Fraunce scholde restore the londe of promission in that yere when the Annunciacion of Oure Lady scholde falle on Ester day, and scholde sette theire horses in the paviment of Baldac, and fixe theire tentes over the drye tree, and whete scholde be departede from popy. Also thei seide that the messyngers of the Saladyne hade moore honoure schewede to theym in the palyce of themperoure then alle other men that were in hit. And also they seyde that the Saladyne by consente of themperoure of Constantinopole hade intended to have putte an ydole made after his similitude in the temple, that he myȝhte be worschippede of peple openly; but as God wolde, men of Venyse toke hit, or hit come þere in the see, and brouȝhte hit and the schippe also with theyme to the cite of Tirus. Also thei seide that an olde Greke seide to theyme that the prophecy scholde be fullefyllede whiche is wryten in the ȝate of golde not openede by cc. yere, whiche prophecy was, "I schalle open by my selfe when that a redde kynge of þe "weste schalle comme, and then men of Latyn schalle have "dominacion in the cite of Constantinopole." Also thei seide that the emperour promysede to the Saladyn a c. gales and the Saladyne promisede to hym alle the londe of promission if he wolde lette the commynge of men of Frawnce. But the emperoure of Constantinopole made a constitucion thro alle his empire, that and if eny man vexede or trowblede eny man merkede with the crosse, he scholde be put into prisonne. For this was the prophecy and astronomye of the Grekes and of the Turkes, that with ynne the space of iij. yere oon parte of the Turkes scholde be sleyne, an other parte scholde flee behynde

MS. HARL. 2261.

f. 366 a.

---

[1] *lye*, β. and Cx.

Cap. XXVI.

De pontificibus Romanorum. Martinus.[1] [*Ricardi regis Anglie res geste.*]

Celestinus[2] tertius post Clementem sedit papa annis sex mensibus octo; qui secundo die consecrationis suae

---

[1] B. omits title and reference.

[2] C.D. place this passage (*Celestinus . . . reposuerunt*) at the end of Chap. XXIV.

Capitulum vicesimum sextum. TREVISA.

Þe crownynge of þe emperour.[1]

AFFTER Clement, þe pridde Celestinus was pope sixe ȝere and eiȝte monþes. Þe secounde day of his consecracioun he

---

the drye tree, and the thrydde parte scholde be baptizede. In the yere of oure Lorde God M. C. XCJ., þer was in the cite of Acon a devowte man and secrete for the drede of paganes, whiche sende oftetymes letters to the hoste of Cristen peple wryten in Hebrewe, in Grewe, and in Latyn, and schewede to theyme the purpose of the paganes. And so by that Cristen man the hoste of Cristen peple avoidede mony perelles, and the Cristen were soory that thei hade noo knowlege of his person neither of his name, confessynge in alle his letters that he was a Cristen man, and writynge in the begynnynge of theyme, "In nomine Patris, "et Filii, et Spiritus Sancti." But hit is to be mervaylede that he wolde not schewe hym to Cristen peple neither afore the takynge of the cite neiþer after. In the yere of oure Lorde God M. C. XCIJ., seynte Hewe bischoppe of Lincolne makynge visitacions by religious places in his diocyse come to the monastery of Godestowe nye to Oxenforde. Whiche entrenge into the churche to make his preyers see a tumbe in the myddes of the qwere afore the hie awter coverede with clothes of sylke, and lampes and cerges brennynge abowte hit. And the byschop inquirede anon what person was beryede þer; peple presente answerede seyenge that Rosamunde, frende to kynge Henricus the secunde and sonne of the empresse, for whom the kynge hade doen mony grete benefites to theire churche. Then the bischop commaundede that sche scholde be beryede owte of the churche with other peple, seyenge that sche was an hoore, leste the religion of Criste decrease, that ylle disposede women may take exemple by her to avoide the synne of advoutery and of lechery.[2] MS. HARL. 2261. f. 366 b.

Capitulum vicesimum sextum.

CELESTINUS the thrydde succedid pope Clement vj. yere and viij. monethes, whiche crownede Henricus, the v^the^, sonne of Frederyke the emperoure, in the secunde day of his coronacion

---

[1] *Þe . . . emperour*] om. α., β., and Cx.

[2] For this long passage on pp. 97 and 99 there is no Latin given by Higden.

coronavit Henricum quintum Frederici filium in imperatorem sub hac forma: In primis, recepto ab eodem Henrico juramento ante gradus ecclesiæ Romanæ, quod ecclesiam Dei defenderet, ejus jura conservaret, rectam justitiam teneret, patrimonium[1] Petri, si quod ablatum fuerit,[2] pro posse revocaret;[3] econtra dominus papa in cathedra sedens coronam[4] imperialem pedibus tenens inclinato capiti imperiali demisit, quam statim cum pedibus in terram excussit; designans per hoc[5] quod ipse papa habet potestatem creandi imperatorem si meruerit,[6] et dejiciendi si demeruerit: cardinales vero astantes coronam sic excussum capiti reposuerunt.[7] Absente itaque rege Ricardo, præfatus Willelmus de Longo Campo Helyensis episcopus. Hugonem Dunelmensem episcopum omni honore privavit, Wyntoniensem episcopum perturbavit, et pæne cunctos molestavit. Parantur interim multi ad transfretandum et regem interpellandum contra communem tyrannum. Sed et[8]

---

[1] *beati*, B.C.D.
[2] *in integrum*, C.D.
[3] *revocabit*, B.
[4] *coronamque*, A.B.
[5] *per hoc*] om. B.
[6] *meruit*, A.
[7] See note 2, p. 98.
[8] *et*] om. B.

THE INSTITUTE OF MEDIAEVAL STUDIES
ST. MICHAEL'S COLLEGE

crowned þe fifte Henry emperour, Frederik his sone, in þis manere: first tofore þe grees of þe cherche of Rome he ſeng an oop of þis Henry þat he schulde defende and meyntene holy chirche and þe riȝtes of holy chirche, and ȝif ouȝt were bynome of seynt Petres londes, he schulde restore it aȝen wiþ al his myȝt. Þanne he sat[1] in his chayer[2] and hilde þe emperours crowne with his feet,[3] and þe emperour bowed[4] doun his heed, and þe pope let falle þe crowne uppon þe emperours heed, and smot it [of][5] aȝen of þe emperours heed anon wiþ his feet riȝt to þe grounde,[6] in token þat þe pope haþ power to make the emperoure and sette hym down, if he is worþy. Þe cardynals stood by, and took up[7] þe crowne, and sette it aȝen uppon þe emperours heed. While kyng William[8] was absent, þe forsaide William de Longchamp, bisshop of Hely, prevede[9] Hughe bisshop of Durham of al manere worschippe, and greved þe bisshop of Wynchestre, and wreþþed nyh[10] alle. In þe mene tyme meny were arrayed for to passe þe see to have and axe a[11] remedie of þe kyng, and of help aȝenst þe comoun[12] TREVISA.

in this forme. The seide Henricus makynge an othe afore the churche durre that he scholde defende the churche and kepe the lawes and ryȝhtes of hit, and also restore to his powere þe patrimony of seynte Petyr, if eny patrimony were taken from hit. After that the pope sate in a noble cheire holdynge the crowne betwene his feete, and themperoure inclinenge his hedde, he putte the crowne on his hedde, and putte it from his hedde unto the grownde, with his feete. Whiche thynge was a token that the pope hathe power to make an emperoure if he deserve hit, and to depose hym if he do not his dewte. The cardinalles stondynge abowte toke the crowne up ageyne and putte hyt on his hedde. Richarde kynge of Ynglonde absente, William Longefelde bischop of Hely deposede Hewe bischop of Dirham of alle honoure, and trowblede the bischop of Wynchestre and allemoste alle oþer bischoppes of the realme. Wherefore mony men disposede theyme to goe to compleynte to the kynge ageyne the commune tyraunte; MS. HARL. 2261.

[1] *saate*, Cx.
[2] *chaer*, γ.
[3] *veet*, γ.
[4] *bowide*, β.
[5] From α., β., γ., and Cx.
[6] *riȝt . . . grounde*] om. Cx.
[7] *touk op*, γ.
[8] *the kyng*, Cx.
[9] *prived*, β.; *pryved*, Cx.
[10] *wrethyd neygh*, Cx.
[11] *a*] om. α., β., and Cx.
[12] *comyn*, β. and Cx.

ille[1] præveniens voti compos effectus est,[2] prius rediit quam cæteri regem attigissent.[3] Litteras tamen votivas cæteri impetrarunt, quorum primus Lincolniensis episcopus rediens Willelmum Helyensem usque Lincolniam prosequitur. Præfigitur dies apud castrum de Tykhull[4] respondendi, ubi cum Dunelmensis advenisset,[5] ait ad eum Willelmus: "Ego te capio, non præsul præsulem, "sed cancellarius castellanum, donec obsides dederis "de regiis castellis reddendis." Fama[6] facinorosi Willelmi Angliam replevit, unde majores in eum fremunt, minores mala imprecantur. Johannes regis frater de captione fratris sui Galfridi Eboracensis electi multum commotus, accitis ad se de suis provinciis et ex[7] Walensibus[8] ingentibus copiis, cum nonnullis episcopis communem[9] tyrannum a Wyndech[10] usque [ad][11] turrim Londoniæ[12] et inde usque Dovoriam profugavit; ubi timens sibi Willelmus ne[13] non libere[14] posset transfretare, pontificalibus suis vestem superinduit muliebrem,

---

[1] *cunctos*, B.C.D.
[2] *est*] cujus nuncius, B.
[3] *attingerunt*, B.
[4] *Tikhull*, A.
[5] *venisset*, B.
[6] *Fama*] om. B.
[7] *de*, B.
[8] *accersitis subjectis suis provinciis et ex Wallia*, C.D.
[9] *communem . . . Wyndech*] ad Wyndeshor, B.
[10] *Windesora*, A.; *Wyndesora*, C.D.
[11] *ad*, from A.
[12] *ad Londoniam*, B.
[13] *forte*, B.
[14] *ne dum libere*, A.

tiraunt; but he was ware[1] þerof, and com tofore all opere, and hadde alle his wille, and com aȝen or oþer men come to þe kyng; but oþer men hadde lettres also suche as þey wolde, and oon of hem, þat was bisshop of [Lyncolne, cam aȝen, and persewede William bisshop][2] of Hely anon to Lyncolne, þere was i-sette a day to answere, and þe castel of Tykhulle;[3] þere whan þe bisshop of Durham was i-come, þis William spak to hym and seide, "I take þe nouȝt bisshop [a byschop];[4] "but I chaunceller, take þe castellan, forto þou ȝeve plegges[5] "to ȝilde up þe kynges castelles." Þe fame of þis evel man William fulfilled al Engelond, so þat þe grete grucchede[6] aȝenst hym, and þe smale cursed wel faste.[7] The kynges broþer Iohn was wroþ for þe takynge of his broþer Geffray, elyt[8] of ȝork, and gadrede greet strengþe of his owne province and of Walsche men wiþ meny bisshoppes, and chased[9] þis William from Wyndesore to þe toure of Londoun, and from þennes to Dovere; þere þis William dredde leste he schulde nouȝt freliche[10] passe þe see, and took a womman[11] cloþ[12] TREVISA.

---

but the seide bischoppe had bene with hym afore, and commen to Ynglonde ageyne, or that other men wente towarde the kynge. But the bischop of Lyncolne commen after from the kynge, pursuede William bischoppe of Hely unto Lincolne, where a day was prefixede to answere at the castell of Tykhull. And when the bischoppe of Dirham was commyn to that place, the bischoppe of Hely seide to him, "I take þe "not as oon bischoppe an other, but as a chauncellor a man "havynge castells, untylle thow fynde suertes to restore the "kynges castells." The malice of that bischop of Hely was made commune, in so moche that Iohn, broþer of the kynge, remembrenge the imprisonmente of Gaufride his broþer electe into the archebischop of Yorke causede by hym, and gedrenge a grete multitude of men in his provinces of Ynglonde and of Wales, with mony other bischoppes chased that commune tyraunte from Wyndeshore unto the towre of London, and from thens to Dovore. Whiche beynge adredde that he myȝhte not escape, toke the clothenge of a woman on his habite, cover- MS. HARL. 2261. f. 367 a.

---

[1] *waare*, Cx.
[2] From α., β., γ., and Cx.
[3] *Tykhille*, β.; *Tykhylle*, Cx.
[4] From γ.; *a bischop*, β.; *I take the bisshop not a bisshop*, Cx.
[5] *pledges*, Cx.
[6] *grutchyd*, Cx.
[7] *vast*, γ.
[8] *erle*, Cx.
[9] *chaced*, β.
[10] *freely*, Cx.
[11] *wommans*, β.
[12] *clob*, γ.; *womans cloth*, Cx.

qui et majorem faciei partem peplo circumvolutus deambulabat in littore, lævo brachio telam lineam tanquam venalem, ulnam vero manu dextra ferens,[1] ut hac[2] arte[3] non consideratus facilius transfretaret. At dum telam suam more fœmineo distrahere nesciret, per verenda contrectatus[4] ignominiose detectus est. Ipso tandem[5] enavigante,[6] regni administratio Rothomagensi archiepiscopo, rege de Sicilia sic mandante, commissa est, necnon et Bathoniensis episcopus in archiepiscopum electus est. Sed et[7] ipso præmature defuncto, Willelmus Helyensis fortissimum adhuc rescriptum a papa Celestino impetravit, redditis sibi pristinis apostolicæ sedis vicibus, quasi pro meliorando Anglorum regno et Johanne coercendo, qui ad regnum [fratris][8] absentis aspirare videbatur. Sed et in his frustratus, datis muneribus aut saltem factis promissis cum Johanne collusit, sed frustra. Nam licet apud Dovoriam,[9] erectis legationis suæ[10] insigniis, jam applicuisset, regina tamen Alienora et archiepiscopi Rothomagensis et Eboracensis cum aliis multis ipsum renavigare[11] coegerunt. Igitur post vernum tempus apud Turonensem expectatum, reges Franciæ et Angliæ,

---

[1] *proferens*, C.D.
[2] *hac*] om. B.
[3] *arte*] om. A.
[4] *contractatus*, A.
[5] *tamen tandem furtive*, C.D.
[6] *evagante*, A.
[7] *etiam*, A.
[8] *fratris*] from A.
[9] *Doudam*, B.
[10] *erectis . . . suæ*] in, A.
[11] *regnare*, A.

above his owne clepinge, and hyled[1] his heed and þe more deel[2] of his [face][3] wiþ kerchefes[4] and wymples, and walked on þe clef,[5] and bar on his lift arme a webbe of lynnen cloþ, as it were to sellynge,[6] and bare a met3erde[7] in his ri3t hond, for he wolde sliliche ascape[8] and passe by þat craft and nou3t be aspied. But for he couþe not selle[9] and undo his cloop as a womman[10] schulde, he was i-take by his prive membres and despitouslyche aspied; but at þe laste he passed þe see, and þe bisshop of Rothomage had þe rulynge[11] of reaume[12] by maundement of þe kyng þat was in Sicilia. Also the bisshop of Bathe was i-chose[13] archebisshop, but he was soon dede; and 3it William bisshop of Hely purchased a wel stronge maundement of Celestinus þe pope, and hadde þe same auctorite and power þat he hadde raþer, as it were for amaundement[14] of þe kyngdom of Engelond, and forto wiþstonde Iohn þat wolde byneme his broþer þe kyngdom while he was absent; but in al þis he was begiled,[15] for he conspired and was assentynge to Iohn for 3iftes oþer [for][16] faire[17] byhestes. And 3it al for nou3t, for þey he schewed at Dovere þe greet warant of his legacie, 3it þe queen Alianore[18] and þe archebishops of Rothomage and of 3ork and meny oþer compelled hym for to seille[19] a3en. Þanne after þat þey hadde abide springing tyme at Turon, þe kynges of Fraunce and of Enge- TREVISA.

---

enge with a kerchief a grete parte of his face, walkenge by the see syde with a peace of clothe in his lifte arme, and holdynge an elne in the ry3hte honde, as if he wolde selle clothe that he my3hte avoide the cuntre by that meane; but at the laste he was taken in that he cowthe not behave hym selfe lyke a woman, and taken schamfully by the secrete membres. This seide bischop saylenge over see at the laste, the administracion of the realme was taken to the archebischop of Roone. The tyme of ver y-paste the kynges of Ynglonde and of Fraunce MS. HARL. 2261.

---

[1] *helede*, α.; *heled*, β.; *coveryd*, Cx.
[2] *the moost part*, Cx.
[3] From α., β., γ., and Cx.
[4] *kevercheves*, γ.
[5] *clyf*, Cx.
[6] *sullyng*, γ.
[7] *meteyerde*, Cx.
[8] *scape*, α. and γ.; *slyly escape*, Cx.
[9] *sille*, β.; *sulle*, γ.
[10] *man*, α.
[11] *reulyng*, γ.
[12] *reuling of þe rewme*, β.; *of the royamme*, Cx.
[13] *choce*, Cx.
[14] *amendemente*, Cx.
[15] *bylort*, γ.
[16] From β.
[17] *veyr*, γ.
[18] *Elyanor*, Cx.
[19] *sayle*, Cx.

unus per terram, alter per mare, usque Siciliam pervenerunt.[1] Ubi rex Franciæ delicta suorum dissimulans nomen Agni sortitus est. Rex vero Angliæ nihil inultum relinquens, nomen Leonis promeruit. Ibi quoque rex Ricardus Griphones in Calabria et[2] Sicilia expugnavit, castellum ligneum et portatile contra civitatem Messenam[3] erexit, quod et Mathegriphini[4] appellavit; quo quidem instrumento urbem Acram[5] postmodum cepit.[6] Ibi etiam mater sua regina adduxit ad eum Berengariam filiam[7] regis Navarrorum, virginem pulcram et disertam,[8] quam rex[9] duxit in uxorem. Profecto tandem rege Francorum in Syriam, rex Anglorum aliquantulum post eum demoratus est Sed sub hyemali otio otiosus[10] non erat, sed[11] victualia transmisit,[12] machinas confecit.[13] Deinde de Sicilia protendens[14] usque in[15] Cyprum retortus est, ubi duæ regiæ naves per tempestatem[16] confractæ irruentibus Cypris spoliatæ sunt. Quapropter rex[17] Ricardus regem

Gratiæ MCXCI. Ricardi II.

---

[1] *devenerunt*, A

[2] *tamquam*, C.D.

[3] *Messanam*, A.

[4] *Mategraphim*, A. *Mathegriffim*, B.

[5] *actu* (sic), B.

[6] *conquisivit*, C.D.

[7] *filiam*] om. A.

[8] *formosam*, C.D.

[9] *postmodum*, A.; *cum esset pro ætate et usu deliciarum lubricus et hærede carens et sub procinctu bellico, duxit in uxorem secumque per maris et martis discrimina adduxit. Profecto*, &c., C.D.

[10] *remissus*, B.

[11] *immo*, B.

[12] *trans*] from A.B.C.D.; *non* MS.

[13] *fecit*, B.

[14] *procedens*, A.B.

[15] *ad*, B.

[16] *potestatem*, A.

[17] *Tandem classis regia vento commissa, sed tempestate coacta Ciprum insulam appulit, ubi quia duæ regiæ naves in portu confractæ per Cipros spoliabantur. Idcirco rex*, C.D.

lond wente, þat[1] oon by londe and þat[1] oper by water, and com to Sicilia; þere þe kyng of Fraunce let passe þe trespas of his men unpunsched,[2] and was cleped a lombe; but þe kyng of Engelonde leet no trespas unpunsched, þerfore he was i-cleped a leon.[3] Also kyng Richard fiau3t wiþ Griffon,[4] in Calabria and in Sicilia, and hadde þe maistrie. He made a castel of tree to be i-lad aboute, and he rerede þat castel [a3enst þe citee of Messan, and cleped þat castel][5] Mategry3phom;[6] with þat castel afterward he to[7] þe citee of Acres. And þere his moder brou3t hym a faire mayde of schap and of speche, Berengaria, þat was þe kynges dou3ter of Navarne, and kyng Richard wedded her to wyfe. Þanne þe kyng of Fraunce wente fforþ into Siria, and þe kyng of Engelond abood somwhat after þat he was a goo.[8] Bote in þat abidynge he was nou3t idel, but he sente forþ vitailles and made engynes. Þanne he wente out of Sycil and com into Cipres, and byþou3t hym þat tweyne of þe kynges schippes were to-broke wiþ tempest in[9] þe see, and i-spoyled by men of Cipres. Þerfore kyng Richard chasede þe kyng of

TREVISA.

---

come to Sicille, oon by londe, an other by water; where the kynge of Fraunce dissimilynge the trespasses of his peple deservede the name of a lambe. But kynge Ricardus levynge of moche thynge as nou3hte deservede the name of a lyon, for kynge Richard did fi3hte in Sicille and Calabre ageyne Griphones, and erecte a castelle of tre portatyve ageyne the cite Messana, with whiche instrument he toke the cite of Acon afterwarde. Where his moder the qwene brou3hte to hym Berengaria, do3hter of the kynge of Bavarria, a virgyn of noble beawte and of grete discrecion, whom kynge Richarde maryede unto his wife. The kynge of Fraunce commen into Siria, Ricardus kynge of Ynglonde taryede in the wynter season after hym a certeyn season, but he was not ydelle, but he sende to theyme vitells and made engynes. After that this noble Ricardus kynge turnynge to the cite of Ciprus loste ij. of his schippes þer, and thei were spoylede also by men of the cuntre of Ciprus. Richarde kynge of Ynglonde under-

MS. HARL. 2261.

---

[1] *þat*] the, Cx., bis.
[2] *unpunsed*, γ.
[3] *lyon*, Cx.
[4] *griffons*, β. and Cx.; *gryphones*, γ.
[5] From α., β., γ., and Cx.
[6] *Mategryphun*, α.; *Mategriffon*, β.; *Mategryffons*, Cx.
[7] *took*, α.; *toke*, β. and Cx.
[8] *was goon*, Cx.
[9] *in*] of, β.

terræ satisfacere nolentem de urbe in urbem prosequebatur[1] donec[2] se dedisset. Reddidit[3] ergo se[4] eo pacto, ut in[5] vinculis [ferreis][6] non poneretur: annuit rex Ricardus, sed in vinculis argenteis conjecit eum, et sic de tota insula ad libitum disposuit,[7] per bimestre tempus ibidem commorando. Demum[8] dum Acram[9] tenderet comprehendit[10] in mare trierem magnam Saladini bonis multis onustam, eam subtus perforando.[11] Cum ergo ad Acram venisset orta est materia discidii inter reges Angliæ et Franciæ in hunc modum, rex Franciæ ex pacto quod fecerant[12] inter se apud Turonensem vindicabat[13] medietatem adquisitorum[14] in Cypro. [15]Econtra rex[16] Ricardus dixit se pepigisse de adquisitis in Terra Sancta et contra Saracenos. Similiter alia causa fuit

---

[1] *prosequitur*, A.

[2] *ad dedicionem cogeret. Obsessus igitur rex Cipri deditionem promisit, eo tamen pacto ut in vinculis ferreis*, C.D.

[3] *Reddit*, B.

[4] *rex*, B.

[5] *in*] om. B.

[6] *ferreis*] from A.

[7] *Insula igitur Cipri sub hiberno tempore capta et disposita, rex Ricardus in Acram tendens trierem*, C.D.

[8] *Denuo*, A.B.

[9] *Achon*, A.

[10] *cepit*, B.

[11] *perforavit. Sed ipso ad obsidionem Acræ veniente, mox*, C.D.

[12] *reges*, B.

[13] *vendicavit*, A.

[14] *exquisitorum*, B.

[15] *Rex Ricardus respondit se tempore fœderis intencionem expugnandi Saracenos et non Christianos habuisse, et de hiis quæ communibus viribus acquiri contingerent pactum fuisse; seque non ex intencione sed incidenter Ciprum causa ulcionis adisse. Adhuc rex Franciæ comitem Campaniæ tunc valide egentem relevare noluit nisi*, C.D.

[16] *rex*] om. B.

þe lond, þat wolde nouȝt doo amendes, from citee to citee, for to þe kyng ȝalde[1] hym to kyng Richard. And þe kyng ȝalde[2] hym self uppon covenant þat he schulde nouȝt be putte in bondes[3] of iren.[4] Kynge Richard grauntede, but he put hym in bondes of silver, and dwelled þere tweie monþes, and hadde þe londe at his wille. Þan he wente to Acres, and took in þe see oon of þe sowdans greet schippes i-lade with grete riches, and bolgede and þrulled[5] it in þe eyþer[6] side.[7] Whan he come to Acres, fil[8] strif bytwene hym and þe kyng of Fraunce [in þis manere. By covenant that was made bytwene him at Turon, the kynge of Fraunce chalanged half that was wonne in Cypres. Kynge Richard ayenesayde, and sayde that the covenaunt[9] was made of þe wynnynge in þe Holy Lond [and][10] aȝenst þe Sarsyns. Also þere was anoþer cause

TREVISA.

---

stondynge that, thouȝhte to be satisfiede þerof, and folowede the kynge of Ciprus from cite to cite, untylle that he hade the kynge. The seide kynge of Ciprus mekede hymselfe to yolde hym to kynge Ricardus in this condidion, that he scholde not be not[11] grevonde with cheynes of yrne. Kynge Ricardus grawnted þerto, but he putte hym anoon after in cheynes and feturs of sylvyr, and disposede that realme at his pleasure, and taryede þer alle the tyme of wynter. After that kynge Richarde turnynge ageyne to the cite of Acon, toke a ryalle schippe longynge to the Saladyne chargede with grete goodes. This prince commen to Acon, a mater of discorde spronge betwene the kynges of Ynglonde and of Fraunce. For the kynge of Fraunce chalangede parte of the goodes that kynge Richarde hade geten in the yle of Ciprus, by the convencion made betwene theym in the cite Turonense. But kynge Richarde seide that convencion was made of goodes to be geten in the Holy Londe and ageyne the Saracenys. Another cause of discorde was, the kynge of Fraunce wolde

MS. HARL. 2261.

f. 367 b.

---

[1] *ȝylde, α.*; *ȝeelde, β.*; *yelded,* Cx.

[2] *ȝulde, α.*; *yelde,* Cx.

[3] *boundes,* Cx., bis.

[4] *yr, γ.*

[5] *bulgyd and thyrled,* Cx.

[6] *neþer, α.* and Cx.; *þurlede hyt in þe neþer, γ.*

[7] *bulgide and þirled hit in þe neþer side, β.*

[8] *vul, γ.*

[9] *þat was made bitwene hem at Turon þe kyng of Fraunce chalengide half þat was y-wone in Cipres. Kyng Richard aȝenseide, and seide þat þe covenaunt, β.* and *γ.*

[10] From *β.*

[11] Sic.

discidii quod rex Franciæ noluit quicquam mutare[1] comite Campaniæ tunc valde indigente, nisi sibi invadiaret Campaniam. Tunc comes ait: "Feci quod debui, "amodo faciam quod oportet. Dominus meus me non "recepit nisi pro meo. Vadam ergo ad eum qui paratior "est dare quam accipere." Unde ad regem Ricardum veniens[2] ditatus est. Insuper et rex Ricardus fovebat partem Gydonis[3] regis Jerosolimorum contra Conradum Marchionem regem Tyri, quem rex Francorum econtra fovebat. Properatur tamen ad obsidionem Acræ, quæ jam per biennium casso labore fuerat obsessa. Nam[4] machinæ urbi admotæ, igne Græco, qui nulla aqua aut alio elemento extingui poterat, comburebantur.[5] Exercitus etiam Christianus partim morbo, partim inedia, minorabatur, et etiam propter discordiam inter Gydonem et Marchionem[6] in partes dividebatur; necnon et aliqui magni de nostris pecunia Saladini corrumpebantur.

---

[1] *mutuare*, A.
[2] *plurimum*, C.D.
[3] *Guidonis*, A.
[4] *namque*, A.
[5] *comburebantur*] from A.B.; *comburerentur*, MS.
[6] *de Monte Serrato simultas suborta militiam nostram quasi in duas partes oppositas contraxerat. Nonnullos et nostrorum principum avaricia et rabies infecerat clandestinis a Saladino missis pecuniis, unde et nostrum negotium tardabatur. Anno* &c., C.D.

of stryf, for the kyng wolde leve noþing to þe eorl of Champayn, þat was þo ful nedy and in greet mescheef, but he wolde legge[1] Champayn to þe kyng to wedde. Þan þe eorle seide, "Ich have y-doo þat y schulde; here after y schal "doo what me nedeþ:[2] myn owne lord fongeþ[3] me nouȝt "but for myne; þerfore y schal goo to hym þat is more redy "to ȝeve þan to fonge." Þanne he cam to kyng Richard, and was riche ynowe].[4] Also kyng Richard faverede Gy[5] kyng of Ierusalem aȝenst Conradus Markys kyng of Tyrus, þat þe kyng of Fraunce faverede in þe oþer side. But he[6] comeþ to þe seege of Acres, þat was byseged two ȝere and al þe travayle i-lost. For þe engynes þat were i-brouȝt aȝenst þe citee were i-brend wiþ Grekkische[7] fuyre,[8] þat no water myȝte aquenche, noþer oþer element. Also þe Cristene men[9] wax lasse and lasse, somdel for[10] siknes and somdel for oþer defauȝtes and mescheef. Also it was to deled in parties [for þe stryf][11] þat was bytwene Gy and þe Markes.[12] Also som greet of oure side hadde i-fonge money and mede of þe sowdon.[13]

Trevisa.

---

not leve eny thynge to the erle of Campany, beynge in grete necessite at that tyme, withowte the erle wolde have put Campany in plegge to hym. Then the erle seide, "Y have "doen that was my dewte to do, now I schalle do that ne-"cessite compellethe, þerfore y schalle go to hym that is "moore redy to ȝiffe then to take;" and so the seide erle commynge to kynge Richarde was made ryche by hym. Also kynge Richarde favorede the parte of Guido kynge of Ierusalem ageyne Conradus Marchio, kynge of Tirus, whom the kynge of[14] favorede ageyne the kynge of Ierusalem. Neverthelesse kynge Richarde made haste to the cite of Achon, whiche was segede in veyne by ij. yere, ffor yngynes putte to that cite were brente with fyre of the Grekys, whiche cowthe not be extincte by water or eny other thynge. And the hoste of Criste men decreasede, what by dethe and discorde betwene the kynges of Ierusalem and of Tyre, and mony noble men were corrupte by money of the Saladyne.

MS. Harl. 2261.

---

[1] *laye*, Cx.
[2] *neodeþ*, β.
[3] *takyth*, Cx.
[4] From α., β., and Cx.
[5] *Guy*, Cx., et infra.
[6] *þey*, α. and Cx.; *þei*, β.
[7] *Grekysshe*, Cx.
[8] *eur*, γ.
[9] *oost*, α.; *hoost*, Cx.
[10] *by*, α., β., and Cx.
[11] From α., β., γ., and Cx.
[12] *Markys*, Cx.
[13] *soudan*, β. and Cx.; *sauden*, γ.
[14] Sic.

Cap. XXVII.

[De insidiis regis Francorum contra Ricardum regem Angliæ.]

Anno tandem gratiæ millesimo centesimo nonagesimo primo, quinto idus Julii,[1] tricesimo post adventum regis Ricardi die, capta est urbs Ptolomaida,[2] quæ[3] Acra dicitur, in qua captione dux Austriæ secutus est regem Ricardum, ut forsan partem triumphi vindicaret. Sed nescio an casu an regis[4] voluntate vexillum ducis Austriæ cœno conculcatum est. Unde dux ipse commotus domum reversus est, gravius se postmodum de rege Ricardo vindicaturus. Partitis interim inter reges Angliæ et Franciæ cunctis perquisitis, rex Franciæ suos vendidit captivos, rex Angliæ suos suspendit.[6] Ob hæc[7] et his similia objurgatus rex Franciæ, necnon et gloriam regis[8] ægre ferens, aeris intemperiem causatus,[9] domum rediit. Juratoriam tamen cautionem adhibuit[10] de indemnitate rerum regis Ricardi usque ad reditum suum[11] de Terra Sancta. Prosperis tandem flatibus Italiam appulsus papam adiit absolvi a quodam juramento involuntario[12] petiit, sed

---

[1] *secundo obsidionis anno*, C.D.
[2] *Tholomaida*, A.
[3] *nunc*, C.D.
[4] *regia*, B.
[5] *se*, A.
[6] *suspendit*] from A.B.C.D.; *susceepit*, MS.
[7] *hoc*, A.
[8] *Ricardi*, A.B.
[9] *causatus*] from A.B.; *cautus*, M.S.
[10] *exhibuit*, A.
[11] *ejus conservanda*, C.D.
[12] *a . . . involuntario*] om. B.

Capitulum vicesimum septimum. TREVISA.

WHAN[1] þe ȝere of oure Lord enleven hondred foure score and ten, þe enlevenþe day of Juyn,[2] þe þrittenþe day after þe comynge of kyng Richard [to][3] þe citee, Tholomayda was i-take, þat hatte Acres. In þat takynge þe duke of Ostrige[4] folowed kyng Richard, for he wolde in[5] caas chalange part of þe prayes þat were i-take. I not[6] wheþer by hap oþer by þe kynges wille, þe duke of Ostrige[7] his baner was i-trode in þe fen.[8] Þerfore þe duke was wroþ, and tornede home aȝen, to[9] take afterward gretter wreche of kyng Richard. Þan al þat þere was i-wonne was departed bytwene þe kyng of Engelond and of Fraunce, and[10] þe kyng [of Fraunce][11] solde his prisoners, and þe kyng of Engelond heng[12] his owne prisoners. Herefore and oþer suche dedes þe kyng of Fraunce[10] gan for to stryve, and had greet envie to þe name þat kyng Richard hadde, and seide þat þe aier[13] was distempered, and wente home aȝen, and swore þat he schulde do no damage to kyng Richard tofore his comynge out of þe Holy Lond. Þanne he hadde good wynde, and seillede into Italy, and cam to þe pope, and praied to be assoilled of an ooþ þat he hadde i-made

---

Capitulum vicesimum septimum. MS. HARL. 2261.

BUT at the laste, in the yere of oure Lorde God a M. C. xcj., the v^the^ idus of Iulius, and the xxx. day after the commynge of kynge Richarde, the cite of Acon was geten by Cristen men. In the takynge of this cite the duke of Austry folowede kynge Richarde, that he myȝhte chalange peraventure parte of the victory. But the baner of the seide duke was troden under foote; y wotte not the trawthe wheþer hit was doen by chaunce or by the wylle of the kynge. That duke havynge indignacion þerof departede to his cuntre, thenkynge to venge hym on f. 368 a. kynge Richard. The goodes geten there departede betwene the kynges of Ynglonde and off Fraunce, the kynge of Fraunce solde his prisoners, and kynge Richard did honge his

---

[1] *þanne, β.*; *Than*, Cx.
[2] *Juyl, α., β.*, and Cx.
[3] Not in *γ.*
[4] *Austryge, α.*; *Austrige, β.*; *Austrych*, Cx.
[5] *on, β.*
[6] *cannot telle*, Cx.
[7] *Austrege, α.*; *Austrych*e, Cx.
[8] *ven, γ.*; *feen*, Cx.
[9] *forto, α.*
[10] *and . . . Fraunce*] om. *α.*
[11] From Cx.
[12] *hyng, γ.*
[13] *eyr, β.*; *aer, γ.*; *eyer*, Cx.

non obtinuit. Occiso interim Conrado Marchione per duos sicarios in urbe sua Tyro, rex Franciæ nisus est [1] regi Ricardo hoc scelus imponere.[2] Unde et apud Parisium celebrato consilio,[3] de proditore Ricardo se velle ulcisci proponit: prudentiores tamen præmaturæ ultionis propositum dissuaserunt, asserentes quod licet vera forent quæ regi Ricardo imponebantur, non tamen præpropere aut petulanter agendum fore, sed respectu honesti sustinendum quoad usque ad [4] propria rediret, qui propter Christum noscebatur peregrinari. Cæterum si reversus vel objicienda purgare potuerit,[5] vel de excessu satisfacere voluerit, bene actum erit. Sin autem, expetendæ ultionis justitia comite congruum tempus erit. Quod si hoc consilium displicuerit [6] Romanus pontifex [7] consulatur. Sed quamvis ad modicum quiesceret rex, molitus est tamen regno Angliæ cruentum negotium. Expetiit namque rex Franciæ [8] per legatos

---

[1] *est*] om. A.
[2] *hoc scelus imponere regi Ricardo satagit*, C.D.
[3] *quasi*, C.D.
[4] *quousque ad*, A.B.
[5] *potuit*, B.; *voluerit*, C.D.
[6] *displiceret*, A.
[7] *pontifex*] om. B.
[8] *rex Franciæ*] om. B.

aȝenst his[1] wille; bote þe pope wolde nouȝt assent. Þanne Conradus þe Markys was i-slawe of tweie þeofes[2] in his owne citee Tirus, and þe kyng of Fraunce fondede to putte[3] þat cursed dede uppon kyng Richard, and made a counsaille at Parys, and þere he seide þat he wolde be awreke of þe traytour[4] Richard. But þe wisest men counseillede hym to leve his purpos, and take no[5] hasty wreche, and seide, þey[6] it were sooþ þat was i-bore kyng Richard an honde, ȝit me[7] schulde nouȝt hastiliche and unskilfulliche worche, but me schulde abide by cause of honeste for [to][8] he were i-come aȝen, for it was i-knowe þat he was in pilgrymage for Cristes sake. Also ȝif he wolde when he were i-come home purge hym of þat me[7] bare hym an[9] honde, oþer make good for þe trespas, þan he[10] schal be well inow, and elles it is riȝtful to axe wreche, and þat in skilful tyme; and ȝif þis counsaile pleseþ ȝow nouȝt, axeþ counsaile of þe pope. Þe kyng cesede for a tyme, but he caste a cruel doynge and blody for þe kyngdom of Engelond. For þe kyng of Fraunce sente

TREVISA.

---

prisoners. After that Conradus Marchio sleyne by ij. wikkede men in this cite of Tirus, the kynge of Fraunce havynge indignacion of the glory of Richarde kynge of Ynglonde, thouȝhte to impute the dethe of that kynge to hym. Wherefore the kynge of Fraunce, kepynge a cownsaile at Parisius, thouȝhte to trowble kynge Richard in his returnynge to Ynglonde. Neverthelesse the noblemen of his realme movede hym that he scholde not schewe vengeaunce to kynge Richarde thauȝhe he had sleyne hym, seyenge that hit were worschippe to suffre hym to comme to his cuntre, that wente so ferre to fiȝhte for the luffe of Criste. That doen, if he cowthe purge hym þerof, or make satisfaccion if he hade putte hym to dethe, hit were sufficiaunte; and if he despisede to do that oon of these tweyne thynges, other to purge hym of that cryme, or if he putte hym to dethe and wolde not do satisfaccion, then we cownesaile that the extreme vengeaunce that ye maye do may be exercisede on hym. But thauȝhe the kynge of Fraunce

MS. HARL. 2261.

---

[1] *his*, from Cx.; *he*, MS.
[2] *þeeves*, β.; *twy þueues*, γ.; *theves*, Cx.
[3] *vondede to potte*, γ.
[4] *wroken upon kyng*, Cx.
[5] *none*, α. and Cx.; *noon*, β.
[6] *though*, Cx.
[7] *men*, Cx.
[8] From α.; *till*, Cx.
[9] *on*, α. and Cx.
[10] *it*, Cx.

nuptias germanæ regis Dacorum, eo tamen pacto ut dotis nomine sibi concederet[1] illud antiquum jus quod Dacis in regnum Anglorum ab olim competebat,[2] simul cum classe et exercitu per unum annum ad hoc assequendum. Sed[3] et hac[4] conditione propter Wandalicam a tergo infestationem negata, tradita[5] nuptui puella cum decem millibus marcarum argenti, quam tamen post primam copulæ noctem, aut propter fœtidum oris halitum, aut quia non invenit eam virginem, rex repudiavit indecenter. Interea[6] apud Orientem sumptu deficiente regeque Ricardo nequiter diffamato, quod regem Franciæ insidiis appetisset, quod et[7] Conradum marchionem per conductos[8] sicarios peremisset, quod cum Soldano[9] de proditione Terræ Sanctæ collu-

---

[1] *concederetur*, B.
[2] *competebat*] from A.B.; *expetebat*, MS.
[3] *Sed*] om. A.
[4] *cum*, B.
[5] *traditur*, A.B.
[6] *Propterea*, A.
[7] *etiam*, A.
[8] *absconditos*, C.D.
[9] *Saladino*, C.D.

messangers [1] for to have [2] to his wif þe kynges suster of Denmark uppon suche a covenant, þat he schulde have i-graunted wiþ here [3] all þe riȝt þat þe Danes had somtyme in Engelond a [4] navey and strengþe for oon ȝere to helpe wynne þat riȝt. Þat condicioun was denyed, for þe Wandales þat were aȝenst hem [5] in þe oþer side. But þe kyng hadde with þe wenche [6] ten þowsand mark of silver. Bote after the firste nyȝt of þe weddynge þe kyng forsook [7] her and putte her away unsemyngliche,[8] oþer for hire breeþ [stank],[9] oþer for he fonde hir not mayde. Þat tyme in þe [10] est londes was greet defaute [11] of spens,[12] and also kyng Richard was wickkedliche defamed þat he was untrewe to þe kyng of Fraunce, and hadde i-doo hym wrong. And also þat he hadd i-hired þeoves [13] to slee Conradus þe marquys, and þat he hadde conspired [14] with þe Sowdan [15] to betray [16] þe Holy Lond, and þat it was and [17] þerfore

---

was stylle as for a season, he thouȝhte to have vexede soore the realme of Ynglonde, for he sende to the kynge of Denmarke desyrenge the maryage of his suster, in this condicion, that he wolde grawnte to hym in the name of the dowery the olde ryȝhte that the Danes hade in the realme of Ynglonde somme tyme, and a navy of schippes with an hoste by oon yere. But the kynge of Denmarke myȝhte [not] [18] satisfye his purpose in that he hade grete werre ageyne the Wandalynges. Neverthelesse the kynge of Fraunce receyvede with that lady x. M[l] marke of silvyr, whom the kynge of Fraunce refused, after the firste nyȝhte, other in that sche hade a stynkynge brethe, or ells in that he founde sche was not a mayde. The noble prince Richarde kynge of Ynglonde beynge in the este partes off the worlde, and treasure begynnynge to decrease faste, remembrenge also his wikkede diffamacion caused by the kynge of Fraunce, seyenge that kynge Ricardus hade intended his dethe, that he hade hired also ij. men to slee Conradus Marchio kynge of Tirus, and how he scholde have hade promisse of the Saladyn of the promission of the holy Londe, MS. Harl. 2261. f. 368 b.

---

[1] *messagers*, Cx.
[2] *habbe*, γ.
[3] *hir*, β.
[4] *a*] om. α. and Cx.
[5] *hym*, Cx.
[6] *weyncke*, γ.
[7] *vorsoke*, γ.
[8] *unsemely*, Cx.
[9] From β., γ., and Cx.
[10] þe] om. α.
[11] *defout*, γ.
[12] *spence*, β. and Cx.
[13] *y-huyred þeeves*, β.; *y-hyred þeves*, γ.; *theves*, Cx.
[14] *conspired*, from α., β., and Cx.; *aspired*, MS.
[15] *Saudẽ*, γ.
[16] *bytraye*, Cx.
[17] *and*] om. α., β., and Cx.
[18] Evidently omitted by an error of the scribe.

sisset, atque ideo[1] ad capiendum urbem sacram accedere noluisset, Ricardus se parat ad repatriandum. Major namque pars Christiani exercitus morbo, gladio, inedia, laboris intolerantia absumptus fuerat. In qua re consideranda[2] est altitudo divinæ sapientiæ, quæ de suorum vel temporali salute vel felicitate minus curare videtur,[3] dummodo [supernæ civitatis completionem provide faciat decimari: provide fidenter dixerim, quod longe felicius illis contigit quod sic idem migraverunt quam qui repatriantes][4] ad sordes pristinas remearunt. Sic igitur Christus Rex noster malis hominum bene utens, dum terrenam suam Jerusalem propter peccata inhabitantium in manus tradit hostium, cœlestis suæ Jerusalem uberiora lucra subtiliter conquisivit. Itaque propter nostrorum defectum et dedecus temporum oportet civitatem sanctam conculcari a gentibus usque ad tempus quod solus Deus novit. Nam suo tempore procul dubio juxta morem priscum Terra Sancta spurcissimos suos evomet incolas, et[5] forsan per parciorem manum, ut virtus divina in hoc negotio clarius

---

[1] *igitur*, A.
[2] *considerandum*, A.
[3] *carere fertur*, A.
[4] From A.B.C.D.
[5] *ut*, B.

[þat][1] þe kynge Richard wolde not goo to fore[2] to take þe holy citee. Herefore kyng Richard arayed hym homward,[3] also for the more deel of þe Cristene oost was destroyed wiþ swerd, wiþ siknes, wiþ honger and hard travaille. In þat doynge take hede þat þe[4] hiȝe[5] wisdom of God, þat recchep but lite[6] as it semeþ of þe worldliche[7] heele and salvacioun[8] of his servauntes, while he makeþ hem com wisliche [by][9] þe mescheves and sorowes[10] to fulfille[11] þe [hyȝe][12] citee of hevene. I telle it for þei þat passede[13] so þere spedde[14] more graciousliche þan þei[15] þat come home aȝe to her[16] foule manere of lyvynge of olde tyme. So Crist oure kyng useþ wel þe evel dedes of mankynde,[17] while he takeþ þe erþeliich Jerusalem into þe hondes of enemyes for þe synne of hem þat wonede þerynne, and bringeþ þerynne[18] forþ wysliche large wynnynge of hiȝe Jerusalem in[19] hevene. For þe defaute and schame of oure tyme þe holy citee mote be defouled of mysbileved men anon to þat tyme þat God knoweþ allone. For wiþ oute eny doute whan tyme comeþ þe Holy Lond schal caste out evel men þat woneþ þerynne as it dede[20] somtyme, and on caas wiþ wel lasse strengþe, for God his owne strengþe schulde be more i-knowe in þat manere

TREVISA.

---

and þerfore he wolde not comme to the takynge of the holy cite of Achon, disposede hym to departe towarde Yngelonde, ffor a grete parte of the hoste of Cristen peple was gretely decreasede. Neverthelesse y suppose that men dyenge þer were moore happy then men on lyve goynge home and returnynge to theire synnes. Also hit behovethe the hooly cite of Ierusalem to be kepede and rejoycede of oure enemyes for a season, for the synne and wrecchidnesse of Cristen people, whiche tyme God knowethe. For withowte dowte, that tyme when that synnefulle peple schalle be avoidede from that holy Londe, and peraventure by a lytelle powere of Cristen peple, þat the expulsion of theym may be ascribede moore to the vertu off God then to the powere of man. For oon of the

MS. HARL. 2261.

---

[1] From α., β., γ., and Cx.
[2] *forto*, α. and β.
[3] *hamward*, β.
[4] *þat þe*] of, γ.
[5] *hygh*, Cx.
[6] *retcheth but lytel*, Cx.
[7] *worlyche*, γ.
[8] *savacion*, β.; *savacyon*, γ.
[9] From Cx.
[10] *sorwe*, α.; *sorowe*, β.
[11] *volvulle*, γ.
[12] From γ.
[13] *passede*, from γ.; *passeþ*, MS.
[14] *passed so ther sped*, Cx.
[15] þan þei, from β.; þey, α.; than they, Cx.; þat by, MS.
[16] *here*, α.; *her*, from β. and Cx.; *the*, MS.; *he*, MS.
[17] *mankuynde*, γ.
[18] *þerynne*] om. α., β., and Cx.
[19] *of*, α., β., and Cx.
[20] *dude*, γ.

elucescat. Unde dixit quidam apud Machabeos: "Facile "est concludi multos; in manus[1] paucorum;" quod utique declaratum est, quando unus persequebatur mille et duo fugaret[2] x. milia. Et Gedeon quidam amota multitudine per xxx^c.[3] viros qui aquam lambuerant de multis triumphavit. At non est temptandus Deus,[4] ut Christiani pro eo quod[5] Dominum bonum et potentem habeant petulanter et inconsulte contra multos adversarios pauci prosiliant.[6] Ita enim vult Deus suos in se confidere ut non negligant prudenter agere.

Cap. XXVIII.

[*De reditu Ricardi regis Anglie.*]

Gratiæ MCXCII. Ricardi III.

Firmatis denuo inter regem Ricardum[7] et Saladinum induciis triennalibus, Hubertus Salisburiensis episcopus pro se et pro rege sanctum sepulcrum adiit, hostiam sacram ibidem immolavit. Inde rediens una cum rege

---

[1] *manibus*, B.C.D.
[2] *fugerunt*, B.
[3] *tricentos*, A.; *ccc^os*, B.
[4] *Deus*] om. A.
[5] *quod*] om. B.
[6] *consiliant*, B.
[7] *Ricardum*] om. B.

dede. So among þe Machabies one sayde ;[1] It is but litel maistrie for God Almyȝti to overcome meny men wiþ þe myȝt and strengþe of fewe[2] men, and þat was i-schewed and declared whanne oon pursewed a þowsand, and tweyne chasede ten þowsand. And Gedeoun dede awey þe grete multitude [and hadde þe victorye of a greet multitude][3] wiþ þre hondred men þat lapede water into her owne mowþe. But Cristene men schal nouȝt assaye God, and starte forþ rabbisliche[4] and unwysliche, fewe[5] aȝenst meny enemyes, as who seiþ, We haveþ[6] a good Lord and a myȝti ; for God wole þat his servauntes truste so on hym þat þey be[7] nouȝt recheles and necligent[8] to[9] worche wiseliche. TREVISA.

Capitulum vicesimum octavum.

WHAN[10] trewes were i-take for fyve[11] ȝere bytwene kyng Richard and þe Sowdon,[12] and Hubert bischop of Salisbury ȝede to þe sepulcre[13] for hym self and for þe kyng, and offrede þere an holy Oost,[14] and cam þennes and seylede wiþ þe kyng

---

Machabees seide that mony men myȝhte be devicte by fewe men, which, seyenge was verifiede when oon man pursuede a M., and xij. men mony thowsandes. But God is not to be attemptede in this wise, that fewe Cristen men scholde ȝiffe conflicte ageyne mony enemyes of Criste indiscretely, in that they have a goode Lorde, ffor God wyllethe his peple to truste soe in hym that they despise not to do after prudence. MS. HARL. 2261.

Capitulum vicesimum octavum.

PEASE made betwene kynge Richarde and the Saladyne for iij. yere, Hubertus bischop of Salisbery wente for the kynge and for hym selfe to the holy sepulcre, and seide masse þer ; and returnynge from þens with the kynge to the yle of Ciprus ;

---

[1] *one sayde*, from Cx. ; *on syde*, MS.
[2] *veawe*, γ.
[3] From α., β., γ., and Cx.
[4] *rabbyshly*, Cx.
[5] *vew*, γ.
[6] *habbeþ*, γ.
[7] *ben*, α.
[8] *neglygent*, Cx.
[9] *but*, Cx.
[10] *þanne*, β. ; *Than*, Cx.
[11] *three*, Cx.
[12] *Sauden*, γ.
[13] *ȝude to þe sepulker*, γ.
[14] *oyst*, β., γ., and Cx.

Cyprum navigavit. Inde præmisit rex duas reginas, uxorem scilicet et sororem, cum omni pæne familia sua usque[1] Siciliam, ipseque[2] lenti pelagi impatiens feroci aura[3] ad partes Histriæ inter Aquileyam et Venetiam cum paucis depulsus est,[4] ubi aliquantisper oberrans et latitans, dum cibi pro illo lautiores emerentur notatus[5] est, et ab hominibus ducis Austriæ deprehensus. Quo divulgato rex Francorum Johannem regis Ricardi fratrem contra regem Ricardum facile allexit, imperatorem Teutonicum contra Ricardum captivum instigavit.[6] Unde et imperator pacto cum duce Austriæ tertia parte provenientis commodi, regem Ricardum dominicum adhuc characterem portantem in suam traduxit[7] custodiam, et[8] posuit eum in Trivallis, ubi dicit Aristoteles bonum est occidere patrem.[9] Quem tandem circa Dominicam Palmarum coram procerum suorum

---

[1] *ad*, B.

[2] *ipseque . . . Histriæ*] quibus ibidem prospere applicantibus ipse agiliori navigio sequebatur ortaque tempestate valida et navè qua ferebatur inclementioribus auris arrepta inter Aquileiam, &c., B.

[3] *anima*, C.D.

[4] *est*] om. A.

[5] *notus*, C.D.

[6] *instigaverat*, A.

[7] *transduxit*, A.B.

[8] *et . . . patrem*] om. C.D.

[9] *patrem*] om. A.

to Cypres, þennes þe kyng sente forþ to Sicil queenes tweie,[1] his wif and her[2] suster, nyh[3] wiþ al his meyne. And he myȝte nouȝt wel endure in [þe][4] softe see, but he seillede wiþ a strong wynd toward þe contray of Histria wiþ fewe[5] men, and was i-dryve so[6] þat he come bytwene Aquilia and Venyse, and þere he hovede and bleynt hider and þider, and hudde[7] hym somwhat of tyme, and me[8] made grete purveaunce[9] of vitailles for hym, and so he was aspied and i-take of þe dukes men of Austrige.[10] Whan þat was i-knowe, þe kyng of Fraunce made John, kyng Richard his broþer, [to][11] turne liȝtliche aȝenst kyng Richard, and excitede also þe emperour of Almayne aȝenst king Richard. Þan þe emperour made covenant with the duke of Austrige forto have þe þridde deel[12] of þe prophite[13] and wynnynge þat com of kyng Richard, and hadde kyng Richard into his owne warde ȝit while kyng Richard bare þe crosse and þe signe of oure Lord. And þe emperour putte hym in a place þat hatte Trinallus,[14] þere Aristotil seeþ it were good a man to slee his owne fader. But aboute Palmsoneday, þe emperour brouȝt forþ kyng Richard

Trevisa.

---

kynge Richarde sende from that cuntre ij. qwenes, his moder and his wyfe, with alle his hoste allemoste, unto Sicille, and the kynge hym selfe londed with a fewe peple with hym in the partes of Histria betwene Aquileia and Venyce. Whiche taryenge prively in those costes a lytelle season was taken and knowen by delicate meytes bouȝhte by his men for hym, and was brouȝhte to the duke of Austrye. The kynge of Fraunce havynge knowlege þerof, movede liȝhtely Iohn, broþer to kynge Richarde, ageyne hym, and the emperoure of Alemayne. Wherefore themperoure promisynge to the duke of Austrye the thrydde parte of the proventus and rawnson, hade kynge Richarde delyverede to hym, whom he put in prison in a place callede Trivalles, where Aristotille seythe hit is goode to a man to sle his fader, havynge the signe of the crosse on hym. Whom he brouȝhte furthe abowte Palmesonneday,

MS. Harl. 2261.

f. 369 a.

---

[1] *tweye quenes*, α., β., and Cx.; *twy queenus*, γ.
[2] *her*] *hir*, β.; his, Cx.
[3] *neygh*, Cx.
[4] From α., β., γ., and Cx.
[5] *vew*, γ.
[6] *til*, Cx.
[7] *hidde*, β.; *hyd*, Cx.
[8] *men*, Cx.
[9] *purvyans*, γ.
[10] *Austryche*, Cx., et infra.
[11] From β.
[12] *part*, Cx.
[13] *profit*, β.; *prouffyte*, Cx.
[14] *Trinallis*, β.; *Trivallis*, γ.; *Tryvallis*, Cx.

multitudine ad respondendum produxit. Ille vero hilari fretus conscientia ita objecta diluit ut imperator[1] non solum ad misericordiam, sed etiam ad reverentiam flecteretur. Venerunt tunc ad regem sic detentum Willelmus Helyensis episcopus, propter insolentes mores suos ab Anglia[2] jam pridem extrusus,[3] ut regis circa se animum exploraret; quem cum adumbratæ devotionis præstigiis non posset deludere, desperata gratia sed cauteriata comitante conscientia ad Franciam rediit. Sed et Hubertus Salisburiensis de Sicilia ad regem veniens pro necessaria Anglicani regni cura ac etiam pro maturando regiæ redemptionis negotio in Angliam directus est. Ubi adveniens concorditer a Cantuariensibus et ipsis[4] episcopis in archiepiscopum electus est. Qui nimirum accepto[5] pallio inthronizatus est,[6] mox apud Mertoniam[7] accepto canonicæ professionis habitu, Cantuariensibus, quos fervor Baldwyni paulo indiscretior[8] exulceraverat, molestus non fuit. Præfatus namque Baldewynus quamquam[18] alias vir bonus et

---

[1] *imperator*] om. B.
[2] *Anglis*, B.
[3] *exclusus*, B.
[4] *aliis*, C.D.; *regni*, ins. B.
[5] *excepto*, A.
[6] *est*] om. A.
[7] *Marton*, A.
[8] *indiscretius*, A.
[9] *quam*, A.

to ȝeve his answere to fore meny lordes of þe emperours lond; and he cam forþ with so glad chere, and answerde to al þing þat was put aȝenst hym, þat þe emperour was bowed [1] nouȝt onliche to mercie, bot also forto doo hym greet reverens and worschippe. Þo cam to þe kyng þat was so i-holde William bisshop of Hely, þat was put out of Engelond for his grete extorciouns and outrage, he cam to þe kyng for to aspie what wil þe kyng had to hym ward. And whanne he myȝte nouȝt begile þe kyng wiþ gile of blynde flaterynge, he hadde evel trust [2] to hym self, and turnede aȝen into [3] Fraunce wiþ hope [4] of grace. Bote Hubert bisshop of Salisbury come out of Sicil to þe kyng, and was i-send [5] into Engelond for governynge of þe rewme, [6] and also for to spede þe kynges rawnsown; [7] whan he was i-come [8] into Engelond he was i-chose archebisshop by oon [9] assent of þe monkes of Caunterbury [and of the bisshops, and no wonder. He feng þe palle and was y-stalled, and took anoon þe habyte of chanoun at Mertoun, [10] and was nouȝt grevous to þe monkes of Caunterbury], [11] bote þe scharpenes of Baldewyn had somdel [12] unwiseliche i-greved hym [13] toforehonde. Þey þis Baldewyn were a good man and an holy in his [14] oþer dedes,

Trevisa.

---

afore a grete multitude of noble peple to answer to thynges obiecte. This noble prynce did answere so to thynges obiecte with a glade contenaunce that the emperoure was not movede to mercy oonly, but also he schewede grete reverence to the kynge. In whiche tyme William bischop of Hely come to the kynge, thenkynge by his laboure made to visitte hym, and thro his glosynge, to have obtenede the favor of the kynge. Neverthelesse he hade suche comfort of the kynge as he hade deservede, and so he departede to Fraunce. But Hubertus commynge to Sicille for the kynge, was directe to the realme of Ynglonde for savegarde of hit, and for to provide for the redemption of the kynge. Whiche commyn into Ynglonde was electe into the archebischop of Cawnterbery by the monkes of Cawnterbery and oþer bischoppes of the realme, schewynge not crudelite to theym lyke to Baldewyne. Of whom hit is to be mervaylede that he, made from a monke of the ordre Cister-

MS. Harl. 2261.

---

[1] *bouwed*, γ.
[2] *trist*, β.
[3] *to*, α. and Cx.
[4] *hoope*, Cx.
[5] *sent*, α. and β.
[6] *regme*, γ.; *royame*, Cx.
[7] *raunsone*, Cx.
[8] *comen*, β.
[9] *oon*] om. Cx.
[10] *Marton*. Cx.
[11] From α., β., γ., and Cx.
[12] *somwhat*, Cx.
[13] *hem*, β.
[14] *his*] om. Cx.

religiosus,[1] jus et prærogativam eligendi[2] archiepiscopum[3] a Cantuariensibus[4] transferre elaboraverat. Cujus rei gratia regio favore fretus, nova ædificia juxta monachalem ecclesiam[5] ad præbendas canonicorum sæcularium non sine sanguine construere cœperat, ut ibidem postmodum suffraganei episcopi cum clericis convenientes de futuri pontificis electione extrusis monachis deliberarent. At contra monachi Romanum pontificem appellantes opus inceptum intermitti coegerunt, quod et post mortem Baldewyni usque ad solum complanaverunt. In quo facto mirandum[6] tantum virum, qui ex archidiacono monachus Cisterciensis ordinis et post[7] abbas et ex abbate Wygorniensis præsul, ac ex suffraganeo tandem metropolitanus effectus, quod imperfectioris vitæ homines, canonicos scilicet seculares,[8] loco perfectorum subrogare voluerit; cum olim sancti principes et pontifices in Anglia, illud genus clericorum minus abundare volentes, optionem illis dederunt ut aut beneficia relinquerent aut vitam mutantes in reli-

---

[1] *ante annos*, C.D.
[2] *obligendi*, A.
[3] *Cantuariæ*, C.D.
[4] *monachis*, C.D.
[5] *Cantuariæ*, C.D.
[6] *est*, B.
[7] *postmodum*, B.
[8] From A.B.C.D.; *regulares*, MS.

TREVISA.

ȝit he fondede [to][1] turne[2] þe riȝt and þe prorogatif of þe elleccioun of þe archebisshop from þe monkes of Caunterbury. By cause þerof, faste[3] by þe monkene[4] chirche, by favour of the kyng he gan bulde a place[5] and greet howsynge, nouȝt wiþ oute schedynge of blood, for to have þere provendres[6] for seculer chanouns, and for bisshoppes suffraganes schulde nouȝt[7] come þider[8] forto trete þere[9] wiþ clerkes of þe ellecciouñ of þe archebisshop, and forto doo away þe monkes. Bote in þe oþer side the monkes appeled to þe pope, and compelled to cese þe work þat was bygonne, and after Baldewynes deth [þey][10] þrew it [doun][11] streiȝt to þe grounde. [In þat doynge hit is wonder of so greet a man, þat was first archedekon, and þanne whyte monk, and þanne abbot, and þanne bisshop of Wircetre, and þanne archebisshop, þat he wolde brynge men of more unperfyȝt[12] lyf, seculer chanouns, instede of men of more parfyȝt lyf. For somtyme holy princes and bisshops in Englond wolde nouȝt have to menye[13] of suche manere clerkes, and ȝeve hem choys wheþer þey wolde leve here benefice oþer chaunge hir lyf and goo into religioun.][14] *Trevisa.* It semeþ þat Baldewyn was wel avised þat Crist was heed of holy cherche, and his apostles hyȝe[15] bisshoppes, and non of hem alle was noþer[16] monk noþer frere; and so it myȝte seme þat he knewe wel þat oþer clerkes were more profit þan evere was monk oþer frere. Bote for it is i-seide þat þe clerkes hadde choys wheþer þey wolde leve her benefice oþer goo into religioun, of þat choys it myȝte seme grete wonder; for it semeþ þerby

---

MS. HARL. 2261.

ciense an abbot, after that bischop of Worcestre, and metropolitan afterwarde, that he wolde have derogate the monkes of Cawnterbery privilege of the eleccion of the metropolitan, and wolde have causede seculer prebendaryes to have reioycede the privilege of eleccion. After that kynge Richarde was

---

[1] From *β.* *founded to*, Cx.
[2] *vondede torne*, *γ.*
[3] *vast*, *γ.*
[4] *monkes*, Cx.
[5] *plas*, *γ.*
[6] *provendes*, Cx.
[7] *nouȝt*] om. *β.*, *γ.*, and Cx.
[8] *þuder*, *γ.*
[9] *raþer*, *α.*
[10] From *α.*, *β.*, and Cx.
[11] From *α.*, *β.*, and Cx.; *hy þruwe hit doun*, *γ.*
[12] *unparfyght*, Cx.
[13] *many*, *β.*; *meny*, *γ.*
[14] From *α.*, *β.*, *γ.*, and Cx.
[15] *heyghe*, Cx.
[16] *never*, Cx.

gionem[1] transirent. Igitur post Alemannicæ detentionis tædium, quod[2] plene uno anno et tribus mensibus duraverat, relaxatus est rex Ricardus, mense Januarii,[3] pro centum millibus librarum argenti, relictis apud imperatorem, obsidibus Rothomagensi et Bathoniensi episcopis, pro parte pecuniæ nondum solutæ. Ad cujus summæ solutionem, silente interim omni privilegio, prærogativa et immunitate ecclesiæ seu personæ, extorta est tota lana[4] alborum monachorum et canonicorum, quin etiam[5] prælatorum anuli, vasa, cruces, calices,[6] cum auro de feretris sanctorum abraso,[7] sunt[8] conflata. Demorante tamen rege apud[9] Swinam in Flandria duobus plene[10] mensibus, aut propter flatus adversos aut necessarii apparatus gratia, imperiales apparatores

[1] *legionem*, A.
[2] *quod*] om. A.
[3] *Januarii*] om. B.
[4] *lana*] from B.; *lanorum*, MS.
[5] *et*, A.
[6] *calices*] om. A.
[7] *abrasa*, A.
[8] *et*, B.
[9] *rege apud*] om. A.
[10] *pene*, A.

[1] þat þey [2] schulde leve her benefice how it evere were; for ȝif þei [3] ȝede nouȝt into religioun þey schulde leve her benefice, and ȝif þey ȝede into religioun þe [4] moste leve þe benefice by þe rule of religioun, oþer þey [5] speke þ oþerwise of religioun þan alle men in comyn speche wolde [6] mene, and so it semeþ more wonder [of þat wonder] [7] þan of his menynge. But me [8] wolde wondre þat Baldewyn, þat was a monk, wolde nouȝt flatre [9] wiþ monkes, but helde [10] oþer clerkes more holy þan monkes [syth he knew the degre of eyther]. [11] Þan it foloweþ in þe storie: After þe woo and þe tene [12] þat kyng Richard had in prisoun in Almayne a ȝere and þre monþes, he was delyvered in þe monþe of Janyver [13] for an hondred þowsand pound of silver, and lefte wiþ the emperour plegges, [14] þe bisshops of Rothomage and of Bathe, for som of þe money þat was nouȝt ȝit [15] i-payde: and for to paye þat som of money all þe wolle of white monkes and of chanouns was i-take, and also rynges of prelates, vessel, [16] croyses, and chalys [were y-take], [7] and golde i-schave of seyntes [17] schrynes and i-ȝote, [18] and no privelege of persoun wheþer [19] of holy cherche noþer fredom [20] was i-spared Bote [21] þe kyng dwelled weie [22] monþes ful [23] at Swynam [24] in Flaunders, oþer to abyde wynde oþer for to aray what hym neded; TREVISA.

delyverede from prison, contynuede by oon yere and iij. monethes, in the monethe of Ianuary, for a c. m[l] li. of silver to be payede for his redempcion, the bischoppes of Roone and of Bathe lefte in plegge for a parte of that summe not payede. For whiche redempcion alle libertes, privileges, and immunites depressede of eny person or place, alle the wolles of white monkes and of chanons was taken, the rynges of prelates, vesselles of silver, crosses, chalyces, and the towmbes of seyntes were abrasede and meltede for the redempcion of that kynge. Kynge Richarde taryenge in Swina in Flaundres other for wynde other for regalle vesture allemoste ij. monethes, was MS. HARL. 2261. f. 369 b.

[1] This sentence is repeated in the MS.
[2] from α. and Cx.; α. γ.
[3] *he*, α.; *þei*, β.
[4] *þeyȝ*, α., *they*, Cx.
[5] *he*, α.
[6] *wol*, α. and Cx.; *wole*, β.
[7] From α., β., γ., and Cx.
[8] *men*, Cx.
[9] *flatery*, α.
[10] *huld*, γ.
[11] From Cx.
[12] *teone*, α. and β.
[13] *Januar*, Cx.
[14] *pledges*, Cx.
[15] *ȝut*, γ.
[16] *vessels*, β. and Cx.
[17] *seyntene*, α.; *seventene*, β.
[18] *y-molt*, β.; *and gold of seventene shrynes y-shave and molten*, Cx.
[19] *noþer*, α. and Cx.
[20] *vredom*, γ.
[21] *Bote*] om. Cx
[22] *tweie*] om. β.
[23] *volle*, γ.
[24] *Suinam*, α.; *Swynne*, Cx.

sic demorantem pæne interceperant. Pœnituerat enim imperatorem relaxasse regem, sicut quondam Pharaonem dimisisse[1] Israel. Mense tamen Marcio Sandicum[2] rex applicuit, et modica apud Londoniam mora facta processit, ac munitissima fratris sui Johannis castella de Notyngham et Tykhull accepit, quorum castellanos incarceravit,[3] Johannem fratrem suum tanquam ingratum et infidum judicio procerum omni[4] honore privavit; sicque apud Hamptoniam Pascha suum tenuit, atque apud Wyntoniam,[5] tanquam detersa jam captivitatis ignominia quasi[6] rex novus quinto regni[7] anno solemniter coronatus est. Post cujus coronationis solemnia quicquid prius leniter datum aut graviter venundatum fuerat[8] repetiit nomine commendati,[9] fructus perceptos pro sorte computans, cessante pacto titulo[10] et[11] instrumento quocumque; et sic paululum demoratus Franciam navigavit contra regem Francorum denuo bellaturus.[12] Igitur[13] regibus utrisque sub varia

Gratiæ MCXCV. Ricardi V.

[1] *filios*, B.; *populum*, B.
[2] *Sanwicum portum*, A.; *Sandwicum*, B.
[3] *Igitur*, A.
[4] *cum*, A.
[5] *in octavis Paschæ*, C.D.
[6] *tanquam*, A.
[7] *sui*, A.
[8] *fuerit*, A.
[9] *commodati*, C.D.
[10] *quocumque titulo aut*, C.D.
[11] *et*] om. B.
[12] *congressurus*, C.D.
[13] *Bellum itaque inter duos reges fortes alternantibus inter partes ut assolet dextris sinistrisque casibus gerebatur, nec tamen unius pedis passuum Richardus rex amisit. Firmatæ sunt tandem inter reges ad annum induciæ*, C.D.

Trevisa.

þere the emperours[1] [men][2] had almost[3] i-take hym eft sones; for þe emperour aþou3t þat he hadde i-lete goo þe kyng as Pharao aþou3te[4] somtyme, þat [he][5] had i-lete goo [þe children of][5] Israel. Bote in þe monþe of Marche þe kyng com alonde at Sandwiche, and dwelled awhile at Londoun, and wente and toke þe strengest castelles þat his broþer Iohn hadde, þe castelles of Notyngham and of Tykehulle, and putte þe wardeynes preof in prisoun. And by counsaille and doom of lordes he privede his broþer John of all manere worschippe, for he hilde[6] hym untrewe and unkynde; and hilde[7] his Esterne[8] at Hamptoun; and so at Wynchestre, whanne þe mescheef of his takynge was i-wyped of, he was neweliche i-crowned as a newe kyng, þe fifte 3ere of his kyngdom. After þe solempnite of þat crownement[9] þe kyng axede a3e al þat was to forehonde li3tliche i-3eve oþer grevousliche i-solde, and acounted for þe sorte al þe fruyt þat was i-fonge in þe mene tyme, and sparede for no covenant noþer for chartre, [nother][10] for dede noþer for instrument; and so he dwelled awhile, and seilled into Fraunce for to werre a3enst þe kyng of Fraunce. Þanne þe kynges fou3te, and eiþer spedde dyversliche, and

---

MS. Harl. 2261.

alle moste taken ageyne, for the emperoure was soory that he hade suffrede hym to departe, as kynge Pharao was somme tyme for the dimission of the childer of Israel. Neverthelesse kynge Richarde londed at Sandewiche in the monethe of Marche, and taryenge a lytell season at London, wente after that and toke the castells of Notyngham and Tikhull longynge to his broþer Iohn, imprisonynge the men founde in theyme, and deposede Iohn his broþer of alle his honor as a fals man and unkynde, by cownsaile of the gentylle men of the londe. And so the kynge kepede Ester at Hampton, and was crownede at Wynchestre as a newe kynge in the v^the^ yere of his reigne, askynge after that solennite doen, as by reason of a commende, what thynge that he hade 3iffen afore or solde every title and instrumente made þeron beynge voyde. Whiche kynge taryenge but a certeyne season, saylede to Fraunce to venge hym on the kynge of that cuntre, and so thei fi3tenge soore in diverse

---

[1] *emperour his men*, α.
[2] From β.
[3] *almest*, γ.
[4] *forthought*, Cx.
[5] From β. and Cx.
[6] *heelde*, β.; *helde*, Cx.
[7] *heelde*, Cx.
[8] *Ester*, β. and γ.; *Eester*, Cx.
[9] *crounyng*, β. and Cx.
[10] From Cx.

ut assolet sorte congredientibus concessæ sunt ad annum induciæ, regi quidem[1] Ricardo pro reparatione virium[2] et opum utiles, quamvis ratio honesti[3] repugnaret. Johannes frater regis Ricardi, qui jam regi Francorum contra proprium fratrem adhæserat, quia[4] jam nil habuit nilque potuit, spretus est a rege Francorum; mediante tamen matre sua Alienora ad regem Ricardum supplex rediit, fideliter de cetero eidem[5] militaturus. Fiebant interea[6] ad Turonensem[7] exercitum diu intermissa torneamenta, quasi bellorum præludia, non obstante papali prohibitione.

Cap. XXIX.[8]

[*De Stephano, Andegaviæ procuratore, et quædam de Ricardo rege Angliæ.*]

Circa hæc tempora Stephanus quidam procurator Andegaviæ, qui sub diebus Henrici secundi et hujus regis Ricardi prudenter egerat, conjectans tamen delicati corporis principem ex longo itinere[9] et periculo vel

---

[1] *quoque*, A.
[2] *urbium*, B.
[3] *ratio honesti*] tamen honestati, B.
[4] *qui*, A.
[5] *eidem*] ei, A.
[6] *interim*, B.
[7] *Tironum*, A.B.
[8] This is not marked as a chapter in A.
[9] *temere*, A.

trewes were i-take[1] for oon ȝere, and þat was profitable[2] to kyng Richard forto gadre boþe riches and strengþe, þeiȝ[3] it wolde nouȝt stonde wiþ resoun of honeste. John, kyng Richard his broþer, þat tornede to þe kyng of Fraunce aȝenst his owne broþer, for he had riȝt nouȝt, he myȝt doo riȝt nouȝt, þerfore he was forsake of þe kyng of Fraunce. Bote by help of his moder Eleanore he come mekeliche aȝen to kyng Richard, and was afterward his trewe[4] knyȝt. For use of ȝonge knyȝtes, as it were to make hem alle[5] to fiȝte in bataile, þat tyme tournamentis, þat were left of longe tyme, were i-made and i-used aȝen nouȝt wiþstondynge þe popes forbedynge. TREVISA.

Capitulum vicesimum nonum.

ABOUTE þat tyme oon Stevene, procuratour of Angeoy,[6] þat hadde wiseliche i-bore hym in þe secounde kyng Henries tyme, and in þis kyng Richard his tyme also;[55] he supposed þat þe kyng, þat was tender of body, schulde be overcome wiþ[7] longe way and peril þat he schulde nevere come[7] aȝen, oþer ȝif

---

tymes, pease was grawntede for oon yere to kynge Richarde to amende his ordinaunce and to fortifye his hoste. Iohn broþer to kynge Richarde beynge with the kynge of Fraunce ageyne his broþer, and his goodes and power decreasede, was refusede of the kynge of Fraunce. Neverthelesse he was restorede to kynge Richarde by the meanes of Alienor, moder to hym, promysynge to þe tru to his brother after that tyme. MS. HARL. 2261.

Capitulum vicesimum nonum.

ABOWTE this tyme there was a proctor of Gascoigne, Steven by name, whiche hade governede that cuntre nobly in the tymes of kynge Henricus the secunde, and of this kynge Richarde. Neverthelesse this Steven, coniecturynge in mynde the tendernes of the body of kynge Richarde, and perelle of that iourneye to the holy Londe, supposede veryly that he scholde not have commen

---

[1] *graunted*, α., β., and Cx.
[2] *profythabel*, γ.
[3] *þouȝ*, β.
[4] *truwe*, γ.
[5] *able*, α. and β.; *make hable*, γ.
[6] *Anjoye*, β.
[7] *wiþ . . . come*] om. α.

non, vel[1] difficile posse reverti, absente rege cœpit fines creditæ sibi potestatis petulanter excedere. Unde et suadente sibi quodam familiari suo nigromanticum quendam consuluit utrum rex Ricardus esset reversurus. At ille ducens Stephanum ad locum secretum ostendit ei caput æneum habens spiritum inclusum. "Quære," inquit, "ab isto quæ volueris, sed pauca et "breviter, quia ad multiloquium non respondit."[2] Tum ille: "Num ego visurus sum regem Ricardum?" et respondit, "Nequaquam." Item:[3] "Quam diu dura-"bit[4] administratio suscepta?" Respondit: "Usque "ad mortem tuam." Tertio quæsivit Stephanus, ubi esset moriturus. Et responsum est.[5] "In Pluma." Nec licuit ei ulterius quærere, sed dimissus a vate præcepit suis ne quid plumeum aliqua occasione[5] ei applicarent. Cœpit exhinc confidentius solito agere, subditos conterere, et maxime quendam de nobilibus

---

[1] *vel non, vel*] vel, B.; vel non, A.
[2] *respondet*, B.
[3] *Iterum inquit*, C.D.
[4] *mihi*, C.D.
[5] *ei*, B.
[6] *aliqua occasione*] om. B.

he come aȝe it schulde be unneþe; þerfore he bygan rabbisliche[1] to passe his waraunt in absens of þe kyng. Þan oon þat was homeliche wiþ hym counsaillede hym to aske[2] of a nigromansere wheþer[3] kyng Richard schulde come aȝen oþer no. Þe nigromansere ladde Stephene[4] into a prive place, and schewed hym a brasen heed, in þe whiche was a spirit i-closed: "Aske of þis what þou wilt," quod þe nigromansere, "but fewe "and schortlyche, for he answereþ nat to greet iangelynge." "Schal I nevere[5] see kyng Richard?" quoþ Stevene. "Nay," quod þe spirit. "How[6] longe schal myn office dure?" quod Stephene. "To þy lyves ende," quod þe spirit.[6] "Where "schal I deie?"[7] quod Stephene. "In Pluma" quod[8] þe spirit. Þanne moste he aske[9] no more, but he wente from his prophet, and forbeed his men and heet hem þat they schulde bringe no feþeres[10] nyh hym in no manere wise, and þat [bycause that a fether][11] is Pluma in[12] Latyn. Þerafter he gan to worche þe more boldloker,[13] and greved his[14] sugettes ful sore, and nameliche a noble man þat fliȝ somtyme to his

Trevisa.

þens. Wherefore he began to make excesse in that powere taken to hym, and inquirede of a nigromancyer wheþer that kynge Richarde scholde returne and comme from the holy Londe. Whiche bryngynge Steven proctor of Gascoigne unto a secrete place, and schewynge to hym an hedde of brasse havynge a spiritte inclusede in hyt, saide to hym, "Inquire of this hedde "what thow wylle in fewe wordes, for hit wille not answere "to mony thynges." Then this proctor inquirede of the hedde thre thynges. The firste was wheþer he scholde see kynge Richarde, and hit was ansuerede by the hedde nay. Also he inquirede how longe his administracion scholde endure. The spiritte seide unto his dethe. In the thrydde tyme he inquirede where he scholde dye, and the spiritte seide in Plume. After that he commaundede that noo thynge of plume or fethers scholde be putte nye to hym in eny wyse, and after that he began to oppresse poore peple, and ryche also. Nevertheless the seide person and proctor pursuynge a noble man

MS. Harl. 2261.

f. 370 a.

[1] *rabbyschliche*, α.
[2] *axe*, Cx.
[3] *where*, α.
[4] *Stevyn*, γ., et infra.
[5] *ich ever*, β.; *ever*, Cx.
[6] *How . . . spirit*] om. α.
[7] *Ich dyȝe*, γ.
[8] *quoþ*, β.
[9] *axe*, α. and β.
[10] *non veþeres*, γ.
[11] From Cx.; *for a feþer*, β. *vor veþer ys*, γ
[12] *in*] a, β.
[13] *boldlyche*, γ.; *boldly*, Cx.
[14] *his*, from α., β., and Cx. *hire* MS.

qui aliquando in castrum suum fugiens a facie Stephani persequentis, ipsum Stephanum negligentius in obsidione oberrantem cepit, et[1] laniatum trucidavit: munitio autem illa vocabatur Pluma, sicque patuit cavillatio spiritus illusoris.[2] Simile contigit de Gereberto[3] pseudopapa, prout superius[4] est expressum.[5] Simile etiam narratur de Alberico comite Northimbrorum, qui cum esset præpotens, suo statu non contentus, consulto dæmone[6] audivit quod Græciam esset possessurus. Unde et partes adiens orientis Græciam ingressus est. Cumque auditum esset a Græcis quod super[7] eos regnaret, nudatum illum bonis omnibus de finibus suis expulerunt. Post annos aliquot fessus homo ille laboribus et ærumnis Normanniam ad regem Henricum adiit, a quo nobilem viduam recepit in conjugem. At cum in benedictione nuptiali sacerdos quæreret a muliere sic:[8] "Domina Græcia, complacetne "tibi in viro isto?" agnovit Albericus versutiam spiritus illusoris, qui mentem hominis cupidam erexerat[9]

---

[1] *et*] om. B.
[2] *Ranulphus*, B.
[3] *Gilberto*, C.D.
[4] *superius tactum*, B.
[5] C.D. add: "qui quæsivit a "diabolo cui servierat, quando "esset moriturus, et responsum est "quando celebraret in Jerosolimam, "sed in Roma erat ecclesia nuncupata Jerosolimam, qua singulis "annis Romanus pontifex solet "celebrare. Donec Quadragesima "quando cantatur: Lætare Jerusalem, ubi tandem celebrans expertus est dæmonis illusione."
[6] *dño*, A.
[7] *super*] om. A.
[8] *sic*] om. A.B.
[9] *erexit*, B.

owne castel, for Stevene pursued hym. Þis man aspied whan Stevene was recheles in þe seege, and took hym, and al to-hakked hym: þat castel heet Pluma, and so þe cautel of þe gileful[1] spirit was i-knowe; and so it fel of Gerebertus the false[2] pope, as it is i-seide toforehonde. ℟.[3] And so it fil[4] of oon Albericus erl of Norþhumberlond, þat was a myȝti man with alle, and hulde[5] hym nouȝt apaide with his owne estate;[6] but he counsailled wiþ a feend, þat tolde hym þat he schulde have[7] Grecia, þat is Grees;[8] þerfore he wente estward, and cam into Grees. Whan þe Grees[9] herde[10] telle þat he schulde regne over hem, þei took of hym al þat he hadde, and putte hym out of her lond; but after somwhat of ȝeres þis was wery of travaille and of woo, and cam to kyng Henry into Normandie, and hadde of hym a nobil wedewe[11] to wyf, and whanne þe preost[12] schulde wedde hem he axede of þe womman, and seide, "Dame "Grecia, hast þou wille to þis man?" Þo Albericus knewe þe gile and þe fraude of þe false spirit þat arered his owne coveytous

TREVISA.

---

to his castelle, and departede from his feloweschippe by a grete space, was taken by that noble man and sleyne. For that castelle was callede Plume, and so the decepcion of the spiritte was expressede. ℟. A similitude accordynge to this processe is rehersede of Albericus, erle of Northumbrelonde, whiche beynge a man of grete myȝhte, and not contente of his state, hade knowlege by a spiritte that he scholde possede Grece, the seide erle supposynge that he scholde have rejoycede the londe of Grece. The seide erle entrenge to the londe of Grece, hit was knowen anoon amonge the Grekes by the communicacion of that erle that he scholde say he scholde be lorde of that londe. Wherefore the Grekes takynge his goodes from hym expulsede hym from that cuntre. And so Albericus trowblede and vexede soore come at the laste to Normandy to kynge Henricus, where the seide kynge toke to hym a noble wedowe to wife. This erle, herynge in the benediccion of the weddynge the preste to inquire of the woman in this wise, "Dame "Grece, pleasethe hit not yow to have this man," perceyvede anoon the allusion of the spiritte whiche hade erecte his

MS. HARL. 2261.

---

[1] *gylful*, γ.
[2] *valse*, γ.
[3] *R.*] om. α.
[4] *befell*, Cx.
[5] *heelde*, β.
[6] *staat*, α.
[7] *habbe*, γ.
[8] *Grece*, β. and Cx., bis.
[9] *Grekes*, β. and Cx.
[10] *hurde*, γ.
[11] *widewe*, β.
[12] *prust*, γ.

in spem vanam. Cum igitur rex Ricardus plusquam viginti marcarum millia pro suæ redemptionis residuo duci Austriæ præparasset, obsides [1] quos apud eum [2] dimiserat subito [3] comparuerunt, referentes tyrannum illum divini judicii pondere subversum, [4] terramque ejus [5] ante obitum suum [6] multiplici flagello [7] attritam, urbes repente conflagratas, Danubium fluvium cum multa jactura [8] fines suos exisse, semina jactata aruisse, ipsum quoque ducem, propter regis captionem nuper a papa excommunicatum,[9] derisisse. Qui denuo [10] die [11] Stephani, ad campos [12] equitans, ita pedem attrivit,[13] ut pede abscisso in mortem desperatus, coram optimatibus suis ab excommunicationis vinculo peteret absolvi. Responsum est a clero hoc fieri non posse nisi sub [14] juratoria cautione [15] quod [16] super injuriis regi Ricardo irrogatis judicio ecclesiæ staret.[17] Moxque obsides regis Anglorum, post præstitum juramentum, liberavit.[18] Deinde rex [19] correctior vixit. Accidit et aliud quod regem movit [20] ad correctionem. Vir quidam Cenoman-

---

[1] *pro liberatione obsidum mox illi*, B.

[2] *ducem*, B.

[3] *subito*] om. B.

[4] *obrutum*, B.

[5] *suum*, B.

[6] *ejus*, B.

[7] *fore*, B.

[8] *aruisse*, C.D.

[9] *ferebant excommunicationem*, A.B.

[10] *denuo*] om. B.

[11] *sancti*, A.C.D.

[12] *Natalis Domini de bonis captivi factus inclitus gloriose cum suis primatibus celebráns, die sancti Stephani cum suis militibus ad campum*, &c., B.

[13] *contrivit*, A.

[14] *ab*, A.

[15] *causicone* (sic), A.

[16] *quia*, A.

[17] *Hac igitur cautione præstita munus absolutionis promeruit*, B.

[18] *rex igitur Ricardus hiis auditis*, C.D.

[19] *Deinde rex*] B. has: "ingravescente ergo morbo dux moritur; cui succedens filius suus zelo cleri consternatus memoratos obsides absolute relaxavit, et quatuor millia marcarum tradidit eis regi Ricardo reportandum, quod audiens rex a dictis obsidibus, hujus rei nunciis, Deo gratias egit, et extunc."

[20] *plurimum*, B.

hert into a veyne hope. Whan kyng [1] Richard had i-made redy to paye þe duke of Austrige [2] twenty þowsande pounde þat was behynde of raunsoun, þe plegges þat kyng Richard [1] hadde i-lefte wiþ hym come sodenliche and tolde þat þe tiraund [3] was overtorned by wreche of Goddes doome,[4] and his land tofore his deth was greved with many [grete] [5] mescheves; for citees were sodenliche i-brend,[6] and þe ryver Danubius passed þe brymmes,[7] and dede grete harm fer aboute; sedes þat were i-sowe fordried [8] in þe erþe. Also þis duke was acorsed of þe pope for þe takynge of kyng Richard, and scorned þe corsynge; also in a seint Stephenes day he rood to þe feeldes,[9] and hurte so his [10] foot [11] þat it moste be and was [12] kutte of, and he wiþoute hope of lyf siȝ [13] þat he moste deie, and in presens of þe lordis of his lond he prayed to be assoilled [14] of þe sentens þat he was yn i-bounde. Þe clergie answerde and seide þat it myȝte noȝt be, but he wolde swere [15] to stonde to holy chirche ordenaunce touchinge þe wrong þat he hadde i-doo kyng Richard. Þe duke swore, and delyvered kyng Richard his plegges anon after his ooþ.[16] Þan þe kyng amended his lyf, and had also anoþer warnynge for to amende his lyf. For a man of Cenomannia

Trevisa.

---

mynde into veyne glory. Kynge Richarde makynge provision for xx. M[l] marke whiche was unpayde to the duke of Austrye for his redempcion, the plegges lefte þer apperede sodenly afore the kynge, seyenge and rehersynge the dethe of that tyraunte by the iuggement of God, and mony grete mischefes schewede to that cuntre, and mony cites to have bene brente in hit; and also the water of Danubius to have destroyede his cuntre, and cornes in the feldes to have wedrede, and how he was excommunicate by the pope. Also thei expressede that the seide duke cowthe not be absolvede untille that he hade made promyse to obbey the iuggemente of the churche for the iniuryes doen to Richarde kynge of Ynglond. That othe made thei seide thei were delyverede. And so after that tyme kynge Richarde began to amende his lyfe. Also an other thynge movede the kynge to correcte his life: A man of

MS. Harl. 2261.

f. 370 b.

---

[1] *kyng . . . Richard*] om. α.
[2] *duc of Austryche*, Cx.
[3] *tyraunt*, Cx.
[4] *Godus dome*, γ.
[5] From α., β., γ., and Cx.
[6] *y-barnd*, γ.
[7] *brynkes*, β. and Cx.
[8] *druyde*, α.
[9] *veldes*, γ.
[10] *his*, from β. and Cx.; þe MS.
[11] *vot*, γ.
[12] *and was*] om. γ.
[13] *sawe*, Cx.
[14] *asoyled*, γ.
[15] *swerye*, γ.
[16] *othe*, Cx.

nicus ad Sanctum Jacobum pia devotione profectus sospes[1] remeavit, qui postmodum pari devotione ignitus ut sanctum[2] sepulcrum[3] videret processit. Cui forsan Solinago[4] quidam terribili vultu apparuit. Pavefactus[5] homo crucis signo se munivit.[6] Ille[7] autem quasi[8] signaculum illud parvimpendens, "Nequaquam," inquit, "hoc modo[9] tueri poteris quin meus sis.[10] Porro "si procidens[11] adoraveris me, faciam te locupletem." Ad hæc[12] inquit homo ille: "Modo[13] liquet te fore partis "adversæ. Sint tua tibi, mihi sufficit[14] Christi largitio, "quem solum adoro." Cui ille: "Oportet te vel invitum "aliquid de meo habere;" et mox jactavit super caput hominis[15] pallium tenuis materiæ quo crinibus adustis cutis capitis denigrata permansit. Homo trepidus sanctum Jacobum inclamavit. Qui mox assistens dæmonem increpavit, ac quis esset quidve[16] negocii haberet in-

---

[1] *hospes*, A.
[2] *Domini*, C.D.
[3] *Domini*, A.B.
[4] *Salmago*, A.
[5] *pavescens*] B.
[6] *munivit*, from A.C.D.
[7] *illud*, B.
[8] *tanquam*, A.
[9] *monte*, B.; *te*, ins. A.
[10] *melius*, B.
[11] *cadens*, B.
[12] *quod*, B.
[13] *Satis*, B.
[14] *sit*, B.
[15] *quasi*, A.B.
[16] *aut quid*, B.

wente to Seint James for greet devocioun, and cam hom aȝen save[1] and sownde. Þerafter he hadde a grete devocioun to wende, and wente to þe Holy Lond to se oure Lordes grave. As he wente by þe wey uppon caas[2] alone, he siȝ oon wiþ a dredful face, and was a-drad[3] ful sore, and blessid hym self wel faste wiþ þe signe of þe cros in everiche side. Þan þe oþer, as it were despisynge þe signe of þe cros, seide, "Þou "myȝte nouȝt defende þe in þat manere but þou schalt be "myne; [and][4] ȝif þou wilt falle[5] doun to þe grounde and "worschippe me, I schal make þe riche." "Now," quod the man, "it semeþ þat þou art contrarie and of þe oþer side; "take þou þyn owne; [Crist his owne][6] ȝift is[7] ynow for me; "I worschip hym allone." "Wilt þou nelt þou,"[8] quod he, "þou most have somwhat of myne," and þrewe[9] anon uppon þe manis heed as it were a þynne mantel, þat brende þe heer of his heed, and made þe skyn of his heed[10] al blak. Þe man was sore aferde, and cride to seint Iame. Seynt Iame com anon and aroute[11] þe fende, and axede what he was, and wherof

Trevisa.

Cenomanny goynge to Seynte Iame come ageyne in goode heale. Neverthelesse, the seide man movede in lyke devocion wente to visitte the sepulcre of oure Lorde, to whom a terrible spiritte apperede. That man afrayede gretely with the siȝhte of hym made a signe of the holy crosse. But the spiritte as havynge noo regarde þerof seide: "Thow schalle not escape "soe, but thow schalle be myne; neverthelesse, and if þow "wylle falle to the grownde and honoure me y schalle make the "a ryche man." Then the man seide: "Now y knowe that "thow art a wykked spiritte; kepe thy goodes to thy selfe, for "the goodes that God hathe ȝiffen to me be sufficiaunte to "my person, whom y honoure with alle my herte." Then the spiritte seide: "Thow schalle have some thynge of me" and with that he caste on his hedde a palle of a thynne mater, whiche brente the heire of his hedde, and from that tyme the skynne of his hedde was as blacke as pycche. That man trowblede soore callede to helpe seynte Iame, whiche presente þer anoon, blamede the develle, inquirynge of hym what he

MS. Harl. 2261.

---

[1] *sauf*, β.; *sauf*, Cx.
[2] *case*, γ.
[3] *adred*, α.; *aferd*, Cx.
[4] From β.
[5] *valle*, γ.
[6] From β. and γ.
[7] *ȝiftes*, MS.
[8] *Wolt þou nylt þou*, β.; *Wolt thou nylt, quoth he*, Cx.
[9] *þruwe*, γ.
[10] *and . . . heed*] om. α.
[11] *arouted*, β. and Cx.

quisivit. Qui constrictus imperio:[1] "Dæmon sum," inquit, "humano generi infestus. Ego Christianos[2] " in orientali profectione impedivi. Ego regem Ricar- " dum per[3] ministrum meum ducem Austriæ captivavi. " Ego regem Ricardum, postquam liberatus est, jugiter " circumvallo, potissime circa cubile ejus et circa the- " sauros ejus quos avide recondit." His dictis dæmon disparuit et homo ille confortatus, dimisso itinere intento, Cenomanniam rediens[4] Ricardo regi quæ audierat retulit, caput suum ustulatum ostendit,[5] et rex se cor-

[1] *ait*, C.D.
[2] *reges*, A.B.
[3] *per*] om. A.
[4] *redditus*, A.
[5] C.D. add: " Unde rex de re- " liquo cubile suum castius custo- " divit et elemosinas erogavit. " Circa hos dies Hubertus Can- " tuariæ archiepiscopus, apostolicas " et regias in Anglia gerens vices, " mortuo jam Eboracensi archie- " piscopo, metropolim Eboracum " adiit. Suppresso pro tempore " primatis nomine magnam ibi po- " testatem exercuit, ac nullo ob- " sistente seu reclamante consilium " celebravit. *Stephanus.* Hic " commemorandum puto quod ra- " tione vel occasione duo metropo- " litani Anglorum per longa jam " tempora de prioratu contende- " runt. Eboracensis quidem per- " spicua se beati Gregorii auctori- " ritate tuetur, scribens enim " Augustino Anglorum primo epi- " scopo, Eboracensem inquit epi- " scopum tuæ fraternitatis dispo- " sitioni volumus subjacere, post " obitum vero tuum ita præsit " episcopis quos ordinaverit ut " Londoniæ episcopi nullo modo " subjaceat dictioni. Sic vero " inter Londoniæ et Eboraci epi- " scopos in posterum ista honoris " distinctio, ut ipse prior habeatur " qui prius fuerit ordinatus. Can- " tuariæ vero episcopus, quem " beatus Gregorius Londoni, vocat, " asserit huic auctoritati posteriori " tempore derogatum, quando papa " Vitalianus venerabilem Theodo- " rum universis Angliæ ecclesiis " præfecit primatem. Cujus suc- " cessores eadem diu usi sunt " prærogativa, unde constat præ- " rogativam non personæ, sed ec- " clesiæ fuisse concessam. Respon- " detur a parte Eboracensis quod " beatus Gregorius sanxivit mani- " festi et solidi esse juris et nullo " quidem tempore abrogatum, sed " aliquo tempore ratione ipsius " temporis in usu non fuisse tan- " quam soporatum quiddam et suo " tempore excitandum. Anglis " siquidem nuper conversis, rudes " et indocti, ex ipsa gente episcopi " præsse cœperant, quibus neces- " sario informandis Romanus " pontifex pia providentia doctum " præfecit Theodorum, non quidem " evacuans decretum Gregorii, sed " tantum consulens tempori. Suc- " cessores vero Theodori aut simili- " ter tempori consulendum duxe- " runt, aut temporibus melius se

he servede. "I[1] am a feend,"[2] quod he, "and greve mankynde. "I[1] lettede þe Cristen kynges in þe iorney in þe Estlondes; "I[1] took kyng Richard prisoner by[3] my servaunt þe duke of "Austrige. After þat kyng Richard was delyvered I besette "hym al aboute, and nameliche aboute his chambre and his "tresour, þat he gaderep besiliche." Whan þese wordes were i-seide, þe fend vansched awey, and þe man was conforted, and left his wey þat he hadde i-ment, and tornede home aȝe to Cenomannia, and tolde kyng Richard what he hadde i-seie and i-herd, and schewed hym his heed þat was i-sweled and i-scalded; þanne þe kyng amended his owne lyf and his maneres. Aboute þat tyme Hubert archebisshop of Caunterbury was leeftenaunt[4] of þe pope and of the kyng of[5] Engelond, þe archebisshop of ȝork was dede, and Hubert made a grete counsaile at ȝork. TREVISA.

---

was. The spiritte seide: "Y am a develle contrarious, and an "enemye to mankynde at alle tymes. I lette the kynges of "Christianite in theire laboure in the holy Londe; I causede "kynge Ricardus to be taken in captivite by my ministre the "duke of Austry. Also y compasse abowte the bedde of kynge "Ricardus, and in especiall his treasures whom he gedrethe "avarously." These wordes y-seide the develle evaneschede, and that man returnede to Cenomanny, schewynge and expressynge to kynge Ricardus the þinges that he hade seene and herde, causynge the kynge to correcte his lyfe. Hubertus archebischop of Cawnterbery, havynge auctorites of the pope and of the kynge, wente to Yorke abowte þis tyme, and kepede a cownsaile þer. MS. HARL. 2261.

---

[1] *Ich*, β., tris.
[2] *Ich am a vend*, γ.
[3] *by*, from Cx.; *be* MS.
[4] *lutenant*, β.; *levetenaunt*, γ.; *lieutenant*, Cx.
[5] *in*, Cx.

rexit. Circa hos dies Hubertus Cantuariensis[1] archiepiscopo Eboracum adiit[2] et concilium celebravit.

Cap. XXX.

[*Willelmi, cum longa barba appellati, gesta et mors.*]

Gratiæ MCXCVI. Ricardi VII.

Circa hos dies duo erant qui pari proposito, sed dispari causa, commoda regia quærere videbantur. Abbas namque Cadomensis fraudem officialium regiorum apud regem culpabat, ideoque insolentiam eorum cum quiete provincialium castigandum fore censebat. Willelmus vero cum longa barba insolentiam divitum, qui propriis fortunis[3] parcentes pauperes onerabant, fortiter accusabat. Igitur accepta potestate abbas[4] præfatus mense Februarii Londoniam venit, præsides provinciarum ad ratiocinia sua reddenda districte[5] convenit, sed morte præventus[6] Paschalia festa non vidit. De Willelmo quoque tradebatur quod Londoniæ erat oriundus, a barba prolixa quam fovit cognomen[7] accepit, quam

" habentibus præsumptores fuerunt, " potissime cum Eboracenses simpli- " citate quadam rustica de propriæ " sedis prærogativa minus curarent, " ac usum pallii a diebus Paulini " primi diu negligerent. Ad hæc " dicit Cantuariensis quod et post- " quam usus pallii Eboracensi sit re- " stitutus, plures Eboracenses epis- " copi Cantuariensi tanquam sui " primatis jurisdictioni subjacuisse " noscuntur. Respondet Ebora- " censis quod sicut ratio temporalis " necessitatis solido juri Ebora- " censis ecclesiæ derogare non de- " buit, ita nec simplicitas seu " negligentia antistitum ejusdem " ecclesiæ præjudicare debuit. De- " nique ista de prioratu tam vana " contentio Anglorum metropoli- " tanos longo et sumptuoso labore " exercuit. Vanissime autem " uterque illorum scribit totius " Angliæ primatem, cum neuter " illorum habeat significatam hujus " nomine potestatem."

[1] *archiepiscopus apostolicas et regias in Anglia vices gerens mortuo Eboracensi*, A.B.

[2] *transiit*, B.

[3] *fortunis*] om. B.

[4] *Cadoniensis*, C.D.

[5] *discribere*, A.

[6] *sicuti et ille Willelmus memoratus*, C.D.

[7] *nomen*, B.

Capitulum tricesimum. TREVIS A.

ABOUTE þat tyme were tweyne þat fondede,[1] as it semed, to doo þe kynges profit[2] al by oon entent, but by dyverse cause of doynge; for þe abbot Cadomensis[3] warnede þe kyng of þe fraude of his officers; þerfore he wolde þat her outrage schulde be chastised,[4] þat men of þe contray[5] myȝte lyve[6] in pees. But William wiþ þe longe berde warnede þe kyng of þe outrage of riche men, þat sparede her owne riches[7] and piled pore men. Þanne þis abbot had a warant,[8] and cam to Londoun in þe monþe of Feverer,[9] and made sone[10] come to fore hym þe officers of contrayes and of provinces to ȝelde ful[11] acountes: bot deth hym lette, so þat he siȝ[12] nouȝt Ester-day. Me seiþ[13] þat þis William was i-bore at Londoun, and hadde his[14] surname of his longe berde þat he usede, [and was y-cleped William wiþ þe longe berde. He usede][15] þat long berd for he wolde

Capitulum tricesimum. MS. HARL. 2261.

THERE were in this tyme ij. men laborynge for the profite and commodite of the kynge in lyke purpose, but in diverse causes. For the abbot of Caane blamede the fraude and decepcion of the officers of the kynge afore þe presence of the kynge, and movede that the insolence of theyme myȝhte be correcte for the reste and pease of comprovincialles. And William with the longe berde accusede the insolence of ryche men, whiche sparede theire awne goodes, and oppressede poore peple. This abbotte, takynge power of the kynge, come to Ynglonde in the monethe of Februarius, and commaunded streytely the governoures of provinces to comme to London to hym to ȝiffe accomptes of theire offices, but the seide abbotte diede afore Ester. Hit is seide that the oþer man William was borne in London, and was callede William with the longe berde in that f. 371 a.

[1] *þat fondede*] om. α.; *founded*, Cx.
[2] *prouffyte*, Cx.
[3] *Cadonensis*, Cx.
[4] *chasted*, Cx.
[5] *contrayes*, α. and Cx
[6] *lybbe*, γ.
[7] *rychesse*, Cx.
[8] *warent*, α.; *warraunt*, Cx.
[9] *Februar*, β. and Cx.
[10] *sompne*, α.; *somne*, β.; *somme*, Cx.
[11] *fol*, γ.
[12] *sawe*, Cx.
[13] *Men saym*, Cx.
[14] *þe*, α.
[15] From α., β., γ., and Cx.

ideo[1] nutrivit ut tali insigni in cœtu et concione magis conspicuus et spectabilis appareret. Qui cum esset ingenio acer, mediocriter litteratus, eloquens supra modum, innata quadam animi et morum petulantia, nomen sibi grande facere volens, moliri nova et audere ingentia cœpit. Denique inhumana et impudens ejus actio[2] in proprium germanum signum erat vesaniæ ejus in cæteris Nam fratrem ejus[3] Londoniæ civem, qui eum in scholis exhibuerat, apud regem tanquam regiæ proditionis reum, pro eo quod profusiora solito sumptuum solatia non refunderet, instanter accusabat. Sed quamvis a principe in hoc derisus fuerit, favore quorundam inter magistratus Londoniæ locum obtinuit. Denique clandestina opera et venenatis[4] susurris apud plebem divitum insolentiam qua pauperes indigne tractabantur suggillans mediocres ad immoderatæ libertatis amorem inflammans, adeo plurimos quasi præstigiis fascinatos sibi devinxit,[5] ut quinquaginta duo millia Londoniensium indigenarum ad ejus nutum tanquam communi cunctorum[6] provisori obtemperarent. Tanto ergo fretus consciorum numero, tanquam zelans pro pauperculo populo et commodo regio,

[1] *ideo*] om. A.
[2] *erectio*, C.D.
[3] *suum*, A.B.
[4] *venatis*, B.
[5] *adjunxit*, A.
[6] *cunctorum*] om. A.

seme the more worþy and semelich in speche, and gaderynge of meny men; he was scharp of witte and somwhat i-lettred, and over mesure a greet speker, and by a manere kyndeliche rabbischnesse[1] of wit and of þewes he wolde gete hym a greet name, and caste hym to doo newe dedes, and bygan to hyre[2] greet doynge and dedes. Also his wrecched and schameliche dedes aȝenst his owne broþer was signe and tokene of his woodnes in his oþer dedes, for he accused his owne broþer of tresoun to þe kyng, for he ȝaf hym nouȝt more large spens[3] of solas and cost þan he was i-woned.[4] His broþer was a burgeys of Londoun, and hadde i-founde hym to scole. He was scorned of þe prince for þat dede, and ȝit by favour of som men he had place among þe grete of Londoun; also among þe peple[5] he blamede venymliche[6] þe prive dedes and þe outrage of riche men, þat misferde with pore men, and so he excitede hugeliche[7] þe mene men to love[8] and desire fredom out of mesure, so þat he socied meny to hym as þouȝ þey were bewicched[9] riȝt wiþ wichcraft. For [þere][10] he hadde tendaunt to his hestes fyve hondred þowsand and two þowsand men of Londoun, as it were to þe comoun provyour[11] of alle. Whan he hadde so many fautours as he[12] þat wolde stonde for þe pore peple and for þe kynges profite, he wolde in everiche gadrynge and counsaile wiþ- TREVISA.

---

he noryschede and suffrede hit to growe; a scharpe man of witte, litterate in a meane maner, but excellente in eloquence. The seide William havynge a citesynne of London to his broþer, and seenge that he wolde not ȝiffe to hym moore large exhibicion then he was wonte to have, accusede hym of treason in diverse tymes afore the kynge. Neverthelesse this William hade as in derision of the kynge þerfore hade secrete communicacion with mony citesynnes off London of the insolence of ryche men oppressynge poore peple, insomoche that lij. M. of citesynnes of London were redy at his commaundemente as to obbey the commune provisor of alle poore peple. The seide William, assuerede of this grete nowmbre of peple, began to MS. HARL. 2261.

---

[1] *kundlych rabyschnes*, γ.
[2] *here*, β. and Cx.; *hure*, γ.
[3] *spence*, β. and Cx.
[4] *y wont*, α.; *wont*, β.
[5] *pupel*, γ.
[6] *venymouslich*, β.; *venymously*, Cx.
[7] *hougelyche*, γ.
[8] *lovye*, α.; *lovy*, β.
[9] *bywychched*, γ.; *bywytched*, Cx.
[10] From β.
[11] *comyn purvyour*, γ. and Cx.
[12] *he*] om. α.

cœpit in omni cœtu nobilibus resistere, prætendens[1] eorum fraude fisco[2] plurimum deperiret. Cumque illi propter hoc contra[3] eum fremerent, transfretavit ille ad regem, pro cujus fide potentum injurias se perpessum[4] ostendebat. Inde reversus calliditate solita cœpit de cetero tanquam regio favore subnixus fiducialius agere et proprios complices fortius animare. Cumque tam[5] initæ[6] conspirationis rumor percrebuisset,[7] Cantuariensis archiepiscopus Hubertus, cui regni regimen commissum fuerat, plebem convocat, natos rumores recitat, ad tollendum omnem sinistram suspicionem obsides dari rogat. Ejus blandiloquio populus placatus obtemperat, obsides[8] donat. Nihilominus præfatus Willelmus cœptis insistens, vallatus turbis pompatice procedebat, conventus publicos faciebat, salvatorem pau-

---

[1] *quod*, B.C.D.
[2] *fiscum*, B.
[3] *in*, A.
[4] *perpensum*, B.; *passum*, C.D.
[5] *jam*, A.B.
[6] *miræ*, C.D.
[7] *increbuisset*, A.
[8] *que*, add. B.

stonde gentil[1] men, and segge[2] þat by here fraude þe kyng loste meny [grete][3] enchetes; þey gruechede[4] aȝens hym perfore, and[5] he seilled to þe kyng, and seide hym þat riche men dede hym greet wrong, for he was trewe[6] to hym. Þan he cam aȝen and gan to worche wiþ fraude, as he was i-wonde,[7] more besiliche and more tristeliche,[8] and conforted his fautours as it were by favour of þe kyng. Noyse and tydinges[9] of þis conspiracie sprang out, and Hubert archebisshop of Canturbury,[10] þat hadde þe rule of þe rewme,[11] herde þerof, and sente for þe peple, and rehersed how it was i-tolde, and forto putte[12] of all evel suspeccioun he prayed wel faire, and axede plegges. Þe pepil[13] was i-plesed wiþ his faire speche, and ȝaf and delivered hym plegges; bote þis William helde forþ as he hadde bygonne, and hadde moche folk aboute him, and wente wiþ greet boost and array, [and made openliche conventicles and counsailes and gadrynge of men, and cleped hym self þe savyour[14] of pore men, and made greet boost and brag. Trevisa.

---

resiste noblemen, seyenge that the goodes of the kynge were diminute by the fraude and subtilite off theym. The noblemen of the realme havynge indignacion ageyne hym, he saylede to Normandy to the kynge, seyenge to hym that he hade suffrede grete iniuryes of myȝty men for the utilite of the kynge. And so the seide William returnede to Ynglonde, began to contynue as he usede afore, comfortynge the peple drawynge to hym by boldenesse of the favor of the kynge. The rumor of that conspiracion encreasynge gretely, Hubertus archebischop of Cawnterbery, havynge governayle of the realme, callede that peple afore hym, and rehersede the rumor of that conspiracion, wherefore he movede and preyede theyme to ȝiffe borowes for pease to be kepede, that alle suspicion myȝhte be avoidede. That peple as pleasede thro his speche obbeyede his desire, and assignede and toke to hym diverse borowes. Neverthelesse the seide William wente iettynge in the stretes, and moche peple drawynge to hym, callenge hym selfe the saviour of poore MS. Harl. 2261. f. 371 b.

---

[1] *jentel*, α.; *iantyl*, γ.
[2] *seie*, α.; *sey*, β.; *sygge*, γ.; *say*, Cx.
[3] From β., γ., and Cx.
[4] *gruechide*, β.
[5] *and*] om. α.
[6] *vor a was truwe*, γ.
[7] *wont*, α. and Cx.
[8] *trustly*, Cx.
[9] *tiþingis*, β.; *tyþyngus*, γ.
[10] *ȝork*, α.
[11] *regm*, γ.; *royamme*, Cx.
[12] *vorto potte*, γ.
[13] *pepul*, α.
[14] *saveour*, β., et infra.

perum se vocabat, frenandum[1] in brevi potentum proterviam granditer[2] intonabat. Unde et sumpto de sacris scripturis[3] themate ita exorsus est: *Haurietis*[4] *aquas in gaudio de fontibus salvatoris.* "Ego," inquit, "sum pauperum salvator; vos pauperes duras divitum "manus experti; haurite nunc de fontibus meis "aquas[5] doctrinæ salutaris, et hoc cum gaudio, quia "jam venit tempus visitationis vestræ, ego," inquit, "dividam aquas ab aquis. Aquæ nempe populi sunt; "dividam ergo[6] populum humilem et fidelem a populo "superbo et perfido, dividam electos a reprobis, velut "lucem a tenebris." Igitur[7] Hubertus, præfatus de consilio procerum evocavit[8] Willelmum[9] ad objicienda[10] satisfacturum, qui opportune affuit, sed ita turbis vallatus est ut ejus evocator territus mollius ageret et judicium protelaret. Explorata tandem per duos

---

[1] *fremendam*, C.D.
[2] *graviter*, B.
[3] *sacra scriptura*, B.
[4] *Haurite*, A.
[5] *aquam*, A.B.
[6] *ego*, B.
[7] *regni moderator Cantuariensis archipræsul de consilio*, &c., B.C.D.
[8] *advocavit*, B.
[9] *Willelmum*] om. A.
[10] *obedienda*, A.

and seide þat þe frowardnesse and outrage of myȝti men schulde be aleyde, and þat in a schort tyme; and he took a theme [1] of holy writt, and gan to preche in þis manere: "Haurietis aquas in gaudio de fontibus salvatoris;" þat is, Kecheþ [2] up water wiþ ioye of þe savyour his welles. "I "am," quoþ he, "þe savyour of pore men; ȝe beeþ pore "men, and haveþ [3] assayed þe hard hondes of ryche men, and "now kecheþ [4] and laveþ up water of hulful [5] lore up of my "welles, and þat wiþ ioye, for þe tyme of ȝoure visitacioun is "y-come. Y schal," quod he, "departe and to-dele [6] watres "from watres. Þe peple is water: þanne y schal to-dele [6] and "departe þe peple þat is trewe and meke from þe peple þat "is false and proude; y schalde parte [7] good men from evel "men, as lyȝt from derkenesse"]. [8] Þanne by counsaile of lordes þis Hewbert [9] sente for William, for he schulde stonde and answere to þat me [10] schulde putte aȝenst hym. He com at þe tyme as he was sommed, [11] but he hadde so moche folk aboute hym, þat he [that] [12] had i-sent for hym was aferd, and þe nysechere [13] in his doynge, and put of þe dome for þat tyme. Afterward oportunite was aspied by twene [14] burgeys

TREVISA.

men, and seyenge that the powers of myȝhty men scholde soone decrease, takynge to hym this theme of scripture, "Ye schalle "drawe waters in ioye from the welles of oure Savioure: I "am the savioure of poore men; ye poore men havynge experte "the harde hondes of ryche men, drawe ye nowe from my "welles the waters of hollesom doctryne." Seyenge oftetymes, "I schalle divide water from waters: this water is the peple; "wherefore I schalle divide tru peple and meke from prowde "peple and fals; I schalle divide the chosen peple of God from "peple reprobable, as lyȝhte from derkenesse." Wherefore Hubertus, metropolitan and governoure of the realme, callede the seide William to answere to certeyne thynges to be obiecte ageyne hym: whiche presente hym, but he hade so moche peple with hym that thei were feyne to diferre the iuggemente and to prolonge the sentence. Neverthelesse a season aspyede

MS. HARL. 2261.

[1] *teme*, β. and Cx.
[2] *clechiþ*, β., et infra; *kycheþ*, γ., et infra; *drawe*, Cx.
[3] *habbeþ*, γ.
[4] *drawe ye*, Cx.
[5] *heelful*, β.; *helefol*, γ.; *heeleful*, Cx.
[6] *divide*, β., bis; *dyvyde*, Cx.
[7] *departe*, β. and Cx.
[8] From α., β., γ., and Cx.
[9] *Hubert*, Cx.
[10] *men*, Cx.
[11] *ysomned*, γ.; *somned*, Cx.
[12] From Cx.
[13] *neschere*, β.; *nayscher*, γ.; *softir*, Cx.
[14] *by tweye*, α.; *by two*, Cx.

cives Londoniæ opportunitate qua solus sine turbis reperiri[1] posset, ad capiendum eum armata manus emittitur; sed alterum e civibus qui eum exploraverunt[2] ipse[3] Willelmus bipenni sua mactavit, alterum unus de Willelmi complicibus trucidavit.[4] Illico Willelmus cum paucis suorum, et cum concubina sua inseparabiliter cohærente, in vicinam ecclesiam beatæ[5] sanctæ[6] Mariæ de arcubus[7] qua non tanquam asylo[8] sed velut castello ad tempus se tueri voluit,[9] sperans populum suum, sed frustra, ad ejus liberationem[10] affuturum. Qui nimirum, etsi de ejus discrimine dolerent, respectu tamen obsidum quos dederant,[11] ac metu armatorum militum quos viderant, ad ejus ereptionem[12] non accurrunt. Jussus ergo Willelmus egredi, sed nolens, igne et fumo appositis exire tandem est coactus. Egredienti autem filius civis illius quem peremerat cultro ventrem dissecuit; captus tamen judicio curiæ primo equis distractus, deinde cum sociis novem qui illi deesse noluerant patibulo suspensus est. Porro complices ejus archiepiscopum velut homicidam non solum diffamarunt,[13] sed etiam

---

[1] *experiri*, A.
[2] *exploraverant*, B.
[3] *ipse*] om. B.
[4] *alterum . . . trucidavit*] om. B.
[5] *scilicet*, A. ; *videlicet*, C.D.
[6] *scilicet*, B.
[7] *confugit*, C.D.
[8] *sanctuario*, C.D.
[9] *confugit*, B.
[10] *mature*, B.
[11] *dederat*, B.
[12] *areptionem*, A.
[13] *diffamaverunt*, A.

of Londoun whan he myȝte be founde allone wiþ oute peple aboute hym, and men of armes were i-sende for to take [hym].[1] Bote William [wiþ][1] his ax slow oon þe burgeys þat hadde aspied hym. Anon William wiþ fewe[2] of his men, and wiþ his concubyne þat wolde nevere from hym, wente into a cherche þat was þere faste by, þat is Seint Marie cherche at þe[3] bowe.[4] Þere he wolde nouȝt defende hym as it were in a clercherche, bote as it were in a castel wiþ strengþe, and hopede in vayn þat his peple wolde come and delivere hym. Þe peple was sory for þe peril þat he was ynne, and is no wonder, bote by cause of þe plegges[5] þat þey hadde i-ȝeve, and for drede of þe knyȝtes þat þey sigh i-armed, þei com nouȝt to his delyveraunce. Þanne William was i-hote[6] to come [out],[7] bute wolde nouȝt; þan he was compelled wiþ fuyre[8] and wiþ smoke to come out maugre[9] his teeþ. Whanne he come out þe burgeys sone þat he had i-slawe forkutte[10] his wombe wiþ a knyf; but by dome of þe court whan he was i-take [he was][11] firste to-draw wiþ hors, and þan he was an honged wiþ nyne felawes þat wold nevere leve hym. But fautoures diffamed þe archebisshop as a man sleere; and nouȝt onliche þat, bote

Trevisa.

by ij. citesynnes of London when this William hade but fewe men in companye with hym, a grete multitude of men in armore were sende to take hym. But this seide William did sle oon of the ij. citesynnes with an ax that he hade in his honde, and fledde with his concubyne, whiche folowede hym contynually with oþer certeyn men unto the churche of the arches, supposynge his peple to comme and to delyver hym. But truly the peple durste not, what for the men beynge in plegge, and what for the multitude of peple beynge in armoure and ageyne theyme. So this William by fyre and smoke was compellede to goe furthe of the churche, and as he comme furthe the[12] sonne of that citesynne whom he hade sleyne kytte his bely and woundede hym soore. Neverthelesse he was drawen by iuggemente and honged after with ix. men, which wolde not be from his felowschippe. That doen his felawes diffamede that metropolitan not oonly as mansleer, willynge to

MS. Harl. 2261.

[1] From α., β., γ., and Cx. (bis).
[2] *vew*, γ.
[3] þe] om. Cx.
[4] *atte Bowe*, β.
[5] *pledgys*, Cx.
[6] *boden*, Cx.
[7] From α., β., γ., and Cx.
[8] *by fier*, β.; *vuyr*, γ.
[9] *mauegre*, γ.
[10] *forkitte*, β.; *forkytte*, Cx.
[11] From Cx.
[12] *then*, MS.

ut conspirationis suæ propriæ dedecus abstergerent, et damnatores Willelmi improbos comprobarent, arte et astu nomen illi et gloriam martyris quæsierunt. Denique, ut fertur, sacerdos quidam [1] propinquus Willelmi catenam qua vinctus fuerat febricitanti cuidam supposuit [2] et mox sanitatem subsecutam publice prædicavit. Quo vulgato populus patibulum ejus nocturno furto sustulit, terram sanguine ejus cruentatam [3] veluti sacrum quiddam in usus curationum usque ad fossam non modicam per minutias abrasit. Fama itaque [4] sic dispersa,[5] stultorum et [6] curiosorum hominum greges confluebant. Excubabat ibidem nocturno tempore insulsa jugiter multitudo quantum [7] honoris defuncto impendens tantum dedecoris ejus damnatori impingens, tantumque invaluit inceptus error ut prudentes quosque fascinasset nisi ea quæ de illo gesta cognoverant cautius [8] advertissent. Sane excepto eo quod paulo ante captionem suam homicidium commiserat,[9] quod utique

---

[1] *qxidam*] om. A.
[2] *superposuit*, A.
[3] *cruentam*, B.
[4] *Fama itaque lata*, A.; *Fame itaque late*, B.
[5] *disperta*, A.
[6] *que*, B.
[7] *quanto*, A.
[8] *cautius*] om. B.
[9] *commiserat*] om. A.

TREVISA.

also for to wype awey þe schame of her owne conspiracie, and for to preve þat þey þat dampned William were wikked men and evel doers, by craft and by fraude and gyle þey fondede to make William have þe name and worschip of a martir. Also me seiþ [1] þat a preost of William his kyn, leyde þe chayne þat William was wiþ i-bounde under a manis heed þat was sike [2] in [3] þe feveres, and preched opounliche þat þe man was hool anon riȝtes. Þis [4] sprang out among þe peple,[5] and þe peple com þefliche [6] be nyȝte, and took awey his gybet, and pared awey litel and litel þe erþe þat was by-bled [7] wiþ his blood, and made a grete diche, and kepte þe erþe as it were holy relikes to hele wiþ sike men. Name and tidinges [8] hereof sprang wel wide, and greet companyes boþe of sly [9] men and of fooles come to þe place, and wook þere be nyȝte ; [10] alwey come þider [11] greet multitude of lewed men and of fooles, and as moche worschippe as þei dede þat [12] man, so moche [13] vilenye þey putte upon hym þat hym hadde i-dampned. Þis error hadde so his forþ whan it was bygunne þat it wolde have bewicched [14] wys men and redy ne hadde [15] þei rediliche i-take hede [16] to þe doynge þat þei knewe of þis William his dedes; for he slow a man a litel to fore his takynge, and þat is ynow for a wise

---

MS. HARL. 2261.

avoide the dishonoure of theire propre conspiracion and to comprobate the dampners of the seide William, by a subtile arte gate to hym the name of a martir. For as hit was seide a cosynne to the seide William and preste takynge the cheyne with whom the seide William was bounde, putte hit to a man havynge the fevers, and he was made holle anoon, whiche thynge the seide preste prechede. The peple herynge that, wente in the nyȝhte and toke aweye the galowes on whom he f. 372 a. was hongede, and the erthe also made redde with his bloode. This fame and rumor encreasede, moche peple wente to his grave and taryede þer in nyȝhtes, preyenge and doynge honoure to that newe martir. But a man of discrecion scholde have be a schamede to have callede hym a martir, whiche did sle a man voluntarily afore his takynge; and his laste confession awe

---

[1] *men seyn*, Cx.
[2] *seke*, β.
[3] *of*, Cx.
[4] *anon. Ryght this*, Cx.
[5] *pupel*, γ., his.
[6] *þeevelich*, β.; *þevelyche*, γ.; *prively*, Cx.
[7] *bibled*, β.
[8] *tiþingis*, β.
[9] *slyȝ*, β.
[10] *woke there by nyght*, Cx.
[11] *þuder*, γ.
[12] *þe dede*, α., β., and Cx.
[13] *mych*, β.
[14] *bywicched*, α. and β.; *bywitched*, Cx.
[15] *nadde*, β. and γ.; *nad*, Cx.
[16] *hyde*, γ.

cuilibet cordato[1] viro ne pro martyre coleretur sufficere debuerat, ipsius extrema sub morte confessio, suos debuit cultores verecundasse, quippe cum[2] a nonnullis quamvis sero sub humili peccatorum confessione dare gloriam Deo moneretur, confessus est se ecclesiam beatæ Mariæ dum ibi expectaret semine polluisse. Insuper et cum ad votum per suos citius non eriperetur, negato Mariæ Filio eo quod eum non liberaret, diabolum ad suam liberationem invocasse.[3] Inficiabantur ista Willelmi justificatores, atque maligne conficta[4] dicebant. Porro litem hanc diremit in brevi vanitatis fabricatæ occasus. Veritas nempe solida est et tempore convalescit, sed concinnata[5] falsitas in brevi[6] evanescit.[7] Igitur Hubertus archiepiscopus,[8] regni moderator, in sacerdotem præfatum ecclesiastica præeunte vindicta, armatam[9] custodiam in loco illo posuit, quæ et excessum[10] accurrentium arceret; et sic in brevi. machina concinnatæ[11] superstitionis concidit et popularis opinio conquievit.

---

[1] *cor datus*, A.
[2] *dum*, C.D.
[3] *advocebat*, A.
[4] *conficte*, A.
[5] *continuata vero*, B.
[6] *cito*, B.
[7] *sed . . . evanescit*] om. A.
[8] *Cantuariensis*, B.
[9] *armata*, B.
[10] *accessum*, A.; *accensum*, B.
[11] *concinnante*, B.

TREVISA.

man to knowe þat he schulde not be worschipped for[1] a martir; [and ȝit his laste confessioun þat he made whanne he schulde deie schulde schame alle þat worschipped hym for a martir].[2] Meny counsailled hym to be mekeliche i-schryve[3] of his synnes, and to worschippe God; he schroof hym þey it were late, and knowleched þat he hadde defouled Seint Marie cherche, and i-leye þere by a womman while he was þerynne. Also for his men come nouȝt at his wille to delyvere hym, he forsook[4] Mary sone, and cleped þe devel to help, and prayde þat he wolde delyvere hym. William his fautores denyed al þis, and seide þat it was falsliche i-feyned. Also þe va[n]yte[5] of þis tale fil[6] downe sone, and durede but awhile, and aleyde þe strif; for þe[7] sooþnes is stedefast[8] and is strēng[9] in long tyme, but falnes i-feyned vanschep[10] awey in schort tyme. Þan Hubert þe archebisshop, ruler of þe reame,[11] cursede þat preost, and sette men of armes to kepe þat place, for men schulde not come þider a pilgrymage; and so þe sleyþe[12] [that][13] was i-feyned fil away in schort tyme, and þe opinioun of þe peple gan[14] forto reste.

MS. HARL. 2261.

to have schamede his worschippers. Whiche movede by diverse men to ȝiffe lawde to God, and confesse his synnes, mekely confessede that he pollute the churche of Oure Lady of the arches while that he was in hit. Also the seide William expressenge oþer thynges, seide that he cowthe not be delyverede, callede the devell into his helpe, forsakynge Iesu, in this condicion that he wolde delyver hym. Wherefore Hubertus metropolitan and governoure of the realme, doynge grete correccion to that preste, assignede a certeyne nowmbre of men in armoure to kepe that churche, that peple scholde not offre to hym, and so the devocion of that martir wexede sone colde, and þe oppinion of the peple was seasede.

---

[1] *as*, α., β., and Cx.
[2] From α., β., and Cx.
[3] *shreven mekely*, Cx.
[4] *vorsouk*, γ.
[5] *wayte*, α.; *vanyte*, β., γ., and Cx.
[6] *vul*, γ.
[7] þe] m. Cx.
[8] *stidefast*, β.; *stutefast*, γ.
[9] *strenger and strenger*, α.; *strynger and stringer*, γ.; *strenger*, Cx.
[10] *vanyschiþ*, β.; *vanysshed*, Cx.
[11] *regme*, γ.; *royamme*, Cx.
[12] *slyȝþe*, γ.; *sleyght*, Cx.
[13] From Cx.; þat, β.
[14] *bigan*, β.

Cap. XXXI.

[Resi Walliæ principis et Ricardi Angliæ regis mors et laudatio.]

Gratiæ MCXCVII. Ricardi VIII.

[1] Diebus[2] illis[3] quidam sanctus sacerdos in Gallia nomine Fulco venit ad regem Ricardum sic inquiens: "Dico tibi, rex, ex parte Dei omnipotentis ut tres filias "pessimas citius nuptui tradas ne aliquid deterius tibi "contingat." Cui rex: "Mentiris, hypocrita, quia nullam "filiam habeo." Et ille: "Immo superbiam habes, ava-"ritiam, et luxuriam." Rex ergo[4] convocatis proceribus suis ait: "Do superbiam meam Templariis et Hospita-"lariis, cupiditatem meam monachis Cisterciensibus "luxuriam meam ecclesiæ prælatis." Illi autem quos Fulco prædictus reprehenderat[5] miserunt illum[6] in vincula, sed non potuit alligari.[2] Hoc anno obiit Resus princeps Walliæ, de quo quidam sic cecinit.: *O belli gloria, militiæ clipeus; patriæ tutamen, armorum*[7] *decus, brachium fortitudinis, largitatis manus, rationis oculus, honestatis splendor,*[8] *pectore gerens*[9] *Herculis,*

---

[1] *In*, B.
[2] *Diebus . . . alligari*] om. C.D.
[3] *Illis diebus*, A.
[4] *igitur*, B.
[5] *qui Fulconem præfatum comprehenderant*, B.
[6] *eum*, B.
[7] *Armoricum*, C.D.
[8] *animositatis apex, pectore gerens Herculis probitatem, Achillis asperitatem, Nestoris*, C.D.
[9] *Hectoris*, added wrongly in MS., but om. A.B.

Capitulum tricesimum primum. TREVISA.

THAT tyme oon Fulco, an holy preost in Gallia, cam to kyng Richard and seide, "Kyng, to þe I seie[1] in þe name of God "Almyȝti þat þou marie[2] sone þy[3] þre evel douȝtres, leste "som worse hap by þe falle."[4] "Þou lyest, ypocrite," quod þe kyng, "for douȝter have I[5] none." "ȝis," quoþ he, "for þou "hast pride, covetise, and leccherie." Þe kyng had lordes to gidres, and seide, "I[6] ȝeve my pride to þe Templeres and "Hospitalers, my covetise to white monkes, and my leccherie "to prelates of holy cherches."[7] Þey þat sey[8] þis Fulco took and[9] putte hym into bondes, but he myȝte nouȝt be i-bounde. Þis ȝere deide Ree[10] prince of Wales; of hym oon seide in þis manere: "O blis of bataille, child of chivalrie, defens of "contray, worschippe of armes, arme of strengþe, hond of "largenes, yȝe[11] of resoun, briȝtnes of honoste,[12] berynge in "breest Ector his proves,[13] Achilles his scharpnes, Nestor his "soburnes, Tydeus his hardynesse, Sampson his strengþe, "Ector his[14] worþynesse, Eurialus his swiftnes, Parys his

---

Capitulum tricesimum primum. MS. HARL. 2261.

ABOWTE this tyme an holy preste of Fraunce, Fulco by name, come to kynge Richarde seyenge, "I say to the, kynge, "on the parte of allemyȝty God that thou marye soone thy "thre doȝhters leste that perelle falle to the." The kynge seide, "Thow lyes, ypocrite, I have not oon doȝhter." The preste seide, "ȝis truly, thow hase pryde, avaryce, and "lecchery." Þhe kynge callynge the noble men of his palyce to him seide, "I ȝiffe my pryde to Templarys and Hospitalyryes, "my covetyse to monkes of the ordre Cisterciense, and my "lecchery to prelates of þe churches." Resus the prince of Wales diede in this yere, whom a metricion commendethe in this wise:

"Nobile Cambrensis cecidit diadema decoris,
Hoc est, Resus obit, Cambria tota gemit.

---

[1] *saye*, β.
[2] *maryee*, β
[3] *þyn*, α.
[4] *þe byfalle*, α.; *the befall*, Cx.
[5] *Ich*, β.
[6] *Ych*, γ.
[7] *chirche*, Cx.
[8] *syȝ*, β., *sawe*, Cx.; om. γ.
[9] *and*] om. γ.
[10] *Rees*, β. (et somper), and Cx. *Res*, γ., et infra.
[11] *eye*, Cx.
[12] *honeste*, α., β., and Cx.
[13] *prowesse*, β. and Cx.; *proues*, γ.
[14] *Hectors*, Cx.

[*probitatem*][1] *Achillis asperitatem, Nestoris modestiam, Tydei*[2] *audaciam, Samsonis fortitudinem, Hectoris gravitatem, Euriali agilitatem, Paridis formam Ulixis facundiam, Salamonis sapientiam, Ajacis animositatem. O*[3] *nudorum vestis, famelicorum morsus, omnium denique postulantium plena satisfactio. O dulcis eloquio, comes obsequio, actu honestus, sermone modestus, vultus hilaris, facie decorus, singulis benignus, omnibus æquus.*

Versus[4] *de Reso principe Walliæ.*

Nobile Cambrensis cecidit, diadema decoris.
Hoc est,[5] *Resus obit, Cambria tota gemit.*
Resus obit,[6] *non fama perit, sed gloria transit,*
[7] *Cambrensis transit gloria, Resus obit.*
Resus[8] *obit, decus orbis abit, laus quæque tepescit.*
In gemitu vivit Cambria, Resus obit.[8]
Resus abest, inimicus adest, Resus quia non est
Jam sibi nil prodest Cambria, Resus obit.[9]
Non moritur, sed subtrahitur, quia semper habetur
Ipsius egregium nomen in orbe novum.
Grande decus tenet iste locus si cernitur ortus
Si quis fit finis quæritur ecce cinis
Hic tegitur, sed detegitur, quia fama perennis
Non fuit[10] *illustrem voce latere ducem.*
Excessit probitate modum, sensu probitatem,
Eloquio sensum, moribus eloquium.

---

[1] *probitatem*] from A.
[2] *Tedei*, A.
[3] *Sed*, C.D
[4] B. has instead of the heading, *Item metrice sic habetur*; A. omits heading.
[5] *Hoc est*] om. A.
[6] *Cambria . . . obit*] om. A.
[7] A. has misplaced the lines of this piece from this line onward.
[8] *Resus . . . obit*] om. C.D.
[9] *abest*, B.C.D.
[10] *fuit*] from B., *sunt*, MS.

" fairnes,[1] Ulix his faire speche, Salomon his wisdom, Ajax his hardynes. O cloþing of þe[2] naked, þe hungry his mete, fulfillynge[3] alle men bone þat hym wolde ouȝt bidde.[4] O faire of[5] speche, felowȝ[6] in service, honest of dede and sobre in word. Glad of semblaunt and loveliche[7] of face.[8] Goodliche to everiche man, and riȝtful to alle; þe noble dyademe of þe[9] fairnes of Wales is now afalle; þat is, Rees is dede: [al Wales groneþ, Res[10] is dede.][11] Þe name is nouȝt i-lost, but blisse passeþ; þe blisse of Wales passeþ, Rees is deed; worschippe of the world goþ away; Rees al preysinge slakeþ; Wales lyveþ in gronynge, Rees is deed; Rees is aweye, þe enemy is here, for Rees is not here. Now Wales helpeþ nouȝt it self;[12] Res is dede and i-take awey, but his noble name is not dede, for it is alwey newe in þe world wyde. Þis place holdeþ greet worschippe [yf][13] þe burþe is byholde, ȝif me axeþ[14] what is þe ende, it is askes and poudre.[15] Here he is i-hud,[16] but he is unheled,[17] for name dureþ ever more, and suffreþ nouȝt þe noble duk be i-hyd of speche. His proues[18] [passede his maneres, his wit passede his proues,][11] his faire speche passede his witt, his goode þewes passede his faire speche." TREVISA.

Resus obit! non fama perit, sed gloria transit;
Cambrensis transit gloria, Resus obit!
Resus abest inimicus[19] adest, Resus quia non est.
Jam sibi nil prodest Cambria, Resus obit!
Decus orbis abit Resus, laus quæque tepescit,
In gemitu vivit Cambria, Resus obit!
Subtrahitur sed non moritur, quia semper habetur
Ipsius egregium nomen in orbe novum.
Grande decus tenet iste locus si cernitur ortus
Si quis sit finis quæritur ecce cinis
Hic tegitur, sed detegitur, quia fama perennis
Non sinit illustrem voce latere ducem.
Excessit probitate modum, sensu probitatem,
Eloquio sensum, moribus eloquium." MS. HARL. 2261. f. 372 b.

---

[1] *Parys his fairnes*] om. Cx.; *veyrnes*, γ.
[2] *þe*] om. β.
[3] *folvullyng*, γ.
[4] *bidde*] do, γ.
[5] *in*, Cx.
[6] *felawe*, β.
[7] *love*, Cx.
[8] *fas*, γ.
[9] *þe*] om. β. and Cx.
[10] *Rees*, Cx.
[11] From α., β., γ., and Cx.
[12] *hit silf*, β.
[13] From Cx.; *ȝif*, β.
[14] *men axe*, Cx.
[15] *axes and pouder*, β. and γ.; *asshes and pouder*, Cx.
[16] *y-hidde*, β.
[17] *hyd, but he is unhylled*, Cx.
[18] *prowes*, β.; *prowesse*, Cx., bis.
[19] *invitus*, MS.

Gratiæ MCXCVIII. Ricardi IX.

Innocentius tertius, qui et Lotharius, post Celestinum sedit papa annis octo mensibus quinque. Iste litteratus fuit et fecit libellum de miseria humanæ conditionis, Speculum missæ, constitutiones quam plurimas. Iste damnavit libellum abbatis Joachim, quem contra magistrum Petrum Lumbardum, auctorem sententiarum, ediderat; damnavit etiam Almaricum Carnotensem[1] cum sua doctrina hæretica. Hoc etiam anno mortuo imperatore,[2] principes Alemanniæ discordabant; nam aliqui Othonem, aliqui Philippum, fratrem Henrici quinti, elegerunt. Tandem Philippo dolose occiso, Otho coronatur ab Innocentio papa in Francia.[3] Qui statim pugnavit cum Romanis propter non exhibitum honorem,

[1] *episcopum*, add. A.
[2] *Henrico quinto*, add. C.D.
[3] *Franciam veniente*, C.D.

Capitulum tricesimum secundum.[1] TREVISA.

AFTER Celestinus, þe þridde Innocent, þat[2] heet Lotharius also, was pope eiȝte ȝere and fyve monþes: þis was a lettred man, and made þe bookes De miseria humanæ conditionis, et Speculum missæ, and meny constitucioun̄s. He dampned abbot Joachym his book þat he hadde i-made aȝenst Perus[3] Lombard, maister of sentens; he dampned also Amary Carnotensis wiþ his heretik lore. Also þat ȝere whan þe emperour was dede, þe princes of Almayne discordede, for som chese[4] Otho and som Philip, þe fifte Henries broþer; but Philip was traytur̄liche[5] i-slawe, and Otho was i-crowned of pope Innocent in Fraunce: he fauȝt[6] anon wiþ þe Romayns, for þey had doo hym

---

There was a crosse in the churche of Dirham in whom an ymage of the crucifixe was, whom mony peple honourede with grete veneracion. And when that ymage was putte downe to the erthe and compassede abowte with thornes, as other ymages were, in the sexte fery, the face off the seide crucifixe apperede with grete reddenesse lyke to brasse in a hoote fyre, and grete moisture come from the face of hit, and dropes felle from the eien of hit, and bloode and water come from the riȝhte pappe of hit, whom the ministres of the churche gedrede in holy vesselles with grete diligence. Innocencius the thrydde, or Lotharius, succedid Celestinus the pope xviij. yere iiij. monethes and an halfe. This pope made a booke of the misery of the condicion of man, and mony other constitucions. Also he dampnede the booke of abbot Joachim, whom he made ageyne Petrus Lumbardus, maister of the sentences, and Almaryke Carnotense with his erroneous doctryne. The emperoure dedde in this yere, the princes of Alemayne were at discorde, for somme of theym electe Otho to be emperoure, and somme princes electe Philippe broþer to Henricus the v^the^ and emperoure. Neverthelesse the seide Philippe sleyne by treason, Otho was crownede into emperoure of Innocencius the pope in Fraunce; whiche ȝafe batelle anoon to the Romanes, and toke MS. HARL. 2261.

---

[1] In Cx., though there is a break in the page, yet there is no number of a chapter put here, and so each chapter to the end of the book is in number one less than in our MS.

[2] *was pope*, transposed to here in *α*.

[3] *Peres*, *α*., *β*., and *γ*.; *Pyers*, Cx.

[4] *ches*, *β*.

[5] *treytourlyche*, *γ*.

[6] *voȝt*, *γ*.

et inde contra papæ voluntatem abstulit regnum Apuliæ[1] a Frederico, qua de causa a domino papa excommunicatus est. Inde[2] quarto anno regni sui principes Alemanniæ Fredericum erexerunt in imperatorem,[2] qui victoriose triumphavit de Othone. Hoc[3] ultimo anno regis Ricardi[4] Wydomarus vicecomes Lemovicensis in Britannia Minore, homo regis Angliæ, invento immenso thesauro auri et argenti in fundo suo, misit magnam thesauri partem regi Ricardo; sed ille recusavit, dicens se totum debere[5] habere de jure dominationis suæ; quod tamen alius recusavit. Obsedit ergo rex castrum vicecomitis, quod vocabatur Caluz, putans ibi thesaurum inesse. Cui ministri castri exeuntes obtulerunt regi castrum cum contentis, salvis eisdem vita, membris et armis. Renuit rex, imponens illis ut redeuntes viriliter se defenderent.[6] Cum ergo die quadam rex et dux Brabantiæ circuirent castrum ut infirmiora

Gratiæ MCXCIX. Ricardi X.

---

[1] *Apuleiæ*, C.D.
[2] *Inde . . . imperatorem*] om. A.
[3] *Hoc . . . suspendi*] om. C.D.
[4] *Ricardi*] om. B.
[5] *debere*] om. A.
[6] *defendant*, A.

no worschippe. And þan he bynam Frederyk þe kyngdom of Apulia aȝenst þe popes wille, and [1] þerfore he was acorsed of þe pope; þanne þe fourþe [2] ȝere of his regnynge [3] þe princes of Almayne made Frederik emperour, and he hadde worschipliche þe victory [4] of Otho. Þis last ȝere of kyng Richard oon Wydomarus, viscounte [5] of Lemovik [6] in Bretayne þe lasse, þe kyng of Engelond his owne man, foond greet tresour of gold and silver in his owne ground, and sente a greet deel of [the] [7] tresour to kyng Richard. And he recused [8] it, and seide þat he schulde haue al by þe riȝt of his lordschippe; and þe oþer wiþseide hym. Þan þe kyng byseged þe viscounte [9] his castel þat heet Calux, and trowed þat þe tresour was þerynne; þe mynistres of þe castel come out to þe kyng, and profred hym þe castel wiþ al þat was þerynne, savynge her lyf and lyme and armure. Bote þe kyng wolde nouȝt, bote het hym goo aȝen and defende hem self wiþ al þe strengþe þat þey koupe and myȝte. Þan in a day þe kyng and þe duke of Braban [10] wente

Trevisa.

---

the realme of Apulia of Frederyke, ageyne the wylle of the pope, wherefore he was excommunicate of the same pope. And in the iiij[the] yere of his governayle the princes of Alemayne erecte Frederyke into emperoure, whiche hade a glorious victory ageyne Otho the emperoure. Widomarus sherif Lenionicense in the lesse Briteyne, subjecte and servaunte to the kynge of Ynglonde, founde in this laste yere of the reigne of kynge Richarde the firste a grete treasure of golde and sylvyr in his grownde, a grete parte of whiche treasure he sende to kynge Richarde. But kynge Richarde refusede hit, seyenge that he awede to have alle by ryȝhte of his lordeschippe; but that oþer man denyede þat. Wherefore the kynge come to sege the castelle of Caluz, whiche pertenede to the seide sheriffe, supposynge that the treasure hade bene there. Neverthelesse the ministres of that schireffe and kepers of that castelle offrede hit to the kynge with goodes in hit, theire lyves and armor grawntede to theyme. The kynge commaunded theyme to goe into the castelle and defende þeyme lyke men; whiche goynge abowte that castelle with the duke of Brabancy to inquire the moste

MS. Harl. 2261.

f. 373 a.

---

[1] *and*] om. α.
[2] *ferþe*, β.
[3] *regne*, Cx.
[4] *victorye*, β.; *victory*, from Cx.; *victor*, MS.
[5] *vicecomyte*, β.; *vicond*, γ.
[6] *Lemonik*, β.; *Lemonke*, Cx.
[7] From α., β., and Cx.
[8] *refusede*, α. and Cx.
[9] *vicecomites*, β.; *vycount*, γ.
[10] *Brabant*, Cx., et infra.

explorarent, quidam arcubalista Bertrandus Gurdoun[1] telo regem in brachio vulneravit, quare præcepit[2] rex ut castrum omnino caperetur, et omnes suspenderentur excepto suo vulneratore; quod et factum est. Cum ergo[3] extracto teli ligno sed manente ferro, ex[4] venarum et[5] nervorum incisione nono post hoc die rex esset moriturus, advocari fecit suum vulneratorem, sic inquiens:[6] "Quid unquam male tibi feci, quod me ad "mortem vulnerasti?" Et ille: "Patrem meum et "duos[7] fratres meos occidisti, et me modo occidere "voluisti. Placet mihi quamcunque[8] pœnam subire, "dummodo tu occumbas." Tunc jussit[9] eum liberum abire, dans illi centum solidos sterlingorum; sed post regis obitum fecit dux Brabantiæ eum[10] excoriatum suspendi.[11] [12] Mortuo igitur rege[13] Ricardo, octavo idus

[1] *Grundo*, A.; *Gurdon*, B.
[2] *præcipit*, A.
[3] *rex* added wrongly here in MS.
[4] *et*, A.
[5] *et*] om. B.
[6] *inquirens*, A.
[7] *duos*] om. A.
[8] *quantamcumque*, B.
[9] *rex*, A.B.
[10] *eum*] om. B.
[11] See note 3, page 164.
[12] *Hoc anno octo idibus Aprilis, quarto anno regni sui, rex Ricardus obiit vulneratus in brachio balisterii telo dum castrum quoddam obsideret. Corpus ejus*, &c., C.D.
[13] *rege*] om. A.

aboute forto aspie þe febilnes[1] of þe castel. And oon Bertrard Gardoun[2] an arblaster[3] hitte þe kyng in þe arme wiþ a darte. Þerefore þe kyng heet þat þe castel schulde be take in al wise, and al men þat were þere ynne schulde be an[4] honged outake hym þat [hym][5] had i-wounded; and so it was i-doo. Þe schaft[6] was i-take out, but the yren[7] abood þerynne; þe[8] veynes and þe synues[9] were forkutte; and þe nynþe day after, whan þe kyng schulde deie, he sente for hym þat hadde [him][10] i-wounded, and spak to hym and seide, "What dede "I[11] evere to þe þat þou hast i-wounded me anon to þe deþ." "Þou slow," quod he, "my fader[12] and myn tweyne[13] breþeren, "and now þou woldest have i-slawe me also, þerfore it pleseþ "me what peyne evere I suffre so þat þou be deed." Þan þe kyng heet and[14] commaunded þat he schulde suffre[15] goo free, and ȝaf hym an hondred schillynges of sterlynges;[16] but after þe kynges deeþ þe duke of Braban made hym be i-hylde[17] al quyk and an[4] honged. Þan kyng Richard deide

Trevisa.

---

unsure place abowte that castelle for his avauntage, a man Bertrandus Gurdon by name woundede the kynge soore in the arme with a crossebawe. That doen the kynge commaundede that castelle to be taken anoon, and that alle scholde be sleyne in hit, excepte the man that hurte hym, and so hit was. The seide kynge knowynge that he scholde dye, commaundede that man to be brouȝhte afore hym. To whom the kynge seide, "What hurte have y doen to the in my lyfe, that thow hase "woundede me to dethe." That man seide, "Thow did slee my "fader, my broþer, and wolde have sleyme me nowe also, "wherefore y charge not what peyne y suffre sithe that thow "schalle dye." Then the kynge commaundede that man scholde not be hurte in eny wise, and ȝafe to hym a c. s. of sterlynges; but after the dethe of the kynge the duke of Brabancy causede hym to be fleyede onlyve and hongede afterwarde. This Richarde kynge of Ynglonde dedde the

MS. Harl. 2261.

---

[1] *feblenesse*, β.; *febles*, γ.
[2] *Gurdroun*, α.; *Gurdon*, β. and γ.; *Guedon*, Cx.
[3] *alblastrer*, γ.; *albalaster*, Cx.
[4] *an*] om. Cx.
[5] From β. and Cx.
[6] *schefte*, β.; *scheft*, γ.
[7] *yre*, β. and γ.
[8] *þe*] and, Cx.
[9] *senewes*, β.; *synewes*, γ.
[10] From α., β., γ., and Cx.
[11] *dide Ich*, β.
[12] *vadyr*, γ.
[13] *twy*, γ.
[14] *heet and*] om. Cx.
[15] *suffre*] om. Cx.
[16] *schyllynges sterlyng*, Cx.
[17] *huld*, α.; *y-huld*, β. and γ.; *flayn*, Cx.

Aprilis, corpus ejus in tres partes divisum in tribus locis sepelitur. Unde quidam metricus sic ait:

Viscera Careolum, corpus fons servat Ebrardi,
Et cor Rothomagum, magne Ricarde, tuum.
In tria dividitur unus quia plus fuit uno[1]
Nec[2] *superest uno gratia tanta viro.*

Item alius metricus:

Christe, tui calicis prædo fit præda Calucis[3]
Ære[4] *brevi deicis*[5] *qui tulit æra*[6] *crucis.*
Hic,[7] *Ricarde, jaces; sed mors, si cederet*[8] *armis,*
Victa timore tui cederet arma tuis.[9]

---

[1] *uno*] om. A.
[2] *Nec*, from A.; *Hæc*, MS.
[3] *prædaque lucis*, C.D.
[4] *Ære*, from A.B.; *Et*, MS.
[5] *ducis*, B.
[6] *arma*, C.D.
[7] *Hic . . . tuis*] om. C.D.
[8] *cecideret*, B.
[9] B. adds: "per istos duos "versus penultimos patet quod rex "vulnerabatur apud castrum de "Caluca supra dictum."

þe sixte day of Averel, and his body was i-deled in þre,[1] and i-buried in þre places: þerfore oon seide in metre in þis [maner]:[2] TREVISA.

" Viscera[3] Carleolum, corpus fons servat Ebrardi,[4]
" Et cor Rothomagum, magne Richarde tuum.
" In tria[5] dividitur unus, quia plus fuit uno.
" Nec superest uno gratia tanta viro."

Þat is, " Þy bowels beeþ[6] at Karlil, þy body at Font Ebrard, " and þyn herte at Rothomage,[7] þou grete Richard. He is de- " parted a þre, for he was more þan oon, and so grete grace is " nouȝt in oon man alyve." Anoþer metriour seide in þis manere:

" Christe, tui calicis prædo fit præda Calucis;
" Ere brevi deicis[8] qui tulit era crucis.
" Hic, Richarde, jaces, sed mors si cederet armis,
" Victa timore tui cederet armis tuis."

Þat [is]:[9] " Crist, þe þeof[10] of þy[11] chalis is Calux [his " pray];[12] ffor schort metal[13] þou þrowest hym doun þat took " þe metal of þe cros. Here þou[14] liest,[15] Richard, but ȝif " deeþ wolde spare for wepoun[16] overcome wiþ drede of þe

---

viij^{the} idus of the monethe of Aprile, his body was divided into thre partes, and beryede in thre places, of whom a metricion rehersethe seyenge in this wyse: MS. HARL. 2261.

" Viscera Careolum, corpus Fons servat Ebrardi,
Et cor Rothomagum, magne Ricarde, tuum.
In tria dividitur unus, quia plus fuit uno,
Nec superest uno gratia tanta viro."

An other metricion rehersethe in this wyse:

" Christe, tui calicis prædo fit præda Calucis:
Ere brevi deicis qui tulit era crucis.
Hic, Ricarde, jacet; sed mors si cederet armis
Victa timore tui cederet arma tuis."

---

[1] *a þre*, α. and β.
[2] From Cx.; *manere*, β.
[3] *Viscera*] added in margin of α. by a late hand.
[4] *Ebardy*, Cx.
[5] *terra*, Cx.
[6] *ben*, Cx.
[7] *Roen*, Cx., and it is written between the lines as a translation in γ.
[8] *denis*, Cx.
[9] From Cx.
[10] *þeef*, β.; *þef*, γ.
[11] *the*, Cx.
[12] From α., β., γ., and Cx.
[13] *metayl*, γ., bis.
[14] *þou*] om. α.
[15] *lyst*, α.
[16] *wepen*, β. and Cx.; *vor wepen*, γ.

Cap. XXXII.

[*Johannes rex Anglie. Mors et exequie Hugonis Lincolniensis episcopi.*]

Gratiæ MCC. Johannis primo.

Successit regi Ricardo, sine liberis obeunti,[1] frater suus Johannes dictus sine terra,[2] qui statim occu-

[1] *sine liberis obeunti*] om. C.D.

[2] *die Ascensionis Dominicæ ab Huberto archiepiscopo coronatus. Qui statim facto solempni divortio inter ipsum et uxorem suam filiam comitis Gloverniæ, eo quod in tercio gradu affines essent, de consilio regis Franciæ duxit dominam Blancam filiam comitis de Engelismo, et post hoc misit tallagium per totam Angliam, faciens qualibet carucata terræ tres solidos habere. Eo etiam anno Ranulphus tertius, &c.*, C.D. See p. 176.

" a[1] wolde [voyde][2] þy wepoun."[3] [*Trevisa.*][4] Here kyng Richard is i-cleped Calux is [pray],[4] for he was i-slawe at þe castel [þat heet][5] Calux. TREVISA.

Capitulum tricesimum tertium.[6]

KYNG Richard deide wiþ oute children, and his broþer, þat

The epitaphy of the noble Ricardus cour de lyon : MS. HARL. 2261.

"Acalus cecidit rex, regni cardo, Ricardus,
Hiis ferus, hiis humilis, hiis agnus hiis leopardus.
Casus erat lucis Caluȝ per secula nomen
Ignotum fuerat, sed certum nominis omen
Nunc patuit; res clausa fuit, sed luce cadente
Prodiit in lucem per casum lucis ademptæ.
Anno milleno ducenteno minus uno
Ambrosii festo decessit ab orbe molesto.
Pictavis exta ducis sepelis rea terra Calucis;
Neustria tuque tegis cor inexpugnabile regis;
Corpus das dandi sub marmore Fontis Ebrardi.
Sic loca per trina se sumpsit tanta ruina
Ejus vita brevis cunctis plangetur in ævis."

In the yere of oure Lorde God a M. cxcvj., erle John and Marthandeus not ferre from the cite Belvacense toke Philippe bischoppe of the same welle armede, and William Merlan with his sonne, and other peple as innumerable. And so the seide bischoppe was presentede to kynge Richarde, whiche was kepede in prison in his armoure. At the laste, the pope sende wrytynge to kynge Richarde, havynge grete mervayle that he kepede his wellelovyde sonne so in prison. Wherefore the kynge takynge the armor of the bischoppe in whom he was taken sende theyme to the pope, wrytenge in his epistole, " Beholde wheþer this be the coote of thy sonne or nay." The pope seenge that, laborede not after for hym, and soe the seide bischoppe was delyverede by a certeyne summe of goodes.

Capitulum tricesimum secundum.

RICHARDE kynge of Ynglonde dedde with owte childer, his

---

[1] *a*] he, *β*. and Cx.
[2] From *β*., *γ*., and Cx.
[3] *wepen*, *β*. and *γ*.
[4] From *α*., *β*., *γ*., and Cx.
[5] From *α*. and *β*.; *þat hrȝte*, *γ*. *that was callyd*, Cx.
[6] 32, Cx.

pavit thesauros regis Ricardi apud Chinonem, et misit Hubertum archiepiscopum ad componendum res in Anglia. Sed Thomas de Thorneya tradidit Andegaviam Arthuro, filio senioris fratris Gaufridi ducis Britanniæ; ubi convenientes proceres Andegaviæ, Cenomanniæ et Turonensis[1] adhæserunt Arthuro secundum consuetudinem terræ illius,[2] ubi filius fratris senioris succedit patri si primogenitus decedit sine filio. Constantia vero, relicta Gaufridi ac comitissa Britanniæ, tradidit custodiam filii sui Arthuri necnon et hæreditatis suæ regi[3] Franciæ; sed Johannes cito subvertit Cenomanniam quia adhæserat[4] Arthuro. Deinde in[5] Paschate Johannes accinctus est gladio ducatus Normanniæ apud Rothomagum, et in Ascensione Domini[6] coronatus est in regem[7] apud Westmonasterium ab Huberto Cantuariensi.[8] Quo die Johannes rex fecit Hubertum[9] esse suum cancellarium. Cui de hoc officio nimis postmodum

---

[1] *Turoniæ*, A.B.
[2] *istius*, B.
[3] *regi*] om. A.
[4] *adhæsit*, B.
[5] *in*] om. A.
[6] *proximo sequente*, B.
[7] *Angliæ*, B.
[8] *archiepiscopo*, B.
[9] *Robertum*, B.

heet Iohn wiþ oute londes,[1] was kyng after hym, anoon hè occupied kyng Richard his tresour at Chinon, and sente Hubert þe archebisshop to ordeyne þinges in Engelond; bote Thomas of Thorney bytook Angeoy [2] to Arthur duke of Bretayne, þe sone of þe elder broþer Geffrey.[3] Þere come to gidres þe lordes of Anjoye, of Cenomannia and of Turon,[4] and hylde[5] wiþ Arthur,[6] as þe manere is of þat lond, þat[7] þe elder broþer sone schal be eyre ȝif þe eldest sone deieþ wiþ oute sone. Constans, Geffray[8] his love,[8] contas[9] of Bretayne, bytook þe warde of her sone Arthur and his heritage to þe king of Fraunce, but Iohn overtorned sone Cenomannia, for he hulde wiþ Arthur. Þan þe[10] Esterne[11] at Rothomage[12] Iohn was i-gurd[13] wiþ þe swerd of þe duccherie of Bretayne. And an[14] holy Þorsday at Westmynstre he was i-crowned kyng of Engelond of Hubert archebisshop of Caunturbury; þat day Iohn made Hubert his owne chauncelere. Hubert was to proude of þat office after- TREVISA.

---

brother callede Iohn with owte londe was successor to hym, whiche occupiede anoon the treasures of Ricardus his broþer, and sende Hubertus, archebischoppe of Cawnterbery, to governe the realme of Ynglonde. But Thomas of Thorney toke Andegavia to Arthur, sonne of Gaufride, elder broþer to kynge Iohan, and duke of Briteyne. Where the noble men of the cuntres nye metynge, as of Andegavy, Cenomanny, and Turony, drawede to Arthurus, after the consuetude of that cuntre, where the sonne of the elder broþer is successour to the fader if the eldeste sonne dye withowte eny childe. And Constancia, the doȝhter of Gaufride, and also cowntesse of Briteyne, toke the kepynge of Arthur and his enheritaunce to the kynge of Fraunce. But Iohn destroyede soone after Cenomanny, in that hit drawede to Arthurus; and after that the seide Iohn was crownede into kynge of Ynglonde at Westemynstre, of Huberte, metropolitan of that londe, in the feste of Assencion of oure Lorde. In whiche day the kynge made Hubert archebischop of Cawnterbery his chawnceller. The bischoppe ioyenge moche MS. HARL. 2261.

---

[1] *lond*, α., β., γ., and Cx.
[2] *Anioye*, β.
[3] *Giffrai*, γ.
[4] *of Chynon in Tureyn*, Cx.
[5] *helde*, β.
[6] *Artur*, Cx.
[7] *þere*, α.; *the lond there*, Cx.
[8] *loove*, α.
[9] *countesse*, β. and Cx.
[10] *at*, α. and Cx.
[11] *at Ester*, β. and γ.; *Eester*, Cx.
[12] *Roen*, Cx.
[13] *gird*, β.
[14] *an*] on, β. and Cx.

glorianti ait quidam: "Domine, non deberes gloriari de "jugo servitutis. Audivimus enim de cancellario[1] "archiepiscopum factum, sed non econtrario." Post hoc,[2] circa nativitatem sancti Johannis[3] transfretavit rex Johannes in Normanniam, ubi captæ sunt treugæ inter reges Angliæ et Franciæ, ac juramento et scripto firmatæ[4] quod quis illorum prius pacem illam infringeret, homines illius de fidelitate ejus[5] solverentur,[6] et ad alium regem converterentur. Sed cum postmodum rex Johannes occideret Arthurum nepotem suum, rex Franciæ occupavit multas terras transmarinas. Hoc quoque anno comes Flandriæ devenit homo ligius regis Johannis, et rex Franciæ fecit Arthurum militem, accipiendo ab illo[7] homagium pro terris Andegaviæ, Cenomanniæ, Pictaviæ, Turonensis,[8] Britanniæ Minoris et Normanniæ. Eoque[9] anno solemniter divorciatum est

---

[1] *cancellaria*, A.
[2] *hoc*] om. A.
[3] *Baptistæ*, B.
[4] *firmatæ*, from A.; *confirmatæ*, B.; *firmitate*, MS.
[5] *ejus*] om. A.
[6] *absolverentur*, A.B.
[7] *eo*, A.
[8] *Turoniæ*, A.B.
[9] *Eo quoque*, A.B.

ward, and oon spak to hym and seide, "Sire, þou schuldest nouȝt be proude[1] of þe ȝok of þraldom; ofte we haveþ i-herd[2] "of an erchebisshop i-made [of][3] a chaunceller, bote nevere[4] "a chaunceller i-made [of][3] a[5] erchebisshop." Here after, aboute seint Iohn his feste þe Nativite, kyng Iohn seillede into Normandie. Þere were trewes i-take bytwene þe kynges of Engelond and of Fraunce, and assuered with ooth and wiþ writinge, so þat wheþer of hem breke first þat pees, his men schulde be assoilled of his homage and fewte and [turne][6] to þe oþer kyng. But afterward kyng Iohn wolde slee his owne nevewe Arthure; þanne þe kyng of Fraunce occupied meny londes[7] by ȝonde þe see. Also þis ȝere þe eorle of Flaundres bycam kyng Iohn his lege[8] man, and þe kyng of Fraunce made Arthur knyȝt, and feng of hym homage for þe londe[9] of Anioye,[10] and of Cenomannia, of Peyto,[11] of Turon, of Litel Bretayne, and of Normandie. Also þis ȝere was made devors[12] solempneliche[13] bytwene kyng Iohn and his wif þe eorles

TREVISA.

---

of þat office, a man seide to hym, "My lorde, ye awe not to "ioye of the bonde of servitute, for we have herde a archebis- "chop to have be made of a chawnceller, and not a chawnceller "of an archebischop." Kynge Iohn saylede into Normandy after that, abowte the feste of seynte Iohn Baptiste, where trues was takyn betwene the kynges of Ynglonde and of Fraunce, made suere by an othe and wrytynge, that wheþer of theyme broke pease firste, his men scholde be deschargede of the fidelite made to hym, and scholde turne unto that other kynge. But after that kynge Iohn hade sleyne Arthurus, sonne of his elder broþer, the kynge of Fraunce occupyede Gascoigne, Cenomanny, and diverse other provinces. The erle of Flaundres become the ligeman of kynge Iohn, and the kynge of Fraunce made Arthurus knyȝhte in this yere also, and toke homage of hym for the cuntres of Gascoigne, of Cenomanny, Pictavye, Turonye, of Briteyne the lesse, and of Normandy. In whiche yere a solenne divorce was made betwene kynge Iohn and his

MS. HARL. 2261. f. 374 a.

---

[1] *prout*, γ.
[2] *habbeþ yhurd*, γ.; *have herde*, Cx.
[3] From α., β., γ., and Cx.
[4] *bote nevere*, from γ.; *but never*, β. and Cx.; *and*, MS.
[5] *an*, α. and β.
[6] From α., β., and γ.; *torne*, Cx.
[7] *londes*, from β., γ., and Cx.; *lordes*, MS.
[8] *lyge*, γ.
[9] *londes*, α. and β.
[10] *Angeo*, Cx.
[11] *Peytow*, β.
[12] *dyvorse*, β. and Cx.; *dyvors*, γ.
[13] *solemliche*, β.

inter regem Johannem et uxorem suam,[1] filiam comitis Gloverniæ, propter consanguinitatem in tertio gradu; et accepit rex, de consilio regis Franciæ, Isabellam filiam comitis de Engolismo, ex qua genuit Henricum, Ricardum ducem Cornubiæ, et tres filias. Et statim accepit tributum per totam Angliam, videlicet de qualibet hyda, id est carucata, terræ[2] tres solidos, et rediit in Normanniam. Quo in tempore Ranulphus tertius comes Cestrensis, exemplo forsan regis ductus reliquit uxorem suam Constantiam, comitissam Britanniæ, quam dudum[3] de consilio regis Henrici duxerat, et copulavit sibi Constantiam[4] filiam Radulphi de Feugers,[5] qua de causa, ut putatur, meruit sine prole decedere.[6] *De inchoatione Tartarorum.*[7] Hoc anno sicut creditur Tartarorum dominatus incepit. Hi nempe sub montibus Indiæ in[8] regione Tartara constituti dominum suum regem Indiæ[8] David filium presbyteri Johannis occidentes, ad rapinas et deprædationes aliarum nationum processerunt. Hoc etiam[9] anno Francigenæ ceperunt urbem[10] Constantinopolim, in qua constituerunt imperatorem Baldewynum comitem Flandriæ. Cujus urbis captionem accolæ vicini vix credere etiam[11] post

Gratiæ MCCI. Johannis II.

---

[1] *suam*] om. A.
[2] *terræ*] om. B.
[3] *dudum*] om. C.D.
[4] *Clementiam*, B.
[5] *Feugres*, A.
[6] *et filio sororis suæ ducatus suos relinquere*] add. C.D.
[7] A.B. omit heading.
[8] *in . . . Indiæ*] om. C.D.
[9] *etiam*] om. B.
[10] *ceperunt urbem*] om. B.
[11] *et*, A.

douȝter of Gloucestre, bycause of kynrede[1] in þe þridde gree.[2] And by counsaille of þe kyng of Fraunce[3] Iohn wedded Isabel, þe eorle his[4] douȝter of Engolism,[5] and gat on here Henry, [and][6] Richard duke of Cornewayle, and þre douȝtres. And took anon tribute of everiche teme[7] lond in Engelond þre schelynges,[8] and wente aȝen into Normandie. Þat tyme þe þridde Ranulph eorle of Chestre, on caas by ensaumple of þe kyng, lefte his wif Constaunce contas[9] of Bretayne, þat he hadde i-wedded somtyme by counsaille of Henry, and wedded oon Clemencia, Raaph his douȝter de Feugere;[10] þerfore he deide wiþoute children as som men weneþ.[11] Me troweþ[12] þat þis ȝere bygan þe lordschippe of Tarters.[13] Þese men wonede under þe hilles of Inde, [and slouȝ here owne lord David,][14] [kyng of Inde,][15] þat was prætor[16] Iohn his sone, and wente to robbynge and revynge, and took prayes of oþer naciouns. Also þat ȝere Frensche[17] men took Constantynnoble, and made þere emperour Baldewyn [erle][18] of Flaundres. Men of þe contray aboute longe tyme þerafter myȝte unneþe i-leve[19]

Trevisa.

wife, doȝhter of the erle of Gloucestre, in the thrydde degre to hym of consanguinite, and toke to his wife, by the cownesayle of the kynge of Fraunce, Isabell doȝhter of the erle Engolisme, of whom he gate Henricus, Ricardus duke of Cornewaile, and iij. doȝhters; and after that he toke a grete tribute thro alle Ynglonde, of every hide of londe iij. s., and returnede ageyne into Normandy. In whiche tyme also Ranulphus the secunde erle of Chestre, takynge exemple of the kynge, departede from Constancia his wife, cowntesse of the lesse Briteyne, and maryede Clemencia, the doȝhter of Radulphus de Fengero, of whom he gate noo chylde. Men of Fraunce toke in this yere the cite of Constantinopole, makynge Baldewyn erle of Flaundres emperoure; and peple that dwellede nye to that cite wolde not beleve by mony dayes after the takynge

MS. Harl. 2261.

[1] *kynrade*, γ.
[2] *degre*, α. and β.; *degree*, Cx.
[3] *kyng*, add. Cx.
[4] *eorle his*] om. Cx.
[5] *Engolosym*, Cx.
[6] From β.
[7] *teeme*, β.; *tem*, γ.
[8] *schillyngis*, β.
[9] *countesse*, β. and Cx.
[10] *of Feneger*, β. and Cx.; *Fengere*, γ.
[11] *wenen*, Cx.
[12] *Men trowyn*, Cx.
[13] *Tartres*, β.
[14] From α., β., and γ. (not Cx.).
[15] From β. and γ.
[16] *preter*, β., γ., and Cx.
[17] *Freyns*, γ.
[18] From β. and Cx.
[19] *leeve*, β.; *leve*, Cx.

multos dies[1] potuerunt, tum propter urbis fortitudinem, tum[2] propter antiquam prophetiam qua prædictum fuerat illam urbem capi non posse nisi per angelum; sed

Gratiæ MCCII. Johannis III.

hostibus per murum ubi erat angelus depictus intrantibus, indigenæ per equivocationem angeli se deceptos cognoverunt. Fredericus secundus imperavit triginta tribus[3] annis. Hic coronatus[4] ab Honorio papa primo fovit ecclesiam tanquam matrem, sed postmodum velut novercam spoliavit. Quapropter Honorius papa ipsum excommunicavit et omnes[5] ab ejus fidelitate absolvit. Quam quidem sententiam Gregorius nonus[6] innovavit. Iste Fredericus Henricum, filium suum proprium, Alemanniæ regem, carceris squalore suffocavit; prælatos quos Gregorius nonus ad concilium generale vocaverat capi fecit;[7] et durante sententia qua innodatus [fuerat][8] Terram Sanctam adiit, majorem ibidem relinquens desolationem quam consolationem. Tandem a papa Innocentio quarto depositus est, et[9] in Apuliam fu-

---

[1] *etiam . . . dies*] om. B.
[2] *propter . . . tum*] om. B.
[3] *tribus*] om. B.
[4] *fuit postmodum*, C.D.
[5] *barones*, C.D.
[6] *successor Honorii*, C.D.
[7] *unde etiam excommunicatus est*, C.D.
[8] *fuerat*] from B.
[9] *et dum quandam Italiæ urbem obsideret amissis thesauris per legatum domini papæ in Apulia fugatus est*, &c., A.B.; *et dum unam Italiæ urbem obsideret, amissis thesauris suis per legatum papæ usque Apuliam fugatus est, ubi gravi infirmitate correptus, defunctus est*, C.D.

Trevisa.

þat þat citee was i-take, and þat for olde prophecie þat seide þat þat citee myȝte nouȝt be take but by an aungel; bote þe enemyes entrede [1] þe citee by a place of þe wal þer an aungel was i-peynt, and so þe men of þe contray knewe at þe laste þat þey were begiled by doubel [2] entendement of an aungel. Þe secounde Frederik was emperour þre and pritty ȝere. Þis was i-crowned of pope Honorius. First he favored holy chirche, as it were his owne moder, but afterward he spoylede holy cherche, as it were his stepdame. Þerfore Honorius pope acorsed hym, and assoillede meny [3] of his fey and feute. Þe nynþe pope Gregory renewed [4] þe same sentens; þis Frederik took his owne sone Henry kyng of Almayne, and slouȝ hym in prisoun. Also þe prelates þat þe nynþe Gregory hadde i-sente forto come to general counsaille he made hem i-take,[5] and while he was so accorsed he wente to þe Holy Lond, and lefte þere more desolacioun and discomfort þan consolacioun and confort.[6] At þe laste he was i-sette doun of the fourþe pope Innocentius, and while he byseged a citee of Italy he loste his tresour, and [the] [7] pope his legat chasede hym in to Apulia, and þere he

MS. Harl. 2261.

of hyt that hit was taken, for the olde prophecy, in whom hit was seide that cite myȝhte not be taken but by an angelle. But men of Fraunce entrede ynto the cite by a place of þe walles where an angelle was peyntede, the men inhabitynge the cite perceyvede the equivocacion of an angelle. Frederike the secunde was emperoure xxxiij^ti yere. This emperoure crownede of Honorius þe pope favorede the churche lyke a f. 374 b. moder, but he spoylede hit soone after lyke a stappemoder, wherefore he was excommunicate by Honorius the pope, and absolvede alle peple from his fidelite; whiche sentence Gregory the ix^the innewede. This emperoure did sle Henricus hys awne sonne in prison, and causede the prelates to be taken whom Gregory the pope callede to a generalle cownsaile; whiche beynge faste in that grete and terrible sentence, wente to the holy Londe, levynge þer raþer desolacion then consolacion. Neverthelesse the seide emperoure was deposede at the laste by Innocencius the iiij^the pope, and after that the seide Frederyke, segenge a cite of Ytaly, was chasede awey by a legate of the pope unto Apulea, where he diede. Abowte this tyme

[1] *entride*, β.
[2] *duble*, γ.
[3] *men*, Cx.
[4] *renewide*, β.
[5] *theym to be take*, Cx.
[6] *comfort*, β.
[7] From Cx.

gatus est, ubi infirmatus obiit. Circa hunc annum tantæ pluviæ, tonitrus et grandines ceciderunt ut lapides ad quantitatem ovorum quadranguli mixti cum pluvia de cœlo descenderent, quibus arbores, vineæ, segetes multum sunt destructæ, homines sunt contriti, et aves per aera volantes visi sunt carbones ignitos in rostris deferre et domos incendere. Hoc quoque [anno][1] apud Londoniam obiit sanctus Hugo Lincolniensis episcopus, sed[2] apud Lincolniam est sepultus; ad cujus funerationem concurrunt legatus papæ, tres archiepiscopi, scilicet Cantuariensis, Dublinensis, Ragnensis,[3] xiii. episcopi, duo reges, Angliæ et Scotiæ, qui tunc ibidem advenerant ut jurarent fidelitatem super crucem Huberti[4] archiepiscopi[5] et homagium faceret regi Johanni. Quo die sanata est[6] mulier per septem annos cœca, et quidam bursarum incisor in[7] incidendo incurrit manus contractionem donec per orationem cleri et populi liberaretur. Hic [Hugo][8] fuit natione transmarinus, apud Witham juxta Sarisburiensem prior Cartusiensis effectus, deinde Lincolniensis episcopus præ-

---

[1] *anno*] from A.B.C.D.
[2] *sed . . . evanuit*] om. C.D.
[3] *Ravensis*, A.
[4] *Cantuariensis*, B.
[5] *archiepiscopi*] om. A.
[6] *est*] om. A.
[7] *in*] om. A.
[8] *Hugo*] from B.

evelde[1] and deide. Aboute þis ȝere fil so greet reyn, ponder, and hayle,[2] þat hayle[2] stones fil doun from heven as greet eyren i-medled[3] wiþ reyn, and destroyed vynes and corn;[4] men were i-schent,[5] and foules were i-seie flee[6] in þe ayre, and bere fury[7] coles in her biles, and sette houses a fyre.[8] Also þis ȝere at Londoun deide seint Hewe[9] bisshop of Lincolne, [but he was y-buryed at Lyncolne].[10] To his burienge come þe popes legat and þre archebisshoppes, [of Caunterbury, of Develyng[11] and of Regne,[12] and þrittene bisshoppes],[10] and tweie kynges, of Engelond and of Scotlond, þat was þo[13] i-come þider forto swere fewte uppon Hubert the archebisshops cros, and forto doo homage to kyng Iohn. Þat day a womman had her siȝt þat hadde i-be sevene ȝere blynde, and a purskevere[14] in kuttinge of purses werþ i-cliȝt[15] in his hondes, forto he was delivered by prayeng of the clergie and[16] of þe people.[17] Þis Hewe was of þe nacioun of byȝonde[18] þe see, i-made priour of þe Charthous[19] at Wicham besides Salisbury, and þan he

TREVISA.

so grete reynes, thundres, and hayle descended, that stones after the quantite of egges descended with theyme mixte with the reyne, thro whom trees, vynes, and cornes were gretely destroyede, and moche peple hurte. Also bryddes were seen to flye in the aiere with fyre in theire bylles, and to brenne howses. Seynte Hewe, bischop of Lincoln, dyed in this yere at London, and was beryede at Lyncoln. At the beryynge of whom was a legate of the pope, iij. archebischoppes, off Cawnterbery, of Dublyn, and of Ragnensis, and xiij. bischoppes, ij. kynges, of Ynglonde and of Scotlande, whiche come thider to swere fidelite on the crosse of Hubertus archebischoppe off Cawnterbery, and to do homage to kynge Iohn. In whiche day a woman blynde by viij. yere was restorede to siȝhte. This holy bischop was borne in the costes oversee, and a prior of the Chartrehows at Witham, nye to Salisbery, and after that made bischoppe of

MS. HARL. 2261.

[1] *evelede*, α. and Cx.; *eveled*, β.
[2] *hawel*, β. and γ., bis.
[3] *ymelled*, γ.
[4] *cornes*, β.
[5] *shende*, Cx.
[6] *vle*, γ.
[7] *vuyry*, γ.; *fuyer*, Cx.
[8] *hous fuyre*, α.
[9] *Huwe*, β.
[10] From α., β., γ., and Cx.
[11] *Develun* β.; *Duvelyng*, γ.
[12] *Ragne*, β., γ., and Cx.
[13] *þo*] soo, Cx.
[14] *purskervere*, α. and Cx.; *purskerver*, β. and γ.
[15] *y-clyȝt*, α. and γ.; *was lame*, Cx.
[16] *and*] om. Cx.
[17] *pupel*, γ.
[18] *byȝunde*, γ.
[19] *Chartrous*, Cx.

fectus. Qui dum apud Lincolniam incathedraretur, et equus seu vacca ratione installationis per archidiaconum loci peteretur,[1] dixit se malle episcopatui cedere quam quicquam tali ex causa dare. Ad manum ejus solebant volatilia cibum quærere. Hoc anno venit in[2] Angliam Eustachius abbas de Flay[3] prædicare verbum Dei, et fecit multa miracula, inter quæ benedixit fontem de Wy juxta Cantuariam, de quo potantes ceperunt sospitatem.[4] Nam et mulier dæmoniaca ibidem bibens evomuit duos nigros bufones qui cito conversi sunt in canes, deinde in grandes asinos,[5] qui ascendentes in aera fœda post se vestigia reliquerunt. Effecit Eustachius sua prædicatione ut multi usuras dimitterent, mercata per diem dominicum non tenerent, ut lumen indeficiens ante corpus dominicum in ecclesiis haberent, ut proceres discum eleemosynarium in mensa foverent. Ipsi tandem Eustachio aliqui prælatorum invidentes dixerunt, "Non licet tibi falcem ponere in messem

---

[1] *poteretur*, A.
[2] *in*] om. B.
[3] *Flai*, A.
[4] *receperunt sanitatem*, A.
[5] *asinos*] om. A., the word *lupos* being added in red chalk above the line.

was made bisshop of Lyncolne. Whan he was i-stalled at Lyncoln by þe archedecon, me axede an hors oþer a kow for his stallynge, and he seide þat hym[1] were levere forsake þe bisshopriche þan ȝeve eny manere þing for suche[2] a doynge. Wilde foules[3] wolde feeche[4] mete at his hond. Þis [yere][5] Eustas abbot of Flaiȝ[6] cam in to Engelonde forto preche Goddes word, and dede meny miracles:[7] among þe myracles he blessed þe welle of Wy besides Caunterbury, and sike men þat dronke þerof had her heele; ffor a womman þat hadde a fende wiþ inne her drank þerof, and caste up tweye[8] blake taddes,[9] þat tornede anon in to houndes, and þan in to grete asshes,[10] and fliȝ[11] up in to þe ayer,[12] and lefte foule soores[13] after hem. Þis Eustas by his prechynge made meny men leve[14] usurie and chepynge and feyres in[15] þe Sonday; he made þat liȝt schulde brenne alwey in cherches to fore Goddes body, and þat lordes at þe borde schulde have almes disches. At þe laste som prelates hadde envie to þis Eustas, and seide to hym, "Þou hast no leve to sette þyn hook[16] in oþer men

TREVISA.

Lyncoln. The archidiacon of Lincolne askynge an horse or a kowe of hym by reason of his installacion, he seide that he wolde rather fforsake that seete then he scholde ȝiffe the worthe of oon peny perfor. Bryddes were wonte to flye to his honde and take meyte. Eustachius abbot of Flay come to Ynglonde in this yere to preche the worde of God, and schewed mony miracles. Amonge whom he blissede the welle of Wy, nye to Cawnterbery, and mony seke peple drynkynge of that water were restorede to heale: a woman havynge a spiritte with ynne her, and drynkynge of þat water, evomette ij. blacke todes, whiche were turnede afterwarde into dogges, and after that into grete asses, whiche corrupte the aiere moche after theyme. This holy abbot, Eustachius by name, causede moche peple to leve usure thro his prechynge, merchandyse on Sonnedayes, and specially to fynde lyȝhte afore the sacrament, and noble men to leve a messe in meytes to poore peple. At the laste prelates of Ynglonde, havynge envy at hym, seide, "Hit is not lawefull to the to put a sythe into the corne of oþer

MS. HARL. 2261.

f. 375 a.

---

[1] *þat hym*] he, Cx.
[2] *soche*, γ.
[3] *voules*, γ.
[4] *veeche*, γ.
[5] From Cx.
[6] *Flai*, α., β., and γ.; *Flaye*, Cx.
[7] *myrakels*, γ., bis.
[8] *twy*, γ.
[9] *todes*, Cx.
[10] *asses*, α., β., and Cx.
[11] *flyed*, Cx.
[12] *eyr*, Cx.
[13] *foores*, β.
[14] *leeve*, β.
[15] *in*] on, Cx.
[16] *houk*, γ.

alienam." Quibus ille dixit, " Messis quidem multa, sed " operarii[1] pauci ;" et sic[2] discessit in Normanniam *Mirabile*.[3] Hoc quoque anno mense Decembri in provincia Eboracensi apparuerunt quinque lunæ in cœlo,[4] una in oriente, secunda in occidente, tertia in austro, quarta in aquilone, quinta in medio cœli circuiens sexies illas quatuor lunas[5] quasi per unam horam, et tandem evanuit.[6]

Cap. XXXIII.

[*Johannis, regis Angliæ, res gestæ et obitus.*]

Gratiæ MCCIII. Johannis IV. Rex Johannes ad Vincula Petri[7] apud castrum de Mirabel[8] cepit et occidit nepotem suum Arthurum, et sororem suam Alienoram apud Bristolliam perpetuo carceri mancipavit. Qua de causa tanquam propter feloniam commissam rex Franciæ occupavit Normanniam, Britanniam, Pictaviam, Andegaviam, et Cenomanniam. Hoc anno,[9] qui fuit sextus Innocentii tertii, ordo fratrum Prædicatorum incepit in Tholosanis partibus sub duce Dominico, sed non potuit confirmari ante pri-

Gratiæ MCCIV. Johannis V.

---

[1] *operarii vero*, B.
[2] *sic*] om. A.
[3] A.B. omit heading.
[4] *in cœlo*] om. B.
[5] *reliquens*, B.
[6] See note 2, page 180.
[7] *in festo S. Petri ad Vincula*, B.
[8] *capi fecit Arthurum nepotem suum, qui in odium regis Ricardi a Wallensibus dudum servabatur apud castrum de Mirabel*, C.D.
[9] *Johannes rex perdidit hoc anno multas terras transmarinas, scilicet Normanniam, Andegaviam, Britanniam Minorem, et magnam partem Aquitaniæ. Hoc anno*, C.D.

" ripe." [1] " Þere is moche corn [to rype],[2]" quod he, " and " fewe workmen ;" and so he wente into Normandie. Also þis ȝere in þe province of ȝork, in the monþe of Decembre, were i-seie fyve [3] mones in hevene, oon in þe est and þe oþere [4] in the west, þe þridde in þe south, þe fourþe in þe north, and þe fifte in þe myddel of hevene, and ȝede sixe sipes [5] aboute þe oþer foure [6] moones as it were in an houre, and vanschede [7] awey at þe laste. TREVISA.

Capitulum tricesimum quartum.[8]

AT Lammasse at þe castel of Myrabel, kyng John took and slowȝ his nevew Arthur, and prisoned his suster Elianore at Bristowe to hire lyves ende. Þerfore as it were for vilonie [9] þe kyng of Fraunce occupied Normandie, Bretayne, Payto,[10] Angeoy et [11] Cenomannia. Þis ȝere, þat was þe sixte ȝere of þe þridde Innocentius, bygan the ordre of Frere Prechours in þe contray of Tholous under þe duke Dominik, but it myȝte

" men." Eustachius seide, " Truly þer is moche corne, and fewe " laborers ;" and so he departede into Normandy. In this yere v. moones apperede in Provincense in þe monethe of December, oon in the este, the secunde in the weste, the thridde in the sowthe, and the iiij^the in the northe, the v^the in the myddes of hevyn compassynge vj. tymes the oþer iiij. moones as by oon howre, and at the laste hit evaneschede. MS. HARL. 2261.

Capitulum tricesimum tertium.

IOHN kynge of Ynglonde did sle Arthurus, sonne of his broþer, at the castelle of Mirabel, and put Alienore his suster in perpetualle prison at Bristowe in this yere. For whiche cause the kynge of Fraunce occupiede Normandy, Briteyn, Pictavia, and diverse other cuntres. The ordre of Freres Precheours began this tyme under seynte Dominik in the partes Tholosan, but that ordre myȝhte not be conferemed

[1] *ryppe*, α. ; *rip*, β. ; *ryp*, γ. *rype*, Cx.
[2] From γ.
[3] *eyf*, γ.
[4] *another*, Cx.
[5] *sydes*, γ. ¶
[6] *foure*] om. Cx.
[7] *vansede*, γ.
[8] 33, α. and Cx.
[9] *felonye*, α. and Cx. ; *felony*, β. and γ.
[10] *Peytow*, β. and Cx.
[11] *and*, Cx.

mum annum Honorii papæ.[1] Hyems magna et[2] asperrima a Circumcisione usque ad Annunciationem[3] inhorruit. Item rex Johannes dedit filiam suam notham Lewelino principi Walliæ in uxorem,[4] et cum ea dedit castellum et totum territorium de Ellesmere[5] in confinio Walliæ. Hoc anno mortuo Huberto Cantuariensi archiepiscopo, fit[6] magna dissensio in ecclesia Cantuariensi aliis suppriorem, aliis Norwycensem episcopum[7] jussu regis eligentibus; sed Innocentius papa utriusque electionem cassavit, et Stephanum de Langetoun consecravit. Canes et mastivi[8] per omnes forestas Angliæ occiduntur.[9] Apud Southwalliam in terra Morgani apparuit in somnis magistro Mauricio miles quidam cum quo alternis versibus nunc incipiendo nunc finiendo, [solebat][10] colludere; qui et dixit, "Magister Maurici,[11] volo ut finias hunc versum: "*Destruet hoc regnum Rex regum.*" Cui ille: "Immo

Gratiæ MCCV. Johannis VI.

[1] *papæ*] om. A.B.; *Duæ plenæ lunæ visæ sunt in cœlo clara adhuc die*, ins. C.D.
[2] *magna et*] om. A.B.
[3] *beatæ Mariæ*, B.
[4] *in uxorem*] om. B.
[5] *Ellismere*, A.
[6] *fuit*, B.
[7] *episcopum*] om. A.
[8] *mastici*, B.
[9] *Giraldus*, B.; *magna procella venti et grandinis domos subvertit*, C.D.
[10] *solebat*] from B.
[11] *Mauri*, B.

nouȝt be conformed tofore þe firste ȝere of Honorius. Þo fil[1] a scharp wynter and a grisliche, and[2] durede from ȝeres day to þe Annunciacioun. Also kyng John mariede his baast douȝter to Lewelyn prince of Wales, and ȝaf wiþ here þe castel and al the lordschippe of Eylesmere[3] in þe marche of Wales. Þis ȝer. whan Hubert archebisshop of Caunterbury was dede, þere[4] fil greet stryf [in þe chirche of Caunterbury],[5] for som chees[6] þe suppriour, and som þe bisshop of Norþwhiche[7] by þe kynges heste. Bote Innocentius þe pope undede[8] eyþer ellectioun, and sacrede Stevene of Langtoun. Houndes and masteves[9] beeþ i-slawe in alle þe forestes of Engelond. [*Giraldus.*][10] In Souþ Wales in Morgan his lond a kny̆ȝt appered to oon maister Morys in his sleep, þat was i-woned[11] to pleie wiþ hym, and to make vers[12] eyþer wiþ other, now bygynnynge and eft endynge,[13] so þat eyþer schulde ende oþer his[14] vers. In þat apperynge þe kny̆ȝt spak to maister Moris in his sleep,[15] and seide, "Maister Morys, I wil[16] "þat þou ende þis vers, *Destruct hoc regnum Rex regum.*" "But ende þou it," quod Morys, "for þou hast almost i-made

Trevisa.

afore the firste yere of Honorius the pope. Also kynge Iohn ȝafe Notha his doȝhter in mariage to Lewellinus prince of Wales. Hubertus archebischop of Cawnterbery dedde, þer was grete discorde for his successoure, for somme electe the bischop of Norwiche, and somme the supprior of Cawnterbery, but the pope avoidede theym bothe, and consecrate Steven of Langeton. A kny̆ȝhte apperede to maister Maurice in his slepe, nowe begynnynge a verse and oþer while endynge a verse, in Sowthewales, seyenge to hym, "Maister Maurice, y wylle that thow "ende this verse:

"'Destruet hoc regnum Rex regum.'"

To whom Maurice seide, "Do the labour thy selfe, for thow

MS. Harl. 2261.

[1] *vul*, γ.
[2] *þat*, α.
[3] *Ellesmere*, β.; *Ellesmer*, Cx.
[4] *þere*] om. α.
[5] From α., β., and Cx.
[6] *chose*, Cx.
[7] *Norwyche*, Cx.
[8] *undide*, β.
[9] *mastyves*, β. and γ.; *maistyves*, Cx.
[10] From γ. and Cx.
[11] *wont*, β.
[12] *versus*, β. and Cx.
[13] *endynge*, from α., β., and Cx.; *endyde* MS.
[14] *on his*] oþeres, α. and β.; oþer hys, from γ.; others, Cx. *on his* MS.
[15] *in his sleep*] om. α., β., γ., and Cx.
[16] *Ich wole*, β.

" finias tu, qui versum fere consummasti." At miles: " Quia senex es et hebes,[1] ut video, sic finies:[2] " *Versus. Destruet hoc regnum rex Regum duplici* " *plaga.*" Hoc etiam anno natus est regi Johanni Henricus primogenitus suus[3] ex Isabella, de qua genuit istum Henricum et[4] Ricardum comitem Cornubiæ; tres quoque filias, scilicet Isabellam imperatricem, Alienoram quæ nupsit primo Willelmo Marescallo comiti de Pembrok, et postmodum Symoni de Monte Forti comiti Leycestrensi, qui genuit ex ea sex liberos. Item tertia filia Johanna nupsit regi Scotiæ.[3] Hoc anno cœpit interdictum Angliæ,[5] per septem annos continue duraturum, eo quod rex Johannes Stephanum de Langetoun, Cantuariensem archiepiscopum, per papam confirmatum, omnino recusavit, monachos Cantuarienses profugavit, bona eorum confiscavit.[6] Qua de causa papa homines[7] Johannis ab ejus fidelitate absolvit, scripsitque[8] conterminis regibus ut in Johannem

Gratiæ MCCIX. Johannis. X.

[1] *habes*, B.
[2] *debet versum finire*, B.
[3] *suus . . . Scotiæ*] om. C.D.
[4] *et*] om. B.
[5] C.D. add: " hiis de causis. " Mortuo namque Huberto archi- " episcopo, aliqui monachorum " Cantuariæ elegerunt suppriorem domus suæ, quatuordecim " vero monachi ad regis instigationem juramento se astrinxerant quod nullum alium quam " Norwicensem episcopum eligerent, unde tam hii quam illi, " electores et electi, coram papa " convenerunt. Dominus autem " papa utriusque electionem cassavit, tum quia persona supprioris " odiosa erat regi et regno, tum " quia persona Norwicensis minus " sufficiens erat, et minus canonice " electus. Idcirco præcepit domi- " nus papa quod monachi ibidem " exeuntes in tres partes se dividerent et personam idoneam eligerent. Quarum prima pars elegit " adhuc suppriorem, secunda pars " Norwycensem, tertia pars magistrum Stephanum de Languetone, sed papa cassavit ut prius " utriusque electionem, Stephanum " confirmavit, quem ante consecrationem suum regi Johanni præ- " sentavit; sed rex omnino Stephanum recusavit, insuper et monachos Cantuariæ profugavit, bona " eorum confiscavit. Hac de causa " dominus papa Angliam sub in- " terdicto ligavit, homines regis " Johannis a fidelitate ejus absolvit " conterminis regibus ut in Johannem insurgerent mandavit."
[6] *monachos . . . confiscavit*] om. A.
[7] *regis*, B.
[8] *scripsit*, B.

" a ful vers.[1] As I see," quod þe kny3t,[2] " þat þou art olde TREVISA.
" and slow, þerfore ende it in þis manere, *Destruet hoc regnum*
" *Rex regum duplice*[3] *plaga.*" Þat is, " Kyngene Kyng[4]
" schal destroye þis rewme[5] wiþ double[6] meschef." Also
þere[7] was Henry i-bore, kyng Iohn his eldest sone i-gete on
Isabel: he gat on here þis Henry, and Richard eorle of Corne-
wayle, and þre dou3tres. Isabel þe emperesse, and Elianore, þat
was first i-maried to William Marchal erle of Penbroke, and
afterward to Symound de Mountfort erle of Leycestre,[8] þat gat
on hire sixe children. Also þe þridde, Ione,[9] was i-maried to
þe kyng of Scotlonde. Þis 3ere bygan þe enterditynge of Eng-
lond, þat durede sevene 3ere [contynualliche],[10] for kyng Iohn
recusede[11] and wolde in no wise fonge Stevene [of][10] Langtoun[12]
archebisshop of Caunterbury, þat was confermed by þe pope.
Also kyng Iohn chasede the monkes of Caunterbury, and took
here goodes in his owne hond. Þerfore þe pope assoillede
kyng Iohn his men of his homage and fewte, and wroot to þe
kynges next Iohn þat þey schulde arise a3enst Iohn. Heretikes

---

" hase alle moste made an ende." Then the kny3hte seide, MS. HARL.
" In that thow arte olde and dulle, thow schalle finische hit 2261.
" in this wise:

f. 375 b.

"Destruet hoc regnum Rex regum duplici placca."

Henricus the firste geten son of this kynge by Isabell was
borne in this yere, of whom he gate also Ricardus erle of
Cornewaile, and iij. do3hters, Isabelle the empresse, Alienor,
whiche was maryede to Marescallus erle of Penbroke, and after
to Symon Mowntefort erle of Leicestre, whiche gate of her vj.
childer; and Iohanne, the thrydde do3hter, was maryede to þe
kynge of Scotlonde. The interdicte of Ynglonde began in this
yere, to indure by vij. yere, in that kynge Iohn refusede utterly
Steven of Langeton, archebischop of Cawnterbery, confermed
by the pope, and expellede the monkes of Cawnterbery and
toke þeire goodes. Wherefore the pope did wryte to kynges
nye to Ynglonde that thei scholde ryse ageyne kyng Iohn.

---

[1] *versus*, β and Cx.
[2] *knyȝt*, from β.; *knyght*, Cx.; *A y se quaþ þe knyȝt*, γ.; *kyng* MS.
[3] *dupplici*, β.; *dupplice*, γ.
[4] *Kyng of kynges*, β.; *King of kyng*, Cx.
[5] *royamme*, Cx. *duble*, γ.
[7] *þere*] þys ȝere, γ.; this yere, Cx.
[8] *Leyceter*, γ.
[9] *Iohan*, β.; *Jouhane*, γ.; *Iane*, Cx.
[10] From α., β., γ., and Cx.
[11] *refused*, Cx.
[12] *Langeton*, γ.

insurgerent. Albigenses hæretici venerunt in Angliam, quorum aliqui comburebantur vivi. Saraceni cum tresdecim [1] millibus armatorum exceptis lotricibus lx[a] milibus de Africa venientes occupaverunt [2] magnam partem Hispaniæ. Unde papa Innocentius misit nuncios ad diversas nationes pro [3] subsidio Terræ Sanctæ. Nam Saraceni erexerant munitiones in monte Thabor [4] ad debellandum Acram. Hoc [5] anno sanctus Franciscus incepit ordinem fratrum Minorum juxta Assisium.[6] Rex Franciæ cum copioso exercitu [7] littora Normanniæ contra regem Johannem occupavit.[8] Pandulphus papæ legatus Angliam venit,[9] regem Johannem de parendo [10] Romanæ ecclesiæ districte convenit. Rex autem videns undecumque periculum sibi [11] imminere tum per regem Franciæ tum per proceres suos qui per scripta sua regi Franciæ se dejunxerant,[12] totum regnum suum Angliæ et Hiberniæ, pro se et hæredibus, papæ Innocentio ejusque catholicis successoribus in perpetuum obligavit, ita quidem quod ipse et hæredes sui deinceps forent feodarii ecclesiæ Romanæ, reddendo annuatim

Minorum ordo. Gratiæ MCCXIV. Johannis XV.

Gratiæ MCCXV. Johannis XVI.

[1] *trescentis*, B.

[2] *oppugnaverunt*, C.D.

[3] *ad prædicandum cruces obsequium contra Saracenos qui in monte Thabor municiones fecerunt ad Acram debellandam*, C.D.

[4] *Taber*, A.

[5] *etiam*, A.

[6] *Assisium*, from A.; *Assissum*, B.; *Assisii*, C.D.; *Assilium* MS.

[7] *exercitu*] om. A.

[8] C.D. add: "Rex Johannes ab "omnibus pene religiosis domibus "Angliæ exegit, et habuit cartas "quibus se faterentur dedisse "gratis regi omnia quæ ille vio- "lenter prius abstulerat. Et alias "quoque cartas conscribi fecit "quibus iidem religiosi se ad im- "mensam pecuniæ summam obli- "garent ad libitum regis persol- "vendam, quarum nonnullas cartas "diu post inventas pluribus reli- "giosis nominis obfuisse. Inno- "centius papa conscripsit conter- "minis regibus ut contra regem "Angliæ insurgerent, unde et rex "Franciæ cum copioso exercitu "litora Normannica occupavit. "Pandulphus domini papæ, &c."

[9] *contra*, C.D.

[10] *satisfaciendo*, C.D.

[11] *innumera tum propter regem Franciæ, tum propter proceres*, C.D.

[12] *adjuxerant*, B.

TREVISA.

þat heet[1] Abbigenses[2] come into Engelond, and some of hem were i-brend alyve.[3] [Sarsyns come out of Affrica wiþ þre þowsend men of armes al wiþ oute sixty þowsand of lavenderes,[4] and occupiede a greet deel of Spayne. Þerfore Innocentius þe pope sente messangeres[5] to dyvers naciouns for help and socour of þe Holy Lond. For þe Sarsyns hadde y-bulde[6] strengþes[7] in þe hul mont Tabor forto werre aȝenst Acres.][8] Also þis ȝere seint Fraunceys began þe ordre of Frere Menoures bysides Assise. Þe kyng of Fraunce wiþ greet oost occupied þe clyves of Normandie aȝenst kyng Iohn.[9] Þe popes legat Pandulphus cam into Engelond, and spak to kyng Iohn, and chargede hyliche[10] þat he schulde be buxum[11] and obedient to þe cherche of Rome. Þe kyng seiȝ[12] peril in every side, by þe kyng of Fraunce, and also by lordes of his owne lond þat hadde by writinge turned hem self to þe kyng of Fraunce.[13] Þan þe kyng obleged[14] al his kyngdome of Engelonde and Erlonde[15] also, for hym and for his heire,[16] to pope Innocentius and his laweful successoures for evere, so þat after þat tyme he and his heires schulde be feodaries to þe chirche of Rome,

---

MS. HARL. 2261.

Mony of the heretikes Albigense, commyn into Ynglonde, were brente in lyfe. A grete peple of Saracenys come in this yere from Affryke, and occupyede a grete parte of Speyne. Wherefore þe pope sende messyngers to diverse nacions for the subsidy of the holy Londe, for the Saracenes hade erecte and made diverse ordinaunce in the mownte of Thabor to ȝiffe batelle to the cite of Acra. Seynte Francise began in this yere the ordre of Freres Minors. Pandulphus, a legate of the pope, come into Ynglonde in þis yere, commaundynge streytely kynge Iohn to obbey the churche of Rome. Kynge Iohn, seenge perelle on every side by the kynge of Fraunce and gentyllemen of his realme, bownde the realme of Ynglonde and of Yrlonde, for hym and his successors for ever, to the pope and to his successors, to be tributaryes or feodaryes of the churche

---

[1] *hiȝte*, β.
[2] *Albigenses*, β. and γ.; *Albigensis*, Cx.
[3] *onlyve*, α.
[4] *lavendres*, β. and Cx.; *lavenders*, γ.
[5] *messagers*, Cx.
[6] *bilde*, β.
[7] *stryngþes*, γ.
[8] From α., β., γ., and Cx.
[9] *and chargede hyȝliche*, add. α. wrongly.
[10] *chargide hyȝlich*, β.; *hyȝlyche*, γ.
[11] *buxom*, β. and Cx; *boxum*, γ.
[12] *siȝe*, α.; *sawe*, Cx.
[13] *and also by lordes of his owne londes*, repeated here in MS.
[14] *oblegide*, β.; *oblege*, γ.
[15] *Irlond*, β. and Cx.
[16] *heyres*, α. and Cx.; *eyres*, β.

pro Anglia septingentas marcas, et pro Hibernia ducentas, ita quod si ipse vel aliquis heredum suorum ab hac conditione vel solutione deficiat, a jure regni cadat. Post hoc Pandulphus recessit,[1] et regem Franciæ de Normannia[2] redire coegit. Stephanus vero archiepiscopus cum coexulibus suis Angliam venit, qui regem cum fautoribus suis in ecclesia Wyntoniæ absolvit, præstita tamen juratoria cautione de restitutione ablatorum facienda. Circa[3] hos dies rex Johannes fecit distrahi et suspendi quendam sanctum virum nomine Petrum de Pontefracto, pro eo quod prædixerat ei multa infortunia propter crudelitates et fornicationes suas affutura, et etiam quia prædixit ei quod quatuordecim annis regnaret, cum tamen octodecim annis pæne regnaverit, ignorans in hoc quod[4] quatuordecim tantum annis libere regnaret, sed tribus annis non libere quia sub tributo papali.[5] Isti Petro bis apud Eboracum et semel apud Pontefractum apparuit Christus in forma

---

[1] *recessit*] om. A.

[2] *de Normannia*] om. C.D.

[3] *Circa . . . reprobor um*] om C.D.

[4] *quod*] om. B.

[5] *regnaret . . . papali*] et per residuos quatuor sub tributo papæ, B.

and paie everich ȝere seven hondred mark for [Engelond, and two hondred mark for][1] Irlond; so þat ȝif he oþer eny of his heires faillede[2] of þis condicioun oþer of þe paiement he schulde falle[3] of [þe][4] riȝt to[5] þe kyngdom. [Here after Pandulphus wente forþ and compellede þe kyng of Fraunce to wende out of Normandye. Stevene þe archebisshop and þeyȝ[6] þat were exciled wiþ hym cam into Engelond, and assoylede þe kyng and his fautoures in þe cherche of Wynchestre. But he[7] made hem swere þat þeyȝ[6] schulde restore al þat was wrongfulliche y-take.][1] Aboute þat tyme kyng John made honge and drawe an holy man þat heet Peeris of Pountfreiȝt,[8] for he hadde i-warnede hym of meny myshappes þat schulde falle hem[9] for[10] his cruelnes and for his fornicacioun.[11] Also for he hadde i-warnede hym þat he schulde regne but fourtene ȝere, and he regnede almost[12] eyȝtene ȝere; but he knewe nouȝt in þat doynge þat he regnede freliche[13] but fourtene ȝere; but he regnede þre ȝere [nouȝt freliche,[14] for þilke[15] þre ȝere][1] [16] was tributarie to þe pope. Crist appered to þis Perys[17] twyes at ȝork, and ones at Pount- TREVISA.

---

of Rome, and to pay yerely for Ynglonde vij.c. marke and for Yrlonde iij.c. marke. And if he or his successours fayle of the seide summes that thei scholde loose the tytle and ryȝhte of þe crowne of Ynglonde. This don Pandulphus the legate departede, and compellede the kynge of Fraunce to departe from Normandy. Steven the archebischop come to Ynglonde and absolvede the kynge an othe made afore to restore goodis taken awey. Kynge Iohn made an holy man to be drawen and honged, Petre off Pountefract by name, in that he seide mony infortunes scholde comme to hym for his cruellenesse and fornicacion. Also the same man seide to hym that he scholde reigne xiiij. yere, when that he hade reignede allemoste xviij. yere. Criste apperede to this Petre twyes at Yorke and oonys at MS. HARL. 2261. f. 376 a.

---

[1] From α., β., γ., and Cx.
[2] *faylde*, γ.
[3] *valle*, γ.
[4] From β.
[5] *of*, α., β., and Cx.
[6] *þei*, β., bis.
[7] *he*] a, γ.
[8] *Peres of Pontfret*, β.; *Pontfret*, γ., et infra; *Pyers of Ponfret*, Cx.
[9] *him shold fal*, Cx.
[10] *valle vor*, γ.
[11] Part of this sentence is repeated in MS.
[12] *almest*, γ.
[13] *vrelich*, γ.
[14] *vrelyche*, γ.
[15] *þelke*, γ.
[16] *he*, from α., β., and Cx.; *and*, MS.
[17] *Peres*, β.

pueri inter manus sacerdotis insufflans in eum et ter dicens, "Pax, pax, pax;" docuitque[1] eum multa quæ postmodum enarravit pontificibus et populis male viventibus Raptus est etiam aliquando in mentis excessu per tres dies et noctes, ubi vidit gaudia beatorum et pœnas reproborum.[2] [3] In vigilia sancti Andreæ rex Johannes cepit castellum Roucestrense,[4] ubi multi nobiles contra eum conspiraverant. Lodowycus etiam[5] frater regis Francorum ad rogatum procerum Angligenarum venit Angliam. Cui factæ sunt fidelitates a Francis et ab Anglis[6] et etiam ab ipso rege Scottorum[7] apud Londoniam. Sed Gualo legatus papæ in Anglia tunc existens excommunicavit Lodowycum cum[8] suis fautoribus.[9] Sed Lodowycus nihilominus cepit Wyntoniam et obsedit Dovoriam, Wyndesoram.[10] Innocentius papa[11] obiit, Honorius tertius[12] successit decem annis octo mensibus. Qui primo sub[13] anno confirmavit ordinem fratrum[14] Prædicatorum, nam et Innocentius tertius

Gratiæ MCCXVI. Johannis XVII.

Gratiæ MCCXVII. Johannis XVIII.

---

[1] *et docuit*, B.
[2] See note 3, p. 192.
[3] C.D. add: "Comes Flandriæ "veniens in Angliam fecit regi "Johanni homagium de terra sua. "Quo anno etiám."
[4] *Rauchestriæ*, A.; *Roucestriæ*, B.
[5] *francigena*, C.D.
[6] *apud Londoniam*, C.D.
[7] *una cum Northimbranis*, C.D.
[8] *omnibus*, B.
[9] *fautoribus*] om. A.
[10] *et Lincolniam aliasque civitates*] add. C.D.
[11] *papa*] om. B.
[12] *tertius*] om. A.B.
[13] *sui*, B.
[14] *fratrum*] om. B.

freyt [1] in þe liknes of a child bytwene þe preostes hondes,and brepede on hym, and seide þries, "Pes, pes, pes," [2] and taw3te hym many þinges þat he tolde afterward to bisshoppes and peple [3] þat were of evel lyf. Also in a tyme he lay þre dayes and þre ny3t [4] as he were in a [5] swonyng, and was i-ravisshed and sigh þe ioyes and peynes of good men and [of] [6] evel. A [7] seynt Andrew his eve kyng Iohn took þe castel of Rouchestre, þere meny gentil men were conspired a3enst hym. Also Lewys,[8] þat was the kynges broþer of Fraunce, com into Engelond at þe prayer of lordes, and hadde homage and feute of Frensche [9] men and Englisch, and of þe kyng of Scotlonde, at Londoun; bote þe popes legat [Gualo] [10] was þo in Engelond, and cursed Lowys and his fautours. Nopeles Lowys took Wynchestre, and byseged Dovere and Wyndesore. Pope Innocent [11] is deed,[12] and þe þridde Honorius was pope after hym ten 3ere and ey3te monþes. In his firste 3ere he confermede þe ordre of Frere Prechours, for þe þridde Innocentius

TREVISA.

Powntefract, in the lykenesse of a childe betwene the hondes of the preste, inspirynge hym, and seyenge, "Pease, pease, "pease," and tau3hte hym mony thynges, whom he schewede to bischoppes and peple lyvynge ylle. Also he was rapte in an excesse of mynde by thre dayes and iij. ny3htes, in whiche tyme he see the ioyes of blissede men and the tormentes of synnefulle men. Kynge Iohn toke the castelle of Rowchestre in this yere in the vigille of seynte Andrewe, where mony noblemen hade conspirede his dethe. Lodowicus, broþer to the kynge of Fraunce, come to Ynglonde at the requeste of the gentylle in hit, to whom mony men of Fraunce and of Ynglonde made fidelite, and the kynge of Scottes also at London. But Gualo, a legate of the pope, excommunicate the seide Lodowicus with alle men supportynge hym, neverthelesse as for that sentence he toke Wynchestre, and segede Dover and Wyndeshore. Innocencius the pope dedde, Honorius did succede x. yere and viij. monethes, which confermed the ordre of

MS. HARL. 2261.

[1] *Pontfret*, β.
[2] *in the . . . pes*] om. Cx.
[3] *pupel*, γ.
[4] *nyghtes*, Cx.
[5] *a*] om. Cx.
[6] From β. and γ.
[7] *A*] On, β. and Cx.
[8] *Lowys*, β.
[9] *Freyns*, γ.
[10] From α., β., γ., and Cx.
[11] *Innocentius*, α., β., and Cx.
[12] *is deed*] deyde, α. and β.; deyd, Cx.

difficilem in hoc se[1] exhibuerat. Rex Johannes septimo decimo regni sui anno et sexta[2] mense obiit apud Newerk morbo dysenterico die sancti Kalixti papæ, sed[3] apud Croghtoun monasterium ordinis Præmonstrensis exenteratus, et apud Wygorniam in medio choro monachorum sepultus.[4] Tradit tamen vulgata fama quod apud monasterium de Swynesheved[5] alborum monachorum intoxicatus obierit. Juraverat enim,[7] ut asseritur,[8] ibidem prandens, quod panem tunc unum[9] obolum valentem faceret infra annum si viveret duodecim denarios valere. Quod audiens unus[10] de conversis fratribus loci illius venenum confecit, regi porrexit. Sed et ipso prius sumpto catholico viatico simul cum rege hausto veneno[11] interiit.

Cap. XXXIV.

[*Henricus tertius, rex Anglie. Moritur Stephanus, archiepiscopus.*]

Mox ergo in festo apostolorum Symonis et Judæ, Henricus filius Johannis, puer novem annorum, in regem

---

[1] *se*] om. A.
[2] *quinta*, C.D.
[3] *sed*] om. B.
[4] *Ranulphus*, A.B.
[5] *Schuesheved*, A.
[6] *firmaverat*, B.
[7] *rex*, C.D.
[8] *tunc*, B.
[9] *unum*] om. A.
[10] *monachus quidam loci illius*, C.
[11] *hausto veneno*] om. A.

was loth[1] to conferme þat ordre. Kyng Iohn deide at Newerk in[2] þe flux, a Seint Calixtis[3] day þe pope, þe seventeþe ȝere of his kyngdom, in the sixte monþe, but he was i-boweld in þe abbay of white chanouns at Crochtoun,[4] and buried at Wynchestre[5] in þe myddel of þe queer[6] of monkes. Bote þe comune[7] fame telleþ þat he was i-poysned at Swyneshede, in þe abbay of white monkes. Me seiþ[8] þat he 'swore þere at mete, þat þe loof[9] þat was þo [but][10] at[11] an half peny[12] schulde be worþe twelve pens[13] wiþ ynne þat ȝere ȝif he moste lyve. A monk of þat hous herde þat, and made a[14] drink of venym, and schrof hym, and was i-houseled, and drank to þe kyng as it were his tastour, and so þe kyng and he deide in fere.[15] TREVISA.

Capitulum tricesimum quintum.[16]

ANON a Symondis[17] day and seint[18] Iude, kyng Iohn his sone Henry, a child of nyne ȝere old, was i-made kyng: he was

---

frers Prechours in the firste yere. Iohn kynge of Ynglonde diede of the flix at Newerke, in the xvij. yere of his reigne and in the vj^the^ monethe; beryede at Worcestre in the myddes of the qwere of monkes. Ȝ. Neverthelesse the commune fame is that he was poysonede at the monastery off Swynyshed of white monkes. For, as hit is seide, he seide þer at a dyner that he scholde make a loofe, that tyme worthe an halpenny, to be worthe xij.*d.* by the ende of the yere if he myȝhte have lyve. Oon of the breþer of þat place, familier with the kynge, herynge that, ordeynede poyson, and receyvynge the sacrament aïore, toke þat poyson to the kynge, and so thei dyede bothe by the drynkynge of hit. MS. HARL. 2261.

Capitulum tricesimum quartum.

Henricus sonne of the seide kynge was erecte anoon into kynge, havynge ix. yere in age, thro helpe of the bischoppe off

---

[1] *loþe*, β.
[2] *of*, Cx.
[3] *Calix his*, α.; *Seynt Calyxt hys day*, γ.; *Calyxtes*, Cx.
[4] *Croghton*, β., γ., and Cx.
[5] *Wircetre*, α., β., and Cx.
[6] *queor*, α. and β.
[7] *comyn*, β. and Cx.
[8] *þat . . . seiþ*] om. Cx.
[9] *lof*, β.
[10] From β.
[11] *at*] worth, Cx.
[12] *halpeny*, γ.
[13] *panes*, γ.
[14] *a*] om. α., β., and γ.; hym Cx.
[15] *in fere*] yfere, β.; yvere, γ.; both attones, Cx.
[16] 34, Cx.
[17] *Symon his*, α.; *a seynt Symon hys*, γ.; *upon Saynt Symons*, Cx.
[18] *seint*, Cx.

erigitur, viribus et industria[1] legati papæ, Wyntoniensis episcopi, comitum de Penbrok[2] et Cestriæ. Nam Ranulphus comes Cestrensis mox[3] cepit Lincolniam contra Lodowycum, occisis in ea plurimis Francigenis. Unde et Lodowycus videns partem suam debilitari, accepta pecunia pro resignatione munitionum quas tenuit,[4] absolutione a legato papæ recepta, Franciam rediit.[5] De his autem qui Lodowyco adhæserunt laici non sunt exhereditati, sed clerici pro quantitate culpæ aut sunt beneficiis privati aut ad curiam[6] pro absolutione transmissi. Ranulphus comes Cestrensis[7] postquam concordatus est cum Lewelino principe Walliæ profectus est Jerosolimam,[8] et capta est Damieta a Christianis. Hoc anno convenerunt primo abbates nigri [ordinis][9] apud Oxoniam ad[10] tractandum de ordine. Rex Henricus incepit novum opus apud Westmonasterium. Et Ranulphus comes Cestrensis[11] rediens de Terra Sancta ædificavit castra de Charteley, de Beeston, et abbatiam de Deulecress albi ordinis[12] ad quorum sumptis castrorum cepit[13] tallagium[14] per totam ter-

Gratiæ MCCXVIII. Henrici III. I.

Gratiæ MCCXIX. Henrici III. II.

Gratiæ MCCXX. Henrici III. III.

---

[1] *fultus*, B.
[2] *Penbroc*, A.
[3] *primo*, C.D.
[4] *in manu sua habebat*, C.D.
[5] *adiit*, A.B.
[6] *sedem apostolicam*, C.D.
[7] *Cestriæ*, B.
[8] *sub qua profectione*, C.D.
[9] *ordinis* from B.C.D.
[10] *de reformatione ordinis*, C.D.
[11] *Cestriæ*, B.
[12] *albi ordinis*] om. C.D.
[13] *ceperit*, B.
[14] *tallagium*] om. A.; pedale, C.D.

i-holpe by strengþe and wit of the popes legat, of þe bisshop of Wynchestre, of þe erles of Penbroke and of Chestre; [for Ranulph erl of Chestre][1] hadde þoo i-take Lyncolne aȝenst Lowys, and i-slawe þere meny Frensche men. Þan Lowys syh[2] þat his party was febled, and feng[3] money, and ȝelde up þe strengþes þat he hadde i-holde, and was assoylled of þe popes legat, and wente aȝen in to Fraunce. Lewed[4] men þat heelde[5] with Lowys were nouȝt disherited, bot clerkes, as þe trespas was greet, were prived of her benefice, oþer i-sent to þe court of Rome for to be assoilled. Ranulph erle of Chestre wente to Ierusalem, after þat he was acorded wiþ Lewelyn prince of Wales; and Damyeta is i-take of Cristen men. Þis ȝere first þe abbottes of blak ordre come to gidres at Oxenforde forto trete of þe ordre. Kyng Henry bygan þe newe werk at Westmynstre;[6] and Ranulph erle of Chestre cam[7] out of þe Holy Lond, and bulde þe castelles of[8] Chirteley[9] and of Borston[10] and þe abbay of Deulcresse[11] of þe white ordre.[12] For þe cost of þese castelles[8] he took taliage[13] in al

Trevisa.

Wynchestre legate off the pope and of the erles of Penbroke and of Chestre. For Ranulphus erle of Chestre toke Lyncoln anoon ageyne Lodowicus, sleenge in hit mony men of Fraunce, wherefore the seide Lodowicus seenge his parte to decrease, takynge moneye for resignacion of his castells, and absolucion off the legate of the pope returnede to Fraunce. Clerkes drawynge to the seide Lodowicus loste theire benefices, other ells thei were sende to the cowrte of Rome for an absolucion. Ranulphus erle of Chestre, accorded with Lewelinus prince of Wales, wente to Jerusalem, and the cite callede Daneta was taken by Cristen men. Abbottes of the blacke ordre come in this yere to Oxforde to trete firste of theire ordre. Kynge Henricus began a newe werke at Westemynstre, and Ranulphus erle of Chestre commyn from the Holy Londe edifiede the castells of Chartely, of Beeston, and the abbathy of Deulacresse of the white ordre, to the charge of whom he toke a tallage thro alle

MS. Harl. 2261.

f. 367 b.

---

[1] From α., β., γ., and Cx.
[2] *syȝ*, β.; *saw*, Cx.
[3] *vyng*, γ.
[4] *Lewyde*, β.
[5] *huld*, γ.
[6] *Westmestre*, Cx.
[7] *come*, α.
[8] *of . . . castelles*] om. α.
[9] *Charteley*, β. and Cx.; *Charteleye*, γ.
[10] *Beestoun*, β.; *Beeston*, γ.; *Beston*, Cx.
[11] *Delacresse*, β. and Cx.; *Deulacresse*, γ.
[12] *order*, β. and γ.
[13] *tallage*, γ.; *tollage*, Cx.

ram suam.[1] Hoc etiam anno facta est[2] translatio beati Thomæ martyris[3] per Stephanum archiepiscopum, qui durante solemnitate exhibuit cuicumque petenti fenum et præbendam a Londoniis usque Cantuariam per viam itineranti; fecit etiam per totam diem translationis vinum jugiter in canalibus[4] per varia urbis loca distillare: unde et expensas quas Stephanus in hac solemnitate exhibuit, quartus ejus[5] successor Bonefacius vix persolvit. [6]Alexander rex Scotiæ duxit in uxorem Johannam regis Henrici sororem. Die sancti Lucæ Evangelistæ irruit ventus a septentrione quatiens domos, pomeria,[7] nemora, turres ecclesiarum, visique sunt dracones ignei et maligni spiritus in turbine volitare. In consilio episcoporum apud Oxoniam comprehensus est quidam[8] habens in corpore suo vulnera dominicæ crucifixionis, dicens se esse Jesum; qui judicio ecclesiæ tradebatur puniendus, et[9] crucifixus est apud Abbirbury.[10] Johannes filius David comitis de Scotia duxit

Gratiæ MCCXXI. Henrici III. IV.

---

[1] *sanctam*, A.
[2] *est*] om. A.
[3] *Cantuariensis*, C.D.
[4] *ad hoc fabrefactis*, C.D.
[5] *ei*, A.
[6] *Hoc anno*, C.D.
[7] *penetraria*, A.
[8] *quidam*] om. A.
[9] *et . . . Abbirbury*] om. C.D.
[10] *Abburbur'*, A.

his land. Also þis ȝere seint Thomas of Caunturbury þe martir was translated by Stevene þe archebisshop [of Caunterbury].[1] Durynge þe solempnite he fonde hey[2] and provendre[3] to alle men þat wolde axe it, in þe wey bitwene Londoun and Caunturbury. Also in þe day of þe translacioun he made wyne [to renne][4] in pipes continualliche in divers places[5] of þe citee. And so the coste þat Stevene made in þis solempnite his fourþe[6] successour Bonefacius paide it unneþe. [Alisaundre kyng of Scotlond wedded Iohanne, kyng Henryes suster.[7] A[8] seynt Luc þe Evaungelyst his day com a wynd out of þe norþside þat brak doun hous,[9] orchardes and woodes, belhous and belfrayes. Also fury[10] dragouns and evel spirites were y-seie fle[11] aboute in þe whirle wynd. At Oxenforde, in þe counsail of bisshops, was oon y-take þat hadde in his body woundes as oure Lord Crist hadde y-nayled to þe cros. Þis seide þat he was Iesus, bote by doom of holy cherche he was y-take to be y-punsched, [and][12] at Abburbyry he was y-nayled to þe cros. David an erl of Scotlond hadde

TREVISA.

---

his lordeschippe. The translacioun of seynte Thomas of Cawnterbery was made in this yere by Steven the archebischoppe, whiche grawntede hey and fyndynge from London to Cawnterbery to peple that solennite durynge. Also he causede in the day of the translacion wyne to distille by condites in diverse places in the cite; whiche spende so grete goodes in that solennite that unnethe the iiij.[the] successoure to hym recompende for the dettes. Alexander kynge of Scottelonde maryede Johan, the sustyr of kynge Henricus. And also a grete huge wynde was in the feste of seynte Luke, commynge from the northe, depressynge howses and trees, and dragons of fyre and wikkede spirittes were seene to flye in the aiere at that tyme. A man was taken at Oxenforde in a cownsaile of bischoppes kepede þer, havynge woundes in his body lyke to the woundes of Criste, seyenge that he was redemer of man; whiche was crucifiede at Abbirbury by juggemente ȝiffen ageyne hym. John sonne of David erle of Scottelonde toke to his wife the doȝhter

MS. HARL. 2261.

---

[1] From α. and γ. (not in β. and Cx.).
[2] *heyȝ*, α.
[3] *provende*, Cx.
[4] From β. and Cx.; *urne*, from γ.
[5] *plas*, γ.
[6] *ferthe*, β.
[7] *soster*, γ.
[8] *On*, β. and Cx.
[9] *houses*, β. and Cx.
[10] *fuyry*, β.; *vury*, γ.; *fyry*, Cx.
[11] *vle*, γ.
[12] From β. and γ.

in uxorem filiam Lewelini principis Walliæ tanquam pro finali concordia inter ipsum Lewelinum et avunculum suum Ranulphum comitem Cestrensem.[1] Johannes rex Jerosolimorum venit in Angliam pro succursu Terræ Sanctæ. Magnates Angliæ concesserunt regi Henrico wardas heredum et terrarum suarum, quod [2] fuit initium multorum malorum in Anglia. Et cito post hoc rex Henricus cepit quintum decimum denarium per totam Angliam. Hoc anno primum venerunt fratres [3] Minores in Angliam, biennium ante obitum [4] Francisci.[3] Gregorius nonus [5] post Honorium sedit papa quatuordecim annis. Hic roboravit sententiam excommunicationis contra Fredericum imperatorem.[6] Idcirco imperator comprehendit multos prælatos et duos cardinales qui [7] ad concilium tetenderant.[8] Hic papa fecit fratrem Raymundum compilare quinque libros decretalium ex pluribus epistolis et decretalibus constitutionibus excerptos. Iste quoque papa [per] [9] imperatorem aliquando in urbe obsessus, vidensque Romanos pecunia imperatoris

Gratiæ MCCXXII. Henrici III. V.

Gratiæ MCCXXIV. Henrici III. VII.

---

[1] *Cestriæ*, B. ; *David namque comes genuerat Johannem ex sorore comitis Ranulphi, cui et postmodum in comitatu Johannes successit*, add. C.D.

[2] *quæ*, A.

[3] *Fratres . . . Francisci*] om. C.D.

[4] *sancti*, B.

[5] *undecimus*, A.

[6] *quam Honorius promulgaverat*, add. C.D.

[7] *per mare*, C.D.

[8] *tenderant*, B. ; altered to *tenderunt* in A.

[9] *per*, from A.C.D.

a son Iohn þat wedded Lewelyn his douȝter prince of Wales, as hit were for fynal acord bytwene [him and][1] Lewelyn and his eem Ranulph erle of Chestre.][2] Iohn kyng of Ierusalem cam into Engelond [for socour of þe Holy Lond. Þe lordes of Engelond][3] and[4] graunted kyng Henry þe wardes of heires[5] and of her londes, and þat was begynnynge of moche[6] harm in Engelond; and sone þer after kyng Henry took þe fiftepe[7] peny in all Engelond. Þis ȝere [fyrst][8] come Frere Menoures[9] into Engelond, two ȝere tofore seint Austyn[10] deep. After Honorius þe nynþe Gregory was pope fourtene ȝere. Þis strengþede[11] þe sentence of cursynge aȝenst Frederik þe emperour, [þerefore þe emperour][3] took meny prelates and tweie[12] cardinales þat wente to [þe][3] counsaille. Þis pope made his[13] broþer Reymond [to][14] compile fyve bookes of Decretales, þat were i-gadered of meny constitucioums, pistles, and decretales.[15] Also in a tyme þis pope was byseged of þe emperour in[16] þe citee of Rome, and siȝ þat þe

Trevisa.

---

of Lewelinus prince of Wales, as for a finalle concorde betwene Lewelyn prince of Wales and Ranulphus erle of Chestre, uncle to the seide John. John kynge of Jerusalem come into Ynglonde in this yere for helpe of the Holy Londe, and the noble men of Ynglonde grawntede to þe kynge wardes of theire heires and londes. Whiche grawnte was the begynnynge of moche sorowe, for after that the kynge toke the xv^the^ peny thro alle the londe. Freres Minors come firste into Ynglonde in this yere, by ij. yere afore the dethe of seynte Francisse. Gregorius the ix^the^ succedid Honorius the pope xiiij. yere. This pope roborate the sentence of excommunicacion ageyne Frederyke the emperoure. This Gregory causede Reymunde to compile f. 377 a. v. bookes of the decretalles, excerpte of mony epistoles and decretalle constitucions. This pope segede in the cite of Rome by the emperoure, and perceyvynge the Romanes to be corrupte

MS. Harl. 2261.

---

[1] From β. andCx.; *hym and*, γ.
[2] *Alisaundre . . . Chestre*] om. α., β., γ., and Cx.
[3] From α., β., γ., and Cx.
[4] *and*] om. α., β., and Cx.
[5] *eyres*, β.
[6] *myche*, β.
[7] *fiftenþe*, α., β., and Cx.
[8] From Cx.
[9] *Mynors*, γ.
[10] *Fraunceys his*, α., β., and γ.; *Fraunceys*, Cx.
[11] *stryngþede*, γ.
[12] *twy*, γ.
[13] *his*] om. β.
[14] From β.
[15] *þat were*, repeated here in MS., but om. α., β., and Cx.
[16] *in . . . emperour*] om. α.

corruptos, accepit in manibus capita apostolorum Petri et Pauli, fecit processionem a Lateranensi ecclesia usque ad ecclesiam Sancti Petri, sicque animos Romanorum emollivit. Unde imperator[1] sibi timens longius[2] dis-

Gratiæ MCCXXVIII. Henrici III. XI.

cessit.[3] Stephanus[4] Cantuariensis archiepiscopus obiit, qui bibliam apud Parisium quotavit,[5] libros Regum exposuit, Vitam regis Ricardi dictavit, multaque alia industriæ suæ opera posteris reliquit. Cui successit magnus

Gratiæ MCCXXX. Henrici III. XIII.

ecclesiæ Lincolniensis decanus magister Ricardus [de Wethirsheved.][6] Hoc[7] etiam anno obiit Willelmus Alvernensis egregie litteratus, qui primo fuit cancellarius, deinde Parisiensis episcopus. Hic multa insignia litteraturæ suæ opera reliquit, videlicet De sacramentis,[8] Cur Deus homo, De fide et legibus et [De][9] universo corporali et spirituali. Et[10] Gregorius papa cepit decimam[11] ecclesiarum.[7] Celebrante episcopo Londoniensi in ecclesia Sancti Pauli, facta est tanta nubium densitas, solis obscuritas, cum tonitru et fulgure ac fœtore intolera-

---

[1] *imperator*] om. A.
[2] *longe*, A.
[3] *ab urbe*, C.D.
[4] *Magister Stephanus de Langueton*, C.D.
[5] *cotatavit*, B.
[6] from B.
[7] *Hoc . . . ecclesiarum*] om. C. D.
[8] *sacramentis*] om. B.
[9] from A.
[10] *Et*] Eodem quoque anno, B.
[11] *decimam*] om. B.

Romayns hadde i-fonge mede[1] of þe emperour; þan he toke in his hondes þe hedes of þe aposteles[2] Peter and Paule, and made a processioun from Seint Iohn his chirche þe Lateran to Seint Petres chirche, and so he awelde[3] þe hertes of þe Romayns. Þerefore þe emperour was aferd and wente þennes a fer wey.[4] Stevene þe archbisshop deide; he coted[5] þe Bible[6] at Parys, and marked[7] þe chapitres, and endite[8] kyng Richard his lyf, and lefte after hym meny goode bookes þat he hadde i-made. Þe greet dene[9] of Londoun, maister Richard of Weperisheved,[10] was archebisshop after hym. Also þis ȝere deide William of Alverne, a noble man of lettrure;[11] first he was chaunceler and þan bisshop of Parys; þis lefte after hym meny noble[12] bookes þat he hadde i-made: De sacramentis; Cur Deus homo? De fide et de legibus, et de universo temporali[13] et spirituali. [Gregory toke þe dyme[14] of holy cherche. While þe bisshop of Londoun seide his masse in Seynt Poul his cherche, fil so greet þiknesse of cloudes, derkenes of þe sonne, wiþ ponderynge and liȝtnynge and stenche,[15] þat no man myȝte suffre, so þat þe peple went

Trevisa.

---

with money of the emperoure, toke the hedes of Petyr and of Paule in his hondes, made a procession from the churche Lateranense unto the churche of Seynte Petyr, and by that the hertes of the Romanes returnede to hym, and the emperoure departede from the cite. Steven archebischop of Cawnterbery diede in this yere, whiche did connotate the Bible at Paryse, expownede the bookes of Regum, dytede the lyfe of kynge Ricardus, and mony other noble werkes whom Ricardus Wechinschevede.[16] William Alvernense, a noble man in connynge, diede in this yere, levynge to his successours mony noble werkes, as Of the sacramentes, Cur Deus homo, and mony other commendable tretys. The bischoppe of London seyenge masse in the churche of Seynte Paule at London, so grete derkenesse of the sonne was in þat tyme, with a stynche intollerable, thundre

MS. Harl. 2261.

---

[1] *myde*, γ.
[2] *apostlis*, β.
[3] *awelded*, β. and Cx.
[4] *a ferre wey*, Cx.
[5] *quoted*, β. and Cx.; *quotede*, γ.
[6] *Bybyl*, γ.
[7] *merkede*, γ.
[8] *endited*, β. and Cx.; *enditede*, γ.
[9] *deen*, β.
[10] *Wepereshed*, β.; *Withershed*, Cx.
[11] *a lettred man*, Cx.
[12] *noble*] om. Cx.
[13] *corporali*, Cx.
[14] *dysme*, γ.
[15] *stynch*, γ.
[16] Sic in MS.

bili, ut populus exiret relicto ibidem episcopo cum suo ministro. Hoc[1] anno rex Henricus concessit Angligenis multas libertates, sed accepit ab eis quintamdecimam partem bonorum suorum, ut recuperaret terras transmarinas quas rex Franciæ occupaverat tempore regis Johannis. Unde cum valida manu transnavigans parum[2] profecit.[1] [3] Willelmus de Brewes inculpatus pro uxore Lewelini principis Walliæ suspenditur,[4] incarceratur ;[5] unde magna discordia inter regem et Lewelinum orta est. Ranulphus comes Cestrensis Lincolniensis, Huntyndoniæ obiit apud Wallingford,[6] sepultus est apud Cestriam in capitulo monachorum cum progenitoribus suis. Cui successit Johannes Scoticus, filius sororis suæ. Iste nempe Ranulphus sine liberis decedens quatuor habuit[7] sorores, quarum senior Matilda nupsit David comiti Scotiæ,[8] de quibus processit Johannes iste ;[9] secunda[10] Mabilia nupsit comiti de Arundel ; tertia, Agnes nupsit comiti Derbeyæ, Willelmo de Ferrariis ; quarta, Hawysia nupsit comiti Wyntoniæ,

Gratiæ MCCXXXII. Henrici III. XV.

---

[1] *Hoc . . . profecit*] om. C.D.
[2] *parum*] om. B.
[3] *Eo quoque anno*, C.D.
[4] *et mulier*, C.D.
[5] *incarceratur et suspenditur*, B.
[6] *Walingforth*, A.
[7] *habens*, B.
[8] *Huntingdoniæ, qui post factus est rex Scotiæ*, A.
[9] *hæres Ranulphi prædicti*, C.D.
[10] *soror*, B.

out of þe cherche and left þe bisshop þere wiþ his servaunt[1] alone. Þis ȝere kyng Henry grauntede Englische men meny fredoms,[2] bote he took of hem þe fiftenþe[3] deel of here goodes and catel,[4] forto wynne londes byȝonde see þat þe kyng of Fraunce hadde occupied in kyng Henryes tyme; and so he seillede[5] over see wiþ greet strengþe, and dede litel profyȝt. Wiliam de Brewes blamed for Lewelyn prince of Wales his wyf, and prisoned and an[6] honged. Þerfore fyl greet stryf bytwene the kyng and Lewelyn.][7] Ranulph erle of Chestre, of Lyncolne, and of[8] Huntyngdone deide at Walyngford, and was i-buried at Chestre in þe chapitre of monkes wiþ his fforfadres. His suster sone Iohn Scot was eorle after hym. This Ranulph deide wiþ oute children, and hadde foure sustres: the eldest of hem,[9] Molde, was i-maried to David an erle of Scotlond; of hem com þis[10] Iohn Scott. Þe secounde suster Mabily[11] was i-maried to þe eorle of Arundel. Þe pridde Agneys[12] to þe erle of Derby, William de Ferrars. Þe fourþe Hawys was maried to þe eorle of Wyn- REVISA.

---

and lyȝhtnynge, that peple departede, levynge the bischop þer and his ministre. Kynge Henry did grawnte in this yere grete libertes and mony to men of Ynglonde, but he toke from theym the xv^the^ parte of theire goodes to recure his londes over see; whiche goynge over with a grete hoste profite but lytelle þer. William de Brwes put in blame for the wife of Lewelyn prince of Wales, was imprisonede and hongede; for whiche thynge grete discorde was movede betwene the kynge and the seide prince of Wales. Ranulphus erle of Chestre, of Lyncolne and of Huntyndon, dyede at Walyngeforde, and was beryede at Chestre in the chapitre of monkes with his progenitors, whom John Scotte succedid, sonne of his suster. This Ranulphus hade iiij. susters: Matilda the eldeste of þeym was maryede to David erle of Scottelonde, of whom the seide John come. Mabily the secunde sustyr was mariede to þe erle of Arundell. Agnes the thrydde suster was maryede to the erle of Derby. Hawisia the iiij. suster was maryede to Robert Quincy, erle of MS. HARL. 2261.

---

[1] *servauntes*, Cx.
[2] *vredoms*, γ.
[3] *fiftebe*, β.
[4] *catail*, Cx.
[5] *sayled*, Cx.
[6] *an*] om. Cx.
[7] From α., β., γ., and Cx.
[8] *of*] om. α.
[9] *ham*, γ.
[10] *þis*] om. Cx.
[11] *Mablye*, β. and Cx.
[12] *Agnes*, γ.

Gratiæ MCCXXIII. Henrici III. XVI. Roberto Quinci.[1] Rex Henricus statuit hospitale Sancti Johannis extra[2] portam Oxoniæ, ponens primum lapidem. Defuncto dudum Ricardo Cantuariensi archiepiscopo successit sanctus Edmundus Abendoniensis tunc Salisburiensis thesaurarius, qui sub octavo præsulatus sui anno obiit in transmarinis partibus, et sepultus est apud Pontiniacum in Burgundia, ac postmodo sub septimo anno translatus est favente papa Innocentio quarto.[3]

Gratiæ MCCXXIV. Henrici III. XVII.

Cap. XXXV.

[*Henricus tertius, rex Angliæ. De sancto Edmundo archiepiscopo Cantuariensi.*]

Gratiæ MCCXXXV. Henrici III. XVIII. Fredericus imperator duxit in uxorem Isabellam sororem regis Henrici. Quo anno Judæi adducti sunt coram rege apud Westmonasterium pro eo quod puerum quendam apud Norwicum per annum[4] absconderant, et post circumcisionem pueri eum[5] crucifixisse proposuerant.[6] Rex Henricus desponsavit Alienoram filiam comitis Provinciæ. Johannes Scoticus, comes Ces-

Gratiæ MCCXXXVI Henrici III. XIX.

---

[1] *Quincy*, A. ; om. B.
[2] *juxta*, A.
[3] *Hujus Eadmundi vita anno defunctionis suæ plenius est descripta*, add. C.D.
[4] *per annum*] om. A.
[5] *pueri eum*] om. B.
[6] *proposuerunt*, B. ; *disposuerant*, C.D.

chestre Robert [Quyncy.[1] Kyng Henry made þe hospital of Seint Iohn wiþ out þe est ȝate at Oxenforde, and leide þe firste stoon. Whanne Richard archebisshop][2] of Cauntirbury was dede, seynt Edmond of Abingdon[3] was archebisshop after hym, that was þo tresorer of Salisbury: he deyde byȝonde see þe eyȝteþe[4] ȝere of his bisshopriche,[5] [and was buryed at Pountney[6] in Burgoyn,[7] and][8] þe seveneþe ȝere þerafter he was translated by favour of þe fourþe Innocentius þe pope. TREVISA.

Capitulum tricesimum sextum.[9]

FREDERIK þe emperour wedded Isabel, kyng Henries suster. Þat ȝere þe Iewes were i-brouȝt tofore þe kyng at Westmynstre,[10] for þey hadde i-hyd[11] a child al a ȝere in Norþwhiche,[12] and after þat þei hadde circumcided[13] hym þey caste forto naile hym on[14] þe cros. Kyng Henry wedded þe corles douȝter of þe[15] Province.

Wynchestre. Kynge Henricus ordeynede an hospitalle off Seynte John withowte the este ȝate of Oxenforde, puttynge the firste[16] in hit. Ricardus archebischop of Cawnterbery dedde but late, seynte Edmunde of Abendon, that tyme treasurer of Salisbery, was successour to hym, whiche diede in the costes over see in the viijᵗʰᵉ yere of his governayle, and was beriede at Pontiniacus in Burguigne, and translate in the viijᵗʰᵉ yere folowynge by the favor of the pope Innocencius þe iiijᵗʰᵉ. MS. HARL. 2261. f. 377 b.

Capitulum tricesimum quintum.

FREDERICUS the emperoure toke to his wife Isabell, suster of kynge Henricus; in whiche yere Iewes were brouȝhte afore the kynge at Westmynstre, in that thei hade hidde a childe at Norwiche by oon yere, and hade purposede to have crucifiede hit after þe circumcision of hit. Kynge Henricus mariede Alienor doȝhter of the erle Provincense. Iohn Scotte, erle of

---

[1] *Quynycy*, Cx.
[2] From α., β., and Cx.
[3] *Abendon*, Cx.
[4] *eiȝteneþe*, β.; *eyghteneth*, Cx.
[5] *bisshopriche*] age, α.
[6] *Pontney*, β. and γ.
[7] *Ponteneye in Burguyn*, α.
[8] From α., β., γ., and Cx.
[9] 35, Cx.
[10] *Westmestre*, Cx.
[11] *y-hud*, γ.
[12] *Norwich* β.
[13] *circumcided*, from α., β., and Cx.; *i-crucified*, MS.
[14] *on*] to, β. and Cx.
[15] þe] om. α., β., γ., and Cx.
[16] Sic in MS.

Gratiæ MCCXXXVII. Henrici III. XX.

triæ et Huntyndoniæ, obiit sine liberis apud Darenhale[1] vii. idus Junii, et sepultus est[2] apud Cestriam. Verum quia terra sua regali gaudebat prærogativa, comitatus ejus ad manus regias devenit, datis aliis terris[3] heredibus suis sororibus in compensationem,[4] ne tam præclara dominatio inter colos fœminarum dividi contingeret. Habuit nempe iste Johannes quatuor sorores, scilicet, Margaretam, quæ nubens Alano de Galeway genuit Devergoil[5] puellam, de qua nupta Johanni de Baillol processit Johannes Baillol[6] rex Scotiæ. Altera soror Isabella nupsit Roberto de Bruz[7] Tertia soror, Matilda, obiit sine liberis. Quarta soror, Alda,[8] nupsit Henrico de Hastinges. Eo quoque anno venit Ottobonus[9] legatus in Angliam, qui statuit multa salubria ad ecclesiæ utilitatem. Quo per Oxoniam transeunte magnus conflictus factus est inter scholares et quosdam de suis,[10] ita ut uno suorum interfecto ipse Ottobonus in turri ecclesiæ de Oseney usque ad vesperam obsessus sit, et vix per multos de regiis ministris ab Abendonia venientes liberari posset. Id-

---

[1] *Darnhale*, B.

[2] *cum progenitoribus suis in capitulo monachorum Cestriæ. Verum quia sine liberis decessit et terra ejus*, &c, C.D.

[3] *suis*, B.

[4] *in compensationem*] om. A.; in allocacionem, C.D.

[5] *Devergoille*, B.

[6] *quondam*, add. C.D.

[7] *Bruez*, B.

[8] *Alda*] om. B.

[9] *Ottobonus*] from B.; Otto, MS.

[10] *familia sua*, A.B.

Iohn Scot, erle of Chestre [and of Hontyngdon, deide wiþ oute children[1] at Derenhale þe sevenþe day of Iune, and was y-buryed at Chestre]; [2] but for his londes hadde prerogatyf of realte, his erldom fil to þe kyng his hond, and his sustres þat were his heyres [3] hadde oþer londes þerfore in compensacioun, for so faire lordschip schulde not be deled bytwene distaves of [4] wommen. Þis Iohn hadde foure sustres;[5] oon of hem heet[6] Mergrete,[7] and [8] was i-wedded [to Aleyn[9] of] [10] Galewey,[11] and baar þe maide Devergoile; þis maide was i-wedded to Iohn Baillol, and baar Iohn Baillol kyng of Scotlond; þe oþer suster Isabel was i-maried to Robert de Brus;[12] þe þridde suster Mold deide wiþ oute children; þe fourþe suster Alda was maried to Henry de Hastynges. Also þis ȝere Ottobonus [13] þe legat cam into Engelond, and ordeyned meny goode ordynaunces for the profit of holy chirche. While he passed þoruȝ Oxenforde was [greet] [2] fiȝtinge bytwene [the] [14] scolers and som of his meyne, so þat oon of his men was i-slawe, and he hymself Ottobon [15] was byseged in þe belfray at Osenay [16] tofore [17] evesong tyme, and myȝt unneþe be delyvered by meny of þe kynges mynistres [18] þat come þider from Abingdoun.[19] Þan

Trevisa.

Chestre and of Huntyngdon, diede at Sarenhall the viij[the] idus of the monethe of Junius; the erledome of whom returnede to the kynge insomoche that the seide cuntre enjoyede a regalle prerogatife, oþer londes ȝiffen to the iiij. sustres, leste so noble a londe scholde have bene divided amonge the rockes of women. Otto the legate come into Ynglonde in this yere, whiche ordeynede mony noble constitutions to the utilite of the churche; whiche commynge thro Oxforde, a grete conflicte was made betwene the scolers and his men, insomoche that, oon of his men sleyne, he was segede in the towre of Oseney unto eve, and he myȝhte unnethe be delyverede by ministres of the kynge commynge from Abendon. Þis legate

MS. Harl. 2261.

---

[1] *chyldern*, γ.
[2] From α., β., γ., and Cx.
[3] *eyres*, β.
[4] *and*, α.
[5] *voure sosters*, γ.
[6] *heet*] om. β.
[7] *Margarete*, α.; *Margaret*, γ. and Cx.
[8] *and*] om. α. and β.
[9] *Alayn*, γ.
[10] From α. β., and Cx.; *into*, MS.
[11] *Galwey*, γ.
[12] *Bruys*, α., β., and Cx.; *Bruiȝ*, γ.
[13] *Octobonus*, β., γ., and Cx., et infra.
[14] From Cx.
[15] *Octobon*, β.
[16] *Oseney*, γ., et infra.
[17] *forto*, α. and β.; *till*, Cx.
[18] *meyne*, α.
[19] *Abendoun*, α.

circo usque Walingford adductus malefactores[1] excommunicavit, studium universitatis suspendit,[2] donec abbas et canonici[3] de Oseneya[4] una cum magistris Oxoniæ regentibus, discalceati et[5] discincti per mediam[6] Londoniam incedentes, apud hospitium legati veniam vix haberent.[7] Eodem anno quidam pseudo-clericus, infatuatum se simulans, secreta regiæ curiæ exploravit, cameram regis Henrici apud Wodestok et[8] fenestram ingressus est ut regem interficeret; sed ad clamorem cujusdam sanctæ mulieris interceptus est, et apud Conventreiam[9] distractus et suspensus.[10] Natus est Edwardus primogenitus regis Henrici, apud Westimonasterium, quem baptizavit Otho legatus, et confirmavit[11] Edmundus archiepiscopus. Hoc anno[12] gens Tartarorum, subactis orientalibus provinciis, in duo se agmina diviserunt, quarum una pars Hungariam et Pannoniam ita attrivit ut viri terræ illius carnes[13] filiorum suorum comederent,[14] et[15] plerique pulverem cujusdam montis velut farinam scalperent et comederent.[15] Celestinus

Gratiæ MCCXXXIX. Henrici III. XXII.

Gratiæ MCCXL. Henrici III. XXIII.

[1] *illos*, C.D.
[2] *interdixit*, C.D.
[3] *conventus*, B.
[4] *Osyneia*, A.
[5] *et*] om. B.
[6] *civitatem*, B.
[7] C.D. add: "Tandem quarto adventus sui anno ab Anglia recedens captus est in mari per ministros Frederici imperatoris."
[8] *per*, B.
[9] *equis est*, add. C.D.
[10] *et suspensus*] om. A.B.
[11] *sanctus*, add. C.D.
[12] *Reg̃* (sic), B.
[13] *carnem*, B.
[14] *comederunt*, A.
[15] *et . . . comederent*] om. B.

he was i-brouȝt at Walyngford, and cursede þe mysdoers, and suspended þe mysdoers and[1] þe study of Oxenforde, forto þe abbot and þe chanouns of Osenay and maistres regentes of Oxenforde com barefoot and barelegged and ungerd[2] þorugh[3] Londoun to þe legat his in,[4] and had forȝifnes unneþe. Þat ȝere a false clerk feyned hym selfe mad, and aspied þe privete of þe kynges court, and cam by a wyndow into þe kynges chambre at Wodestoke forto slee þe kyng; but by þe cry of an holy womman he was i-take and to-drawe at Coventre. Edward, kyng Henry his eldest sone, is i-bore at Westmynstre; hym fulled[5] Ottobon[6] þe legat, and confermed Edmond archebisshop. Þis ȝere þe kynges of Tarters whan þey had overcome þe est londes, þey[7] departede hem in tweie[8] companyes, þe oon party þerof destroyed so Hungery and Pannonia þat men of þat lond[9] ete þe flesche of her owne children, and meny scrapede of þe pouder[10] of an hil[11] and ete it as it were mele. After þe nynþe Gregory, þe ferþe Celestinus was pope

Trevisa.

---

brouȝhte to Walyngeforde excommunicate those malefactors, and suspende the universite of Oxonforde untille thabbot and chanons of Oseney with regentes of the universite, goynge unschoede and ungyrde thro the myddes of London unto his ynne, cowthe unnethe have forȝifnesse. A fals clerke fenynge hym selfe madde, inquiredc the secrete places off the kynges courte, and entrede the chambre of kynge Henricus at Wodestoke in the nyȝhte, and wolde have sleyne hym. But the seide clerke was taken at the crye of an hooly woman, and drawen at Coventre. Edwarde the firste, son of kynge Henricus, was borne at Westmynstre in this yere, whom Otho the legate baptiȝede, and confermede seynte Edmund archebischoppe of Cawnterbery. The kynges of the Tartarous havynge the provinces of the este subduede to theym, divided theire peple into ij. hostes: oon of the seide hostes attrivede so soore Hungary and Pannonye, that men of those costes were feyne to eite theire awne childer. Celestinus the iiij[the] succedid Gre-

MS. Harl. 2261.

f. 378 a.

---

[1] þe *mysdoers and*] om. β. and Cx.
[2] *ungurd*, γ.
[3] *ungirde þurȝ*, β.
[4] *his in*] om. Cx.; *yn*, α.
[5] *cristned*, Cx.
[6] *folled Octobon*, β.; *vollede Octobon*, γ.
[7] *hy*, γ.
[8] *twy*, γ.
[9] *the countray*, Cx.
[10] *poubere*, α.
[11] *hulle*, γ.

quartus post Gregorium nonum sedit papa mense[1] uno et vacavit sedes per annum.[2] Post quem successit Innocentius quartus, qui sedit xi. annis, mensibus vi.[3] Allata est in Franciam corona spinea Salvatoris.[4] Ottobonus[5] recedens ab Anglia captus est in mari ab hominibus imperatoris. Rex Henricus apud Cestriam intravit Walliam, et apud Ruthelan princeps David[6] venit ad eum.[7] *De sancto Edmundo archiepiscopo.*[8] Hoc anno obiit sanctus Edmundus apud[9] Pontiniacum. Cui successit in archiepiscopatum Bonefacius. Hic itaque Edmundus apud Abendoniam juxta Oxoniam[10] oriundus, parentes habuit religiosos, videlicet patrem Edwardum cognomento Divitem, qui de consensu conjugis apud[11] Evesham vitam duxit regularem, et matrem Mabiliam, qui cilicio[12] et lorica jugiter usa in carne contra carnem militavit.[13] Natus est[14] Edmundus ab omni contagione infantili mundus; per totum diem sancti Edmundi regis et martyris, quo[15] prodiit in lucem, a

Gratiæ MCCXLI. Henrici III. XXIIII.

---

[1] *anno*, B.

[2] *anno uno*, B.

[3] *Post . . . vi.*] om. C.D.

[4] C.D. insert: "Ricardus comes "Cornubiæ, frater regis Henrici, "profectus est Jerosolimam."

[5] *Ottobonus*] from B.; Otto, MS.

[6] *filius Lewellini*, C.D.

[7] *et posuit se in gratiam regis apud Rutholan*, C.D.

[8] A.B. omit heading.

[9] *in transmarinis partibus; cujus parentes censu quidem sæculari mediocres, sed morum divitiis fuerunt præpotentes. Pater ejus Edwardus, cognomento Dives*, &c.—D.

[10] *juxta Oxoniam*] om. A.

[11] *in monasterio de*, C.D.

[12] *cilicio*, from B.; *cicilio*, MS.

[13] *duris disciplinæ legibus motus tyrannicos reprimens prœliique plusquam civilis aut intestini certamen egressa contra semetipsam primæ acies ordinavit, nam in pugna spirituali materialibus utebatur armis, cilicio scilicet et lorica, quibus illa pariter vinceretur et vinceret, se semper armatam reperiens quam semper diabolum inermem reperiret. Ex tam piis itaque parentibus in oppido Abendoniæ natus est Eadmundus fœditatis humanæ contagione ortu tam mundus ut si syndone circumdaretur nullam contraxisset maculam continens de contento. Jacebat igitur puer Eadmundus a mane diei sancti Edmundi.*—C.D.

[14] *igitur*, A.B.

[15] *qua*, B.

oon monþe, and [the see][1] was voyde oon ȝere; and after hym þe fourþe Innocent was pope enlevene ȝere and sixe monþes. Oure Savyour[2] his crowne of þornes is i-brouȝt into Fraunce. Ottobon[3] went out of Engelond, and was i-take in þe see of þe emperoures men. At Chestre kyng Henry entrede into Wales, and David þe prince cam to hym at Ruthelan.[4] Þat ȝere deide seynt Edmond of[5] Pountenay[6] and Bonefas was archebisshop after hym. Þis Edmond was i-bore at Abyngdoun[7] bysides Oxenforde, and had holy fadir and moder; his fader[8] heet Edward, Riche by his surname; by assent of his wif he hadde[9] relygious lyf at Evesham. His moder heet Mabily,[10] sche[11] usede þe heire[12] and an hauber-geoun,[13] and fauȝt in her flesche and[14] aȝenst her[15] flesche. Edmond was i-bore clene of al wem of childhode, a[16] seynt Edmondes day þe kyng and martir, and lay al þat day fro þe

TREVISA.

---

gory oon monethe, whom Innocencius the iiij^{the} succedid xj. yere and vj. monethes. The crowne of thorne of oure Savioure was brouȝhte in this tyme into Fraunce. Otho the legate departede from Ynglonde, was taken on the see by men longynge to the emperoure. Seynte Edmund dyede at Soysy, whom Bonefacius succedid. This Edmund, borne at Abendon nye to Oxenforde, hade a religious fader and moder. The fader of whom was callede Edwarde Ryche, lyvenge in reguler observaunce afterwarde at Evisham by consente of his wife. And the name of his moder was Mabily, a woman devoute in the servyce of Allemyȝhty God. This holy seynte Edmund, clene from every filthy contagion, borne in the feste of seynte Edmunde kynge and martir, lay as dedde by alle that day, inso-

MS. HARL. 2261.

---

[1] From Cx.; *þe se*, β. and γ.; *þis*, MS.
[2] *saveoure*, α.
[3] *Octobon*, β.
[4] *Ruthland*, Cx.
[5] *at*, α. and β.
[6] *Pontney*, β.
[7] *Abendon*, Cx.
[8] *vader*, γ., bis.
[9] *ladde*, α., β., and γ.; *lad*, Cx.
[10] *Mablie*, β.; *Mabili*, γ.
[11] *heo*, β.
[12] *here*, γ.
[13] *haberion*, β.; *the heer and an haberion*, Cx.
[14] *and*] om. β. and Cx.
[15] *the*, α., β., and Cx.
[16] *on*, Cx.

mane usque ad vesperam jacuit quasi exanimis, ita quod astantes eum sepulturæ demandassent, nisi consilium matris obstitisset. Vocatus est autem[1] Edmundus, quod[2] sonat felicem et mundum,[3] eo quod die sancti Edmundi natus sit,[4] et quia dum mater ex eo gravida ad tumbam sancti Edmundi peregrina exoraret, vitalis spiritus primicias in eo[5] deprehendit.[6] Hic sensus suos ab initio per spiritualis vitæ exercitia assuefecit in boni studium, ut prævalente postmodum molita consuetudine[7] vitaret velut naturaliter omne malum.[8] Sed quamvis singulis virtutum floribus coruscaret, incorruptionem tamen, quæ proximum facit Deo, præelegit. In cujus signum beatæ Virgini se devovit. Ad matris consilium cilicio usus, per sextas ferias pane et aqua jejunavit. Diebus Dominicis et festivis antequam comederet psalterium ex integro[9] dicere consuevit. In primis itaque annis dum grammaticæ intenderet, capitis dolore ita acriter[10] vexatus est,[11] ut in litteris proficere deinceps desperaret.[12] Cui mater ait: " Fili, ut arbitror,[13] laica " et inordinata quam gestas tonsura doloris tui est

[1] *puer*, C.D.

[2] *quod . . . mundum*] om. C.D.

[3] *felix et immundus*, B.

[4] *sit*] om. B.

[5] *prole primitus*, C.D.

[6] *Hoc quoque nomen ex duobus integris compositum Anglice et Latine interpretatum sonat felicem et mundum. Ex nominis impositione accepit futuræ prognosticum temperantiæ et eximiæ præsagium castitatis sensuum namque primitias Deo dedicans, ita ipsos ne sæculi virus imbiberent per spiritualis*, &c. C.D.

[7] *quæ altera est natura, avitaret velut*, add. C.D.

[8] C.D. add: " Unde quibusdam " tabulis vacuis habitum ex fre- " quenti bene agere exquisitum in " quasdam disponabiles ideas per " quandam impressionem ymagi- " nariam studuit figurare, ac si in- " nocentem fundamento superædi- " ficavit ardua virtututum palacia, " ut cresceret in templum sanctum " Domino ædificatio per spiritum " inchoata. Eratque talis ut non " prius solum faceret quam doceret, " sed et prius faceret quam audiret. " Et quamvis virtutum floribus " gratiam cordis Deo præparasset " hospitium incorruptionem," &c.

[9] *ex integro*] om. B.

[10] *ita acriter*] om. B.

[11] *vexatus est*] om. A.

[12] *desperavit*, A.

[13] *arbitror ut*, A.

morwe tide to eve as þey he were a[1] swowe,[2] so þat þey þat were þere wolde have i-buried hym ne hadde[3] his moder wiþ seide hem. He was i-cleped Edmond, þat is, gracious and clene, for he was i-bore in[4] a seynt Edmondis day, and also for while his moder ȝede[5] with childe wiþ hym sche wente a pilgrimage and bad here bedes at seynt Edmond his tombe,[6] and þere sche was firste war þat þe child was on[7] lyve. Fróm his [firste][8] childhod þis used his wittes to þe studie of goodnes by occupacioun of gostliche lyvynge, for good usage and custom schulde afterward have þe maistrie and voyde alle wikked dedes; þey he were schynynge wiþ alle þe floures of vertues, ȝit he chees þe clennes þat makeþ a man be next to[9] God. In token þerof he made his avow to Oure Lady; by his moder counsaille he used þe heyre,[10] and faste[11] every Friday to[12] brede and [to][13] water, and used every Sonday and holy day[14] to seie al the Sawter or[15] he wolde dyne. In his childhood he lernede[16] his gramere and was so[17] disesed wiþ þe heed ache þat he hadde non hope to spede afterward in lore. His moder spak to hym and seide, "Sone, I trowe þat þe lewed-"nesse[18] and unsemeliche tonsure[19] þat þou usest is cause of þy "woo:" [þanne afterward he usede tonsure as[20] a clerk, and was hool of al þat woo].[21] In a tyme he walked by hym

Trevisa.

---

moche that peple stondynge by wolde have beryede hym, but that his moder commaunded the contrary. This hooly bischoppe was callede Edmunde, whiche sowndethe happy and clene, in that he was borne in the feste of seynte Edmunde, and also for cause that his moder beynge at the tumbe of seynte Edmunde perceyvede firste the lyfe of hym in here wombe. Whiche encreasynge in vertu and connynge, usede to say the Sawter complete every Sonneday or he did taste eny meyte, and fastynge with brede and water in every Fryday by the cownsaile of his moder. This floure of Criste immarcessible, beynge after that at the universite of Oxenforde, and walkynge in a

MS. Harl. 2261.

---

[1] *y*, α.
[2] *swowne*, Cx.
[3] *nadde*, β.
[4] *on*, Cx.
[5] *ȝede*] was, β. and Cx.
[6] *tumbe*, γ.
[7] *on*] a, γ.
[8] From α., β., and Cx.; *vurste*, γ.
[9] *to*] om. β. and γ.
[10] *heer*, β. and Cx.
[11] *fasted*, Cx.
[12] *with*, Cx.
[13] From α., β., and γ.
[14] *dayes*, α.
[15] *ar*, γ.
[16] *lurnde*, γ.
[17] *so*] om. α.
[18] *lewed*, α.; *lewd*, Cx.
[19] *tonsour*, Cx.
[20] *as*] of, Cx.
[21] From α., β., γ., and Cx.

" causa." Unde et postmodum clericaliter attonsus doloris incommodo caruit. Dum etiam in prato quodam Oxoniæ vicino spatiandi causa seorsum iret, apparuit ei puer speciosus sic inquiens; "Salve, dilecte mi![1] miror " quod me non agnoscis, præsertim cum ad latus tuum " in scholis et alibi jugiter assistam. Quod ergo videris " in facie mea scriptum, hoc fronti tuæ singulis noctibus " imprime." Erat autem scriptum, "Jesus Nazarenus, " rex Judæorum."[2] Et tunc didicit dominicæ passionis memoriam jugiter recolere.[3] Quam dum semel ob futuram lectionem prætermitteret,[4] irrumpente aurora antiquus hostis ne se signare posset utramque sibi manum alligavit; sed ipso in spiritu orante, decidit hostis ab eo inter parietem et lectum; quem dum per aspersionem[5] sanguinis[6] Christi adjurasset[7] ut sibi diceret per quid plus arceri posset, respondit, "Per id quod modo nomi- " nasti." Alia vice dum hanc orationem,[8] *O beata et intemerata*, dicere omisisset, beatus Johannes[9] Evange-

---

[1] *mi*] om. B.

[2] *Hoc quidem titulo Eadmundus contra mortem subitam et contra incursiones hostiles jugiter se munivit. Et extunc duxit in consuetudinem qualibet hora diei et noctis aliqua dominicæ passionis insignia meditando recolere*, C.D.

[3] C.D. add: " Unde contigit quod " die quadam circa lectionem cras- " tinam prævidendam præpeditus " nocte sequente absque ulla domi- " nicæ passionis recordatione du- " cebat insompnem. Tandem circa " auroram irrumpente dormiendi " affectu præelegit magis sopori " satisfacere quam solitæ medita- " cioni inservire. Et ecce apparet " antiquus hostis utramque manus " ejus alligans ne se signare posset. " Sed Eadmundo in spiritu orante " devictus hostis cecidit inter pa- " rietem et lectum. Quem per " guttura stringens vir Dei adjura- " vit in virtute aspersionis san- " guinis Christi ut ei diceret in " quo eum plus arcere possit. At " ille. Per id quod modo nomi- " nasti."

[4] *dimitteret*, B.

[5] *asperationem*, B.

[6] *Jesu*, B.

[7] *dejurasset*, B.

[8] *quamdam beatæ Mariæ et Johannis Evangelistæ prætitulata dicere*, C.D.

[9] *Johannes*] om. B.

self in a mede bysides Oxenforde, and a faire child appered to hym and seide, "Heyl,[1] my leef,[2] I[3] wondre þat þou "knowest me nou3t, and nameliche while I am alwey by þy "[side][4] in scole and in oþer places;[5] þerfore what þou "sixt[6] in my forheede i-wrete, prynte it everiche ny3t in "þyn owne forheed."[7] Þe writynge was "Iesus Nazarenus rex Iudeorum," þat is, "Iesus of Nazareth kyng of Iewes:" þerafter he lerned to have oure[8] Lordes passioun alwey in [his][4] mynde. Ones for besynesse of a lessoun þat he moste rede he for3at it, þan whan þe day gan to spring þe olde enemy bonde[9] faste his[10] hondes for he schulde nou3t blesse hym self, and he prayde in his herte, and þe enemy fil doun from hym bytwene þe bed and þe wal, and he coniured hym by þe schedynge of Goddis blood þat he schulde telle wherwiþ he my3te be moste i-chastede: "Wiþ þat þou hast now i-"nempned," quod þe fend.[11] Anoþer tyme he hadde for3ete to say[12] his[13] orisoun, "[O][14] beata et intemerata," and seynt Trevisa.

---

mede nye to the universite, a beawtuous childe apperede to hym, seyenge, "Hayle, my wellebelovede, I have mervayle "that thow knowes not me, specially sithe that y am nye "to thy syde in scoles and other places. Enprynte the "wrytenge in my forehedde in thy forehedde and mynde "every ny3hte;" in whom this wrytynge was contenede, "Iesus "Nazarenus, Rex Iudeorum." After that tyme he hade grete remembraunce of the passion of Criste, but hit happede seynte Edmunde to forgete that impression in oon ny3hte by studyenge for an ordinary to be redde in the morowe foloynge, and in the seide morowe the develle, enemy to man, hade bownde hym so that he cowthe not blisse hym. But this hooly man preyenge in mynde, the develle felle downe bytwene his bedde and the walle, whom he adjurede by the hooly bloode of Criste that he scholde expresse by what thynge he my3hte be convicte f. 378 b. moste rathe. And then the develle seide by the precious bloode of Criste. Also seynte Edmunde forgetynge to say the preyer, "O beata et intemerata," seynte Iohn Evangeliste MS. Harl. 2261.

---

[1] *hayl*, α., β., and Cx.
[2] *luf*, γ.
[3] *I*] om. α.
[4] From α., β., γ., and Cx.
[5] *plas*, γ.
[6] *secst*, β. and Cx.; *suxt*, γ.
[7] *vorhed*, γ.
[8] *ur*, γ.
[9] *boond*, β.
[10] *bond vast boþe hys*, γ.
[11] *vend*, γ.
[12] *sygge*, γ.
[13] *þis*, α. and Cx.
[14] From β. and γ.

lista in somnis[1] apparens comminatus [est][2] cum ferula percutere. At[3] quia, teste Scriptura, qui modica contemnit[4] paulatim decidit,[5] ipse de venialibus per confessionem quotidie se purgavit. Instigante tandem antiquo hoste, filia hospitæ suæ non solum signis et nutibus sed etiam verbis beatum Edmundum ausa est[6] ad illicita attemptare, nec destitit donec ad cameram beati viri veniens exspoliata flagellaretur, et sic pruritum omnem deponeret.[7] Et cum hostis per puellam non proficeret, aggreditur Edmundum per matronam. Cujus munuscula dum sine mariti conscientia recipere noluisset, verecundatam sic delusit. At quamvis in sacris non[8] promotus, factus tamen magister in artibus, quotidie missam audire, horas[9] dicere antequam legeret consuevit, quod et scholaribus suis profuit, dum eos missas audire sic edocuit. Pecuniam a scholaribus acceptam in fenestra[10] posuit,[11] dicens, "Pulvis pulveri, cinis cineri;" quæ sæpe a sociis joco vel[12] a furibus clanculo asportabatur. Tandem cum arithmeticam cursim legeret, apparuit ei in somnis mater sua dudum mortua, inquirens

---

[1] *ei*, add B.

[2] *est*] from B.

[3] *Ast quamvis in nullo letali sibi esset conscius, in hoc tamen se justificatum credere non est ausus, sed recolens quod qui modica*, &c., C.D.

[4] *spernit*, B.

[5] *decidet*, A.; *defluet*, B.

[6] *ausa est*] om. B.

[7] *at cum a nocendi studio nunquam pervicacis hostis quiescit astucia quin, licet semel devincatur, victorem tamen aggreditur certamine redivivo. Cumque per puellam non posset, per Margaretam quandam donaria offerentem quasi sub obsequii velamine conatus est Eadmundum supplantare, sed ille sine mariti conscientia nihil recipere volens verecundiam sic delusit. Et quamvis non esset*, &c., C.D.

[8] *fuisset*, A.B

[9] *-que*, B.

[10] *in fenestra*] om. B.

[11] *pulvere operiens et sic dicens, Terra terræ et pulvis pulveri merito debet commendari unde sæpe a sociis*, &c., C.D.

[12] *vel*] om. A.

Iohn þe Evangelist appered to hym in his slepe, and manassede[1] hym to smyte wiþ a pamere.[2] And for holy writ seiþ þat he [þat][3] receiþ nouȝt of þe smale falleþ awey litel [and litel],[4] he wolde everiche day schryve hym and clense hym of venial synnes. By entisynge of þe olde enemy, his oost his douȝter nouȝt onliche with signes and bekkes, but also wiþ wordes auntrede[5] her to tempte seynt Edmond forto do amys, and wolde nouȝt cese or heo[6] came to þe holy man his chambre, and was i-stripte and i-scourged, and so sche putte[7] of her yechynge.[8] But[9] whanne þe enemy myȝte nouȝt spede by þe wenche, he auntrede[5] by þe wyf to assaile Edmond, but Edmond wolde nouȝt fonge her ȝiftes wiþ oute leve of þe housbonde, and putte her of so aschamed, and þey he were nouȝt infra sacros he was a maister of aart,[10] and usede to here[11] a masse and seie[12] his houres everiche day or[13] he wolde rede, and was profitable to his[14] scolers, for he tauȝte hem to[15] here masse also. Whan he feng money of his scolers he leyde it in a wyndowe, and seide, "Pouder to pouder and "askes to askes;"[16] but þe money was ofte i-take awey wiþ his felawes in game oþer elles priveliche wiþ þeofes.[17] Whanne he redde[18] arsmetrik[19] his moder þat was deed appered to hym

Trevisa.

---

apperede to hym in his slepe, manassynge to smyte hym with a palmer, for Scripture affermethe "he that despisethe lytelle "thynges schalle falle lyȝhtely." This hooly bischope was wonte to putte the silvyr that he receyvede of his scolers in a wyndowe openly, sayenge, "duste or powder to powdre, and "asches to asches." Whiche silvyr was taken awey oftetymes other by his felawes in disporte prively, or by other thefes prively. This seynte Edmunde laborynge arismetrike to rede

MS. Harl. 2261.

---

[1] *manaced*, Cx.
[2] *pawmere*, β.; *paumere*, γ.; *pawmer*, Cx.
[3] From α., β., γ., and Cx.
[4] From α., β., and Cx.; *and lytel*, γ.
[5] *aventred*, Cx., bis.
[6] *heo*, from β.; *cesse ar hue*, γ.; *he*, MS.
[7] *hue pot*, γ.
[8] *iechyng*, β.; *utchyng*, Cx.
[9] *And*, α., β., and Cx.
[10] *art*, α., β., and γ.
[11] *hure*, γ., et infra.
[12] *sygge*, γ.
[13] *er*, β. and Cx.
[14] *his*, from α., β., and Cx.; *hys*, γ.; *hire*, MS.
[15] *to*] om. Cx.
[16] *asshes to asshes*, Cx.
[17] *þeeves*, β.; *theeves*, Cx.
[18] *rad*, β.
[19] *arithmetic*, α., β., and γ.; *arithmetryk*, Cx.

et scisciţans quæ essent illæ figuræ quibus intendebat. Quo respondente talia et talia, illa depinxit in manu ejus[1] tres circulos, Patrem,[2] Filium, et Spiritum Sanctum continentes. " His," inquit, " fili, decætero intende " figuris." Raro in ecclesia sedit, sed aut stans aut genua flectens exoravit.[3] In tribus specialiter enituit ; nam erat prædicator egregius, disputator acerrimus, lector pius. Nam in fallaciarum animadversione fuit circumspectus, in solvendis quæstionibus[4] oculatus,[5] in legendo ædificativus. Præ nimia abstinentia pilis[6] capitis et barbæ decedentibus, labia ejus fissa videbantur. Grossis utens cibariis, omni feria ii[da] et quarta et in septuagesima[7] a carnibus[8] abstinebat, Pridie quam celebravit et ipso celebrationis die carnes non gustavit.[9] Unde nonnunquam[10] mensis integer pertransiit[11] quo carnes non comedit.[12] Raro comedit bis in die. Electuaria et medicinalia non curabat. In genubus ex frequenti geniculatione callos habebat. Per singulos dies [tria][13] dixit horarum paria de die, de Domina, de Sancto Spiritu

---

[1] *in manu ejus dextra*, A. ; *sua dextera*, B.C.D.

[2] *et*, A.

[3] *oravit*, B. ; C.D. add : " At " cum innumera pene sit virtutum " ejus testimonia, cum universa non " possimus, quædam tamen com- " pendiose subjiciemus, tam pro " fastidio legentium tollendo quam " pro zelo sequi volentium provo- " cando."

[4] *ante et retro*, C.D.

[5] C.D. add : " Et plerique audi- " tores ejus inter legendos libros " claudebant nequientes a lacrimis " temperare. Divini namque cla- " ritas amoris quasi per organum " quoddam diaphonum de pectore " ejus erumpens prælucibile fecit " exterius quodcumque obscurum. " Pili itaque capitis et barbæ, &c."

[6] *pili*, A.

[7] *et in Septuagesima*] om. B.

[8] *se*, C.D.

[9] *edebat*, B.

[10] *interdum*, B.

[11] *pertransit*, A.

[12] *Carni suæ solebat frequenter dicere insultando, Eo magis humiliaberis quo magis appetis superbiter.* add C.D.

[13] *tria*, from A.B.C.D.

in his sleep, and axede of hym and seide, "What figures beep[1] TREVISA.
"pees[2] pat pou studiest ynne?" and he answerde, "Suche
"and suche;"[3] and pan sche[4] peynted pre cercles[5] in her
ri3t hond, as pey sche[6] wolde mene pe Fadir and Sone and
Holy Goost, and seide, "Sone, studie pou in pese figures[7] after
"pis tyme." Seelde he sat in chirche, but he badde[8] his bedis
stondynge oper knelynge; ffor he was a nobil prechour, a scharp
argüer, and a mylde lyster. For he was avised and took
heede[9] of fallas,[10] and was war[11] and wys in asoyllynge of
questiouns, and dede greet profit in redynge. For greet ab-
stinens his heer fil awey of[12] his berd [and heed],[13] so pat his
lippes semed i-clove; he used alwey grete mete, and lefte
flesche [on][14] Monday and Wednesday,[15] [and][16] also in Septua-
gesme,[17] pat is in[18] al pe Lente[19] from tyme pat Alleluia is i-
cloped,[20] he wolde taste no flesche[21] pe day to fore pe day pat he
wolde synge his masse; and so ofte it happed pat he eet no flesche
in a monpe [al hool]:[22] he eet but seelde[23] twyes a day; he
pou3te not of lettuaries and of medicynes. For greet knelynge
his kneen[24] were harde as pe sooles of his feet. Everiche day
he seide pre payre[25] of matyns and of houres of pe day, of oure
Lady, of pe Holy Gost, wip Placebo and Dirige. A ny3t after

---

in his ordinary, his moder apperede in slepe to hym, dedde MS. HARL.
but late afore, inquirynge of hym what figures thei scholde be; 2261.
he ansuerynge suche and suche. Then sche depicte in his
ry3hte honde iij. cercles, contenynge the Fader, the Sonne,
and the Holy Goste, and seide, "Son, attende to these

---

[1] *be*, Cx.
[2] *þues*, γ.
[3] *siche and siche*, β.
[4] *heo*, β., bis.
[5] *cerkeles*, γ.
[6] *hue*, γ.
[7] *vertues*, α.
[8] *bade*, β.
[9] *hyde*, γ.
[10] *fallace*, β.; *falace*, Cx.
[11] *waare*, Cx.
[12] *from*, Cx.
[13] From Cx.; *and hed*, β. and γ.
[14] From Cx.
[15] *Wonesdaye*, Cx.
[16] From α., β., γ., and Cx.
[17] *Septuagesima*, β. and Cx.
[18] *in*] om. β.
[19] *Leynte*, β. and γ.
[20] *y-closed*, α., β., and γ.; *closed*, Cx.
[21] *vleysch*, γ., et infra.
[22] From β.
[23] *selde*, Cx.
[24] *knees*, Cx.
[25] *þre peyre*, α. and Cx.

cum officio defunctorum. Post primum somnum [1] de nocte surgens synaxim [2] dicebat.[3] Si quando detractionis verbum in medium venit, mutato statim themate ad materiam transiit saniorem. Nullum beneficium curatum [4] nisi unicum tenere voluit, [largas fecit expensas ne avarus diceretur].[5] Curiales sæculares ad mensam admisit ut eos [6] Domino lucrifaceret.[7] Officinas suas nusquam visitavit; compotum de ministris non audivit;[8] plus semper expendit quam habuit. A famulis suis carnis mundiciam adeo [9] exegit, ut ex pacto præscripto [10] quandocumque ad lubrica laberentur,[11] accepta mercede recederent. Decimas, oblationes et peccatorum redemptiones in pios duntaxat usus expendebat. Ante [12] se imaginem [13] Virginis et in circuitu suo[14] mysterium redemptionis nostræ habebat depictum. Sic ergo de codice procedebat lectio, ad iconiam ducebat oratio, de utroque redundabat [15] devotio.[16] Commestionis, dormitionis, equitationis tempora, quibus studio nequivit insistere, deperdita judicavit.[17] [18] Quotiens bi-

---

[1] *quod pocius sedendo quam jacendo sumpsit*, C.D.

[2] *synaxim*] space left in A.

[3] C.D. add: "Vix post hoc "sompnum subiturus et quia capa "sua sine scapulare quam die ves- "tivit, de nocte etiam se operuit, "quidam de eo dixerunt: Ecce "qualem habemus archipræsulem, "qui die et nocte idem operculum "defert secum."

[4] *curatum*] om. B.

[5] From A.B.C.D.; B. transposes slightly.

[6] *eos*] from A.; *eas*, MS.

[7] *ventilationibus causarum interesse noluit*, C.D.

[8] *de ministris non audivit*] om. A.

[9] *ita*, B.

[10] *conscripto*, B.

[11] *labererentur*, B.

[12] *In studio suo coram se imaginem Beatæ Mariæ habebat eburneam*, C.D.

[13] *beatæ*, B.

[14] *suo*] om. B.

[15] *redundabit*, A.

[16] *quæ mutuo sibi succedebant miro modo*, C.D.

[17] *judicabat*, B.

[18] *Tanto scripturæ sacræ detulit quod*, C.D.

his firste sleep he wolde aryse[1] and seie[2] certeyn psalmes[3] and prayers.[4] [ȝif eny envious word come in place, he wolde chaunge[5] þe theme,[6] and passe to þe betir matire; he wolde have no benefice wiþ cure but oon. He made large spences for he wolde nouȝt be helde covetous and [a][7] wrecche. He woulde[5] nouȝt be in pledynge of causes. He wolde have men of seculer court wiþ hym to þe mete, for he wolde wynne hem to þe blisse of hevene. He wolde nouȝt visite his hous[8] of office noþer here[9] acountes of his ministres; he spende alwey more þan he hadde. He chalangede[10] of his servauntes clennes of body by covenaunt y-wryte, so þat ȝif eny of hem fyl[11] into leccherye, he schulde fonge his huyre[12] and take his leve and be agoo.[13] Teþynges and offrynges and redempciouns of synnes he spende onliche in mylde uses. He hadde tofore hym y-peynt[14] þe ymage of oure Lady, and al aboute hym þe passioun of oure Lord. And so þe lessoun come of þe book, and tofore þe ymage he bad his bedes, and of eiþer come greet devocioun. Þe tyme of etynge and slepynge and rydynge, whanne he myȝte nouȝt studie, he tolde hit al y-lost. As ofte as he openede his bibel he wolde worschippe hit wiþ

TREVISA.

---

[1] *advise*, Cx.
[2] *sygge*, γ.
[3] *salmes*, β. and γ.
[4] *prayeres and psalmes*, α. and Cx.
[5] *chaunge . . . wrecche. He woulde*] om. Cx.
[6] *teeme*, β.
[7] From β.
[8] *houses*, β. and Cx.
[9] *hure*, γ.
[10] *chalaunde*, γ.
[11] *vul*, γ.
[12] *hyer*, Cx.
[13] *be agoo*] goo his wey, Cx.
[14] *peynted*, β.

bliam suam aperuit osculo honoravit.[1] Commissa sibi crucis legatione procurationes concessas non sumpsit. Propriis stipendiis contra morem militavit, prædicans apud Oxoniam, Gloverniam, Wygorniam; imbres super populum[2] irruentes[3] precibus avertit. Contigit eo in studio suo dormitante candelam super bibliam cadere et ardere, sed eo evigilante et suspirante nullam ustulam apparere. Similiter tres cruces super anthracem quem in pede habuit cum penna sua fecit, et continuo[4] apostema[5] evanuit. Ejus cilicia inveterata igni tradita comburi non poterant. Nec in ciliciis ejus aut cæteris vestibus[6] vix unquam vermis reperiri potuit. Missis aliquando de[7] Cantuariensi apud Sarisburiensem nunciis pro Edmundo ipsius loci thesaurario in archiepiscopatum[8] promovendo, ait ad eos decanus: "Bene veneritis et male veneritis. Bene quidem quod "nostræ ecclesiæ honorem facitis, sed male quia thesau- "rum nostrum cum[9] thesaurario aufertis."[10] Calcia-

[1] *appetitum inanis gloriæ quam viris virtutum multiplicitas opportuna se jugiter sub simplicitatis cautela elisit. Commissa sibi tandem cum grandi privilegio per summum pontificem crucis*, &c., C.D.

[2] *populum*] om. B.

[3] *irruentes*] om. A.

[4] *continue*, A.

[5] *apostemate*, B.

[6] A blank is left in B. between *vestibus* and *vix*.

[7] *a*, B.

[8] *Cantuariensém*, B.

[9] *de*, A.

[10] *Eadmundus vero nisi Deum offendere timuisset, electioni de se factæ nunquam consensisset*, C.D. which add: "Hoc igitur adver- "terat ambiciosi homines captantes "per fas nephasque in vineam Do- "mini ultro se ingerentes, irrum- "pere molientes, per lites et jurgia, "per promissa et munera, per con- "spirationes et federationes, per "anfractus et dissimulaciones in "ovile aliunde ascendentes. Pro- "motus igitur Eadmundus in vir- "tutum exerciciis et in hiis quæ ex "illis alliciuntur magis crevit. "Nam calciamenta propria."

a cros.[1] Whanne þe legacye of þe cros was commytted to hym he took no procuracies[2] þat hym were y-graunted, but aȝenst þe usages of opere suche legates he travaylde on his [owne][3] cost. He prechede at Oxenforde, at Gloucetre, and at Wircetre, and reyn þat fyl on þe peple[4] he made hit torne aȝen wiþ his prayeres. Hit happede as he sleep[5] in his studie þat a candel fyl doun on his bible[6] and brende, but whanne he wook and syȝte[7] no brennynge was y-sene. Also wiþ his penne he made þris croys on a kybe þathe hadde, and hit vansched[8] awey. His heyres[9] þat he werede were y-þrowe into þe fuyre whan þey[10] were olde, but þey myȝte nouȝt brenne. And in þe heyres[11] þat he werede unnepe myȝte ony worme[12] be y-founde.][13] Sometyme messangers were i-sent from Caunterbury to Salisbury [for Edmond tresorer of þat place schulde come and be archebisshop of Caunterbury. Þe deen of Salisbury][13] he[14] spak wiþ[15] hem and seide, "ȝe beeþ "welcome [and yvel come: ȝe beþ welcome],[13] for ȝe dooþ "worschippe to oure[16] cherche; but ȝe beeþ evel come, for "ȝe take[17] oure tresoure [wiþ þe tresorer]."[13] Hym schamed

TREVISA.

"ffigures." Hit happede in a tyme, the seide bischop beynge in study and in slepe, a candelle to falle on his bible, but the seide seynte Edmunde awakenge and sighenge, that booke was not hurte in eny thynge. Also he made in a tyme iij. crosses with his pen on a felon that he hade on his foote, and the posteme evaneschede awey anoon. The olde heires, whom he usede to were, putte to the fyre cowthe not be brente, an[d] unnethe eny vermyn were founde in theyme or in his other clothes. The decan of Salisbery seide to the messyngers sende from Cawnterbery for the promocion of seynte Edmunde treasurer that tyme of Salisbery, "Ye be wellecomme, and ye be "not wellecomme; ye be wellecomme in that ye comme for "the honore of oure churche, and ye be not wellecomme in "that ye come to take awey oure treasure with oure treasurer."

MS. HARL. 2261.

---

[1] *cosse*, β.; *kos*, γ.
[2] *procuratoryes*, Cx.
[3] From β. and Cx.
[4] *vul on þe pupel*, γ.
[5] *slepte*, β.; *sluep*, γ.
[6] *bibel*, β.
[7] *and syȝte*] he sawe, Cx.
[8] *van sede*, γ.; *vanysshed*, Cx.
[9] *heeres*, β.; *heres*, γ. and Cx.
[10] *a*, γ.
[11] *heres*, β.
[12] *eny worme*, β.; *eny worm*, γ.
[13] From α., β., γ., and Cx.
[14] *he*] om. α.
[15] *to*, α.
[16] *ur*, γ.
[17] *takiþ*, β.

menta propria[1] sibi detrahere non erubuit; cuicumque obiter[2] confiteri volenti etiam de equo descendens audientiam præbuit, nulla aeris intemperie aut hospitii propinquitate retardatus. Instar olivæ,[3] qui sibi[4] retinet corticis amaritudinem, et cæteris fundit liquoris dulcedinem, sic ipse sibimet erat durus,[5] cæteris compatiens et benignus. Pectus suum frequenter tutudit,[6] genua terræ collisit, ita ut clerici in cellariis sub ipso pausantes vix dormire possent. Sexum femineum ob honorem beatæ Virginis semper honoravit, nec tamen per hoc maculam[7] incurrit. Immo cum a quodam familiari suo ex hoc reprehenderetur quod cum quadam pulcra matrona tam[8] frequenter loqueretur, respondisse fertur: "Vidistine quam speciosa fuit illa. Sæpius "mihi fateor assedit, nunquam tamen plus de illa "quam de muro temptatus exstiti.[9] Quin etiam si "omnia quæ in hoc peccati genere commisi[10] in fronte

---

[1] *propria*] om. B.
[2] *obvio*, B.
[3] *Instar olivæ*] om. A.
[4] *semet*, A.; *sibimet*, B.
[5] *fuit sibi durus*, A.
[6] *tondebat*, B.
[7] *vel mentis*, C.D.
[8] *ita*, A.
[9] *exstiti*] om. B.
[10] *commisi*] om. B.

nouȝt to drawe of his owne hosen and schoon.[1] Everiche man þat he mette in þe way þat wolde be schryve to hym, he wolde liȝt doun of his hors and hire hire[2] his schrifte, and spare for no lette of comynge to his in,[3] neyþer[4] for wynde ne for rayn ne for oþer wedir. He ferde as þe olyve[5] tree þat holdeþ to itself þe bitternesse in þe rynde, and heldeþ[6] out þe[7] oþer [þe][8] swetnes of þe oyle, so he was hard to hymself and esiliche[9] and goodliche to oþer men. He beet[10] his brest ofte wiþ his hond, and his knees[11] aȝenst þe grounde, so þat clerkes þat leye in selers[12] under hym myȝte unneþe sleepe. For worschippe of oure Lady he worschipped alle wommen,[13] but þerby was he nevere i-wemmed. But in a tyme oon blamed hym þat was hoomly wiþ hym for a faire wyf þat he wolde ofte speke with, and he answerde and seide, "Seie[14] þou nouȝt how faire sche[15] was; I knowleche sche[16] "haþ ofte i-sete by me, but by her was I nevere more "tempted þan I[17] was by þe wal. And ȝit [more][18] þey al þat "þat[19] I have trespased in þat manere synne were i-wrete in

Trevisa.

This seynt Edmund usede for eny journey or eny tempeste to lyȝhte downe of hys horse and here the confession of a man or woman, if he were desirede, lyke an olyve tre whiche retenethe to hym selfe bitternesse of barke, and distillethe to oþer the liquor of swetenesse. This noble bischoppe ȝafe grete honoure to women, for the honoure of oure Lady, and ȝitte he was not diffamede þerby. Neverthelesse seynte Edmunde reprovede in a tyme of a man familier to hym in that he spake so ofte with a feire woman, seide to hym ageyne, "Perceyves thow how feire "and beawtuous that woman is; sche hathe sytte ofte nye to "me, and unto this houre y was never attempte moore of her "then of the walle. And if alle the synnes of lechery in whom "y have synnede were wryten in my forhede y wolde not be

MS. Harl. 2261.

f. 379. a.

---

[1] *schone*, β.; *hosene and schon*, γ.; *shone*, Cx.
[2] *hire hire*] here, α. and Cx.; heere, β.; hure, γ.
[3] *ynne*, Cx.
[4] *noþer*, α.
[5] *olif*, β.
[6] *hyldeþ*, γ.
[7] *to*, α. and Cx.
[8] From α., β., γ., and Cx.
[9] *easy*, Cx.
[10] *but*, γ.
[11] *kneen*, α. and β.; *knen*, γ.
[12] *celers*, γ.
[13] *wymmen*, Cx.
[14] *Seygh*, α.; *Syȝ*, β. and γ.; *Sawe*, Cx.
[15] *heo*, β., bis.
[16] *hue*, γ.
[17] *Ich*, β
[18] From β. and γ.
[19] *þat*] om. α. and γ.

" meo depingerentur non eruberem." [1] Munerum ac-
" ceptatores detestabatur, dicens Gallice,[2] " Inter
" prendre et pendre unica dumtaxat distat iota." In-
stigante tandem diabolo, rex Henricus una cum ca-
pitulo Cantuariensi contra ipsum rebellavit. Sub quo
turbine multa dissimulavit. Persecutores suos ad oscula
et alias familiaritates admisit. Et cum amici sui dice-
rent hanc nimiam mansuetudinem aliis exemplum præ-
bere consimiliter insurgendi, respondit: " Inundationes
" maris quasi lac sugere debemus, et cum præcursore
" Domini Johanne [3] comedere mel silvestre in deserto
" mundi. Soli quippe Deo [4] servanda est potentia vin-
" dicandi, de alienis defectibus nolo mihi dispendium
" propagare." Convocato denuo prælatorum cœtu, in-
quirit quomodo ecclesiam ancillatam [5] relevari possit.

---

[1] *erubescerem*, A.
[2] *quod*, C.D.
[3] *Johanne*] om. B.
[4] *dicti*, A.
[5] *jam ancillatam*, A.; *jam ancillam*, C.D.

" myn[1] [forhede],[2] I ne schulde[3] be aschamed." He hated fongers[4] of ȝiftes, and seide on[5] Frensche,[6] " Entre prendre et " pendre is but oon lettre alone." At þe laste by excitynge of þe devel kyng Henry and þe chapitre[7] of Caunterbury was rebel aȝenst hym. In þat horlynge[8] he made it as þey he knewe it not, and kessed hym[9] þat pursewed hym, and dede to hym [al][10] oþer hoomliche dedes; and whan his frendes seide he was to mylde, and ȝaf example to oþere men for to arise in þe same wise, he answerde and seide: " Þe[11] swellynge of þe see " as mylk we schal souke,[12] and ete wilde hony in þe wildernesse " of þis world wiþ Iohn Baptiste þe forgoer of oure Lord, þe " powere of takynge wreche most[13] be wiþholde onliche in " Goddis hond. I nyl[14] not[15] of oþere men defautis gete[16] me " longe[17] and unprofitable cost and travaille." Þan he hadde prelates to gidres,[18] and axede how he myȝte releve holy chirche, þat was i-made sugette and þralle. It was i-counseilled þat þe

Trevisa.

" aschamede þerof." This bischoppe hatede men that wolde take ȝiftes, seyenge in Frenche that there was but oon letter betwene prendere, to take, and pendere, to be honge. At the laste, thro the instigacion of the develle, kynge Henricus and the chapitre of Cawnterbery also rebellede ageyne seynte Edmund, in whiche tribulacion he noryschede moche his adversaryes, and admitte theyme to grete familiarite with hym. The luffers of seynte Edmund were displeasede with hym gretely þerfore, seyenge that his grete mekenesse wolde be an occasion to peple to ryse ageyne prelates of the churche. To whom he seide, " We awe to sowke the bitternesse of tribula- " cion lyke mylke, and eite wilde hony in the deserte of this " worlde with seynte Iohn Baptiste, for the powere of cor- " reccion awe to be attribute to God." After that seynte Edmunde callynge a cownsaile of bischoppes, inquirede of theyme how he myȝhte releve the churche, where hit was seide

MS. Harl. 2261.

---

[1] *me*, α.
[2] From Cx.; *forhed*, β.; *vorhed*, γ.
[3] *ne schulde*] schulde nouȝt, α. and β.
[4] *fangers*, β.
[5] *on*] a, β.; in, Cx.
[6] *Vreyns*, γ.
[7] *chapytre hous*, Cx.
[8] *hurlynge*, α. and Cx.; *hurlyng*, β.; *horllyng*, γ.
[9] *kuste ham*, γ.
[10] From Cx.
[11] *þat*, α.
[12] *soke*, γ.
[13] *mot*, β.; *moote*, Cx.
[14] *nel*, α.
[15] *Y nel nouȝt*, γ.
[16] *geten*, α.
[17] *loenge*, Cx.
[18] *togedders*, γ.

Decernitur regem cum cæteris rebellibus admonendos fore, et si non corrigerentur, severitatem ecclesiasticæ censuræ non dormire. Paret vir sanctus,[1] regem[2] adit; rex[3] petit[4] deliberationem super his haberi. Expectat ille; sed nil profuit. Qua de causa soli regi deferendo[5] in cæteros[6] rebelles sententia fulminatur. At cum nec his compungerentur transgressores, cedendum magis censuit maliciis[7] quam inservire[8] litigiis. Consideravit nempe quod si totam severitatem[9] expenderet, forsan legatus papæ, qui tunc aderat, in irritum duceret, regemque ad deteriora provocaret.[10] Si vero ipse archiepiscopus præsens existens eorum errata non corrigeret, videretur ea per quandam dissimulationis tolerantiam approbare, propterea præelegit corpore[11] se ad tempus absentare, ut ipso facto cordis ostenderet amaritudinem et ipsorum detestaretur maliciam.[12] Igitur ingravescente ejus ultimo morbo secessit a Pontiniaco usque Soisy,

---

[1] *hiis dictis*, C.D.

[2] *Rex vero deliberandum fore asseveravit. Expectat vir paciens temporum curricula, sed ecclesiæ plus obfuit prolongacio tam morosa. Qua de causa*, &c.

[3] *rex*, A.

[4] *rex petit*] om. B.

[5] *referendo*, A.

[6] *juris ecclesiastici perturbatores*, C.D.

[7] *maliciis*] in aliis.

[8] *insistere*, C.D.

[9] *ecclesiasticam*, C.D.

[10] *provocavit*, A.

[11] *corpore*] om. A.

[12] C.D. add: "Igitur apud Pontiniacum asylum exulum interim "delitescens, non est fraudatus a suo "desiderio, sicut eventus sequens "demonstrativo docuit syllogismo. "De quo loco quidam sic ait: "'Est Pontiniacum pons exulis, "'hortus, asylum, hic graditur, spa-"'ciatur in hoc, requiescitur illo.' "Ingravescente denique, &c."

kyng and opere men þat were rebelles schulde be warned, and ȝif þey[1] wolde nouȝt amende, þan þe wreche of censures of holy chirche schulde nouȝt slepe. Þe holy man assentiþ and gooþ to þe kyng; þe kyng axeþ avisement, and he abideþ, but al for nouȝt; þerfore þe kyng was spared allone, and alle opere þat were rebel were denounsed acursed; but herby wolde nouȝt þe evel doers be amended, þat[2] hym was levere suffre þe malice for a tyme þat[3] kyþe[4] his myȝt in plee and in stryf; ffor he took hede þat þeyȝ he hadde i-doo al þat he myȝte it myȝte happe þat þe popes legat þat was þoo in Engelond wolde undo al his sentence and dedes, and so conforte[5] þe kyng to worse dedes; but ȝif þe archebisshop were present and corrected nouȝt her trespas and erroures, it myȝte seme þat he wolde alowe his dedes by a manere of[6] feyned suffraunce. Þerfore hym was levere be absent for a tyme, for to schewe þerby þe sorwe of his herte, and [that][7] he[8] was sore a greved wiþ her malice.[9] Þanne his laste sikenesse gan for[10] to wexe grevous and strong, and [he][11] wente out of Pountenye[12] to Soysy, and byhiȝt[13] hem þat he wolde come aȝen at[14] seynt

Trevisa.

---

that the kynge and the rebellious awe to be monyschede, and if thei wolde not be correcte, to schewe to theym the sentence of the churche. This holy bischop wente to the kynge, whiche askede deliberacion to answere to these thynges movede by seynte Edmund, but hit profite not, wherefore he ȝafe sentence ageyne alle the rebellious of the churche, the kynge excepte, thenkynge if that he made eny sentence, the legate presente þat tyme scholde have releisched hit, and peraventure to have movede the kynge to moore symplenesse. Wherefore he chosede to absente hym for a tyme, that he myȝhte schewe the actes of those rebellious, and lothe the malice of theyme. This seynte Edmund vexed soore in the extreme infirmite, departede from Pontiniacus to Soysi, promysynge theyme to returne and to be þer ageyne in the feste of seynte Edmunde.

MS. Harl. 2261.

---

[1] *ef huy*, γ.
[2] *þan*, α., β., and Cx.; *þanne*, γ.
[3] *þan*, α., β., γ., and Cx.
[4] *kuyþe*, γ.; *kyth*, Cx.
[5] *comforte*, Cx.
[6] *of*] om. β. and Cx.
[7] From Cx.; *þat*, β.
[8] *þat*, α.
[9] *malys*, γ.
[10] *for*] om. β. and Cx.
[11] From β. and Cx.
[12] *Pontney*, β.; *Pontiney*, γ.
[13] *bihet*, β.
[14] *at*] on, β. and Cx.; a, γ.

promittens[1] illis quod die sancti martyris[2] Edmundi reverteret.[3] "Allata sibi eucharistia dixit, Tu es, Domine, "quem amavi, in quem credidi, quem prædicavi, præter "quem aliud non quæsivi." Et sic sumpto viatico dixit,[4] "Homines dicunt quod ludus vadit in ventrem, "sed ego dico[5] quod vadat[6] in mentem." Inde lavans vulnera imaginis crucifixi et[7] deosculans dixit, "Hauriętis aquas in gaudio de fontibus[8] Salvatoris."

Cap. XXXVI.

[*De Pontificibus Romanis et quædam de rebus Anglicis.*]

Gratiæ MCCXLII. Henrici III. XXV.

Innocentius quartus post Celestinum sedit papa annis xi., mensibus sex; qui vacuas cardinalium sedes honestis replevit personis, fratrem Hugonem de ordine Prædicatorum instituit cardinalem; qui totam bibliam postillavit, et magnas super bibliam concordancias compilavit. Iste papa apud Lugdunum Galliæ consilium

---

[1] *Pontiviacensibus*, C.D.
[2] *martyris*] om. A.B.
[3] *reverteretur*, A.
[4] *in suo Anglico et sic scribitur in Latino*, C.D.
[5] *dico*] om. A.
[6] *vadit*, B.
[7] *gustavit locionem sic dicens*, C. D.
[8] *fonte*, A.

Edmondes day. Whan þe sacrament of[1] þe auȝter[2] was i-brouȝt to hym he seyde, "Þou art my Lord, þe I[2] have i-loved, "in þe I[2] have i-trowed, þe I[3] have y-prechid, þe I[2] have "i-souȝt, and non oþer. Men telliþ þat it gooþ [into þe "wombe, bot y[2] telle þat hit goþ][4] into þe soule and þouȝt." Þan he wesche[5] þe woundes of þe ymage of the crucifixe, and kussed hem ful swete, and seide, "Ye schal[6] kecche[7] up "water in ioye of oure[8] Savyour his welles." TREVISA.

Capitulum tricesimum septimum.[9]

Affter Celestinus þe fourþe[10] Innocencius was pope ellevene ȝere and sixe monþes. He putte honest and noble persones in þe cardinales see[11] þat were voyde. He made cardynal frere Hewe[12] of þe ordre of Prechoures, þat expownede al þe bible, and made[13] a[14] greet concordaunce[15] uppon þe bible. Þis pope made a counsaile at Luduum[16] in Fraunce, þere he canoniced[17] seynt

---

The blissede sacramente brouȝhte to this holy bischop, he seide, "O Lorde, thow arte he whom y have luffede and prechede;" and that sacramente receyvede he seide, "Men say that play or "disporte goethe into the wombe; but y say that hit goethe "into the mynde." After that he waschede the woundes of the ymage of the crucifix, and seyde, "Haurite aquas in "gaudio." MS. HARL 2261. f. 379 b.

Capitulum tricesimum sextum.

INNOCENCIUS the iiij[the] succedid Celestinus the pope, xj. yere and vj. monethes; whiche fullefyllede the voide seetes of cardinalls with honeste persons, and made Hewe frere of the ordre Precheours a cardinalle; whiche postillate alle the bible, and compilede grete concordances on the bible. This pope kepede a cownsaile at Lugdune in Fraunce, grawntenge the canoni-

---

[1] *auter*, Cx.
[2] *Ich*, β., quinquies; *Ych*, γ., quater.
[3] *ich*, γ.
[4] From α., β., γ., and Cx.
[5] *weesche*, β.; *wuesch*, γ.
[6] *ȝe schulde*, α.; *ȝe schal*, β.
[7] *cleche*, β.; *ȝe schal kyche*, γ.; *drawe*, Cx.
[8] *ur*, γ.
[9] *Cap.* 36, Cx.
[10] *ferthe*, β.; *vurde*, γ.
[11] *sees*, β. and γ.
[12] *Huwe*, β. and γ.; *Hughe*, Cx.
[13] *made a*] om. α. and β.
[14] *a*] om. Cx.
[15] *concordaunces*, β. and Cx.
[16] *Lugdun*, β.; *Lugnum*, Cx.
[17] *canonized*, β.; *canonysed*, Cx.

celebravit, in quo sanctum Edmundum Cantuariensem[1] septimo defunctionis suæ anno canonizavit, rebellem imperatorem Fredericum deponendum decrevit. Apud Toletum[2] Hispaniæ, dum quidam Judæus in horto suo pro vinea amplianda foderet, lapidem invenit[3] ex omni parte integrum, in cujus medio[4] repperit[5] librum ad quantitatem psalterii, cum foliis ligneis Hebraice, Græce, Latine conscriptum, de triplici mundo ab Adam usque ad[6] Antichristum loquentem, proprietates[7] hominum exprimentem, principiumque[8] tertii mundi in Christo ponentem in hunc modum: "In tertio mundo "Filius Dei nascetur ex virgine Maria[9] qui pro "salute hominum mortem patietur." Hôc[10] legens Judæus statim baptizatus est. Tanta fuit caristia in Anglia ut summa bladi[11] pro xii. solidis venderetur. Hoc[12] anno beatus Edmundus translatus est. Et Fredericus imperator [excommunicatus][13] obiit. Post quem Manfredus filius suus naturalis regnum

Gratiæ MCCLV. Henrici III. XXVIII.

Gratiæ MCCXLVII. Henrici III. XXX.

---

[1] *Cantuariensem*] om. A.
[2] *Tholetum*, A.B.
[3] *reperit*, A.
[4] *medium*, A.
[5] *invenit*, A.
[6] *ad*] om. A.
[7] *proprietatem*, A.
[8] *principiique*, B.
[9] *ex . . . Maria*] om. A.
[10] *Hæc*, A.
[11] *summa bladi*] om. A.
[12] *Quo*, A.
[13] from A.B.C.D.

Edmond þe archebisshop þe sevenþe ȝere after his deeth, and demede þat þe rebel emperoure Frederik schulde be deposed and i-sette adoun. At Tholet in Spayne a Jewe [1] digged in his orcheȝerd [2] to make hym a more vyneȝerd; þere he fonde [3] a stoon hool and sownde in everiche side. In þe myddel of þat stoon he fonde [4] a book, also [5] greet as a psawter,[6] wiþ trene [7] leves, i-wrete in Grew,[8] Hebrew,[9] and Latyn, and spak of þe [10] þre worldes [11] from Adam to Antecrist, and declared þe propurte [12] of men, and sette þe bygynnynge of þe þridde [13] world [14] in Crist in þis manere: "In þe þridde world Goddis sone schal "be bore of a [15] mayde Marie, and he schal suffre þe [16] deth "for salvacioun of mankynde." Þe Jewe radde þis and was [baptized [17] anone. In Engelond þan [18] [was] [19] so grete derþe þat a] [20] busshel [21] of corn was i-solde for twelf schillynges þat ȝere. Seynt [22] Edmond was [23] translated, and Frederik þe emperour deide accursed. After hym his sone Mamfrede [24] assaylede þe

TREVISA.

---

zacion of seynte Edmund in the vij[the] yere after his dethe, and decrete Frederyke the emperoure to be deposede for his rebellion. A Jewe diggenge in this yere at Tholetum in Speyne to amplifye his vyneyerde founde a stonne holle on every syde, in the myddes of whom he founde a booke after the quantite of a sawter, with levys of tre wryten in Hebrewe, Grewe, and in Latyn, spekynge of the threfolde state of the worlde from Adam unto Antecriste, expressynge the proprytes of men, puttynge the begynnynge of the thrydde worlde in Criste in this maner: "The Sonne of God schalle be borne of Mary a virgyn in the "thrydde worlde, whiche schalle suffre dethe for the redempcion "of man." Suche a derthe of corne was in Ynglonde in this yere, that a quarter of whete was solde for xvj. s. Seynte Edmunde was translate in this yere, and Frederyke emperour diede excommunicate; Manfredus the naturalle sonne of whom

MS. HARL. 2261.

---

[1] *Juwe*, γ.
[2] *orchard*, β., γ., and Cx.
[3] *vond*, γ.
[4] *foond*, β.
[5] *as*, β.
[6] *sauter*, γ. and Cx.
[7] *treen*, β.
[8] *Grue*, β.
[9] *Grue*, *Ebrue*, Cx.
[10] þe] om. β. and γ.
[11] *worlles*, γ.
[12] *proprete*, Cx.
[13] þrid, β.
[14] *worl*, γ.
[15] *a*] om. β., γ., and Cx.
[16] þe] om. α., β., and Cx.
[17] *yfolled*, β.; *yvolled*, γ.; *crystned*, Cx.
[18] þan] om. α., β., and Cx.
[19] From Cx.
[20] From α., β., γ., and Cx.
[21] *boschel*, γ.
[22] *schillyngis*. Þat ȝere *seynt*, β.
[23] Þat *yere was seynt Edmond*, Cx.
[24] *Mamfred*, β.; *Manifred*, Cx.

et thesauros Siciliæ invadit, donec Karolus frater regis [1] Franciæ ipsum vita et regno privasset. Mortuo tamen [2] Frederico prædicto, Innocentius papa procuravit electores imperii [3] ut plures eligerent. Unde et [4] electis duce Thuringiæ et comite Hollandiæ, sed cito post [5] obeuntibus, quidam elegerunt Ricardum fratrem regis Angliæ, ducem tunc [6] Cornubiæ,[7] quod quidem schisma sub magnis sumptibus multis duravit annis. Syllabis nominis hujus Frederici quidam metricus allusit [7] in hunc modum.[8]

Fre fremit in mundo, de deprimit alta profundo,
Ri mala rimatur, cus cuspide cuncta minatur.

Gratiæ MCCXLVIII. Henrici III. XXXI. Hoc [9] anno apud Londoniam facta est solemnis processio versus [10] sanguinem Christi, qui missus est regi Henrico a patriarcha Jerosolomitano, tertio idus Octobris [9] Lodowycus rex Franciæ adiit Terram Sanctam, et cepit Damiettam; sed anno sequenti captus est a Soldano in bello campestri,[11] occubuitque [12] Willelmus Longa Spata.[13]

Gratiæ MCCXLIX. Henrici III. XXXII.

Gratiæ MCCLI. Henrici III. XXXIIII. [14] Venerunt Parisios pastores [15] animalium cruce signati

---

[1] *regis*] ejus, B.
[2] *tandem*, B.
[3] *principes Alemanniæ*, A.
[4] *et*] om. B.
[5] *cito post*] om. B.
[6] *ducem tunc*] ducemque, A.
[7] *metricus sic allusit*, A.
[8] *Versus*, B.
[9] *Hoc . . . Octobris*] om. C. D.
[10] *contra*, A.
[11] *et facta est magna Christianorum strages in qua occubuit*, A.C.D.
[12] *strenuus miles*, A.
[13] *miles probatissimus*, C.D.
[14] *Hoc anno*, add. B.
[15] *custodes*, B.

kyngdome, and þe tresoure of Cecil[1] forto Charles þat was þe kyng[2] of Fraunce prived hym boþe of his[3] kyngdom and of his lyf. Whanne þis Frederik was dede, Innocencius þe pope procurede[4] þe chesers of þe empere[5] forto chese many, and so were i-chose þe duke of Thuringe[6] and þe erle of Holond, boþe[7] þey deide sone, and som chese þe kynges broþer of Engelond, Richard duke of Cornwayle: þis stryf durede many ȝere wiþ wel greet coste. A versifiour[8] to sette[9] þe silables[10] of his[11] name Fredericus in þis manere: TREVISA

"Fre fremit in mundo, de deprimit alta profundo,
"Ri[12] mala[13] rimatur, eus cuspide cuncta minatur."

Þat ȝere at Londoun was i-made a solempne[14] processioun toward Cristes blood þat þe patriark of Jerusalem had i-sent to kyng Henry. Þe þrittenþe day of Octobre Lowys, kynge of Fraunce, wente to þe Holy Lond, and took Damyeta, but in þe ȝere after he was i-take of þe Sowdan[15] in a batayle in þe feeld,[16] and William longa spata [was dede].[17] Longa spata is a long swerd. And[18] an hundred þowsand and fifty þowsand hurdes[19] i-marked wiþ the signe of þe[20] cros come

---

occupiede that realme untylle that he was sleyne by Charls broþer to the kynge of Fraunce. This Frederyke dedde, Innocencius the pope procurede that the chosers of the empire scholde electe diverse men. A solenne procession was made at London in this yere to mete the precious bloode of Criste, whiche was sende to kynge Henricus from the patriarke of Jerusalem in the thrydde idus of October. Lodowicus kynge of Fraunce wente to the Holy Londe in this yere, and toke a cite callede Damieta, and the seide kynge of Fraunce was taken of the Soldan in the nexte yere folowynge. A c. and l^ti^ M. schepardes or kepers of bestes merkede with the signe of the MS. HARL. 2261. f. 380 a.

---

[1] *Sicil*, β. and γ.; *Scicile*, Cx.
[2] *kynges broþer*, α.
[3] *his*] þe, β..
[4] *procrede*, γ.
[5] *empyre*, β.
[6] *Turing*, Cx.
[7] *but*, β. and Cx.; *bote*, γ.
[8] *vesifiour*, α.
[9] *to sette*] divided, β. and Cx.
[10] *silabeles*, γ.
[11] *þis*, β.; *this*, Cx.
[12] *Ri mala*] Res, Cx.
[13] *mala*] res, β. and γ., wrongly.
[14] *solempnel*, Cx.
[15] *Sauden*, γ.
[16] *veld*, γ.
[17] From α., β., γ., and Cx.
[18] *And*] om. α. and β.
[19] *heerdes*, α.; *huerdes*, β., γ., and Cx.
[20] *hooly*, add. Cx.

Gratiæ MCCLIII. Henrici III. XXXVI.

centum quinquaginta millia, per quos universitas multum fuit turbata multique[1] clerici occisi.[2] [3] Rex Henricus dedit Edwardo primogenito suo Vasconiam, Hiberniam, Walliam, Cestrishiram.[4] Quo anno terra ex nimio fervore[5] ita exaruit ut nullum fructum fecit, et in fine autumni tantæ[6] pluviæ inundaverunt quæ[7] terra[8] absorbere non potuit. Unde et plurima incommoda statim postea[9] contigerunt.[10] *De Roberto Grocetest episcopo Lincolniensi.*[11] Hoc quoque[12] anno obiit sanctus Robertus dictus Grosseteste,[13] episcopus Lincolniensis, viii. idus Octobris, qui in cunctis liberalibus artibus excellenter eruditus, præcipue in logica, ethica[14] et astrologia, plurima commentatus est. Ad Innocentium quartum misit epistolam satis[15] tonantem quæ sic incipit, *Dominus noster Jesus Christus*,[16] pro eo quod ecclesias Anglicanas indebitis et insolitis exactionibus gravare videretur, et[17] etiam quia nepotulo suo puerulo[18]

---

[1] *multique*] om. A.
[2] *perversi facti multi Christiani*, C.D.
Hoc anno, add. B.
[4] *et comitatum Cestriæ*, A.
[5] *solis ardore per totum æstatem*, C.D.
[6] *ita*, B.
[7] *quod*, B.
[8] *eas*, B.
[9] *statim postea*] om. B.
[10] *quod terra non potuit statim deglutire, unde mala contigerunt*, A.
[11] A.B. omit title.
[12] *etiam*, A.
[13] *Grossum caput*, C.D.
[14] *ethica*] om. A.
[15] *invectivam et*, add. C.D.
[16] *quæ . . . Christus*] om. C.D.
[17] *et . . . canonizetur*, om. C.D.
[18] *puero papa*, A.

to þe parische,[1] and destroyed hugeliche þe universite, and slouȝ[2] many clerkes. Kyng Henry ȝaf to his eldest sone Edward Gaskoyne[3] Irlond, Wales, and Chestreschire. Þat ȝere for grete hete þe erþe was so drye þat it bare no fruyt. But in þe ende of hervest fil[4] so grete rayn þat þe erþe myȝt it nouȝt swelowe;[5] þerof come meny mescheves. Also þat ȝere deide seint Robert Grosthede,[6] bisshop of Lyncolne, þe nynþe day of Octobre. He was kunnynge in alle þe liberal artes, and specialliche he expowned meny þinges in logike etykes[7] and astrologie. He sente to þe ferþe pope Innocencius a pistel scharp inow[8] þat bygynneþ in þis manere, "Oure lord Jesus "Crist." [He][9] sente þat pistel for þe pope greved þe chirches of Engelond wiþ taxes and wiþ paiementis undewe and uncustemable." Also for he hadde i-ȝeve his litel nevew a

Trevisa.

---

crosse come in this yere to Parisius, by whom the universite was troublede moche, and mony scolers were sleyne by theyme also. Kynge Henricus ȝafe to Edwarde his eldeste sonne Vasconia, Yrlonde, Wales, and Chestreschire. In whiche yere the erthe was made soe drye by fervente hete that hit ȝafe noo fruite, and in the ende of herveste were so moche wete and reyne that the erthe myȝhte not receyve the waters, whereby mony incommodites folowede. Seynte Robert callede Grossehede, and bischop of Lincolne, diede in this yere þe vij^{the} idus of October; whiche was instructe excellentely in alle the artes liberalle, and made mony compendious werkes, specially in logyke, moralle philosophy, and in astrology. Whiche sende to pope Innocencius the iiij^{the} a notable epistolle whiche began "Dominus noster Jesus Christus," in that he began to vexe the churches of Ynglonde with undewe exaccions and inconsuete. And also he ȝafe to Frederyke sonne of his broþer a prebende in the churche of Lincolne with the nexte vacacion of that seete also, whom the seide bischoppe wolde not admitte. And the rescription of the bischop began, "Noverit discrecio vestra," and hit was his answere also to the archidiacon off Cawnterbery and to an oþer man, whiche was the collector of the pope in Ynglonde, whiche tweyne receyvede the bulle of the pope to

MS. Harl. 2261.

---

[1] *þe parische*] Parys, α., β., and γ.; Paris, Cx.
[2] *sle*, Cx.
[3] *Gaskuyn*, α.; *Gasquyn*, γ.
[4] *harvost ful*, γ.
[5] *swolewe*, β.; *swolwe*, γ.; *swolowe*, Cx.
[6] *Grosted*, α.; *Grostet*, β.; *Grosseteste*, γ.
[7] *ethiks*, β.
[8] *ynowȝ*, β.; *ynough*, Cx.
[9] From Cx.

contulerat canonicatum cum proxima vacatura in ecclesia Lincolniensi, quem[1] Robertus iste[2] admittere detrectavit,[3] rescribens papæ se nec velle ne debere tales ad curam animarum admittere qui se[4] nescirent regere.[5] Qua de causa Robertus iste[6] ad curiam vocatus et[7] excommunicatus, appellavit a curia Innocentii ad tribunal Christi. Unde contigit ut[8] post[9] mortem Roberti apparuit ipsi papæ de nocte in stratu suo[10] quiescenti quidam episcopus pontificalibus indutus sic inquiens, *Surge, miser, veni ad judicium.* Et statim cum baculo pastorali pupugit in latus sinistrum[11] usque ad cor; unde et lectisternium papæ repertum est mane cruentatum,[12] et ipse papa defunctus. Hac de causa quamvis Robertus ipse perspicuis sæpius effulserit[13] miraculis,[14] non est permissum[15] a curia ut canonizetur.[16]

Gratiæ MCCLV. Henrici III. XXXVIII.

Alexander quartus post Innocentium[17] sedit papa annis septem mensibus quatuor.[18] Pax est reformata inter

---

[1] *tamen*, A.B.

[2] *iste*] om. A.

[3] *noluit*, A.

[4] *se*, from A.B.; *ne*, MS.

[5] *se nescirent nec possent regere*, A.

[6] *Robertus iste*] om. A.

[7] *cum illi molestaretur appellavit constanter*, C.D.

[8] *quod Roberto in Anglia obeunte, audita est vox in curia papæ dicens, Surge, miser, veni ad judicium. Repertus est in crastino papa exanimis quasi cuspide baculi in latere percussus*, C.D.

[9] *ut post biennium mortis Roberti apparuit papæ*, &c., A.

[10] *in stratu suo*] om. A.

[11] *papam in latere sinistro*, A.

[12] *sanguinolentum*, A.

[13] *perspicuis fulsit*, A.

[14] *transferri tamen vel in sanctorum catalogo poni non est permissus*, C.D.

[15] *permissus*, A.

[16] *canonizari*, A.

[17] *quartum*, A.

[18] C.D. add: "Innocentius quartus obiit, qui Anglicanam ecclesiam nimis oppresserat, beneficia advenis conferendo, decimas ecclesiarum regi Henrico concedendo, taxationes molestas statuendo. Successit ei Alexander quartus annis septem mensibus quatuor."

chauntrie[1] whiche [þe][2] first voyded[3] in þe chirche of Lyncolne. And þis Robert wolde nou3t fonge[4] þe childe, but he wroot to þe pope and seide þat he neyþer wolde neyþer schulde putte[5] suche[6] to þe cure of soule þat kouþe not rule[7] hem[8] self. Þerfore þis Robert was sompned[9] to þe court and acursed: þan from Innocencius court he appeled to Cristes owne trone. Þan aftir Robert his deeþ, it happed in a ny3t þat þe pope lay in his bedde for[10] to reste,[11] a bisshop [apperede to hym arayed as a bisshop, and][12] spak to þe pope and seide, "Arise, wrecche, and come to þe doome;" and smot hym wiþ his cros in þe lift side ri3t to þe herte; þan amorwe to[13] popes bedde was i-founde[14] blody, and þe pope deed: herefore, þey Robert were a noble[15] man, and dede[16] often miracles, the court suffreþ[17] hym nou3t to be canonysed. After Innocencius þe fourþe Alexander was pope sevene 3ere and foure monthes. Pees is reformed bytwene kyng Henry and

TREVISA.

---

inducte the seide Frederyke into the prebendary of the churche of Lincoln. But the seide bischop seide moore over that he awe not ne wolde not admitte oon to the cure of sawles that cowthe not governe hym selfe. Wherefore this Robert called to the cowrte of Rome and excommunicate, appelled from the cowrte of Innocencius the pope unto the hie juge Allemy3hty God. Wherefore hit happede that the seide bischop apperede to that pope beynge in bedde, as hit is seide, after his dethe, induede with his vesture pontificalle, and seide to hym, "Aryse wrecche, and comme to juggemente;" and he prikkede hym anoon with his pastoralle staffe in the lyfte side unto the herte; and so the bedde was founde fulle of blodde, and the pope was dedde. Wherefore the bischoppes off Rome wylle not suffre that holy bischop to be canonizede, thau3he that he have doen mony miracles. Alexander the iiij^the^ did succede Innocencius. vij. yere and iiij. monethes. Also pease was

MS. HARL. 2261.

f. 380 b.

---

[1] *chanunrye*, α.; *chanonrye*, β. and Cx.
[2] From α.
[3] *wiþ þe first þat voyded*, β.; *wyþ þe vurste þat voyded*, γ.; *with the fyrste that voyded*, Cx.
[4] *receyve*, Cx.
[5] *fonge*, α., β., and γ.; *receyve*, Cx.
[6] *siche*, β.
[7] *reule*, γ.
[8] *hym*, Cx.
[9] *somned*, β.
[10] *for*] om. α.
[11] *bed and reste*, β.; *bedde and reste*, Cx.
[12] From α., β., γ., and Cx.
[13] *in the morow the*, Cx.
[14] *was founden*, β.
[15] *an holy*, α.
[16] *dude*, γ.
[17] *suffryd*, Cx.

Gratiæ MCCLVII. Henrici III. XL. Henricum regem et Lewelinum principem Walliæ[1] apud Montem Gomericum sub hac forma; quod Lewelinus et ejus successores deinceps vocarentur principes, et[2] facerent homagia[3] regibus Angliæ. Et rex Henricus recepit[4] ab eo tria[5] millia marcarum, super quibus rex fecit cartam suam[6] auctoritate papæ[7] roboratam.[8] Et cito post[9] tanta fames invaluit ut in principio autumni summa bladi ad sexdecim solidos[10] venderetur.[11] *Hæc fuit principalis causa guerræ baronum.*[12]

Gratiæ MCCLVIII. Henrici III. XLI. Hoc[13] anno[14] rex Henricus ita ditavit quatuor semifratres suos ut ipsi cæteros proceres despicerent;[15] qua de causa[16] convenientes apud Oxoniam in festo[17] Trinitatis, Symon de Monteforti comes Leycestre, Ricardus de Clara comes Gloverniæ, cum aliis optimatibus,[18] duodecim pares eligerunt, quorum consilio[19] ministros regis mutaverunt, et quatuor semifratres regis prædictos[20] ejecerunt de terra; quod quidem factum[21] occasio fuit guerræ[22] baronum.[23]

Gratiæ MCCLIX. Henrici III. XLII. Rex Henricus transfretavit in Franciam,[24] et facta pudenda concordia cum rege Francorum remisit ei Normanniam cum cæteris terris[25] transmarinis, ita quod sibi remaneret integra-

---

[1] *mediante Ottobono legato*, add. A.; *ad instantiam Octoboni legati*, add. C.D.

[2] *vocarentur principes et*] om. B.

[3] *quod homines terræ illius facerent illi homagia*, C.D.

[4] *cepit*, B.

[5] *triginta*, C.D.

[6] *suam*] om. A.

[7] *papali*, A.B.

[8] *sigillo legati corroboratam dominique papæ auctoritate roboratam*, C.D.

[9] *Et cito post*] om. A.

[10] *ad sexdecim solidos*] om. B.

[11] *pauperibus fame pereuntibus*, A.

[12] C.D. omit heading.

[13] A. omits heading, and has *Quo* in place of *Hoc*.

[14] B. omits *Hæc . . . anno*, and continues the sentence with *quo quidem tempore*.

[15] *parvipenderent*, A.

[16] *qua de causa*] *unde*, A., which transposes slightly.

[17] *Sanctæ*, B.

[18] *magnatibus*, A.

[19] *consilia*, A.

[20] *prædictos*] om. B.

[21] *quidem factum*] om. A.

[22] *belli*, A.

[23] *bellorum inter magnos*, C.D.

[24] *in Franciam*] om. A.

[25] *suis*, B.

Lewelyn prince of Wales at Mountgomorik,[1] in þis fourme, þat Lewelyn and his successoures after þat tyme schulde doon[2] homage to þe kynges of Engelond, and kyng Henry feng[3] of hym þre þowsand mark. Hereuppon kyng Henry made his chartre confermed by auctorite of þe pope. Sone þerafter fil so grete hunger þat a busshel[4] of corn was solde for sextene schillynges. Þat tyme kyng Henry made his [foure][5] half breþeren so riche þat þey despiseden[6] oþer lordes. Þerfore come to giders at Oxenforde at þe[7] feste of Trinite Symond Mounfort,[8] erle of Leycestre, Richard de Clare, erle of Gloucetre, and oþere lordes, and chees twelve peeres, and by counsaille of hem þese chaungede þe kynges mynistres and putte þese[9] kynges [foure][5] half [breþeren][6] out of þe londe: þat dede was cause of þe barouns werre. Kyng Henry seilede into Fraunce, and made schameliche acord wiþ þe kyng of Fraunce, and forȝaf hym Normandie wiþ oþer londes of byȝonde[10] þe[11] see, þat hym schulde leve holiche[12] þe lond of

Trevisa.

---

reformed this yere betwene kynge Henricus and Lewelyn prynce of Wales at mownte Gomeryke in this forme, that the seide prynce of Wales and his successours from that tyme scholde do homage to the kynges of Ynglonde. Also kynge Henricus receyvede of hym iij. M. marke, on whiche thynges the kynge made a chartoure roborate by auctorite of the pope. In whiche tyme kynge Henricus made so ryche his iiij. halfe breþer to hym, that thei despisede alle other gentylle men of the realme. For whiche cause Symon Mowntefort, erle of Leicestre, Ricardus of Clare, erle of Glowcestre, with mony oþer noble estates, mette at Oxenforde in the feste of the Trinite, and electe xij. discrete men by the cownsaile of whom thei chaunged the ministres off þe kynge and expellede the iiij. halfe breþer of the kynge from the londe. Kynge Henricus saylede into Fraunce in this yere, and makynge a concorde to be schamede with the kynge of Fraunce, delyverede to hym Normandy with other provinces over see in this condicion, that he myȝhte rejoyce holly the cuntre of Gascoigne. Urbanus the

MS. Harl. 2261.

---

[1] *Mont gomeryk*, Cx.
[2] *do*, β.
[3] *vyng*, γ.; *toke*, Cx.
[4] *boschel*, γ.
[5] From α., β., γ., and Cx.
[6] *despysed*, Cx.
[7] þe] om. Cx.
[8] *Symon de Montfort*, β.; *de Montford*, Cx.
[9] *potte þues*, γ.
[10] *byȝunde*, γ.
[11] þe] om. β.
[12] *hoole*, Cx.

liter terra[1] Vasconiæ.[2] Urbanus quartus post Alexandrum sedit papa annis fere quatuor. Hic prius extiterat patriarcha Jerosolomitanus. Deinde auxilio crucesignatorum fugavit exercitum Romanorum quem Manfredus in patrimonium sancti Petri intruserat. Hic etiam papa[3] contulit Karolo fratri regis Franciæ regnum Siciliæ si[4] Manfredum inde expelleret; quod et factum est.[5] Circa illud tempus[6] apud Teoksbury quidam Judæus per diem Sabbati cecidit in latrinam, nec permisit se extrahi ob[7] reverentiam sui Sabbati. Sed[8] Ricardus de Clara comes Gloverniæ non permisit eum extrahi die Dominica ob reverentiam sui Sabbati et sic mortuus est.[9]

Versus.

Dum[10] purgat ventrem Salmon Judæus olentem,
In foveam cecidit; "Hodie non abstrahar," inquit.
Refertur comiti: comes subridet et inquit,
"Sabbata nostra quidem Salmon servabit ibidem."[11]

Cap. XXXVII.

[*De bello inter Henricum regem et proceres Angliæ.*]

Hoc[12] anno suborta discordia inter regem Henricum et proceres Angliæ super ordinationibus[13] in parliamento Oxoniæ constitutis,[14] nec tamen ab ipso rege observatis,

---

[1] *terra*] om. A.

[2] C.D. omit *ita . . . Vasconiæ.*

[3] *papa*] om. A.

[4] *si*] ita ut, A.

[5] C.D. omit *quod . . . est.*

[6] *Eo tempore*, A.

[7] *propter*, B.; *propter honorem*, A.

[8] *Sed*] qua de causa, A.

[9] *De cujus obitu quidam metricus sic cecinit:*

Sabbata sancta colo, de stercore surgere nolo;
Sabbata nostra quidem dum sunt remanebis ibidem, B.

[10] *Dum . . . ibidem*] om. A.

[11] These verses are written in the margin, but in an ancient hand, though not that of the original scribe, and are marked as to be introduced into the text.

[12] A. transposes this sentence slightly.

[13] *legibus et consuetudinibus*, C.D.

[14] *renovatis*, C.D.

Gaskoyne. After Alexander þe ferþe Urban was pope nygh foure ȝere. Þis was first patriark of Jerusalem; þan by help of hem þat hadde i-take þe signe of þe crosse he chasede þe oost of Rome þat Mainfredus[1] hadde i-putte in seint Petres lond. Also þe pope ȝaf þe kyngdom of Cecile[2] to Charles þat was þe kynges broþer of Fraunce, ȝif he putte þens Mainfredus; and so it was i-doo. Aboute þat tyme at Teukesbury a Jewe fel[3] into a gonge in a Satirday, and wolde suffre no man drawe hym up for reverence of his holy day. But Richard of Clare, erle of Gloucestre, wolde suffre no man drawe hym up on þe[4] morwe[5] in þe Sonday for reverence of his holy day, and so þe Jewe was dede.[6] TREVISA.

Capitulum tricesimum octavum.[7]

THIS ȝere fil strif bytwene þe kyng and þe lordes of Engelond, ffor þe kyng wolde not holde þe ordenaunces þat were i-ordeyned in þe parlement at Oxenforde. At[8] seynt Ioones[9]

---

iiij[the] succedid pope Alexander allemoste iiij. yere; this pope was patriarke of Jerusalem afore, whiche grawntede to Charls broþer of the kynge of Fraunce the realme of Sicille, if he cowthe expelle Mainfredus, and so he did. Abowte this tyme a Jewe felle into a sege at Theoskesbery on theire sabbathe day, and wolde not suffre to be drawen from the sege in that day for the reverence of theire sabbat. And Richard of Clare, erle of Glowcestre, beynge þer þat tyme, and understondynge and knowynge of that Jewe, wolde not suffre hym to be taken furthe on Sonneday for reverence of his sabbat day, and so the Jewe diede in the sege. MS. HARL. 2261.

Capitulum tricesimum septimum.

A GRETE discorde sprong betwene kynge Henry and gentyllmen of Ynglonde of certeyne constitucions, ordeynede in the parliamente at Oxenforde, not observede by the kynge: the f. 381 a.

---

[1] *Manifredus*, β., et infra; *Manyfredus*, Cx., et infra.
[2] *of Cecile*] Cicil, α.; Sicil, β. and γ.; Scicile, Cx.
[3] *vul*, γ.
[4] *on þe*] at, α.
[5] *a morowe*, β.; *op a morowe*, γ.
[6] *the Jewe deyd*, Cx.
[7] *Cap.* 37, Cx.
[8] *aboute*, α., β., and Cx.
[9] *John his*, α.

proceres ipsi circa nativitatem[1] beati Johannis Baptistæ tenuerunt in custodia episcopum Herefordiæ, priorem Weneloci, et quosdam alios prælatos; alienigenas cæteros autem[2] regi propinquiores, ab Anglia fugaverunt, quorum et[3] bona occupaverunt.[4] Quas ob causas[5] rex Henricus ejecit universitatem[6] de Oxonia. Tandem rex et barones posuerunt se quoad prædictos articulos in ordinatione regis Franciæ; qui etiam[7] omnes articulos illos reprobavit. Magnates tamen Angliæ spreto[8] ejus irrationabili decreto, perstiterunt in[9] inceptis.[10] Convenientes igitur proceres qui providentias prædictas sustinuerunt, apud Lewes in Southsexia pridie idus Maii bello commisso[11] ceperunt regem Henricum, et fratrem ejus[12] Ricardum ducem Cornubiæ, et Edwardum regis primogenitum, cum aliis magnis, et sic regem ad obser-

Oratiæ MCCLXIV. Henrici III. XLVII.

---

[1] *festum sancti*, B.
[2] *vero*, A.
[3] *et*] om. A.
[4] *sumpserunt*, A.
[5] *Quibus de causis*, A.
[6] *cleri*, A.; *ubi*, B.; *cleri de*, C.D.
[7] *etiam*] om. A.
[8] *scripto*, B.
[9] *in*] om. B.
[10] *incepto*, A.
[11] *Convenerunt igitur proceres Angliæ una cum Londoniensibus qui providencias Oxoniæ sustinuerunt apud Lewes in Southsexia pridie idibus Maii, ubi bello commisso*, C.D.
[12] *suum*, B.; *suum ducem*, A.

tyde[1] þe nativite þe lordes helde[2] in warde[3] þe bisshop of Herford, þe prioure of Wenlokke, and oþer prelates þat were aliens. Opere þat were next þe kyng þey chasede out of Engelond, and occupied her good[4] and catell,[5] þerfore Henry putte þe universite out of Oxenforde. At þe laste þe kyng and þe barouns[6] putte hemself touchynge þese[7] articles[8] in þe ordynaunce of þe kyng of Fraunce, and he reproved[9] þese articles everiche one; bote þe lordes of Engelond forsook[10] his unskilful dome, and stood forþ as þey hadde bygonne. Þanne lordes þat mayntened þese ordynaunces come to gidres at Lewes in Soupsex þe fourtenþe day of May, and ȝaf a bataille, and took kyng Henry and his sone[11] Richard duke of Cornewayle, and Edward kyng Henry his eldest sone, and many

TREVISA.

---

seide gentillemen toke the bischop off Herforde, the prior of Wenlok, and oþer prelates of aliauntes, abowte the feste of seynte Iohn Baptist, and put þeim in sure kepynge, and chased from Ynglonde oþer men nye to the kynge, the goodes of whom thei occupiede. But at the laste the kynge and the barons put theyme as unto the seide articles in the ordinaunce of the kynge of Fraunce, whiche reprovede alle the articles. Nevertheles the seide gentilmen despised his iuggement, and contynuede in the thynges begunne. Abowte this tyme, in the day folowynge the feste ad Vincula sancti Petri, a Cristen childe, Hewe by name, as of viij. yere in age, was crucifiede of the Iewes at Lincolne. Firste the tunge of that childe was putte thro his teithe, after that the interialle partes of his body were extracte, puttynge hurdes or the residu of line in his wombe, and prikkede thro alle the body with nalles, neldes, and pynnes. To whiche dede horrible as a multitude of Iewes infinite were gedrede from alle the cites and borowes of Ynglonde, and from behynde see also: and so mony of theyme were drawen, and mony were hongede. The noble men of Ynglonde whiche sustenede the foreseide constitucions, mette at Lewes in Sowthesex, ȝafe a soore batelle to the kynge, and toke hym with Ricardus duke of Cornewaile his broþer and Edwarde the firste sonne of þe kynge, and mony oþer noblemen; and

MS. HARL. 2261.

---

[1] *tyde*] feste, β. and Cx.
[2] *hulde*, γ.
[3] *word*, α.
[4] *goodes*, α., β., and Cx.
[5] *catayll*, Cx.
[6] *barouns*, α.
[7] *the*, Cx.
[8] *þues artykels*, γ.
[9] *repreved*, β. and Cx.
[10] *vorsouke*, γ.
[11] *broþer*, α. and β.; *broder*, Cx.

vantias illas coegerunt; Edwardum quoque[1] per octo menses apud Hereford[2] in custodia[3] tenuerunt. Et interim[4] data est provincia Cestrensis[5] Symoni de Monte Forti comiti Leycestriæ. *Qualiter Edwardus filius regis evasit de custodia.*[6] [7] In vigilia Sanctæ Trinitatis Edwardus filius regis[8] evasit de custodia Herefordiæ ope domini Rogeri de Mortuo Mari. Nam licentiatus fuerat causa solatii dextrarium[9] quendam agitare, et sic evasit usque ad monticulum de Dunemor,[10] ubi vexilla prædicti Rogeri viderat explicata.[11] Post hoc[12] circa vincula[13] sancti[14] Petri commissum bellum atrox[15] apud Evesham inter regem et barones, ubi per dolosam subtractionem[16] comitis Gloverniæ, qui prius steterat cum Symone, Symon ipse justus cum multis præclaris personis occubuit. De quo fert fama celebris quod multis post obitum radiaverit[17] miraculis,[18] quæ propter metum regium non prodeunt[19] in publicum. Interim milites Symonis tenuerunt castrum[20] de Kenylworth[21] per dimidium annum contra totius Angliæ exercitum. *De pontificibus Romanorum.*[22] Clemens quartus post Urbanum sedit papa annis quasi

Gratiæ MCCLXV. Henrici III. XLVIII.

---

[1] *quoque*] om. A.
[2] *Herefordiam*, B.
[3] *carcere*, A.
[4] *interim*] om. A.
[5] *Cestriæ*, B.
[6] A.B.C. omit heading.
[7] *Hoc anno*, B.
[8] *Henrici*, B.
[9] *unum dextrarium*, A.
[10] *Dunemor*, from A.B.; *Dunior*, MS.
[11] *fuerant applicata*, A.
[12] *Postmodum*, A.
[13] *ad vincula*, B.
[14] *sancti*] om. A.
[15] *atrox*, om. A.
[16] *ubi dolosa subtractione*, A.
[17] *radiavit*, A.
[18] *sed monachi de Evesham inter quos Simon tumulatur propter regium metum, nec tumbam ostendere, nec miracula audent publicare*, C.D.
[19] *producunt*, A.
[20] *Cestriæ contra regis exercitum donec constaret eis certissime de domini sui nece, sed et castrum*, C.D.
[21] *Kenelwroch*, A.D.
[22] A.B. omit heading; C.D. omit heading and place this passage further down at p. 254; A. places it after the passage respecting the taking of Antioch.

oþere grete, and so þey compelled þe kyng to holde þese ordynaunces þat þey hadde i-made, and helde Edward eyȝte monþes at Herforde in warde; þat tyme þe province of Chestre was i-ȝeve [to][1] Symond de Mounford erle of Chestre.[2] In Trinite even[3] þe kynges sone Edward at Herforde scapede out of warde by help of sire Roger Mortemer;[4] for he hadde leve by cause of solas to prike a coursere, and so he scapede anon to þe hille[5] of Donnemore, þere he sigh[6] þis Roger Mortemer his baner displayed. Herafter aboute Lammes[7] was an hard bataille at Evesham bytwene þe kyng and þe barouns, þer wiþ[8] gileful[9] withdrawynge of þe erle of Gloucestre, þat hylde wiþ Symound toforehonde, þis riȝtful Symond was dede and meny oþer noble men.[10] Of hym greet fame telleþ þat he dede[11] many myracles, but þey were nouȝt i-schewed for drede of þe kyng. Þanne Symondes[12] knyȝtes helde þe castel of Kelyngworþe[13] half a ȝere aȝenst þe oost of [al][14] Engelond. After Urban þe ferþe Clement was pope as it were foure ȝere. After

Trevisa.

---

so thei compellede the kynge to the observaunce of the seide constitucions. But the seide gentillemen kepede Edwarde son to the kynge in prison at Herforde by viij. monethes, whiche escapede from kepynge in the vigile of the Trinite folowynge by helpe of Roger Mortymare. For the seide Edwarde hade licence to ryde a stede for cause of solace, and so he escapede to the mownte of Dunemore, where he see the baneres of Roger Mortymare displayede. And after that, abowte ad Vincula sancti Petri, a soore batelle was hade at Evisham, betwene the kynge and the barons, where ryhteuous Symon erle of Leicestre diede by the subtile subtraccion of the erle of Gloucestre, whiche was on his parte afore. Of whiche Symon mony men reherse that he schewede mony miracles after his dethe, whiche peple durste not expresse for drede of the kynge. After that kny3htes of the seide Symon Mowntefort kepede the castelle of Conilworthe ageyne the hoste of alle Ynglonde by halfe a yere. Clement the iiij^the^ did succede pope Urban as iiij. yere

MS. Harl. 2261.

f. 381 b.

---

[1] From Cx.
[2] *Leycetre*, α.
[3] *In þe Trinite eve*, β.
[4] *Mortmere*, γ.
[5] *hulle*, γ.
[6] *seeþ*, α.; *sawe*, Cx.
[7] *Lammasse*, β. and Cx.; *Lambmas*, γ,
[8] *wiþ*] by, β. and Cx.
[9] *by gylfol*, γ.
[10] *personnes*, Cx.
[11] *a dude*, γ.
[12] *Symon his*, α.
[13] *Kenelworþe*, α. and Cx.; *Kenylworþ*, β.
[14] From β. and γ.

quatuor. Post quem vacavit sedes papalis[1] annis tribus mensibus duobus Hic Clemens prius uxorem et liberos habuit; deinde famosus[2] advocatus, et præcipuus cum rege Franciæ consiliarius. Qui et mortua uxore factus est Podiensis episcopus, deinde Narbonensis archiepiscopus; tandem Sabinensis episcopus et cardinalis missus fuit in Angliam legatus,[3] ubi absens electus fuit in papam, et[4] extunc pia vita sua et devota oratione creditur multas ecclesiæ tribulationes extinxisse. Hic etiam cum Conradinus ad debellandum Karolum[5] Siciliam intraret, sermone publico prædixit factum Conradini fore anullandum. *De adventu Octoboni legati in Angliam.*[6] Hoc anno[8] circa festum Omnium Sanctorum venit Octobonus legatus in Angliam, plurima in[8] cleri et ecclesiæ utilitatem statuens. Cujus consilio rex Henricus concessit exheredatis qui in eum surrexerant ut possent[9] terras suas redimere, excepto comite Derbeyæ, Roberto de Ferariis, quia[10] plus cæteris regem amaricasse videbatur. Unde et anno sequenti comes ille infestavit regem. Sed captus est apud Chesterfeld et exheredatus donec ipse aut heredes aut aliquis pro eis uno die posset solvere quinquaginta millia librarum.[11] Octobonus[12] legatus apud Londonias denunciavit Londo-

Gratiæ MCCLXVI. Henrici III. XLIX.

---

[1] *papalis*] om. A.
[2] *fuit*, A.
[3] A. slightly transposes.
[4] *et*] om. A.
[5] *Carolum*, A.
[6] A.B.C.D, omit heading.
[7] *Post hoc*, A.
[8] *ad*, B.
[9] *poterant*, B.
[10] *qui*, A.
[11] 10,000 *librarum pro redemptione terrarum solvere posset*, C.D.
[12] *Ottobonus . . . papa*] om A.C.D.

hym þe popes see voyded þre ȝere and two monþes. Þis Clement had first wyf and children, and was afterward a famous avok[1] and cheef counseillour[2] wiþ þe kyng of Fraunce. Whan his wyf was dede he was i-made bisshop of Pue, and þan archebisshop of Norbone,[3] and þanne bisshop [of][4] Sabyne and cardinal and legat i-sente into Engelond; þere while he was absent he was chose pope; þerafter, as men troweþ, wiþ his mylde levynge in[5] holy dedes[6] he quenched[7] many tribulaciouns of holy cherche. Also whan Conradinus [wente into Cicil[8] to werre aȝenst Charles, þis pope tolde opounliche in a sermoun þat Conradinus][9] dede schulde come to nouȝt. Þat ȝere aboute all Halewentide, Octobon þe legat come into Engelond and ordeyned many þinges for þe profite of holy chirche. By his counsail kyng Henry grauntede þat he[10] moste raunsone her londes þat were disherited for þe arisynge aȝenst þe kyng, outake þe erle of Derby, Roberd de Ferrare,[11] for it semed þat he hadde most greved þe kyng. Þanne[12] þe next ȝere þerafter he greved þe kyng,[12] and was i-take and disherited[13] forto he oþer his heires or som who for hem myȝte paye[14] in oon day fifty powsand pound. At Londoun Octobon þe legat denounced acorsed[15] þe Londoners [and þe purten-

TREVISA.

---

after the dethe of whom the seete of the pope was vacante iij. yere and ij. monethes. Octobonus, a legate of the pope, come abowte this tyme into Ynglonde, ordeynynge mony thynges to the utilite of the churche; by cownsayle of whom kynge Henricus grawntede to men that hade loste theire enheritaunce by rysynge ageyne hym, that thei myȝhte redeme theire londes, the erle of Derby and Robert Ferrarius excepte, whiche men hade vexede hym soore. Neverthelesse the seide erle trowblede the kynge in the yere folowynge, but he was taken at Chestrefelde, and put from his enheritaunce tylle his heirs, or oon of þeym, scholde pay to the kynge in oon day 1^{ti} M. ^{ti}. Octobonus the legate denowncede men of London and of Chichestre to be

MS. HARL. 2261.

---

[1] *advoket*, α.; *avocat*, β.; *avoket*, γ.; *advocate*, Cx.
[2] *cheef of counseyls*, Cx.
[3] *Narbon*, β. and Cx.
[4] From β., γ., and Cx.
[5] *in*] and, β.
[6] *bedes*, α., β., and γ.; *and hooly bedes*, Cx.
[7] *aqueynt*, β. and Cx.; *aqueynte*, γ.
[8] *Sicil*, β. and γ.
[9] From α., β., γ., and Cx.
[10] *þei*, β.; *they*, Cx.
[11] *Ferrer*, Cx.
[12] *þanne . . . kyng*] om. α., but the words are in Cx.
[13] *deshérytet*, γ,, et supra.
[14] *myȝte paye for hem*, α.
[15] *acorsed*] om. α., β., and Cx.

nienses et Portuenses in consilio Clementis papæ fore excommunicatos, quibus interdictum Christianitatis imposuit. Deinde episcopos Londoniensem et Cicestrensem ab officio suspendit donec per papam absolverentur. Qua de causa Londonienses ipsum Octobonum obsederunt in turri Londoniæ quousque multi episcopi armati ipsum educerent. Hic itaque Octobonus per triennium moræ suæ in Angliæ sumpsit decimam ecclesiæ. Et sic recedens ex diacono factus est papa.[1] Hoc anno Soldanus Babyloniæ Armeniam vastavit,[2] Antiochiam cepit, indigenas occidit, et ipsam urbem tam celebrem destruxit.[3] Gratiæ MCCLXVII. Henrici III. L. [4] Rex[5] Henricus[6] cum exercitu suo demoratus est extra Londoniam apud Stretfort[7] donec pax inter ipsum et barones reformaretur.[8] Gratiæ MCCLXVIII. Henrici III. LI. Recessit Octobonus[9] de Anglia cum immenso[10] thesauro, et Edwardus filius regis cum multis aliis[11] cruce signatus est. Gratiæ MCCLXIX. Henrici III. LII. Et Clemens papa obiit. Translatio sancti Edwardi regis et confessoris celebrata est quarto idus Octobris sub rege Henrico.[12] Et datus est regi vicesimus denarius

---

[1] See note 12, page 252.

[2] *Armenia vastata*, A.

[3] *cepit Antiochiam urbem celebrem, indigenas necavit, urbem destruxit*, A.

[4] A. inserts: "Archiepiscopus "Eboracensis et alii episcopi ar- "mati adeuntes turrem Londoniæ "eduxerunt Octobonum legatum "ibidem obsessum."

[5] *Rex . . annuente papa*] om. C.D.

[6] *Henricus*] autem, A.

[7] *Stredford*, B.

[8] *Signatus est papa Clemens obiit*, A., by error of scribe.

[9] *legatus*, A.

[10] *magno*, A.

[11] *aliis . . . obiit*] om. A.

[12] *Translatio . . . Henrico*] abbreviated in A.

TREVISA.

aunce[1] acorsed],[2] and seide þat þey were acursed in pope Clementes counsaile, and he enterdited hem and forbeden[3] hem þe companye of Cristen men; þan he suspended þe bisshoppes of Londoun and of Chichestre of her office forto þey were assoyled of þe pope, þerfore þe[4] Londoners byseged Octoboun in þe toure of Londoun for to[5] many bisshops i-armed hadden[6] hym awey. Þis Octoboun took dymes of holy cherche for þre ȝere while he was in Engelond, and so he wente his way, and of a deken cardynal he was made pope. Þat [yere][7] þe sowdan of Babiloyne destroyed Ermonye,[8] and took Antiochia, and slouȝ þe men þat wonede þerynne, and destroyed þat[9] noble citee. Kyng Henry lay wiþ his oost withouten Londoun at Stretforde, forto pees was made bytwene hym and þe barouns. Octoboun went out of Engelond wiþ huge tresoure;[10] and Edward þe kynges sone and many oþere toke þe signe of þe cros. Pope Clement is dede; and seynt Edward kyng and confessoure is i-translated þe fourþe day of Octobre in kyng Henries tyme. And kyng Henry hadde þe twentiþe[11] peny of

---

MS. HARL. 2261.

excommunicate in the cownsaile of Clement þe pope to whom he ioynede the enterdite of Cristianite. That doen he suspende the bischoppes of London and of Chichestre untille that thei were absolvede by the pope; wherefore men of London segede the bischop in the towre or legate,[12] untylle that mony bischoppes come in armoure and brouȝhte hym furthe. The soldan of Babilony wastede Armeny in this yere, and destroyede the noble cite of Antiochia, sleenge the peple inhabitynge hit. Kynge Henricus taryede with his hoste at Stratforde, with owte London, untylle that pease was reformede betwene hym and his barons. Octobonus the legate departede from Ynglonde with grete treasure, and Edwarde, the eldeste sonne of the kynge was merkede with the crosse, and Clement þe pope diede. The translacion of seynte Edwarde, kynge and confessoure, was hade and made in this yere, in the iiij[the] idus of October, under kynge Henricus; and þe xx[ti] peny of laymen

---

[1] *portnens*, β.; *portnens acursyd*, Cx.
[2] From α., β., and γ.
[3] *forbede*, β.; *vorbud*, γ.; *forbode*, Cx
[4] *þe*] om. α.
[5] *till*, Cx.
[6] *had*, Cx.
[7] From Cx.; *ȝere*, β.
[8] *Armonie*, β.; *Armeni*, γ.
[9] *þe*, α. and Cx.
[10] *tresorye*, α.
[11] *twentyest*, Cx.
[12] Sic in MS.

de bonis laicorum et decima [1] cleri per triennium annuente papa. Hoc anno [2] Edwardus [3] regis primogenitus cum uxore sua adiit Terram Sanctam. Gregorius x^us^ post Clementem sedit papa annis quatuor. Qui tertio papatus sui anno pro utilitate Terræ Sanctæ, quam personaliter visitare intendebat, apud Lugdunum Galliæ solemne coegit jejunium,[4] in quo Græcorum et Tartarorum nuncii affuerunt;[5] Græci ad unitatem ecclesiæ redire promiserunt; Tartari fuerunt baptizati. Convenerunt ibi sexcenti episcopi, mille prælati. Ideo dixit quidam. *Versus.*[6]

Gratiæ MCCLXX. Henrici III. LIII.

MCCLXXIII. Henrici III. LVI.

Gregorius denus congregat omne genus.[7]

Ibi [8] statutum est illud insigne et a retro sæculis insolitum, quod scilicet omnes rectores curati deinceps forent sacerdotes. Quod nulli hominum liceret deinceps [9] decimas suas [10] ad libitum ut antea ubi vellet assignare, sed matrici ecclesiæ omnes decimas persolvere. Ipse quoque Gregorius decimam sexennalem universali ecclesiæ [11] imposuit, pluralitatem beneficiorum curatorum damnavit. Aliquos [12] status de ordinibus mendicantium

---

[1] *decimus*, B.
[2] *Hoc anno*] om. A.
[3] This passage "*Edwardus*, &c." follows immediately after Clemens, &c. in C.D.
[4] *consilium*, A.B.C.D.
[5] *fuerunt*, B.
[6] *Versus*] om. A.B.
[7] *genus*] om. B.
[8] *ubi*, B.
[9] *de cetero liceret*, B.
[10] *suas*] om. A.
[11] *aliquos ordines vagos cassavit*, C.D.
[12] *Aliquos . . consimiles*] om. C.D.

lewed men [1] catel and þe dymes [2] of holy chirche for þre ȝere by assent of þe pope. Þis ȝere [Edward],[3] þe kynges eldest sone, and his wyf, wente to þe Holy Lond. After Clement, þe tenþe Gregory was pope foure ȝere. Þe pridde ȝere of his poperiche he made a [4] counsaile at Londoun [5] for profit of þe Holy Lond, for he caste to wende þider in his owne persone. In þat counseile were messangers of þe Tartars and of þe Grekes: þe Grees byheet [6] þat þey wolde come aȝen to þe unyte of holy cherche. Þere were sixe hondred bisshoppes and a þowsand prelates, þerfore oon seide: TREVISA

"Gregorius denus congregat omne genus."

He wolde by þis vers [7] mene þat þe tenþe Gregory gadreþ alle manere of [8] men. Þere was ordeyned þat noble statute þat was nevere i-herd toforehonde, þat alle persones wiþ cure schulde be preostes [9] after þat tyme, and þat after þat tyme no man schulde have leve to assigne his teþynges as toforehonde [10] at his owne wille, but all teþynge [11] schulde be payde to þe moder chirche. [Also þis Gregory charged holy chirche wiþ dymes [2] for sixe ȝere. He dampned pluralite of benefices wiþ cure. Also he proved som states of þe ordres of beggers, as Prechoures and

---

was ȝiffen to the kynge, and the x^the^ peny thro alle the clergy. Edwarde son of the kynge, takynge his wife with hym, wente to the Holy Londe in this yere. Gregory the x^the^ succedid pope Clemente iiij. yere, whiche kepede a solenne cownsaile at Lugdune for the utilite of the Holy Londe, whom he intendede to visitte in his awne person, in whiche cownsayle þe messangers of þe Grekes and of the Tartarous were; and the men of Grece promysede to returne to the unyte of the feithe, and the Tartarous were baptisede, in whiche cownsaile vj. c. bischoppes were, and a M. prelates. Where a noble, a notable decrete was ordeyned, that alle persons of the churche and governoures scholde be prestes from that tyme, and that men scholde not ȝiffe tythes after theire pleasure, as thei usede afore, but unto theire moder churche. Also he condempnede pluralites of benefices with cure, and approbate certeyne of the ordres of beggers, as freres Precheours and Minors; and some he suffrede, MS. HARL. 2261. f. 382 a.

---

[1] *meanus*, β.
[2] *dismes*, γ.
[3] From α., β., γ., and Cx.
[4] *a*] om. α.
[5] *Lugdune*, α. and γ.; *Lugdun*, β.; *Lugdnum*, Cx.
[6] *byhyte*, γ.; *promysed*, Cx.
[7] *these versus*, Cx.
[8] *of*] om. α. and Cx.
[9] *prustes*, γ.
[10] *as he dyd byfore*, Cx.
[11] *tueþyng*, γ.

approbavit, utpote Prædicatores et Minores. Aliquos toleravit, utpote Carmelitas et Augustinenses. Aliquos reprobavit, ut Saxinos,[1] qui intitulantur de Pœnitentia sive de Valle Viridi et consimiles. Hoc etiam[2] anno obiit Henricus rex Angliæ,[3] die sancti Edmundi Pontiniacensis. Et juste, ut creditur, vitam suam in ejus festo terminavit, quem injuste dum viveret vexavit. Regnaverat autem quinquaginta quinque annis. Eo[4] etiam anno defuncto Bonefacio Cantuariensi archiepiscopo, electus est prior Cantuariensis ecclesiæ in archiepiscopum, sed [ejus electione][5] cassata Gregorius papa promovit fratrem Robertum de Culwardby[6] de ordine Prædicatorum, sacræ theologiæ professorem, qui inter cætera industriæ suæ opera insignes notulas [super][7] Prescianum et super logicam composuit. Cito post hoc[8] Lodowycus rex Franciæ cum duobus filiis suis et rege Navarræ ac prælatis plurimis Terram Sanctam iterato adiit, sed gravi infirmitate circa maritima terræ illius invalescente, exercitus Christianorum, qui fuit ducentorum millium, dispersus est.[9] Nam legatus papæ, qui fuit gubernator peregrinorum in Terra Sancta, et ipse rex Franciæ de-

---

[1] *Saccionos*, A.; *Saccinos*, B.
[2] *etiam*] om. A.
[3] *in*, B.
[4] *Eodem*, B.
[5] From B.; *'eo*, MS.
[6] *Culuarby*, A.; *Kilwardby*, B.
[7] *super*] from A.B.
[8] *hæc*, B.
[9] *est*] om. B.

Menoures; and some he suffred, as Carmes and Austynes; and some he reproved, as sacke freres[1] þat were y-cleped de Pœnitentia and de Valle Viridi and opere suche.][2] Also þis 3ere deide kyng Henry of Engelond on seynt Edmondes day of Pounteney,[3] and men trowep þat he skilfully endede his lyf in his day, for he hadde i-travailled hym wrongfulliche while he was onlyve. He hadde i-regned fyve and fifty 3ere. Also þis 3ere deyde Bonefas archebisshop of Canturbury, and þe priour of Caunterbury was i-chose archebisshop. But þe pope fordede[4] þat eleccioun, and made archebisshop frere Robert of Culwarby[5] of þe ordre of Prechoures and maister of dyvynyte: among his oþer nobil writynges he made nobil writynge uppon Precian and uppon[6] Logyk. Sone hereafter Lowys kyng of Fraunce and his two sones, þe kyng of Naverne, and many prelates went eft to þe Holy Lond; but by greet siknesse and evel, þat was strong in þe see costes of þat lond, þe Cristene oost, þat was of two hondred þowsand, [was][7] deperblede[8] and to-schedde. For þe popes legat þat was rulere[9] of pilgremages[10] in þe Holy Lond deyde, and þe kyng of

Trevisa.

as the Carmelytes and Austyns; and somme he reprobate, as frers Saccines, namede of penaunce or of grene vale. Kynge Henricus diede in this yere in the feste of seynte Edmunde Pontiniacense, and as men suppose he diede by his merite in that feste, for he vexede the seide bischop oftetymes unry3hteously in his lyfe; after that he hade reignede lv. yere. Also Bonefacius archebischop of Cawnterbery dedde in this yere, Ricardus prior of Cawnterbery was electe into archebischop; but þe pope made voide that eleccion, and made Robert Culwarby metropolitan, doctor of divinite of þe ordre of frere Precheours. And Lodowicus kynge of Fraunce wente soone after to the Holy Londe, with his ij. sonnes, and with the kynge of Navarria, and mony other prelates; but the seide kynge of Fraunce laborynge in extreme infirmite abowte the costes of the Holy Londe, the hoste whiche was of ij^{c} M. Cristen peple was dispersede, for the legate of the pope, whiche was govenoure of the pilgremes in the Holy Londe, and the kynge of Fraunce

MS. Harl 2261.

[1] *Sacfreres*, β., γ., and Cx.
[2] From α., β., γ., and Cx.
[3] *Pontenay*, Cx.
[4] *fordide*, β.; *vordude*, γ.; *forbadde*, Cx.
[5] *Kilwarby*, β.; *Kylwerby*, Cx.
[6] *oppon*, γ.
[7] From β. and γ.
[8] *disparpled*, β. and Cx.; *dysparpled*, γ.
[9] *reuler of pylgryms*, γ.
[10] *pylgryms*, Cx.

functi sunt. Ipse nempe rex dum [1] decumberet infirmus orabat jugiter in hunc modum: "Fac nos, quaesumus, "Domine,[2] prospera mundi despicere, et nulla ejus ad- "versa formidare." Et pro populo quidem sic orabat: "Esto, Domine, plebi tuae sanctificator [3] et custos;" [4] et in fine adjecit: "Introibo in domum tuam, Domine, "adorabo ad templum sanctum [5] tuum." [6]

Cap. XXXVIII.

De regibus Anglorum [et multa de pontificibus Romanis].[7]

Gratiæ MCCLXII. Edwardi Primo. Edwardus filius regis Henrici quarto [8] nonas Augusti rediit de Terra Sancta in Angliam, et coronatus est [9] quartodecimo kalendas Septembris a Roberto Cantuariensi.[10] Et in crastino suæ coronationis recepit publice homagium et fidelitatem de Alexandro rege Scotiæ.[11] Deinde secundo anno leges edidit.[12] Innocentius quintus post Gregorium decimum [13] sedit papa mensibus quinque. Hic prius vocabatur Petrus Tarentasius,[14] de ordine Prædicatorum, theologiæ [15] doctor; cui

Gratiæ MCCLXV. Edwardi III.

---

[1] *dum*] antequam, A.

[2] *fac no qūis dñe*, A.; *fac nos q's do'n*, B.

[3] *sanctificator*] from A.; *edificator*, B.

[4] *etc*, add. C.D.

[5] *sanctum*] om. A.

[6] *et confitebor nomini tuo*, add. C.D.

[7] A.B. omit heading.

[8] *tertio*, B.

[9] *apud Westmonasterium*, add. C.D.

[10] *archiepiscopo*, add. B.C.D.

[11] C.D. substitute: "Edwardus "rex leges plures renovavit et edidit. "Gregorius nonus obiit, Innocen- "tius quintus successit, mensibus "quinque sedit, &c."

[12] *condidit*, B.

[13] *decimum*] om. A.

[14] *de Tarento*, C.D.

[15] *eximius*, C.D.

Fraunce also. Þis kyng while he lay seke prayed besiliche in " þis manere: "Lord, we prayeþ [1] þat þou make us despise þe " welþe of þis world, and drede none of his meschèves." [2] And for þe peple he prayde in þis manere: " Be þou, Lord, " to þyne owne peple [3] halwer [4] and wardeyne;" and putte to him [5] at þe ende " I schal entre [6] into þyn hous, and I schal " praye to þyn holy temple." TREVISA.

Capitulum tricesimum nonum.[7]

EDWARD, kyng Henries sone, come [8] out of þe Holy Lond into Engelond þe secounde day of August, and was i-crowned kyng þe þrittenþe þe day tofore Decembre, and morwe after his coronacioun he fonged [9] openliche homage and fewte of Alisaundre king of Scotlond; þanne þe secounde ȝere he made lawes. After þe tenþe Gregory, þe fifte Innocencius was pope fyve monþes; þis hiȝte [10] toforehond Terentacius,[11] of þe ordre of prechoures, a doctour of dyvynite. After hym þe fifte Adrian

---

diede per bothe. The kynge of Fraunce preide afore his dethe in this wyse: "O Lorde, ȝiffe to us grace that we may despise " the prosperites of the worlde, and that we drede not eny " adversite in hit." Also he prayede for the hoste of Cristen peple, seyenge: "O goode Lorde, be unto thy peple a keper " and a protector:" that doen, he seide, " O Lorde, I schalle " entre into thy holy hows." MS. HARL. 2261.

Capitulum tricesimum octavum.

Edwarde the eldeste sonne of kynge Henricus come ynto Ynglonde from the Holy Londe in the iiij[the] nones of August, and was crownede the xiiij[the] kalendes of September of Robert archebischop of Cawnterbery. And in the day nexte folowynge he toke openly homage of Alexander, kynge of Scottes. Innocencius the v[the] succedid Gregorius as v. f. 382 b.

---

[1] *I pray*, Cx.
[2] *meschyefs*, Cx.
[3] *pupel*, γ.
[4] *halower*, Cx.
[5] *him*] here, α.; om. Cx.
[6] *intre*, γ.
[7] *Cap.* 38, Cx.
[8] *cam*, Cx.
[9] *feng*, β.; *toke*, Cx.
[10] *het*, β.
[11] *Tarantacius*, α.; *Peter Tarentasius*, γ.

successit Adrianus quintus[1] mensibus duobus. Qui dudum missus fuit in Angliam a papa Clemente quarto ad sedandum discordiam regis et baronum. Post quem sedit Johannes vicesimus primus mensibus octo; qui prius dictus est Petrus, in variis scientiis[2] famosus; sed postquam gradum apostolicum est adeptus adeo desipuit ut naturali industria magna ex parte carere videretur; verumtamen[3] litteratos homines promovit. Hic cum sæpius coram multis vitam longam sibi repromitteret,[4] corruens subito de nova camera quam Viterbiæ extruxerat, post sextum[5] diem ruinæ expiravit. *De pontificibus Romanorum.*[6] Nicholaus tertius post Johannem sedit papa annis quasi tribus. Hoc anno quia Lewelinus princeps Walliæ ad parliamentum regis in Angliam venire noluerat, rex Edwardus[7] Walliam adiens castrum de Flynt de novo fundavit, castrum de Ruthelan firmavit, ubi Lewelinus subdidit se regi,[8] dando pro transgressione quinquaginta millia librarum et pro insula de Angleseyæ mille marcas per annum. *De pontificibus Romanorum.*[6] Nicholaus papa ordinavit fratrem Robertum de Culuardby,[9] tunc archiepiscopum, in[10] cardinalem, et posuit in[11] loco ejus[12] ad sedem Cantuariensem fratrem Johannem de Peccham.[13] Rex Edwardus graviter punivit Judæos et eorum consentaneos pro tonsione monetæ et[14] pravis escambiis. Unde et uno die[15] omnes Judæos capi fecit; quosdam

Gratiæ MCCLXXVI. Edwardi IIII.

Gratiæ MCCLXXVII. Edwardi V.

---

[1] *sextus*, B.
[2] *satis*, C.D.
[3] *attamen*, B.
[4] *promitteret*, A.
[5] *sextam*, B.
[6] A.B.C.D. omit heading.
[7] *Edwardus*] om. A.
[8] *Angliæ*, C.D.
[9] *Culuarbi*, A.; *Culwardby*, B.
[10] *et*, B.
[11] *in*] om. B.
[12] *in loco ejus*] om. A.
[13] *de ordine Minorum, doctorem Theologiæ*, add. C.D.
[14] *aliis casibus iniquis*, C.D.
[15] *per totam Angliam*, add. C.D.

was pope two monþes; somtyme þis was i-sent of pope Clement into Engelond for to abate[1] þe stryf bytwene þe kyng and þe barouns. After hym þe oon and twenty Iohn was pope eyȝte monþes; he hiȝte[2] Petir toforhond, and was famous in meny [and][3] dyvers[4] sciens, but after þat he was pope he doted so þat it semed þat hym lakked a greet deel of kyndeliche witte, neverþeles he avaunsed[5] clerkes ofte. In presence of many men þis behiȝte hym self long lyf, but he fel sodenliche[6] of a newe chambre þat he hadde i-bulde at Viterbe, and deyde after þe sixte day after[7] þe fallynge.[8] After Iohn, þe þridde Nichol was pope as it were þre ȝere. Þis ȝere, for Lewely[9] prince of Wales wolde nouȝt come to þe kynges parlement into Engelond, kyng Edward wente into Wales, and founded þe castel of Flynt, and strengþed þe castel of Ruthelan.[10] Þere Lewelyn submytted hym to þe kyng, and ȝaf hym fifty þowsand pound for þe trespas, and for þe ilond of Man[11] a þowsand mark by þe ȝere. Pope Nichol made frere Robert [of Culwarbye][12] archebisshop [of Caunterbury cardynal, and made frere Iohn Peccham archebisshop][13] in his stede. Kyng Edward punsched[14] þe Iewes[15] and here assentoures for clippynge[16] of money and for evel chaunges; so þat he made alle þe Iewes [to be taken][17] in oon

TREVISA.

---

monethes, whom Adrianus the v^the^ succedid ij. monethes; after whom John þe xxj^ti^ succedid viij. monethes, callede Petyr afore, a famose man in diverse sciences. Nicholas the thrydde succedid pope John as iij. yere. Kynge Edward wente to Wales in this yere, and made the castelle of Flynte, and renewede the castelle of Ruthlan, in that Lewelinus prince of Wales wolde not comme to his parliamente into Ynglonde. But the seide prince comme to kynge Edwarde and submitte hym selfe, ȝiffynge to hym for his transgression l^ti^ M. li., and a M. marke after yerely for the yle of Angleseye. Nicholas þe pope made frere Robert Culwarby, cardinalle, and putte in his place

MS. HARL. 2261.

---

[1] *alegge*, β. and γ.; *alledge*, Cx.
[2] *hatt*, β.
[3] From α., β., and Cx.
[4] *devers*, γ.
[5] *avounsede*, γ.
[6] *fyl doun sodenly*, Cx.
[7] *after*] of, Cx.
[8] *of þe vallynge*, γ.
[9] *Lewelyn*, α., β., and Cx.
[10] *Roþelan*, α.; *Ruthland*, Cx.
[11] *Mon*, γ.
[12] From β. and Cx.
[13] From α., β., γ., and Cx.
[14] *punysshed*, Cx.
[15] *Juwes*, γ., et infra.
[16] *cryppynge*, γ.
[17] From Cx.; *ytake*, β.

Gratiæ MCCLXXVIII. Edwardi VI.

suspendit, cæteros[1] ejecit. Rex Edwardus cum proceribus[2] ediderunt[3] statuta contra mortuam manum, ita ut nullus deinceps terras, tenementa,[4] redditus daret, venderet, legaret aut permutaret, seu quovis titulo viris religiosis assignaret sine licentia regis. Rex fecit incudi novam monetam, obolum scilicet[5] et quadrantem rotundum, in quo Merlini prophetia videtur impleta, ubi dicitur, Dimidium rotundum erit. *De pontificibus Romanorum.*[6] Honorius quartus post Nicholaum[7] sedit papa annis quasi septem. Hic quarto papatus sui anno mutavit capas[8] fratrum de Carmelo in purum album, quæ prius erant stragulatæ, radiatæ et birratæ.[9] *De David Wallensi qualiter surrexit contra regem.*[6] Perfidus David Wallensis surrexit contra regem Edwardum[10] in Dominica Palmarum, et[11] multa mala Angligenis intulit. Adveniens tandem rex Edwardus circa festum sancti Johannis Walliam subjugavit, villas et terras quæ erant in meditullio[12] Walliæ suis proceribus distribuit, sed castra maritima sibi retinuit. Ex quo facto magna tranquillitas sequenti tempore provenit. Post hæc circa festum sancti Lucæ[13] caput Lewelini amputatum

Gratiæ MCCLXXIX. Edwardi VII.

Gratiæ MCCLXXX. Edwardi VIII.

---

[1] *de terra sua*, B.C.D.
[2] *proceribus*] om. A.
[3] *edidit*, B.
[4] *seu*, B.; *vel*, C.D.
[5] *scilicet*] om. A.
[6] A.B.C.D. omit heading.
[7] *tertium*, C.D.
[8] *cappas*, B.
[9] *burrati*, B.
[10] *Edwardum*] et, A.
[11] *et*] om. A.
[12] *provinciæ*, C.D.
[13] *Luciæ*, A.

day, and some he heng, and putte awey þe opere. Kyng Edward and þe lordes made a statute aȝenst maynmort, so þat after þat tyme no man schulde ȝeve, ne selle,[1] ne byquepe, ne chalange,[2] ne by opere title assigne londes, tenementis ne oþer rentes to men of religioun wipouten þe kynges leve. Þe kynge made smyte newe coyne and[3] newe money, [halfpeny][4] and ferþing[5] al rounde; þeron it semeþ þat Merlynnes prophecie is fulfilled[6] þat seeþ[7] þe halvendel schal be rounde. After Nichol. þe fourþe Honorius was pope as it were sevene ȝere. In his fourþe ȝere he chaungede þe coopes of frere Carmes into clene white, þat were toforehonde raybarred and beemed.[8] Þe false Walsche[9] David roos aȝenst kyng Edward in Palme Sonday, and dede Englische men grete harme and damage. But kyng Edward come aboute seyn Iohn his feste, and wan Wales, and ȝaf townes and londes þat were in þe myddel of Wales to lordes of his lond, and hilde to hym þe castelles þat weren in[10] þe see side. Of þat doynge come greet pees and reste after [þat][11] tyme. Hereafter aboute seynt Lukes[12] feste, Lewelyn his heed was i-smyte of and i-brouȝt to the

TREVISA.

at the seete of Cawnterbery frere John Pecham. Kynge Edwarde made a statute that noo man in his realme scholde ȝiffe, selle or assigne, eny londes or tenementes to religious men withowte his licence. Also he caused halpenys and ferthynges to be printed and made rownde, in whom the prophecy of Merlyn semethe to be fullefyllede, where hit is seide the halfe schalle be rownde. Honorius the viij. succedid pope Nicholas as vij. yere. This pope chaungede the habite of freres Carmelite into pure white, which was of ray afore. Fals David of Wales made insurreccion ageyne kynge Edwarde on Palmesonneday, and did grete hurte to Ynglische men. But kynge Edwarde commynge into Wales abowte the feste of seynte Iohn Baptiste subduede Wales to hym, takynge to his noble men townes and londes in þe myddes of that cuntre, retenynge to hym selfe castells on the costes of the see, whiche policy causede grete tranquillity afterwarde. And after that, abowte the feste of seynte Lucy, the hedde of Lewelyne was sende to

MS. HARL. 2261.

[1] *suylle*, γ.
[2] *nother chaunge*, Cx.
[3] *newe coyne and*] in coine, α. and Cx.
[4] From Cx.
[5] *ferdynges*, Cx.
[6] *folvuld*, γ.
[7] *sayth*, Cx.
[8] *bemed*, Cx.
[9] *Walysche*, γ.
[10] *were on*, Cx.
[11] From α., γ., and Cx.
[12] *Luc his*, γ.

est et regi allatum, Londoniæque transmissum. Citoque postmodum captus est David frater ejusdem [1] Lewelini, totius mali incentor, qui in magno parliamento apud Salopiam condemnatus est;[2] primo quidem equis distractus, deinde suspensus, tertio in quarteria divisus et per Angliæ loca distributus. De Lewelino prædicto scripserunt duo religiosi metrice[3] in hunc modum. Wallicus sic:[4]

Hic jacet Anglorum tortor, tutor Venedorum,
Princeps Wallorum Lewelinus, regula morum,
Gemma coævorum, flos regum præteritorum,
Forma futurorum, dux, laus, lex, lux populorum.

---

[1] *prædicti*, B.
[2] *et*, A
[3] *metrice . . . modum*] hos versus, B.
[4] *Wallicus ad commendacionem et Anglicus ad vituperium. Versus*, C.D.

kyng, and sent to Londoun. And sone þerafter þis Lewelynes broþer David was i-take, þat was exciter of al þis[1] woo. In þe grete parlement at Schroesbury he was first i-dampned and þan to drawe with horses, and þan an honged by þe þrote, and þan i-quartered, and to[2] deled in [to][3] dyvers places of Engelond. Of þis Lewelyn two men of religioun wreten vers and metre;[4] of þe Walsche man in þis manere: TREVISA.

"Hic jacet Anglorum tortor, tutor Venedorum,
"Princeps Wallorum Lewelynus, regula morum,
"Gemma coevorum, flos regum preteritorum,
"Forma futurorum, dux, laus, lex, lux populorum."

Þat is, "Here lieþ[5] þe tormentour of Englische men, wardeyn "and tutor of Englishe[6] men, prince of Walsche men, "Lewelyn, rule of good dedes and[7] þewes, cheef precious "stoon of hem þat were in his tyme, floure of kynges þat were "toforehonde, ensample of hem þat schal be after þis tyme, "leder, preysinge, lawe, liȝt of peple."[8] But þe Englische man seide in þis manere:

---

kynge Edwarde, and after to London. And David, broþer to the said Lewelyn, mover and causer of that tribulacion, was taken soone after, and was condempnede at the grete parliamente at Schrobbesbery, drawen with horses firste and hongede afterwarde, and after that his body dividede into iiij. partes, and sende to diverse places of Ynglonde. Too religious men, oon of Ynglonde, an other of Wales, made versus of the seide Lewelyn, prynce of Wales. The religious man of Wales did wryte of hym in this wyse: MS. HARL. 2261. f. 383 a.

"Hic jacet Anglorum tortor, tutor Venedorum,
"Princeps Wallorum Lewelinus, regula morum,
"Gemma coevorum, flos regum preteritorum,
"Forma futurorum; dux, laus, lex, lux populorum."

---

[1] *þe*, α., β., and Cx.
[2] *to*] om. Cx.
[3] *to*] from β.
[4] *versus in metre*, Cx.
[5] *liþe*, β.
[6] *Walsche*, α., β., γ., and Cx.
[7] *dedes and*] om. α. γ., and Cx.
[8] *pupel*, γ.

Anglicus sic:

Hic jacet errorum princeps et prædo[1] *virorum,*
Proditor Anglorum, fax livida,[2] *secta reorum,*
Numen Wallorum, trux, dux, homicida piorum,
[*Fœx*][3] *Trojanorum, stirps mendax, causa malorum.*

Gratiæ MCCLXXXII. Edwardi X. Rex Edwardus fecit leges Anglicanas observari[4] per Walliam,[5] ponens vicecomites.[6] Natus est regi Edwardo

Gratiæ MCCLXXXIII Edwardi. XI. filius suus Edwardus apud Kaernarvan[7] in[8] Wallia[9] die[10]

Gratiæ MCCLXXXVI. Edwardi XIIII. sancti[11] Marci.[12] Nicholaus quartus, de ordine fratrum Minorum,[13] post Honorium quartum, sedit papa annis

Gratiæ MCCLXXXVIII. Edwardi XVI. quasi sex.[14] Tanta fuit siccitas et æstus ut homines morerentur; eo quoque [anno][15] combusta sunt mercimonia apud Sanctum Botolphum per filios Belial qui in diversis villæ locis ignem apposuerunt ut ipsi liberius residua possent spoliare. Dicebatur nempe quod tota pecunia

---

[1] *prædu*, A.
[2] *avida*, C.D.
[3] *Fœx*] from A.B.C.D.; *Rex*, MS.
[4] *servari*, B.
[5] *Angliam*, A.
[6] *suos per varia loca terræ*, C.D.
[7] *Carnarvan*, B.
[8] *North*, C.D.
[9] *Wallia*] om. B.
[10] *festo*, B.
[11] *sancti*] om. A.
[12] C.D. add: "Evangelistæ. Quo "et anno venit Johannes archiepi- "scopus in Walliam ut reformaret "statum ecclesiæ vacillantis ibi- "dem."
[13] *assumptus*, C.D.
[14] *Quo anno Johannes de Peccham archiepiscopus per Cestriam transiens venit Walliam ad reformandum statum ecclesiæ*, B.; A. has the same words as B. in the place of the passage, *Tanta fuit siccitas*, &c.; C.D. add: "Hic declaravit "regulam fratrum Minorum per "constitutionem quandam, cujus "sequaces Nicholaitæ vocantur. "Cæteri vero ad purum regulam "sequentes Franciscitas se nuncu- "pant."
[15] *anno*, from A.B.; C.D. omit *eo . . mare*.

TREVISA.

" Hic jacet errorum princeps, et predo virorum
" Proditor Anglorum, fax livida, secta reorum;
" Numen Wallorum, trux dux, homicida piorum,
" Fex Trojanorum, stirps mendax, causa malorum."

Þat is, " Here liþe[1] " þe prince of erroures, [þeef][2] and robber " of men, traytour of Englische men; a dymme brond, and " secte[3] of evel dedes and[4] doers; god of Walsche men, a " cruel duke, sleere of god[5] men; draftes of Trojanes, a false " roote, cause of evel dedes." Kyng Edward made Englische lawe i-holde[6] in Wales, and sette schereves þere. Kyng Edward haþ a sone i-bore at Carnarvan in Wales in a Tewysday. After þe fourþe Honorius, þe fourþe Nichol[7] was pope as it were sixe ȝere. Þat ȝere Iohn Peccham, þe archebisshop of Caunterbury, come by Chestre into Wales to reform þe staat of holy chirche. Þat ȝere was so grete derþe[8] and hete þat men deyde for hete. Also þat ȝere was [marchaundise][9] i-brent[10] at Seynt Botulph by þe develes children, þat sette fire[11] in dyvers places of þe towne, for þey wolde more freschlyche[12] robbe and reve in oþer places. Men seide þat unneþe al þe

---

MS. HARL. 2261.

The Ynglische man did wryte in this wyse:

" Hic jacet errorum princeps et predo virorum,
" Proditor Anglorum, fax livida, secta reorum,
" Numen Wallorum, trux dux, homicida piorum,
" Fex Trojanorum, stirps mendax, causa malorum."

Kynge Edward causede the lawes of Ynglonde to be kepede in Wales, and putte schireffes þer to governe þe cuntre. Edwarde of Caernarvon, son of kynge Edwarde, was borne in this yere at the seide towne of Wales, in the feste of seynte Marke. Nicholas the iiij^{the}, of the ordre of Minors, succedid Honorius the iiij^{the} as vj. yere. In this yere were so grete drynesse and hete that mony men dyed þerby. In whiche yere merchandyses were brente at seynte Botulphus by the childer of Belial, whiche sette diverse places in fyre that thei myȝhte spoyle and gette goodes. And, as hit was seide, alle the money that was in Ynglonde

---

[1] *lyeth*, Cx.
[2] *þuef*, γ.
[3] *set*, Cx.
[4] *dedes and*] om. Cx.
[5] *good*, Cx.
[6] *lawes to be holden*, Cx.
[7] *of the ordre of Menours*, add. β.
[8] *droupe*, α. and Cx.; *druyþe*, γ.
[9] From α., β., γ., and Cx.
[10] *ybarnd*, γ.
[11] *vur*, γ.
[12] *vrelich*, γ.; *frely*, Cx.

Angliæ vix restauraret damnum ibidem facta. Currebant namque rivuli auri et[1] argenti et metallorum fusilium usque in[2] mare. Eo anno modius frumenti ad iiii. dena-
Gratiæ MCCLXXXIX. Edwardi XVII.
rios [vendebatur].[3] Nocte sanctæ Margaretæ descendit tempestas imbrium, tonitrui et fulguris, a retro sæculis vix audita, concutiens sata et submergens, ita ut Londoniæ modius tritici,[4] qui prius ad tres denarios vendebatur, extunc paulatim usque ad duos solidos excrevit,[5] sicque per quadraginta ferme annos usque ad obitum regis Edwardi post conquestum secundi extitit caristia bladi, ita ut[6] aliquotiens Londoniæ modius[7] ad x. solidos venderetur. Circa hunc annum jubente papa Nicholao taxatæ sunt ecclesiæ Anglicanæ secundum[8] valorem, et vacavit extunc taxatio Norwycensis facta prius per Innocentium quartum.[9] Judæi expulsi sunt ab Anglia, nec hactenus[10]
Gratiæ MCCXC. Edwardi XVIII.
redierunt. *De pontificibus Romanorum.*[11] Celestinus quintus, de vita anachoritica assumptus, post Nicholaum quartum sedit papa annis paucis[12] quasi tribus. Qui

---

[1] *et*] om. B.
[2] *ad*, B.
[3] *vendebatur*] from B.
[4] *frumenti*, B.
[5] *exercuit*, B.
[6] *ut*] om. B.
[7] *tritici*, B.
[8] *verum*, B.C.D.
[9] *facta . . . quartum*] om. C.D.
[10] *amplius*, B.
[11] A.B. omit heading.
[12] *paucis*] om. B.C.D.

money of Engelond schulde restore þe harme þat was þere i-doo, for stremes of gold and silver and of oþer metal þat was i-molte ran anon in [1] þe see; þat ȝere a busshel [2] [of] [3] whete was solde for foure pans. On seynt Margrete nyȝt fil tempest of reyne, of þonder [4] and of liȝtnynge, so þat men had i-herd [5] of none suche tofore þat tyme; for it bete [6] downe [corn] [7] and dreynte corn and gras [8] þat stood on þe grounde, and so corn wax [9] derrer [10] and derrer, so þat a Londoun busshel [11] was solde for two schillynges þat was solde toforehonde for þre pans; and so derþe of corne durede aboute a [12] fourty ȝere anon to þe deth of kyng Edward þe secound after þe conquest, so þat somtyme a Londoun busshel [13] was sold for ten schelynges. Aboute þis ȝere by heste of pope Nichol þe chirches of Engelond were i-taxed to þe verray value, [14] and seþþe [15] voyded þe taxacioun of Norþwiche [16] þat was made by þe fourþe Innocencius. Þe Iewes were i-putte out of Engelond and come nevere aȝen. [17] After þe fourþe Nichol, þe fifte Celestinus [was y-take from ankeres lyvynge [18] and] [19] was pope fewe ȝeres, as it were þre ȝere. — TREVISA.

---

myȝhte not recompense the hurtes doen þer, for ryvers of golde and of sylver did renne unto the see. In this yere a bushelle of whete was solde for iiij.*d.* Also in the nyȝhte of seynte Margarete folowynge, a grete tempeste of reyne, thundre, and lyȝhtnenge was drownynge corne, insomoche that a bushelle of whete, solde þat tyme for iij.*d.*, encreasede by succession unto ij.*s.* contynuynge so allemoste by xl^ti yere unto the dethe of kynge Edwarde after the conqueste the secunde. The Jewes were expulsede from Ynglonde in this, [20] and come not ageyne into hit after that tyme. In the yere of oure Lorde God a M.cc.xc., Alienor qwene of Ynglonde and doȝhter to the kynge of Speyne, vexede soore with the fevers, diede at Herdeby nye to Lincolne, and was beryede at Westemynstre. Celestinus the v^the lyvynge as an anchor succedid pope Nicholas the — MS. HARL. 2261.

---

[1] *to*, α.
[2] *boschel*, γ.
[3] From Cx.
[4] *þonderynge*, α.; *thundryng*, Cx.
[5] *yhurd*, γ.
[6] *but*, γ.
[7] From α. and β. (not Cx.).
[8] *gresse*, α.
[9] *wexe*, α.; *wexed*, Cx.
[10] *durer*, γ., bis.
[11] *at London a busshel*, Cx., et infra.
[12] *an*, α. and γ.
[13] *buschel*, β.
[14] *verey valu*, γ.
[15] *siþþe*, β.; *suthe*, γ.
[16] *Norwych*, β. and γ.
[17] *aȝeyne*, α.
[18] *lyf*, Cx.
[19] From α., β., γ., and Cx.
[20] Sic in MS.

partim ex tumultu curialis strepitus extædiatus, partim consilio Bonefacii successoris sui inflexus, papatui cessit, et vitam pristinam reassumpsit. Quo[1] etiam anno obiit Alexander rex Scotiæ, unde facta est magna disceptatio inter Scotos de regali successione.

Cap. XXXIX.

[*Controversia de successione in regnum Scotiæ. Rex Angliæ dominus capitalis Scotiæ.*]

Gratiæ MCCXCI. Edwardi XIX.

Post obitum Alexandri regis Scotiæ sine liberis decedentis, mota est controversia quis ei succederet in regnum Scotiæ. At quia multi regnum illud ratione propinquitatis vindicabant, nec hoc posset absque[2] præsentia capitalis domini plene[3] decidi, repertum est per scripta authentica et antiqua quod rex Angliæ[4] sit capitalis dominus Scotiæ, et debeat in tali causa cognoscere. Et ut hoc futuræ constaret posteritati, fecit rex Edwardus isto anno[5] omnia monasteria Angliæ,

[1] *Quo . . . juravit* (p. 280)] om. C.D.
[2] *sine*, A.B.
[3] *plene*] om. A.
[4] *Angliæ*] from A.B.; *Scotiæ*, MS.
[5] *Edwardus . . . anno*] om. B.

Somdel for strif þat was in þe court, and somdel by counsaile of his successour Bonefas, he was i-meeved and resigned up[1] þe poperiche, and took aȝen his raþer manere of lyvynge. Also þat ȝere deide Alisaundre kyng of Scotlond; þan was grete stryf bytwene þe Scottes who schulde be kyng after [hym].[2] TREVISA.

Capitulum quadragesimum.[3]

AFTER þe deeþ of Alisaundre þe kyng of Scotlond, þat deide withoute children,[4] greet stryf was i-meoved who schulde be kyng of Scotlond after hym. And for many chalanged[5] þat kyngdom bycause of nyh kynrede and of blood, and þat myȝt nouȝt be determyned at þe fulle[6] wiþoute [the][7] presence of þe cheef lorde, þanne it was i-founde by writynge autentik and olde, þat þe kyng of Engelonde is cheef lord of Scotlond, and þat he schulde knowe and deme in suche [a][8] manere caas. And for þat he[9] schulde be knowe after his tyme, þis ȝere kyng Edward made serche[10] alle þe abbayes of

---

pope as iij. yere; whiche resignede that office specially by the labore of Bonefacius his successoure, and wente to his olde habitacion. In whiche yere Alexandre kynge of Scottelande diede, wherefore a grete discorde was hade amonge the Scottes for the succession of the kynge. MS. HARL. 2261. f. 383 b.

Capitulum tricesimum nonum.

A CONTRAVERSY was hade what man scholde reioyce þe realme of Scottelonde after the dethe kynge Alexander, dedde withowte eny childer. And for cause that mony men chalangede that realme by reason of consanguinite, hit was decidede that the realme myȝhte not be reioycede by eny of theyme withowte consente of the principalle lorde of that realme. Wherefore hit was founde by writynge autentike and olde, that the kynge of Ynglonde is the principalle lorde of Scottelonde. Kynge Edwarde, willynge his successor to have

---

[1] *op*, γ.
[2] From γ. and Cx.
[3] *Cap.* 39, Cx.
[4] *chyldern*, γ.
[5] *chalengiden*, β.
[6] *al full*, Cx.
[7] From Cx.
[8] From α., β., and Cx.
[9] *he*] om. α. and β.; *it*, Cx.
[10] *sarche*, γ.

Scotiæ,[1] Walliæ perscrutari[2] ad dinoscendum[3] quale jus in hac parte sibi posset competere. Et[4] repertum est in chronicis Mariani[5] Scoti, Willelmi de[6] Malmesbury,[7] Rogeri de[8] Hovdene,[9] Henrici Huntyndoniæ, Radulphi de Dizeto,[10] quod anno Domini nongentesimo x°. rex Edwardus[11] subegit sibi reges Scotiæ[12] et Cumbrorum. Item ibidem quod[13] anno Domini nongentesimo vicesimo primo prædictæ gentes elegerunt sibi Edwardum prædictum in dominum et patronum. Item ibidem anno Domini nongentesimo vicesimo sexto rex Angliæ Adelstanus devicit regem Scotiæ Constantinum, et iterum sub se permisit regnare. Item Edredus frater Adelstani rex Angliæ devicit Scotos et Northumbranos, qui se submiserunt ei[14] et fidelitatem juraverunt. Item ibidem Edgarus rex Angliæ superavit Kynadium filium Alpini regem Scotorum, qui[15] juravit ei fidelitatem. Item ibidem rex Angliæ et Daciæ Canutus, anno regni sui xvi., perdomuit Malcolinum regem Scotorum.[15] Et extunc factus est rex quatuor regnorum,

---

[1] *et, add* B.
[2] *perscrutari*] om. B.
[3] *cognoscendum*, A.
[4] *Et*] om. A.
[5] *Mariani*] om. A.
[6] *de*] om. B.
[7] *Mubmesbury* (sic), A.
[8] *de*] om. A.
[9] *Hevedene*, B.
[10] *Bisete*, B.
[11] *senior*, A.B.
[12] *Scotorum*, A.B.
[13] *quod*] om. B.
[14] *ei*] om. B.
[15] *qui . . . Scotorum*] om. A.

Engelond, of Scotlond, and of Wales, for to wete and knowe what riȝt he hadde in þat manere dede. Þanne in the cronykes of Marian þe Scot, of William of Malmesbury, of Rogger[1] of Huntyngdoun, and of Raaf of[2] Buȝet, it was i-founde þat in þe ȝere of oure Lord [nyne hondred and ten kyng Edward þe elder made sugett þe kyng of Scottes and of Cumbres. Also in þe same cronykes hit was y-founde þat þe ȝere of oure Lord][3] nyne hondred and oon and twenty þis[4] forseide[5] men Scottes and Cumbres chese þe forsaide Edward þe elder to be her lorde and here patrone. Also þere it was i-founde þat þe ȝere of oure Lord nyne hondred and sixe and twenty Athelstane[6] kyng of Engelond overcome Constantyn kyng of Scotlond, and suffrede hym eft to reigne under hym. Also Athelstones broþer Edredus kyng of Engelond overcome þe Scottes and þe Northumbres, and þey submytted him self to hym and swore him feaute.[7] And þere it was i-founde þat Edgar[8] kyng of Engelond overcome Alpinus his sone Kenadius[9] kyng of Scotlond,[10] þat swore hym fewte. Also þere it was i-founde þat Canutus kyng of Engelond and of Denmark þe ȝere of his kyngdom sixtene overcome Malcolyn kyng of Scotlond, and þerafter he was kyng of foure kyngdoms, of Engelond, of Scotlond, and

TREVISA.

---

knowlege þerof, causede alle monasteryes of Ynglonde and of Scottelonde to be serchede to knowe what ryȝhte he scholde have in Scotlonde. Where hit was founde in the cronicles of Marianus the Scotte, of William Malmesbery, of Roger Huvden, of Henricus Huntyndon, and of Rawfe Biȝete, that in þe yere of oure Lorde ix.^{c}. and x. kynge Edwarde the senior subduede to hym the kynges of Scottelonde and of Cumbrelonde. Also in the yere of oure Lorde ix.^{c}. and xxj. the seide peple electe kynge Edwarde into theire patrone. Also in þe yere of oure Lorde ix.^{c}. and xxvj., kynge Athelstan devicte Constantyne kynge of Scottes, and suffrede hym to reigne under hym. Also Canutus, kynge of Ynglonde and of Denmarke, hade victory ageyne Malcolinus kynge of Scottes, in the xvj. yere of his reigne; and after that he was kynge of iiij. londes, as of Ynglonde, of

MS. HARL. 2261.

---

[1] *Roger, γ.*; *Rogyer*, Cx.
[2] *Raph le bruys*, Cx.
[3] From *α.*, *β.*, and *γ.*
[4] *þese, β.*
[5] *þues vorsede, γ.*
[6] *Adelstan*, Cx., et semper.
[7] *feute, β.*
[8] *Edward*, Cx.
[9] *Kinadius, γ.*
[10] *Scottes, α.*

scilicet Angliæ, Scotiæ, Daciæ, Norvegiæ. Item ibidem sanctus Edwardus dedit regnum Scotiæ Malcolino filio regis Cumbrorum de se tenendum. Item Willelmus Bastard,[2] anno regni sui sexto, vicit Malcolinum regem Scotiæ, et accepit ab eo sacramentum fidelitatis. Item Willelmus Rufus simile fecit quod[3] pater suus fecerat erga Malcolinum regem Scotiæ et contra duos filios Malcolini successive regnantes. Item Alexander successit fratri suo Edgaro in regnum Scotiæ de consensu[4] regis Henrici primi. Item David rex Scotiæ fecit homagium regi Stephano. Item, Willelmus rex Scotiæ fecit homagium Henrico tertio filio regis Henrici ii. in coronatione sua et iterum Henrico patri anno regni sui vicesimo, sicut patet in quadam conventione inter eos inde facta. Item dicit Rogerus de Hovdene[5] quod Willelmus rex Scotiæ venit ad dominum suum regem Henricum in Normanniam, et simile fecit regi Ricardo et etiam Johanni regi apud Lincolniam. Item in chronicis Sancti Albani reperitur[6] quod Alexander rex Scotiæ apud Eboracum desponsavit Margaretam filiam regis Henrici anno regni sui xxxv° et fecit ei homagium. Idem[7] reperitur in chartis regum Scotiæ. Item repertum est in bullis papalibus Scotiæ directis reges Scotorum excommunicatos fuisse qui noluerant[8] obedire dominis suis Anglorum[9] regibus. Convenientibus[10] igitur apud Norham in finibus Anglorum versus Scotiam

---

[1] *Norguagiæ*, B.
[2] *conquestor*, B.
[3] *quod*] om. B.
[4] *ex concessione*, B.
[5] *Houden*, A.
[6] *sic* interlined in A.
[7] *Item*, A.
[8] *noluerunt*, B.
[9] *Angliæ*, B.
[10] *Convenientes*, A.

of Denmark, and of Noreway. Also þere it was i-founde þat seynte Edward ȝaf þe kyngdom of Scotlond to Malcolyn, þat was þe kynges sone of Cumbres, to holde of hym self.[1] Also William Bastard, þe sixte ȝere of his kyngdom, overcome Malcolyn kyng of Scotlond, and feng[2] of hym an oop of homage and of[3] fewte. Also William þe Rede dede[4] in þe same wise as his fader[5] hadde i-doo to Malcolyne kyng of Scotlond and to Malcolyns two sones þat regned oon after oþer. Also Alisaundre was his broþer successour Edgar in þe rewme[6] of Scotlond, by assent of kyng Henry þe firste. Also David kyng of Scotlond dede homage to kyng Stevene. Also William [kyng][7] of Scotlond dede homage to þe þridde Henry, þe secounde Henries sone, in his coronacioun, and also to Henry þe fader, in þe twentiþe ȝere of his kyngdom, as it is i-wrete in a covenant þat was i-wrete bytwene hem[8] tweyne. Also Roger of Hontyngdone seiþ þat William kyng of Scotlonde cam to his lord kyng Henry into Normandye, and dede [homage][7] also to kyng Richard and to kyng Iohn at Lyncolne. Also in Seynt Albons cronikes it was[9] i-founde þat Alisaundre kyng of Scotlond wedded Margarete kyng Henries douȝter at ȝork, and dede hym homage, þe ȝere of kyng Henry þe fyve and þritty; þe same is i-founde in þe kynges chartres of Scotlond. It is i-fownde[10] also in þe popes billes[11] þat were i-sente into Scotlond þat þe kynges of Scotlond were accursed for þey wolde nouȝt be buxum[12] and obedient to her lordes kynges of Engelond, þat[13] come togidres at Norham, in þe endes of Engelond toward Scotlond,

TREVISA.

Scottelonde, of Norway, and of Denmark. Also seynte Edwarde ȝafe the realme of Scottelonde to Malcolinus, sonne of the kynge off Cumbrelonde, to holde hit of hym. Also hit was founde in bulles of the pope directe to Scottelonde, the kynges in hit to be excommunicate, in that thei wolde not obbey theire lordes, kynges of Ynglonde. Thes auctorites and mony other schewede to the noble men of Scottelonde, metynge Edwarde kynge off Yngelonde at Norcham, in the costes of

MS. HARL. 2261.

---

[1] *self*] om. Cx.
[2] *vyng*, γ.
[3] *of*] om. β.
[4] *dude*, γ.
[5] *vader*, γ.
[6] *royam*, Cx.
[7] From Cx
[8] *ham*, γ.
[9] *is*, Cx.
[10] *it . . . founde*] om. α. and Cx.
[11] *bulles*, γ. and Cx.
[12] *boxum*, γ.
[13] *than*, Cx.

rege Anglorum cum suis peritis ac Scotorum valentioribus cum suis prudentioribus, petivit rex Angliæ in primis ut Scoti pacifice assentirent suæ ordinationi super rege Scotiæ, præsertim cum hoc[1] sibi competeret ratione dominii sui capitalis. Responderunt Scoti se ignorare quod talis superioritas regi Angliæ competeret, nec posse sine capite rege ad talia respondere, cui incumberet talem ordinationem[2] audire, nec aliud responsum ad præsens debere reddere propter juramentum excommunicatione vallatum quod post mortem regis Alexandri sibi invicem fecerunt. Unde deliberatione librata[3] fecit rex Edwardus Scottis litteras suas patentes quibus recognovit adventum Scottorum in Angliam citra aquam Tuede[4] non debere alias illis[5] vergere in præjudicium iterum veniendi in Angliam. Post hoc majores Scotiæ et Angliæ qui vindicabant jus successionis in regnum[6] Scotiæ, per litteras suas patentes recognoverunt se velle sponte recipere justitiam coram dicto[7] rege Edwardo tanquam coram[8] capitali domino, et firmum tenere quicquid ipse decreverit[9] in præmissis. Verum quia, ut peritis tunc videbatur, rex Edwardus non poterat jus successionis in regnum illud cuiquam tribuere nisi ipse prius jus et possessionem in regno[10] Scotiæ haberet, idcirco facta Scottis securitate ex parte regis

---

[1] *hoc*] om. A.
[2] *denuntiationem*, A.B.
[3] *liberata*, B.
[4] *Twede*, B.
[5] *sibi*, B.
[6] *regno*, B.
[7] *domino*, B.
[8] *pro*, B.
[9] *decrevit*, B.
[10] *regno*] from B.; *regnum*, MS.

þe kyng of Engelond wiþ his wise men, and þe kyng of Scotlond wiþ the rediest men and worþyest þat he hadde þere. Þe kyng of Engelond axede first þat þe Scottes schulde be[1] pecibleliche[2] [assente][3] to his ordinaunce touchynge þe kyng of Scotlonde, nameliche for it bylonged to hym by cause of his cheef lordschippe. Þe Scottes seide þat þey knewe non suche sovereynte þat longed to þe kyng of Engelond, and seide þat þei myȝte nouȝt assure[4] to none[5] suche þinges withouten an hede and a kyng to whom it longeþ to here suche tretynges, and þat þey schulde ȝeve non oþer answere at þat tyme, for her ooth[6] þat þey had made everiche to oþer after kyng Alisaundres deeþ, þe whiche ooþ[7] þey most[8] holde uppon peyne of cursynge. Þan kyng Edward took avisement and made his lettres patent to þe Scottes and knowleched þat þe comynge of Scottes into Engelond on his half[9] þe water of[10] Twede schulde nouȝt eft sones be to hem prejudice[11] of[12] comynge eft into Engelond. Here after þe grettest of Scotlond and of Engelond þat chalanged[13] riȝt of þe successioun in þe kyngdome of Scotlond knowlechid and graunted by here lettres patent þat þey wolde wiþ good wille fonge riȝt tofore[14] þis kyng as tofore[15] þe cheef lord, and þei wolde holde ferme and stable al þat he wolde ordeyne in þis forseide dede. But for it semed wise men at þat tyme kyng Edward myȝte ȝeve riȝt[16] of successioun in þat kyngdome to no man, but ȝif he hadde arst[17] riȝt and possessioun in þe kyngdom of Scotlond, þerfore in þe kynges side of Engelond suerte[18] TREVISA.

---

the marches, they knowleged by theire letters patent the seide kynge to be principalle lorde of the realme of Scottelonde, and to abide his decrete and ordinacion in that eleccion and succession. Then the cownsellours longynge to the kynge perceyvynge that the kynge myȝhte not grawnte the ryȝhte of succession of that realme withowte he hade that realme in his possession afore, wherefore suerte made to the Scottes that MS. HARL. 2261. f. 384 a.

---

[1] *be*] om. α. and β.
[2] *pessybylych*, γ.
[3] From α., β., γ., and Cx.
[4] *answere*, α. and γ.; *answer*, Cx.
[5] *none*] om. Cx.
[6] *oþ*, β., et infra, and γ.
[7] *whoche oþ*, γ.
[8] *must*, Cx.
[9] *a þis half*, β.; *a this half*, Cx.
[10] *of*] om. β.
[11] *prejudys*, γ.
[12] *and*, α.
[13] *calangede*, γ.
[14] *byfore*, Cx.
[15] *before*, Cx.
[16] *no right*, Cx.
[17] *erst*, Cx.
[18] *surte*, γ.

Angliæ de restituendo regno Scotiæ infra duos menses illi cui de jure hoc competeret sub pœna centum millium librarum sterlingorum Romæ in subsidium Terræ Sanctæ solvendorum, ac etiam sub pœna excommunicationis et interdicti in regis personam et regnum Angliæ si non restitueret fulminandum, Scotti per cartas suas tradiderunt regi Edwardo regnum Scotiæ cum castellis, juribus et consuetudinibus, posueruntque custodes qui medio tempore exitus et approviamenta[1] terræ ad opus illorum quorum intererat custodirent. Quo facto rex Angliæ post longas disceptationes vindicantium[2] illud regnum discussis juribus prætulit[3] Johannem le Bayllol,[4] qui recognovit regem Angliæ fore Scotiæ capitalem dominum, fecitque ei homagium, et fidelitatem juravit. Hoc anno obiit frater Johannes de Pecham archiepiscopus Cantuariensis. Cui successit frater Robertus de Culuarby,[5] de[6] ordine fratrum[7] Prædicatorum, ex dono papæ.[6] Eoque anno Madocus quidam Walensis susci-

Gratiæ MCCXCIIII. Edwardi XXII.

[1] *appruamenta*, B.

[2] *vindicantium*] from A.; *vindicationum*, MS.

[3] *protulit*, A.

[4] *le Bayllol*] le Baillol, A.; Baliolo, B.

[5] *Culuarbi*, A.; *Winchelse*, B.; *obiit archiepiscopus Johannes, successit magister Robertus de Winchelsee*, C.D.

[6] *de . . . papæ*] om. B.

[7] *fratrum*] om. A.

was i-made to þe Scottes þat þe kyngdom of Scotlonde schulde be restored wiþynne two monþes to hym þat hadde riȝt þerto, uppon [1] peyne of an hondred þowsand pound of [2] sterlinges þat schulde be payde to Rome in help of þe Holy Lond, and also uppon peyne of cursynge and enterditynge of þe kyng and of þe rewme [3] of Engelond, ȝif he wolde nouȝt restore þe kyngdom as it is seide. And so the Scottes by [4] her chartres ȝaf and bytook [5] to kyng Edward þe kyngdom of Scotlond, with castels, wiþ riȝt, wiþ customes, wiþ usages, and sette wardeyne [6] þat schulde save to hem þat hadde riȝt al þe avauntage and þe profite [7] of þe londe in þe mene tyme. Whan this was i-doo, after long plee and despitesoun [8] in eyþer side of hem þat chalanged þat kyngdome, þe kyng of Engelonde took hede of þe strengþe of resouns and of evydence [9] in eiþer side, and ȝaf þe dome for Iohn le Baillol, and Iohn knowlechede þat þe kyng of Engelonde is cheef lorde of Scotlonde, and dede hym homage and swoor hym fewte. Þis yere deide frere Iohn Peccham, archebisshop of Caunterbury; maister Robert of Wynchilsee [10] was archebisshop after him. Also þat ȝere Maddok, [11] a Walsche [12] man, rered

Trevisa.

---

realme of Scottelonde to be restorede with in ij. monethes, to whom hit scholde longe by ryȝhte in the peyne of a c. m. li. of sterlynges to be payde to Rome unto the subsidy of the Holy Londe, and also in peyne of the sentence of excommunicacion and of interdiccion of his londe of Ynglonde; that doen the Scottes delyverede to kynge Edwarde þe realme of Scottelonde, with the castells, ryȝhtes, and consuetudes. After þat, kynge Edwarde herynge the allegacions of diverse men for that regalle succession, and the ryȝhtes discussede, preferrede Iohn Baillol, whiche knowlegede [13] kynge of Ynglonde to be chiefe lorde of that realme, doynge homage to hym, and promysynge fidelite by an othe. Maister Iohn Pecham diede in this yere, whom maister Robert Wynchelese succedid in the seete of Caunterbery. In whiche yere Madoc, a man of Wales, mowede

MS. Harl. 2261.

---

[1] *oppon*, γ.
[2] *of*] om. Cx.
[3] *royamme*, Cx.
[4] *with*, Cx.
[5] *bitoke*, β.
[6] *wardeynes*, α. and Cx.
[7] *prophyt*, γ.
[8] *disputyson*, γ.; *disputacion*, Cx.
[9] *and evydences*, Cx.
[10] *Wynchestre*, Cx.
[11] *Madoc*, Cx.
[12] *Madoc a Walysch*. γ.
[13] *Sic*.

tavit guerram in Wallia[1] die sancti Michaelis. Idcirco rex Edwardus adveniens Cestriam circa festum sancti Nicholai cepit insulam Angleseyam,[2] ædificavitque de novo urbem[3] et castrum de Bello Marisco. Quo in tempore succisa sunt nemora in Wallia quæ tempore bellico[4] præstabant indigenis latibula, firmataque sunt castra circa[5] loca maritima, et cito post captus est Madocus prædictus et Londoniæ adductus.[6] A quo tempore guerræ in Wallia quieverunt Walenses, more Anglorum pæne victitant, thesauros congregant, rerum damna formidant. Hoc[7] in tempore fecit rex Edwardus omnia monasteria Angliæ scrutari, ac pecuniam inventam Londoniæ afferri. Fecit quoque lanas et coria arestari, et subsecuta est magna caristia bladi et vini.[7]

Cap. XL.

De pontificibus Romanorum.[8]

Bonefacius octavus post Celestinum quintum sedit papa annis undecim. Hic quinto pontificatus sui anno,

---

[1] *contra regem Edwardum,*
[2] *de Anglesey,* B.
[3] *urbem*] om B.
[4] *guerræ,* B.
[5] *juxta,* B.
[6] *et . . . adductus*] om. C.D.
[7] *Hoc . . . vini*] om. C.D.
[8] A.B. omit heading.

werre in Wales in a Michaelmas [1] day. Þerfore kyng Edward come to Chestre aboute seynt Nicholas feste, and took þe ile of Man,[2] þat hi3te Angleseya a[3] Latyn, and bulded[4] [al][5] newe þe citee and þe castel de Beel Marys. Þat tyme the woodes in Wales were i-hewe[6] adoun, þat were grete socour to men of þe contray to hyde hem self in werre tyme, and strong castelles were i-made in dyvers places[7] by þe see side; and sone hereafter þis Madok was i-take and i-brou3t to Londoun. After þat tyme werre cessed in Wales, and Walsche men lyven[8] as Englische men, and gadrep[9] tresoure, and dredep[10] losse of catell. Þat tyme kyng Edwarde made serche alle þe abbayes of Engelond, and brynge to Londoun all þe money þat was founde. Also he made areste[11] alle þe woolles and þe felles, and þerafter fil[12] greet derþe of corne and of wyne. TREVISA.

Capitulum quadragesimum primum.[13]

AFTER þe fifte Celestinus, þe ey3teþe Bonefas was pope ellevene 3ere. Þis pope his fifte 3ere[14] was a 3ere of grace,[15] þat

---

guerre in Wales, in the feste of seynte Michel; wherefore kynge Edwarde, commynge to Chestre, toke the yle of Angleseye abowte the feste of seynte Nicholas, causynge also mony woodes to be kytte downe in Wales; and the seide Madoc was taken soone after and brou3hte to London. And so from that tyme guerres began to cease in Wales, for now Walschemen lyve lyke to Ynglische men, gedrenge rychesse and dredynge the losse of þeire goodes. Kynge Edwarde causede alle the monasteryes of Ynglonde to be serchede in this yere, commaundynge alle the treasures founde in þeym to be brou3hte to London, and arestede wolles and leder of þe londe, and a grete derthe of corne and wyne folowede. MS. HARL 2261.

Capitulum quadragesimum.

BONEFACIUS the viij^the^ succedid pope Celestinus the v^the^ xj. yere. This pope grawntede grete indulgences in v^the^ yere of

---

[1] *My3helmasse*, α.; *Mighelmasse*, β.
[2] *Mon*, Cx.
[3] *in*, α. and Cx.
[4] *bulde*, γ.
[5] From α., β., and γ. (not Cx.).
[6] *yheuwe*, γ.
[7] *plas*, α.
[8] *lyveþ*, α. and β.; *lyved*, Cx.
[9] *gadred*, Cx.
[10] *dredde*, Cx.
[11] *arrest*, Cx.
[12] *vul*, γ.
[13] *Cap.* 40, Cx.
[14] *This popes fyrst yere*, Cx.
[15] *gras*, γ.

qui jubileus erat, uberes indulgentias limina apostolorum visitantibus concessit. Sextum librum decretalium edidit, in quo multa dubia decidit. Nonnullas extravagantes constitutiones[1] Honorii, Adriani, Innocentii, Clementis, et aliorum[2] incorporavit, reprobanda resecavit.[3] De quo prædecessor suus Celestinus, vir vitæ anachoriticæ, eo quod eum ad cedendum papatui subdole induxisset prophetavit in hunc modum prout fertur: *Ascendisti ut vulpes, regnabis ut leo, morieris*[4] *ut canis.* Et ita sane contigit. Nam[5] ipsum papam Celestinum[6] ut papatui cederet, et ut papa quilibet[7] cedere posset, constitutionem edere fecit. Quam quidem postmodum ipse,[8] papa effectus, revocavit.[9] Deinde rigide regens, generosos quosdam de Columna cardinales deponens, regi Francorum in multis non solum obstitit, sed eum[10] totis nisibus deponere insudavit. Igitur senescallus Franciæ, Willelmus de Longareto, vir quidem in agibilibus admodum[11] circumspectus, et

---

[1] *decretales*, C.D.
[2] *Honorii . . aliorum*] om. C.D.
[3] *recusavit*, A.; *Ranulphus*, ins. B.
[4] *morieus*, B.
[5] *Nam . . . quidem*] om. A.
[6] *cujus consiliarius fuerat*, add. C.D.
[7] *papatui*, B.
[8] *ipsemet*, A.B.
[9] *revocavit*] from A.B.C.D.; *renovavit*, MS.
[10] *eum*] om. B.
[11] *admodum*] om. B.

TREVISA.

ȝere he graunted large and greet pardoun to pilgrymes þat wolde come to Rome and visite þe apostles Petre and Poule. He made þe sixte book of Decretales; þerynne he determyned many grete doutes, he encorpered many [grete][1] constitucioums [extravagant, as þe constitucioun][2] of Honorius and of Adrancencius,[3] of Innocencius, of Clement and of oþer popes, and did away þat was unriȝtful.[4] A constitucioun þat is not i-putte in þe course of lawes is i-cleped a constitucioun extravagant. ℟. Þis begiled his predecessour Celestinus, and made hym resigne up þe poperiche, and torne eft to an acre lyf.[5] Men seiþ þat þerfore Celestinus prophecied of hym in þis manere: "Þou "come up[6] as a fox, þou schalt reigne as a lyon, and deye as "a[7] hound." For he made pope Celestinus make a constitucioun þat he and everiche pope myȝte freliche[8] resigne up[9] the poperiche, and whan he was pope he worschipped[10] þe same constitucion; þan he regned[11] sterneliche,[12] and sette doun some cardinals and gentil men de Columpna, and wiþstood þe kyng of Fraunce in many poyntes, and nouȝt onliche þat, but he fondede wiþ [all][1] his myȝt to sette doun þe kyng of Fraunce. Þerfore the steward[13] of Fraunce, William de Langaret, a wise man and a[14] fer[15] castynge, and þe forseide breþeren

---

MS. HARL. 2261.

his governayle, whiche was þe yere iubile to men visitynge the apostles Petyr and Paule. Also he made the vj^the^ booke of the Decretalles, in whom he decided mony dowtes; also he did incorporate mony constitucions extravagant of Honorius, Adrian, and of Innocencius, of Clement, and of other. ℟. But Celestinus, immediate predecessor to hym, prophecyede of this Bone- f. 384 b.
face the pope in this wise: "Thow ascendeste lyke a fox, thow "schalle reigne lyke a lyon, and schalle dye lyke a dogge;" and so hit happede. Insomoche that he entretede noble men ungoodely, and deposede diverse cardinalles, laborynge with alle his myȝhte to depose þe kynge of Fraunce. Wherefore William Longaret, a man gretely circumspecte in thynges agible, stuarde to the kynge of Fraunce, gedrenge a grete hoste,

---

[1] From Cx.
[2] From α., β., and γ.
[3] *Adrian*, α., β., and Cx.; *Adryan*, γ.
[4] *al that was wrongful*, Cx.
[5] *to anker's life*, β.; *anker hys lyf*, γ.; *to ankers lyf*, Cx.
[6] *out*, α.
[7] *an*, α.
[8] *vrelyche*, γ.
[9] *op*, γ.
[10] *revoked*, Cx.
[11] *ruled*, β. and Cx.; *reulede*, γ.
[12] *stronglyche*, γ.
[13] *stuward*, Cx.
[14] *a*] om. β.
[15] *ver*, γ.

fratres de Columna prædicti fœderatis[1] viribus Bonefacium papam comprehenderunt, in equum effrenum, versa facie ad caudam, sine freno posuerunt, quem sic discurrere usque ad[2] novissimum halitum fecerunt, ac[3] fame necaverunt. Gratiæ MCCXCV. Edwardi XXIII. [4]Johannes de Baillol,[5] Scotiæ rex nuper creatus, consilio quorundam de Scotia ac potissime abbatis de Meuros,[6] contra fidem[7] adversus regem Angliæ insurrexit, sed captus est et exheredatus. Unde et anno sequenti Willelmus Walleys,[8] natione Scotus, contra regem Edwardum guerram instauravit, et secundo post hoc anno[9] profugatus est. Gratiæ MCCXCVI. Edwardi XXIIII. Rex Edwardus occidit sexaginta millia Scottorum apud Fouthkyrke[10] in festo beatæ Mariæ Magdalenæ. Verumtamen Scotti paulatim invalescentes per XXX.[11] annos usque ad tempora regis Edwardi post conquestum tertii, Anglos et Anglorum vicina loca sæpius protriverunt. Quod quidem infortunium dolo et effeminationi Anglorum multi deputarunt. Nonnulli vero vindici dextræ Dei hoc ascripserunt, juxta prophetiam illam quæ tempore regis Egelredi prædixit gentem Anglorum per Dacos, Francos, et Scottos fore exterminandos, quemadmodum[12] superius tactum[13] est in fine primi libri. Gratiæ MCCXCVIII. Edwardi XXVI. Rex Edwardus fecit saisire[14] omnia temporalia clericorum, eximens[15] eos a

---

[1] *feratis*, A.
[2] *ad*] om. A.
[3] *tandem*, C.D.
[4] *Hoc anno*, B.
[5] *Bailliol*, A.; *quem rex Edwardus scrutatis Angliæ et Scotiæ cronicis tanquam sanguine propinquiore regem Scotiæ fecerat*, ins. C.D.
[6] *Mewros*, B.
[7] *fidelitatis juramentum*, C.D.
[8] *Waleis*, B.
[9] *die sanctæ Mariæ Magdalenæ*, C.D.
[10] *Fouchyrche*, A.; *Foukirke*, B.; *Fowechirch*, C.D.
[11] *continuos*, add. C.D.
[12] *extermindandos sicut supra tactum est, &c.*, A.
[13] *sæpius tactum*, B.
[14] *seisire*, B.
[15] *exunes*, A.; *exuens*, B.

de Calumpna conspired to gidres, and took pope Bonefas and sette hym uppon a wylde hors wiþouten brydel, and turned his visage [1] toward þe tayle, and made hym so prike aboute to þe laste breeþ, and slow hym so wiþ prekynge and wiþ hunger. Iohn Bayllol þat was made kyng of Scotlond rose aȝenst þe kyng of Engelond and aȝenst his owne ooth,[2] and þat by counseille of some men of Scotlond, and nameliche of þe abbot of Mewerose ;[3] but Iohn was i-take and disherited. Þan þe ȝere after William Waleys of the nacioun of Scottes arrayed werre aȝenst kyng Edward ; but he was i-chased the secounde ȝere after, kyng Edward slowȝ sixty þowsand Scottes at Foulichirche [4] in a Mary Magdeleyn [5] day. But þe Scottes wex [6] strenger and strenger þritty ȝere to gidres anon to kyng Edwardes tyme þe þridde after þe conquest, and bete [7] doun Englische men oost [8] and Englische men [9] [oft and Englysshe] [10] places þat were nygh to her marches. Som men seide þat þat myshap fel [11] for mescheves [12] of Englisch men, and some seide þat it was Goddes owne wreche, and [13] þe prophecie seide þat Englische men schulde be destroyed [14] by Danes, by Frensche [15] men, and by Scottes, as it is i-touched in þe ende of þe firste book. Þe kyng made seyse into his hond al þe temporalte of clerkes, and putte hem out of his protec- TREVISA.

---

toke the seide pope, settynge hym on a wilde horse, his face turnede to the tayle of the horse, and so thei causede the horse to renne, and at the laste he diede for hungre. Iohn Baillol, late made kynge of Scottelande, thro instigacion of the abbot of Meuros, brake his fidelite made to the kynge of Ynglonde, but he was taken soone and putte from his inheritaunce. Also William Wales instaurede guerre ageyn kynge Edwarde in the yere folowynge, but he was causede to fle in the secunde yere folowynge. Kynge Edwarde did sle lx. M. Scottes at Fouchurch in the feste of Mary Magdalene. Also he seasonede[16] into his alle the temporalites of clerkes, and putte þeim as MS. HARL. 2261.

---

[1] *face*, β. ; *fas*, γ.
[2] *oþ*, β.
[3] *Meuros*, β. γ., and Cx.
[4] *Fouchirch*, Cx.
[5] *Mawdeleyn*, α. ; *Maudeleyn*, β.
[6] *wuxe*, γ.
[7] *but*, γ.
[8] *ofte*, β. and γ.
[9] *men*] om. α., β., and γ.
[10] From Cx.
[11] *vul*, γ.
[12] *neschenesse*, β. ; *softnesse*, Cx.
[13] *and*] as, β. and Cx.
[14] *distruyed*, β.
[15] *Freyns*, γ.
[16] Sic in MS.

protectione sua,[1] pro eo quod anno præcedenti nollent eum respicere de bonis suis contra Scotos; nam Robertus archiepiscopus de consensu cleri procuraverat a papa inhibitionem ne quis clericorum regem respiceret de bonis ecclesiæ: unde et plures prælatorum timore tacti quæsierunt protectionem regiam. Rex Edwardus cum parva manu Anglorum et Walensium neglecto consilio procerum suorum transfretavit in Flandriam, tanquam contra regem Francorum[2] bellum ingesturus. Ferebat enim fama regem Edwardum amore Blanchæ filiæ regis Francorum, adeo detentum ut terram Gasconiæ pro Blancha[3] regi Franciæ libenter resignaret.[4] Verum[5] quia rex Edwardus tunc senior fuerat[6] et Blancha juvencula extiterat, copulata est regi[7] Margareta soror regis Franciæ. Ex qua rex Edwardus progenuit duos filios Thomam et Edmundum.[8] Rex Edwardus damnavit subito monetam surreptitiam et illegitimam quam pollardas, crocardos,[9] rosarios nominabant, qui

Gratiæ MCCXCIX. Edwardi XXVII.

Gratiæ MCCC. Edwardi XXVIII.

---

[1] *sua*] om. B.
[2] *Scottorum* (sic), B.
[3] *illa*, add. B.
[4] *daret*, B.
[5] *Verumtamen*, B.
[6] *fuit*, A.
[7] *Edwardo*, A.B.
[8] *Eadmundum de Wodestok et Thomam de Brotherton*, C.D.
[9] *cocardos, Bosardos*, B.; *sive*, ins. C.D.

cioun, for þey wolde rewarde hym of her catel þe ȝere to forehonde aȝenst þe Scottes. For by assent of the clergie, Robert þe archebisshop hadde purchased an inhibicioun of þe pope þat no clerk schulde rewarde þe kyng of holy chirche goodes; but many clerkes purchased for drede þe kynges proteccioun. Wiþoute counseille of lordes kyng Edward wiþ litel strengþe of Englische men and Walsche men seilled into Flaundres, as it were aȝenst þe kyng of Fraunce. It was þo[1] comoun[2] sawe þat kyng Edward loved [so][3] Blaunche, þe kynges douȝter of Fraunce, þat he wolde gladliche ȝeelde up Gaskoyne[4] to þe kyng of Fraunce for his dowter Blaunche; but for Edward was oolde and Blaunche was a ȝong wenche,[5] kyng Edward wedded Margarete, the kynges suster of Fraunce,[6] and gat on here two[7] sones, Thomas and Edmond. Kyng Edward dampned sodeynliche fals money þat was slyliche[8] i-brouȝt up: men cleped[9] þe money pollardes, crocardes and rosaries,[10] and

Trevisa.

---

exempte from his proteccion, in that thei wolde not helpe hym in the yere afore with theire goodes towarde the Scottes. For Robert, metropolitan of Ynglonde, by the consente of bischoppes, hade procurede a inhibicion of the pope that the clerkes scholde not ȝiffe eny thynge of the goodes of the churche to the kynge; neverthelesse mony prelates souȝhte the proteccion of the kynge for fere and drede. Kynge Edwarde, despysynge the cownsaile of the noble men of the londe, toke with hym a certeyne nowmbre of men of Ynglonde and of Wales, and saylede into Flaundres, as if he wolde have ȝiffe batelle to the kynge of Fraunce. But mony men seide that his mynde was so gretely fixede on Blanche, doȝhter of the kynge of Fraunce, that he wolde have ȝiffen the cuntre of Gascoigne for here to the kynge of Fraunce. But in that kynge Edwarde was olde, and Blanche yonge, Margaret, the suster of the kynge of Fraunce, was maryede to hym, of whom he gate ij. sonnes, Thomas and Edmund. Kynge Edwarde dampned sodenly unlawefull money, whom thei called pollardes, crokardes, and rosaryes. Edmund

MS. Harl. 2261.

f. 385 a.

---

[1] þo] om. α.; a, β. and Cx.
[2] *comyn*, γ.
[3] From α., β., γ., and Cx.
[4] *Gasquyn*, γ.
[5] *ȝung weyncke*, γ.
[6] *kyng of Fraunces suster*, α.
[7] *twy*, γ.
[8] *slyghtly*, Cx.
[9] *clepin*, Cx.
[10] *Rosoryes*, Cx.

paulatim et[1] latenter loco sterlingorum irrepserant; et primo eos valere obolum fecit,[2] deinde omnino exterminavit.[3] Hoc etiam [anno][4] obiit sine prole Edmundus comes Cornubiæ, filius[5] Ricardi comitis Cornubiæ et regis Alemanniæ. Qua de causa rediit comitatus ille ad coronam. Iste annus fuit Jubileus, quo multi peregrinati sunt ad Romam.[5] Rex Edwardus dedit filio suo Edwardo principatum Walliæ et comitatum Cestriæ. Willelmus[6] Waleys dux Scotorum distractus est Londoniæ et suspensus. Cujus caput amputatum[7] super pontem Londoniæ ponebatur ad spectaculum transeuntium, corpus ejus in quatuor partes divisum ad diversa loca mittebatur.[6] Hoc anno rex Edwardus misit[8] papæ Bonefacio litteras declaratrices juris et dominii quod Anglia habet super regnum et reges Scotiæ.[9] Nam[10] prius Robertus le Bruz[11] conquestus erat do-

Gratiæ MCCCI. Edwardi XXIX.

[1] *et*] om. B.
[2] *et . . fecit*] om. C.D.
[3] *determinavit*, B.
[4] *anno*] from A.B.
[5] *filius . . . Romam*] om. C.D.
[6] *Willelmus . . . mittebatur*] om. C.D.
[7] *amputatum*] om. B.
[8] *misit*] om. B.
[9] *cujus tenor in fine hujus operis inseritur*, add. C.D.
[10] *Nam . . . docere*] om. C.D.
[11] *de Bruiz*, A.; *le Brus*, B.

were putte forþ litel and litel and priveliche in stede of sterlynges.[1] First þey[2] made oon of hem worþ an half peny, and þan he fordede hem all out.[3] Also [this yere][4] Edmond erle of Cornewayle [deyed wiþoute children; þis Edmund was þe sone of Richard erle of Cornwayle][5] and kyng of Almayne, and so þat erldom fel [aȝen][5] to the crowne aȝenward.[6] Þis ȝere was a ȝere of grace,[7] in þe whiche ȝede[8] many pilgrimes to Rome.[9] Kyng Edward ȝaf his sone Edward þe principate of Wales and þe erldom of Chestre. At Londoun William Waleys, ledere of Scottes, was an honged[10] and to-drawe, his heed was i-smyte[11] of and i-sette uppon þe brigge[12] of Londoun, al men to beholde þat þat wey[13] wolde passe; his body was i-quartred and i-sent into dyvers places of Engelonde. Þis yere kyng Edward sente to pope Boneface lettres to declare þe ryȝt and þe lordschippe þat þe[14] kynges of[15] Engelond haþ over þe rewme[16] and þe[17] kynges of Scotlond. For Robert le Bruce[18] hadde i-pleyned to þe pope

Trevisa.

---

erle of Cornewaile, sonne of Richarde erle of Cornewaile and kynge of Alemanny, dyed in this yere with owte a childe, wherefore that cowntee returnede to the crowne. This yere was þe yere of Iubile, in whom mony pilgremes wente to Rome. Kynge Edwarde ȝafe to Edwarde the principate of Wales and the cowntee of Chestre. And William Waleis, a governoure of the Scottes, was drawen at London and honged, the hedde of whom was sette on the brigge of London, and his body, dividede into iiij. partes, was sende to iiij. places of Ynglonde. Kynge Edwarde sende to the pope letters declaratyve of the ryȝhte and lordeschippe that Ynglonde hathe on the realme of Scottelonde and of the kynges þerof. For Robert Bruȝ hade made compleynte afore to the pope that Edwarde

MS. Harl. 2261.

---

[1] *shyllynges*, Cx.
[2] *he*, γ.
[3] *forbad hem aboute*, Cx.
[4] From Cx.; *þis ȝere*, β.
[5] From α., β., γ., and Cx.
[6] *aȝenward*] om. α., β., γ., and Cx.
[7] *gras*, γ.
[8] *wente*, α.; *went*, β. and γ.
[9] *towne*, α.
[10] *anhonge*, γ.
[11] *y-smyȝten*, α.
[12] *brugge*, γ.
[13] *þere*, α., β., and Cx.; *þar*, γ.
[14] *þe*] om. α.
[15] *þe kynges of*] om. β., γ., and Cx.
[16] *royamme*, Cx., et infra.
[17] *þe*] om. α., β., γ., and Cx.
[18] *Bruse*, α.; *Bruyȝ*, β.; *Bruz*, γ.; *Bruys*, Cx.

mino papæ quod rex Edwardus injuste vexasset regnum Scotiæ; unde et papa scripserat[1] regi Angliæ quod desisteret a tali vexatione nisi clarius de jure suo posset docere.[2] Benedictus tertius de ordine Prædicatorum post Bonefacium octavum[3] sedit papa non plene[4] uno[5] anno; de quo quidam[6] sic ait:

Gratiæ MCCCV. Edwardi XXXIII.

A re nomen habe, benedic, benefac, benedicte,
Aut rem perverte, maledic, malefac, maledicte.

Clemens quintus post Benedictum sedit papa annis quasi[7] duodecim. Qui circa thesauros colligendos et castra construenda insudavit, ordinem Templariorum [damnavit, septimum librum Decretalium, quem constitutiones Clementinæ vocantur,][8] ordinavit; sed cito

---

[1] *scripsit*, B.
[2] *edocere*, B.
[3] *quintum*, B.
[4] *pleno*, B.
[5] *uno*] om. A.
[6] *alludens nomini*, add. C.D.
[7] *quasi*] om. B.
[8] From A.B.C.D.

þat kyng Edward regned[1] wrongfulliche þe reaume[2] of Scotlond; þerfore þe pope wroot to þe kyng of Engelond þat he schulde leven of suche[3] grevynge, but he myȝte schewe cleerliche his riȝt.[4] After þe eyȝteþe[5] Bonefas, þe elevenþe Benet, of þe ordre of Prechoures, was pope nouȝt fulliche oon ȝere; of hym oon seid in þis manere: TREVISA.

"A re nomen habe, benedic, benefac, benedicte;
"Aut rem perverte, maledic, malefac, maledicte."

Þat is: habe[6] þy name of þy ded, say wel, do wel, i-blessed; oþer turne þe dede, say evel, doo evel, acursed. He seiþ þis[7] ffor Benett is Benedictus in[8] Latyn, i-blessed in[9] Englissche. After Benett,[10] þe fifte[11] Clement was pope, as it were twelve ȝere: he travayled aboute buldynge of castelles and gadrynge of tresoure; he dampned þe ordre of [Frere][12] Templers, and ordeyned þe sevenþe book[13] of Decretales þat hatte[14] Clementynes. And sone þerafter, in a counsaylle þat he

---

kynge of Ynglonde hade vexede þe realme of Scotlonde with-owte ryȝhte or title. Wherefore þe pope commaundede the kynge of Ynglonde to absteyne from þat vexacion, withowte he schewede more clerely that the realme of Scottelonde awe to be subiecte to hym. Benedict the thrydde succedid pope Boneface not oon yere complete. Clement the v^the^ succedid pope Benedict xij. yere; þis pope laborede moche to gedre treasure and to edifye castells, and dampned the ordre of Templaryes. Also he ordeynede the vij^the^ booke of the Decretalles, whiche he callede Constitutions Clementyn, but he revokede þat booke MS. HARL. 2261.

---

[1] *greved*, α., β., and Cx.
[2] *regm*, γ.
[3] *leve of sich*, β.
[4] *lyȝt*, α.
[5] *eyght*, Cx.
[6] *have*, α., β., γ., and Cx.
[7] *þus*, α. and Cx.; *A seyþ þus*, γ.
[8] *on*, α.; α, β. and γ.
[9] *on*, α.; *an*, β. and γ.
[10] *Benet*, β.
[11] *tyfte*, γ.
[12] From α. (not Cx.).
[13] *bok*, γ.
[14] *hyghte*, Cx.

post in consilio[1] quod[2] apud[3] Viennam celebraverat eundem librum[4] revocavit, quem tamen successor suus papa Johannes [vicesimus secundus][5] innovavit, incorporavit et publicavit. Hic quoque Clemens primus omnium papalem sedem[6] de Roma usque Avinionam[7] transtulit. Quod quidem factum an divino nutu[8] seu humano ausu contigerit, in admirationem ducitur.[9] Hoc[10] etiam anno fecit rex Edwardus graves inquisitiones contra malefactores et usurpatores coronæ, quæ inquisitio vocatur traylbastoun.[11] Robertus le Bruz usurpavit regnum Scotiæ, et circa Pascha occidit Johannem le Comyn[12] in ecclesia fratrum Minorum de Deynfrez[13] pro eo quod noluit sibi in dicta factione consentire; sed rex Angliæ superveniens ipsum Robertum fugere compulit, et interfectores dicti Johannis suspendit. Quo quidem anno rex Edwardus juxta Caerliele perendinans fecit Petrum de Gavestoun, familiarem filii,[14] terram Angliæ abjurare.

---

[1] *Clementiana*, A.
[2] *quæ*, A.
[3] *apud*] om. A.
[4] *librum*] om. A.
[5] *vicesimus secundus* from C.D.
[6] *curiam*, C.D.
[7] *Viennam sive Avinionem Galliæ juxta Rodonum transtulit, quæ usque ad nostra tempora nusquam rediit. Quod*, &c., add. C.D.
[8] *nuti* (sic), B.
[9] *est mirandum*, C.D.
[10] *Hoc . . . abjurare*] om. C.D.
[11] *trailebastoun*, A.
[12] custodem Scotiæ per regem Edwardum prius assignatum, add. B.
[13] *Dounfrez*, A.
[14] *sui*, A.B.

made at Vien, he wipeleped[1] þe same book; but his succes- TREVISA.
sour, þe two and twenty pope John, renewed ofte[2] þat book,[3] and publisched it, and put it to þe cros[4] of lawe canoun. Þis Clement was þe firste þat chaunged þe popes see from Rome to Avyon:[5] men wondreþ[6] of þat dede, wheþer it were i-doo by Goddes ordenaunce or by manis foole[7] hardynesse. Also þat ȝere kyng Edward[8] made hard inquisicioun aȝenst evel doers, and aȝenst hem þat trespased[9] aȝenst þe crowne, þat manere inquisicioun hiȝte trailbastoun.[10] Robert le Bruȝ[11] toke wrongfulliche[12] þe kyngdom of Scotlond; and aboute Esterne[13] he slowȝ John le Comyn at Dunfrees,[14] in þe cherche of Frere Menoures, for he wolde not assente to hym in þat tresoun.[15] But þe kyng of Engelond come and chased þis Robert, and heng þe sleers of þis John. Þat ȝere kyng Edward lay besides Karlile,[16] and made Perys Gavestoun,[17] þat was prive wiþ his sone, forswere þe erþe[18] of Engelond.[19] *Edwardus*

afterwarde in a cownsayle at Vienna, whom Iohn the xxij[11] MS. HARL.
his successor, innewede and incorporate. This pope Clement 2261.
translate firste of alle other bischoppes of Rome the seete of the pope unto Avinion, but y leve as untowchede wheþer it was doen by the wylle of God or by the boldenesse of man. Kynge Edward made grete inquisicions in this yere ageyne malefactors and usurpers of the crowne, which inquisicion is called trailbaston. Robert Bruz usurpede the realme of Scottelond, and did sle Iohn Comyn abowte Ester, in the churche of freres Minors at Dounfrez, in that he wolde not consente to hym. But kynge Edwarde commynge into that cuntre, causede the seide Robert Bruȝ to fle, and hongede the sleers of the seide Iohn. f. 385 b.
In whiche yere kynge Edwarde, taryenge nye to Carliell, causede Petre Gavaston, ffamilier with Edwarde his sonne, to abiure Ynglonde.

[1] *revoked*, Cx.
[2] *eft*, α.; *efte*, β., γ., and Cx.
[3] *bok*, γ.
[4] *course*, α.; *cors*, β. and γ.; *cours*, Cx.
[5] *Avinion*, β., γ., and Cx.
[6] *wondren*, Cx.
[7] *foul*, β. and γ.; *foule*, Cx.
[8] *Henry*, α.
[9] *trespaside*, β.
[10] *traylbaston*, Cx.
[11] *Brus*, α.; *de Bruys*, Cx.
[12] *wrongfolliche*, γ.
[13] *Eester*, Cx.
[14] *Dunfre*, β. and Cx.; *Dounfreȝ*, γ.
[15] *trayson*, Cx.
[16] *Carlele*, α.; *Caerleel*, β., et infra; *deyd at Carleel*, Cx. (sic).
[17] *Peres of Gavestoun*, β.; *Piers of Gaveston*, Cx.
[18] *londe*, Cx.
[19] Here β. marks Cap. 41.; Cx. here marks *Capitulum* 41.

Cap. XLI.

[*De rebus Anglicis sub rege Edwardo secundo.*]

Gratiæ MCCCVII. Edwardi II, Primo.

Rex Edwardus[1] obiit die translationis sancti Thomæ, juxta[2] Caerliel apud Burgum super Sabulum tricesimo quinto regni sui anno. Cujus obitum Robertus Cantuariensis,[3] apud curiam Romanam exulans, in somnis[4] vidit. Cui successit Edwardus filius,[5] post conquestum secundus. Qui[6] statim revocavit amasium suum[7] Petrum de Gavestoun. Cui dedit ducatum[8] Cornubiæ, ac commisit custodiam Angliæ dum ipse moraretur circa nuptias suas in partibus transmarinis. Duxerat enim Isabellam, filiam unicam Philippi regis Francorum, apud Bononiam ; qui inde rediens coronatus est in regem apud Westimonasterium ab episcopo Wyntoniensi, auctoritate papæ Clementis, dominica Quinquagesimæ, eo quod Robertus Cantuariensis tunc apud

---

[1] *post conquestum primus,* add. C.D.

[2] *in finibus Northimbrorum,* C.D.

[3] *regni . . Cantuariensis*] om. B., which adds *archiepiscopus.*

[4] *eo die,* add. C.D.

[5] *suus,* add. B.

[6] *Qui . . . exulabat*] om. C.D.

[7] *suum*] om. B.

[8] *comitatum,* B.

TREVISA.

Secundus. Kyng Edward deyde at seynt Thomas day þe translacioun, besides Karlyle at Burgh uppon þe sonde, þe ȝere of his kyngdom fyve and pritty. Robert archebisshop of Canturbury was exiled, and sighe[1] his deþ in his slepe at Rome. After hym[2] his sone was kyng, þe secounde Edward after þe conquest. Anoon he hadde home aȝen his love[3] Piers of Gavestoun,[4] and ȝaf hym þe ducherie of Cornewayle, and made hym wardeyne of Engelonde while he was aboute his owne mariage beȝonde[5] þe see. At Boloyne[6] he wedded Isabel þe douȝter onliche[7] of Phelip kyng of Fraunce, and come þens[8] aȝen, and was i-crowned kyng [at Westmynster][9] þe Sonday in Quinquagesima, þat is þat day a fourteniȝt after [þat][9] Alleluya is i-closed: he was i-crowned of þe bisshop of Wynchestre by auctorite of þe pope Clement, for Robert

---

MS. HARL. 2261.

Capitulum quadragesimum primum.

KYNGE Edwarde diede in this yere at Burghe uppon sonde nye to Caerliel, in the feste of the translacion of seynte Thomas and the xxxv^ti^ yere of his reigne. The dethe of whom Robert archebischop of Cawnterbery see in his slepe, beynge in exile that tyme at the cowrte of Rome. Whom Edwarde the secunde and his son did succede, whiche callede his luffe Petyr Gavaston to the realme ageyne, makynge hym duke of Cornewaille, and toke to hym the governaunce of Ynglonde whiles that he taryede behynde see for mariage. For he maryede Isabel, doȝhter of Philippe kynge of Fraunce, at Bonony. Whiche returnede thens was crownede kynge of Ynglonde at Westemynstre of the bischop of Wynchestre by auctorite of pope Clement, in the Sonneday of Quinquagesme, in that Robert

---

[1] *he sawe*, Cx.
[2] *the fyrst Edward*, Cx.
[3] *leef*, β. and Cx.
[4] *Gavaston*, γ.
[5] *byȝunde*, γ.
[6] *Bolayne*, α.; *Bolayn*, β. and γ.
[7] *oneliche douȝter*, α.; *onlich douȝter*, β.; *onlyche douȝter*, γ.
[8] *þus*, α,
[9] From α. and Cx.

Romam exulabat. *De moribus istius regis.*[1] Erat nempe Edwardus iste vir corpore elegans, viribus præstans, sed moribus, si vulgo creditur, plurimum inconstans. Nam parvipenso procerum contubernio, adhæsit scurris, cantoribus, tragedis, aurigis, fossoribus,[2] remigibus,[3] navigiis et cæteris [4] artis mechanicæ officiis, potibus indulgens, secreta facile prodens, astantes ex levi causa percutiens, magis alienum quam proprium consilium sequens ; in dando prodigus, in convivando splendidus, ore promptus, opere varius, adversus hostes suos infortunatus, in domesticos efferatus. Ad unum aliquem familiarem ardenter affectus,[5] quem summe coleret, ditaret, præferret,[6] honoraret. Ex quo impetu [7] provenit amanti opprobrium, amasio obloquium, plebi scandalum, regno detrimentum. Indignos quoque et ineptos ad gradus

---

[1] A.B.C.D. omit heading.
[2] *fossoribus, remigibus*] om. C.D.
[3] *remigiis*, B.
[4] *aliis*, B.
[5] *ardenter affectus*] affecit, B.
[6] *præ cæteris*, add. C.D.
[7] *utique*, add. C.D.

archebisshop of Caunterbury was tho at Rome exiled out of Engelond. Þis Edward was faire [1] of body and grete of strengþe, and unstedfast [2] of maneres and of þewes, ȝif men schul [3] trowe [4] þe comoun tale. For he forsook þe companye of lordes, and drowh [5] hym to harlottes,[6] to syngers and to gestoures, to carters, to delveres and to [7] dykers, to rowers, schipmen and bootmen,[8] and to oþer craftesmen,[9] and ȝaf hym to grete drynkynge; he wolde liȝtliche telle out prive counseille, and smyte men þat were aboute hym for wel litel [10] trespas, and dede [11] more by oþer menis counsel þan by his owne. He was to large of ȝiftes and solempne [12] in makynge of feestes, redy to speke and variaunt of dedes, unhappy aȝenst his enemyes and cruel [13] to his meyne, and loved strongliche oon of his quieresters,[14] and dede [15] him grete reverence, and worschipped [16] and made hym greete and riche. Of þis doynge fel vilenye to þe lovyer, yvel speche and bacbitynge to þe love,[17] sclaunder to þe peple,[18] harme and dame [19] to þe reume.[20] He

Trevisa.

archebischop of Cawnterbery was þat tyme in exile at Rome. This kynge Edwarde was a semely man of body, myȝhty in strengthe, but moche inconstant. For the seide kynge despisynge the cownsaile of the noble men of his realme, drawede to harlottes, syngers, carters, and to schippemen, ȝiffynge hym to ryette, exaltynge over moche a man that he hade luffed. Whiche causede obprobry to the kynge, obloquy to that oþer person, sclawnder to the peple, and hurte to the realme. And

MS. Harl. 2261.

[1] *veyr*, γ.
[2] *unstidefast*, β.
[3] *schal*, α. and Cx.
[4] *knowe*, α. (not Cx.).
[5] *drewe*, Cx.
[6] *harlotes and brybours to syngers*, γ.
[7] *to*] om. α. and β.
[8] *to rouwers, botmen, & schypmen*, γ.; *botemen and shipmen*, Cx.; inverted in β.
[9] *men*] om. Cx.
[10] *lyght*, Cx.
[11] *dide*, β.
[12] *solempnel*, Cx.
[13] *cruwel*, γ.
[14] *qwysteres*, α.; *whistrers*, β. and Cx.
[15] *dyd*, α.
[16] *worship*, Cx.
[17] *leef*, β. and Cx.
[18] *pupel*, γ.
[19] *damage*, α. and γ.; *dammage*, Cx.
[20] *regm*, γ.; *Royamme*, Cx.

ecclesiasticos promovit, quod postmodum sudes in oculis et lancea in latere sibi [fuit].[1] Tanta etiam in diebus ejus[2] caristia tritici tamque continua mortalitas armenti extitit, quanta a retro sæculis visa vix fuerit. Tunc decimationes juges, assiduæ contributiones, temporalium et spiritualium continuæ expilationes. Et cum ex permissu[3] papæ multa sub colore Scottos repellendi ad fiscum regium accessissent, per regiam tamen insolentiam cuncta inaniter sunt consumpta. Unum tamen huic regi feliciter obvenit quod Cambria contra eum minime[4] rebellavit;[5] cætera sibi satis infausta extiterunt.[6] In suis nempe primordiis Petrum quendam de Gavastoun cujus consortium[7] paterno jussu prius abjuraverat, de transmarinis partibus revocavit, ejusque[8] contemplatione Isabellam reginam suam[9] neglexit, proceres suos parvipendit.[10] Quamobrem magnates[11] indignati ipsum Petrum usque[12] Hiberniam propulerunt, ubi et regii thesauri transmissi[13] petulanter sunt absumpti. Deinde sub spe uberioris pacis consequendæ[14] Petrus revocatus est; sed regio ut prius thesauro absumpto proceres insurgunt,[15] Petrum a rege dispergunt, equos et the-

---

[1] *fuit*] from A.B.C.D.
[2] *suis*, B.
[3] *promissu*, A.
[4] *nusquam debellavit*, C.D.
[5] *rebellavit*] om. A.
[6] *cætera . . . extiterunt*] om. C.D.
[7] *Edwardus iste*, add. C.D.
[8] *ejus*, B.
[9] *reginam suam*] om. A.
[10] *proceres . . . parvipendit*] om. C.D.
[11] *primo*, add. C.D.
[12] *in*, A.B.
[13] *illuc*, add. C.D.
[14] *consequendæ*] om B.
[15] *insurgunt*] om. A.

avaunced to staates of holy chirche hem þat were unable [1] and unworþy, þat was afterward a stake in his thye,[2] and a spere in his side. In his tyme was so greet derþe [3] of whete, and contynuel moreyne of bestes, þat noon suche [4] was i-sene tofore þat tyme: þo were dymes [5] alwey i-gadred and contribucioums i-payde, spiritualte and temporalte [6] was alway i-pyled; and by suffraunce of þe pope, and by colour to wiþstonde þe Scottes, moche good fel to þe kynges encheles,[7] but by þe kynges outrage al was wasted and i-spended in ydel. But in oon poynt þis kyng happed wel, þat Wales was nevere rebel aȝenst hym. In oþer sides hym myshapped alwey. In his bygynnyng he loved Piers of Gavastoun,[8] þat had toforehonde forswore [9] his companye at his fadres heste,[10] but he sente after hym aȝen from byȝonde [11] þe see; bycause of hym he was recheles of Isabel þe queene and rouȝt nouȝt of þe lordes of þe lond, þerfore þe lordes had indignacioun, and put out þis Piers over þe [12] see into Irlond; þere þe kynges tresoure was rabbischelyche [13] i-wasted and i-spended, ȝit for [more] [14] hope of more pees Piers was i-brouȝt aȝen, but þe kynges tresoure was i-wasted and i-spended as it was toforehonde; and þe lordes arisen [15] and put Piers fro þe kyng, and took her hors [16] and here tre- TREVISA.

mony thynges and grete treasures ȝiffen to hym for to repelle the Scottes, were spende and wastede amonge harlottes and in excesse. But oon thynge was as fortunate to þis kynge, that Wales rebellede not ageyne hym, but oþer thynges were infortunate to hym. In his begynnynge he revokede Petyr Gavaston from exile, whose felowschip he hade abiurede by commaundement of his fader; by þe presence of whom he despisede his qwene Isabell, and despisede also the noble men of the londe. Wherefore the noble men of the realme havynge indignacioun þerof, expulsede the seide Petyr unto Yrlonde, where the treasures of þe kynge beynge were spende frely. But the seide Petyr was callede soone ageyne, whom the noble men of the realme expellede from the kynge, and toke MS. HARL. 2261. f. 386 a.

[1] *unhabel*, γ.
[2] *eiȝe*, β.; *ye*, γ.; *eye*, Cx.
[3] *durþe*, γ.
[4] *sich*, β.
[5] *dismes*, γ.
[6] *spirituale and temporale*, Cx.
[7] *encheytes*, β. and Cx.
[8] *Gaveston*, Cx.
[9] *vorswore*, γ.
[10] *heeste*, β.
[11] *vram byȝunde*, β.
[12] þe] om. α. and Cx.
[13] *rabbischlich*, β.; *rabbyshly*, Cx.
[14] From α. and Cx.
[15] *aroos*, Cx.
[16] *horses*, β.; *his horses and his*, Cx.

sauros suos[1] in partibus Northimbranis capiunt, Petrum sic fugitantem[2] apud castrum de Scardesburgh[3] obsident et comprehendunt, tandemque[4] apud Gaversisiche[5] juxta Warwycum decapitant et occidunt: sed et Petro sic extincto, rex ut prius aliis adhæsit.[6] Qua de causa consilium provinciale per Robertum Cantuariensem[7] cogitur. In quo multa ad regis regnique reformationem[8] salubriter sunt statuta. Ad quorum observationum rex ipse, præstito juramento, subscripsit; benedictio quoque Roberti[9] Cantuariensis observantibus illa, maledictio vero refragantibus irrogatur. Sed rex, ut semper, ex[10] tunc suis adhærens fautoribus, astipulata prætermisit. Ob hoc tumultuabantur[11] mediocres, frendebant[12] majores contra regem regisque[13] collaterales, potissime ipse metropolitanus Robertus.[14] Thomas Lancastriæ comes, ipsius Roberti animatus hortatu, cum sibi adhærentibus per plures annos conatus est regiis obsistere ineptiis, donec novissimam sub hoc turbine efflaret auram. Petrus[15] de Gavestoun per proceres Angliæ, sed contra regis voluntatem, exulat in Hiberniam

Gratiæ MCCCVIII. Edwardi II. II.

[1] *eorum*, A.; *ejus*, B.
[2] *fugientem*, B.
[3] *Scarburgh*, C.D.
[4] *Tandem*, B.
[5] *Gavereffich*, A.; *Gaversike*, B.
[6] *ob cujus immoderantiam adhæsionis, regiorumque ministrorum petulanciam cohibendam*, add. C.D.
[7] *cæterosque regni prælatos, regnique proceres*, add. C.D.
[8] *confirmationem*, B.
[9] *metropolitani*, C.D.
[10] *et*, A.B.
[11] *tumultuantur*, A.
[12] *frendebant*, from E.; *frendent*, MS.
[13] *que*] om. B.
[14] *et*, B.
[15] *Petrus .. thesaurarius* (p.304)] om. C.D.

soure in Norþhumberlond, and chased Piers, and byseged hym in þe castel of Scharburgh,[1] and took hym, and smoot of his heed at Gaveressiche beside Warwik. But whan Piers was dede, ȝit þe king usede his olde maneres, and drowȝ[2] to oþer men; þerfore Robert archebisshop of Caunterbury made a solempne[3] counseil of þe province, þere were ordeyned meny nobel statutes in help of þe reume.[4] Þe kyng was i-swore to holde þese ordenaunces, and Robert þe archebisshop ȝaf his blessynge to alle þat wolde holde hem, and his curs to alle[5] þat wolde hem[6] breke; but þo as alwey þe kyng drouȝ to his fautoures, and dede nouȝt as he hadde i-byhote;[7] þerfore was grete speche among þe comyns, and gruechynge[8] among þe grete, aȝenst þe kyng and hem þat were nyh[9] the kyng. And specialliche Robert þe archebisshop, and Thomas erle of Lancastre, by confort of þis Robert, fondede wiþ hem þat wolde holde wiþ[10] hym many ȝere to wiþstonde þe kynges nysete,[11] forto he ȝelde[12] up þe breeþ in þat stryf at þe laste ende. By lordes aȝenst þe kynges wille Piers of Gavastoun was exiled into Irlond; and þe ȝere after, aboute þe Natyvyte of oure[13] TREVISA.

---

the treasures of theyme in the partes of Northumbrelonde, and toke the seide Petyr at the castelle of Scardeburghe, and heded hym at Gaverissiche nye to Warwyke. The seide Petyr sleyne, the seide kynge Edward drawede to unhoneste companye as he usede afore, wherefore a cownesaile provincialle was hade by Robert archebischoppe of Cawnterbery, in whiche cownsaile mony hollesomme thynges were ordeynede to the utilite of the realme. The kynge makynge an othe to observe the constitucions per, returnede soone after to his olde companye, and to thynges prohibite by the seide constitucions. Wherefore the noble men of the realme, the metropolitan, and Thomas erle of Lancaster, with mony other noble men, were vexede moche ageyne the kynge. Petyr of Gavaston was in Yrlonde in this yere in exile, causede by þe noble men of the MS. HARL. 2261.

---

[1] *Scardburgh*, β. and Cx., et infra.
[2] *drewe*, Cx.
[3] *solemynel*, Cx.
[4] *regm*, γ.
[5] *to alle*] om. Cx.
[6] *ham*, γ.
[7] *promysed*, Cx.
[8] *grochynge*, γ.
[9] *neiȝ*, β.
[10] *hem þat wolde holde wiþ*] om. Cx.
[11] *nyste*, γ.
[12] *ȝuld*, γ.
[13] *ur*, γ.

circa nativitatem beatæ Mariæ, sed anno sequenti revocatus est. Cui occurrit rex apud Cestriam. Circa
Gratiæ MCCCXI. Edwardi II. V. Natalem Domini Petrus exulatus est usque Flandriam per proceres, sed circa Purificationem beatæ Mariæ contra voluntatem eorum revocatus est. Cum quo rex aliquamdiu peragrans, apud castrum de Shardesburgh [1] dimisit; quem tandem [2] obsessum et captum proceres [3] usque Dadyntoun [4] deduxerunt, et juxta Warewycum
Gratiæ MCCCXII. Edwardi II. VI. occiderunt. Decapitato [5] Petro die sanctorum Gervasii et Prothasii apud Gaveresich,[6] eodem anno die sancti Bricii sequenti natus est Edwardus primogenitus regis hujus,[7] tertius post conquestum. [8] Obiit Robertus de Wynchelsee [9] archiepiscopus;[10] electus [est][11] magister Thomas de Cobham, probus clericus. Quo tamen ad instantiam regis cassato et ad Wygorniam translato, successit Walterus Raynald,[12] regis thesaurarius. Et cito postmodum adivit rex Scotiam pompatice [13] cum multa suppellectili sed apud Stryvelyn [14] turpiter cum suis devictus est [15] die nativitatis sancti Johannis, occisis aut captis nobilibus,[16] amissis thesauris, residuique [17] projectis armis soli

---

[1] *Scarburgh*, A.; *Scaerdburgh*, B.
[2] *tamen*, B.
[3] *proceres*] om. A.
[4] *Dadington*, A.; *Dadyngton*, B.
[5] *igitur præfato*, B.
[6] *Gaverissich*, A.
[7] *Edwardus*, B.
[8] *Hoc anno*, B.
[9] *Winchilis*, A.
[10] *archiepiscopus*] om. A.; *Cantuariensis*, ins. B.
[11] *est*] from B.
[12] *Reynalde* A.; *Reynol*, B.
[13] *pompatice*] om. A.
[14] *Strivelyn*, B.
[15] *est*] om. A.
[16] *Hoc anno rex Edwardus et proceres sui excepto Thoma Lancastriæ ad Scociam cum preciosa suppellectili pompatice processerunt, ubi apud castrum de Styruelin die sancti Johannis Baptistæ confligentes Angli, immo pocius fugientes tanta ignominia sunt detriti ut occisis nobilibus, &c.*, C.D.
[17] *residui*, A.

Lady, he was i-sent after aȝen, and þe kyng come aȝenst hym to[1] Chestre. But aboute mydwynter Piers was exciled into Flaundres, and aboute Candilmasse i-sent after aȝen aȝenst her wille, þe kyng was wiþ hym a while, and lefte hym in þe castel of Skarburgh.[2] Þere lordes byseged hym and took hym and brouȝte hym to Dadyngtoun,[3] and slouȝ hym besides Warwyk: Piers was byheeded at Gaveressiche,[4] þe ȝere[5] of seynt Gervasius and Prothasius. And þe same ȝere at[6] seynt Brises[7] day þis kynges eldest sone, þe pridde Edward after þe conquest, was i-bore at Wyndesore;[8] þe archebisshop Robert of Wynchilsee[9] is deed, and maister Thomas [of][10] Cobham is i-chose, a wel nobel clerk. By instaunce of þe kyng he was put of and translated to Worcestre,[11] and Walter Raynalde,[12] þe kynges tresorer, was made archebisshop, and sone þeraftер þey[13] went into Scotlond wiþ greet boost and grete aray, and at Strevelyn he and his were[14] schameliche overcome in a seynt John his day; gentil men were i-slawe and i-take and tresoure[15] i-lost; som þrew awey here wepoun[16] and took socour onliche

TREVISA.

---

realme ageyne the wylle of the kynge, which was callede from exile in the yere folowynge, whom the kynge mette at Chestre. The kynge goynge abowte with hym lefte hym at the castelle of Scardeburghe, whom the noble men of the realme toke þer, and brouȝhte hym to Dadynton, and did sle hym nye to Warwyke. The seide Petyr heded at Gaverssiche in the feste of seyntes Gervasius and Prothasius. Edwarde the þrydde was borne at Wyndeshore, in the day of seynte Bricius. And Robert archebischoppe of Cawnterbery diede, and maister Thomas Cobham, a noble clerke, was electe to be his successoure, but Walterus Reynalde, treasurer to the kynge, succedid in the seete of Cawnterbery by labore of the kynge, and maister Thomas Cobham was made bischoppe of Worcestre. That doen, the kynge wente to Scottelonde with grete pryde, but he was fowle devicte at Stryvelyn, in the feste of seynte John Baptiste, mony noble men other taken or sleyne, and the kynges treasures taken, the residu of the hostes gladde to flee. f. 386 b.

MS. HARL. 2261.

---

[1] *to*] at, β., γ., and Cx.
[2] *Scardeburgh*, γ.; *Scardburgh*, Cx.
[3] *Dadynton*, β. and Cx.
[4] *Gaversfiche*, α.
[5] *þe ȝere*] upon the daye, Cx.
[6] *in*, α.; *on*, β.
[7] *Bryces*, β.
[8] *Wyndeshore*, β.
[9] *Winchestre*, Cx.
[10] From α., β., γ., and Cx.
[11] *Wirceter*, γ.; *Wyrcetre*, Cx.
[12] *Reignald*, β.; *Reynald*, γ.
[13] *þey*] the kyng, Cx.
[14] *was*, β.
[15] *tresourye*, α.
[16] *wepne*, β.; *wepen*, Cx.

sibi fuga consuluerunt Dehinc per[1] continuos xii. annos regnante hoc rege, partes[2] Angliæ boreales per Scottos sunt contritæ.[3] Edwardus[4] le Bruz, frater Roberti le Bruz,[5] intravit Hiberniam ut eam sibi subjugaret, sed quarto post hoc anno, die sancti Kalixti, occisus est.[6] Hoc quoque anno post festum sancti[7] Michaelis miles quidam de comitatu Lancastriæ movit guerram contra dominum[8] Thomam comitem Lancastriæ, sed circa festum sancti Martini captus est[9] [et] decollatus.

Gratiæ MCCCXV. Edwardi II. IX.

Cap. XLII.[10]

[*De sede pontificali. Et de vita et moribus Edwardi regis Angliæ secundi.*]

Johannes xxii^us[11] post Clementem quintum[12] sedit papa annis circiter octodecim. Qui septimum librum Decretalium innovavit; litteratos promovit; disciplinam[13] triplicis linguæ, Hebraicæ, Græcæ, et Latinæ, apud[14] generalia studia instituit. At[15] dum in primis

Gratiæ MCCCXVI. Edwardi II. X.

---

[1] *per*] om. A.
[2] *partes*] from A.B.; *proceres*, MS.
[3] *Scoti partes Angliæ boreales jugiter pertinuerunt*, C.D.
[4] *Edwardus . . decollatus*] om. C.D.
[5] *frater . . . Bruz*] om. B.
[6] *est*] om. A.
[7] *sancti*] om. B.
[8] *suum*, add. B.
[9] *et*] from A.B.
[10] No chapter marked in A.
[11] 24, A.
[12] *quintum*] om. A.
[13] *disciplinam*] om. A.
[14] *studia Catholici ordinis*, C.D.
[15] *Ac*, A.B.

of[1] fliȝt. Here after [twelve ȝere][2] contynualliche while þis kyng regnede þe norþ contrayes of Engelond were destroyed[3] by þe Scottes. Edward le [Bruȝe, Robert le][2] Bruce[4] his broþer, wente into Irlond forto wynne þat lond; but þe fourþe[5] ȝere þerafter he was i-slawe on seynt Calixtes day. Also þis ȝere, aboute Myhelmesse,[6] a knyȝt of Lancastreschire meoved werre aȝenst his owne lord, Thomas eorle of Lancastre, bote aboute Martynmasse he was i-take and byheded.[7] TREVISA.

Capitulum quadragesimum tertium.[8]

AFTER þe firste[9] Clement, þe two and twenty[10] Iohn was pope aboute [an][11] eyȝtene ȝere; he remeved[12] þe sevenþe book[13] of Decretales, and avaunsed clerkes, and ordeyned in[14] general studies lore of þre longages, of Hebrew and[15] Grew and Latyn; and firste, for it schulde seme þat he hated fong-

---

And after that by xij. yere folowynge the northe partes of Ynglonde were vexede soore by the Scottes. Edward Bruz, broþer of Robert Bruz, entrede into Yrlonde to subdue hit to hym, neverthelesse he was sleyne in the iiij^the^ yere folowynge, in the day of seynte Calixt. A knyȝhte of Lancastreschire movede gwerre in this yere ageyne Thomas of Lancastre his lorde abowte the feste of seynte Michell, which was taken and heded abowte the feste of seynte Martyn. MS. HARL. 2261.

Capitulum quadragesimum secundum.

JOHN the xxij^ti^ succedid pope Clemente the v^the^ xviij. yere; whiche innewede the vij^the^ booke of þe Decretalles, ordeynenge at generalle studyes disciplyne of the langage of Hebrewe, of Grewe, and of Latyn. A grete moreyn off bestes and dethe

---

[1] *by*, Cx.
[2] From α. and Cx.
[3] *distruyed*, β.
[4] *Bruze*, α., *Bruyȝes*, β.; *Bruys*, Cx.
[5] *vurde*, γ.
[6] *Mighelmasse*, β.; *Mychelmasse*, Cx.
[7] *heded*, Cx.
[8] 42, β. and Cx.
[9] *fifte*, α.; *fifþe*, β.; *vyfte*, γ.; *fourth*, Cx.
[10] *twentiþe*, β.; *twentyest*, Cx.
[11] From β. and Cx.
[12] *renewide*, β.
[13] *renewyd the seven bokes*, Cx.
[14] *in*] om. Cx.
[15] *and*] om. α., β., and Cx.

acceptiones munerum[1] exhorrere videretur, damnavit primo[2] pluralitatem beneficiorum, ita ut unico beneficio per curatum[3] quemlibet acceptato, ipse papa reliquorum vacantium[4] fructus per aliquot annos obtineret. Insuper et aliorum beneficiorum per mortem seu resignationem vacantium, sive per translationem, primos fructus reservavit; ita ut rector institutus taxationem beneficii sui aut[5] residuum taxationis acceptaret. Ex qua cautela innumerabiles thesauri ad manus[6] papæ devenerunt. Bella tamen a duce Bavarriæ, qui se pro[7] imperatore gesserat, sæpe sustinuit et semper succubuit.[8] Hoc quoque anno magna lues animalium et hominum, maxima[9] inundatio imbrium æstivalium et autumnalium,[10] ex qua provenit tanta bladi caristia ut quarterium tritici ad xl. solidos venderetur. Quidam scriptor nomine Johannes habens murilegum[11] sibi familiarem asseruit publice apud Oxoniam circa festum Pentecostis se esse verum heredem Angliæ, quamobrem apud Northamptoniam coram rege et proceribus de mendacio convictus, distractus et suspensus est. Quo quidem anno duo cardinales Angliam venientes excommunicaverunt Robertum de Bruz cum fautoribus suis, ac Scotiam[12] sub interdicto posuerunt. Quia[13] rex Edwardus contra commune votum magnatum duos foverat Dispensatores,[14] Hugonem patrem et Hu-

Gratiæ MCCCXVIII. Edwardi II. XII.

Gratiæ MCCCXX. Edwardi II. XIIII.

---

[1] *omne aurum et argentum*, C.D.
[2] *postea*, C.D.
[3] *rectorem*, C.D.
[4] *vacantium*] om. B.
[5] *ac residuum acceptaret*, C.D.
[6] *cameram*, C.D.
[7] *pseudo fecerat*, C.D.
[8] *et . . . succubuit*] om. C.D.
[9] *que*, B.
[10] *fuit*, B.
[11] *murelegum*, B.
[12] *ac Scotiam*] om. A.
[13] *Hoc anno occisus est Thomas comes Lancastriæ in hunc modum. Rex ipse contra*, C.D.
[14] *milites, patrem videlicet Hugonem Dispensatorem et filium ejusdem nominis atque cognationis militum. Ob hoc comes Lancastriæ et multi nobiles mutuo sibi invicem confederati regis vires*, &c., C.D.

yng [1] of ȝiftes, he dampned pluralite of benefice,[2] so þat every creature [3] schulde holde hym apaide wiþ oon benefice wiþ cure, and þis pope schulde have þe frutes [4] of oþer [5] benefices þat voyded longe tyme of ȝeres. Also he reserved to hym self þe firste benefice [6] þat voyded by deeþ, by resignacioun, oþer by translacioun; so þat þe persone þat were institute schulde chese whether [7] he wolde have þe taxe of þe benefice oþer þe overplus: [8] by þat cautele come huge tresoure to þe popes honde. But þe duke of Bavarria,[9] þat cleped hymself emperoure, werred ofte aȝenst hym, and bare hym doun alway. Also þis ȝere was grete deeþ of men and [of] [10] bestes, and greet fallynge [11] of reyne in somer and in hervest; þerof come grete derþe of corne, so þat a quarter of whete was solde for xl. s.[12] A whryter [13] þat hiȝte Iohn hadde a katte þat was homeliche wiþ hym: aboute Pentecoste, at Oxenforde, þis Iohn seide openliche þat he was heire [14] of Engelond. Þerfore at Norþhamptoun,[15] tofore [16] þe kyng and lordes, he was proved fals, and an [17] honged and to-drawe.[18] Þat ȝere two cardynales come into Engelond, and cursed [19] Roberd le Bruȝ and his fautoures, and enterdited Scotlond. Kyng Edward favored þe two Spensers, Hewe [20] þe fadir and Hewe þe sone, aȝenst

TREVISA.

---

of men were in this yere, and grete plenty of reyne in somer and in herveste, whom a grete derthe of corne folowede, insomoche that a quarter of whete solde for xl[ti] s. A wryter, Iohn by name, havynge a catte familier to hym, seide openly at Oxenforde abowte Pentecoste, that he was the tru heire of Ynglonde, wherefore he was convicte at Northampton before the noble men of the londe, the kynge presente, and was drawen and hongede. In whiche yere ij. cardinalles commen to Ynglonde excommunicate Robert Bruz, and alle peple supportynge hym, and interdicte the londe of Scottes. In that kynge Edwarde noryschede ij. of the Spensers, Hewe Spenser the

MS. HARL. 2261.

---

[1] *fongeres*, α.; *takyng*, Cx.
[2] *benefices*, α. and β.
[3] *curatour*, β. and γ.
[4] *fruytes*, β.
[5] *the other*, Cx.
[6] *vurste benefys*, γ.
[7] *weþer*, β.
[8] *overpluys*, β. and Cx.
[9] *Bavaria*, Cx.
[10] From α., β., and Cx.
[11] *vallyng*, γ.
[12] *fourty schillynges*, α., β., and Cx.
[13] *wryter*, α. and Cx.; *writer*, β. and γ.
[14] *eyr*, β.
[15] *Norhampton*, β.
[16] *byfore*, Cx.
[17] *an*] om. Cx.
[18] *drawen*, Cx.
[19] *curside*, β.
[20] *Huwe*, γ, et passim; *Hugh*, Cx. (bis), et infra.

gonem filium, Thomas comes Lancastriæ et alii multi regios vires adeo attenuarunt ut ejus assensu saltem umbratice adhibito prædictos [1] Dispensatores exlegarent. Propter [2] quod castra eorum in Wallia prostraverunt, animalia abduxerunt, thesauros recollegerunt, et [3] in hyeme Gloverniam occupaverunt; sed [4] cito postmodum rex ipse,[5] cæteris inconsultis, utrumque Hugonem revocavit.[6] Exinde succrescunt indies odia et schismata. Inter hæc duo magnates de Mortuo Mari, priusquam comes Lancastriæ parari posset præpropere [7] agentes, urbes aliquas in marchia capiunt, regisque milites [8] profligunt, donec rex ipse cum insperata peditum multitudine per viam circularem Salopiam [9] veniret, ubi ob defectum pecuniæ ac comitis Lancastriæ nimia retardatione, militibus defluentibus, illi duo de Mortuo Mari ad deditionem [10] sunt [11] coacti. Quibus apud [12] Londoniam incarceratis rex ad [13] Gloverniam rediens revocavit utrumque Dispensatorem. Inde divertit apud

---

[1] *milites patrem et filium*, C.D.

[2] *Propter . . occuparerunt*] om. C.D.

[3] *et*, from A.B.; *ut*, MS.

[4] *et*, A.

[5] *rex ipse*] om. A.

[6] *revocavit . . . succrescunt*] space left in A.

[7] *propie*, B.

[8] *milites*] om. B.

[9] *Salopiæ*, A.

[10] *dedicationem*, B.

[11] *sunt*] om. B.

[12] *apud Londoniam*] om. C.D.

[13] *orientem tendens apud villam de Burton sub nivibus hyemalibus comitem Lancastriæ cum suis complicibus mirabiliter dispersit, ac inde usque ad urbem de Pontefretis fugere coegit. Inde comes divertens versus Boream captus est cum multis nobilibus apud pontem de Burghbrigge. Indeque ad castrum suum de Pontefretis adductus, multis conviciis lacessitus de consilio duorum Dispensatorum, concaptivis suis distractis et suspensis, comes ipse decapitatus est. De cujus*, &c., add. C.D.

þe wille of lordes. Þerfore Thomas eorle of Lancastre, and many oþere, wiþdrewe so þe kynges strengþe, so þat þey made hem as[1] [a].[2] colour as it were by assent of þe kyng, and exciled þese Spencers, and þrewe adoun her castel[3] in Wales; þey ladde awey þe bestes, and gadred tresoure, and occupied Glowcestre in þe wyntertyme. And sone þerafter, wiþouten counseile of oþer men, þe kyng sente aȝen for eyþer Hewe. Þanne wrawþe and stryf encresed[4] from day to day. Among alle þese[5] two lordes þe[6] Mortymer took hastiliche citees in þe marches,[7] or[8] þe erle of Lancastre myȝte be redy, and pursewed þe kynges knyȝtes, forto þe kyng come aboute by Schroysbury[9] uppon hem unaware[10] wiþ a greet multitude of foot[11] men; þer for defaute of meyne,[12] and for þe erle of Lancastre was to longe behynde, þe knyȝtes wente away, and þe tweie Mortymers moste nedes ȝilde[13] hem, and so þey dede, and were i-prisoned at Londoun. Þan þe kyng wente to Glowcestre,[14] and hadde wiþ hym þese boþe the Spensers.[15]

TREVISA.

---

fader and Hewe Spenser his sonne, ageyne the commune desire of the noble men of þe realme, Thomas of Lancaster and mony other noble men made feble the power of the kynge, insomoche that assente ȝiffen of the kynge as under a schado, thei exilede the seide Spensers and destroyede theire castells in Wales, toke theire bestes and goodes, and occupiede Gloucestre in wynter: but soone after the kynge callede theyme from exile withowte cownsaile of the noble men of the realme, whiche causede grete stryfes and debate. That doen, tweyne of the Mortymares began over hastily, or that Thomas erle of Lancastre was redy, and toke diverse cites in the marches, and expulsede the kynȝhtes of the kynge, untylle that the kynge come with a grete hoste, and so for lacke of money and for the longe taryenge of Thomas erle of Lancastre, the peple and hoste longynge to the seide Mortymars thei were compellede to dedicacion; whiche imprisonede at London, the kynge goynge to Glowcestre, callede bothe the Spensers from exile. After

MS. HARL. 2261.

f. 387 a.

---

[1] *as*] om. β. and Cx.
[2] From α. and Cx.
[3] *castels*, Cx.
[4] *encreside*, β.
[5] *þis*, β.; *this*, Cx.
[6] *þe*] de, β. and Cx.
[7] *marche er*, α.; *in þe march ar*, γ.
[8] *or*] er, β.
[9] *Schrosbury*, β.; *Shrowesbury*, Cx.
[10] *unaware*] om. Cx.
[11] *vot*, γ.
[12] *money*, α., β., and Cx.
[13] *aȝeld*, β.
[14] *Gloucetre*, Cx.
[15] *with hym thens eyther Spenser*, Cx.

Lichefeld circa festum sancti Ceddæ, ut præoccuparet comites Lancastriæ et Herfordiæ cum eorum complicibus apud Tuttebury et Burtonam[1] existentes. Sed rege aquam Trente[2] per vadum transeunte, fugit comes[3] cum suis a villa Burtonæ[4] usque ad urbem[5] de Burghbrigge, ubi occurrens ex parte regis Andreas de Harkeley occidit comitem Herefordiæ in ipso ponte septimo decimo kalendas Aprilis, [comitem] vero[6] Lancastriæ[7] [cepit] cum multis aliis nobilibus, qui pro majori parte in diversis locis sunt suspensi; sed ipse comes apud proprium castrum de Pontefracto undecimo kalendas Aprilis[6] decapitatus est. De cujus viri meritis an inter sanctos sit annumerandus[8] crebra in vulgo disceptatio [est];[9] aliis quidam asseverantibus quod sic, eo quod eleemosynis indulserit, quod religiosos honoraverit, quod pro justa querela, ut videbatur,[10] usque ad mortem certaverit, quod etiam ejus[11] insectatores[12] parvo post tempore[13] durave-

---

[1] *Tuteburiam et Burtoniam*, A.
[2] *ut rege apud Trent*, B.
[3] *Lancastriæ*, A.B.
[4] *de Burton*, B.
[5] *villam*, A.
[6] *vero . . . Aprilis*] om. B.
[7] *vero Lancastriæ*] comitem Lancastriæ cepit cum, &c., A.
[8] *numerandus*, B.
[9] *est*] from A.B.C.D.
[10] *ut videbatur*] om. A.
[11] *ejus*] om. B.
[12] *insectores*, A.
[13] *superstites*, add. C.D.

Þanne he wente to Lichefeld, aboute seynt Chadde[1] day, for to take þe erles of Lancastre and of Hereford,[2] and here fautoures þat were at Tutteburye[3] and at Burtoun. But while þe kyng passed þe water of Trente[4] at a[5] forþe,[6] þe erle of Lancastre and his men fligh[7] out of þe toun of Burtoun to the citee of Burgbrugge.[8] Þere come Andrew of Harkelay in þe kynges syde, and slow þe erle of Herford riȝt uppon þe brigge, þe sixteþe day to fore Averille, and took þe erle of Lancastre and many oþer nobil men. Þe most dele of hem weren in dyvers places an honged by þe þrote, but þe erle was byheded at his owne castel of Pomfreyt,[9] þe tenþe day tofore Averille. Of þis erle and of his dedes is ofte greet stryf among comoun peple, wheþer he schulde be acounted for[10] seyntes oþer none.[11] Some seyn[12] ȝis,[13] for he dede many almes dedes, and worschipped men of religioun, and mayntened a trewe querel, as it semed, to his lyves ende; also his enemyes durede afterward but a while, Trevisa.

---

that the kynge come to Lichefelde abowte the feste of seynte Chadde, that he myȝhte take seynte Thomas erle of Lancastre and the erle of Herforde with theire peple, beynge that tyme at Burton and Tettebery. The kynge passede over the water of Trente, the erle of Lancastre fledde from Burton to Burgbrigge, where Andrewe Harkeley of the kynges parte metynge theyme did sle the erle of Herforde on the same brigge þe xvij^the^ kalendes of Apryle, and toke seynte Thomas of Lancastre with mony oþer noble men, whiche were hongede in diverse places for the moore parte, but Thomas of Lancastre was heded at Powntefret, his awne castelle, þe xj^the^ kalendes of Aprile. Of the merites of this erle Thomas of Lancastre diverse a ryve[14] disceptacion is hade amonge commune peple wheþer he awe to be annumerate amonge seyntes. Mony peple affermynge hym to be nombrede amonge theyme, in that he ȝafe grete almes, honowrynge religious men, and by apparence dyenge for a ryȝhteous querele, and his adversaryes dyede soone after. MS. Harl. 2261.

---

[1] *Chaddes*, α.; *Chedde*, β. and Cx.
[2] *Hereford*] om. Cx.
[3] *Tutbury*, Cx.
[4] *of Trente*] om. Cx.
[5] *an*, α.
[6] *foorde*, β.; *out of the toun at a foorde*, Cx.
[7] *fled*, Cx.
[8] *Burghbrigge*, β.
[9] *Pountfreyȝte*, α.; *Pontfret*, β.; *Pounfret*, Cx.
[10] *among*, α. and Cx.
[11] *noo*, Cx.
[12] *seggeþ*, γ.; *sayde*, Cx.
[13] ȝys, α.; ȝus, γ.; *yes*, Cx.
[14] Sic in MS.

runt,[1] immo dira morte interierunt. Aliis vero in contrarium sentientibus, hominem videlicet[2] conjugatum neglecta uxore sua[3] generosa innumerosas mulierculas polluere, offendentes vel leviter in eum morti mandare; ordinum fugitivos legisque transgressores, ne lege plecterentur, pertinaciter fovere; cuncta denique agenda sua ad nutum unius hominis, secretarii sui, passim committere. Tempore[4] quoque certandi usque ad mortem pro justitia defensanda enormiter[5] fugere,[4] non debere sanctum censeri, præsertim cum invitus[6] comprehensus et passus fuerit. Sed profecto[7] oblationum donaria ac miraculorum simulacra, quæ in loco suæ decapitationis in præsentiarum celebrantur, qualem in posterum[8] habebunt exitum[9] sæcula videbunt postfutura. Ab hoc ergo[10] tempore usque ad[11] sextum postea annum cœpit Dispensatorum fortuna invalescere et reginæ conditio ancillari, quousque rex Franciæ pro homagio Vasconiæ non exhibito regem Angliæ plurimum infestaret. Circa[12] Ascensionem Domini rex tenuit parliamentum apud

Gratiæ MCCCXXI. Edwardi II, XV.

Gratiæ MCCCXXII. Edwardi II. XVI.

---

[1] *duraverit*, B.
[2] *videlicet*] om. A.
[3] *propria, filia comitis Lincolniæ*, add. C.D.
[4] *Tempore . . . fugere*] om. C.D.
[5] *eueuut'*, A.
[6] *quando potuerit mortem fugerit*, C.D.
[7] *profecto*] om. A.
[8] *posterum*] from A.B.C.D.; *postmodum*, MS.
[9] *exitum*] permanenciam, C.D.; om. A.
[10] *igitur*, B.
[11] *in*, A.B.
[12] *Circa . . . soporatis*] om. C.D.

and deyde in schentful[1] deep. Oper seien[2] þe contrarie, and telleþ þat he was an housbonde man, and rouȝt nouȝt of his wyf, and defouled a greet multitude of [gentil][3] wommen and of gentil[4] wenches; ȝif eny man offended hym a lite,[5] he lete slee hym anon. And postataes[6] and evel doers he favored strongliche, for he schulde nouȝt be i-punsched by þe lawe. Also he wolde commytte all his doynges[7] to oon of his secretaries to doo wiþ as he wolde. Also þat he foloweþ schamefulliche[8] in tyme of fyȝtinge for þe right anon to þe deth, and suche on[9] schulde nouȝt be acounted [a saynt],[10] nameliche whan he was i-take and i-slawe maugre his teeþ. But offrynges and liknes of myracles[11] þat now beeþ[12] i-doo in þe place[13] þere he was byheded what issue þey schulde[14] take, it schal be knowe after þis tyme. Fro þat tyme unto þe sixte ȝere after þe fortune of þe Spensers bygan to encrese, and þe condicioun of þe queene drow[15] toward servage; forto þe kyng of Fraunce pursued hugeliche[16] þe kyng of Engelond, for þe homage of Gascoyne was nouȝt i-doo. Aboute þe Ascencioun of oure Lord

TREVISA.

Mony other men affermynge the contrary, seyenge that he refusede a noble gentille woman and his wife, and kepede mony concubynes, noryschynge men fugitive from theire ordre, and other transgressor, that thei scholde not be peyned to dethe, governede after the cownsaile of his secretary. Seyenge also that he awe not to be callede a martir in that he fledde from the defense of ryȝhte, and was taken and putte to dethe ageyne his wylle. But þis for a certente, that mony miracles have be schewede in that place where he suffrede dethe, and moche offrenge hade þer also. From that tyme unto the vj^the^ yere folowynge, the power of the Spensers began to encrease, and the powere of the qwene to decrease, untylle that the kynge of Fraunce trowblede the kynge of Ynglonde in that he did not homage for the cuntre of Gascoigne. Kynge Edwarde kepede a parliamente at Yorke abowte the Assencion of oure Lorde,

MS. HARL. 2261.

f. 387 b.

---

[1] *schamful* β.; *shameful*, Cx.
[2] *seyn*, Cx.
[3] From α., β., γ., and Cx.
[4] *of gentil*] om. α., β., γ., and Cx.
[5] *a lytel*, Cx.
[6] *And postataes*] Apostates, α. and γ.; Apostatas, β. and Cx.
[7] *doyngis*, β.
[8] *flyȝ schamelich*, β.; *fled shamely*, Cx.
[9] *sich oon*, β.
[10] From Cx.
[11] *myrakels*, γ.
[12] *ben*, Cx.
[13] *plas*, γ.
[14] *schul*, β.; *shal*, Cx.
[15] *drouȝ*, β.; *drough*, Cx.
[16] *hogelyche*, γ.

Eboracum, ubi erexit Hugonem Dispensatorem seniorem in comitem Wyntoniæ, Andream de Harkeley in comitem Caerliell.[1] Eodem anno circa festum [sancti Petri][2] ad vincula rex adivit Scotiam, et quamvis non haberet obsistentiam multos de suis fame et morbo amisit. Ipsum tandem regem circa nativitatem beatæ Mariæ remeantem Scotti a tergo insequentes, ceperunt castrum de Norham, et postmodum circa festum sancti[3] Lucæ prandentem regem apud monasterium de Bella Lauda super Blakehoumoor pæne comprehendissent nisi fuga sibi consuluisset. Verumtamen regiis thesauris amissis comitem Richemundiæ ceperunt. Eodem anno in crastino sancti Ceddæ Andreas de Harkeley tanquam proditor apud Caerliell captus est, distractus,[4] suspensus et decapitatus, visceribus combustis, demembratus est, et caput ejus super pontem Londoniæ positum est.[5]

Gratiæ MCCCXXIII. Edwardi II. XVII.

[6] Ad vincula sancti Petri[7] Rogerus de Mortuo Mari junior, nuper incarceratus, evasit de turri Londoniæ, cus-

---

[1] *Carlioli*, B.
[2] From B.
[3] *sanctæ*, A.
[4] *et*, B.
[5] *est*] om. B.
[6] *Hoc anno*, B.
[7] *Ad . . . Petri*] om. A.

TREVISA.

þe kyng hilde[1] a parlement at ȝork; þere he made Hewe Spenser[2] þe elder erle of Wynchestre, and Andrew of Harkeley erle of Karlyle.[3] Þe same ȝere, aboute Lammasse,[4] þe kyng wente into Scotlond, and þey he hadde none wiþstonddynge, ȝit he loste many men wiþ siknes and wiþ hunger. Aboute þe Natyvyte of oure Lady þe kyng come homward[5] aȝeyne, and þe Scottes come after hym, and took þe castel [of][6] Norham. And afterward, aboute seynt Lukes tyme,[7] at the abbay of Bellalauda uppon Blakamore,[8] þey hadde nygh take þe kyng at mete, ne hadde[9] he[10] flowe;[11] but þey took þe erle of Richemond, and þe kynges tresorye[12] was i-loste. Þe same ȝere, þe[13] morwe after seynt Chadde[14] day, Andrew of Harkeley was i-take at Carlile[15] as a traytour, an honged and to-drawe and byheded, and his bowels i-brent [and y-quartred],[16] and his heed i-sette uppon Londoun brigge.[17] At Lammasse Roger Mortymer þe ȝonger, þat was in prisoun, scaped out of þe tour of Lon-

---

MS. HARL. 2261.

where he erecte Hewe Spenser the senior unto erle of Wynchestre, and Andrew Harkeley into the erle of Caerliell. Kynge Edwarde wente to Scottelonde in the same yere abowte Lammasse, losynge moche peple per, thauȝhe he hade noo resistence, by hungre and sekenesse: whiche returnede from that cuntre, the Scottes folowede hym on the bakke, and toke the castelle of Norham abowte the Nativite of oure Lady, and after that thei hade taken the kynge at Blachon moore, but that he fledde; neverthelesse thei toke the treasure of the kynge per and the erle of Rychemunde. Andrewe Harkeley was taken at Caerliell in the day folowynge the feste of seynte Chadde, drawen, hongede, heded, and his body divided, his bowells brente afore, lyke a traytour, and his hedde was sette on London brygge. Also abowte Lamasse folowynge Rogerus Mortimere þe yonger escaped from the towre of London, his kepers beynge

---

[1] *huld*, γ.
[2] *Hugh the Spenser*, Cx.
[3] *Carleel*, β.; *Carleell*, Cx.
[4] *Lambmas*, γ., et infra.
[5] *hamward*, β.
[6] From γ.
[7] *tide*, α.; *tyde*, β. and Cx.; *Luc hys tyde*, γ.
[8] *Blakhammore*, β. and γ.; *Blakham mor*, Cx.
[9] *nadde*, β.
[10] *yf he had not*, Cx.
[11] *nadde he yvlowe*, γ.
[12] *tresour*, β. and Cx.; *tresor*, γ.
[13] *a*, α.
[14] *Cheddes*, β.
[15] *Carleel*, β.
[16] From α. and Cx.
[17] *brugge*, γ.

Gratiæ MCCCXXIIII. Edwardi II. XVIII.

todibus suis per potionem somniferam soporatis. Circa[1] medium Quadragesimæ regina Angliæ[2] missa est ad fratrem suum regem Franciæ,[3] qui magna ex parte Vasconiam invaserat, ad pacem procurandam. [4] Circa

Gratiæ MCCCXXV. Edwardi II. XIX.

nativitatem[5] beatæ Mariæ rex misit in Franciam filium suum Edwardum ut homagium faceret regi Franciæ pro ducatu Acquitanniæ sibi dato, quem fecit rex Franciæ morari cum matre sua[6] comitatu Pontino. Sed matre et filio in[7] transmarinis sic demorantibus nec redire volentibus, aut certe propter metum Dispensatorum remeare non audentibus, rex Angliæ de consilio duorum Dispensatorum exlegavit et bannivit publice in foro Londoniæ uxorem suam et filium[8] tanquam regni proditores.

Cap. XLIII.[9]

De reditu reginæ.[10]

Gratiæ MCCCXXVI. Edwardi II. XX.

Hoc anno regina Angliæ[11] cum primogenito suo Edwardo ac Rogero de Mortuo Mari nuper elapso, nec-

---

[1] *Hac itaque occasione suborta transmissa est,* add. C.D.
[2] *Isabella,* B.
[3] *Philippum,* B.
[4] *Ac cito post pro eodem negocio missus est regis Angliæ primogenitus Edwardus, sed matre,* &c., C.D.
[5] *festum nativitatis,* B.
[6] *in,* A.
[7] *partibus,* B.
[8] *suum,* B.
[9] *Capitulum* 42, A.
[10] A.B. omit title.
[11] *Isabella,* add. B.

doun by a slepynge drynke[1] þat his wardeyn[2] hadde i-dronke. Aboute Mydlente, forto make pees, þe queene of Engelond was sent to her broþer kyng of Fraunce, þat hadde assailled a greet deel of Gascoyne. Aboute þe Nativite of oure Lady þe kyng sent his sone Edward into Fraunce forto doo þe kyng of Fraunce homage for þe ducherie of Gyen,[3] þat was i-ȝeve hym, and þe kyng of Fraunce made hym abyde wiþ his moder in the coũte of Pounteney.[4] Þe moder and þe sone dwelled so byȝonde þe see, and wolde nouȝt come aȝen, or[5] durst[6] nouȝt for drede of þe Spensers. Þanne þe kyng of Engelond, by counseil of þe tweie Spensers, outlawed and banysched his wif and his sone openliche at Londoun in Chepe,[7] as traytoures of þe reaume.[8] TREVISA.

Capitulum quadragesimum quartum.[9]

THIS ȝere aboute Myghelmasse[10] the queene of Engelond and her sone Edward, and Roger Mortymer þat scaped out of þe

---

in slepe by a drynke receyvyde made þerfore. The qwene of Ynglonde sende to the kynge of Fraunce, her broþer, to make labor for reste and pease. Kynge Edwarde sende Edwarde his sonne into Fraunce to make his homage to þe kynge þerof for the duchery of Aquitanny ȝiffen to hym, whom the kynge of Fraunce causede to tary with his moder in the cowntee Pontyne. The qwene and Edward her sonne taryenge over see, dredynge or ferynge to comme into Ynglonde for the Spensers, kynge Edwarde, by cownsayle of the ij. Spensers, exilede and banyschede theyme openly in the towre of London and thro alle þe cite as traytours of þe realme. MS. HARL. 2261.

Capitulum quadragesimum secundum.[11]

THE qwene of Ynglonde, with Edwarde her sonne and Roger Mortymare, whiche hade escapede from the towre of London,

---

[1] *drenche*, β.; *drench*, γ.
[2] *wardeyns*, β. and γ.; *wardeynes*, Cx.
[3] *Guyan*, Cx.
[4] *Ponty*, α. and β.; *Pontyen*, Cx.
[5] *oþer*, β.
[6] *oþer þorste*, γ.
[7] *Cheep*, β.
[8] *Royamme*, Cx.
[9] 43, β. and Cx.
[10] *Mychelmasse*, Cx.
[11] Sic.

non et cum[1] parva manu Hunaldorum, circa festum sancti Michaelis apud[2] Essex in Angliam applicuit, versus Londoniam ubi rex tunc erat tetendit Et quod mirandum,[3] terra undique tranquilla sine sanguine et strepitu, regem a Londonia mature fugitantem usque in[4] Westwalliam pedetentim insequuntur.[5] Interim in crastino sancti Kalixti decollatus est episcopus Oxoniæ thesaurarius regis, de consilio civium Londoniensium, extra boreale ostium ecclesiæ Sancti Pauli, et die sequenti capta est turris Londoniæ per cives ad opus reginæ et filii sui. Et cito post, in vigilia apostolorum Symonis et Judæ, captum est castrum de[6] Bristolliæ per reginam et suos, ubi Hugo Dispensator senior distractus[7] et suspensus est, et caput ejus Wyntoniæ transmissum est. Eodem anno, die sancti Hugonis, comes de Arundell apud partes Salopiæ captus est, sed[8] apud Hereford[9] decollatus est. Eadem hebdomada rex Angliæ captus est apud castrum de Neth

---

[1] *cum*] om. A.

[2] *in Estsexia apud Herewych*, C.D.

[3] *fuit*, ins. A B.; *mirabile fuit dictu et auditu*, C.D.

[4] *in*] om. A.

[5] *pedetentim insequuntur. Tandem capiunt et custodiæ demandant. Regis quoque consiliarios Hugonem patrem apud Bristoll, Hugonem filium apud Herefordiam, distrahunt et suspendunt*, add. C.D.

[6] *de*] om. A.B.

[7] *captus*, B.

[8] *sed . . . decollatus est* (p. 322)] om. B.

[9] *Herefort*, A.

toure of Londoun, come into Engelond wiþ litel strengþe of Henaundes,[1] and londed in Estsex[2] and wente toward Londoun, þere þe kyng was þat tyme; and wonder it is þat þe lond was stille al aboute, wiþouten noyse and schedynge of blood; and þe kyng fleeþ[3] out of Londoun into West Wales, and þey folwede[4] hym esiliche a foot[5] paas. Þat tyme, þe morwe after seynt Kalixtes day, by counsayle of burgeyses[6] of Londoun, þe kynges tresorer þe bisshop of Excetere[7] was byheeded withouten þe norþ dore of seynt Poules chirche. And on þe morwe þe toure of Londoun was i-take by burgeys of Londoun in helpe of þe queene and of her sone. Sone þereafter, on seynt Symond day[8] and [on][9] seynt[10] Jude, þe queene and her men toke þe castel of Bristowe, þere Hewe[11] þe Spenser þe elder was honged and to-drawe, and his heed sent to Wynchestre; þe same ȝere on seynt Hewes[12] day þe erle of Arundel was i-take in þe contray of Schroysbury,[13] but he was byheded at Herforde. Þe same while[14] þe kyng of Engelond was i-take in þe castel of Neth in West Wales,

TREVISA.

---

come into Ynglonde in this yere, and landed at Estesex abowte the feste of seynte Michell with a lytelle hoste of men, and made grete haste to London, where the kynge was in that tyme. And as a thynge to be mervaylede, the londe beynge quiete withowte effusion of bloode, they folowede the kynge fleynge from London into Weste Wales; and soone after the bischop of Excestre, treasurer of Ynglonde, was heded in the day folowynge the feste of Calixt the pope, by cownsayle of citesynnes of London withowte the northe durre of the churche of Seynte Paule. That doen the towre of London was taken to the utilite of the qwene and Edward her sonne; and soone after the castelle of Bristowe was taken by the qwene and here men, where Hewe Spenser the elder was drawen and honged, and his hedde sente to Wynchestre. The erle of Arundell was taken þat yere abowte Schrobbesbery, and was heded at Herforde. Edwarde kynge of Ynglonde was taken in the same weke at the castelle of Nethe in Weste Wales, but he was

MS. HARL. 2261. f. 388 a.

---

[1] *Henawdes*, α; *Henaudes*, β.; *Henewers*, Cx.
[2] *Essex*, γ.
[3] *fliz*, β.; *vly*, γ.; *fledde*, Cx.
[4] *folewide*, β.
[5] *vot*, γ.
[6] *bourgeys*, Cx.
[7] þat wrongly inserted here in MS.; om. Cx.
[8] *even*, Cx.
[9] From α. (not Cx.).
[10] *seynt*] om. Cx.
[11] *Hugh*, Cx., et infra.
[12] *Huwes*, β.; *Hughes*, Cx.
[13] *Schrosbury*, β.
[14] *weke*, β. and Cx.; *wyke*, γ.

in West Wallia, sed apud castrum de Kenelworthe [1] custodiendus demandatur. Junior autem Hugo Dispensator, qui cum rege captus fuerat, distractus, suspensus et [2] decollatus est apud Herfort,[3] corpore ejus quadripartito, sed caput ejus ad pontem Londoniæ transmissum est.[4] Quo etiam anno, in octavis Epiphaniæ, factum est parliamentum apud Londoniam, ubi de communi ordinatione missi sunt solemnes nuncii ad regem incarceratum, scilicet tres episcopi, duo comites, duo barones, duo abbates, duo justitiarii, ut regi detento homagium [5] sibi factum resignarent, ipsumque pro domino ulterius non haberent. E [6] quibus dominus Willelmus Trussell, miles et procurator totius parliamenti vice omnium dixit regi ista verba: *Depositio regis Angliæ.*[7] *Ego Willelmus Trussell vice omnium de terra Angliæ, et totius parliamenti procurator, tibi Edwardo reddo homagium prius tibi factum. Et ex nunc diffido te et privo* [8] *omni potestate regia et dignitate, nequaquam tibi de cætero tanquam regi pariturus.* Istud [9] fuit publice proclamatum apud Londoniam. Eodem anno, in vigilia[10] purificationis beatæ Mariæ, Edwardus filius regis [11] factus est miles, et in die coronatus ut patet ex alia parte.[12]

---

[1] *Kyneworth*, A.
[2] *ac*, A.
[3] *Herefort*, A.; *Herfford*, B.
[4] *transmissum est*] om. A.
[5] *quondam*, A.B.
[6] *E*] from B.; *Et*, MS.
[7] A.B. omit heading.
[8] *privo*, from A.; *primo*, MS.
[9] *etiam*, A.; *igitur*, B.
[10] *Post hæc in festo*, C.D. (see next chapter).
[11] *Edwardi*, B.
[12] *et . . . parte*] om. A.B.

and i-putte in ward, in þe castel of Kelyngworþe.[1] Hewe the Spenser ȝe ȝonge[2] was i-take wiþ þe kyng, and anhonged[3] and to-drawe at Hereford, byheded and i-quartred, and his heed was i-sent to Londoun brigge.[4] Also þat ȝere in þe octabis[5] of þe twelfþe day was made a parlement at Londoun, þere by comoun ordynaunce weren solempne messangers i-sent to þe kyng þat was in prisoun, þre bisshoppes, þre erles, tweye barouns, two abbottes, and two justices, forto resigne to þe kyng þat was þoo in warde þe homage þat was i-made to hym somtyme, for þey wolde no lenger have hym for her lord. On of hem, sire William Trussele knyȝt, and procuratour of all þe parlement, spak to þe kyng in þe[6] name of alle þe oþere, and seide þese wordes: "I[7] William "Trussell, in þe name of alle men of þe lond of Engelond, "and of al þe parlement procuratour, I[8] resigne to þe, Edward, "þe homage þat was i-made to þe somtyme, and fro þis tyme "forþward I defie[9] þe, and prive þe of al real[10] power, and "I[11] schal nevere be tendaunt to þee as for kyng after þis "tyme." Also þis was opounliche i-cride at Londoun. Þe

Trevisa.

---

kepede in the castelle of Kenelworthe; and Hewe Spenser the yonger, whiche was taken from the kynges presence, was drawene, hongede, and his hedde sende to London brygge. In whiche yere a parliamente was kepede at London in the octaves of the Epiphany, by whiche ordinaunce solenne messyngers were sende to the kynge in prison, iij. bischoppes, ij. erles, ij. barons, ij. abbottes, and ij. justices, that thei scholde resigne theire homage made to the kynge afore; amonge whom William Trussell, knyȝhte, a proctor of alle the parliamente, seide to the kynge in the name of alle the oþer lordes: "I, "William Trussell, proctor of alle the parliamente, in the "name of alle the lordes of Ynglonde, depose the of thy "regalle dignite, and never to obbey the as kynge hereafter." This was openly proclamede at London. Edwarde sonne of

MS. Harl. 2261.

---

[1] *Kenelworþe*, α., β., and Cx.; *Kenelwurth*, γ.
[2] *þe ȝonger*, α. and β.; *yonger*, Cx.
[3] *and enhonged*, α.; om. Cx.
[4] *bridge*, Cx.
[5] *octavas*, α.; *eotaves*, β.; *octaves*, Cx.
[6] *þe*] om. Cx.
[7] *Ich*, β. (bis) and γ.
[8] *ych*, γ.
[9] *diffye*, β.; *dyffye*, Cx.
[10] *rial*, β.; *ryall*, Cx.
[11] *Y*, β.

Cap. XLIV.[1]

[*Edwardus tertius rex Angliæ. Bellum contra Scottos.*]

Gratiæ MCCCXXVII. Edwardi III. Primo.

Edwardus filius Edwardi, post conquestum tertius, adolescens[2] quindecim annorum circiter, vivente adhuc patre sub custodia, in festo purificationis beatæ Mariæ coronatus est in regem apud Westimonasterium.[3] In cujus primordiis grata suggebantur auspicia, nam et tunc terra recepit ubertatem, aer temperiem, mare tranquillitatem, ecclesia libertatem.[4] *Explicit Historia.*[5] Tertio[6] nonas Aprilis translatus est rex antiquus de Kenelworthe usque castrum de Berkeleya, ubi tamen cum multi conspirarent ad ejus liberationem, circa festum sancti[7] Matthei Evangelistæ, cum veru ignito inter celanda confossus ignominiose[8] peremptus est.[9] De cujus meritis, an inter sanctos annumerandus sit, frequens[10] in vulgo, sicut quondam de Thoma comite Lancastriæ, adhuc disceptatio est. Sed revera nec carceris fœditas nec mortis vilitas, cum ista sceleratis[11]

[1] *Capitulum* 43, A.

[2] *primogenitus Edwardi secundi, puer quindecim annorum*, &c., C.D.

[3] *de cujus felici prosperatione grata sumuntur auspicia. Nam in ejus primordiis*, C.D.

[4] C.D. omit the rest, and C. adds, by way of tail piece :

" Scribitur ecce liber patrias profer mihi liber,
Virginis o liber scriptor tibi sit peto liber
Qui legit attendat ne scriptorem reprehendat
Nam defectiva fit copia sæpe nociva
Libro conscripto, scriptor pellatur Egipto
Solvat ut invicto Regi laudes benedicto.

Expliciunt cronicæ venerabilis Ranulphi monachi Cestrensis in septem libellos distinctæ, dictæque Historia Policratica.

Penna quiesce modo, finemque laboris ego do
Mefro complodo librum claudens quasi nodo."

While D. has :

Et hic finis.
Qui scripsit librum Jon.
Luttoñ est sibi nomen :
Qui scripsit scriptum
Sit benedictus in ævum.

[5] B. has not this colophon, but goes on with the next sentence with no greater break than a paragraph mark ¶.

[6] *Et cito post hoc tertio*, &c., A.

[7] *beati*, A B.

[8] *nefarie*, A.B.

[9] *est*] om. A.

[10] *frequens*] om. B.

[11] *sceleritatis*, A.

same ȝere on [1] Candelmasse eve Edward þe kynges sone was kyng.[2] TREVISA.

Capitulum quadragesimum quintum.[3]

EDWARD his sone, þe þridde Edward after þe conquest, a ȝong child aboute[4] a[5] tiftene ȝere olde, under warde, ȝet levynge his fadir, was crowned kyng at Westmynstre in a Candilmasse day. In his bygynnynge come forþ gracious happes and fortune, þo þe erþe fonge plente, the eyer temperure,[6] þe see quyet and pees, and holy chirche fredom. Þe þridde day of Averell þe olde kyng was i-brouȝt out of Kelyngworthe[7] to þe castel of Berkeley.[8] Þere many men conspired forto helpe at[9] his delyveraunce, but he deyde aboute þe feste of seynt Matheu þe evangeliste: of his levynge and of his dedes is ȝit among þe peple[10] stryf, as was somtyme of Thomas of Lancastre, whether he schulde be acounted among seyntes oþer no. For noþer[11] prisonement ne persecucioun and greves prevep a man a seynt,

---

the kynge was made knyȝhte in the vigile of the Purificacion of oure Lady Mary. MS. HARL 2261.

Capitulum quadragesimum tertium.

EDWARD, sonne of kynge Edwarde, after the conqueste the thrydde, of xv. yere in age, was crownede into kynge in the feste of the Purificacion of oure blissed Lady at Westemynstre, his fader beynge in lyve and under kepynge. In the begynnynge of whom the erthe began to ȝiffe moche fruite, the aier f. 388 b. temperance, the see tranquilite, the churche liberte. Edward somme tyme kynge was brouȝhte from Kenelworthe to the castelle of Berkeley, where he was sleyne with a hoote broche putte thro the secrete place posterialle. Wherefore mony peple say that he diede a martir and did mony miracles; neverthelesse kepynge in prison, vilenes and obprobrious dethe cause not a

---

[1] *on*] a, γ.
[2] *kyng*] y-made knyȝt, α.; made knyȝt, β.; made knyght, Cx.
[3] 44, β. and Cx.
[4] *aboute a*] of, Cx.
[5] *an*, β.
[6] *þe aer tempreur*, γ.
[7] *Kenelworþe*, α., β., and Cx.; *Kenelwurth*, γ.
[8] *Barkley*, Cx.
[9] *at*] for, Cx.; to, β.
[10] *stryf among þe peple*, α. and Cx.
[11] *neiþer*, α.

debeantur, nec etiam oblationum frequentia aut miraculorum simulacra, cum talia sint indifferentia, quemquam sanctum probant, nisi corresponderet sanctimonia vitæ præcedentis. Bene namque cum unoquoque agitur si talia cum contritione culpam in eo diluant[1] aut pœnam debitam immuniant, quamvis immediatam advelationem[2] non efficiant; sed præsumptio flagitiorum[3] impunitatem sibi et sui similibus inaniter sperantium, ambitioque matronarum circumgirare affectantium rumorem talis venerationis multum amplificat et dilatat,[4] donec ædificatio super arenam fundata decidat et labescat. In parliamento apud Wyntoniam decollatus est Edmundus de Wodestok, avunculus hujus regis, comes Cantiæ, pro eo quod conspiraverat contra istum regem ut dicebatur. Natus est novo regi Edwardo primogenitus suus, Edwardus quartus post conquestum, ex regina sua filia comitis Hunaldorum, septimodecimo kalendas Junii. Eoque anno in crastino sancti Lucæ captus est apud Notyngham Rogerus de Mortuo Mari,

Gratiæ MCCCXXIX. EdwardiIII. III.

Gratiæ MCCCXXX. EdwardiIII. IIII.

---

[1] *diluunt*, A.
[2] *avolationem*, A.
[3] *flagitiosorum*, A.
[4] *amplificat et dilatat*] ampliat, A.

for[1] evel[2] doer[3] suffren suche peynes; neyþer offrynges ne likues[4] of myracles proveþ a man a seynt,[2] but þe holynes of þe raþer lyf accorde þerto, ffor suche beeþ[5] indifferent to gode and to yvel. For everich[6] synful man is to[7] a faire grace ȝeve[8] suche[9] peynes wiþ contricioun dooþ[10] awey his synnes and lasseþ[11] his peynes in purgatorie, þey he[12] make hym flee anon to hevene wiþouten eny peyne of purgarie.[13] But presumpcioun and pryde of evel men and synful trusteþ[14] and hopeþ in[15] idel þat þey and oþere suche schulde have no peyne in purgatorie. Also likynge and wille þat[16] wyves have[17] to wende aboute make[18] tydinges[19] springe and sprede hugeliche of suche worschippynge, for [to][20] þe buldyng uppon [suche][21] unsiker grounde bygynneþ to slyde. At þe parlement at Wynchestre Edmond of Wodestoke was byheded, for he hadde conspired aȝenst þe kyng, as it was i-saide: þe foreside Edmond was þis kynges eme, and erle of Kent. Þe sixte[22] day to fore Iune þis pridde [kyng][23] Edward after the conquest hadde his eldest sone Edward i-bore of his wyf þe queene, þe erles douȝter of Henaunde.[24] Also þat ȝere, on þe morwe[25] after seynt Lukes day, Roger Mortymer, þat made men clepe hym

TREVISA.

---

martir, but if the holynesse of lyfe afore be correspondent: for hit is welle and if þat vile dethe do aweȝ synne in hym and diminische his peyns. But women luffynge to goe in pilgremage encrease moche the rumor of suche veneracion, untille that a feble edifienge falle downe. Edmund Wodestoke, uncle to kynge Edward the thrydde, and erle of Kente, was heded in the parliament at Wynchestre, in that he conspirede ageyne the kynge as hit was seide. Edwarde the iiij[the] sonne of this newe kynge, was borne in this yere, the xvij. kalendes of Iunius, of his qwene, doȝhter of the erle of Hunaldes. And Rogerus Mortymare was taken at Notyngham, in that he commaundede

MS. HARL. 2261.

---

[1] *vor*, γ.
[2] *for evel . . . a seynt*] om. β. and Cx.
[3] *doeres*, α.; *doers*, γ.
[4] *lyckenes*, α.
[5] *ben*, Cx.
[6] *ever*, Cx.
[7] *is to*] hit is, α., it is, Cx.
[8] *ȝif*, add. α.; *of*, add. Cx.
[9] *hit is a faire grace ȝif siche*, β.; *hit ys a veyr grace ef soche*, γ.
[10] *done*, Cx.
[11] *lasseneþ*, α. and β.; *lassen*, Cx.
[12] *though they*, Cx.
[13] *purgatory*, β.; *purgatorye*, Cx.
[14] *trysteþ*, α.
[15] *an*, β. and Cx.
[16] þat, from α. and Cx.; *of*, MS.
[17] *wille þat wyves haveþ*, β.
[18] *makeþ*, α.; *makiþ*, β.
[19] *tyþinges*, α.
[20] From α.
[21] From Cx.
[22] *syxtenth*, Cx.
[23] From α., β., and Cx.
[24] *Henaud*, β. and Cx.
[25] *amorowe*, β.

qui se comitem Marchiæ fecerat appellari, indeque Londoniam missus judicio parliamenti distractus et
Gratiæ MCCCXXXII. Edwardi III. VI. suspensus est in vigilia sancti Andreæ. *Bellum de Gledesmore.*[1] Edwardus le Baylol,[2] filius Johannis le Bayllol,[3] quondam regis Scotiæ, cum modica manu Anglorum, id est duobus vix [4] milibus, intravit Scotiam ut regnum recuperaret, circa vincula sancti Petri, et occidit sexaginta millia Scotorum apud Gledesmore.
Gratiæ MCCCXXXIII. Edwardi III. VII. Venit rex Angliæ in auxilium regis Scotiæ, et obsedit Berwycum quarto idus Julii. Cui miles quidam Scoticus, Willelmus de Keth,[6] promisit quod [ad] [7] certum diem adduceret exercitum Scottorum ad pugnandum cum eo, et ad obsidionem illam removendam; quod nisi faceret, urbs Berwyci [8] regi redderetur.[9] Interim Scotti subdole combusserunt in partibus Northimbranis, et obsederunt castrum de Bamburgh, ubi regina Angliæ tunc morabatur, si sic forsan obsidionem Berwyci [5] solvere possent. Tandem die præfixa, hora nona, pelago pleno, advenerunt Scotti contra Anglos in tribus aciebus omnes pedites discincti, quartodecimo kalendis Augusti,

---

[1] A.B. omit heading.
[2] *de Balliol*, A.; *le Baillol*, B.
[3] *le Baliol*, A.
[4] *vix*] om. A.
[5] *Barwicum*, A.
[6] *Kueth*, A.; *Reth*, B.
[7] *ad*, from A.B.
[8] *Barwici*, A.
[9] *ei redderet*, B.

erle of [þe][1] Marche, was i-take at Notyngham, and i-sent to Londoun, and þere by dome of parlement he was an honged and to-drawe on seynt Andrewes even. Aboute Lammasse[2] Edward le Balliol,[3] þat was somtyme kyng of Scotlond, entred into Scotlond for to recovere[4] his kyngdome wiþ litel strengþe of Englisshe men, unneþe two þowsand, and slouȝ sixty þowsand of Scottes[5] at Gledesmore.[6] Þe kyng of Engelond come for help of þe kyng of Scotlond, and[7] byseged Berwyk þe twelfþe day of Iul;[8] William de Reeth,[9] a Scottisshe knyȝt, behiȝt þe kyng þat he wolde at a certeyne day brynge þe oost of Scottes to fiȝte wiþ hym, and to remeve[10] þe seege, and but if he so dede he wolde ȝelde hym and[11] þe citee of Berwyk to þe kyng[12] [þan at þe day þat was y-sett].[13] In þe mene tyme þe Scottes brent in Northumberlond as traytoures schulde, and seged[14] þe castel of Bamborugh,[15] þerynne lay þe queene of Engelond, ȝif þey myȝte in þat wise breke þe sege of Berwyk. Þanne at þe day þat was i-sette, þe þrittenþe day of[16] Lammasse, anon at þe fulle[17] see, þe Scottes come aȝenst[18] Englisshe men in þre bataylles, alle on[19] fote and ungert,[20] in a place faste

Trevisa.

---

hym to be callede erle of Marche; whiche sende to London was drawen and hongede by juggemente of the parliamente in the vigille of seynte Andrewe. Edward le Bailloi, sonne of Iohn Baillol, somme tyme kynge of Scottelonde, entrede into Scottelonde with a fewe peple of Ynglische men, unnethe ij. M. in nowmbre, to recure that realme; whiche did sle abowte Lamasse lx. M. of the Scottes at Gledesmore. Kynge Edward come that tyme and segede Berwyke the iiij[the] idus of Iulius, and William Neeth, a knyȝhte of Scottelonde, promysede to brynge an hoste of Scottes to remove hym from that sege. After þat the Scottes brente in diverse places of Northumbrelonde, and seged the castelle of Banburgh, where the qwene of Ynglonde was, thenkynge to dissolvede[21] the sege of Berwyke þerby; but the Scottes come divided into thre wardes in the day of theire promyse ageyne men of Ynglonde, þe xiiij[the] kalendes of Auguste,

MS. Harl. 2261.

---

[1] From α., β., and Cx.
[2] *Lambmas*, γ.
[3] *Bailol*, β.; *Bayllol*, Cx.
[4] *rekever*, β.; *recuver*, γ.
[5] *of Scottes*] om. α. (not Cx.).
[6] *Gledysmore*, β.; *Gledismore*, γ.
[7] *an*, γ.
[8] *Juyll*, Cx.
[9] *Reth*, β. and Cx.
[10] *remeove*, β.
[11] *hym and*] om. β.
[12] *he wolde ȝelde to þe kyng þe citee of Berwyk*, α. and Cx.
[13] From α.; wrongly inserted by the scribe who has written here the first words of the following sentence.
[14] *byseged*, α.
[15] *Bamburgh*, α.; *Banburgh*, Cx.
[16] *to*, α.
[17] *volle*, γ.
[18] *aȝen*, α.
[19] *a*, α.
[20] *ungirde*, α.; *afoote and ungyrd*, Cx.
[21] Sic.

prope Berwycum, in loco qui dicitur Boothull juxta Halyndoun,[1] qui oppressi sunt a sagittariis Anglorum et insecuti ab equitibus Angliæ[2] usque ad noctem, ita quidem quod ceciderunt de[3] Scottis octo comites cum mille trecentis equitibus, et de plebis xxxv. millia. Quo viso oppidani reddiderunt Berwycum regi Angliæ, et, quod mirabile[4] dictu, non ceciderunt ex parte Anglorum nisi unus miles, unus armiger, et xii. pedites.

Gratiæ MCCCXXXIIII. EdwardiIII. VIII. In festo sanctorum[5] Gervasii et Prothasii Edwardus le Bayllol, verus rex Scotiæ, fecit homagium Edwardo regi Angliæ pro regno Scotiæ apud Novum Castrum super Tynam, in præsentia trium episcoporum, comitum, baronum et copiosæ plebis, et cito post Scotti rebellarunt. Quamobrem rex Angliæ, sub gelida hyeme Galwodiam intrans, totam patriam usque ad mare Scoticum devastavit, castrum de Rakesburgh[6] reparavit, ubi se

Gratiæ MCCCXXXV. EdwardiIII. IX. et suos per totam hyemem tutavit. Obiit papa Johannes xxii^us^ in Adventu Domini.[7] Cito post in eadem heb-

---

[1] *Halidoun*, A.
[2] *Anglorum*, B.
[3] *ex*, A.
[4] *est*, A.
[5] *sanctorum*] om. A.
[6] *Rokesburgh*, A.; *Rokysburgh*, B.
[7] *et*, A.

beside Berwik, þat hatte Boothulle,[1] besides Halyngdoun.[2] Englisshe men[3] archers beet doun þe Scottes, and horsmen pursued hem and chased hem forto it was ny3t; so þat þere were dede of Scottes ey3te erles, a þowsand and þre hondred horsmen, and of oþer men fyve and pritty þowsand. Whan þis was i-seie[4] Berwyk was i-3olde up to þe kyng of Engelond. And wonder it is to telle þere were none dede on þe Englische men side but a kny3t and a squyer and twelve foot men. In þe feste of Gervasius and Prothasius Edward Baillol,[5] verray kyng of Scotlond, dede[6] homage for þe reme[7] of Scotlond to Edward kyng of Engelond, at þe newe[8] castel up[9] Tyne, in presence of þre bisshops, of erles, of barouns, and of grete multitude of peeple, and sone þeraftter þe Scottes weren rebel. Þerfore in a cold[10] wynter þe kyng of Engelond went into[11] Galeway, and destroyed[12] þe contrey anon to þe Scottisshe see, and reparailled[13] þe castel of Rokesburgh, and þere he socoured hym and his men alle þe wynter.[14] The two and twentiþe[15] pope

Trevisa.

---

nye to Berwyke in a place called Boothull, whiche were oppressede by archers of Ynglonde, and folowede by men of armes unto ny3hte; Insomoche that viij. erles of þe Scottes with a M. and iij.^{c}. horsemen were sleyne, and xxxv^{ti} M. of footemen were sleyne. The men of Berwike seenge þat, delyverede Berewik unto kynge Edwarde; and xiiij. men of Ynglonde were sleyne in that conflicte, and not oon man moore, as a thynge to be hade in mervayle, whiche were oon kny3hte, oon esqwyer, and xij. footemen. Edwarde le Baillol, the tru kynge of Scotlonde, in the feste of Gervasius and Prothasius,[16] at the newe castelle on Tyne, in the presence of thre bischoppes, mony erles, barons, and oþer noble men presente; but the Scottes rebellede soone after. Wherefore kynge Edwarde entrynge into Scottelonde at wynter folowynge destroyede that londe unto the Scottes see, and repairede the castell of Rokesburghe, where he taryede with alle his peple by alle wynter. Iohn the xxij^{ti} pope dyede in this yere; whom

MS. Harl. 2261.

f. 389 a.

---

[1] *Boothulf*, γ.
[2] *Halydoun*, β. and γ.; *Halydon*, Cx.
[3] *men*] om. α., β., and Cx.
[4] *seen*, Cx.
[5] *le Bayllol*, Cx.
[6] *dide*, β.
[7] *rewme*, α.
[8] *newe*] om. Cx.
[9] *uppon*, α. and Cx.
[10] *colde*, α.; *cold*, from β., γ., and Cx.; *gold*, MS.
[11] *in*, Cx.
[12] *distruyed*, β.
[13] *repayred*, Cx.
[14] *tyme*, add. Cx.
[15] *twentyest*, Cx.
[16] Some words are evidently wanting here, see Trevisa's version.

domada successit Benedictus duodecimus, monachus prius et abbas Cisterciensis ordinis, deinde in propria[1] diocesi episcopus tandem cardinalis et demum apostolicus. Qui mox ad professores diversorum ordinum

Gratiæ MCCCXXXVI. Edwardi III. X.

constitutiones edidit regulas eorum concernentes. Circa festum beati Gregorii in Quadragesima rex Edwardus in pleno parliamento apud Londoniam de comitatu Cornubiæ fecit ducatum, quem contulit[2] Edwardo primogenito suo una cum comitatu Cestriæ. Ordinavit etiam ibidem quinque comites, unum ad Derbeyam, alium ad Northamptoniam, tertium ad Huntyndoun,[3] quartum ad Salesburiam, quintum ad[3] Gloverniam.

Gratiæ MCCCXXXVII. Edwardi III. XI.

Orta est grandis discordia inter reges Franciæ et Angliæ ex eo quod rex Franciæ multas terras et oppida in Vasconia improbe usurpaverat. Qua de causa rex Angliæ plures oblationes humiles regi Franciæ fecerat, si saltem sic terras suas recuperare posset. Sed cum nil proficeret, collectis undecunque pecuniis, mare transire disposuit. Circa festum sanctæ[4] Margaretæ rex

Gratiæ MCCCXXXVIII. Edwardi III. XII.

Edwardus transiit in Flandriam; inde Coloniam adiit,

---

[1] *in propria*] om. A.
[2] *tulit*, A.
[3] *Huntyndoun . . . ad*] om. B.
[4] *beatæ*, A.B.

Iohn deyde in þe Advent of oure Lord, and anon in þe same woke[1] þe twelfþe Benet was [y-made][2] pope, þat was first monk and þan abbot of white monkes, and þan bisshop in his [owne][3] diocise,[4] and þan cardynal, and at þe laste pope. Anoon he made constitucioums to religious men of dyvers ordres touchynge her rules and her ordres. Aboute[5] seynt Gregories day in Lente,[6] kyng Edward in ful parlement at Londoun made a ducherie of þe erldom of Cornewayle, and ȝaf it to his eldest sone Edward, and þe erldom of Chestre also[7] þerto. Also þere he ordeyned fyve erles, oon to Derby, anoþer to Norhamptoun, þe þridde to Huntingdoun, þe fourþe to Salisbury, and þe fifte to Glowcetre. Grete stryf byfel bytwene þe kyng[8] of Engelond and of Fraunce, for þe kyng of Fraunce hadde wrongfulliche i-take[9] in Gascoyne many londes and townes; þerfore þe kyng of Engelond profred þe kyng of Fraunce many faire profres and meke,[10] for he wolde have his londes aȝen, but al for nouȝt; þan þe kyng gadrede money in eche[11] side, and arrayed hym to passe þe see, and aboute seynt Margarete [his][12] day kyng Edward passed into Flaundres, and wente þens into[13] Coloyne; þere he socied to hym þe emperour Bevarrus,

TREVISA.

Benedicte, monke and abbot somme tyme of the ordre Cisterciens, did succede, whiche made anoon constitucions to professours of diverse ordres concernynge theire rules. Abowte the feste of seynte Gregory, kynge Edwarde in the fulle parliamente at London made of the cowntee of Cornewaile a duchery, whom he ȝafe to Edward his firste sonne, and Chestreschire also. Whiche ordeynede and made that tyme v. erles, oon at Derby, an other at Northampton, the thrydde at Huntyndon, the iiij^{the} at Salisbery, the v^{the} at Gloucestre. A grete discorde was movede betwene the kynges of Ynglonde and of Fraunce, in that the kynge of Fraunce occupiede diverse cites and growndes in the cuntre of Gascoigne. Wherefore Edwarde kynge of Ynglonde sende to the kynge of Fraunce meke supplicacions if he myȝhte recure his cuntre in that wise; but kynge Edwarde profitynge not þerby, gedrede a myȝhty hoste, and saylede into Flandres; after that he wente to Colony, obtenynge the favore of the em-

MS. HARL. 2261.

---

[1] *wyke*, α. and γ.; *weke*, β.
[2] From α. and Cx.
[3] From α., β., γ., and Cx.
[4] *diocesy*, β.
[5] *on*, add. Cx.
[6] *in þe Leynte*, β.
[7] *also*] yet, Cx.
[8] *kynges*, α. and Cx.; *kyngis*, β.
[9] *i-take*] om. Cx.
[10] *myke*, γ.
[11] *everyche*, α.; *every*, Cx.
[12] From α. (not γ.).
[13] *to*, α., β., and Cx.

ubi imperatorem Bavarrum sibi conciliavit, Brabanos et Flandrenses sibi fœderavit. De quorum consilio arma Franciæ suis immiscuit armis, boreales partes Franciæ usque Tornacum incendit et vastavit. Eodem[1] anno circa festum sancti Nicolai nix et gelu invaluerunt per octo hebdomadas continue, ita ut in dissolutione gelicidii multi pontes caderent, maxime apud Cestriam.[1]

Gratiæ MCCCXXIX. Edwardi III. XIII.

Circa festum Purificationis[2] rex Edwardus Angliam rediit, uxorem tamen[3] cum liberis in ea parte progenitis[4] apud Andewarp in Seland dimisit, quasi in assecurationem reditus sui. Celebratoque apud Londoniam parliamento atque[5] negotiis dispositis, indixit Angligenis tributum quintæ partis bonorum, lanas omnium occupavit, nonamque garbam de omni gleba Angliæ suis expeditionibus deputavit. De quarum proventu dominos villarum vicinarum respondere fecit. Hoc etiam[6] anno tanta fuit rerum copia et æris inopia quod quarterium frumenti Londoniæ ad duos solidos venderetur, et bos pinguis ad dimidiam marcam. Rex Edwardus in vigilia sancti Johannis Baptistæ cum ducentis navibus mare ingressus est versus Flandriam, sed juxta maritima Flandriæ classem Francorum copiosam

Gratiæ MCCCXL. Edwardi III. XIIII.

---

[1] *Eodem . . . Cestriam*] om. B.
[2] *beatæ Mariæ*, add A.
[3] *suam*, A.B.
[4] *progenitis*, from A. ; *primogenitis*, MS.
[5] *atque*, from B. ; *aliasque*, MS.
[6] *quoque*, A.

þe Brabanes, and þe Flemynges, and by counseil of hem he medled[1] the arms of Fraunce among his owne arms, and brent and destroyed þe[2] contrayes[3] of Fraunce anon to Tournaye.[4] Aboute Candelmasse kyng Edward come into Engelond aȝen; his wyf and his children þat he hadde i-gete on[5] þat side, he lefte hem at Andwerp in Selond,[6] as it were for suerte of his comynge aȝen; and he made a parlement at Londoun, and ordeyned for þe nedes, and charged Englische men wiþ tribute of þe fifte deel of her goodes and catel, and al men wole;[7] and þe nynþe scheef[8] everich glebe of Engelond he ordeyned[9] for his owne iourneys, and made lordes of þe next townes aboute answere hym of þe profite þat come þerof. Also þis ȝere was so grete skarste of money and plente of oþer þinges þat men solde a quarter of[10] whete at Londoun for two schillynges, and a fat[11] ox for [an][12] half mark. Kyng Edward took þe see toward Flaundres wiþ two hondred schippes on seynt John Baptiste [his][13] even; but by þe cooste of Flaundres he mette wiþ þe grete navey of Fraunce strong- TREVISA.

---

peroure, takynge mony men of Braban and of Flaundres with hym, and so he brente the northe partes of Fraunce unto the cite Tornacus. Kynge Edwarde returnede to Ynglonde abowte the Purificacion of oure Lady, levynge his qwene at Andewerpe in Seland, with Leonell and Iohn Gaunt, his childer geten in those costes, as in suerte of his commynge ageyne. A parliamente hade at London, and makynge grete ordinaunce to have with hym into Fraunce, he commaunded a grete tribute to be paiede to hym of þe v^the^ parte of the goodes of men, and occupiede the wolles of alle men, and the ix^the^ parte of alle cornes, of whiche proventus he commaunded lordes of townes that were nye to þeym to ȝiffe an answere. In whiche yere was so grete plente off corne, bestes and frutes, and so grete skarsenesse of silvyr, that a quarter of whete was solde at London for ij. *s.*, and a fatte ox for vj. *s.* viij. *d.* Kynge Edwarde entrede into the see with ij. c. schippes in the vigille of seynte Iohn Baptiste, whiche mette a grete navy of schippes abowte MS. HARL. 2261. f. 389 b.

---

[1] *melled*, α.
[2] *his*, α.
[3] *the north countrayes*, Cx.
[4] *Torney*, β.
[5] *in*, α. and Cx.
[6] *Braband*, Cx.
[7] *wolle*, β.; *all mens wolle*, Cx.
[8] *schef*, γ.
[9] *ordeygned*, Cx.
[10] *of*] om. β. and Cx.
[11] *vat*, γ.
[12] From Cx.
[13] From α.

et instructam obviam habuit Qua de causa per totum diem illum cum suis deliberans, in crastino superveniente in ejus auxilium valente milite Roberto de Morleya cum boreali classe Angliæ, commissum est [1] navale bellum fortissimum, quale circa oras [Angliæ] [2] nusquam est visum, ubi Deo favente Franci et Normanni acriter sagittati per Anglos sunt devicti, partim cæsi, partim gratis submersi, partim capti, navibusque [3] eorum exceptis paucis quæ aufugerant totaliter occupatis. Idcirco [4] rex Angliæ [5] Flandriam attingens, adunato exercitu copioso borealem partem Franciæ visitavit,[6] urbem munitissimam Tornacum [7] diuscule obsedit; sed tandem ob defectum pecuniæ, quam sui segnes procuratores ab Anglia non miserant, contractis treugis et induciis inter reges, utrinque [8] discessum est. Rex Edwardus cum navigio suo adiit Britanniam Minorem, ubi per cibos et potus inconvenientes plures [9] amisit. Missi sunt tamen ad eum duo cardinales [10] ex parte

Gratiæ MCCCXLI. Edwardi III. XV.

[1] *est*] om. A.
[2] *Angliæ*] from A.B.
[3] *navibus quoque*, A.
[4] *Inde*, A.
[5] *Inde rex*, B.
[6] *vastavit*, A.B.
[7] *Tornacum*] om. A.B.
[8] *utriusque*, A.B.
[9] *de suis*, A.B.
[10] *qui*, B.

liche arrayed; þerfore al þat day he avised hym and his men what were best to rede, and on þe morwe hym come [to][1] help a nobel kny3t, Robert of Morley, wiþ þe norþ navey of Engelond: þere was a strong bataile in þe see; suche[2] a batayle was nevere i-seyn in þe costes of Engelond; þere by Goddis help and favour, Frensche[3] men and Normans were scharpliche i-schote,[4] some i-slawe wiþ strookes, some adrayn t[5] by her owne good wille, and some i-take, and her schippes were i-take[6] also, out-take fewe þat fly3[7] away as faste as þey my3te. Þan þe kyng of Engelond come into Flaundres, and hadde a greet oost, and destroyed[8] þe norþ side of Fraunce, and byseged þe strong citee Tourney[9] somwhat of tyme; but at þe laste, for defaute of money and[10] his [slou3e][11] procuratoures[12] sent hym nou3t out of Engelond, for[13] trewes[14] were i-take bytwene þe kynges in every side,[15] and so eyþer wente his wey; kyng Edward wiþ his navey wente into Lite[16] Bretayne; þere he loste meny of his men by unholsome mete and drynke. Bote tweie cardynales were i-sent by þe

Trevisa.

---

the costes of Flaundres; takynge cownsaile of his men what thei scholde do. But a noble kny3hte Robert of Morley commynge into the helpe of þe kynge with þe schippes of the northe cuntre, the kynge with his hoste 3afe a soore batelle to theyme. Where men of Fraunce and of Normandy were sleyne in a grete nowmbre by archers of Ynglonde, mony men of theym taken and mony drownede, and alle theire schippes taken and occupiede by Englische men, fewe of theyme excepte whiche escapede. That doen kynge Edward wente to Flaundres and fortifiede his hoste, destroyenge the northe partes of Fraunce, segenge longe the noble cite Tornacus, and departede from hit, in that his proctors sende not to hym money from Ynglonde, truse taken betwene the kynges. Kynge Edwarde wente to the Lesse Briteyne, losynge mony of his men by unhollesomme meytes; to whom ij. cardynalls were sende to take

MS. Harl. 2261.

---

[1] From Cx.
[2] *sich*, β.
[3] *Freyns*, γ.
[4] *shoten*, Cx.
[5] *drowned*, Cx.
[6] *were i-take*] om. Cx.
[7] *vewe þat vley*, γ.; *fledde*, Cx.
[8] *distruyed*, β.
[9] *Torney*, β. and Cx.
[10] *and*] that, Cx.
[11] From α.; *slowe*, Cx.
[12] *money þat his slowe procuratours*, β.
[13] *for*] om. α., β., and Cx.
[14] *truwes*, β., et infra.
[15] *in every side*] for þre 3ere, α.; in eyther syde, Cx.
[16] *lytel*, α. and Cx.

papæ, treugas triennales inter reges reportantes,[1] ut sic in tanto temporis spatio de jure regis Angliæ, quod in regnum Franciæ vindicavit, posset ad plenum disceptari.[1] In redeundo quoque de Britannia versus Angliam,[2] rex Edwardus maxima incommoda per marinam tempestatem perpessus est, quæ utique per nigromanticos regis Franciæ dicebantur procurari. Obiit Benedictus, papa; successit Rothomagensis archiepiscopus, Clemens sextus nuncupatus,[3] vir quidem insignis litteraturæ, sed prodigalitatis profusissimæ, adeo ut dignitates ecclesiasticas in Anglia vacantes suis conferret cardinalibus, novosque pro eis in Anglia titulos imponere moliretur. Qua de causa rex Angliæ offensus, sub anno gratiæ millesimo ccc^mo^ quadragesimo[4] quarto provisiones per papam sic[5] factas irritavit. Ita ut nequis[6] tales provisiones afferret sub pœna capitis ecarceris interdixit.

Gratiæ MCCCXLII. Edwardi III. XVI.

---

[1] *reportantes..disceptari*]induxerunt sub quo spatio de jure quod rex Angliæ vindicavit in regnum Franciæ ad plenum posset discuti, A.B.

[2] *versus Angliam*] om. A.

[3] *vocitatus*, A.; *vocatus*, B.

[4] *quadragesimo*] om. B.

[5] *sic*] om. A.

[6] *irritavit . . . nequis*] cassavit et nequis deinceps, A.B.

pope, and made trewes i-take bytwene þe kynges [1] for þre ȝere. In þe whiche tyme þe riȝt þat þe kyng of Engelond chalanged [2] in þe rewme of Fraunce myȝte be declared at þe fulle. In his comynge aȝen out of Bretayne kyng Edward hadde grete disese [3] by tempest of þe see, and men seide þat þe kyng of Fraunce [4] nygromansers had i-made þat tempest. Pope Benet deyde, and þe archebisshop of Rothomage was pope after hym, and was i-cleped þe sixte Clement; a man of grete clergie, but a grete wastour and a spendour; so þat he ȝaf his cardinals dignytees of holy chirche þat voyded in Engelond, [and fondede to putte þerfore opere titles in Engelond,] [5] þerfore þe kyng of Engelond was wrooth, and þe ȝere of oure Lord a þowsand þre hondred and foure and fourty þe kyng fordede [6] provisiouns þat [7] þe pope hadde i-graunted, and hoted [8] þat no man schulde after þat tyme brynge suche provisiouns [7] uppon peyne of prisonement and lesynge of his heed.[9] In þe feste of þe trans- TREVISA.

truse betwene theyme by the space of thre yere, in whiche space hit myȝhte be discussede what ryȝhte the kynge of Ynglonde scholde have to the realme off Fraunce. Kynge Edwarde saylenge from Brytcyne to Ynglonde, loste mony off his men by tempestes of the see, whiche was seide to have be causede by nigromancyers of the kynge of Fraunce. Benedicte the pope dyede in this yere, whom Clement the vj^the did succede, whiche ȝafe diverse dignites vacante that tyme in Ynglonde unto his cardinalls. Wherefore kynge Edwarde displeasede perwith, made voide suche promisions made by the pope, in the yere of oure Lorde God MCCCliiij^ti, commaundynge that noo man scholde brynge suche promisions into his realme from the pope in peyn of prisonment and of hongynge.

The compilator of this booke wrote unto this tyme. Ꝑ.[10] MS. HARL. 2261.

[1] *bytwene þe kynges*] om. α. (not Cx.).
[2] *chalengide*, β.; *calanged*, γ.; *chalengyd*, Cx.
[3] *dessese*, γ.
[4] *Fraunces*, α. and Cx.
[5] From α., β., and Cx.
[6] *furdude þe*, β.; *vordude*, γ.; *fordyde*, Cx.
[7] *þat . . . provisiouns*] om. α.
[8] *bad*, Cx.
[9] *luesyng*, γ.
[10] For the remainder of the Harleian text see Appendix, p. 429. Caxton's version is given in place of it to the end of Book VII.

Gratiæ MCCCXLVI. Edwardi III. XX.

[1] In festo translationis sancti[2] Thomæ martyris[3] rex Edwardus ingressus est mare, ignorantibus omnibus suis quorsum tenderet; sed tandem ductu[4] cujusdam militis de Harecourt, nuper de Francia[5] exlęgati, in australi parte Normanniæ apud Hogas juxta Sequanam flumen applicuit, Cadomum[6] et alias urbes spoliavit. Unde et sui[7] plurimum sunt ditati. Verum quia Philippus rex Franciæ pontes fluminum undecumque confregerat, ne exercitus adinvicem confligere possent, rex Edwardus Normanniam quaquaversum pertranseundo deprædavit, et tandem die sancti Rufi martyris, quod est pridie festum sancti Augustini doctoris, regem Franciæ apud Crescy[8] in Picardia gloriose devicit et[9] fugavit; regem Boemyæ,[10] ducem Loringiæ,[11] duos episcopos, octo comites, plures nobiles dominos, duo milia militum et vulgus innumerabile occidit;[12] reliquam

---

[1] *Capitulum XLV*tum, B.
[2] *beati*, B.
[3] *Cantuariensis*, A.B.
[4] *ducâtu*, B.
[5] *de Francia*] om. A.
[6] *Cadamum*, A.
[7] *et de suis*, A.
[8] *Cresci*, A.B.
[9] *atque*, A.
[10] *duos reges Boemiæ et Marjoricarum*, A.B.
[11] *Lotharingiæ*, A.B.
[12] *cecidit*, B.

lacioun of seynt Thomas of Caunterbury kyng Edward took þe see, unweting alle his men whider he wolde wende; but by a [1] ledynge of a kny3t of her contre [2] þat was sometyme outlawed out of Fraunce, þe kyng londed at Hogges, besides þe ryver of Seyne in þe sou þ side of Normandye, and spoylede Cadony and oþere citees, and so his men were made ful riche. But þe kyng of Fraunce had i-broke þe brigges of ryvers in everich side, [for þe ostes schulde not come to gyderes and fy3te; þerfore kyng Edward rode in Normandye, and took prayes in everyche side].[3] On seynt Ruphus [4] day þe martir, þat is on seynt Austyn þe doctoures [5] eve, þat is þe seven and twenty day of Lamasse monþe, at Cressy in Pycardie,[6] kyng Edward gloriousliche overcome þe kyng of Fraunce, and slow3 [tweye] [3] kynges of Beem and of Majorik, þe duke of Lothoryngе, tweie bisshops, ei3te erles, many noble lordes, two þowsand kny3tes, and oþer men wiþ oute noumbre, chased þe peple þat

Trevisa.

Caxton's Version.

Caxton.

Hog. p. 175. Wals., i. 267. In the feste of the translacion of saynt Thomas of Canterbury, kynge Edwarde toke the See vnwyttynge all his men whether he wold wende. But by ledynge of a knyght of Harecourt, that was sometyme outlawed oute of Fraunce, the kyng londed at Hoggys bysides the Ryver of Seyn in the south syde of Normandy, and spoylled Cadony and other Cytees, and so his men were made full ryche. But the kynge of Fraunce had broke the brydges of Ryvers in every syde, for the hoostes shold not come to geders and fyght. Therfor kynge Edwarde
Hog. p. 176. roode in Normandye and toke prayes in every syde. On saynt Rufus daye the martir, that is on saynt Austyn the doctours even, that is the seven and twentyest day of Lammasse monethe, at Cressy in Pycardy kynge Edward gloryously overcome the kyng of Fraunce, and chaced hym, and slewe twey kynges of Boheme and of Mayorck, the duk of Lotheryng, twey bisshops, eyght erles, many noble lordes, two thousand knyghtes, and other men withoute nombre, and chaced the peple that fledde

---

[1] *þe*, α. and β.
[2] *of Harecourt*, β. and γ r ightly.
[3] From α. and β.
[4] *Rufus*, α., β., and γ.
[5] *þe doctoures*] om. α.
[6] *Pykardye*, α.

plebem dispersit. Ubi[1] et Philippus rex Franciæ in femore et[2] gutture sagittatus,[3] bisque per regem Angliæ debellatus,[4] aufugit. Extunc quoque in obsidione urbis Calesiæ,[5] Angligenis infestissimæ, per annum et eo[6] amplius demoratus est rex Angliæ, quousque urbs Calesiæ reddita fuerat.[7] Eodem anno in crastino sancti Michaelis in Monte Tumba contriti sunt Scoti ab Anglis,[8] et potissime per clerum Eboracensis diœcesis tam regularem quam sæcularem, qui per instigationem regis Franciæ usque Dunelmum processerant, ubi captus est rex Scotiæ, David le Bruz, Willelmus Douglas, et quidam alii magni, cæteris occisis, fugatis aut dispersis.[9]

Gratiæ CCCXLVII. Edwardi III. XXI.

Circa festum sancti Bartholomei Philippus rex Franciæ, qui se[10] ad pugnandum paraverat, et præcipue ad dissolvendum obsidionem[11] Calesiæ propius[12] accesserat, diluculo clam aufugit,[13] relictis tentoriis suis cum vic-

---

[1] *ubique*, A.
[2] *in*, A.B.
[3] *vulneratus*, B.
[4] *decaballatus ut dicebatur vix*, B.
[5] *ab olim*, B.
[6] *eo*] om. A.
[7] *quousque . . . fuerat*] om. A.B.
[8] *per Anglos*, B.
[9] A. adds: "rege Angliæ cum "toto exercitu suo interim in trans- "marinis partibus demorante. Hoc "etiam anno a festo Nativitatis "Sancti Johannis Baptistæ usque "ad Natale Domini proximum se- "quens pluvia nimia inundavit, ita "ut vix transiret dies quin plueret "in die vel in nocte, unde magna "bladi caristia est secuta."
[10] *quasi*, B.
[11] *obsidionem*] urbes (*sic*), B.
[12] *prope*, A.
[13] *fugit*, B.

fliȝ awey on lyve; þere Phelip kyng of Fraunce was i-wounded in þe þigh [1] and in þe þrote, and tweyes unhorsed of þe kyng of Engelond, as it was i-seide, and scaped awey unneþe. Þerafter þe kyng of Engelond byseged Caleys twelve monþe [2] and more, for Caleys was somtyme grete enemy to Englische men. Þat ȝere, þe morwe after Myhelmasse [4] day, in monte Tumba, þat is þe sevenþe [5] day of Octobre, Englische [men],[6] and specialliche of diocise of ȝork, seculers and regiouns,[7] beet doun þe Scottes [þat] [8] were i-come by sityngе [9] of þe kyng of Fraunce anon to Durham; þere David le [10] Bruce, kyng of Scotlond, William Douglas,[11] and oþere grete lordes, were i-take, and þe oþere were dede and i-chased. Aboute seynt Bartholomeus [12] feste,[13] Phelip kyng of Fraunce, þat hadde arrayed hym as [hit] [8] were forto fiȝte, and nameliche for to breke þe sege of Caleys, he flygh awey priviliche in þe dawenynge,[14] and lefte þere his tentes and a greet deel of vitayllеs þerynne.[15] — Trevisa.

---

awey alyve. There Phelyp kynge of Fraunce was wounded in the thyghe and in the throte and twyes vnhorsed of the kynge of Englond, as it was sayd, and escaped aweye vnnethe. Therefor the kyng of Englond besyeged Caleys twelve monethes and more. For Caleys was somtyme grete enemye to Englysshe men. That yere in the morow after Mychelmasse day in Monte tumba, that is the sevententh day of Octobre, Englyssh men, and specially of the dyosyce of York, seculeres and regulers, bete doune the Scottes that were come by entycyng of the kynge of Fraunce vnto Durham. There Davyd le Bruys kynge of Scotland, William Douglas, and other grete lordes were take, and the other were dede and chaced. Aboute saynt Bartholomeus feste Phelyp kyng of Fraunce, that had arayed hym as it were for to fyghte, and namely for to breke the siege of Caleys, he fledde awey pryvely in the dawnyng, and left there his tentes and a greete dele of vytayls therin; the men — Caxton.

Hog, p. 177.

---

[1] *þeiȝ*, β.
[2] *monþes*, α.
[3] β. wrongly inserts here, *and specialliche of the diocise*, words which belong to the following sentence.
[4] *Miȝhelmasse*, β.
[5] *xvii.*, β.
[6] From α.
[7] *ruleres*, α.; *rulers*, β.
[8] From β.
[9] *spyeng*, α.; *spiȝting*, β.
[10] *þe*, α. and β.
[11] *Dougelas*, α.
[12] *Barthomeu*, γ.
[13] *day*, α.
[14] *dawyng*, β.
[15] The last few pages of γ. have suffered so much from the fire that they do not admit of collation.

tualibus.[1] Quo viso Calesienses urbem illam regi Edwardo[2] reddiderunt; quam rex Edwardus per mensem disponens, circa festum sancti Michaelis Angliam rediit, concessis ad instantiam domini papæ novem mensium treugis. Sed in redeundo, sicut quondam de Britannia Minore rediens, maximam tempestatem ac suorum militum amissionem[3] perpessus est; unde et rex Edwardus in talem admirativam queremoniam prolapsus[4] est: "O bona domina mea Maria! quid est et quid portendit "quod tendendo versus Franciam aura læta[5] potior,[6] "mare arridet, et omnia[7] mihi prospere eveniunt;[8] "sed in redeundo versus Angliam infortunia nimis ad- "versa propetior."[9] [10] *Magna mortalitas.*[11] Hoc anno inundavit pluvia nimia a festo nativitatis sancti Johannis Baptistæ usque ad Natalem Domini[12] proximo

Gratiæ MCCCLII. Edwardi III. XXVI.

---

[1] *plurimis*, B.
[2] *protinus*, A.
[3] *ac . . . amissionem*] in mari quam plurimos probos milites amisit, B.
[4] *perpessus*, A.
[5] *gratis*, B.
[6] *potior*] om. A.
[7] *cuncta*, A.B.
[8] *eveniunt prospera*, A.
[9] *succedunt*, B.
[10] *Capitulum* 45, A.; *Capitulum XLVI*[tum], B.
[11] B. omits heading.
[12] *nativitatem*, B. A. begins a new chapter here, and differs from B. to so great an extent that collation is not possible. For continuation of A. see Appendix, p. 355.

The men of Caleys seygh þat, and ȝilded[1] up þat[2] citee to kyng Edward. Þanne kyng Edward was þere a[3] monþe, and ordeyned for Caleys, and wente into Engelond aȝen aboute Mygelmasse,[4] and graunted trus[5] for nyne monþes at þe instaunce of þe pope. But as he hadde somtyme in comynge out of Litel Bretayne, so he hadde at þis tyme greet tempest in þe see, and loste þerby many nobil knyȝtes; þerfore þis noble[6] kyng Edward made a wonderful compleynt, and seide, "My "goode lady seynt Marye, what is it, and what bodeþ it, þat "in my wendynge into Fraunce I[7] wynde have[8] and weder "and al þing at my wille, and in my comynge aȝen toward[9] "Engelond I[7] have tempest and many hard happes." Þis ȝere fil grete reyne from þe feste of þe Natyvyte of seynt John, and dured forto mydwynter next þerafter, so þat [unneþe][10] passid eny day but it reyned by day or by nyght. Þat tyme fel grete deep of men in all þe world wyde, and bygan in londes out of þe south est sides; so þat unneþe lefte half þe peple onlyve,[11] and in som hous of religioun of twenty lafte[12] but tweyne.

Trevisa.

---

of Caleys saw that, and yelded vp that cyte to kyng Edward: than kyng Edward was there a moneth, and ordeined for Caleys, and wente in to Englond ageyne aboute Mychelmasse, and graunted trewes for nyne monethes at the instaunce of the Pope. But as he had somtyme in comyng out of Lytel Brytayne, so he had at this tyme greete tempeste in the see, and loste thereby many noble knyghtes; therfore this kyng Edwarde made a wonderfull compleynt, and sayde, "My good lady "saynt Marye, what is hit, and what bodeth it, that at my "wendyng in to Fraunce I have wynde and weder and al "thyng at my wylle, and in my comynge ageyne toward Eng- "lond I have tempest and many hard happes." This yere fylle grete reyne from the feste of the natyvyte of saynt Johan, and dured till mydwynter next therafter. Soo that vnnethe passed ony day, but it rayned by day or by nyght. That tyme fyll grete deth of men in all the world wyde, and bygan in landes oute of the southeest sides. Soo that vnnethe lefte half the people alyve; and somme hous of relygyon of twenty lefte

Wals., i. 271.

Hog, p. 178.
Wals., i. 272.

Caxton.

---

[1] *ȝalde, α.*; *ȝeeld, β.*
[2] *þe, α.*
[3] *an, α.*
[4] *Miȝhelmasse, β.*
[5] *truwes, β.*
[6] *noble*] om. *α.* and *β.*
[7] *Ich, β.*, bis.
[8] *have wynde, α.* and *β.*
[9] *into, α.*
[10] From *α.* and *β.*
[11] *alyve, β.*
[12] *lefte, β.*

sequens, ita ut vix transiret dies quin plueret in die vel in nocte; sub quo temporis decursu magna mortalitas hominum grassata est per orbem,[1] maxime in curia et circa curiam Romanam Avinionensem et circa maritimas urbes Angliæ et Hiberniæ.

Usque hic scripsit Ranulphus Hykedoun monachus Cestrensis, istorum Chronicorum compilator, qui obiit in senectute bona.

---

[1] B. continues: "per orbem ab "australibus et orientalibus plagis "incipiens ut vix media pars homi- "num remaneret. In quibusdam "autem religiosis domibus de vi- "ginti nisi uno." For continuation of B. see Appendix, p. 407.

App., p. 407. Þe sixte pope Clement deide at[1] seynt Nicolas day, and anon Trevisa.
þe popes cheef penytauncer, Stevene bisshop Hostiensis, was i-chosen pope, and was i-cleped þe sixte Innocent. Also þat ȝere bygan grete derþe of þinges þat schulde be soolde,[2] so þat þe sale of þynges was of[3] double price to þat it was i-wont. Also þe see and þe lond gan to wexe more bareyne þan þey were to forhonde. Þis ȝere it was accorded and i-swore bytwene þe kynges of Engelond and of Fraunce, oute take þat þe kynges seeles were nouȝt i-sette too þe endentures[4] þat were i-wrete: þe accorde was þat þe kyng of Engelond schulde have alle his londes of þe ducherye of Gyan þat were bynome hym to forehonde by þe kyng of Fraunce, [so þat þe kyng of Engelond shulde leve and resigne up to þe kyng of Fraunce][5] al þe right and þe cleyme[6] þat he had to þe reume of Fraunce. Uppon þat doynge were solempne messangers i-sent in[7] þe kynges by-half[8] of Engelond, Henry þe nobil duke of Lancastre, Henry erle of Arundel, Michel of Norþeburgh bisshop of Londoun, and Gy de Bryan; þese were i-sent to the popes court forto have

---

Hog, p. 182. Wals., i. 276. but tweyne. The syxthe Pope Clement dyed on saynt Ny- Caxton.
cholas day. And anon the Popes cheef penitancer Steven bisshop Hostiensis was chose pope, and was cleped the sixth Innocent. Also that yere byganne grete derth of thynges that shold be solde, soo that the sale of thynges was for double pryce to that it was wonte. Also the see and the lande by-
Hog, p. 183. ganne to wex more bareyn than they were byfore. This yere it was acorded and sworne bytwene the kynges of Englonde and of Fraunce, outetake that the kynges seeles were not sette to the indentures that were wryten: the acorde was that the
Hog, p. 184. Wals., i. 278. kyng of Englond shold have alle his londes of the ducherye of Guyan that were taken from hym byfore by the kynge of Fraunce, soo that the kyng of Englond sholde leve and resygne vp to the kyng of Fraunce all the right and clayme that he had to the Royamme of Fraunce. Vpon that doyng were solempnel messagers sente in the kynges half of Englond; Henry the noble duk of Lancastre, Henry erle of Arundel, Mychel of Northburgh bisshop of London, and Guy de Bryan. These were sente to the popes courte for to have the covenauntes

---

[1] *on*, β.
[2] *solde*, β.
[3] *for*, α. and β.
[4] *indenturis*, β.
[5] From α. and β.
[6] *clayme*, β.
[7] *to*, α.
[8] *kynges half*, β.

TREVISA. þese covenauntes recorded by þe popes billes;[1] but by sodeyn fraude of Fraunce, and by assent of þe pope,[2] þese covenantes were i-putte of and undo; þerfore Engelond arrayeþ forto fi3te forto recovere[3] and wynne þe londes þat were bynome wiþ wrong, and þe kyng of Engelond entred into[4] Fraunce wiþ greet strengþe of kny3tes. But he herde telle þat Berwyk was i-take, and come a3en, and delyvered Berwyk of þe power of þe Scottes. Þis 3ere was so grete drowþe[5] þat þre monþes togidres, Averel, May, and June, unneþe fel a drope of reyn doun to the erþe. On Friday in Wytsonwyke[6] were tweye freres of þe ordre of Menoures i-brent in Avyoun[7] for som fals opiniouns, as it semed þe pope and þe cardynales. Þe same 3ere, at þe Nativite of oure Lord, þe kyng of Engelond his[8] eldest sone Edward seilled into Gascoyne wiþ many men of armes and archeres, to recovere and wynne þe londes of þe ducherie of Gyan, þat þe kyng of Fraunce hadde long tyme wrongfulliche wiþholde; þere Edward dwelled al a 3ere wiþ oute eny reese[9] of enemyes. But in þe mene tyme he took App., p. 408.

CAXTON. recorded by the popes bulles, but by sodayne fraude of Fraunce, and by assente of the pope, the covenauntes were put of and undoo. Therfore Englonde arayeth for to fyghte for to rekever and wynne the landes that were take with wrong. And the kyng of Englond entred in to Fraunce with grete strength of knyghtes; but he herde telle that Barwyk was y-take, and cam ageyne, and delyverd Barwyk of the power of Scottes. This yere was so greete drought togeder that in thre monethes, Apryl, May, and Juyn, vnnethe fyll a drope of reyne doune to the erth. On a Friday in a Whitsonweke were twey freres of the ordre of Menours brente at Avinion for somme fals oppynyons as it semed by the pope and the cardynals. The same yere at the nativite of our Lady, the king of Englonds eldest sone Edward sailed in to Gascoyn with many men of armes and archers to recover and wynne the landes of the ducherye of Guyan, that the kynge of Fraunce had long tyme wrongfully withholde; there Edward dwellyd all a yere withoute ony rees of enemyes. But in the mene tyme he toke and bete doune Wals., i.280. Hog, p. 184. Wals., i. 278. Hog, p. 185. Wals., i. 279.

---

[1] *bulles*, α. and β.
[2] *pope* scratched thro' in α.
[3] *rekever*, β.
[4] *into*] om. β.
[5] *druyþe*, β.
[6] *A Fryday in þe Witsonweke*, β.
[7] *Avinion*, β.
[8] *his*] om. α.
[9] *rees*, β.

App., p. 408. and beet doun and spoylled and brent huge citees þat were rebel aȝenst hym, as Narboun,[1] Carcason, and opere; bot in þe ende of þe ȝere of his comynge, þe oon and twenty day of þe monþe of Septembre, while þe duke of Lancastre byseged þe citee Berenens in Bretayne, Edwerd passed by þe brynkes of þe ryver of[2] Leyr, þat is of the ducherie of Gyan, þere come þe kyng of Fraunce wiþ a greet oost, and fauȝt wiþ hym; but þe kyng of Frauuces men[3] weren i-slawe and i-chasede, and þe kyng of Fraunce was i-take and i-brouȝt at Burdewys,[4] in Gascoyne, and was þere forto Witsontyde.[5] [Þis ȝere App., p. 409. about Witsontide][6] the forseyde Edward seyled out of Gascoyne into Engelond [with Joon kyng of Frenschemen];[6] þan[7] tweie cardynales come into Engelond[7] forto to trete of pees bytwene þe tweie kynges. Þese cardynales dwelled in Engelond a ful ȝere, and þe þridde cardynal come of his owne heed to conforte the kyng of Fraunce, and dwellid wiþ the opere cardynales at Londoun. Also þis ȝere, [þat][8] was ȝere of oure Lord a þowsand þre hondred and seven and fifty, [aboute][8] alle Alewen tide,[9] Davyd le Bruce, kyng of Scotlond,

Trevisa.

---

and spoylled and brente huge cytees that were rebelle ageynst hym, as Narbon, Carcason and other; but in the ende of the yere of his comynge, the one and twen[10] day of the moneth of Septembre, whyle the duc of Lancastre besyeged the cyte of Brevens in Brytayne, Edward passed by the brynkes of the Ryver Loyr, that is of the ducherye of Guyan. There cam the kyng of Fraunce with a grete hooste, and fought with hym, but the kynges men of Fraunce were slayne and chased. And the kyng of Fraunce was take and brought to Bur- Hog., p. 190. Wals., i. 283. deaus in Gascoyne, and there he was till Whitsontyde. This yere aboute Whitsontyde the forsayd Edward sayled oute of Gaskoyn into Englond with Johan kyng of Frensshe men. And anone the pope sente twey cardynals into Englond for to trete of pees bytwene the twey kynges. The cardynals dwellyd in Englonde a full yere, and the thrydde cardynal come of his owne hede to comfort the kynge of Fraunce, and dwellyd with Wals., i. 284. the other cardynals at London. Also this yere, that was the yere of oure Lord a thousand thre honderd and seven and fyfty, aboute Al Halowen tyde, Davyd le Bruys, kyng of Scotlond,

Caxton.

---

[1] *Narbon*, β.
[2] *of*] om. β.
[3] *kynges men of Fraunce*, β.
[4] *Burdeux*, α.; *Burdeaus*, β.
[5] *Wyttesontyde*, α.
[6] From β.
[7] *þan . . . Engelond*] om. α.; and anoon the pope sent twey, &c., β.
[8] From α. and β.
[9] *Alhalwentyde*, β.
[10] Sic.

TREVISA. was delyvered, þat hadde i-be long tyme in[1] warde enleveue 3ere in þe castel of Odiam,[2] and he paide a grete raunsoun. Also þis 3ere at þe court of Rome bygan greet stryff bytwene [þe][3] primat Armacan and freres beggers. Also þe same 3ere was grete destruccioun in Bretayne and in Normandye, by Phelip þat was þe kynges broþer of Navare,[4] and sir Iames Pypyn[5] and Robert Knolles, and many oþer Englisshe men wiþouten[6] heed and wiþouten waraunt of þe kyng of Engelond. Þis 3ere aboute þe Assumpcioun of oure Lady, Edward kyng of Engelond, and his eldest sone Edward prince of Wales, þe duke of Lancastre, and nygh[7] alle þe lordes of Engelond, wiþ a greet oost of horsmen and of archers i-gadred wiþ aboute a þowsand chariottes,[8] dwelled somtyme[9] longe tyme at Sandewiche, and[10] aboute Myghelmasse next þerafter þe forsaide duke seilled[11] to Caleys; þe kyng and þe prince seilled[12] to þe same place aboute Candelmasse, and bygunne to ride anon[13] in þe reaume[14] of Fraunce, but þat[15] þey lay in þe feelde of

App., p. 409.

App., p. 410.

CAXTON. was deliverd, that hadde be long tyme in warde, enleven yere, in the castel of Odyham, and he payed a grete raunsoune. Also this yere at the court of Rome beganne grete stryf bytwene the primate Armacan and Freres beggers. Also the same yere was grete destruction in Britayne and in Normandy by Phelip, that was the kynges broder of Naverne, and by sire James Pipe and Robert Knolles, and many other Englisshe men, withoute hede and withoute warraunte of the kinge of Englond. This yere, aboute the Assumpcion of oure Ladye, Edward kinge of Englond and his eldest sonne, Edwarde prince of Wales, the duck of Lancastre, and neigh alle the lordes of Englond, with a grete hooste of horsmen and of archers gadred with aboute a thousand chariottes, dwellyd somwhat long time at Sandwich; and aboute Michelmasse nexte therafter, the forsaide duk sailed to Caleys: the kyng and the prynce sayled to the same place about Candelmasse, and byganne anone to ryde in the royam of Fraunce; but they lay in the feelde in Burgoyn and in Cham-

Hog, p. 191. Wals., i. 285.

Wals., i. 286.

Wals., i. 287.

Hog, p. 192.

---

[1] *en*, α.
[2] *Odyam*, α.; *Odyham*, β.
[3] From β.
[4] *Navarn*, β.
[5] *Pyyp*, α.; *Pipe*, β.
[6] *wiþ oute*, α.
[7] *neiȝ*, β.
[8] *archeres*, α.
[9] *somdel*, α. and β.
[10] *and*] om. α.
[11] *seyled*, β.
[12] *seylide*, β.
[13] *anoon to ryde*, α. and β.
[14] *rewme*, α.
[15] *þat*] om. α. and β.

App., p. 410. Burgoyne and in þe[1] champayne anon to þe Anunciacioun of oure Lady. In þe mene tyme þe Normans londed[2] at Wynchilsee wiþ a litel navey in Engelond, þe fifte[3] day of Marche, and assailled þat toun, and slouȝ men, and brent some of þe toun. But þere meny of þe see þefes[4] were i-slawe and i-dreynt, and þe opere deel of þe see þefes[4] flyȝe[5] to þe[6] schippes, and went out of Engelond, as þey were compelled by þe abbot of Bataylle[7] and strengþe þat was wiþ hym. Þis ȝere, aboute seynt Donstones day[8] and feste, Edward kyng of Engelond toke trewes[9] wiþ þe kyng of Fraunce, in hope of pees, and cam wiþ his oost aȝen into Engelond. But he loste many men, horses, and chariottes, besides Parys, the eyȝteþe day after Estre,[10] by a storme of weder þat fel þere þat tyme. Aboute Lamasse next þerafter Armacan and þe ordres of beggers of þe stryf þat was bytwene hem cessed[11] by heste of þe pope. Also þe same ȝere[12] þe prince of Wales, þe duke of Lancastre, and many oþer lordes of Engelond, and þe kyng of Fraunce, wente to Caleys to reforme the pees bytwene Enge- TREVISA.

Wals., i. 287. payne to the Annunciacion of our Lady. In the mene tyme the Normans landed at Wynchelsee with a lytel navey in Englond, the fytenthe day of Marche, and assaylled that toune, and slewe men, and brente somme of the toune; but there many of the see theves were slayne and drowned, and the other part of the see theves fledde to theyr shippes, and wente oute of Englond, as they were compellyd by the abbot of Bataylle and Hog, p. 193. strength that was with hym. This yere aboute saynt Dunstans feest, Edward kyng of Englond toke trues with the kyng of Fraunce in hope of pees, and cam with his hoost ageyn in to Englonde; but he lost meny men, horses, and charyottes, besydes Parys, the xviii. day after Eester, by a storme of weder Wals., i. 294. that fyll there that tyme. Aboute Lammasse nexte therafter, Armacan and the ordre of beggers of the stryf that was bytwene hem ceessyd by heeste of the pope. Also the same tyme the prynce of Wales, the duc of Lancastre, and many other lordes of Englond, and the kyng of Fraunce, wente to Caleys to reforme the pees bytwene Englond and Fraunce: there the CAXTON.

---

[1] þe] om. β.
[2] *londide*, β.
[3] *fiftenþe*, α. and β.
[4] *þeeves*, α. and β.
[5] *fleye*, α.
[6] þe] her, β.
[7] *Batail*, β.
[8] *Donston his feste*, α.; *Dunstan's feste*, β.
[9] *truse*, α.; *truwes*, β.
[10] *Esterne*, α.
[11] *ceeside*, β.
[12] *tyme*, α. and β.

TREVISA. lond and Fraunce. Þere þe pees was refourmed and assured wiþ suerte of oþer[1] in eyþer side, and þe kynges of Engelond and of Fraunce wente home aʒen to her owne kyngdoms aboute Mychemasse;[2] and sone þerafter were messangers i-sent to Avyon[3] to þe pope, to conferme þe pees and covenante in eyþer side. App., p. 410

God be þonked of al his nedes:[4] þis translacioun is i-ended in a Þorsday, þe eyʒteþe day of Averyl, þe ʒere of oure Lord a þowsand þre hondre[5] foure score and sevene, þe tenþe ʒere of kyng Richard þe secounde after þe conquest of Engelond, þe ʒere of my lordes age, sire Thomas [lorde][6] of Berkeley, þat made me make þis translacioun, fyve and thrytty. Deo gracias.[7]

CAXTON. pees was reformed and assured with surete of oth on eyther syde. And the kynges of Englond and of Fraunce wente home ageyne to her owne kyngdoms aboute Mychelmasse. And sone therafter were messagers sente to Avinion to the pope to conferme the pees and the covenauntes on eyther syde. Wals., i. 294.

God be thanked of al his dedes. This translacion is ended on a Thursdaye the eyghtenthe daye of Apryll, the yere of our Lord a thousand thre honderd and lvii., the xxxi. yere of kyng Edward the thyrd after the Conquest of Englond; the yere of my lordes age, Syr Thomas lord of Berkley, that made me make this translacion, fyve and thyrtty.

Thus endeth the book named Proloconycon, made and compiled by Ranulph, monk of Chestre, whiche ordeyned it in Latyn; and atte request of the ryght worshipful lord Thomas, lord of Berkeley, it was translated in to Englisshe by one Trevisa, thenne vycarye of the paryssh of Barkley. And for as moche as syth the accomplysshemente of this sayd booke, made by the sayd Ranulph, ended the yere of oure Lord a Mcclvii., many thynges have fallen whiche ben requysyte to be added to this werke, by cause mennes wyttes in this tyme ben oblyvyous and lyghtly forgeten many thynges dygne to be

---

[1] *oþ*, from *oþer*, MS., *α.*; *ooþ*, *β.*
[2] *Mizhelmasse*, *β.*
[3] *Avinion*, *β.*
[4] *dedes*, *α.* and *β.*
[5] *hundrid*, *β.*
[6] From *α.* and *β.*
[7] *Explicit*, *α.* (not *β.*).

Here is written in *α*, "secoũde."
Also lower down, "John Knigh-
"ton," neither in the same hand as the MS.
On the back of this folio, "Wil-
"liam Knighton."

putte in memorye, and also there can not be founden in these dayes but fewe that wryte in theyr regystres suche thynges as dayly happen and falle. Therfore I, William Caxton, a symple persone, have endevoyred me to wryte fyrst over all the sayd book of Prolocony con, and somwhat have chaunged the rude and old Englyssh, that is to wete, certayn wordes which in these dayes be neither vsyd ne vnderstanden; and furthermore have put it in emprynte to thende that it maye be had, and the maters therin comprised to be knowen, for the boke is general, touchyng shortly many notable maters, and also am avysed to make another booke after this sayd worke, whiche shal be sett here after the same, and shal have his chapytres and his table aparte. For I dar not presume to sette my booke ne ioyne hit to his for dyverse causes: one is for as moche as I have not ne can gete no bokes of auctoryte treatyng of suche cronykes, except a lytel booke named Fasciculus temporum, and another callyd Aureus de universo, in whiche bookes I fynde ryght lytel mater syth the sayde tyme. And another cause is for as moche as my rude symplenesse and ignorant makyng ought not to be compared, set, ne ioyned to his boke. Thenne I shal by the grace of God set my werke after aparte, for to accomplysshe the yeres syth that he fynysshed his book vnto the yere of our Lord MCCCLX., and the fyrst yere of the regne of kyng Edward the fourthe, whiche amounte to an honderd and thre yere.

APPENDIX.

Continuation of Higden as given in MS. A.[1]

Gravis et magna mortalitas hominum per universam orbem circa ista tempora generaliter est grassata, et maxime in curia et circa curiam Romanam Avinionem. Hoc [anno][1] circa festum Sancti Johannis partes Bristolliæ pestilentia prædicta invasit, et deinde ad omnes alias partes Angliæ seriatim se transtulit, et per annum et ultra duravit in Anglia. In tantum vero desævit quod vix decima pars hominum superstes erat relicta. E vestigio mortalitas animalium est sequuta: tunc redditus perierunt, terra in sterilitatem redacta ob defectum tenentium qui colere ipsam solebant, tantaque miseria est inde sequuta quod ad pristinum statum resurgere vix unquam mundus facultatem habebit. Pauci vel quasi nulli domini vel magnates in ista pestilentia decesserunt. Circa ista tempora dominus rex ordinavit novam monetam de auro et argento: de auro scilicet nobile, obolum, et quadrantem; de argento autem grossum et medietatem grossi. Octavo kalendas Novembris ossa Sancti Thomæ Herfordensis episcopi levantur de tumulo, et in feretro ad hoc decentissime adornato solemniter cum maxima veneratione locantur, domino rege ac domino principe et prælatis quam plurimis necnon multis regni nobilibus præsentibus tunc ibidem cum

Hog, p. 187. Wals., i. 273.

Hog, p. 182.

Hog, p. 181. Wals., i. 275.

[1] The marginal references are to the continuations of Adam of Murimuth, published by Hog, in his edition of that chronicle for the English Historical Society and to Walsingham's *Historia Anglicana*, edited in this series. But both these works agree rather in substance than in language with this appendix.

[2] From Hog.

Hog, p. 181. Wals., i. 275. populi multitudine copiosa. Hoc anno electus est et consecratus in archiepiscopum Cantuariensem magister Symon Islep, utrinsque juris doctor approbatus, ac vir
Hog, p. 182. Wals., i. 276. laudabilis et honestæ conversationis. Iste annus fuerat Jubileus; quo anno multi populi ad obtinendum gratiam remissionis Romam proficiscuntur. Die Sancti Nicholai obiit papa Clemens sextus, et cito post electus est in papam Hostiensis episcopus, summus papæ pœnitentiarius, et vocatus est Innocentius sextus. Quo etiam [anno][1] cœpit magna caristia rerum videlicet, bladi, plumbi, ferri, stagni, æris, lignorum, canabi et specierum.
Hog, p. 184. Wals., i. 278. Ambassiatores regis Angliæ, scilicet dux Lancastriæ, comes Arundelliæ, et duo episcopi et alii proceres, adierunt papam pro pace reformanda inter reges Angliæ et Franciæ, qui sine effectu in Angliam sunt reversi. Orta est gravis seditio inter cives Oxoniæ et scholares: qui cives de circumadjacente patria collecta multitudine populi, insurrexerunt contra scholares, et ex eis plurimos occiderunt et multos vulneraverunt; deinde discurrentes eos de bonis eorum nequiter spoliarunt, tradentes libros
Hog, p. 184. Wals., i. 278. eorum incendio; propter quod Oxonia longo tempore erat supposita ecclesiastico interdicto: tandem pace inter eos formata, cives, eo quod ipsi causa fuerunt discordiæ, in perpetuum firmiter obligantur quod erga scholares bene in posterum se habebunt. Circa Nativitatem bea-
Wals., i. 280. tæ Mariæ rex Angliæ cum magna classe navium in Franciam tendens versus Parisium, sed audita captione Berewici regressus est in Angliam, et Berewicum libe-
Hog, p. 185. Wals., i. 281. ravit. Quo in tempore Edwardus primogenitus ejus in Vasconiam equitavit, civitates, villas et castella cepit,
Hog, p. 186. combussit et deprædavit. Duce Lancastriæ in Britannia Minore cum exercitu suo lustrante, et circa obsidionem

[1] From Hog.

Ravensis existente, vicesimo primo die mensis Septembris dominus princeps prædictus cum sex milibus, juxta civitatem Pictavensem, Johanni regi Franciæ copiosum exercitum Francorum circiter XXX. M. ducenti occurrit, et eum devicit et cepit, multis etiam captis atque occisis; sed Karolus primogenitus regis Francorum videns exercitum Francorum contra Anglicos prævalere non posse, cum illo Willelmo Douglas de Scotia, celeriter fugit de prælio, sicque, Altissimo benedicto, inimicis devictis, dictus princeps ipsum regem Franciæ secum Bordegalam et postmodum adduxit in Angliam. In isto prælio fuerunt capti triginta sex comites et magni domini ex parte regis Franciæ; item duo duces et novemdecem magni domini occisi, ac quinque millia armatorum et vulgus quasi innumerabile. Apud Avinionem combusti sunt duo fratres Minores pro quibusdam erroribus quos fovebant. Hoc etiam anno circa Pentecosten Edwardus princeps Walliæ de Vasconia in Angliam rediit, secum ducens Johannem regem Franciæ captivum. Et statim missi sunt in Angliam ex parte papæ duo cardinales pro pace reformanda, et tertius cardinalis ultimo venit pro rege Franciæ visendo. Qui quidem tres cardinales per biennium in Anglia sunt morati. Eodem anno circa festum Omnium Sanctorum David rex Scotiæ, cum per undecim annos in Anglia captivus detentus fuisset, facta magna redemptione pecuniæ, Scotiam rediit liberatus. Eodem anno magna controversia coram summo pontifice inter magistrum Ricardum Fitz-Rauf primatem Hiberniæ et clerum in Anglia ex parte una, et quatuor ordines mendicantium ex altera inolevit. Eodem etiam anno facta est magna vastatio et direptio per Britanniam Minorem et Normanniam per Philippum germanum regis Navarræ, Robertum Knolles et quamplures alios Angliæ, sine

Wals., i. 282.

Hog, p. 184.

Hog, p. 190.
Wals., i. 283.

Wals., i. 284.

Hog, p. 191.
Wals., i. 285.

Wals., i. 286.

regis assignatione Angliæ vel consensu; sicque in illis partibus per tres annos et amplius hostiliter permanserunt. Dictus enim Robertus Knolles in tantum exstitit bellicosus et in Francis formidatus, quod in ejus laudem taliter dicebatur:

" O, Roberte Knollis, per te fit Francia mollis;
" Ense tuo tollis præda, dans vulnera collis."

Hog. p. 191. Wals., i. 286. Circa ista tempora surrexit quidam vocatus vulgariter archipresbyter, natione Vasco, ducens unam comitivam armatorum, partes diversas Franciæ hostiliter devastando, et specialiter in regione Provinciæ multa mala com-
Hog. p. 192. misit ipsam deprædando et depopulando. Circa festum Assumptionis beatæ Mariæ rex Angliæ, princeps Walliæ filius ejus, dux Lancastriæ et omnes fere proceres regni, congregatis circa mille curribus, Franciam adierunt, et in partibus Burgundiæ et Campaniæ per totam hiemem
Wals., i. 287. sub divo manserunt. In quo tempore Normanni cum modica navium classe apud Winchelse applicuerunt, ipsamque villam idibus Martii invaserunt et pro parte combusserunt, et recedentes sine damno eis illato, habentes secum spolia multa, et mulieres secum ducentes
Hog, p. 193. captivas. Quarto decimo die mensis Aprilis, videlicet in crastino clausi Paschæ, nivis et grandinis ingens fuit tempestas, quæ in partibus transmarinis adeo fuerat violenta quod multi equi et homines de exercitu regis nostri in Francia recte pro frigore mortui ceciderunt in terram, aliaque bona quasi innumera causa illius
Wals., i. 290. tempestatis fuerunt amissa. Circa festum Sancti Dunstani, spe pacis concepta, rex cum exercitu suo in Anglia est reversus. Et cito post firmata est pax inter reges et regna apud Calesiam, liberatus est rex Franciæ
Wals., i. 294. solvens tria millia millium Florenorum. Eodem anno et tempore quievit controversia inter clerum et ordines mendicantium. Eodem anno apud Avinionem mortuus

est Armachanus prædictus lie Sancti Edmundi regis, cujus ossa succedente tempore in Hiberniam sunt delata, et apud Dundalk, ubi fuerat natus, sepulturæ traduntur.

In vigilia Annunciationis beatæ Mariæ nobilis dux Lancastriæ Henricus apud Leycestriam obiit, et ibi cito post honorifice sepelitur. Consequenter dominus Johannes Gaunt, filius regis, factus dux Lancastriæ ratione uxoris suæ, filiæ et heredis dicti Henrici ducis Lancastriæ jam defuncti. Isto anno magnus exercitus Anglorum, Alemannorum et diversarum nationum, motu proprio et quasi sine capite, partes Franciæ versus Avinionem invaserunt, et villam Sancti Petri ceperunt. Congregatio istorum vocabatur magna comitiva, qui per multos annos in Francia morabantur, occupantes plurimas villas et castella, nec habuit rex Franciæ potestatem illos a finibus suis expellere. Circa ista tempora transivit una comitiva, et vocabatur comitiva alba, per Provinciam usque in Lumbardiam. Istius comitivæ major pars et duces erant de Anglicis, qui aliquando fuerunt stipendiarii, aliquando ex proprio capite discurrentes acceperunt redemptionem de diversis castris, civitatibus atque villis, et longo tempore inibi sunt morati. Circa annum Domini millesimum trecentesimum quinquagesimum nonum dominus rex, ad instigationem Willelmi Wikham clerici, in castro de Wyndeshore multa bona ædificia fecit prosterni, et alia plura pulchra et sumptuosa ædificari. Omnes enim fere latomi et carpentarii per totam Angliam ad illam ædificationem fuerunt adducti, ita quod vix aliquis posset habere aliquem bonum latomum vel carpentarium nisi in abscondito propter regis prohibitionem. Fuerat autem dictus Willelmus Wikham de infimo genere, ut puta dicebatur servilis conditionis, tamen fuit multum astutus et vir magnæ industriæ. Videns qualiter posset regi placere et

Wals., i. 295.

Hog. p. 194.

Hog. p. 195.

Wals., i. 296.

Hog. p. 292.

ipsius benevolentiam adipisci, consuluit regi dictum castrum de Windeshore taliter sicut hodie patet intuenti ædificare, et infra modicum tempus postea unum novum castrum in insula de Schephey juxta mare erigere, et mercatum ibi constituere, licet locus ille ad hoc fuerat valde male dispositus. Propter quod dominus rex multis bonis et pinguibus beneficiis ipsum Willelmum ditavit, et infra breve tempus post suum secretum sigillum fecit portare, et succedente tempore ut esset episcopus procuravit; et tandem ad sui honoris fastigium cancellarium Angliæ ipsum constituit, ut verificaretur illud, Sic honorabitur quem rex vult honorare.

Cap. XLVI.

Hog, p. 195. Wals., i. 296. Circa festum Paschæ incepit magna hominum in Londonia pestilentia, et sic de australi parte Angliæ ad cæteras paulatim grassando viros multos et paucas mulieres consumpsit. Eodem anno circa festum Sancti Dionysii, Edwardus princeps Walliæ duxit comitissam Cantiæ, relictam domini Thomæ de Holand, et desponsavit eam apud Wyndeshoram. Fuerat enim dicta comitissa separata a comite Sâresburiensi causa dicti militis Thomæ de Holand, dictusque princeps fuerat in secundo gradu consanguinitatis et ipsa in primo, ac etiam dominus princeps unum de filiis ipsius de sacro fonte suscepit; unde de isto matrimonio a multis plurimum fuerat admiratum. In festo Sancti Mauri maximus et inauditus venti impetus extitit, campanilia super presbyteria, ecclesiarum pinnacula, arbores, domos ultra modum prosternens, multaque alia mala fecit: inundationes aquarum protinus sequebantur. Hoc anno Reginaldus Wigorniensis, Michael Londoniensis et Thomas Heliensis episcopi decesserunt. Iste Thomas fuit de

Hog, p. 196. Wals., i. 296.

Hog, p. 195. Wals., i. 296.

ordine Prædicatorum, qui propter quoddam litigium inter regem et ipsum exul in curia Romana decessit; unde Symonem Langham, abbatem Westmonasterii et regis thesaurarium, ad Heliensem, magistrum J. Barnet ad Wigorniensem, et magistrum Symonem Sudburi suum auditorem ad Londoniensem ecclesias papa promovit. Hoc anno dominus Leonellus filius regis, dux Clarenciæ, cum forti manu transivit in Hiberniam ad domandum feritatem Hibernicorum, ubi strenue, ut dicebatur, se habuit. Factum est magnum parliamentum Londoniæ, in quo fuit ordinatum quod litigantes in curia regali causas in lingua Anglicana proponerent, nec de cætero in lingua Gallica placitarent. In isto parliamento tractabatur de transitu domini principis in Vasconiam. Mense Septembri Innocentius papa sextus apud Avinionem diem suum clausit extremum; unde orta invidia inter cardinales de electione futuri papæ, plusquam per quadraginta dies in conclavi moram traxerunt: tandem consenserunt in abbatem Sancti Victoris juxta civitatem Marciliatum, nigrum monachum ordinis Sancti Benedicti, doctorem decretorum, virum magnæ literaturæ, Urbanum papam sextum appellantes, qui tempore electionis suæ versus dominum Mediolanum, qui tunc temporis ecclesiam Romanam multum infestabatur, fungebatur legatione: qui reversus circa principium mensis Novembris apud Avinionem solemniter coronabatur et consecratur in papam. Hic nationis fuit juxta montem Pusulanum, qui ante papatum Willelmus Grunard vocabatur, filius cujusdam mediocris militis; qui ecclesiam Romanam toto tempore suo valde mature et discrete regebat. Hoc anno circa festum Purificationis dominus Edwardus princeps Walliæ cum uxore et toto retenemento suo in Vasconiam transfretavit, ipsum nobili comite Warwick comitante. Ordi-

Wals., i. 297.

Hog. p. 198. Wals., i. 297.

Hog. p. 197.

Wals., i. 298.

natum vero fuit ex deliberatione regis et parliamenti quod dictus princeps transiret illuc, et dominium totius Aquitanniæ homagia et alia servitia ab eis qui tempore guerræ inter ipsum et regem Franciæ rebellarunt nomine patris sui juxta tenorem concordiæ inter eos factæ reciperet, ipsamque Aquitanniam [1] pacificaret, gu-
Hog. p. 198. Wals., i. 299. bernaret et regeret. Factum est parliamentum Londoniæ nono die mensis Octobris, a quo nullus magnus potuit se excusare; in quo omne ornamentum aureum sive argenteum erat damnatum, scilicet in cultellis, cingulis, anulis, monilibus et in cæteris coronalibus ornamentis, nisi foret talis qui quadraginta libras per annum
Hog. p. 199. Wals., i. 299. posset expendere. Eodem anno, sexto die mensis Novembris, parliamento durante; venit rex Franciæ Johannes Londoniam, deferens secum Milonem quam regi Angliæ pro redemptione sua debebat; a quo benigne ut decuit est receptus. Eodem anno, septimo idus Decembris, incepit gelare; quod quidem gelu continue fere usque ad festum Annunciationis duravit; unde dicebatur vulgariter quod hujusmodi gelu a centum annis elapsis et ultra non accidit: quod etiam gelu in partibus transmarinis arbores infinitas, videlicet vites, olivas et ficus, mortificavit. Eodem etiam anno,[2] sexto die mensis Novembris, venit rex Cipriæ Londoniam, ad habendum regis consilium et juvamen ad pugnandum contra Saracenos; qui honorifice a rege Angliæ susceptus, et multis donariis honoratus, ad dominum principem in Aquitanniam, et inde ad curiam Romanam, propter eandem
Hog. p. 199. Wals., i. 299. causam se transtulit. Die Lunæ proximo post adventum regis Cipriæ venit rex Scotiæ Londoniam, ad tractandum cum rege Angliæ ob certas causas ipsum tangentes. Circa idem tempus rex Daciæ voluit venisse

[1] *Aquitannianiam*. MS. [2] vj. anno inserted, MS.

in Angliam ad dominum regem nostrum, sed ad hoc non potuit obtinere licentiam. Johannes rex Franciæ obiit Londoniæ sexto die mensis Aprilis, cujus exequiæ per regis mandatum in diversis locis usque Dovoriam erant honorificentissime celebratæ, et apud Sanctum Dionysium cum suis progenitoribus sepelitur; post cujus obitum Karolus filius ejus in regem Franciæ coronatur. Eodem anno accusati sunt Lumbardi mercatores a consociis suis de magna infidelitate in mercimoniis suis facta regi, pro qua re major pars illorum in turri Londoniæ per tempus aliquot est inclusa, quousque finem regi juxta voluntatem ipsius fecissent. Eodem anno fuit tractatum de matrimonio obtinendo inter Edmundum de Langeleye, filium regis Angliæ, et filiam et heredem comitis Flandriæ; unde missum est ad papam pro dispensatione habenda pro eis propter propinquitatem consanguinitatis; sed rex Franciæ cum suo consilio dictum matrimonium ne fieret impedivit, suggerendo domino papæ ne eis hujusmodi dispensationem concederet; sicque Francis impedientibus, mulier prædicta postea nupta est Philippo fratri regis Franciæ, duci Burgundiæ. Eodem anno domino Edwardo principi Walliæ et Aquitanniæ, vicesimo septimo die mensis Januarii, in castello de Angrilham in Vasconia, natus est filius Edwardus vocatus, qui postea circa ætatis suæ annum septimum in Vasconia ab hoc sæculo est subtractus, et tamen non præmature secundum quod plurimi asserebant. Hoc anno in festo Sancti Michaelis, die Dominica existente, dux Minoris Britanniæ cognomento Mountfort, multis strenuis sibi Anglicis sociatis, ac dominus Karolus le Bloys qui dominium ducis Britanniæ jure hereditario vindicabat, cum numerosa multitudine Francorum et Britonum juxta castrum de Orreye intra dictam Britanniam, sunt congressi, ubi divino

Hog. p. 200. Wals., i. 300.

Hog. p. 201. Wals., i. 301.

Hog. p. 199. Wals., i. 303.

Wals., i. 301.

auxilio, mediantibus Anglicis victoriam obtinentibus dictus Karolus erat occisus, et similiter ex parte sua multi alii corruerunt, ex parte ejus cujus dominus Bertrandus Cleykyn, natione Brito, qui inter eos exstitit magnus ductor, cum aliis multis nobilibus erat captus.

Hog. p. 200. Wals., i. 301. Eodem anno commissum est lætale bellum inter Christianos et Saracenos in die Omnium Sanctorum in planis Turkeye, ubi principes Christianorum fuerunt Johannes rex Hungariæ, Siwardus rex Gorgoniæ, magister Hos-

Hog. p. 201. pitalis insulæ de Rhodis cum Christianorum multitudine copiosa ubi occubuerunt pagani quadraginta millia numerati, et multo plures absque numero sunt occisi; de Christianis autem quinque millia ducenti decem in illo prælio corruerunt: in quo quidem bello ex parte paganorum fuerunt principes Soldanus Babyloniæ, rex Turkyæ, rex Baldak, rex Belmarinus, rex Tartarorum, rex de Lettow; ex quibus tres reges tunc fuerant interfecti, ut ipsi qui interfuerunt dicto prælio referebant.

Hog. p. 199. Wals., i. 299. Memorandum quod anno Domini 1363 obiit bonæ memoriæ magister Radulphus de Schroseburia, episcopus Bathoniensis, qui in eleemosynarum largitione erat valde profusus, et aliis piis operibus semper devote erat intentus; loco cujus abbas Glastoniæ, vir multum venerabilis, unanimiter erat electus; sed ab æmulis qui ad illum episcopatum aspirabant ne ad curiam Romanam transiret impediebatur; tuncque papa magistrum Johannem Barnet ad ecclesiam Bathoniensem et Wellensem, et magistrum Willelmum Witlesheye, episcopum Roffensem, ad ecclesiam Wigorniensem transtulit, ac magistrum Thomam Trillek in episcopum Roffensis ecclesiæ

Hog. p. 204. Wals., i. 298. confirmavit. Item memorandum quod anno Domini 1362 episcopi Lincolniensis et Cicestrensis obierunt; unde venerabilem virum magistrum Willelmum Lynne, auditorem sacri palatii ac decanum Cicestriæ, papa in

episcopum ejusdem ecclesiæ confirmavit: sed dominum Johannem de Bokingham, portatorem secreti sigilli domini regis, ad ipsius instantiam in episcopum Lincolniensem electum, [papa] propter nimiam exilitatem literaturæ, pia ductus conscientia, noluit confirmare; sed importunis literis et precibus regis devictus commisit certis prælatis in Flandria ad examinandum dictum electum super habilitatem literaturæ; et sic tandem, mediantibus prece et pretio, ad dictum episcopatum confirmatus exstitit et etiam consecratus. Dominus de Coucy de Francia, qui diu in Anglia pro redemptione regis Franciæ erat obses, vicesimo septimo die mensis Julii apud Windeleshoram cum maxima solemnitate duxit in uxorem Isabellam filiam regis Angliæ, quæ solum præ amore sibi voluit desponsari. Hoc anno rex Cipriæ cum paucis Christianis respective cepit civitatem Alexandriæ magnam, ipsam in magna parte cum bonis et speciebus innumerabilibus quasi per ignis voraginem consumentes, paganorum multitudinem non modicam peremerunt; sed Saracenorum infinita copia congregata, non potuerunt ipsam civitatem nisi per quatuor vel quinque dies tenere; immo cum multis divitiis recesserunt; ubi tunc multi strenui milites et armigeri de Anglia erant præsentes: propter ipsius enim civitatis captionem species per plures annos postea in triplo et ultra fuerant cariores. Vicesimo sexto die mensis Aprilis obiit bonæ memoriæ dominus Symon de Islep, archiepiscopus Cantuariensis, qui valde sanctam conversationem duxerat et honestam. Fundaverat enim Oxoniæ unum collegium pro monachis ecclesiæ Christi Cantuariensis et sæcularibus adinvicem, ita quod monachi essent principales ejusdem; sed monachi expulsi de dicto collegio post mortem ipsius, favore et juvamine successoris sui fratris, Symonis Langham tunc regis

Hog. p. 201. Wals., i. 301.

Hog. p. 202. Wals., i. 303.

Hoc. p. 202. Wals., i. 303. cancellarii, de ecclesia Heliensi ad ecclesiam Christi Cantuariensem translati, in curia Romana ad dictum collegium, secularibus omnino pro perpetuo amotis, fuerant restituti. Magister Johannes Barnet ad ecclesiam Helyensem per papam transfertur, et magister Johannes Harwell, domini principis Acquitaniæ cancellarius, in Bathoniensem et Wellensem episcopum confir-
Wals., i. 302. matur auctoritate curia supradicta. Eodem anno, circa festum Epiphaniæ, in civitate Bordegaliæ natus fuit domino Edwardo principi Acquitaniæ secundus filius vocatus Ricardus, quem dominus Ricardus rex Armoricarum de sacro fonte suscepit. Circa istud tempus do-
Wals., i. 303. minus Bertrandus Cleykyn, de quo supra fit mentio, postquam illi de magna comitiva ad jussum regis Angliæ castella et munitiones quæ per multa loca in longitudine et latitudine fere per totam Franciam tempore diuturno tenuerant in manus Franciæ reddidissent, dictam comitivam circiter sexaginta milia pugnatorum de diversis nationibus, domini papæ fretus auxilio et favore,
Wals., i. 304. secum assumpsit, contra Petrum regem pugnaturus. In qua comitiva dominus Matheus de Corney et dominus Hugo de Calverley, milites Anglici, sub dicto Bertrando fuerant principales. Fuit enim voluntas papæ quod dictus Petrus rex Hispaniæ, qui, ut dicebatur, tanquam pessimus tyrannus vixit, de regno esset depositus et expulsus. Qui quidem rex timore comitivæ prædictæ fugit in Vasconiam, ut contra inimicos domini Edwardi principis consilium et auxilium obtineret, ipsoque taliter fugato, frater ejus Henricus Bastardus, favore domini papæ et majoris partis regni Hispaniæ, cum adjutorio præfatæ comitivæ, in regem Hispaniæ est erectus
Wals., i. 303. et etiam coronatus. Hoc anno mortuus est Willelmus Etyndon, episcopus Wyntoniensis, qui ad petitionem regis post mortem Simonis de Hislep in archiepiscopum

Cantuariensem postulatus, suaeque postulationi noluit consentire. Cujus successor per electionem extitit dominus Willelmus de Wykham, ut superius est praemissum, de paupere clerico per regem in magnum virum erectus, statim cancellarius regis efficitur. Cujus tamen electionem dominus papa per annum et ultra ob certas causas distulit confirmare.

Cap. XLVII.

Tertia die mensis Aprilis, videlicet, die Sabbati, in planis Hispaniæ, in campo juxta villam de Naser, dominus Edwardus, primogenitus regis Angliæ, habens secum regem Hispaniæ expulsum, commisit bellum cum rege Hispaniæ, ut asseritur, intrusore, ducente secum exercitum in duplo majorem exercitu Anglicorum, ex Hispanicis, Francigenis et diversis aliis gentibus congregatum ; ubi divino auxilio mediante, a prima exercitus Anglicorum dumtaxat, quam frater prædicti Edwardi dux Lancastriæ, cum strenuis viris dominis Johanne Chaundos, Roberto Knolles ducebat, præfatus intrusor cum suo exercitu erat devictus, in tantum quod, ut dicebatur, ad tria millia et ultra majorum et minorum ex parte Hispanorum erant capti, et septem millia ferro et aqua occisi ; inter quos Bertrandus Cleykyn, qui fuerat principalis ex parte intrusoris et dux primæ partis exercitus ipsius etiam erat captus, et paucissimi ex parte exercitus Anglicorum fuerant interfecti. Istis ita gestis dictus Edwardus regem Hispaniæ in regnum suum instituit, qui postea, ut dicebatur, dolo præfati intrusoris in mensa jugulatus occubuit. In isto enim viagio post habitam victoriam multi strenui et nobiles de Anglicis in Hispania fluxu et aliis infirmitatibus diversis sunt mortui. Eodem anno, in principio mensis

Hog. p. 203. Wals., i. 304.

Hog. p. 203. Wals., i. 304.

Wals., i. 306.

Maii, papa Urbanus de Avinione cum tota curia sua se transtulit versus Romam, per mare usque ad Januam[1] navigando, postea circa festum Sancti Lucæ Evangelistæ Romam veniens, sibi occurrentibus imperatore Alemanniæ, rege Hungariæ et regina Siciliæ, aliisque magnatibus et dominis in multitudine copiosa, necnon utriusque sexus populo infinito, cum maxima veneratione et cordis jubilo est susceptus, et eo amplior omnibus erat lætitia quia a tempore papæ Bonefacii octavi nullus
Hog. p. 204. papa visus fuit ibidem: ubi dum moram traxit Deum et sanctos suos multipliciter honoravit, ecclesias destructas et desolatas reparando et construendo, capita apostolorum Petri et Pauli et multas alias sanctorum reliquias, quæ in modica veneratione respective fuerant custodita, auro, gemmis et margaritis pretiosis sumptuose ac pulcherrime decoravit, multaque alia bona fecit ibidem, propter quod post mortem infinitas benedictiones ab omni populo reportavit. Hoc anno mense Martii visa est stella comata inter partes septentrionalem et occidentalem, versus Franciam suos radios porrigens. Mense Aprilis filius regis Angliæ, dux Clarenciæ Leonellus, cum electa multitudine dominorum, militum, armigerorum et aliorum versus Mediolanum ad ducendam filiam Galiagis senioris fratris pro media parte dominii ipsius Mediolani in conjugem transfretavit; ubi in maxima gloria et copia divitiarum matrimonium inter eos erat solemnizatum, qui postea circa festum Nativitatis beatæ Mariæ ejusdem anni ab hoc mundo migravit, vel, ut communiter dicebatur, potu virulento occisus, prout moris Lumbardorum
Wals., i. 307. est communis. Eodem anno mense Octobris Symon archiepiscopus Cantuariensis in cardinalem creatur, et sequente anno circa mensem Aprilis versus curiam pro-

[1] MS. interlines "Id est civitatem Januensem."

ficiscitur. Magister Willelmus Wittlesheye, episcopus Wygorniensis, ad ecclesiam Cantuariensem, et magister Lynne episcopus Cicestrensis,[1] ad ecclesiam Wigorniensem transferuntur v. idus Octobris; et magister Willelmus Reed, doctor in theologia, in episcopum Cicestrensis ecclesiæ promovetur. Eodem anno Francigenæ pacem et concordiam initas inter ipsos et Anglicos cœperunt infringere, ac super terras regis Angliæ in comitatu de Pountif equitantes, castella, oppida et munitiones occupaverunt, ac homines ipsius cœperunt et etiam occiderunt. Causam vero quare a concordia recesserunt Anglicis licet cautelose et fictione imponebant. Hoc anno obiit ducissa Lancastriæ, filia Henrici boni ducis, et in ecclesia Sancti Pauli Londoniæ traditur sepulturæ. Rex Edwardus circa finem mensis Maii Londoniæ parliamentum fecerat ordinari, ad tractandum super rupto fœdere inter ipsum et regem Franciæ, et qualiter posset sibi resistere in guerris quas contra eum movere inceperat. Hoc anno hominum omnium et quasi omnium magnorum animalium in Anglia pestilentia erat grandis, blada etiam per inundationes aquarum et aliarum tempestatum infortuna defecerunt, propter quod anno sequenti modius frumenti pro tribus solidis et ultra in Anglia vendebatur. Eodem anno mortua est Philippa nobilis regina Angliæ, et apud Westmonasterium inter sepulchra regum honeste humatur. Eodem [anno] magister Henricus Percy Northwycensis, magister Lodowicus Cherleton Herefordensis, et dominus Johannes Grantson Exoniensis episcopi obierunt; quibus auctoritate papali magister Willelmus Curteneye, filius comitis Dovoniæ, in ecclesia Herfordensis, magister Henricus le Despenser, favore fratris sui cum papa in guerris suis tunc temporis exsis-

Wals., i. 307.

Hog. p. 205. Wals., i. 306.

Wals., i. 309.

Wals., i. 307.

Wals., i. 309.

[1] *Sisestrensis*, MS.

tentis, in ecclesia Norwicensis, ac quidam clericus regis dominus Thomas Brentingham, mediantibus litteris ipsius
Wals., i. 307. Hog, p. 206. et precibus, in Exoniensi ecclesia successerunt. Eodem anno, circa Nativitatem Sancti Johannis Baptistæ, dux Lancastriæ et comes Herfordiæ cum valida manu militum in Franciam transfretarunt, sed ibi modicum profuerunt, nam grandis exercitus Franciæ super quodam monte ultra Calesiam, et exercitus Anglicorum prope eos sub monte eodem diuturno tempore jacuerunt. Ubi datum fuit a quibusdam consilium principibus exercitus Angliæ ut cum adversariis suis prælium commisissent, quia, ut verisimile videbatur, si fecissent Anglici victoriam habuissent; sed illi qui fuerunt majores duces exercitus Anglicorum hujus consilio adquiescere noluerunt, immo illud omnino spreverunt. Cognito autem et audito
Wals., i. 308. rumore quod Thomas nobilis comes de Warwik cum electa multitudine virorum in mari versus Calesiam navigaret, totus exercitus Francorum statim, relictis victualibus et tentoriis suis, est conversus in fugam, dictusque comes de Warwik ad terram applicans cum
Hog, p. 206. Wals., i. 308. suis versus Normanniam properavit, ubi huc et illuc discurrendo insulam de Caus et plures alias partes igne et ferro depopulando vastavit, qui postea in hieme versus Angliam redeundo, in Calesia morbo pestilentiali sæculo præsenti renuntiavit, cujus mors maximum Anglicis fuerat detrimentum, quia nullus eo magis strenuus in armis nec fidelior regi et regno tempore suo erat inventus. Cujus corpus ad tumulandum in ecclesia collegiata beatæ Mariæ de Warwik erat delatum, ubi corpus uxoris ejus modicum ante erat sepultum. Isto tempore, sicut diu ante et post, ecclesia Romana tenuit fortem guerram contra dominos Mediolani, qui injuste plures terras, redditus et castella de patrimonio Sancti Petri longo tempore occu-

paverunt: quo tempore, post mortem ducis Clarenciæ, Hog, p. 207.
dominus Edwardus le Despenser, qui in comitiva prædicti ducis ad partes illas advenerat, contra dictos dominos cum ecclesia tenuit, et laudabiliter in partibus illis diu se habuit. Circa istud tempus quidam Wals., i. 309.
miles Anglicus nomine Johannes de Haukwod in partibus illis incepit esse famosus, ducens secum magnam multitudinem Anglicorum, Lumbardorum et aliorum de diversis nationibus, qui nunc contra ecclesiam, nunc contra præfatos dominos guerram fovit. Hic Johannes in Anglia, videlicet in Estsexia, de mediocribus parentibus erat natus, artem sartoriam, ut asseritur, Londoniæ aliquando exercens, postea ut architenens in comitiva regis Angliæ vel principis in Franciam transfretavit; et circa illud tempus quo Anglici villam Sancti Spiritus juxta Avinionem cepissent, in quadam comitiva quæ Comitiva Alba nominabatur, de Anglicis et Alemannicis maxime congregata, in Italiam pertransivit; ubi postea propter strenuitatem suam fuerat factus miles, et multis annis invitis Italicis mansit ibidem, semper ad minus mille lanceas secum habens, multa mirabilia ibi operatus est cum suis. Hoc etiam anno circa Conversionem Sancti Pauli rex Edwardus omnes dominos et magnates, necnon prælatos universos, ad suum parliamentum Londoniæ fecerat convocari; ibi antequam præfatum parliamentum incepit sollemnes et sumptuosas exequias circa sepulturam uxoris suæ reginæ fecit honorifice celebrari; postea in parliamento prædicto decimam triennalem a clero petivit, quæ pro tunc sibi penitus negabatur, sed post Pascha erat concessa, in tribus annis certis terminis persolvenda, et similiter quintadecima triennalis a populo laicali. Hoc anno strenuus et sapiens miles dominus Wals., i. 312.
Johannes Chaundos, dux exercitus domini principis

Walliæ et Vasconiæ, ab inimicis occiditur prout juxta quoddam castrum nudo capite equitavit; cujus mors maximam desolationem dicto principi causabatur.

Cap. XLVIII.

Hog. p. 207. Wals., i. 309. In principio anni rex Edwardus consilio usus sinistro plures et magnas summas pecuniæ a prælatis, dominis, mercatoribus et aliis divitibus ubique per regnum suum per viam mutuationis ad defensionem ecclesiæ et regni, ut erat prætensum, quasi violenter accepit, et tamen nihil inde profecit. Postea vero in eadem æstate, circa Nativitatem Sancti Johannis Baptistæ, idem rex fecit magnum exercitum congregari de magis strenuis viris, dominis videlicet et militibus ac aliis, quibus dominum Hog. p. 208. Wals., i. 310. Robertum Knollis præfecit, in comitatu Cestriæ, ut dicitur, quasi de infimo genere oriundum; quem per actus bellicos strenue insudando fortuna ad gradum hujusmodi exaltavit. Iste quidem Robertus cum dicto exercitu circa ad Vinculam Sancti Petri transivit in Franciam, ubi in diversis ipsius partibus incolis damna non modica intulerunt, unde dum inter eos unitas et concordia servabantur Franci noluerunt pugnare cum eis. Postea vero in principio hiemis, propter cupiditatem et invidiam orta dissensione inter eos, et præcipue inter ipsum Robertum et quendam militem Johannem Munstreworth, qui certam multitudinem exercitus antedicti ducebat, in diversas turmas se diviserunt, ipseque Knollys cum suis in quoddam castrum in Britannia se recepit, et tunc Francigenæ in alias turmas sic divisos, in diversis locis non munitis receptos, cum forti potentia irruentes, omnes pro majori parte vel occiderunt vel captos secum duxerunt, et sic propter eorum impruden-

tiam et dissensionem regno Angliæ tunc maximum accidit detrimentum. Dictus vero Munstreworth vix evasit in Angliam, multosque de suis amisit: postea vero plures billas erga regem et suum consilium contra dictum Knollis prosequebatur, ipsum de proditione instantissime accusando, sed nihil in hoc omnino profecit. Hoc [anno] circa festum Michaelis papa Urbanus rediit Wals., i. 311.
de Roma ad Avinionem, solummodo ob istam causam, ut reges Angliæ et Franciæ ad unitatis et pacis concordiam perduxisset. Proposuit enim circa principium mensis Martii ejusdem anni versus Parisium transivisse, et ibi cum rege Franciæ et suo consilio de pace tractasse. Et postea secundum spem in una parte potuisset de finali concordia concessisse, ulterius ad villam de Bruges in Flandria se transtulisse disposuit, ad quem locum ambos reges voluit attraxisse si posset, ut cum eis et eorum consiliis personaliter potuisset tractare, sicque totis viribus ita inter eos proposuit mediasse ut eos ad veram concordiam perduxisset, et si quam partem contra rationem invenisset rebellem nec bono pacis assentire volentem, toto posse suo egisset ut eam ad hoc per censuras ecclesiasticas compulisset: sed nescio qua de causa, forte peccatis hominum hoc exigentibus, Deus illud adhuc noluit fieri, ipsum antequam istud sanctum propositum perficere seu incipere potuit, die Sancti Thomæ apostoli, apud Avinionem, ut ab aliquibus Hog, p. 208. Wals., i. 311.
conjecturabatur, potione sinistra ad mortem acceleratum, ab hac instabili luce subtraxit, ubi in ecclesia cathedrali juxta magnum altare in parte australi ad tempus habuit sepulturam. Post cujus mortem Deus ibidem pro eo plurima operabatur miracula; unde postquam Hog. p. 209.
circa unius anni spatium inibi jacuisset ossa ejus erant levata, et ad abbatiam Sancti Victoris, ubi quondam abbas exstiterat, deportata, ibique in ecclesia quam por

majori parte de novo construxerat, juxta majus altare in parte boreali sepulta: ad quem locum quasi quotidie ob illius reverentiam peregrinorum confluit multitudo, ita quod postquam illuc ossa ejus fuerant collocata Deus quasi infinita est operatus miracula. Post istum Urbanum suscepit cathedram papalem Gregorius undecimus, prius Petrus Rogeri nuncupatus, diaconus cardinalis, et filius comitis de Beufort fratris domini Clementis papæ sexti, ad hoc dicebatur duce Andegaviæ
Wals., i. 311. fratre regis Franciæ maxime procurante. Hoc anno civitas Lemovicensis in Aquitannia fraude et conspiratione episcopi ejusdem civitatis ac domini Rogeri de Beuford, fratris cardinalis qui postea electus in papam contra principem Acquitanniæ rebellavit, et se dominio regis Franciæ subjugavit. Prædicabant enim isti duo conspiratores ubique quod dictus princeps veraciter erat mortuus; unde cognita rebellatione civitatis præfatæ, prædictus princeps licet gravi infirmitate laborans versus dictam civitatem cum suo exercitu properavit, ipsamque arte fodientium cepit, captamque fere usque ad solum destruxit, viventes in ea occidit et cepit; inter quos illi duo seductores, episcopus scilicet et Rogerus, sunt capti. Hic quoque Rogerus permansit prisonarius capitanei de Bust', postea adductus in Angliam. Dictus vero episcopus decapitatus fuisset tanquam sui domini proditor, sed dominus princeps hoc nolebat permittere, eo quod de sacro fonte suum primogenitum suscepisset. Fuit confessor ipsius et de suo consilio secretissimus, ut puta quod, sicut ipsemet princeps fatebatur, in nullo majorem habebat fiduciam quam in ipso, et ideo facilius potuit ipsum decipere; quod et fecit. Postea vero cum iste episcopus de custodia principis fuerat liberatus, et audierat quod præfatus cardinalis Beuford, cujus erat cognatus, fuerat in papam creatus, ad curiam ipsius

accessit, et infra-cardinalatus fastigium est adeptus, et eo facilius et citius, ut Anglici conjecerunt, quia principem Walliæ sic decepit. Eodem anno circa principium mensis Januarii, applicuit in Anglia dominus Edwardus princeps prædictus cum uxore et familia, relinquens post se in Vasconia ducem Lancastriæ et dominum Edmundum comitem Cantebrugiæ, fratres suos, cum aliis multis nobilibus. Conspiraverunt et insurrexerunt contra eum de dominis et comitibus regionis Acquitanniæ, et præcipue comes de Armynak et dominus de Liberata, et super duritia importabili et exactionibus excessivis, ut asseruerunt, per eum et suos factis in populo, regi[1] Franciæ tanquam principali domino terræ illius sub nomine appellationis graviter querelantes, volentes omnino de subjectione et ipsius dominio liberari, et totum per dolum et malitiam erat factum. Contraxerat dictus princeps quandam gravem infirmitatem quæ ipsum comitabatur usque ad mortem; dicebatur enim quod erat intoxicatus: unde propter illam infirmitatem quæ ipsum quasi adnihilaverat, et quia non habuit pecuniam ad resistendum rebellantes contra eum, partes illas et falsissimas gentes deseruit, et ad Angliam festinavit. Hoc anno, primo die mensis Augusti, venit rex Navarræ ad regem nostrum ad manerium suum de Clarendon, dimissis pro eo in Normannia duobus comitibus de Anglia, obsidibus usque ad reditum ipsius illuc. Miserat enim rex Angliæ pro dicto rege ad tractandum cum eo et ipsius consilio super certis tangentibus guerram suam; sed rex noster habere non potuit quod petebat, et dictus rex recessit magnis donariis honoratus. Circa principium mensis Martii,[2] incipiente Quadragesima, maximum parliamentum erat Londoniæ

Wals., i. 312.

Hog, p. 210.

Hog, p. 210. Wals., i. 312.

[1] *regiæ*, MS.

[2] *Maii*, MS.

congregatum, in quo parliamento subsidium c. M[l] a clero et populo rex petiit sibi concedi, unde pro tunc de clero non habebat intentum, eo quod aliqui prælatorum absque convocatione cleri nihil sibi concedere voluerunt. Tamen post Pascha convocatione Londoniæ facta de clero, concessum sibi fuerat quod petebat, videlicet subsidium l. M[l] librarum, ad quam sacerdotes stipendiarii fuerant taxati, minuta et beneficia, quæ nunquam prius erant taxata, ad complementum ipsius
Wals., i. 313. similiter taxabantur. In isto parliamento episcopi qui fuerunt cancellarius et thesaurarius et qui portabat privatum regis sigillum erant amoti, et seculares loco eorum surrogati, et hoc fuit ordinatum, ut dicebatur, ad petitionem dominorum in odium ecclesiæ. Durante parliamento prædicto venerunt Londoniæ sollemnes ambassiatores missi a domino papa ad tractandum cum domino rege de pace inter ipsum et regem Franciæ, cupiens, ut asseruit, sui prædecessoris exsequi voluntatem; sed nihil profuit, quia nihil effectualiter erat factum.

Cap. XLIX.

Hog, p. 211. Wals., i. 313. Convocatum est parliamentum in æstate apud Wintoniam, ad quod de clero citati fuerunt quatuor episcopi et quatuor abbates dumtaxat; quod quidem parliamentum incepit nono die mensis Junii, et duravit per octo dies sequentes; et, ut conjecturabatur, dictum parliamentum fuerat ordinatum propter Londonienses, Norwicenses et alios mercatores de locis diversis, qui, ut dicebatur, contra regem disposuerant rebellasse. Hoc anno dux Lancastriæ et comes Cantebrugiæ frater suus redierunt in Angliam de Vasconia cum duabus sororibus, filiabus Petri quondam regis Hispaniæ jugulati; quarum seniorem dictus dux duxit in uxorem, et prædictus

comes frater suus juniorem recepit in conjugem. Hoc etiam anno cardinalis Angliæ et cardinalis Parisiensis missi fuerunt a latere Papæ, primus in Angliam et secundus in Franciam, ad tractandum inter duos reges de pace, unde multum fuit tractatum hinc inde in diversis locis, tam apud Bruges in Flandria quam apud Calesiam: sed tandem post annum et ultra, receptis sex denariis de singulis marcis pro procuratione pro se et socio suo, cardinalis Angliæ versus curiam absque pacis effectu recessit. Eodem anno cum forti armata manu mari sulcantes plures naves de Flandria ad numerum, ut dicebatur, viginti quinque venientes cum sale ceperunt homines et submergentes, putaverunt enim primo quod de illis partibus non fuissent, unde dira et fortis pugna diu inter eos duravit, sed tandem Anglici prævalebant; propter quod factum grandis discordia atque guerra inter Angliam et Flandriam fuisset secuta nisi per viam amicitiæ pax inter eos fuisset citius reformata. Comes de Penbrok, juvenis circiter xxv. annos, missus versus Vasconiam cum forti manu armatorum ad removendum obsidionem positam circa de Rochel per Francos, cum venisset prope portum de Rochel obviavit ibidem multis navibus de Hispania hominibus armatis onustis, quibus diu et fortiter adinvicem dimicantibus, tandem Hispani victoriam habuerunt; unde dominus comes cum maximo thesauro Angliæ, et de suo similiter, cum multis etiam nobilibus, die sancti Etheldreth virginis, videlicet in vigilia Nativitatis Sancti Johannis Baptistæ, fuit captus; qui omnes in Hispaniam erant adducti. Ex quibus sic captis plures fere usque ad mortem fuerant vulnerati. In ista enim pugna fere omnes Anglici fuerunt occisi et capti, et naves combustæ. Verum de isto viagio multi mirabiliter loquebantur, ascribentes vindictæ Dei illud infor-

Wals., i. 313. Hog, p. 211.

Wals., i. 314. Hog. p. 212.

tunium taliter evenisse, eo quod prædictus comes erat homo malæ vitæ, ut puta adulter publicus, qui etiam in quodam parliamento modicum ante Londoniæ celebrato stetit contra jura et libertates ecclesiæ Anglicanæ et thesaurus cum eo captus erat de viris ecclesiasticis et aliis contra voluntatem eorum receptus. In ista æstate dominus Edwardus le Despenser rediit de Lum-
Hog. p. 213. Wals., i. 315. bardia in Angliam. Eodem anno rex Edwardus, magno exercitu adunato, tricesimo die mensis Augusti mare intravit, intendens obsidionem circa Rochel diu positam removere, sed per mare longius ire ventus contrarius non permisit, per longum tempus per mare et ibi prope remansit expectans ventum prosperum, et non venit; qui
Hog. p. 213. tandem videns non posse suum propositum adimplere, ad terram remeavit, ad mare iterato non rediens, et statim ventus ad partes oppositas se convertit. Hoc anno circa Natale Domini magister Thomas Trillec, episcopus Roffensis, est viam universæ carnis ingressus; unde electionem factam de priore ejusdem ecclesiæ papa nolebat admittere, sed fratrem Thomam de Brunton, monachum ecclesiæ Norwicensis, decretorum doctor ac pœnitentiarium suum, in episcopum præfatæ eccle-
Wals., i. 315. siæ confirmavit. Mense Julii Johannes filius regis Angliæ et dux Lancastriæ, habens secum ducem Minoris Britanniæ et exercitum valde magnum, transfretavit in Franciam, sicque per Parisius in Burgundiam, et per totum regnum Franciæ usque ad civitatem Bordegalensem, absque Francorum resistentia equitavit; nullum vel modicum damnum, ut dicebatur, eis inferri permisit, sed a diversis villis et locis pro redemptione recepit, et ita pertransiit. Diesque prælii inter ipsum et ducem Andegaviæ, fratrem regis Franciæ, in crastino quasi, videlicet iiij. idus Aprilis anno sequenti, juxta civitatem
Wals., i. 316. Tholosam erat statuta; ad quos diem et locum dictus

dux Andegaviæ quasi innumerabilem exercitum de diversis regionibus congregavit ; sed treugis captis ex consensu utriusque regis, ut aliqui dicebant, usque sequentem Pentecosten, prælium non processit: aliqui autem dicebant quod dictæ treugæ regem Angliæ omnino latebant. Tamen Anglici propter hoc improperium sustinebant, quia Francigenæ jactabant die prælii statuta se fuisse paratos in campo expectantes Anglorum adventum, et non comparuerunt; sed qualitercumque fuit, dies illa transiit absque bello. Eodem anno missi fuerunt ambassiatores ex parte regis Angliæ et regni ejusdem circa Ad vincula Sancti Petri, videlicet episcopus Bangoriensis de ordine fratrum Prædicatorum, dominus Willelmus Burton miles, magister Utredus doctor theologiæ, monachus Dunelmensis, ac magister Johannes Schepheye, doctor legum, ad papam, ad supplicandum sibi ut supersederet de reservationibus beneficiorum in Anglia in curia sua de cætero faciendum, et præcipue ut electi ad episcopales dignitates in posterum in Anglia de electionibus gaudere permitteret, et ut possent a suis metropolitanis, ut quondam solebat fieri, confirmari ; ac super diversis aliis in quibus tam rex quam regnum sentiebant plurimum se gravari. Super quibus materiis habuerunt certa responsa, de quibus responsis cum redirent in Angliam deberet sibi rescribi per regem de voluntate sua et regni antequam aliquid super prædictis determinaret. Eodem anno magister Johannes Thoresby, archiepiscopus Eboracensis, magister Johannes Barnet, episcopus Eliensis, et magister Wilellmus Lynne, episcopus Wigorniensis, obierunt; unde filius comitis Arundelliæ, circiter annorum xxij., bacalarius in artibus, ad ecclesiam Eliensem, Henricum Wakfeld electo ad eam quassato, et magister Alexander Nevell electus ad ecclesiam Eboracensem per papam in Romano curia confirmantur. Hoc anno per parlia-

Hog. p. 214.

Wals., i. 316.

Wals., i. 16.

Hog. p. 215.
Wals., i. 316.

mentum erat decretum quod ecclesiæ cathedrales electionibus suis gauderent, et quod rex de cætero contra electos non scriberet sed per litteras suas ad eorum confirmationes juvaret, sed illud statutum in nullo pro-
Wals., i. 317. fecit. In isto parliamento concessa fuit domino regi una decima per clerum et una quintadecima per laicum populum. Dux Lancastriæ circa festum Pentecostis de Vasconia ad Angliam rediit. Circa ista tempora tota Acquitannia præter Burdegaliam et Baionam contra regem Angliæ rebellavit, et ad regem Franciæ se convertit. Quinto die mensis Junii obiit magister Willelmus Wittlesheye, archiepiscopus Cantuariensis; unde monachi ecclesiæ Christi Cantuariensis, ad eligendum licentiam a rege adepti, cardinalem Angliæ, qui prius dictæ ecclesiæ præsidebat, in archiepiscopum postularunt: propter quod factum contra prædictos monachos rex tantam arsit in iram, quod procurantibus æmulis omnes monachos dictæ ecclesiæ disposuit exulasse. Hinc enim plurimum erant vexati, et multa bona expenderunt antequam potuerunt super illo facto benevolentiam regis recuperare. Tamen rex postulationi factæ de cardinali nullo modo voluit consentire, sed nec papa nec etiam cardinales. Circa principium mensis Augusti missi fuerunt ad villam de Bruges episcopus Bangorensis et Willelmus Burton, de quibus supra fit mentio, cum uno magistro in theologia et uno legum doctore et duobus juris regni peritis, ad tractandum super diversis pendentibus in discordia inter regem Angliæ et papam. Ad quem tractatum papa etiam misit certos de suis, et duravit iste tractatus per annum et dimidium et ultra: unde demum concordatum est inter eos quod papa de cætero reservationibus beneficiorum minime uteretur, et rex beneficia per breve vocatum "quare impedit" ulterius non conferret; sed de electionibus, pro quibus primo

dicti ambassiatores præcipue ad curiam erant missi, in isto tractatu nihil penitus erat tactum; et hoc ascribitur aliquibus qui sciebant se posse citius per curiam Romanam quam per electiones ad dignitates episcopales quas ambiunt promoveri. Hoc etiam anno circa festum Purificationis dux Lancastriæ, magister Symon de Sudburi, episcopus Londoniæ, cum aliis missi fuerunt ad villam de Bruges ad tractandum de pace inter duo regna; quibus occurrerunt dominus Philippus Hardy, dux Burgundiæ, frater regis Franciæ, cum aliis episcopis, dominis et magnatibus regni illius. Ob illam causam etiam missi fuerunt per papam certi episcopi cum aliis, ut ex parte papæ ad reformationem pacis manus adjutrices apponerent: sed durante isto tractatu per duos annos cum magnis sumptibus utriusque partis, tandem recesserunt absque pacis effectu. Per istud tempus nuntii papæ, tam illi qui venerunt pro pace tractanda quam illi qui venerant ad tractandum inter regem Angliæ et papam, prout supra fit mentio, plures procurationes a clero regni Angliæ receperunt. Eodem anno certi capitanei de Minori Britannia, habentes secum ultra mille lanceas absque balistariis et sagittariis de diversis nationibus, et maxime de Britannia memorata, recesserunt de partibus Tholosanis, ad quas per ducem Andegaviæ propter bellum captum inter ipsum et ducem Lancastriæ fuerant invitati, discurrentesque per patriam Langedok, tandem circa festum Assumptionis per villam Sancti Spiritus in regionem Provincia intraverunt, quam circueuntes fere per annum, deprædantes, occidentes et etiam concremantes, mala plurima perpetrarunt; ex quorum præsentia maxima caristia victualium inibi causabatur. Quarto nonas Maii episcopus Londoniensis, de quo superius memoratur, mediantibus litteris regiis et aliorum dominorum, ad ecclesiam Cantuariensem erat trans-

Hog., p. 216.

Wals., i. 318.

Hog., p. 216.

latus, scilicet anno revoluto post mortem ultimi archiepiscopi loci prædicti. Hoc anno in tractatu de pace concessæ erant treugæ inter duo regna a festo Nativitatis sancti Johannis usque ad idem festum anni sequentis. Eodem anno, circa principium mensis Aprilis, dux Britanniæ Mounttfort, habens secum filium regis Angliæ, scilicet comitem Cantebrigiæ, comitem Marchiæ, comitem Warwick, comitem Staffordiæ, et dominum le
Hog. p. 217. Despenser, et multos viros alios bellicosos, in partes Britanniæ transfretavit; quibus infra breve temporis spatium reddita fuit villa Sancti Mathæi supra mare, et postea duo castra de Brest et Orreye; postea vero villam de Kemperleye, ab eis diu obsessam, in qua erant fere
Wals., i. 319. omnes majores Britanniæ ut verisimiliter credebatur, cepissent, nisi quidam miles portans nova de treugis supervenisset, præcipiens eis ex parte regis Angliæ ut dimissa obsidione omnes recederent et ad Angliam festinarent; et prædicti domini de istis novis non modicum tristes effecti, sicut eis jussum fuerat recesserunt. Eodem anno et tempore insula de Constantin, in qua situatur castrum Sancti Salvatoris, diu a Francigenis oppugnata atque obsessa, tandem falsi Anglici qui erant in ea ipsam diutius defendere non valentes, ob defectum consilii necessitate compulsi, ut fictitie prætenderunt, eam cum omnibus suis pertinentiis reddiderunt in non modicum regni Angliæ detrimentum. Britones in regione Provinciæ existentes, beneficio absolutionis ac certa summa florentorum a papa receptis, ipsam patriam relinquerunt, versus dominum de Coucy tendentes, qui hoc anno super terras Austriæ in Lothoringia et juxta Rheni fluvium cum maximo exercitu equitavit; sed magna parte sui exercitus interfecta et diversa infortunia perdita, confusus, ut dicebatur, ad Franciam
Hog. p. 217. Wals., i. 319. remeavit. Pestilentia hoc anno tam in Anglia quam

in Anglia quam in aliis diversis mundi partibus plures utriusque sexus delevit de terra. Eodem anno ubique calores nimii exstiterunt. Pridie idus Septembris papa transtulit episcopum Herfordensem ad ecclesiam Londoniensem, et Bangorensem ad ecclesiam Herfordensem; et dominum Henricum Wacfeld, thesaurarium hospitii domini regis, prius electum ad ecclesiam Heliensem, posuit in ecclesia Wigornensi, licet prior ejusdem ecclesiæ electo ad illam injuste quassato, postquam ipsa ecclesia fere per biennium vacavisset. Circa principium mensis prædicti obiit dominus Robertus [Wyfeld][1] episcopus ecclesiæ Saresbiriensis, cui successit magister Radulphus Argun, doctor juris civilis, cancellarius ducis Lancastriæ, contemplatione ipsius ducis, auctoritate papali. Dominus Edwardus le Despenser in festo Sancti Martini in castro suo de Keerdyf diem suum clausit extremum, et in ecclesia monachorum de Teukesbury est traditus sepulturæ. Hoc anno comes de Penbrok, postquam per Bertrandum Cleykyn ab Hispanicis erat redemptus, inter Parisium et Calesiam itinerando versus Angliam, die ejusdem sanctæ, scilicet Etheldrithæ virginis, cujus die erat captus in mari, mortem sustinuit corporalem, et in ecclesiæ fratrum Herfordiæ est sepultus. Ista vero infortunia aliqui credunt die prædictæ sanctæ sibi citius evenisse eo quod, ut dicitur, antequam recessit de Anglia prosequebatur multipliciter et vexabat injuste priorem et conventum ecclesiæ Heliensis, cujus ecclesiæ dicta sancta Etheldritha existit patrona, in quadam causa pendente inter abbatem de Burgo Sancti Edmundi et priorem et conventum prædictos. Eodem anno in principio æstatis, inter dominum papam et dominos Mediolani captæ fuerunt treugæ annuales; et

[1] From Hog.

tunc dominus Johannes Haukwode cum comitiva sua qui steterunt cum papa in guerris suis usque ad finem anni ex conventione, discurrentes per totam fere Italiam plurimas grandes strages fecerunt, accipientes multas et magnas summas florentorum nomine redemptionis de civitatibus Florenciæ, Pisæ et Lucæ, necnon de aliis
Hog, p. 218. civitatibus, villis et locis diversis. Eodem etiam anno mense Novembris occurrerunt apud villam de Bruges supradictus dux Lancastriæ et dux Andegaviæ cum aliis dominis et prælatis utriusque regni ad tractandum de pace.

Cap. L.

Hog, p. 218. Wals., i. 320. In principio mensis Maii rex Edwardus Londoniæ maximum parliamentum incepit tenere, quod usque ad finem mensis Julii fere duravit; in quo quidem parliamento rex a communibus Angliæ quoddam subsidium petiit ad defensionem sui et regni; sed communes respondentes quotidie se esse vexatos et attritos exactionibus excessivis, nec posse hujusmodi exactiones ulterius tolerare, præcipue quia sciebant pecunias suas quas frequenter solverunt, una cum thesauro regio, per illos qui a latere regis steterunt male et inutiliter esse consumptas et in nefarios usus conversas, asserentes regem pro defensione sui et regni sufficienter habere si ipsum regnum foret bene et fideliter gubernatum; et hoc foret, ut dixerunt, satis manifestum ipsius officiariorum cognita falsitate; hæcque se offerebant certissime probaturos, et si post probationem hujusmodi inventum esset regem ulterius indigere, ipsum libentissime juxta eorum facultates juvarent. Postea plura erant delata de duce Lancastriæ et de aliis diversis officiariis regis, et potissime de domino Latamer

ipsius camerario de pessima gubernatione circa regem et regnum. Quare dux Lancastriæ, dominus Latamer et omnes alii magni officiarii regis erant amoti, et in loco eorum alii subrogati. Ordinatum etiam erat ad petitionem communium quod certi episcopi et comites ac certi alii domini regem et regnum de cætero gubernarent, eo quod rex ad senectutem plurimum urgeretur: sed ista ordinatio vix per tres menses duravit. Quædam Alicia Peryrs, quam rex per longa tempora tenuerat ad concubinam, a societate ipsius ad petitionem communium erat amota, quæ de plurimis malis quæ per eam et ipsius fautores fiebant in regno fuerat accusata. In isto parliamento multa mala fuerant publicata de quodam Ricardo Lions, qui domino Latamer erat secretissimus, et de quodam Adam Buri mercatore Londoniæ; quorum primus fuisset mortuus si cum sua pecunia non juvisset; tamen perpetuo carceri erat adjudicatus, et omnes possessiones suæ ad opus regis seisitæ. Secundus vero postquam audivit quæ sibi forent futura diffugit de regno. Quidam miles de comitatu Herfordiæ, Petrus de La Mare, assensu omnium communium existentium in hoc parliamento, omnia quæ erant dicenda pro parte communium Angliæ proponebat, de cujus sapientia et sermonis facundia omnes ipsum audientes ultra modum admirabantur, eo quod, sicut multis apparuit, loquebatur ac si esset cœlitus inspiratus: de quo et factis suis habitis per tempus illud multa metrice valde subtiliter erant composita. Postea vero, quia iste Petrus veritatem de muliere prædicta et aliis de regis consilio existentibus divulgasset, ad instigationem mulieris prædictæ per regem morti fuit adjudicatus, sed ne hoc fieret duce Lancastriæ obsistente, apud Notingham perpetuo carceri mancipatur. Ad hæc omnia et plura alia, quæ

Hog. p. 219.

Wals., i. 321.

hic propter prolixitatem minime inseruntur, communes
Hog, p. 220. Angliæ per dominum principem Walliæ, primogenitum regis, ut dicebatur, erant secretius animati, eo quod vidit et scivit patrem suum et regnum quasi ad subversionem utriusque miserabiliter duci et regi; qui quidem princeps parliamento adhuc durante, morboque magis et magis qui eum a diu comitatus est invalescente, vj. idus Junii, videlicet in festo sacratissimæ Trinitatis, ob cujus reverentiam et dilectionem quolibet anno ubicumque foret terrarum maximam solemnitatem consueverat celebrare, ipsi sanctissimæ Trinitati suam animam commendavit. Cujus fortuna militiæ tanquam alterius Hectoris, dum vixit sanus, non solum Francigenis et aliis quibuscumque regni Angliæ inimicis non modicum incussit terrorem, sed certe Saraceni et gentiles ipsius fortunam plurimum formidarunt. Cujus corpus in ecclesia Christi Cantuariæ in cryptis in quadam capella, ubi ex injunctione papæ, pro eo quod secum dispensavit ad ducendum uxorem comitissam Cantiæ quondam perpetuam cantariam fundavit,
Wals., i. 322. honorifice sepelitur. Hoc [anno],[1] videlicet circa principium mensis Julii, tenentes comitis de Warwik, scilicet nativi et alii plures de retenemento ipsius, censuras ecclesiasticas contra malefactores hujusmodi promulgatas et editas non verentes, contra abbatem et conventum de Evesham et eorum tenentes maliciose insurrexerunt, in tantum quod abbatiam et villam de Evesham destruxisse et combussisse solotenus intenderunt. Dehinc malitia indies eorum magis et magis contra dictum abbatem crescente, statutæ fuerunt plures turmæ quæ per diversa loca et nundinas discurrentes plures de hominibus dicti abbatis vulneraverunt et verbera-

[1] From Hog.

verunt, et quosdam eorum interfecerunt. Deinde ad maneria eorum de Ossenham et Ambresleye accedentes, clausuras parcorum ibidem in pluribus locis fregerunt et combusserunt, omnes feras præter paucas ceperunt, occiderunt et fugaverunt; capita vivariorum et stagno- Hog. p. 221.
rum suorum frangentes aquas fecerunt excurrere, pisces quos capere poterant secum asportaverunt, et plura alia damna in eisdem maneriis perpetrarunt, in maximum ipsius abbatiæ præjudicium atque damnum, sic quod tunc, ut verisimiliter timebatur, dictam abbatiam destruxissent finaliter nisi præfatus abbas per suam industriam contra hujusmodi exquisitam malitiam regis protectionem et auxilium quæsivisset; unde duce Lancastræ mediante, rex tunc dictam abbatiam tanquam fundator et patronus ipsius sub suam protectionem suscepit, mittens suas litteras per quendam clavigerum suum ad comitem supradictum, ut hujusmodi malefactores et pacis perturbatores compesceret; et ita tandem timore regis et amicis mediantibus pax inter ipsos fuerat reformata. Propter istam brigam, ut dicebatur, rex per illos dominos in parliamento superius nominatos noluit ulterius gubernari, sed filium suum ducem Lancastriæ ad sui et regni regimen reassumpsit, qui usque ad mortem regis sic stetit. Hoc anno circa Natale Domini magister Adam Houton, episcopus Menevensis, cancellarius, et dominus Henricus Wacfeld, episcopus Wigorniensis, thesaurarius Angliæ erant facti, et laici qui illa officia prius occupaverunt amoti. Eodem anno Wals., i. 323.
statim post Purificationem beatæ Mariæ erat parliamentum Londoniæ congregatum, in quo rex quoddam subsidium a clero et populo postulavit; unde tunc tale subsidium erat sibi concessum, videlicet quod perciperet a qualibet laica persona utriusque sexus annos xiiij. excedente quatuor denarios, exceptis notorie pauperibus

qui publice mendicarent; et de qualibet persona ecclesiastica promota xij. denarios, et de singulis aliis non promotis iiij. denarios, exceptis fratribus quatuor ordi-
Wals., i. 324. num mendicantium. Circa istud tempus surrexit in universitate Oxoniæ quidam magister Johannes Wiclif, secularis doctor in theologia de partibus borealibus,
Hog, p. 222. tenens publice in suis determinationibus et disputationibus conclusiones erroneas et hæreticas atque statui universalis ecclesiæ derogantes, et præcipue contra religiosos possessionatos, et maxime monachos, male sonantes. Congregavit sibi plures discipulos pravitatis, habitantes simul in Oxonia, indutos longis vestibus de rusceto sectæ unius, pedibus incedentes, hujusmodi errores in populo ventilantes et publice in sermonibus prædicantes. Inter alia dicunt et asserunt quod eucharistia in altari post sacramentum non est verum corpus Christi sed ejus figura. Item quod ecclesia Romana non est caput omnium ecclesiarum plus quam una alia ecclesia, nec major potestas per Christum data fuit Petro quam cuilibet alteri apostolo. Item quod papa Romanus non habet majorem potestatem in clavibus ecclesiæ quam quiscumque alius in ordine sacerdotii constitutus. Item idem Johannes Wiclyf ponit istam conclusionem, quod si Deus est, domini temporales possunt legitime ac meritorie auferre bona fortunæ ab ecclesia delinquente. Item si dominus temporalis noverit ecclesiam delinquentem, tenetur sub pœna damnationis ejus temporalia auferre. Item quod evange lium sufficit ad regulandum in vita ista quemlibet Christianum. Et quod quælibet aliæ regulæ sanctorum sub quarum observantiis degunt diversi religiosi non plus perfectionis addunt evangelio quam addit albedo parieti. Item quod nec papa nec aliquis alius prælatus deberet habere carceres ad puniendum delinquentes

sed quilibet delinquens posset libere quocumque vellet transire et facere quæ placerent. Ista et plura alia isti errorum magistri publice ad subversionem nostræ fidei asserunt et affirmant, in tantum quod domini et magnates terræ et multi de populo ipsos tanquam sanctos prophetas reputent et honorent, cum verbo sunt hypocritæ pessimi et injusti, et eo amplius eos fovent et favent in suis erroribus quia tantam potestatem ad auferendum temporalia a viris ecclesiasticis ipsis attribuunt. Hinc circiter quinquaginta de conclusionibus dicti magistri Johannis missæ erant ad curiam Romanam, domino Gregorio papæ undecimo porrigendæ; ex quibus ipse dominus papa viginti tres tanquam hæreticas, frivolas et vanas damnavit, direxitque bullas suas hoc anno dominis archiepiscopo Cantuariensi et episcopo Londoniensi, ut ipsarum auctoritate dictum Johannem facerent arrestari et capi ac coram eis adduci, ut ipsum super dictis conclusionibus examinarent. Igitur postquam fuerat examinatus et super dictis conclusionibus suas declarationes licet fictas dixisset, dominus archiepiscopus super illa materia sibi et omnibus aliis indixit silentium, ut nullo modo ipse nec alii de cætero nec alibi de ipsa tractarent: tamen modico tempore siluerunt, quia cito post processu temporis, videntes quod facta et dicta eorum dominis et magnatibus complacerent, easdem opiniones et pejores foverunt. Eodem die quo ut præmittitur silentium dicto Wiclyf erat impositum, communes Londoniæ propter quoddam verbum minatorium quod, ut dicebatur, dux Lancastriæ debuit episcopo Londoniæ causa dicti Wiclyf dixisse, et propter antiquum odium quod erga ipsum ducem gesserunt, multis milibus ex eis unanimiter congregatis, armis assumptis, versus hospitium ipsius vocatum Savoye

Hog. p. 223. Wals., i. 325.

Hog. p. 224.

cum maximo impetu properantes, illud voluerunt prostrasse et combussisse, ac ipsum ducem interfecisse ubicumque tunc eum reperissent; sed ne hoc fieret episcopus Londoniensis vix eos potuit refrenare, qui tamen pro hoc nullas grates penitus reportavit; et præfatus dux his auditis de quodam infra civitatem
Wals., i. 326. prædictam ubi sedit in prandio, ultra Thamisiam ad manerium de Kenynton, ubi Ricardus princeps Walliæ tunc fuit, festinanter aufugit. Interim vero quidam quorum nomina ignorantur, in despectum ipsius ducis ut asseritur, sumentes quoddam in quo arma ipsius tam de Anglia quam de Hispania depicta, quod pendebat pro signo extra schopam cujusdam in Cheepe, distraxerunt atque fregerunt; propter quod factum præfatus dux contra Londonienses, graviter indignatus, marescallum et yeldaldernemen de Londonia fecit deponi, et alios in locis eorum creari, et ad instantiam ipsius illi qui sic scutum prædictum fregerunt per archiepiscopos Cantuariensem et Eboracensem et alios episcopos et prælatos solemniter et publice apud crucem in cimiterio Sancti Pauli, citatis ejusdem in genere, excommunicati fuerunt, pluraque damna voluit fecisse Londoniensibus si suum potuisset habuisse propositum executum. Postea ita est eos persecutus quod compulsi fuerunt facere unum scutum argenteum de armis suis prædictis et publice illud offerre in ecclesia Sancti Pauli ad quandam imaginem beatæ Virginis in parte australi ecclesiæ antedictæ. Hoc anno statim post festum Sancti Michaelis Ricardus filius principis factus est princeps Walliæ, cui rex contulit ducatum Cornubiæ cum comitatu Cestriæ. Hoc anno circa idem tempus dux Lancastriæ contra episcopum Wintoniensem vehementer commotus, ipsum persequi totis viribus conabatur, eo quod, sicut dicebatur, domino regi patri illius sug-

gessit quod, regina quondam uxor ipsius dictum ducem in utero suo nunquam portavit, sed supposuit eum pro filio quod ob timorem regis celavit; sed ante mortem, ut idem episcopus ut dicitur debuit asseruisse, sibi fatebatur, et ei injunxit quod hoc domino suo cum videret opòrtunum monstraret; propter quod ibidem dux fingens colorem eum persequendi, imposuit sibi quod fuit falsus patri suo modis diversis quando ipsius exstitit cancellarius; unde erat regi in magna summa pecuniæ condemnatus, pro qua condemnatione in manus regis omnia ejus temporalia erant capta, nec sibi ante mortem regis fuerant restituta; et licet totus clerus et tota communitas preces funderent pro eisdem, non tamen fuerant exauditi. Cardinalis Angliæ dum sedit in collatione sua post prandium, subito paralysi percussus loquelam omnino amisit; qui per tres vel quatuor dies supervivens in festo sanctæ Mariæ Magdalenæ spiritum suum emisit. Cujus corpus apud Bonpas juxta Avinionem inter fratres Carthusienses in ecclesia nova, quam ipse a fundamentis fecerat construi est sepultum, et post processum temporis ossa ejus inde ad Westmonasterium ubi primitus fuit abbas, in Angliam ordinavit deferri; cui monasterio multa bona legavit. Principio mensis Octobris papa Gregorius Avinionem set regionem Provinciæ deserens ad magnam Romam cum curia sua se transtulit, et magna ex causa ut potuisset citius recuperare temporalia sua quæ in diversis partibus Italiæ ab ecclesia injuste fuerunt ablata. Xij. kalendas Apri lis quidam miles Johannes Munstreworth, in comitatu Gloucestriæ oriundus, primo Londoniæ fuit tractus, deinde suspensus et postea decapitatus, ac postremum corpus ejus fuit in quatuor partes divisum, ad quatuor civitates Angliæ mittebantur famosas, et caput ejus super pontem Londoniæ erat appositum. Iste Johannes,

Hog. p. 224. Wals., i. 326.

præter alias malas conditiones quas habuit, cupidissimus homo erat, qui frequenter, ut dicebatur, plures et magnas summas pecuniæ ab eo receptas pro guerris regis non
Hog, p. 225. ut debuit expendebat, sed pro majore parte in usus proprios convertebat; propter quod et plura alia quæ contra eum erant opposita mortem timens incurrere, circa quatuor annos ante ultimum finem suum recessit latenter de regno, et cum rege Franciæ fuit detentus, qui hoc anno per quendam scutiferum regis Navarræ, qui frequenter cum rege Angliæ in guerris suis stetisset, circa montes Rouncevall in ingressu Hispaniæ fuit captus. Proposuit enim in æstate sequenti in Angliam cum Hispanica classe applicuisse, et propter hoc litteras, regis Franciæ et diversorum dominorum ad partes illas secum portavit: sed Deus suum iniquum propositum, quo contra suum proprium dominum machinatus est malum, sibi convertit in damnum. Circa hæc tempora Deus declarans justitiam quam magister Fitz Rayf exercuit dum vixit in terris, ut impleretur de eo illud psalmi, "In memoria æterna erit justus," per merita ipsius Ricardi ad tumbam ipsius apud Dundalk in Hibernia plura et magna quotidie operatur miracula, unde, ut dicitur, fratres tenent se male contentos. In festo sancti Gregorii martyris, dominus rex apud Wyndleshore Ricardo de Bordeus, heredi suo, ordinem contulit militarem: qui quidem rex, xj. kalendas Julii, quo quinquaginta annis et amplius regnasset, apud Schene diem clausit momentaneum ut transiret per Dei gratiam ad æternum, et juxta sepulcra patrum suorum apud Westmonasterium, in parte australi feretri sancti Edwardi, traditur sepulturæ. Nam toto tempore regni sui præter paucos annos ante mortem gratiose suum rexit imperium, et plurimos contra regem Franciæ et Scotiæ tam in terra quam in mari gloriosissime

reportavit triumphos, populique in regno Angliæ toto tempore suo in summa prosperitate et pace vixerunt. Circa xv. annos ante mortem suam neglexit militiam, et per diversos maledictus carnis voluptatibus et ludis inutilibus nimis vacavit, et illam malam mulierem superius nominatam et alias quamplures, tam ante mortem reginæ quam post, nimium adamavit; et ideo ad modum Salamonis per mulieres cor ejus erat infatuatum, et corpus ejus multum attenuatum atque annihilatum, ita quod per annum et ultra ante mortem suam, ut dicebatur, non plus viguit in discretione quam unus puer octo annorum.

EXPLICIT LIBER SEPTIMUS.

Incipit Octavus.

Capitulum primum.

Ricardus de Bordeus, filius domini Edwardi principis Walliæ et heres domini Edwardi tertii illustris regis Angliæ nuper defuncti, in principio undecimi ætatis suæ anni, xvij. kalendas Augusti, scilicet in vigilia sancti Kenelmi regis et martyris, a domino Symone archiepiscopo Cantuariensi apud Westmonasterium cum maxima celebritate coronatur in regem totius monarchiæ regni Anglorum. Cui Londonienses in sua coronatione honorem maximum præbuerunt. Infra quam solemnitatem quatuor exaltavit in comites, videlicet avunculum suum dominum Thomam de Wodestok ad Bokyngham, dominum de Percy ad Northimbriam, dominum Moubray ad Notingham, et quendam militem Vasconem, magistrum suum, nomine Gwychard, ad Huntingdon. Hoc anno circa Nativitatem sancti Johannis a tractatu pacis totaliter est recessum; nam Franci

Hog. p. 228. Wals., i. 332.

Wals., i. 338.

Hog. p. 229.

noluerunt pacem habere nisi concordia pro majore parte juxta voluntatem eorum transisset, et si fuisset concordatum non modicum esset damnum regno Angliæ
Wals., i. 341. generatum. Eodem tempore, statim post mortem regis, Franci cum multis navibus et galeis intrantes mare, ad villam de Rye juxta monasterium de Bello applicuerunt ad terram, ipsamque villam deprædantes combusserunt et destruxerunt usque ad solum, et sic recedentes duxerunt secum plures utriusque sexus captivos; et reliquos quos reperierunt occiderunt. Postea intraverunt insulam Vectam, ubi postquam aliqua loca spoliassent
Wals., i. 340. et concremassent, accipientes mille marcas pro redemptione ipsius redierunt ad mare, et continue usque ad festum Sancti Michaelis circuierunt per maritima Angliæ, comburentes et vastantes loca plurima juxta mare, et maxime in partibus australibus, interficientes quoscumque poterant invenire, capientesque prædas animalium et aliarum rerum, et aliquando prisonarios, damnum modicum reportarunt, quia parvam resistentiam habuerunt. Istis enim quadraginta annis elapsis, ut creditur, non fuerunt in Anglia tot mala facta per inimicos sicut in illo quarterio fuerant perpetrata. Post coronationem regis Ricardi ex communi assensu deputati fuerunt ad gubernationem regis et regni, ipso in minore ætate manente, duo episcopi, duo comites, duo barones, duo baronetti, duo bachilarii milites, cum uno juris terreni perito. Ordinatum etiam fuit quod isti quolibet anno
Hog. p. 236. erunt amoti, et alii in loco eorum electi. Hoc anno Johannes Haukwode, de quo supra fit mentio, duxit in uxorem filiam domini Mediolani, scilicet bastardam, cum qua idem dominus, ut dicitur, contulit dicto Johanni ad valorem decem millium florenorum annui reditus, et ex tunc aliquas comitivas non duxit ut prius. Eodem anno in quindena Michaelis erat parliamentum convo-

catum Londoniæ, quod fere usque ad Natale Domini perduravit. In quo parliamento concessa erant regi a clero duæ decima simul in principio mensis Martii persolvendæ, et a laico populo duæ quintædecimæ, in festo Purificationis simul solvendæ, ad regni defensionem et inimicorum expugnationem. Hoc etiam anno, statim post festum Omnium Sanctorum, dominus Thomas de Wodestoke comes de Bokyngham, dux Britanniæ, dominus Latamer, et dominus Robertus de Halys prior Hospitalis Sancti Johannis in Anglia, cum electa multitudine armatorum mare absque equis intraverunt; unde in nocte Sancti Martini tanta vis venti et pluviæ accidebat quæ fere omnia armamenta navium eorum defregit, sic quod coacti sunt redire ad terram; sed navibus eorum reparatis remearunt ad mare, et cito post Natale Domini revertentes nihil vel modicum profuerunt. Gregorius papa undecimus xxvij. die mensis Marcii moritur apud Romam; post cujus mortem cardinalibus pro electione novi papæ conclave ingressis, maxima multitudo communitatis urbis Romæ sumptis armis palatium invadentes, et quasi voce minatoria, clamaverunt Romanum vel Italicum in papam se velle habere: unde cardinales timentes sibi vim inferri, quendam cardinalem Romanum decrepitum ad sedandum eorum seditionem et clamores in sublimi ponentes, finxerunt se illum elegisse in papam; et tunc post recessum populi archiepiscopum Barensem, de regione Neapolis oriundum, vicecancellarii in curia vices gerentem, xiij. die mensis Aprilis concorditer elegerunt. Qui Urbanus sextus nominatus, xviij. die ejusdem mensis, videlicet die Paschæ, ad gradus ecclesiæ Sancti Petri fuit solemniter coronatus et consecratus; sicque pontificalibus indutus, cardinalibus omnibus qui tunc in curia erant præsentes comitantibus, statim equitavit ad eccle-

Wals., i. 343.

Hog. p. 231.

siam Lateranensem, ubi missa ab eo cantata ad palatium remeavit, cum quo ipso die omnes cardinales in praudio exstiterunt, et postea sibi canonicam obedientiam facientes, et sibi supplicationes varias porrigentes, cum eo diu steterunt in pace. Succedenti tamen tempore, cum iste papa Urbanus voluisset quod cardinales sui suas magnas pompas dimisissent, et cum moderata familia ac cibis et potibus moderatis vixissent, suosque titulos reparassent, videbatur eis grave quod ipsis nitebatur imponere. Circa Nativitatem Sancti Johannis secreto adinvicem conspirabant, et contra eum rebellare unanimiter disponebant, clamque recedentes ab eo in regionem Neapolis aufugerunt; quos regina regionis ejusdem in quendam castrum recipiens, eos contra dictum Urbanum diu favebat; asserebant enim isti cardinales eum verum papam non esse, quia, ut dixerunt, nisi fuisset propter metum mortis eum minime eligissent; sicque
Hog, p. 232. cardinalem Gebennensem vulgariter nuncupatum, filium quondam comitis Gebennis, consanguineum regis Franciæ, de novo elegerunt, ipsum Clementem septimum nominantes dictoque regi Franciæ pro auxilio impendendo litteras direxerunt. Cui Clementi schismatico ejusque cardinalibus rex Franciæ cum omnibus adhærentibus consilio et auxilio in quantum valet succurrit, et ita horribile schisma in capite universalis ecclesiæ est exortum. Papa vero Urbanus circiter viginti cardinales de novo creavit, et cardinales schismaticos excommunicavit, omnibus beneficiis privavit, et ad omnimoda beneficia in posterum obtinenda inhabilitavit. Eodem anno circa principium mensis Aprilis intrarunt mare sine equis domini comites Arundelliæ et Saresburiæ, cum armatorum multitudine copiosa, qui circa festum Pentecostis absque damno nostris inimicis illato, ut dicitur, sunt reversi. In quorum primo ingressu in mare, dum

duo fratres, videlicet domini Philippus et Petrus Courteneye se nimis indiscrete inter paucas naves hostium ingesserunt, subito supervenit una magna classis Hispanica, cui quia non fuerunt potentes resistere, senior frater Philippus, cum de suis aliquos perdidisset, graviter vulneratus aufugit, et Petrus inter naves inimicorum Hog, p. 233. conclusus, cum diu contra hostes suos viriliter et nobiliter dimicasset, multis vulneribus circumfossus tandem capitur, et cum paucis militibus, quo nescitur, abducitur; ante cujus captionem in navi ipsius Petri omnes valente armigeri de comitatibus Devoniæ et Somersetensis occisi fuerant et submersi, quod nobis in magnum damnum tendebat. Eodem anno consequente, post Nativitatem Sancti Johannis Baptistæ, intrant mare similiter sine equis dominus dux Lancastriæ, comes de Bokyngham frater ejus, comites de Warwik, Stafford et alii multi magnates et domini cum numerosa multitudine armatorum, et applicantes in Britannia villam de Seynt Malous bene per mensem continuo obsederunt, et tandem eorum obsidio per inertiam et negligentiam erat delusa, et sic in Angliam redierunt; modicum suis adversariis nocuerunt. Eodem anno, in crastino Sancti Laurentii, filii Belial, filii scelerati de familia regis, Hog, p. 233. Wals., i. 375-379. nescientes Dominum nec ei dantes honorem, sibi plures iniquitatis filios adunantes, in ecclesiam abbatiæ Westmonasterii inter magnæ missæ solemnia armati intrarunt, et in quosdam valentes armigeros, videlicet Schakel cognomine et Robertum Hawleye, qui, ut credebatur, injuste persecuti de turri Londoniæ ob refugium illuc confugerant, impetum facientes dictum Robertum eis aliqualiter ut potuit resistentem unanimiter insequuntur, ac ipsum in choro coram stallo prioris turpiter et nequiter occiderunt, necnon quendam clericum ministrum ecclesiæ ejusdem, eis suggerentem ut

Hog. p. 234. ob Dei reverentiam pepercissent, trucidaverunt, sicque immunitatem et privilegia ecclesiæ antedictæ per plures Romanorum pontifices et reges Angliæ confirmata, quæ per multorum annorum curricula usque ad id temporis inviolata manserant et illæsa, isti malefactores frangentes, dictum Schakel ab ecclesia extraxerunt, et secum ad præfatam turrim Londoniæ reducentes in carcere retruserunt. Hujus enim comitivæ nefandæ quidam milites, scilicet dominus Radulphus de Ferrariis, senex dierum, malorum inveteratus, ac dominus Alanus Boxulle, turris prædictæ capitaneus, exstiterunt ductores et duces, ut de eis dicatur illud evangelium, "Milites quidem hæc
Wals. i. 280. " fecerunt." Hoc eodem anno, xij. kalendas Novembris, rex Ricardus apud Gloucestriam suum parliamentum incepit tenere; nam certi domini de Anglia timentes Londonienses propter memoratum factum nefandum in ecclesia Westmonasterii commissum, dissuaserunt domino regi suum parliamentum ea vice apud Westmonasterium celebrare, ut suum iniquum propositum contra libertates ecclesiæ Anglicanæ destruendas conceptum liberius ducerent ad effectum. In hoc enim parliamento aliqui principes et domini, qui forte illius facti erant conscii, convenerunt in unum, associantes sibi aliquos de clero quos viderunt faciliter velle in partem
Hog. p. 235. sinistram contra ecclesiam declinare, videlicet doctores et magistros prurientes auribus, ex quibus Wiclif superius nominatus cum aliis hujusmodi exstitit principalis, qui eis in ista materia malignum consilium præbuerunt; sicque adinvicem conspirantes in quantum poterunt laborarunt omnes immunitates et privilegia ecclesiæ Westmonasterii et aliarum ecclesiarum similiter exstirpare et penitus enervare. In tantum vero tunc contra ecclesiam sævierunt, quod nullus erat ausus publice abbati Westmonasterii consilio vel auxilio in ista causa

assistere, seu aliquem sermonem pro eo proferre; sed Deus, qui ecclesiam suam supra firmam petram fundavit, non permisit malignorum consilium contra eam finaliter prævalere, immo fideles populos adversus inimicos ipsius fecit exsurgere, qui cum ecclesia eis fortiter restiterunt; et ita Deus tandem cor regis in clementiam convertebat, qui ecclesiam prædictam libertatibus, immunitatibus et privilegiis suis gaudere permisit, et ea de novo etiam confirmavit. Hoc anno mense Januarii obiit frater Johannes Brynkeleye, abbas monasterii de Burgo Sancti Edmundi; post cujus mortem cito, non expectato electo, ut canit jus commune, dominus papa contulit abbatiam ipsius monasterii fratri Edmundo Brounfeld, monacho ejusdem monasterii, sacræ paginæ professori, procuratoris nigrorum monachorum regni Angliæ in curia Romana gerenti officium; quæ quidem provisio sive collatio postea præfato monasterio versa est in maximum detrimentum. Maximæ inundationes aquarum ac venti et tonitrui tempestates in principio prædicti parliamenti tenti apud Gloucestriam extiterunt, ita quod nulli nisi per navem vel equos illuc patebat accessus; et vix transiit dies quousque parliamentum esset finitum quin in eo pluebat. Wals., i. 414. Hog. p. 236.

Capitulum secundum.

Inter Pascha et Pentecosten rex aliud parliamentum Londoniæ tenuit, in quo unum novum et mirabile subsidium sibi pro guerris suis a clero et populo erat concessum. Eodem anno, circa festum Nativitatis Sancti Johannis, Clemens papa schismaticus latenter fugiens de Italia ad Avinionem pervenit, ubi cum suis cardinalibus schismaticis curiam suam tenet. Isto anno circa idem tempus omnes barones Britanniæ præter quatuor, Hog. p. 236.

cum tota fere communitate ipsius, nolentes falsitatem et tyrannidem regis Franciæ et suorum ulterius sustinere, [quasi subito][1] et insperate, ad suum rectum dominum, dominum Johannem de Monte forti se converterunt; super qua materia miserunt statim multos valentes ambassiatores, tam milites quam alios, cum litteris ad regem Angliæ et dictum Johannem de Monte forti ducem Britanniæ, ad notificandum eis voluntatem eorum: super quorum legatione habitis diligenti tractatu ac deliberatione et examinatione maturis, tandem facta sufficienti securitate ex parte baronum Britanniæ, consensum est ut prædictus dux cum certa potentia ad terram Britanniæ se transferret; quod cito post
Wals., i. 415. fecit. Circa hoc tempus dictus frater Edmundus Brounfeld in Anglia secreto applicuit, et infra modicum tempus xiij. monachos de dicto monasterio Sancti
Hog, p. 237. Edmundi ad suum consensum attraxit, quorum fretus auxilio et consilio ecclesiam Sancti Edmundi intravit, et nactus possessionem ibidem fuerat installatus; quod videntes prior et alii fratres dicti monasterii; ferventer erga dominum regem et ipsius consilium prosequuntur; et statim missum est et auctoritate regis dictus Edmundus capitur, et coram regis consilio accersitur, ac sibi quod dictam abbatiam impetrasset contra regis
Wals., i. 416. statuta edita contra hujusmodi impetrantes opponitur; propter quod infra turrim Londoniæ recluditur, et post certum tempus ad castrum de Notingham transfertur, ibidem sub custodia remansurus. Monachi vero qui in istis sibi consenserant, præter duos vel tres qui evaserunt, jussu consilii domini regis ad diversa monasteria Angliæ sunt dispersi, et ita quod hujusmodi impetratione et collatione magna perditio atque dam-

[1] From Hog.

num monasterio præfato evenit, quod non modicum est dolendum. Ideoque ista resistentia in hac parte est facta ne provisiones monasteriorum ad collationem curiæ Romanæ sicut episcopatuum in posterum volverentur, nec papa ad preces regis vult confirmare electum monasterii supradicti. Circa annum præcedentem orta est magna dissensio inter reges Franciæ et Navarræ, sic quod in odium regis Franciæ rex Navarræ tradidit ad tempus regi Angliæ villam suam de Chirburgh cum castello in Normannia supra mare; ad quorum custodiam et defensionem rex Angliæ misit certam potentiam hominum armatorum ad deprimendum Francorum et Normannorum malitiam: unde hoc anno, circa mensem Octobris, fere tota fortitudo bellicosorum totius Normanniæ congregati voluerunt improviso nostros apud Chirburgh intercepisse; sed nostri de eorum insidiis præmuniti seipsos contra eos diu et acriter est pugnatum, sic quod, Dei gratia mediante, nostri tunc fuerunt victores, licet multi eorum fuerant graviter vulnerati; et fere omnes majores et famosiores totius Normanniæ in illo conflictu fuerunt occisi. Et dominus Oliverus Cleykin, frater Bertrandi Cleykyn, tunc captus erat ibidem, et captivus adductus in Angliam. Hoc anno comes Sancti Pauli de Pikardia, qui anno Domini 1374 juxta Calesiam ab Anglicis erat captus, et usque ad hoc tempus in Anglia permansit captivus, duxit in uxorem pro redemptione sua sororem regis Angliæ ex parte matris, filiam quondam domini Thomæ Holand, et sic in terram suam liber abire permittitur. Hoc etiam anno obiit Henricus rex Hispaniæ intrusor, et filius ejus pro eo coronatur in regem. Eodem anno, in principio mensis Decembris, dominus Johannes de Arundell cum electa multitudine armatorum habentes secum equos, ad ducem Britanniæ

Hog. p. 238.

Wals., i. 418. seqq.

destinati apud portum de Plimmouth mare intrarunt; unde subito et insperate, in crastino Sancti Nicholai, cum tunc esset nimia in terra serenitas, oritur eis tempestas sævissima a turbine procellarum pluviæ et venti procedens, sic quod quasi arte diabolica naves abinvicem pro perpetuo disperguntur, et vi tempestatis illius aliquæ naves ad terram in Hibernia, aliquæ in Wallia, aliquæ in Cornubia, et aliæ in diversis partibus deferuntur, et ibidem rumpuntur, et sic quod omnes præter paucas illo turbine perierunt, et mille et ultra personæ hominum in mari similiter fuerunt submersi, inter quos dictus Johannes Arundelliæ, dux et princeps illius ex-
Hog. p. 239. ercitus, illo naufragio mortem sustinuit, ac multi alii strenui milites et armigeri in diversis maris partibus demerguntur, fere etiam omnibus eorum equis et rebus perditis et submersis. Pro quo quidem infortunio in octavis Sancti Hilarii parliamentum Londoniæ convocatur; in quo parliamento inter alia concessa fuit domino regi una decima ab omnibus viris ecclesiasticis, tam presbyteris stipendiariis quam beneficiatis solvenda, et una quintadecima de populo seculari. Circa principium istius anni Simon archiepiscopus Cantuariensis officium cancellarii Angliæ super se assumpsit, de quo officio dominus Ricardus Scrop per invidiam aliquorum erat amotus; dominus Robertus Halys, prior Hospitalis Sancti Johannis in Anglia, thesaurarius etiam tunc efficitur: quæ quidem officia vitæ utriusque, proh dolor! finem accelerabant. Circa principium mensis Maii comes Marchiæ cum certa potentia pugnatorum in Hiberniam transfretavit ad domandum feritatem Hibernicorum, qui pro majore parte omnes terras comitatus sui de Holvestor per longa tempora occupaverunt; qui Deo cooperante felicem expeditionem nactus, infra spatium medietatis unius anni decem vel undecim reges

sibi subjecit et interfecit, et terras quas injuste occupaverunt recuperavit. Habuit enim ante recessum suum de Anglia a rege et parliamento licentiam per spatium trium annorum ibidem morandi et contra regis inimicos et suos guerram fovendi. Septima die mensis Junii commissum est duellum inter dominum Johannem Hannesleye, militem, et Robertum Katerintoun, armigerum, in pavimento extra aulam domini regis apud Westmonasterium, in præsentia ipsius regis ac ducis Lancastriæ aliorumque plurimorum dominorum regni necnon populi multitudinis numerosæ; quo duello dictus Robertus fuit occisus. Materia vero ipsius duelli hæc erat, videlicet, quod præfatus Johannes miles [imposuit][1] dicto Roberto [quia],[1] dum extitit subcapitaneus castri Sancti Salvatoris in insula de Costantyn, [idem castrum][1] in manus regis Franciæ falso et proditorie reddidit, ubi ad defensionem illius erat satis sufficiens, ut miles asseruit; unde magna fuit evidentia quod militis causa erat vera, ex quo mors alterius sequebatur. Mense Julii comes de Bockyngham, habens secum in comitiva sua et strenuos et sapientes milites, dominos Robertum Knolles et Hugonem Calverleye et alios diversos magnates et dominos stipatos multis strenuis viris et bellicosis equos ducentes in auxilium ducis Britanniæ, per Calesiam transfretavit in Franciam; qui per longitudinem fere et latitudinem regni illius equitantes multas strages cremando et occidendo, sic quod, Deo duce, circa principium mensis Octobris salvi in Britanniam pervenerunt; sed non sicut crediderant a duce Britanniæ[2] erant recepti; nam secundum consilium ipsius ducis circa villam de Nauntes, quæ sibi erat rebellis, posuerunt obsidionem per terram, Wals., i. 430. Hog. p. 240.

[1] From Hog.

[2] *Britannicæ*, MS.

dictusque dux eis promisit auxilium ad obsidendum dictam villam per aquam, sed illud auxilium adhuc non venit. In qua obsidione nostri omnes equos suos propter frigus et defectum victualium præter paucissimos perdiderunt, et ultra mille homines; quorum aliqui diversimode fuerunt occisi, aliqui variis infirmitatibus moriebantur, similiter amiserunt, sic quod maximas
Hog, p. 211. miserias fere per totam hiemem in dicta obsidione sustinuerunt, ita quod illi qui remanserant vivi turmatim quasi pauperes et mendici, exceptis majoribus, ad Angliam recesserunt, nihil mali per eos adversariis suis illato.[1]

Galeæ de Francia mense Augusti intrantes Tamesiam usque ad villam de Graveshend venerunt, ibi aliquas domos combusserunt, ac in partibus oppositis dictæ villæ, tam in Estsexia quam in Cantia, in diversis locis cremantes et deprædantes, habentes secum prisonarios et multas prædas recesserunt indemnes. Circa idem tempus circiter xiiij. vel xv. millia pugnatorum de Scotia per mare applicantes in terram, in partibus borealibus Angliæ, diversas mercatas et nundinas spoliantes, plurimos occiderunt, et capientes secum spolia multa ad naves suas sine damno sunt reversi in mare: propter [quod][2] factum dux Lancastriæ, comites de Warwik et Stafford, cum aliis dominis, circa festum Michaelis mittuntur cum magna apparatu ad partes Scotiæ ad tractandum cum eis de pace; in quo tractatu captæ sunt treugæ inter utrumque regnum usque ad festum Paschæ tunc proximo sequentem: quolibet anno quasi decem annorum proximo elapsorum habebatur inter eos et regem Angliæ propter hujusmodi irruptiones unus tractatus vel duo; et tamen non obstantibus treugis captis in hujusmodi tractatibus fere quolibet anno magna

[1] Dd. 1, 17, breaks off here. | [2] From Hog.

damna nostris borealibus intulerunt. In principio mensis Novembris, statim post festum Omnium Sanctorum, rex parliamentum suum tenuit apud Northamptoniam. In quo parliamento concessum fuit regi unum subsidium consimilem fere quale sibi fuit concessum alio anno 1379, videlicet de qualibet persona regni Angliæ majoris ætatis sexdecim annorum duodecim denarios, exceptis notorie mendicantibus; et de qualibet persona ecclesiastica promota vj. solidos viij. denarios, et de quolibet sacerdote stipendiario iij. solidos et iiij. denarios. Circa ista tempora orta est maxima dissensio inter comitem Flandriæ et communes ejusdem, ita quod Gandavenses et reliqui communes insurrexerunt contra comitem, stante villa de Bruges cum aliis dominis terræ cum eo; multaque prælia inter eos frequenter committebantur, et aliquando comes victoriam habuit, aliquando communes victoriam reportarunt, sicque maxima multitudo populi ex utraque parte erat occisa, et communes multa pulchra castra et ædificia quæ erant tam comitis quam aliorum dominorum illius terræ tenentium pro eo prostraverunt usque ad terram. Ante Natale Domini venit Romam ad papam Urbanum imperator Constantinopolitanus paganus, ad percipiendum fidem Christi, et a dicto papa fuerat baptizatus, quartamque lectionem in matutinis coram papa nocte Natalis legit in Græco. Circa istud tempus mittuntur ambassiatores ad villam de Bruges in Flandriam, et in Almanniam, ad tractandum cum imperatore Almanniæ pro matrimonio celebrando inter regem Angliæ et sororem imperatoris prædicti. Circa principium mensis Martii redeunt in Angliam dicti ambassiatores, ducentes secum quendam cardinalem ac ducem quendam cum aliis dominis pro parte imperatoris Almanniæ, ad tractandum cum consilio regis

Hog, p. 242.

Hog, p. 243.

Angliæ pro matrimonio supradicto. Dictusque cardinalis, ut dicebatur, excedens limites potestatis sibi commissæ per papam, potestatem quam non habuit usurpavit, unde maxima summa pecuniæ congregata recessit. Hoc anno inundationes aquarum nimiæ exstiterunt, ita quod a die Sancti Lucæ usque ad Natale Domini vix dies pertransiit quin pluebat, sic quod hoc anno modicum de frumento fuerat seminatum. Circa ista tempora papa Urbanus xxiiij. conclusiones erroneas quas Wiclyf
Wals., i. 440. et ejus discipuli tenuerunt damnavit. Eodem anno mense Augusti, concepto dolore de adventu exercitus Anglicorum in Franciam, ut dicebatur, Karolus rex ejusdem statim moriebatur; et Philippus filius ejus, puer circiter xij. annorum agens ætatem, in regem ejusdem regni erigitur, et etiam coronatur. Circa idem tempus obiit vir prudens armorum Bertrandus Cleykyn, constabularius Franciæ. Mense Martio ejusdem anni dominus Thomas Hatfeld, episcopus Dunelmensis, moritur, senex multorum dierum.[1]

[1] Hog's second continuation ens also at this same point, and is very nearly identical with the present text from p. 228 to p. 243.

APPENDIX.

*** Continuation of Higden as given in MS. B. Begins at middle of Cap. XLVI., Book VII., being Cap. XLIII. of text already printed.[1]

Die Sancti Nicholai obiit papa Clemens sextus, et cito electus est in papam Stephanus[2] Hostiensis episcopus, summus papæ pœnitentiarius, et vocatus est Innocentius sextus. Quo etiam anno incepit magna caristia rerum venalium,[3] ut duplo quædam plus solito venderentur; mare etiam et terra steriliora esse cœperunt.[3] Hoc anno conventum est concordatum et juratum inter reges Angliæ et Franciæ, excepto quod sigilla regum ad scripta indentata nondum apponebantur, quod scilicet rex Angliæ haberet omnes terras suas de ducatu Aquitanniæ per regem Franciæ hactenus usurpatas, ita quod rex Angliæ dimitteret et resignaret regi Franciæ totus jus et clamium quod habebat ad regnum Franciæ: super quo negotio missi sunt ex parte regis Angliæ sollemnes nuncii, videlicet Henricus nobilis dux Lancastriæ, Ricardus comes Arundeliæ, Willelmus Bateniensis,[4] episcopus Norwicensis, et Guido Brian

Hog's continuation of Adam of Murimuth, p. 182.

Hog, p. 183.

Hog, p. 184.

[1] The references in the margin are to one of the pieces published as continuations of Adam Marimuth, by Hog, in his edition of that author for the Historical Society; but the agreement between the two texts is nearly always more in substance than in words, and it will be seen that the order of events differs somewhat in the two.

[2] *Stephanus*] om. A.

[3] *venalium...caperunt*] videlicet bladi plumbi ferri stagni æris lignorum canabi et specierum, A. After this A. differs from B. almost wholly—collation is impossible to the end of this chapter.

[4] The bishop's name is elsewhere given as *Bateman*.

miles ad curiam papalem pro pactis imbullandis; sed surrepente fraude Franciæ, una cum conniventia domini papæ, irrita sunt pacta et rejecta; qua de causa paravit se Anglia ad dimicandum pro subtractis recuperandis. Dominus rex Angliæ cum valida manu militum intravit regnum Franciæ, sed audita captione Berewyci rediit
Hog, p. 183. in Angliam, et Berewycum a Scottis liberavit. Hoc anno tanta fuit siccitas ut per tres menses continuos, scilicet Aprilem, Maium, Junium, vix caderet gutta
Hog, p. 186. pluviæ super terram. Quo quidem anno, iiij. idus Januarii, natus est regi Edwardo Thomas apud Wode-
Hog, p. 184. stoke. Feria quarta in hebdomada Pentecostis combusti sunt duo fratres de ordine Minorum apud curiam Avinionensem pro quibusdam erroneis opinionibus
Hog, p. 185. prout videbatur papæ et cardinalibus. Eodem anno, in festo Nativitatis beatæ Mariæ, transfretavit Edwardus primogenitus regis Angliæ in Vasconiam, cum nonnullis comitibus et sagittariis quam pluribus, ad recuperandum terras quas rex Franciæ de ducatu Aquitanniæ jam diu usurpaverat, ubi moratus plene per annum sine hostis congressione, sed medio tempore urbes insignes Narbonam et Cartasonam et quasdam alias sibi rebelles cepit, diruit et deprædavit et incendit. Tandem in fine anni adventus sui vicesimo primo die mensis Septembris, dum Edwardus prædictus, duce Lancastriæ in Britannia Minore in obsidione civitatis Berenensis existente, ripas Ligeris fluminis quæ sunt de ducatu Aquitanniæ peragraret, congressus cum eo rex Franciæ copiosum ducens exercitum, sed deinde devictus
Hog, p. 187. est et captus et ad urbem Burdegaliam in Vasconia adductus est usque Pentecostem sequentem.

Cap. XLVII.[1]

Hoc[2] anno circa festum Pentecostis transfretavit Edwardus prædictus de Vasconia in Angliam una cum rege Francorum Johanne captivo, et statim missi sunt in Angliam ex parte domini papæ duo cardinales ad tractandum de concordia inter duos reges, ubi plene demorati, et tertius cardinalis ultro venit pro rege Franciæ consolando, et cum aliis Londoniæ morabatur.[2] Hog, p. 190.

Hoc[3] quoque anno, videlicet 1357, circa festum Omnium Sanctorum liberatus est David le Bruz rex Scotiæ de diutina custodia, scilicet sexdecim annorum, qua detinebatur apud castrum de Odiham, magna mediante redemptione.[3] Hoc[4] etiam anno magna controversia cœpit apud curiam Romanam inter archiepiscopum Hiberniæ Armachanum et fratres mendicantes.[4] Eodem etiam anno facto est vastatio magna in Normannia et Britannia per Philippum fratrem regis Navarræ, dominum Jacobum de Pipe et Robertum de Knollis et alios quam plures Anglicos sine capite, et sine mandato regis Angliæ. Hoc quoque anno apud Windeshoram rex Edwardus festum Sancti Georgii martyris fecit solemniter celebrari. Hoc anno circa festum Assumptionis beatæ Mariæ Edwardus rex Angliæ et ejus primogenitus princeps Walliæ, dux Lancastriæ, et omnes fere proceres Angliæ cum exercitu equitum et sagittariorum, congregatis circa mille curribus, apud portum Hog, p. 191. Hog, p. 192.

[1] Not marked as a chapter in A.

[2] *Hoc...morabatur*]. The same in substance in A., but differing verbally to a great extent, and adding at the end, instead of "consolando" to "morabatur"—"vivendo. Qui quidem cardinales per biennium in Anglia sunt morati."

[3] Differs verbally in A., but is to the same effect.

[4] Eodem anno magna controversia coram summo pontifice inter magistrum Ricardum Fitz Rauf primatem Hiberniæ et clerum in Anglia ex parte una et quatuor ordines mendicantium ex altera inolevit.

de Sandwich aliquamdiu sunt morati. Dux autem prædictus circa festum Sancti Michaelis proximo sequens ad Calesiam transfretavit; rex autem et princeps circa
Hog. p. 192. festum Omnium Sanctorum ad eundem locum venerunt et immediate post regnum Franciæ equitare cœperunt, sed in partibus Burgundiæ et Campaniæ sub divo usque festum Annunciationis beatæ Mariæ manserunt; et interim Normanni cum modica navium classe Angliam apud Winchelsee idibus Martii appulerunt, ipsamque villam invaserunt, quosdam occiderunt, et pro parte combusserunt; sed ex piratis ibidem quampluribus occisis et submersis, ad naves redire et ab Anglia recedere per abbatem de Bello et sibi adhærentes sunt compulsi.
Hog. p. 193. Hoc anno circa festum sancti Dunstani Edwardus rex cum exercitu suo, treugis initis ac spe pacis cum Francis concepta, in Angliam est reversus cum non modico populi sui, equorum et curruum detrimento per tempestatem juxta Parisium, octavo die post Pascha obortam cauto: et circa festum Ad vincula sancti Petri proximo sequens Armachanus et ordines mendicantium ad præceptum summi pontificis controversia inter illos prælabita quieverunt. Quo etiam anno dictus Armachanus obiit; cujus ossa post aliquot annorum curricula in Hiberniam sunt delata, et apud Dundalk ubi natus fuerat sepultus, ubi ut dicitur multis coruscat miraculis.
Hog. p. 191. Illo etiam anno, eodem tempore, princeps Walliæ, dux Lancastriæ, et alii quamplures magnates Angliæ, una cum rege Franciæ Calesiis pro pace reformanda accesserunt; et ibidem pace vinculo juramenti ab utraque parte reformata, reges Angliæ et Franciæ in sua regna repedarunt circa festum sancti Michaelis sequens, et cito post missi sunt nuncii summo pontifici Avinionæ pro pace et pactis mutuis confirmandis. Deinde in parliamento apud Westmonasterium facto collatione con-

cordiæ inter reges præhabita, placuit universis eidem consentire. Igitur celebrata missa de Trinitate in ecclesia Westmonasterii, et Cantuariensi archiepiscopo astante, rege cum suis simul astantibus, illos qui non præstiterunt alibi juramentum super hujuscemodi de pace servanda ibidem fecit rex jurare super sacrosanctum corpus Dominicum, tam Anglos quam Francos nobiles, maxime hujusmodi pacem servare. Hoc anno sexto die Maii in meredie fuit eclipsis solis : sequebatur Hog. p. 196.
etenim magna siccitas, et ob defectum pluviæ frugum et fœni sterilitas. In Burgundia cecidit pluvia sanguinea et in Bolonia. In festo corporis Christi apparuit crux in aere sanguinea a mane usque ad horam sextam, quæ illico multis videntibus se movebat, et in medio mari cadebat: quo etiam anno uno tempore, in locis planis et insolitis, apparuerunt tam in Anglia quam in Francia duo castella, de quibus egressi sunt duo exercitus armatorum, unus albo, alter nigro colore coopertus ; inito certamine vicerunt albi, iterum readunati nigri vicerunt, et redeuntes in eorum castella omnia dissipaverunt. Vacante sede Londoniensi hoc anno, postulatus est ad Hog. p. 195.
eandem frater Simon de Langham, abbas Westmonasterii ; Hog. p. 195.
provisum tamen fuit per papam dictæ sedi de magistro Simone Sudbury, et Simon Langham de episcopatu Eliensi. Item, hoc anno fuit magna mortalitas hominum, Hog. p. 195.
præcipue masculini sexus; quorum fœminæ quasi degeneres sumpserunt maritos tam extraneos quam alios imbecilles et vecordes, pudori non parcentes, prout est vitium quarundam mulierum, proprio honore oblito, de viris sublimioribus quasi descendendo ad viliora sæpius declinantes secum inferioribus copulare. Igitur hoc anno incliti et nobiles prælatique ecclesiarum quamplures obierunt, de quorum aliquibus dignum est facere mentionem, videlicet, de duce Lancastriæ Henrico, de

Reginaldo Cobham, de Willelmo Fitz Waryn, viris utique
Hog, p. 195. præclarissimis. Hoc eodem anno Edwardus princeps Walliæ duxit in uxorem comitissam Kantiæ, relicta domini Thomæ Holand, quæ olim fuerat separata a
Hog, p. 194. comite Sarum causa dicti [1] militis. Circa hæc tempora orta est magna comitiva diversarum nationum coadunata duces habens Anglicos, vocabatur tamen gens sine capite; villam Sancti Spiritus ceperunt, Franciam vastaverunt, villas et castella diutius occupantes, nec valuit illos rex Franciæ a suis finibus expellere ulla cautela.
Hog, p. 195. Item non multum post emanavit alia comitiva, vocata Alba Comitiva, quæ per Provinciam transivit in Longobardiam; redemptiones de castris, civitatibus atque villis multiplices acceperunt. Istius comitivæ majores et duces erant Angligenæ, aliquando stipendiarii effecti, aliquando rapinis et redemptioni dediti: diu inibi sunt
Hog, p. 194. morati. Hoc anno dominus Joannes de Gaunt, filius regis, factus est dux Lancastriæ, ratione uxoris suæ et hæredis Henrici quondam ducis Lancastriæ.

Cap. XLVIII.

Hog, p. 196. Quintodecimo die Januarii circa horam vesperarum ventus vehemens, notus, auster, Africus, tanta rabie erumpens quod flatu suo domos altas et fortes, ædificia sublimia, turres, ecclesias et campanilia aliaque fortia violenter prostravit, sic quod residua quæ supersteterunt semper fuerant debiliora; de quo quidam metricus sic ait:

"C ter erant mille decies sex unus et ille
"Luce tua, Maure, vehemens fuit impetus auræ."

Alius vero sic:

"Ecce flat hoc anno Maurus in orbe tonans."

---

[1] Hog has *prædicti*.

Innuunt isti versus quod anno Domini millesimo trecentesimo sexagesimo primo, in festo sancti Mauri abbatis, contigit iste ventus inauditus. Hoc autem verum est secundum computationem ecclesiæ Anglicanæ, sed secundum computationem ecclesiæ Romanæ vera est quotatio fratris in margine posita. Hoc quoque anno in festo apostolorum Petri et Pauli contulit Edwardus tertius rex ecclesiæ Westmonasterii vestimenta sancti Petri in quibus idem apostolus missas celebravit. Eodem quoque anno dominus Edwardus primogenitus regis Edwardi accepit principatum Aquitanniæ, factis patri homagio et fidelitate pro ea, et eodem anno transfretavit in Vasconiam cum uxore et suis. Item eodem anno rex Edwardus fecit Leonellum filium suum ducem Clarenciæ, Edmundum alterum filium comitem Cantebrigiæ. Innocentius papa sextus obiit; cui successit Urbanus sextus, vir quidem insignis et multæ litteraturæ peritus. Hic secundo pontificatus sui anno quandam constitutionem edidit contra clericos pluralitates beneficiorum obtinentes; tamen modicum profecit, quia nunc temporis clerici quamplures variis beneficiis ope et favore dominorum ita erant suffulti quod prædicta constitutio necata horribilis mediantibus prece et pretio nullatenus potuit sortiri effectum. Statutum est in parliamento quod homines juris regni de cætero placitarent in lingua materna. Hoc anno quidam inhumani corpus cujusdam sacerdotis in quatuor partes Londoniæ civitatis contemptibiliter projecerunt; auctores vero hujus sceleris nunquam publice cognoscuntur. Fama exorta in cunctis regnis et provinciis de probitatibus et virtutibus regis nostri et suorum, venerunt ad eum tres reges isto modo, rex Franciæ, Cipriæ et Scotiæ, gratia visitandi et alloquendi eum eo; a quo plurimum honorati post longam moram duo eorum

Hog. p. 197.

Hog. p. 197.

Hog. p. 198.

Hog. p. 197.

Hog. p. 198.

Hog. p. 199.

ad propria sunt reversi. Rex vero Franciæ gravi morbo detentus in Anglia remansit. Hoc anno fuit forte gelu et diu duravit, videlicet a festo sancti Andreæ usque ad xiiij. kalendas Apriles: quo tempore abbas de Bello eundo versus Londoniam cuidam damnato ad furcas in mareschallia domini regis obviavit, quem virtute libertatum suarum a necis interitu liberavit; et licet rex et alii magnates factum hujusmodi graviter corde tulerunt, cartas tamen suas per placitum habuit approbatas. Apud Davoroy in Britannia commissum est bellum valde lætale inter dominum Johannem de Monteforti
Hog. p. 200. et dominum Karolum de Bloys; cessit victoria domino Johanni prædicto, ope tamen et auxilio Anglorum, captis nobilibus multis et armigeris et aliis infinitis. In quo bello cecidit ipse Karolus cum universa multitudine, ac de parte nostra ceciderunt tantum septem viri. Hoc anno obiit apud Savoy Johannes rex Franciæ, cujus exequias rex Edwardus tertius in diversis locis fecit honorifice celebrari, ac usque Dovoriam a dignis personis duci regaliter ordinavit sumptibus suis et expensis; sepultus est apud Sanctum Dionysium in Francia, et regnavit Karolus filius ejus pro eo. Eodem anno accusati sunt Lumbardi mercatores a consociis suis de magna infidelitate in mercimoniis suis facta regi, unde major pars illorum in turri Londoniæ aliquamdiu fuit inclusa, quousque finem regi juxta voluntatem ipsius fecissent. Hoc anno Edmundus Langele, filius regis Edwardi, filiam comitis Flandriæ et hæredem desponsasset, nisi linea consanguinitatis adinvicem attigissent unde pro dispensatione habenda missum est ad papam quod audiens rex Franciæ, ne matrimonium fieret impedivit viribus cumulatis. Demum mulier prædicta nupta est Philippo fratri regis Franciæ, duci Burgundiæ.
Hog, p. 201. Commissum est bellum valde lætale inter Christianos

et paganos die Omnium Sanctorum in planis Turkeye, ubi principes Christianorum fuerunt Johannes rex Hungariæ, Siwardus rex Gorgoniæ, magister Hospitalis insulæ de Rhodes, cum multitudine Christianorum. Occubuerunt xl. millia numerati pagani, et multi plures absque numero sunt occisi: de Christianis autem v^{m} cccx. in illo prælio corruerunt. In quo quidem bello ex parte paganorum fuerunt principes Soldanus Babyloniæ, rex Turkeye, rex Baldak, rex Belmarinus, rex Tartarum, rex Lectowe, ex quibus tres tunc fuerunt interfecti, ut ipsi qui interfuerant dicto prælio referebant. Natus est Edwardo principi Walliæ et Aquitanniæ filius Edwardus vocatus, qui septimo ætatis suæ anno vitam finivit. Vicesimo septimo die mensis Julii dominus de Cowcy apud Windeshore cum maxima solemnitate duxit in uxorem Isabellam filiam regis Angliæ. Eodemque anno capta est civitas Alexandria per regem Cipriæ, perempta ibidem magna multitudine paganorum; quod illi ægre ferentes surrexerunt contra eum in multitudine glomerosa: ipse vero cernens sibi periculum imminere, consumpta igne magna parte civitatis, divitiis immensis ditatus, cum suis abscessit post quartum diem captionis: species vero propter hoc diu fuerant cariores. Hoc anno decessit Simon de Isselep, archiepiscopus Cantuariensis, vir utique Deo devotus; cui successit frater Simon Langham, episcopus Eliensis, provisione papæ. Eodem anno Burdegaliæ natus est domino Edwardo principi secundus filius suus, Ricardus vocatus, quem Ricardus rex Armoricorum de sacro fonte levavit Hic autem Ricardus, mortuo patre suo, Edwardo tertio avo suo, in regnum Angliæ, anno ætatis suæ undecimo, hæreditarie ac etiam voto populi successit. Circa istud tempus ad jussum domini regis Edwardi redditis regi Angliæ castris et villis

Hor. p. 202.

per magnam comitivam in Francia diu possessis, dominus Bertrandus Cleykyn, miles belligerosus et quietis impatiens, contra dominum Petrum regem Hispaniæ cum magna parte præfatæ comitivæ processit ad dejiciendum eum de regno suo, fretus auxilio et favore domini papæ, eo quod ad aures domini papæ pervenerat eum pessimam vitam duxisse; qui timore percussus fugit in Vasconiam ad dominum principem pro subsidio habendo ab eo. Quo fugato Henricus frater ejus bastardus assensu majoris partis Hispaniæ et ope illius terribilis comitivæ in regem Hispaniæ est levatus et coronatus.

Hog. p. 203. Obiit dominus Willelmus Edington episcopus Wintoniensis; cui successit per electionem dominus Willelmus de Wikham ad procurationem domini regis Edwardi, cujus tamen electionem dominus papa per annum et ultra certis de causis distulit confirmare.

Cap. XLIX.

Hog. p. 203. Tertio die Aprilis in lato campo juxta villam de Nasor in Hispania commissum est bellum fortissimum inter dominum principem Edwardum et Henricum Hispaniæ intrusorem: cessit victoria Deo favente domino principi, unde plures nobiles ex parte Hiberorum erant capti, et ad septem millia ferro et aqua occisi; inter alios capti erant ibidem comes de Deen et Bertrandus Kleykyn, qui erat principalis fautor ex parte dicti intrusoris et dux primæ aciei. Post hoc princeps illustris prædictus præfatum dominum Petrum restituit in regnum suum, qui postea dolo sæpedicti intrusoris in mensa jugulatus occubuit. Post istam vero victoriam multi strenui et nobiles de Anglia fluxu ventris et aliis diversis infirmitatibus perierunt. Eodem anno, in principio mensis

Maii, papa Urbanus quintus de Avinionia cum tota curia sua transtulit se versus Romam, ubi circa festum Sancti Lucæ evangelistæ applicuit, summoque honore ab omnibus est receptus; cujus præsentia eo magis in Hog, p. 20
populo canebatur lætitia quia a tempore Bonefacii octavi nullus eorum nisi ipse ibidem visus fuerat. Statim loca sancta collapsa et ecclesias dirutas reparavit, reliquias sanctorum auro, argento ac gemmis prætiosis splendide adornavit, multa quoque alia bona ibi fecit, propter quæ pia opera memoriale suum in sæculum erit in laude. Hoc anno mense Martii visa est stella cometa inter partes septentrionales et occidentales, versus Franciam suos radios porrigens. Mense Aprilis Leonellus filius regis Edwardi et dux Clarenciæ cum electa multitudine Anglicorum nobilium, transivit versus Mediolanum ad ducendum filiam Galias in conjugem, cum qua haberet medietatem dominii Mediolani: tandem matrimonio inter eos gloriose celebrato, ipse dux circa festum Nativitatis beatæ Mariæ diem clausit extremum. Eodem anno mense Octobris Simon Langham, archiepiscopus Cantuariensis, creatus est in cardinalem, et sequenti anno mense Aprilis versus curiam profectus est; unde papa transtulit magistrum Willelmum Witlisheye, episcopum tunc Wigorniensem, ad ecclesiam Cantuariensem et magistrum Willelmum Reed in episcopum Cicestrensem promovit. Eodemque anno Francigenæ pacem fregerunt, equitantes super terram regis Angliæ in comitatu de Pontif; castella, oppida, villas Hog, p. 206.
et munitiones obtinuerunt, homines vero quosdam occiderunt et quosdam ceperunt; causam tamen fractionis pacis Anglicis cautelose et subdole imponebant. Obiit ducissa Lancastriæ, filia Henrici quondam ducis Lancastriæ, et in ecclesia Sancti Pauli Londoniæ honorifice sepelitur. Circa finem mensis Maii rex Edwardus

tenuit parliamentum apud Westmonasterium, in quo tractavit de rupto fœdere inter ipsum et regem Franciæ et qualiter posse se super injuria sibi illata melius vindicare. Hoc anno fuit magna pestilentia hominum et grossorum animalium, ac per inundationes aquarum sequebatur grandis damnificatio bladi, in tantum quod proximo anno sequenti modius frumenti pro quadraginta denariis vendebatur. Regina Angliæ Philippa, mulier nobilissima, obiit, quæ apud Westmonasterium honorifice humatur. Eodem anno magister Henricus Percy Norwicensis, magister Lodowicus Carlton Herefordensis, et dominus Johannes Graunson Exoniensis episcopi obierunt; quibus auctoritate apostolica magister Willelmus Curteneye ad Herfordensem, magister Henricus Despenser ad Norwychensem, et dominus Thomas Brantingham favore litterarum dicti regis ad
Hog, p. 206. Exoniensem ecclesias successerunt. Circa festum Nativitatis sancti Baptistæ, dux Lancastriæ et comes Herefordiæ, magna militum caterva stipati, in Franciam transfretarunt, ubi modicum suæ famæ sive gloriæ addiderunt, nam gens exercitus Francorum super montem vocatum Chalkhull, et exercitus Anglorum juxta montem prædictum, longo tempore jacuerunt. Quidam valentes ex Anglicis bellum fore cum Francigenis decreverunt, sed dicti domini hoc ratum habere noluerunt quovis modo. Igitur cum innotuit Francigenis de adventu comitis Warwici, antequam ad terram veniret, relictis tentoriis suis cum victualibus, in fugam latenter sunt conversi. Comes vero ad terram applicans cum suis versus Normanniam properavit, insulam de Caws ferro et igne vastavit; sed heu! in redeundo versus Angliam apud Caleys morbo pestilentiali occumbens talem tantæque industriæ militem post se non reliquit. Fovebat vero hoc tempore ecclesia

Romana guerram contra dominos Mediolani, quia injuste terras, redditus et castella de patrimonio beati Petri longo tempore occuparunt; contra quos ex parte ecclesiæ dominus le Despencer arma gerebat, et laudabiliter in illis partibus post mortem ducis Clarenciæ, cum quo ad fines illas pervenerat, diu se habuit. Quo in tempore floruit ille famosus miles natione Anglicus dominus Johannes Haukewode, habens secum illam Albam Comitivam superius notatam, quæ nunc contra ecclesiam, nunc contra præfatos dominos bella fovebat, et multa magna mirabilia ibi operatus est cum suis. Circa Conversionem sancti Pauli rex Edwardus, expletis sumptuosis exequiis circa sepulturam reginæ Philippæ uxoris suæ, tenuit parliamentum apud Westmonasterium, in quo petuntur a clero decimæ triennales: clerus vero distulit illas concedere usque post Pascha, et tunc bene consenserunt, sic quod in tribus annis forent certis terminis persolvendæ; consimiliter a laicis triennalis quinta decima fuit concessa. Hoc anno strenuus miles et sapiens dominus Johannes Chaundos in Vasconia erat ab hostibus interfectus. Hoc anno quasi in principio rex Edwardus, sinistro usus consilio, magnam summam pecuniæ a prælatis, dominis, mercatoribus et aliis divitibus mutuavit, dicens quod in defensione ecclesiæ et regni illud expenderet; nihil tamen inde profecit; verum circa Nativitatem sancti Johannis Baptistæ rex Edwardus magnum exercitum collegit de regni validissimis, inter quos fuerunt aliqui domini, scilicet dominus Fitzwater, dominus Graunson et alii valentes milites, quibus præfecit dominum Robertum Knolles, militem in bellicis actibus valde expertum, volens ut ejus regimine omnia agerentur. Tandem in regnum Franciæ pervenerunt, et quamdiu in unitate insimul permanserant Francigenæ

Hog, p. 207.

Hog, p. 207.

Hog, p. 208.

in illos irruere non audebant: demum circa principium hyemis propter invidiam et cupiditatem inter eos orta dissensione, in diversas turmas se improbe diviserunt. Robertus vero Knolles cum suis in quoddam castellum Britanniæ se tutavit; Francigenæ quoque in alioss ic divisos, nec tutis locis bene munitos, acriter irruentes, omnes pro majori parte aut occidunt aut captivos secum adducunt. Urbanus papa de Roma rediit Avinionæ ea de causa, ut reges Angliæ et Franciæ aliquo modo pacificaret, et pacem inter eos in perpetuum stabiliret; sed, proh dolor! ante opus inceptum morte præventus, primo die Decembris ibidem ad tempus in ecclesia cathedrali juxta magnum altare,
Hog, p. 209. transacto unius anni spatio ossa ejus erant de terra levata, et in abbatia Sancti Victoris juxta Marsiliam, ubi quondam abbas extiterat, deportata sepulturæ traduntur, et in utroque loco fiunt ad laudem Dei immensa miracula, divina clementia cooperante; cui successit Gregorius XI., diaconus cardinalis prius Petrus Roger nuncupatus. Civitas Lemovicensis rebellavit contra principem, sicut cæteræ civitates in Aquitannia, propter graves exactiones et alia per prædictum principem quodammodo importabilia eis imposita, unde
Hog, p. 209. ab ipso divertebant, et se regi Franciæ reddiderunt. Quare exasperatus in redeundo versus Angliam duris oppugnationibus et insultibus illam expugnavit, et solotenus fere destruxit, viventes in ea occidit et cepit. Ipse vero propter quandam infirmitatem quam incurrebat, et propter defectum pecuniæ unde rebellantibus resistere non valebat, ad Angliam festinavit, et circa principium mensis Januarii cum uxore et familia ibidem applicuit, relinquens post se in Vasconia ducem
Hog, p. 210. Lancastriæ et dominum Edmundum comitem Cantebrigiæ, cum aliis viris nobilibus utique bellicosis.

Hoc anno ad nutum domini regis Edwardi venit rex Navarræ ad eum apud Claringdon, ad tractandum cum eo super certis tangentibus guerram suam, dimissis pro eo in Normannia obsidibus usque ad redditum suum illuc; sed rex jure obtinere non potuit quod ab eo petebat: dictus rex ad sua rediit magnis donariis honoratus. Circa principium mensis Martii celebrato parliamento apud Westmonasterium, rex petiit a clero subsidium L. millia librarum, quod, sub deliberatione et convocatione cleri facta, fuit concessum a populo laicali. In isto parliamento ad petitionem dominorum, in odium ecclesiæ, amoti sunt cancellarius, thesaurarius, ac clericus de privato sigillo et loco eorum sæculares fuerant subrogati. Durante parliamento venerunt Londoniæ solemnes ambassiatores missi a domino papa ad tractandum cum domino rege de pace, cupiens, ut asseruit, sui prædecessoris exsequi voluntatem; sed profecto nullus ex hoc sequebatur effectus.

Cap. L.

Nono die mensis Junii rex Edwardus tenuit parliamentum apud Wintoniam, et duravit octo dies; ad quod de clero citati fuerunt quatuor episcopi et quatuor abbates duntaxat: factum fuit parliamentum propter mercatores Londoniæ, Norwici, et alios de locis diversis in aliquibus diffamatos, scilicet quod contra regem voluerunt rebellare. Hoc anno dux Lancastriæ, et comes Cantebrigiæ frater ejus, de Vasconia in Angliam reversi, acceperunt sibi uxores, filias scilicet Petri quondam regis Hispaniæ, dux vero majorem et comes minorem. Missi sunt duo cardinales a latere papæ, scilicet cardinales Anglicus et Parisiensis, ad tractandum de pace inter regna duo: unde ambo in sua provincia existentes

Hog, p. 211.

diu ibidem et in locis vicinis hinc inde tractabant; tandem acceptis procurationibus versus curiam absque pacis effectu iter arripuerunt. Quo quidem anno erat bellum navale inter Anglos et Flandrenses; vicerunt Anglici, et viginti quinque naves sale onustas ceperunt, homines occidentes et submergentes, inscii quod de partibus illis
Hog, p. 211. fuissent; et profecto multa mala inde contigissent nisi pax inter eos citius reformata fuisset. Eodem anno Franci obsederunt villam de Rochel, unde comes de
Hog, p. 212. Penbrok missus erat in Vasconiam cum multitudine armatorum ad dissolvendum obsidionem prædictam, qui sulcantes maria ad portum de Rochel salvi pervenerunt, ubi ante portum intravissent subito ruit in eos classis Hispaniæ quos ad pugnam pro tempore inordinatos in multo discrimine personarum vicerunt Hispani. In isto enim congressu omnes Anglici aut erant capti aut occisi, et quidam ex eis letaliter vulnerati; naves vero eorum Hiberi combusserunt. Igitur captum comitem cum universo thesauro regni Angliæ similiter, et cum multis aliis nobilibus, scilicet in vigilia Nativitatis sancti Johannis Baptistæ, quæ est dies sanctæ Etheldredæ virginis, in Hispaniam adduxerunt. Verum de isto infortunio non est multum mirandum, tum quia comes iste fuit malæ vitæ, utpote publicus adulter, tum quia in quodam parliamento stetit contra jura et libertates ecclesiæ, tum quia etiam suasit regi et ejus consilio ut plus exigeretur ab ecclesia Anglicana quam ab aliis sibi subditis in regno sæcularibus. Et quia rex et cæteri de consilio ejus perversam contra ecclesiasticos opinionem potius acceptarunt sequi quam jura ecclesiastica defendere et tueri, per multa tempora postea contra hostes suos pejorem manum fortuna
Hog, p. 213. sinistrante ut antea reportarunt. Eodemque anno rex Edwardus cum magno exercitu mare intravit ad remo-

vendum obsidionem de Rochel; sed ventus contrarius non permisit eum longius a terra recedere; aliquamdiu prope litus maris commorans ventum prosperum exspectavit, sed nondum venit; deinde cum suis ad terram veniens illico ventus per partes contrarias se convertit. Dux Lancastriæ cum magno exercitu in Franciam usque Burdegale, absque Gallorum resistentia qualicumque, modicumque eis damnum inferre permisit, redemptionem a diversis locis et villis accepit, et quiete sic ab eis decessit. Eodem anno misit rex Angliæ certos ambassiatores domino papæ, rogans eum ut super reservationibus beneficiorum in curia sua factis in Anglia supersederet, ut etiam electi ad episcopales dignitates suis electionibus pleno jure gauderent, et ut a suis metropolitanis, prout antiquitus fieri solebat, iidem electi valeant confirmari. De his et aliis regem et regnum tangentibus receptis responsis, injunxit ei papa quod super hujus responsis primo certiorarent eum de voluntate regis et regni litteris suis antequam super præmissis articulis aliquid determinaret. Eodemque anno obierunt Johannes archiepiscopus Eboracensis, et Johannes Eliensis et Willelmus Wigorniensis episcopi; quibus successerunt auctoritate papali magister Alexander Nevyle ad Eboracensem, et Thomas de Arundell ad Eliensem, et dominus Henricus Wakefeld ad Wygorniensem ecclesias; quo in tempore decretum erat in parliamento quod ecclesiæ cathedrales suis electionibus congauderent, et quod rex de cætero contra electos non scriberet, sed per litteras suas ad eorum confirmationes juvaret. Hoc autem statutum in nullo profecit. In isto autem parliamento concessa fuerat domino regi una decima per clerum et una quintadecima per laicum populum. Circa ista tempora tota Aquitannia præter Burdegale et Bayoniam contra regem Angliæ rebellavit,

Hog, p. 214.

Hog, p. 215.

et ad regem Franciæ se divertit. Quinto die mensis Junii obiit magister Johannes Wytlysey, archiepiscopus Cantuariensis, unde monachi ejusdem ecclesiæ cardinalem Anglicum in archiepiscopum postularunt; qua de causa rex offensus proposuit dictos monachos exlegasse; plura vero expenderunt antequam regis gratiam habuerunt, sed revera postulationi factæ de cardinali rex noluit assentire, sed nec papa nec etiam cardinales. Circa principium mensis Augusti apud Brugges fuit tractatum super diversis articulis pendentibus inter papam et regem Angliæ; duravit iste tractatus fere duobus annis; tandem concordatum est inter eos quod papa de cætero reservationibus beneficiorum minime uteretur, et quod rex beneficia per breve vocatum 'Quare impedit'
Hog, p. 216. ulterius non conferret; sed de electionibus superius tactis nihil actum est, et hoc ascribitur quibusdam clericis qui sperabant se potius per curiam Romanam quam per electiones ad dignitates episcopales quas ambierant posse promoveri. Hoc etiam anno, circa festum Purificationis beatæ Mariæ, convenerunt apud Brugges ex utroque regno nobiles et valentes ad tractandum de pace inter duo regna. Duravitque iste tractatus per duos annos cum magnis sumptibus utriusque partis, tandem recesserunt absque pacis effectu. Quarto nonas Maii vacante adhuc archiepiscopatu, translatus est ad sedem Cantuariensem magister Simon de Sudbury, Londoniensis episcopus; ad Londoniensem vero ecclesiam translatus est episcopus de Herford, magister Willelmus Courteney; et ad Herford translatus est frater Johannes Gilberd de ordine Prædicatorum, postea Bangorensis episcopus. Hoc quoque tempore in quodam tractatu de pace concessæ erant treugæ inter duo regna a festo sancti Johannis Baptistæ usque ad idem festum anni sequentis. Circa principium mensis Aprilis dux Bri-

tanniæ cum comitibus, baronibus et nobilibus Angliæ transfretavit in Britanniam [v] prospere se habuisset, Hog. p. 217.
ubi dictæ treugæ tam cito captæ illos impedivissent. Eo tempore insula de Constantyn, in qua situatur castrum Sancti Salvatoris, diu a Francigenis oppugnata et obsessa, eis redditur cum pertinentiis, in non modicum regni Angliæ detrimentum. Hoc etiam anno erant calores nimii et pestilentia prægrandis tam in Anglia quam in aliis diversis mundi partibus inolevit. Obiit Hog. p. 217.
dominus Edwardus le Despenser, probus miles et audax, et in ecclesia monachorum Teukesbury honeste traditur sepulturæ. Durante ista pestilentia dominus papa ad instantiam cardinalis Anglici concessit omnibus decedentibus in Anglia qui de peccatis suis contriti fuerunt et confessi plenam remissionem per duas bullas sex mensibus duraturas. Hoc quoque anno comes de Penbroke per Bertrandum de Cleykyn redemptus, inter Parisium et Caleys itinerando versus Angliam, die sanctæ Etheldredæ virginis, quam ut dicebatur multipliciter offenderat, diem suum clausit extremum. Mense Novem- Hog. p. 218.
bris occurrerunt apud villam de Brugges dux Lancastriæ et dux Andegaviæ, cum aliis dominis et prælatis utri usque regni, ad tractandum de pace.

Cap. LI.

In principio mensis Maii fecit rex Edwardus parlia- Hog. p. 218.
mentum maximum apud Westmonasterium celebrari, in quo more solito a communitate quoddam subsidium petiit sibi concedi pro defensione sui et regni; sui sed regni communes respondentes quotidie se super talibus exactionibus aggravatos, nec tale onus diu posse ferre dicebant. Nam liquido eis constat regem pro defensione sui et regni sufficienter habere si regnum foret bene et

fideliter gubernatum; sed quod quamdiu tale regimen per malos officiarios in regno haberetur, nequaquam copia rerum aut divitiis possit abundare. Hic itaque et alia se offerebant certissime probaturos; et si post probationem hujusmodi repertum esset regem ulterius indigere, ipsum libenter juxta eorum facultates juvarent. Postea vero publicata fuerunt multa mala de duce Lancastriæ, et de diversis aliis officiariis jugiter, et potissime de domino de Latymer ipsius camerarii, super
Hog, p. 219. pessima gubernatione regis et regni: tandem de quadam Alicia Perreys inibi multum tractabatur super hujus maleficiis quæ per eam et ejus fautores ubique in regno fiebant. Rex enim per multa tempora eam tenuerat in concubinam, unde liberius potuisset, feminea fragilitate pensata, ad tam immania et nefaria declinare. Igitur omnes tales a regio contuburnio regni communitas petiit amoveri, et viros nobiles approbatos in loco eorum proinde subrogari. Erat namque inter illos de communitate quidam miles sapiens et facundus nomine Petrus de Lamare, in cujus ore sententia omnium dependebat. Hic vero quia contra prædictam Aliciam et alios quosdam de consilio regis quædam enormia vera-
Hog, p. 219. citer in publicum deduxisset, multum confidens in hac materia de supportatione et favore domini principis ;. sed eo cito post mortuo, ad instantiam præfatæ mulieris
Hog, p. 220. perpetuo carceri adjudicatur, in quo per biennium manebat. Sexto idus Julii, durante parliamento in palatio regis apud Westmonasterium, mortuus est princeps Walliæ, primogenitus regis Edwardi, videlicet in die Sanctæ Trinitatis; ob cujus reverentiam quolibet anno eo die, ubicumque foret in orbe terrarum, maximam sollemnitatem consueverat celebrare; cujus fortunam militiæ tanquam alterius [Hectoris][1] omnes gentes tam Christiani

[1] Added from Hog.

quam pagani dum vixit sanus plurimum formidabant. Corpus ejus in ecclesia Christi Cantuariensi honorifice sepelitur. Hoc etiam anno circa principium mensis Junii homines et tenentes comites Warwyci contra abbatem et conventum de Evesham et eorum tenentes maliciose insurrexerunt, et abbatiam et villam destruere moliebantur; homines vero eorum verberantes vulnerarunt, quosdam vero interfecerunt; denique accedentes ad maneria eorum clausturas parcorum fregerunt et combusserunt, feras occiderunt; capita vivariorum frangentes aquas excurrere fecerunt, pisces ceperunt et secum asportaverunt, sicque damna plurima perpetrarunt; et revera dictam abbatiam cum suis membris, prout verisimile videbatur, finaliter destruxisse, nisi rex manus adjutrices citius apposuisset. Igitur misit rex litteras suas ad comitem prædictum, præcipiendo ut hujusmodi malefactores ac pacis perturbatores omnino compesceret, et iterum mediantibus dominis et amicis pax inter eos est reformata. Propter istam brigam, ut dicebatur, rex per ipsos dominos in parliamento constitutos noluit gubernari, sed filium suum ducem Lancastriæ ad sui regni regimen reassumpsit, qui usque ad regis mortem sic stetit. Eodem etiam anno, statim post festum Purificationis beatæ Mariæ celebrato apud Westmonasterium parliamento, in quo rex quoddam subsidium a clero postulavit, unde tunc tale subsidium erat sibi concessum, videlicet, ut perciperet a qualibet laica persona utriusque sexus quatuordecim annos excedente quatuor denarios, exceptis notorie pauperibus mendicantibus; et de qualibet persona ecclesiastica duodecim denarios, et de singulis non promotis quatuor denarios, exceptis fratribus quatuor ordinum mendicantium. Circa ista tempora viguit in universitate Oxoniensi quidam magister Johannes Wiclyf, scholaris, doctor in theologia, tenens

Hog, p. 221.

publice in scholis et alibi conclusiones erroneas et hære-
Hog, p. 222. ticas ac statui universalis ecclesiæ contrarias et absurdas, et præcipue primo contra monachos et alios religiosos possessionatos, et postea contra prælatos et etiam mendicantes; et ut suam hæresim contra insultantes fortius
Hog, p. 222. et latius propalaret, ascivit sibi comites unius sectæ simul in Oxonia habitantes, longis vestibus de russeto indutos, nudis pedibus incedentes, hujusmodi errores in populo ventilantes, et palam in eorum sermonibus prædicantes.[1]

[1] Here B. leaves off abruptly near the top of the first column of the last folio but one. No colophon.

The Continuation as given by Hog occupies about five pages more of his text, and treats of Wiclif's opinions and their condemnation, of an insult offered to the bishop of London by the duke of Lancaster, of the creation of Richard of Bordeaux prince of Wales, and of Edward III.'s death and character.

APPENDIX.

*** *This is the remainder of MS. Harl.* 2261, *and the marginal references are to the* CHRONICON ANGLIÆ *and* WALSINGHAM'S HISTORY *as printed in this Series. See note, p.* 339.

Capitulum quadragesimum.[1]

Chron. Angliæ, p. 12. EDMUND, sonne of kynge Edwarde geten of Philippa his f. 390 a. qwene, was borne in this yere at Langeleye, in the nones of Junius. Kynge Edwarde saylede in this yere unto Briteyne, receyvynge afore homage of Iohn Mountefort, the tru heire of the lesse Briteyne, where kynge Edwarde conquerede mony townes and castells. After that, he toke and segede the towne C. A., 13. of Vanes, and thauȝhe þe kynge of Fraunce come with a grete hoste to ȝiffe batell to hym; and truse taken, the seide towne remaynede subjecte to the kynge of Ynglonde. In whiche yere a generalle chapitre of blake monkes was hade at Northampton in the navitivite of oure Lady, Thomas Heule abbot of Westemynstre, Michael abbot of Seynte Alban, and the prior of Seynte Marye of Yorke, presidentes in that chapitre. Thomas Heule, abbot of Westemynstre, diede, whom Symon Bircheston succedid. The qwene of Ynglonde was delyverede C. A., 19. of a doȝhter, Mary by name, in this yere. Henricus Lancastre, erle of Derby, saylede into Gascoigne in this yere with mony noble men with hym, whiche toke at the firste sawte the cite of Brigerake, and take xj. noble men into captivite, and subduede to the kynge of Ynglonde lvj. noble cites and townes. After that he hade victory of a grete hoste of men of Fraunce commynge ageyne hym at Allebroch, noble men of Fraunce taken þer by hym. Kynge Edwarde entrede C. A., 22. into the see in the feste of the translacioun of seynte Thomas, his men havynge noo knowlege wheder he intended to goe, but he londed by the meanes of a knyȝhte of Harecourte, put in exile by the kynge of Fraunce, at Hogges nye to Sequana, and spoylede the cite of Caane and diverse other, whereby he and his peple were encreasede gretely in rychesse. And in that the kynge off Fraunce hade broken the brigges that the hostes myȝhte not mete to gedre, kynge Edward entrede into Normandy destroyede that cuntre moche towarde Pykardy. After that kynge Edward commynge to Pusian founde the brygge broken, causede hit to be repairede withynne ij. daies. That doen, the erle of Northampton passynge the water of Sequan did sle v^{c} men lettynge the makynge of the brygges. Kynge Edwarde passynge over the water of Sequana towarde f. 390 b Cresey, destroyede the cuntre with the inhabitators of hit, and

[1] Sic, though the preceding chapter is marked 43.

passynge the water of Somme unhurte with alle his hoste, did sle ij. M. men willenge to lette theire passage. After that the lorde Despenser toke manfully the towne of Croteye, iiij.^{c}. men of armes sleyn in hit of men of Fraunce. And in the xxvj. day of the monethe of Auguste kynge Edwarde hade a glorious victory ageyne Philippe kynge of Fraunce, and putte hym to fly3hte at Cresey: the same tyme ij kynges, of Boemia and of Majorica, and the duke of Lotharingia, ij. bischoppes, viij. erles, mony noble lordes, ij. M. kny3htes were sleyne on the parte of the kynge of Fraunce, and commune peple as innumerable. In whiche batelle Philippe kynge of Fraunce was unhorsede ij. tymes by kynge Edward in his awne person, and was full feyne to fle. After that kynge Edwarde taryede by oon yere in segenge the cite of Calys, trowblynge moche men of Ynglonde afore. In whiche yere the xvij. day of Octobre, a grete hoste of the Scottes commyn unto Dirham by the movynge of the kynge of Fraunce, were overcommen by the cleregy of the province of Yorke. In whiche batell David Bruz kynge of Scotlonde was taken, William Douglas, and mony other noble men. Philippe kynge of Fraunce come abowte the feste of seynte Bartholomewe nye to Calese, as to dissolve that sege, but in the morowe he fledde, levynge his tentes fulle of vitells. Men of Calyse perceyvynge that, yeldede that cite to the kynge of Ynglonde, whiche taryenge per and disposynge that cite after his pleasure by a monethe, returnede into Ynglonde, suffrenge grete tempestes on the see, and losynge mony noble men. Insomoche that he compleynte to Mary, moder of Criste, seyenge, "O blessede Mary my "lady, what thynge dothe hit portende that the weder is "feire, the see is quiete in goynge to Fraunce, and that in "returnynge to Ynglonde so mony infortunys succede?" A grete habundaunce of reigne was in this yere that hit reynede in every day or ny3hte from the feste of seynte Iohn Baptiste unto Cristemasse. Whom a grete mortalite and dethe of men folowede thro the worlde, begynnynge from the plages of the sowthe and of the northe, that unnethe the halfe parte of men remayuede on lyve. For in somme religious place ij. men were not lefte of xx^{it}. And a grete derthe of bestes folowede, then the londe was not tyllede, whiche causede the erthe to be bareyne longe after. A kny3hte and secretary to the kynge of Fraunce come to Calys in this yere, the secunde day of Ianuarius, with a grete multitude of armede peple to take the castelle off Calys by treason, after a convencion made betwene hym and the keper of the castelle. Kynge Edwarde herynge that come and taryde at Calys with fewe men secretely. The seide kny3hte sende diverse men to the seide castelle, whiche entrede into hit, a brygge a tre was drawen up that thei cowthe not avoide. And kynge Edwarde goynge furthe of the

C. A., 22.

C. A., 23.

C. A., 24.

C. A., 25.

C. A., 26.

C. A., 27.

f. 391 a.

cite fauȝhte boldely with men off Fraunce, and men of Ynglonde were so occupiede that tyme with theire adversaryes, insomoche that xxx^ti men remaynede not with the kynge.
C. A., 28. The kynge seenge that drawede his swerde, and seide, "Ha seynte Edward, ha seynte George." That seide, mony men of Ynglonde come to hym, and did sle j.^c. men of Fraunce, compellynge the seide knyȝhte to fle with mony other. Maister Iohn Offord, chaunceler of Ynglonde, electe and confermede into the archebischop of Cawnterbery, and not consecrate, dyede in this yere; whom mayster Thomas Bredewardyn succedid by eleccion. Also pope Clemente the vj^te grawntede plenary remission to alle peple dyenge in Ynglonde that grete pestilence endurynge. A grete batelle and soore fauȝhten was hade on the see in this yere nye to Wynchelesey, in the feste of the decollacion of seynte Iohn Baptiste, betwene men of Ynglonde and of Speyne, in so moche þat unnethe eny man escapede from that batelle unhurte. But xxiiij. schippes taken of men of Speyne, the victory was rejoycede by men of Ynglonde by the favor of God. Symon Langham was made abbot of Westemynstre in this yere by eleccion. This man was of suche sapience that he precellede allemoste alle other men in thynges agible. For he was of so grete circumspeccion and policy that unnethe a man cowthe be founde in Ynglonde egalle to hym; whiche enjoyede so mony vertues that the kynge made hym treasurer, and soone after bischop of Ely and chaunceler of Ynglonde, and after that archebischoppe off Cawnterbery. After that the fame of the seide noble man was so gretely encreasede that pope Urban f. 391 b.
the v^the take hym into a cardinalle preste of the title of Seynte Sixte. After that he was made bischop Penestryne by pope Gregory the xij^the; whiche diede at Avinion þe xxij^ti day of the monethe of Iulius, in the yere of oure Lorde a M. ccc. lxxv., and was beryede at the monastery of Goodepasse, whom he founded, and his boones were brouȝhte after to Westemynster.
C. A., 29. The translacion of seynte Thomas, bischop of Herforde, was made in this yere with grete honoure, the kynge, the prince, and mony prelates beynge þer presente, as peple innumerable. This yere was the yere jubile, in whom moche peple wente to Rome for remission of theire synnes. Maister Thomas Bradewardyn, archebischop of Cawnterbery, diede in this yere, whom maister Symon Islep did succede by eleccion. In whiche yere a batelle or conflicte of ij. men was made with ynne the kynges palice at Westemyntre, betwene lorde Iohn Bastarde, broþer of Philippe kynge of Fraunce, and a knyȝhte of Ypres; but the seide lorde Iohn rejoycede the victory. William Edyngton, bischop of Wynchestre and treasurer of Ynglonde, causede a grote to be imprintede, and halfe a grote, to the grete utilite of the kynge, and not of the commune peple; for after that alle

thynges to be solde began to wex moore deere. Clement the vj^the^ diede in the day of Nicholas; and Steven, bischop Ostiense, was electe soone after, and callede Innocencius the vj^te^. In whiche [time] Haymo Attelhethe, bischop of Rochestre, resignede his office to the pope voluntaryly; whom maister Iohn Shepey, prior of the seide place, did succede. Also in the same yere Syr Walter Bentele, kny3hte and keper off Briteyne, hade victory ageyne the marcialle off Fraunce nye to Mauron, peple as innumerable of Fraunce taken and sleyne. In this yere was so grete drynesse þat unnethe from Marche unto the monethe of Iulius eny drope of water did falle, whereby cornes and oþer frutes were destroyede in that yere, insomoche that men and peple of Ynglonde were compellede by necessite to labour for theire fyndynge to other cuntres nye to theym. William duke of Selonde, understondynge that, sende to Ynglonde mony schippes chargede with whete and flowre. Henricus, erle of Derbey and off Lancastre, was made duke of Lancastre in this yere, and Rawfe, lorde of Stafforde, erle of Stafforde. A grete discorde and treason in maner was hade in this yere betwene men of Oxenforde and scolers, ffor the seide men of Oxenforde gedrenge a grete multitude of peple of townes nye to theyme, did sle mony of the scolers, and wounded mony, and at the laste thei toke theire goodes and compellede theyme to avoide the universite, wherefore Oxenforde was putte under interdicte by a longe space. But at the laste, pease was reformede by the meanes of the frendes of the scolers in this wise, that the citesynnes of Oxenforde whiche causede that discorde bynde theyme for ever moore that thei scholde behave theyme honestely as to the scolers, and that the chawnceller scholde obteyne alle the governaunce of the universite. Also a concorde and an othe was made betwene the kynges of Ynglonde and of Fraunce, so that seales were not putte to wrytynges indentede that the kynge of Ynglonde scholde have alle londes of the duchery off Aquitanny usurpede unto that tyme by the kynge of Fraunce. Soe that the kynge of Ynglonde scholde dimitte and resigne to the kynge of Fraunce alle hys ry3hte and clayme that he hade unto the realme of Fraunce. Wherefore solenne messangers were sende from kynge Edwarde unto the pope for this accorde to be inbullede, and these were messangers: Henricus the noble duke of Lancastre, Ricardus erle of Arundell, William bischop of Norwyche, and Guido Brian kny3hte. But that acorde and convencion was made voide by meanes and fraude of the pope. Wherefore kynge Edwarde instaurede a batelle, and entrede into the realme off Fraunce with a regalle hoste; whiche herynge that Berwyke was taken by the Scottes, returnede to Ynglonde and delyverede Berwyk from Scottes. Tweyne freres of Minors were brente the thrydde fery in the weeke of

C. A., 30.

C. A., 31.

C. A., 30.

C. A., 31.

f. 392 a.

C. A., 32.

C. A., 31.

C. A., 34.

Pentecoste at Avinon for erroneus oppinions as hit semede
C. A., 34. to the pope and to the cardinalls. Edward, the firste sonne of kynge Edwarde, saylede into Gascoigne in the same yere, abowte the nativite of oure Lady, with mony erles, noble men and archers, to recure the londes whom þe kynge of Fraunce usurpede of the duchery of Aquitanny. Where he taryenge fully by oon yere with owte batelle, toke diverse noble cites in the meane tyme, as Narbona and Carcasona, and destroyede mony other cites. But this seide Edwarde in the xx^ti day of f. 392 b. the monethe of September, goynge with the duke of Lancastre in the Lesse Briteyne from the sege of the cite Berenense longynge to the duchery of Aquitanny over the water of Ligeris, mette Iohn kynge of Fraunce with a myȝty hoste. But the seide kynge of Fraunce was taken þer, and was brouȝhte to Burdegale, a cite of Gascoigne, where he taryede unto the feste of Pentecoste nexte folowynge.

Capitulum quadragesimum primum.

C. A., 37. Wals. Hist., i. 283. Edwarde sonne of kynge Edward the thrydde after þe conqueste, returnede in this yere into Ynglonde, abowte þe feste of Pentecoste, with Iohn kynge of Fraunce, taken in captivite. And soone after ij. cardinalls were sende from the pope to make acorde betwene the kynges of Ynglonde and of Fraunce, whiche taryenge in Ynglonde by oon yere complete, the thrydde cardinalle come to comforte the kynge off Fraunce, and taryede at London with the other cardinalls. David le Bruȝ, kynge of Scotlonde, was delyverede in this yere, abowte the feste of Alle Seyntes, kepede in holde by xj. yere, a grete summe of goode payede afore to the kynge for his rawnson. In whiche yere a grete hoste entrede into Fraunce, callede peple withowte a governoure, whiche trowblede soore the realme of Fraunce.
C. A., 38. Isabel, moder of kynge Edward the thridde, diede in this yere the xxvj. day of the monethe of Auguste, and was beryede in the churche of the freres Minours at London. The interdicte fulminate into lay men of Oxenforde for the dethe of scolers was releischede in this yere. A grete contraversy spronge this yere in the cowrte of Rome, betwene Armachanus, archeC. A., 39. bischop of Yrlonde, and beggynge frers. Also grete hurte was made in Briteyne and Normandy by Philippe broþer of the kynge of Navarria, Iames lorde of the Pype, Roberte Knolles, and mony oþer men of Ynglonde, withowte commaundemente of the kynge of Ynglonde. Kynge Edwarde causede the feste of seynte George to be kepede with grete solennite at WyndeC. A., 40. shore in this yere. Edwarde sonne of kynge Edwarde, prince of Wales, saylede to Caleys with the duke of Lancastre, and allemoste with alle other noble men of the realme, and kynge Edwarde come to þe same cite soone after, abowte the feste of f. 393 a.

Alle Seyntes; after that bryngynge his hoste unto Burguyn and Campany, taryenge per unto the Annunciation of oure Lady folowynge. And soone after men of Normandy entrede into Ynglonde at Winchelesey with fewe schippes in the idus of Marche, and toke that towne, and did sle diverse men in hit, and brente parte of that towne; but thei were compellede to take theire schippes, mony of theym sleyne and drownede by Ynglische men. Kynge Edward made moche noble edifyenge at the castelle of Wyndeshore, where he was borne, William Wikham movynge hym perto, whom the kynge hade made supervisor of his werkes of a poore clerke, and alle edifienges longynge to the kynge were disposede after hym. The kynge ȝaffe to the seide Sir William Wikham mony fatte benefices, and made hym to bere his prive sele, and after bischop of Wynchestre. Bloode flowede from the tumbe of Thomas somme tyme erle of Lancastre at Powntefrette, and mony noble men diede in the kynges hoste: the erle of Oxenforde, Iohn Gray, George Say, with mony other men. Truse taken betwene the kynge of Ynglonde and men of Fraunce, kynge Edwarde returnynge to Ynglonde suffrede grete losse of goodes and of men by a tempeste in the see, nye to Paryse, causede in the viij^the^ day after Ester. And abowte the feste of Lammasse folowynge Armachanus and the frers seasede of theire contraversy by precepte of the pope. Armachanus diede in this yere at Avinon, the boones of whom were brouȝhte after unto Dundalke in Yrlonde, where he was borne, by whom mony miracles be schewed per unto the lawde of Godde. In whiche tyme the prince of Wales, the duke of Lancastre, and mony other noble men of the londe wente with the kynge of Fraunce to Caleys for pease to be reformede; and an othe made for pease to be kepede of bothe partes, the kynges departede into theire cuntrees abowte the feste of seynte Michell nexte folowynge. And messangers were sende soone after to the pope for that acorde to be imbullede and confermede. After that a collacion made of the concorde betwene þe kynges in the parliament at Westemynstre, the noble men of the realme consente perto. Wherefore masse seide of the Trinite by the archebischop of Cawnterbery, the kynge presente with his sonnes, causede the gentylle men of the realme of Ynglonde
f. 393 b. and of Fraunce, whiche hade made noon othe at Caleys, to swere by that blissede sacramente to observe that convencion and pease made. Reynalde bischop of Worchestre, Michael bischop of London, and Thomas bischop of Hely, diede in this yere; and by provision of the pope, maister Iohn Barnet was made bischoppe off Worcestre, Symon Langham bischop of Hely, and maister Symon Sudbury bischop of London. Edwarde prince of Wales maryede to his wife the cowntesse of Kente, doȝhter of Thomas Holonde, whiche was departede

C. A., 40.

C. A., 41.

C. A., 48.

C. A., 49.

C. A., 50.

from the erle of Salisbery for the luffe of þe seide prynce.

C. A., 49. Also the eclips of the sonne was in this yere the vj^te day of Maii, in the myddes of the day, whom a grete dryenesse did folowe, causynge a grete derthe of hay and corne. Reyne lyke to bloode felle in Burguyn in this yere, and the crosse of Criste of the coloure of bloode apperede in the aiere in Bolony, from morow unto the vj^the howre, whiche movede hyt selfe, moche peple seenge that mervayle, and felle in the myddes of the see. In whiche yere in the tyme of ver ij. castells apperede in the firmament, bothe in Ynglonde and in Fraunce, from whom ij. hostes wente, oon hoste clothede in white, an oper in blak. And in the firste batell the white hoste hade victory, and after that the blacke hoste gedred to gedre have victory of the white; that doen thei entrede into theire castells and evaneschede. A

C. A., 50. grete mortalite of men was in this yere in Ynglonde, and specially of male peple, in whiche tyme mony noble prelates dyede, somme names of whom we schalle expresse, thauȝhe we make not mencion of theyme alle: Henricus duke of Yorke, Reynald Cobham, William the son of Warinus, noble men. Iohn Gaunt, sonne of kynge Edward, was made in this yere duke of Lancastre, by reason of his wife, doȝhter and heire to

Wals. Hist., i. 295. Henricus duke of Lancastre. A grete companye of diverse nacions, the governours of whom were men of Ynglonde, nevertheless thei were callede an hoste with owte an hedde, wastede Fraunce gretely þis tyme, and occupiede mony townes and castells in hit, and the kynge of Fraunce cowthe not expelle þeim from that cuntre by eny cautele or batelle. Also an other white hoste apperede in this yere, whiche wente by Provincia into Longobardy, takynge grete raunson of cites, castells, and of f. 394 a. townes, the governoures of whom were men of Ynglonde, also otherwhile sawdiours and operwhile ȝiffen to robbynge and ex-

C. A., 50. torcion, whiche men taryede longe in those costes. A myȝhty wynde commynge from the sowthe was in this yere in the xv. day of Ianuarius, so fers that hit destroyed anoon mony towres, churche steples, and oper edifyenges semynge as durable, so that the residu stondynge unto this tyme be the wurs perby. Of whom a metricion seythe in this wise:

"C ter erant mille decies sex unus et ille,
"Luce tua, Maure, vehemens fuit impetus auræ."

An other metricion seithe in this maner:

"Ecce flat hoc anno Maurus in orbe tonans."

This is the intellect of the versus: that this mervellous wynde was in the yere of oure Lorde God a M. ccc. lxj., in the feste of seynte Maurus abbotte; whiche is tru after the computacion of the churche of Ynglonde, but the cotacion afore is tru after the computacion of the churche of Rome, put in the margyn above. Symon Langham, abbot of Westemynstre, was made bischop

of Hely in this yere. Kynge Edwarde ȝafe in this yere to Westemynstre vestementes in the feste of Petyr and Paule, in whom seynte Petyr usede to say masse. Edwarde, the eldeste [1] of this kynge, made homage to the kynge of Fraunce for the cuntre of Aquitanny, promysynge to hym fidelite, in whiche yere he saylede into Gascoigne with his wife and his childer and goodes. Also kynge Edwarde made in that yere Leonelle his sonne duke of Clarence, and Iohn duke of Lancaster, and Edmunde, the iiij. sonne, erle of Cawntebrigge. Innocencius the vj^the diede in this yere, whom Urban þe v^te succedid, a man of grete connynge, whiche made a constitucion ageyne men havynge pluralites of benefices in the secunde yere of his office, but clerkes thro the favor of lordes, what by labor, preyer, and by money, causede that the seide constitucion toke noon effecte. Also hit was ordeynede in the parliamente in this yere that men of lawe scholde plete in theire moder langage. Also wickede men dividede the body of a preste in London in this yere, whiche partes thei caste with grete contempte in diverse places of the cite, but those men cowthe not be knowen unto this tyme. The noble fame of kynge Edwarde and of his realme sprouge thro mony costes, thre kynges come to hym in this yere to see hym and to have communicacion with hym, the kynge of Fraunce, the kynge of Ciprus, and the kynge of Scotlonde. Tweyne of theyme, rewardede with grete treasures, departede to theire cuntre, but the kynge of Fraunce, laborynge in grete infirmite, taryede in Ynglonde. Raufe Shrovesbery, bischop of Bathe, a man of hie perfeccion, dyede in this yere. Then maister Iohn Barnette, bischop of Worcester, was translate to the seete of Bathe, and maister W. Withlesey from Rochestre to the seete of Worcestre, and maister Thomas Trikkell was confermede to the seete of Rowchestre. A grete forste was in this yere, contynuynge longe from the feste of seynte Andrewe unto the xiiij. kalendes of Apryle. In whiche tyme abbot of þe monastery de Bello, commynge to London, mette a man dampnede, goynge to be hongede, whom he salvede from dethe by vertu of his liberte. Also a grete batelle an dedely was hade in this yere in Briteyne at Davaroy, betwen lorde Iohn Mowntefort and lorde Charls of Bloys; but the seide lorde Iohn hade victory by helpe of men of Ynglonde, in whiche batelle the seide lorde Charles was sleyne with oþer peple as innumerable, and taken. Iohn kynge of Fraunce diede in this yere at Saveye, for whom kynge Edward procured mony diriges to be seide, and caused hym to be brouȝhte to Dovore by noble men of his costes, whiche was beryede after at Seynte Dionyse in Fraunce; whom Charls his son did succede. In whiche yere Lumbardes were accusede for fals merchandyse

C. A., 51.

C. A., 52.

Wals. Hist., i. 297.

Wals. Hist., i. 298.

f. 394 b.

C. A., 54.

C. A., 55.

[1] Sic in MS.

and measures, wherefore mony of þeim were put in the towre
C. A., 55. tylle thei hade made a fyne with the kynge. Edmund Langley, sonne of the kynge, scholde have mariede the doȝhter of the erle of Flandres, and heire, but þat consanguinite was an impedimente, wherefore messangers were sende to the pope for a dispensacion. But the seide woman was maryede at the laste to Philippe duke of Burguyn, broþer to the kynge of Fraunce. A soore batelle was hade in this yere betwene Cristen men and pagans, on the Alle Halowe day, in the playnes of Turkey, where Iohn kynge of Hungary, Siwardus kynge of Gorgony, maister of the Hospitalle of the yle of Roodes, with oþer v. m. cc. and x. Cristen men were sleyne, and xl^ti m. of the pagans, f. 395 a.
C. A., 56. with oþer peple innumerable. In whiche batelle of the parte of pagans were mony princes, the soldan of Babilony, the kynge of Turkey, the kynge of Baldac, the kynge Belmaryn, the kynge of Tartarous, and the kynge of Lectowe; iij. kynges were sleyne of that parte in the same batelle. Edwarde prince of Wales and of Aquitanny hade a sonne borne to hym in this time, and callede Edwarde, whiche diede in the vij^the yere of his age, and not overtymely, as mony men seide. The lorde Cowey maryede into his wife in this yere at Wyndeshore with grete solemnite, the xxvij^ti day of the monethe of Iulius, Isabel the doȝhter of kynge Edwarde, whiche wolde be maryede oonly for luffe. The cite of Alexandry was taken in the same yere by the kynge of Cipria, sleenge afore a grete multitude of paganes, and soone after a grete hoste of the paganes were gedred to ȝiffe batell to that kynge. Neverthelesse that kynge toke with hym alle the rychesse of that cite as infinite, and brente a grete parte of the cite afore his departynge, whiche
C. A., 58. Wals. Hist., i. 303. causede spice to be dere longe after. Symon Islep, archebischop of Cawnterbery, diede in this yere, whom Symon Langham, bischop of Hely, succedid, and maister Iohn Barnet was translate from the seete of Bathe to Hely, and maister Iohn Harewell
C. A., 57. was confermede into the bischop of Bathe. An oþer sonne was borne to the prince of Wales at Burdews, and namede Ricardus, whom Ricardus kynge of Armorica toke from the fonte. Abowte this tyme mony castelles and townes, occupiede by a grete hoste of Ynglonde, were takyn to the kynge of Fraunce by commaundement of kynge Edward. Wherefore Bertrandus Cleykyn, a noble man of werre, wente ageyne the kynge of Speyne with the seide hoste thro helpe of the pope, in that he was man of ylle disposicion. The kynge of Speyne, dredynge that company, fledde to Gascoigne to prince Edwarde for helpe
C. A., 58. and socoure. This kynge departede from that cuntre, Henricus, a bastarde broþer to hym, was erecte and crownede kynge by assente of mony noble men of Speyne, and of that oþer grete company, whiche were lx. m. in nowmbre. William Edyngton,

f. 395 b. bischop of Wynchestre, dyede in this yere, whom William Wikham did succede by laboure of the kynge; whiche eleccion the pope differrede by a certeyne tyme for certeyne causes. C. A., 58.

Capitulum quadragesimum secundum.

A soore batelle was hade in the thridde day of Aprile nye to the towne of Naser betwene Edward prince of Aquitanny and Henricus Bastarde occupyenge the crowne of Speyne. But fortune favorynge, prince Edward hade victory; amonge whom the erle of Deen was taken, and Bertrandus Cleykyn, chef causer of that trowble and duke or governoure of the firste warde. And after that this noble prynce Edward restorede Petyr kynge of Speyne into his realme, where mony noble men of Ynglonde dyed off the flix. In the same yere, in the begynnynge of the monethe of Maii, pope Urban þe v^the^ come with alle his cowrte from Avinon to Rome, where he did londe abowte the feste of seynte Luke the evangeliste, receyvede þer with grete solemnite. Whiche repairede anoon hooly places falle down, and onornede the relikes of seyntes with golde, silvyr, and with precious gemmes, and did mony other noble thynges þer; wherefore his memoriall schalle be in lawde for ever. A blasynge sterre was signe in this yere betwene the partes of the northe and of the weste, directynge his beames towarde Fraunce. Leonell son of kynge Edward the thrydde and duke of Clarence, takynge with hym a grete multitude of the noble men of Ynglonde, wente to Mediolan to mary the doȝhter of the lorde of þat cuntre, with whom he scholde have halfe of that lordeschippe. That matrimony complete with grete glory, the seide duke diede abowte the feste of the nativite of oure Lady nexte folowynge. Symon Langham, archebischop of Cawnterbery, was create into a cardinall in the same yere, and in the monethe of October; and in the yere nexte folowynge he wente unto þe cowrte of Rome. Whiche tyme þe pope translate maistyr William Withlesey from the seete of Worcestre to the seete of Cawnterbery, and maister William Lynne, bischop of Chichestre, to þe seete of Worcestre, and confermed maister William Reed to be bischop of Chichestre. Men of Fraunce brake peas in the same yere, rydynge in the cownte Pontif and doynge grete hurte in that cuntre, puttynge the blame as of brekynge of peas of men of Ynglonde. The duchesse of Lancastre, doȝhter of Henricus somme tyme duke of Lancaster, diede in this yere, and
f. 396 a. was beryede at London in the churche of Seynte Paule. Kynge Edward kepede a parliament in this yere at Westemynstre in the ende of the monethe of Maii, in whom he movede of þe promisse broken by men off Fraunce, and how he myȝhte venge þat injury beste. A grete pestilence of men was in this

C. A., 60.

C. A., 61.

C. A., 62.

C. A., 61.

C. A., 65.

C. A., 64. yere, and a moreyn of grete bestes; whom a grete habundaunce of reyne folowede, destroyenge cornes, in so moche that a buschelle of whete was solde for iij. s. in the yere folowynge. Philippa qwene of Ynglonde diede in this yere, and was beryede at Westemynstre with grete solennite. In whiche yere maister Henricus Percy bischop of Norwich, maister Lewes Charleton bischop of Herford, and Iohn Grauntson bischop of Excestre, diede in this yere also. And by provision of the pope maister William Courteney was made bischop of Herford, maister Henricus Despenser bischoppe of Norwich, and Syr Thomas Brantyngham was made bischop of Excestre. In the same
C. A., 63. yere, abowte the feste of seynte Iohn Baptiste, the duke of Lancastre and the erle of Herford, takenge with theyme a noble hoste, saylede unto Fraunce, where the seide hoste, and an other myȝhty hoste of men of Fraunce, lay nye to Chalkhull by a longe season. And mony men of Ynglonde seide hit was schame for the hostes to lye so nye togedre, and not to fiȝhte; but the governoures wolde not soe in eny wise. After that the hoste of Fraunce, herynge of the commynge of the noble erle of Warwyk, fledde prively, levynge theire tentes fulle of vitells. That noble erle commen to londe, made haste to Normandy, and destroyede the yle of Caws by swerde and
C. A., 64. fyre. But allas! in returnynge towarde Ynglonde, that noble erle dyede at Caleys of the pestilence, levynge not after hym so noble a lorde in Ynglonde. Then the churche of Rome kepede batelle ageyne the lordes of Mediolan, in that thei occupiede diverse londes longynge to þe churche of Seynte Petyr, with whom the lorde Despenser was, and did mony laudable thynges in those partes after the dethe of the duke of Clarence. In whiche tyme the famose knyȝhte off Ynglonde, callede Syr Iohn Hawkewode, was havynge with hym the white hoste, rehersede afore, whiche ȝafe batelle oþer while with the churche ageyne the lordes of Mediolan, and oþerwhile ageyne the f. 396 b.
churche, doynge mony mervellous thynges in that cuntre with
C. A., 65. his companye. Abowte the conversion of Seynte Paule kynge Edward kepede a parliament at Westemonastery, where a x^the^ was desirede of the clergy of iij. yere; but the clergy differede to grawnt theym untylle after Ester. And after that tyme thei made grawnte þerto, so that thei scholde pay the seide dymes in diverse tymes in the thre yere. And a xv^the^ was graunted
C. A., 68. of lay men in lyke wise. Sir Iohn Chaundos, a noble knyȝhte
C. A., 65. and discrete, was sleyne in this yere in Gascoigne. Kynge Edwarde, folowynge the cownsaile of wickede men in this yere, borowede a grete summe of goode of prelates, merchandes, and of other ryche men, seyenge that hit scholde be spende into the defense of the churche and of the realme. Abowte the feste of seynte Iohn Baptist folowynge, a grete hoste was gedred of diverse costes of Ynglonde, amonge whom was

the lorde Fuzwater, lorde Graunteson, and oper noble kny3htes, makynge a kny3hte, Syr Robert Knolles, gretely experte in Marte, governoure of that hoste. But soone after envy and C. A., 65. discrecion movede, the hoste was departede, wherefore Syr Robert Knolles wente with his men to a castelle in Briteyne, and so men of Fraunce comme and 3afe batelle to that oper parte of men Ynglonde, where thei were sleyn or taken in captivite. Pope Urban pe v^the^ returnede from Rome to Avinon C. A., 66. to make a finalle concorde betwene the kynges of Ynglonde and of Fraunce, but he diede soone after on the xxj^ti^ day of December, and was beryede per in the cathedrall churche afore the hye awter; but after oon yere paste he was taken from the erthe and beryede in the monastery of Seynte Victor, nye to Marsilia, afterwarde, where he was abbot afore, in whiche place mony miracles be doen by hym unto the lawde of Godde; whom Gregory the xj^the^ did succede, cardinalle diacon afore. The C. A., 67. cite Lemovicense began to rebelle ageyne prince Edwarde, which prince wontynge moneye made grete haste to Ynglonde and in his iourney he allemoste destroyede that cite to the grownde, and toke into captivite and did slee men townde in hit. And abowte the begynnynge of Ianiver he londed in Ynglonde with his wife and peple, levynge in Gascoigne the duke of Lancastre, and Edmunde erle of Cawntebrigge, with
f. 397 a. mony other noble men. In this yere a parliamente kepede at Wals. Hist., Westemonastery, the kynge askede of the clergy a subsidye i. 312. of l^ti^ M. li., whiche was grawntede by deliberacion after the feste of Ester, and other l^ti^ M. li. was grawntede of lay peple. The chawnceller of Ynglonde and the treasurer, bischoppes Wals. Hist., bothe were amovede from theire offices, and the clerke of the i. 313. prive seale, at the peticion of lordes in that parliament in the hate of the clergy, and other laymen were subrogate in the places of theyme. Solenne ambassiators were sende from the pope to the kynge in this parliamente to trete with the kynge for pease, but with owte dowte noon effecte folowede peron to eny purpose.

Capitulum quadragesimum octavum.[1]

Kynge Edwarde kepede a parliamente at Wynchestre in the Wals. Hist., ix^the^ day of the monethe of Iunius, durynge by viij. daies. i. 313. Unto whiche parliament iiij. bischoppes and iiij. abbottes were citede oonly to appere, whiche parliamente was hade for merchandes of London, of Norwiche, and of oper cites, in that hit was seide that thei wolde rebelle ageyne hym. The duke

[1] Sic.

of Lancastre and the erle of Cauntebrigge commynge in this yere from Gascoigne, maryede ij. do3hters of Petyr sonme tyme kynge of Speyne, the duke the elder do3hter and the erle the
Wals. Hist., i. 313. yonger do3hter. Two cardynalls were sende from the pope in this yere to trete of pease betwene ij. realmes, whiche taryenge longe, returnede as withowte eny effecte as for that purpose. A grete batelle was hade on the see betwene men of Ynglonde and of Flaundres, but men of Ynglonde hade victory, and toke xxv^ti^ shippes chargede with men of Ynglonde, knowynge not that thei were of Flandres. Neverthelesse grete hurte wolde have commyn perby, but that pease was reformede soone
Wals. Hist., i. 314. betwene the parties. In whiche yere men of Fraunce segede the towne of Rochelle, wherefore the erle of Penbroke was sende to Gascoigne with a grete multitude off peple to dissolve that sege. But a fleete of schippes of Speyne mette with theym, and toke theyme, or did sle theym, and brou3hte the erle with theym into Speyne with a grete treasure, abowte the feste of seynte Iohn Baptiste. But hit is not to be mervaylede of this infortune, for that erle was an open advouturer, and laborede in the parliamente but late afore ageyne the liberte of the churche movynge the kynge that he scholde take rather goodes of the churche then the goodes of eny oper peple: where- f. 397 b.
fore fortune beynge contrarious, the kynge hade not so noble victorys of his adversaries after that tyme as he hade afore, in that he folowede his wikkede cownsayle. Kynge Edwarde entrede the see in this yere with a grete hoste to dissolve the sege at Rochell, but the wynde wolde not suffre hym; whiche taryenge longe by the costes nye to Ynglonde, returnede ageyne. Maister Thomas Trillek, bischop of Rowchestre, diede in this yere, whom Thomas Brompton, monke of Norwich and penitentiary of the pope, succedid by provision of the
Wals. Hist., i. 315. pope. The duke of ffr[1] Lancastre saylede to Fraunce in this yere with a grete hoste, and passede by Paryse into Burguyn, and so thro alle Fraunce into Burdews, with owte eny resistence of men of Fraunce, and withowte eny hurte to hym or his hoste. But the seide duke toke grete rawnsons of
Wals. Hist., i. 316. cites, townes, and castells as he went thro that cuntre. Kynge Edwarde sende in the same yere certeyn enbassiatours to the pope, preyenge hym to leve after that tyme the provision made in his cowrte of benefices in Ynglonde, and that men electe to be bischoppes in Ynglonde may enjoye their eleccion, and be confermede of theire metropolitans as the use was afore. But the pope commaunded the ambassiatours to certifye hym firste in wrytynge of the wille of the kynge and of the realme, or that he scholde make eny determinacion of the articles afore-
Wals. Hist., i. 316. seide. Maister Iohn Thoresby archebischop of Yorke, maister

[1] Sic.

Iohn Barnette bischop of Ely, and maister William Lynne bischoppe of Worcestre diede in this yere; whom maister Alexander Nevyle did succede at Yorke, Thomas Arundell at Ely, and Sir Henricus Wakefelde at Worcestre. A decrete was made in the parliament in this yere that cathedrall churches scholde enjoye their eleccions, and that the kynge scholde not wryte ageyn men electe, but helpe theym to theire confermacion, but this statute profite not. Oon dyme was grawntede to the kynge by the clergy in this yere and parliament, and a xv^te^ of lay men. Alle Gascoigne rebellede ageyne the kynge of Ynglonde in this tyme, Burdews and Baio excepte, and turnede to the kynge of Fraunce. William Withlesey archebischop of Cawnterbery diede in this yere, the v^the^ day of Iunius, wherefore the monkes of the seide place askede the cardinalle of Ynglonde into archebischop. The kynge movede in grete wrathe perfore, was in purpose to have putte the seide monkes into exile; neverthelesse thei spende grete goodes or that thei cowthe obteyne the favor of the kynge. And the kynge wolde not consente in eny wise to theire desire, neiper the pope neither the cardinalls. Abowte pe monethe of Auguste a tretys was made at Brugges of certeyne articles towchynge the kynge of Ynglonde and the pope, whiche entrety endurede by allemoste ij. yere. But at the laste acorde was made that the pope scholde not use from that tyme reservacion of benefices in Ynglonde. The noble men of Ynglonde and of Fraunce mette in this yere at Brugges, abowte the Purificacion of oure Lady, to trete for pease betwene the seide realmes; whiche trety endurede by ij. yere to grete charges of bothe realmes, and departede withowte eny effecte. The seete of Cawnterbery vacant unto this tyme, maister Symon Suddebury, bischop of London, succedid in that seete of Cawnterbery; maister William Cowrteney bischop of Herford succedid in the church of London, and the bischop of Bangor unto the seete of Herforde. Truse were taken from the feste of Iohn Baptist unto that day twelvemonepe betwene the realmes of Ynglonde and of Fraunce. Abowte the begynnynge of the monethe of April the duke of Briteyne, with mony erles, barons, and mony oper noble men, saylede into Briteyn, where thei hade doen mony grete victorys, but that truse was taken oversoone. Grete hete and pestilence was in Ynglond in this yere, and in mony oper partes of the worlde, by whom peple as with owte nowmbre pereschede and was extincte. Robert Wyfeld bischop of Salisbery diede in this yere, whom Rawfe Argum, doctor in civile, succedid; and Edward lorde Despenser diede in this yere, and was beryede at Theokesbery, in the churche of monkes. The pope grawntede, at the instance of the cardinalle off Ynglonde, to alle men and women in Ynglonde truly contrite and confessed by vj. monethes in that

f. 398 a.

Wals. Hist., i. 316.

Wals. Hist., i. 317.

Wals. Hist., i. 318.

Wals. Hist., i. 319.

Wals. Hist., i. 319. tyme of pestilence plener remission of theire symnes. The erle of Penbroke, redemede this tyme be Bertrandus Cleykyn, dyede betwene Parys and Caleys, as he travaylede towarde Ynglonde.

Wals. Hist., i. 317. The duke of Lancastre, the duke of Andegavy, with mony lordes and prelates of ciþer realme, mette in this yere in the monethe of November at Brugges, to trete for pease betwene realmes of Ynglonde and of Fraunce. f. 398 b.

Capitulum quadragesimum nonum.

Wals. Hist., i. 320. In the begynnynge of the monethe of Maii kynge Edward causede a parliamente to be kepede at Westemonastery, in whom he askede a subsidy after his olde consuetude, for his defense and of þe realme also. But the commune peple seide that thei were so oppressede with exaccions that thei myȝhte not sustene þat burdeyn eny longer. For thei seide that þei hade tru knowlege that þe kynge hade goode ynowe if the realme were governede truly; but thei seide also that the kynge scholde not habunde in rychesse so longe as the realme were governede by wickede officers, and that thei scholde prove. That probacion hade if the kynge hade nede to theire goodes thei scholde helpe hym with theire goodes with goode wille. After that, mony ylle thynges were publischede of diverse officers beynge nye to the kynge, and specially of the lorde Latymer his chambreleyn for wikkede disposicion. Also an other woman, Alice Perers, of wikkede disposicion, was rehersede þer for her wicked disposicion, whom the kynge kepede into his concubyne by a grete space. Wherefore the commune peple desirede þese unhappy persons to be removede from the kynge, and noble men and discrete to be subrogate in theire places.

Wals. Hist., i. 321. A noble knyȝhte, wise, beautuous and discrete, was amonge the seide communes, Petur Lamare by name, by whom alle the commune peple were governede, whiche accusynge the seide persons was commaunded to prison perpetuall soone after at Notyngham by the seide Alice Perers, where he taryede by the space of ij. yere. Edwarde prince of Wales diede in the tyme of þe seide parliamente, at Westemonastery, in the kynges palice, whiche was beryede in Cristechurche at Cawnterbery with grete honour. Kynge Edwarde kepede grete solennite in the feste of Trinite after the dethe of his sonne: by the tyme of his lyfe the fortune and nobilite of that myȝhty prince were

Wals. Hist., i. 322. dredde by alle Cristen men, and pagans also. Men and tenauntes of the erle of Warwyke made a malicious insurreccion ageyne thabbotte and covente of Evisham and theire tenauntes, intendynge to have destroyede that monastery, betynge somme of theire men, woundynge somme, and sleenge somme. That doen, thei wente to theire maners, sleenge theire f. 399 a.

deere, brekynge up weres, and fischenge theire waters, utterly intendynge to have destroyed that monastery, but that the kynge schewede helpe to the monastery. Wherefore the kynge sende wrytynge to the seide erle of Warwyke that he scholde correcte those men trowblynge the pease, and so peas was reformede betwene bothe parties by laboure of theire frendes. And as hit is seide, the kynge wolde not be governede by the lordes assignede in that laste parliamente for that same bryge, but he toke ageyn to the governaile of the realme the duke of Lancastre his sonne, and so he contynuede to the dethe of the kynge. A parliament kepede the same yere at Westemonastery soone after þe Purificacion of oure Lady, suche a subsidy was grawntede to the kynge as folowethe. That is to say, that he scholde have of every lay person of either kynde exceedynge xiiij. yere in age iiij.*d.*, poore peple excepte whiche lyvede by almes, and xij.*d.* of every person of the churche promotede, and of oþer persons not promotede iiij.*d.*, the frers of iiij. ordres excepte. Maister Iohn Wyclef, doctor in divinite in the universite of Oxenforde, began to sustene openly in the seide universite erroneus conclusions contrary to the state of the universalle churche, and conclusions of heresy, and specially ageyne chanons, monkes, and religious men possessionate. Whiche drawede to hym in this tyme diverse felawes of the same secte dwellynge in Oxenforde, goynge barefote with longe gownes of russet, that thei myȝhte publische and fortifye theire errours ageyne men contrarious to theyme, prechynge openly the seide errours. Amonge whom thei seide that the sacramente in the awter after the sacrament or consecracion is not the verey body of Criste. Also he seide that temporalle lordes and men myȝhte take awey meritoriously the goodes men of the churche synnynge or trespassynge. Neverthelesse the pope with his cownsaile dampnede xxiij^ti^ conclusions as veyne, erroneus and fulle of heresy, and sende bulles directe to þe metropolitan of Ynglonde and to the bischop of London, that thei scholde cause the seide maister John to be areste, and to examine hym of the seide conclusions. That inquisicion doen, and a declacion made, the archebischop of Cawnterbery commaundede and prohibited the seide maister John and his condisciples to use the seide conclusions, and so thei were stille as for a season. But soone after, by supportacion of lordes and oþer noble men, thei toke to þeim moore wicked oppinions, and hade grete continuacion in theire malice. Mony men of London rysenge that tyme intended to have brente the maner of the duke of Lancastre at Saveye with owte that Petyr Lamare were delyverede from prison. But the bischop of London thro his labore causede that þe place was not brente. The duke herynge that did aryse from meyte, and wente to the maner of Kyngeston, where Ricardus sonne of prince Edwarde was.

Wals. Hist., i. 322.

Wals. Hist., i. 323.

Wals. Hist., i. 324.

f. 399 b.

Wals. Hist., i. 325.

Wals. Hist., i. 326.

Wals. Hist., i. 326. Wherefore the kynge causede the mayre and noble men of the cite to be deposede, and oþer men to be create in theire places. The duke of Lancastre did grete persecucion in this tyme to the bischop of Wynchestre, sayenge that he was fals to his fader when he was his chawnceller, wherefore he was condempnede ageyne ry3hte to pay a grete summe of goode to the kynge, insomoche that his temporalites were occupiede by the kynge, and cowthe not have theyme restorede to hym in eny wise unto the dethe of the kynge. Ricardus sonne of prince Edward was made prince of Wales, to whom the kynge 3afe the duchery of Cornewaile with Chestreschire, havynge this gifte oonly in name, and not in possession. The cardinall of Ynglonde was taken sodenly with a palisy after meyte, and loste his speche, dyenge in the feste of Mary Magdalen, with ynne iij. daies after that vexacion.

Capitulum quinquagesimum.

Wals. Hist., i. 326. In the begynnynge of the monethe of October pope Gregory removede from Avinon to Rome. Syr Iohn Mensterworthe, kny3hte, was drawen, hongede, and heded in this yere at the cite of London, and quatert after that, and his hedde was sette f. 400 a. on the brygge of London, in that he was a fals traytour to the realme of Ynglonde. Whiche dredynge to be accusede afore kynge Edward, fledde to the kynge of Fraunce, and promysede to hym to brynge the fleete of Speyne to hym in his helpe ageyne the kynge of Ynglonde. But Allemy3hty God wolde that he scholde suffre dethe raþer then he scholde have betrayede his lorde and the cuntre where he was borne so untrewly. Kynge Edwarde 3afe to Ricardus of Burdews, his heire and successour, the ordre of kny3htehode in this yere at Wyndeshore, in the feste of seynte George. Whiche kynge diede at Shene in the monethe of Iunius, after that he hade Wals. Hist., i. 327. reignede lij^ti yere, and was beryede at Westemonastery. This noble and my3hty kinge Edward, amonge alle oþer men of nobilite in the worlde, was a man of grete goodenesse, callede gracious, excellenge alle his predecessour by vertu and grace 3iffen to hym of God, a bolde man in herte, dredynge not sinistralle fortune in batells, havynge grete fortune in theyme bothe on see and on londe. Also he was meke, benigne, and familier to alle maner of peple, devoute to God, honourynge the churche of God, and havynge his ministres in grete reverence. Also he was moderate in cures temporalle, provide in cownsaille, affable and eloquente, meke in behavoure, havynge compassion on men in tribulacion. Also he was elegant and beawtuous of body, havynge a comfortable and pleasante countenaunce lyke to the sy3hte of an angelle, for God hade induede hym with suche excellence of grace that a man wolde have thou3hte as

for a suerte that he scholde have speddc welle in the day folowynge after that he hade dremede of the seide kynge. This noble kynge governede his realme gloriously unto his laste dayes, large in ȝiftes, excessyve in expenses, induede with alle honeste of maners. Wherefore his fame was so encreasede amonge peple of Barbre, insomoche that thei seide there was noo londe in the worlde that hade so noble a prince, and that Ynglonde scholde never have so noble ageyne after his dethe. But the inordinate luste of the flesche usede in his olde age helpede hym moche unto dethe. Also hit is to be attended, as the actes afore expresse, that lyke as in his begynnynge alle thynges enjoyede to hym, and the myddes of his age glorious and fortunate, soe the seide kynge drawynge to age and towarde dethe, alle thynges were as infortunable to hym, for hys synnes and mony incommodites began to sprynge, havynge after hym longe continuacion, whiche thynge was to be sorowede.

Wals. Hist., i. 328.

f. 400 b.

Capitulum quinquagesimum primum.

Richard of Burdews, sonne of prince Edwarde, sonne to Edward kynge of Ynglonde, havynge not xj. yere in age, was crownede solennely at Westemonastery into kynge of Symon archebischop of Cawnterbery, in the idus of Iulius, and in the yere of oure Lorde God a M.ccc.lxxvij., archebischoppes, bischoppes, prelates, and mony oper noble men of the realme presente per. Within whiche solennite he made iiij. erles, Thomas Wodestok his uncle at Bukkyngham, the lorde Percy at Northumbrelonde, the lorde Moubray at Notyngham, and Sithardus, a knyȝhte of Gascoigne, at Huntyngdon. The men of Fraunce brake the peas abowte the feste of seynte Iohn Baptist, for thei wolde not have peas withowte the acorde scholde have bene to theire pleasure and to þe grete hurte of Ynglonde. In whiche tyme the Scottes brente the towne of Rokysburgh, by the movynge of the erle of Dunbar. Wherefore Syr Henricus Percy erle of Northumbrelonde entrede into Scotlonde with x.M^l^ men, and brente mony townes lungynge to þe erle of Dunbar, robbynge per by iij. dayes. After þat men of Fraunce entrede into the yle of Wyȝhte, and did grete hurte; whiche takynge a M. marke for rawnson returnede to þe see, kepynge the costes of Ynglonde, and brennynge mony noble places, sleenge men whom thei cowthe fynde in the sowthe partes, and takynge mony bestes with theyme. For moore hurte was doen in Ynglonde in þat yere, as hit was seide, then in xl^ti^ yere afore. Also men of Fraunce made a sawte to þe towne of Wynchelesey, but thei cowthe not entre into the towne, neverthelesse they sende diverse men whiche brente the towne of Hastinges. Also men of Fraunce entrede in þe same

Wals. Hist., i. 332.

Wals. Hist., i. 338.

Wals. Hist., i. 340.

Wals. Hist., i. 341.

f. 401 a.

Wals. Hist., i. 342. yere into the towne of Rotyngton, in Sowthesex, where the prior of Lews mette peim with a lytelle nowmbre of peple, whiche was taken and brou3hte to theire schippes with oper ij. kny3htes, Syr John Fallsele and Syr Thomas Cheyne, with a sqwyer John Brocas. But a esqwyer borne in Fraunce beynge in servyce with the seide fau3hte manfully ageyne men of Fraunce, in so moche that his bely kytte, he fau3hte soore, his bowells remaynynge behynde hym a grete space, and folowede his enemyes. In whiche conflicte a c. Ynglische men were sleyne, and mony moo of the Frenche men; whiche toke the dedde men awey with peym, other ells thei brente peire faces with yrne that thei scholde not be knowen, and þat Ynglische men scholde not solace of peire dethe. Where a man of Fraunce was taken, confessynge afore his dethe that the realme of Ynglonde scholde not have bene trowblede by men of Fraunce if that the duke of Lancastre had be made kynge. Men of Fraunce toke the towne of Arde in this yere by treason of the keper, a lorde born in Alemayne, callede lorde Gumeney. Also ij. bischoppes, ij. erles, ij. barons, ij. baronettes, ij. bachiler kny3htes, and oon man of lawe were deputate in that yere, after the coronacion of the kynge, to have governaunce of hym, in that he was tendre of age, by the commune assent. Also hit was ordeynede that the seide men scholde be elect yerely. In

Wals. Hist., i. 343. whiche yere, soone after Michelmasse, a parliamente was callede at London, durynge allemoste unto Cristemasse, where ij. dymes were grawntede to be payede of þe spiritualite togedre in the Purificacion of oure Lady, and ij. xv^te^ of lay men also, for the defense of the realme. Thomas Wodestoke erle of Bukkyngham, the duke of Briteyne, the lorde Latimer, and the prior of the Hospitalle of Seynte Iohn, takynge with peim a grete hoste, entrede into the see in the same yere, sone after the feste of Alle Seyntes. And in the ny3hte of seynte Martyn a grete wynde brake as sodenly the takellynges of theire schippes, and compellede theym to take the londe. But the schippes repairede thei toke the see, returnynge ageyne abowte Cristemasse, withowte eny profite, or lytell if eny were off that viage. f. 401 b.

Wals. Hist., i. 368. Pope Gregory the xj^the^ diede in this yere in the xxvij. day of Marche; after the dethe of whom the cardinalles entrede into a place for eleccion, a grete multitude of peple of the cite of Rome entrede into the palice, cryenge, "A Roman or an Ytalion." The cardinalls dredynge that peple, electe an olde man to be pope, a Roman by nativite; but that olde man refusynge that eleccion, thei electe Bartholomew archebischop Barrensis into

Wals. Hist., i. 369. pope in the viij. day of Aprile. Which called Urban the vj^te^ was crownede solennely on Ester day, þe xviij. day of Aprile, and consecrate also, and did ryde in his pontificalls unto the churche Lateranense, the cardinalls folowynge hym. Where the masse songe solennely by the pope, he returnede to his palice,

with whom alle the cardinalls dynede þat day, and afterwarde thei made obedience to hym with mony supplicacions, contynuynge by a season in pease. But abowte the feste of seynte Iohn Baptist allemoste alle the cardinalls rebellede ageyne the pope, and fledde into þe region of Neapols. Whom the qwene norischede ageyne the pope, seyenge that he was not truly electe, in that he was not elect but for drede of dethe. And so the seide cardinalls electe into the pope a cosyn to the kynge of Fraunce, namynge hym Clemente the vij^the^, and sende letters anoon to the kynge of Fraunce for helpe and socoure; whom the kynge of Fraunce fortefiede with alle his myȝhte; and so a grete division was spronge in the hedde of alle churches. Pope Urban create xx^ti^ cardinalls and moo, and excommunicate the oþer cardinalles, takynge theire benefices, and inabilitynge þeim to eny benefice afterwarde. The erles of Arundell and of Salisbery takynge with theym a grete multitude of men entrede into the see þis yere, returnynge ageyne withowte eny victory of theire enemyes. And in the firste tyme of theire entrenge into the see, ij. breþer, Philippe Courteney and Petyr, fauȝhte ageyne discrecion with enemyes on the see. And soone after a grete schippe of Speyne come ageyne þeim with other diverse. Philippe Courteney wounded soore, and mony of his men sleyne, seenge that he was not able to resiste theyme, fledde, and Petur Courteney his brother, compassede abowte with schippes, fauȝhte manfully, but at the laste he was taken, allemoste alle þe noble men of Cornewaile and of Devenschire sleyne in his schippe afore. In whiche tyme a noble citesyn and merchand of London, Iohn Philipotte, specially luffer to the realme of Ynglonde, seenge that the lordes did noo goode over the see, ordeynede a fleete of schippes of his awne costes. Whiche entrenge into the see, they mette anoon a vesell of Scotlond whiche hade taken diverse schippes of Ynglonde, and toke hit with moche treasure, and oþer xv. schippes off Speyne that come to helpe that veselle of Scotlonde. Also the erle of Salisbery hade made provision that the kynge of Ynglonde myȝhte sayle to Cheirburgh in Normandy, and kepe hit, to his grete socoure and so hurte of men of Fraunce, so that he wolde pay to þe kynge of Navarria a certeyn pension yerely þerfore. Syr Hewe Calverle, capiteyn of Caleys, toke þat tyme the castelle of Merke, and destroyede hit. In the yere nexte folowynge the duke of Lancastre, the erle of Bukkyngham his broþer, the erles of Warwyke and of Stafford, takynge with theyme a myȝhty hoste, saylede into Briteyne, and segede the towne of Seynte Malows allemoste by a monethe. The men of the towne dredynge soore, sende to the duke seyenge thei wolde delyver the towne in this condicion, that theire lyves and goodes scholde be salvede and the towne from brennynge. The duke despisynge that condicion, sende

Wals. Hist., i. 382.

Wals. Hist., i. 371.

f. 402 a.

Wals. Hist., i. 370.

Wals. Hist., i. 372.

Wals. Hist., i. 373.

mony men to take the towne, whom he receyvid ageyne beten truly and withowte eny hepe to recure that towne. In the same yere abowte the feste of seynte Lawrence the sonnes of Beliall entrede into the churche of Westemonastery in the tyme of divine servyce, and pursuede unry3hteously ij. esqwyers fledde from þe towre of London unto that seynctuary, Iohn Schakel and Robert Hauley. Whiche men did sle the seide Robert, resistenge theyme to his powere, afore the stalle of the prior, and hurte a ministre of þe churche movenge theym to leve for reverence of the sacrament. And thei toke Iohn Shakell owte of the seynctuary with theyme, destroyenge the privileges of that place grawnted by mony popes and kynges. Syr Rawfe Fereres, kny3hte, Syr Alan Buxille, capitan of the towre, were governoures of that wicked peple, that the seyenge of the gospelle my3hte be verifyede,[1] kny3htes did that thynge. The seide esqwyers, Iohn Schakel and Robert Hauley, toke the f. 402 b. erle of Deene in the batelle of Speyne at Naser, to whom he toke his son for plegge as for a certeyn summe of money. And his fader ded he was suffrede to departe, and his sonne remaynede in plegge; and in that the seide esqwyers wolde not delyver that prisoner to the kynge, oon of theyme was sleyne, and the other esqwyer was imprisonede in the towre of London. And hit was to be mervaylede of the seide yonge man that he wolde not knowlege his name, but servede theyme mekely as if he hade bene theire servaunte. But soone after the seide yonge man was brou3hte to the kynge, moche peple mervaylenge of his constance and mekenesse. In this yere the Scottes toke by fraude the castell of Berwyke, and kepede hit by viij. daies, and in the ix^{the} day thei were sleyne by Henricus Percy erle of Northumbrelonde, and so Ynglische men occupiede þat castelle ageyne. Abowte this tyme a grete dissension was movede betwene the kynge of Fraunce and gentilmen off Briteyne Armoryke, in that the seide kynge wolde have hade all the castells and towres of that cuntre delyverede to hym. But the gentylmen not consentynge perto, somme were sleyne, and somme of theym were hongede. And mony of theym fleenge were salvede, whiche wolde not drawe afterwarde to þe kynge of Fraunce; and this was þe firste cause that men of Briteyne turnede as sodenly to Syr Iohn Mounteforte theire naturalle lorde. Kynge Ricardus began to holde a parliamente at Glouecestre in þis yere, in the xij. kalendes of November; for diverse lordes dredynge men of London for þat grete offense doen in Westemonastery, movede the kynge that he scholde not kepe his parliament at London, that thei my3hte have theire purpose ageyne the libertes of churches. In whiche parlia-

Wals. Hist., i. 375.

Wals. Hist., i. 376.

Wals. Hist., i. 379.

Wals. Hist., i. 387.

Wals. Hist., i. 380.

[1] On the margin is written "a ridiculous application of a texte no where "to be founde."

ment princes and lordes acompanyede to þeim diverse doctors and clerkes to consente to theym, intendynge utterly to destroy þe privilege of churches. For thei were so cruelle that þer was not oon man in that parliamente that durste speke oon worde for thabbote of Westemonastery. But allemyȝhty God, whiche grownded his churche on so sure a fundacion, wolde not suffre theym to prevayle longe, and causede his tru peple to ryse ageyne þeim and to make resistence. And God movede so the herte of the seide kynge that he suffrede þat churche to enjoye his libertes, immunites, and privilege, and confermede theym by his chartour. Iohn Brynkeley abbot of Seynte Edmondbury diede in this yere, and soone after the pope ȝafe that monastery to Edmunde Brumfelde, monke of the same monastery, professor of holy divinite, and proctor of the ordre of blake monkes of Ynglonde in the cowrte of Rome; whiche provision causede grete hurte to that monastery. A parliamente was kepede at London abowte the feste of the Annunciacion of oure Lady, in whom a subsidy was grawntede to the kynge, that the dukes of Lancastre and of Briteyne scholde pay to þe kynge eiþer of þeim x. marke, and archebischoppes as moche; erles and bischoppes vj. marke. And also every abbot for every broþer of the place iij.*s.* and iiii.*d.* And so noo man of worschip escapede, but he payede to that subsidy. And in the same yere, abowte the fest of seynte Iohn Baptiste, the cursed pope Clement fleynge from Ytaly come to Avinion, kepynge his cowrte þer with the cardinalls excommunicate. Syr Iohn Harlaston, knyȝhte, and keper of the towne of Cheirburghe, with Syr Gefray Burle, knyȝhte, hade a grete victory ageyne men of Fraunce, vij^{xx} of theym sleyn, and takynge prisoners of the seide men of Fraunce unto the same nowmbre. In the same yere Hewe of Calverly, knyȝhte, and Syr Thomas Percy, broþer of the erle of Northumbrelonde, made admiralles of the see occean, after the takynge of mony schippes of theire adversaryes, come ageyne to Ynglonde with gladde tythynges, that the Briteynes Armoryke were turnede to Syr Iohn Mowntefforte, theire naturalle lorde. In whiche tyme the archebischoppe Cassellens come from the cowrte of Rome, and denowncede the kynge of Fraunce excommunicate, and so mony men or women as supported that fals pope Clement. And specially in that the kynge of Fraunce made a proclamacion thro alle his realme that whatsoever were obediente to pope Urban scholde lose his lyfe and goodes. Fals men of Flandres toke by treason a barge of the towne of Fawey, and did sle alle men in hit, oon grome excepte, whiche fledde into theire schippe and hidde hym under hacches, while that oþer men did fiȝhte. These men of Flaundres commynge to londe to utter theire merchandyse, mony merchauntez of Ynglonde wente to theire schippes to by somme of theire ware. That

f. 403 a.

Wals. Hist., i. 389.

Wals. Hist. i. 391.

Wals. Hist., i. 392.

Wals. Hist., i. 390.

Wals. Hist., i. 391.

Wals. Hist., i. 400.

Wals. Hist., i. 400. groine herynge the voyces of men of Ynglonde, cryede preyenge theym of helpe. The men of Ynglonde spekynge with that f. 403 b. groine, and understondynge the falshede of the Flemmynges, toke theym and sende theym to be imprisonede at London.

Wals. Hist., i. 403. Iohn Mownteforte, duke of Briteyne, takynge with hym Syr Hewe Calverle and Syr Thomas Percy, saylede into Briteyne, where he was receyved with grete honor, in so moche that barons, knyȝhtes and other noble men induede with precious clothes mette hym in the see, wadynge in hit unto the chynne, to receyve theire naturalle lorde. And hit is to be mervaylede that the seide lorde beynge from that cuntre mony yeres, the olde and holle dewte of the proventus were reservede to hym,

Wals. Hist., i. 407. and [1] if he hade taryede amonge theyme. In whiche tyme a noble merchaunde of Ianuense was sleyne by men of London, in that he seide he scholde selle wynes and spices for lesse

Wals. Hist., i. 409. price then men of London usede to do. Also þer was in this yere in somer a grete dethe of pestilence, and specially in the northe partes of Ynglonde; the bestialle peple of Scotlonde, havynge noo compassion, putte sorowe on sorowe, rydenge thro that cuntre and sleynge men laborynge in pestilence, and chasynge from that cuntre men that were not seke, insomoche

Wals. Hist., i. 411. that thei hade allemoste destroyede þat cuntre. Iohn Schakell esqwyer was taken to the kynges grace abowte this tyme, the sonne and heire of the erle of Deen delyverede to hym afore, and kynge Ricardus promysede to the seide esqwyer certeyne londes or a certeyne summe of money for the injuryes doen to

Wals. Hist., i. 412. hym. The erle of Flandres begynnynge to desire of his peple exaccions inconsuete ageyne the liberte of his peple, was expulsede from that cuntre, not to returne into that cuntre ageyn withowte he wolde avoide from his servyce his cownsellours

Wals. Hist., i. 414. whiche movede hym unto that symplenesse. Edmunde Bromfelde, monke of Bery, comme to Ynglonde abowte this tyme from the courte of Rome, and with in fewe dayes he drawede and causede xiij. monkes to assente to hym, by cownsaile and helpe of whom he was taken and installed there. The prior of the seide monastery and oþer breþer, seenge that, compleynte to þe kynge, whiche commaunded the seide Edmund to be taken and brouȝte to hym. That doen, the seide doctor convicte, in that he entrede into that office withowte consent of the kynge, and that he did ageyne the statutes of the parlia-

Wals. Hist., i. 415. mente made abowte the yere of kynge Edward the thrydde f. 404 a. þe xxv^ti^, was directe to the toure of London to be kepede þer, and oþer monkes that ȝafe assente to hym, ij. or thre except that fledde, and soone after thei were directe to diverse monasterys to be kepede streytely. And so by this eleccion grete hurte and losse of goodes were causede, and specially to þat

[1] *as* is written above in a later hand.

monastery. Also grete altercacions were causede betwene the kynge and þe pope for that eleccion, for the kynge wolde not in eny wise the provision of the man electe, but his confirmacion. Wherefore the seide kynge sende embassiatours to þe pope, commawndynge theym to say to the pope that his wylle scholde not be flexible in that mater. But the kynge havynge not in ure of the seide promisse, in the meane tyme causede the monke electe into abbot to be blissede of the bischop of London after the forme wryten to hym afore by the pope, at whiche solennite the kynge and the qwene were with mony oþer noble men. But the pope did wryte bothe to the bischop of London and to the convente of that place also, annullynge that eleccion and benediccion, commaundynge theym to go to a newe eleccion, and to chose ageyne the seide man electe by hys cownsaile, whiche eleccion the seide bischop of London scholde conferme by auctorite of þe pope. Whiche thynges were complete abowte the yere of oure Lorde a M. ccc. lxxxv., and a certeyne pension of that lyvelode was assignede unto the sustentacion of the seide Edmund, doctor, yerely to be payede to hym. Whiche doctor was releschede from prison by the kynges grace, an othe made afore that he scholde not go over the see in eny wyse with owte licence of the kynge. But he brake soone þat othe, and wente to the pope, where he was made reder of the holy palyce, and hade in grete favour and honoure in that cowrte. In the same yere, in the monethe of December, Iohn Arundell, broþer to the erle of Arundell, takynge with hym a certeyne nowmbre of men, entrede into the see to have saylede into Briteyne. But a tempeste to be mervaylede was movede as sodenly in the see, whiche dispersed theire schippes, somme to Yrlond, somme to Wales, somme to Cornewaile, and somme to oþer diverse costes, and were broken and destroyede. In whiche tempeste the seide Iohn Arundell, governoure of that hoste, was pereschede, and mony oþer noble men, bothe kny3htes and esqwyers in diverse partes and costes, theire hors̄es and goodes drownede also. For as hit is seide, the seide Iohn Arundell and his men also, taryenge at Plymmouthe for weder, to have vexede the peple of that cuntre, takynge theire goodes and payenge nou3hte þerfore, usynge grete ryet with women þer, and with theire do3hters. Also hit is seide that they entrede into a place of myncheons, and toke diverse myncheons, and synnede with theyme, and toke with theyme unto theire schippes diverse gentylwomen, sende to that place for to lerne vertu and connynge. Also hit is seide that thei toke a woman from her howsebonde in the firste day of theire mariage, and to have doen sacrilege also in takynge awey a chalice from a churche nye to theym. Wherefore the preste of the seide churche folowede theym to the see, and cursede theyme solennely; but the seide þeple skornynge that preste suffrede dethe

Wals. Hist., i. 417.

Wals. Hist., i. 418.

f. 404 b.

Wals. Hist., i. 419.

Wals. Hist., i. 421. soone after, and were meyte to bestes of the see. The body of Syr Iohn Arundell was founde in Yrlonde, and beryede þer in a monastery. But syr Hewe Calverly and Syr Thomas Percy payede theire dettes to the peple of þat costes for thynges necessary to theyme, wherefore the peple folowede theyme to the see, preyenge allemyȝhty God to be theire governoure; but the seide peple preyede to allemyȝhty God þat þe devell myȝhte drowne the seide Iohn Arundell. And so the seide knyȝhtes

Wals. Hist., i. 427. escapede the see withowte eny hurte. In whiche tyme the fleete of Speyne and of Fraunce kepede the costes of Briteyne, that men of Ynglonde scholde not entre into Briteyne to helpe the duke, and if thei come in those costes to fiȝhte with theyme; but in the seide tempeste thei were drownede and dispersede. For whiche infortuny a parliamente was kepede at London in the octaves of seynte Hillarius, in whom oon dyme was grawnted to the kynge of alle men of churche, and a xv^the^ parte of laymen. The sonne and the heire of themperoure of Constantinopole and patriarke of the same cite knowlegede openly in this yere at Rome in Cristemasse pope Urban the vj^te^ dewe prelate of þe churche universalle electe by the lawe and consecrate, besechynge the pope to do certeyn solennites

Wals. Hist., i. 430. for theyme, and so he did. Abowte whiche tyme in the parliament at London oon dyme was grawntede to the kynge of the clergy, and a xv^the^ of laymen, on this condicion, þat þer scholde be noo parliamente from þe kalendes of Marche unto þe feste of seynte Michel folowynge after by oon yere; but this condicion was not observede. Also the erle of Seynte Paule f. 405 a. maryede in this yere at Wyndeshore, in the viij^the^ day of Ester, Iohan Cowrtenay, suster to the kynge, into the profite of mynstrells, and unto grete hate of noble men; to whom the kynge ȝafe the towne of Biflet with the maner. And in this yere in the vij^the^ day of the monethe of Iunius a conflicte of ij. men was hade and made betwene Syr Iohn Hanesley, knyȝhte, and Robert Karinton, esqwyer, in the paviment with owte the kynges halle at Westemonastery, in the presence of the kynge, of the duke of Lancaster, and mony oþer noble men in the realme. This was the mater of the conflicte: the seide knyȝhte accusede Robert Karinton that he delyvered, lyke a fals traytoure, the castell of Seynte Savioure in the yle Constantyn, when he was undercapiten, to the kynge of Fraunce for a grete summe of goode, where þat he hade peple ynowe to have kepede hit ageyne the kynge of Fraunce. Whiche accusacion semede to be tru, for the seide Robert was convicte and sleyne in that conflicte. The erle of Marche saylede abowte this tyme into Yrlonde to recure the cownte of Holnester, whom men of Yrlonde occupiede for the moste parte, where he hade grete victorys and mony, and recurede moche of his londes, and sub-

Wals. Hist., i. 434. duede mony of theyme to hym. Thomas Wodestoke erle off

Bukkyngham, Syr Hewe Calverle and Syr Robert Knolles, takynge with theyme a noble hoste, saylede to Caleys, and rydenge by the bordres of Fraunce withowte eny resistence, brente mony townes in the bordres of hit, and did sle peple withowte eny mercy, untille that thei come to the costes of Briteyne, whiche cuntre thei entrede, theire hoste neither bestes hurte. In whiche tyme Charls kynge of Fraunce committe the governayle of the realme of Fraunce and the kepynge of his sonne to his yonger brother, duke of Burgayn. Charls the elder broþer and duke of Andegavy havynge indignacion peroff, movede gwerre ageyn the yonger broþer. In whiche tyme the Scottes entrede into Combrelonde and Westemarelonde unto Yngelwode, and toke mony bestes with theyme, and did sle also mony men of that cuntre. Also thei spoylede men at the feire of Penreth, mony men of Ynglonde taken by peym and sleyne. In whiche tyme the galees of the kynge of Fraunce brente mony townes and places longynge to the prior and convente of Lewes. A newe contencion movede betwene the erle of Flandres and the commune peple, the seide erle did sle abowte viij. M. men of the towne of Ypres, whiche come to have laborede for peas, and segede the cite Gandaneus. But men of that cite were not adredde of the erle, and sette open the yates of the cite that he myȝhte; and so after a longe contynuede sege the erle toke peas with theyme for a schorte season and dissolvede the sege. The sonne of Charls somme tyme kynge of Fraunce, of xj. yere in age, was crownede kynge of Fraunce abowte this tyme, in the monethe of September. In the begynnynge of the reigne of whom a grete tumultuacion and murmur was hade amonge the peple and gentyllemen of that londe for grete exaccions and taskes. Wherefore peple at Parisius compellede mony noble men of that londe to fle, and to take places of defense, sleynge so mony men as they cowthe fynde of the gate, men of the cuntre Ianuense, for they expende allemoste alle the goode of þe region of Fraunce. For withowte dowte thei receyvyde dayly a grete summe of goode lvij.c ℔. payede dayly to theym, and dividede by egalle porcions to xxvti gates from the monethe of May unto the monethe of Auguste. The duke of Lancastre and other lordes wente to the Scottes to make a trety for pease abowte the monethe of October; in whiche trety hit was seide that noo thynge was doen to the profite of the realme, but that truse was taken unto Ester folowynge. Also in the begynnynge of the monethe of November the kynge kepede his parliamente at Northampton, where Iohn Kyrkeby was hongede for the dethe of the noble merchaunde of London. A grete subsidy was grawntede to the kynge in this parliamente, that he scholde receyve of every preste havynge benefice with other prestes and of oþer religious men vj. *s.* and viij. *d.* And of lay peple, of a man and his wife that were suffi-

Wals. Hist., i. 434.

Wals. Hist., i. 437.

f. 465 b.

Wals. Hist., i. 439.

Wals. Hist., i. 440.

Wals. Hist., i. 446.

Wals. Hist., i. 449.

ciente ij. *s.*, and alle peple after theire power, whiche exaccion
Wals. Hist., i. 450. causede moche wykkydnesse in that londe. The olde ypocrite, Iohn Wyclif, sustenede and toke the opinions of Berengarius
Wals. Hist., i. 452. of the sacrament in the awter, and deceyved moche peple. A f. 405 a. cardinalle come into Ynglonde þat yere with the duke of Tassilia abowte the begynnynge of the monethe of Marche, with mony oþer noble men sende from the kynge of Boemia, whiche callede hym emperoure, for matrimony to be contracte betwene the kynge of Ynglonde and his sustyr. Whiche cardinalle gate grete goodes in this londe, and departede with grete rewardes
Wals. Hist., i. 453. of the kynge also. And abowte this tyme Edmund Langeley erle of Cantebrigge, and the broþer of þe erle of Warwyke, and Syr Mathewe Cowrtenay, toke theire iourney to Portyngale to helpe that kynge oppressede moche by the kynge of Speyne, and that he myȝhte conquere the realme of Speyne by reason of the duke of Lancastre his broþer whiche maryede the heire of Speyne. But the seide hoste commyn into that cuntre in savegarde, thei did noo thynge for the especialle cause of theire commynge; but that the sonne of the erle of Cantebrygge maryede the doȝhter and heire of the kynge of Portyngale. In the yere paste, as hit is schewede afore, the kynge receyvyde a grete tallage of the cleregy and laymen, whereby a grete[1] trowblede
Wals. Hist., i. 454. was causede in the realme. For the enemy of pease sawede a dedely sede, of whom a corrupte frute did aryse and growe, whiche hade destroyede utterly the realme of Ynglonde, but that the moder of Criste putte to the honde of mercy and of clemency. This sede was avarice, the roote of alle synne, whiche brouȝhte furthe the corrupte frute of discorde, poysonynge moche peple unto dethe. For diverse ministres of the kynge willynge to please hym and to displease God, seide to hym that the seide tallage was not truly alleviate to the utilite of þe kynge. Wherefore thei offrede to pay a certeyne somme of money to the kynge, so that he wolde ȝiffe to theyme licence and auctorite; and so diverse of theyme, havynge wrytynge of the kynge, departede into diverse costes of Kente and of Estesex, and intretede the peple unmanerly, and did to theyme grete injuryes also. The peple seenge that, toke cownsayle to gedre and resiste those men longynge to the kynge, and did ryse ageyne theym, and did sle somme of theym and wounded mony. This doen, þat peple dredynge the wrathe of the kynge, movede a detestable perturbacion, for thei did excite alle the communes of Estesex and of Kente ageyne the kynge and lordes, gedrenge an hoste as innumerable, and takynge men put in exile and banysched into theire capitanes, ȝiffynge to theyme these names, Iak Shepe, Iohn Wrawe, Thomas Mellor, Watte Tyler, Hobbe Carter, and Iacke Strawe. And so they wente

[1] Sic.

f. 406 b. by diverse places, somme of theim in armoure and somme of theym with owte armoure, havynge diverse weppyn of defense, with baners displayede robbynge and brennynge mony ryalle maners, and specially of the ministres or of men of lawe longynge to the kynge, and places of the retenement of the duke of Lancastre. And so that peple a c. m. in nowmbre come abowte the feste of the Holy Trinite to a place nye to London callede Blakehethe, and taryenge per a certeyne season sende to the kynge, whiche was fledde into the towre of London for drede of theyme, that he scholde comme and speke with theyme at the same place. For the same peple thou3hte that and if the kynge hade commyn to theym, thei wolde have brou3hte hym thro alle the realme, and to have fulfyllede theire wickede purpose by auctorite of hym. Whiche purpose was to have sleyne alle the noble bloode in Ynglonde of ei|per kynde, and the kynge at the laste also, and so to have disposede the realme at theire pleasure. The kynge fullefyllynge theire wylle toke with hym Symon Sudbury, archebischop of Cawnterbery, and his treasurer Robert Hales, a noble kny3hte, saylede over Thamys to theym. The peple seenge the kynge, come boldely towarde Thamys to mete hym Then the archebischop and the treasurer 3afe cownsaile to the kynge that thei scholde returne to the towre, sayenge that hit was grete perelle to goe amonge that cruelle peple, and so the kynge returnede to the towre. The peple seenge the kynge returne cryede with a lowde voyce, "Treason, treyson," makynge grete haste to London; whiche entrede into þe cite in the vigille of the Corpus Christi, and did grete hurte, sleynge mony of the Flemmynges and robbynge theyme. And in the morowe folowynge they wente to the maners of Favey, longynge to the duke of Lancastre, and brente hit, not levynge oon ston unnethe on an o|per, fyndynge þer grete goodes, as clothes, precious stones, golde and silvyr, takynge suche thynges as they cowthe cary with theyme, and brennynge the residu, the seide duke of Lancastre beynge in the marches for to trete for pease betwene the realmes off Ynglonde and of Scotlonde, whom thei wolde have sleyne with goode wylle and if they my3hte haven taken hym. That doen, thei wente to Clerkenwelle, where they destroyede mony howses and a grete parte of the churche, and destroyede moche wyne founde þer after that thei hade drunke unto theire pleasure. Also thei destroyede a newe maner made but late afore by that prior with owte London for to solace hym and his bre|per þer. Also thei wente to the Temple and to the places of men of lawe, brekynge theire coffurs, and brennynge bookes and wrytynges founde þer, and departede from the cite with grete goodes. And the kynge with alle the noble men of that cite durste not 3iffe batelle to theyme, in whiche tyme chorles hade gover-

Wals. Hist. i. 456.

Wals. Hist. i. 459.

f. 407 a.

nayle and lordes were subjectes. And in the day nexte folowynge thei wente to a place callede Milende with owte London, sendynge to the kynge and commaundynge hym to comme to that place to theym unarmede with fewe peple; and if he wolde not comme thei scholde destroy the towre, and the kynge scholde not escape with his lyfe. The kynge havynge not audacite to displease þeym, takenge grete thoughte how he scholde, wente to theyme with grete drede of his lyfe. And so the yates of the towre open, a grete multitude of theym entrede into hit, and inquiryde with grete diligence for the archebischop and for the treasurer and oþer ministres of the kynge whom thei did hate. The noble men founde were hedede, and xv. oþer men sleyne, and mony escapede mervellousely whom they wolde have sleyne. This cruelle peple toke downe the hedde of Iohn Mustreworthe, a fals traytour, of whom mencion is made afore, from London brygge, and sette the hedde of the archebischop of Cawnterbery þer, naylynge faste his cappe to his forhede. The kynge commynge to that place as he hade in commaundemente, apperede amonge theym as a lambe amonge wulfes, ȝiffenge grete honor to peple beynge abowte; whom þat peple did beholde with a bostuous and a frowarde contenaunce, rechynge to hym diverse peticions redacte into wrytynge, to the grete hurte of the realme and of the churche, seyenge utterly that he scholde not departe from theyme untylle that he hade confermede theyme by his letters patent. The firste peticion was that he scholde make alle men fre thro Ynglonde and quiete, so that þere scholde not be eny native man after that tyme. Also an oþer peticion was, thei desirede the kynge to pardon alle the seide peple, and every man of theyme, for alle transgressions made ageyne the kynge, treason, felony, and for extorcions made by theyme in eny place, and that he scholde grawnte to theym to lyve in reste and pease. Also that the same lige men and subjectes scholde have liberte to bye and to selle in alle cites, burghes, and townes þro Ynglonde. Also that noon acre of londe scholde excede iiij.*d.* f. 407 b. Also they desyrede mony other thynges into þe prejudice of þe realme. The kynge seynge that he cowthe not escape from theym, grawnte to theire peticions, and sealede theym by his letters patent, and departede by licence from theyme. In the iiij^{the} day after, whiche was on Saturday, the kynge did ryde after meyte to Westemonastery to visitte seynte Edward kynge, and to see if that they hade doen eny hurte þer. Whiche returnynge from thens by Smythfelde founde alle that place fulle of theym. And Water Tyler, oon of theire governours, come to þe kynge with a frowarde contenaunce, with his cappe on his hedde, chargynge and commaundynge the kynge to correcte and amende the letters that he toke to theym. And þat tyme oon man was not abowte the kynge that durste rebuke in that

Wals. Hist., i. 461.

Wals. Hist., i. 463.

he did not reverence to þe kynge; but at þe laste William Walworthe, marciall of London, rebukede Wat Tyler, and wounded hym soore with his swerde, and an oþer of theym beynge by hurte the seide William soore. And soone after a grete multitude of theym cryede, "Where is oure governoure?" The kynge beynge amonge theym, seide, "Folowe me, y am youre "governoure;" and so thei folowede hym into þe feldes withowte London; where men longynge to the kynge did sle mony of theym, and so the peple were dispersed, havynge noo audacite to schewe theire hedes after that tyme; and so this grete rumor was mitigate thro the helpe of Godde. That doen, the kynge made incontinentli, or anoon after, the seide William Walworthe knyȝhte, and other iij. or iiij. of the noble men of the cite, and made Syr Robert Knolles capiteyn of þat cite of London, causynge the capiteyns of that unhappy hoste to be souȝhte and to heded if thei myȝhte be founde. The seide Syr William Walworthe causede the hedde of the archebischop, sette on the brygge of London, to be taken downe, and to be kepede with grete reverence, settynge on that brygge the hedde of Watte Tyler. In whiche tymes the communes off Sowthefolke, Northefolke, Huntyndon, and of oþer cuntres abowte, made lyke insurreccions, destroyenge mony maners and places, and slenge also mony men. Whiche peple did sle cruelly, in the monastery of Seynte Edmundbery, Syr Iohn Candische justice to the kynge, and the prior of that place, with his chapeleyne. Hit is open and expresse that the seide peple entende the destruccion of the realme and of þe churche, for theire werkes ȝiffe experience, and confessions, whom we schalle expresse in theire ordre and place. Hyt may be schewede by theire werkes, for thei did sle the hedde of the churche of Ynglonde, þe archebischop of Cawnterbery. Also unto the hurte of the feithe of Criste thei compelledē maisters of gramer to swere that thei scholde not teche after that tyme; also thei brente olde munimentes, and did sle men of lawe, that þer scholde not oon man remayne þat scholde knowe newe munimentes from olde. Hit was grete perelle þat tyme to have be knowen for a clerke, and specially if that he bare pennes and ynke at his gyrdle. And that thei intended the destruccion of þe realme, hit may be schewēde by the confession of Iohn Strawe, whiche was chiefe capiteyn amonge theym after Wat Tyler, whiche perceyvynge that he scholde dye, seide: "When we were at "Blakehethe and sende for the kynge, oure purpose was to "have sleyne alle knyȝhtes, esqwyers, and gentylmen þat hade "commen with hym, and to have brouȝhte the kynge with us "from place to place, that thro his presence alle þe commune "peple myȝhte have drawen to oure companye; and when that "we hade gedrede a grete multitude of peple, we wolde have "sleyne alle the lordes of the londe sodenly, whiche wolde have

Wals. Hist., i. 464.

f. 408 a.

Wals. Hist. ii. 9-10.

" ȝiffen cownsaile or resistence ageyne us. And specially we
" wolde have destroyede the places of hospitalaryes, the kynge,
" bischopps, chanons, monkes possessionate, and alle men of
" churche, the frers excepte oonly, whiche scholde have minist-
" erede the sacramentes of the churche to theym. That doen, we
" scholde have made lawes after oure pleasure, and Walter
" Tyler kynge of Kente, and oþer men in oþer cuntres; and
" in that oure purpose was lette by the seide archebischop, we
" hade hym in grete despite and hate. And also we hade in-
" tendede to have brente the cite of London in that same day
" in whom Wat Tyler was sleyn, and to have taken þe goodes
" of the cite and to have disposede theyme after oure pleasure.
" This was oure purpose, as God helpe me in the ende of my
" lyfe." And mony of theym confessede the same thynges. Also
þe letters of manimission whom the kynge had grauntede to
theyme were publischedein mony costes of Ynglonde, insomoche
that natif men did ryse ageyne theire lordes and began to
resiste theyme, seyenge that thei were free, whom theire lordes
suffrede as for a tyme. These þynges y-paste, the kynge com-
maundede all the lordes of the realme to comme to London in
alle haste, that thei myȝhte make provision ageyne the seide f. 408 b.
Wals. Hist., ii. 19. peple. Where hit was ordeynede that certeyne lordes scholde
be sende into diverse cuntres where that insurreccions were
made, with a grete hoste of armede men; and the kynge wente
in his awne person into Estesex, and sette that cuntre in reste
and in peas, but a grete multitude of the peple were sleyne or
thei cowthe be reformede to pease. For as hit was seide, by
Wals. Hist., ii. 32. that trowble vij. M. were sleyne and moo. In whiche tyme a
preste, Syr Iohn Balle, disciple of maister Iohn Wyclif, was
taken at Coventre, whiche hade comfortede peple to the seide
insurreccions, seyenge that thei scholde rejoice hevyn þerby open
in his predicacions. This preste was brouȝhte to the kynge at
Seynte Alban, where he was drawen and quarterde, and wolde
not aske mercy and grace of the kynge, but despisede the kynge
utterly. Also an oþer preste of that same secte was taken in
Sowthefolke, which suffrede lyke dethe in those costes. And
after that the kynge hade causede reste in maner thro the londe,
he sende letters into every cuntre annullynge alle the articles
grawntede by hym at the importune instaunce of the commune
peple. And soone after the body of the archebischop of Cawn-
terbery with his hedde also was beryede at Cawnterbery, in
Cristechurche, with grete solennite. Pope Urban crownede in
this tyme Karolus de Pace into kynge of Sicill, as nexte by
succession after þe qwene of hit, whom he deposede by processe
of lawe, in that sche norischede longe cardinalls excommunicate
ageyne the þope. Whiche kynge entrede into the region of
Neapolis in the feste of the Trinite, whom the peple of that
region receyvyd as theire lorde withowte eny batelle, where he

toke the qwene and her lorde Otho Bruciswys, and putte theyme into sure kepynge. Also in the same yere, in the xj^the^ kalendes of October, pope Urban erect into a cardinall Adam Eston, monke of Norwiche and maister of divinite. In the same yere, in the begynnynge of the monethe of November, the kynge began to holde a parliamente at London, whiche parliament was allemoste occupyede holly to reforme pease and concorde betwene the duke of Lancastre and Syr Henricus Percy erle of Northumbrelonde; whiche cowthe unnethe be made by the kynge and the lordes of þe realme in alle that parliamente; whiche discorde was movede betwene þeim in that tretys amonge Scottes for
f. 409 a. peas for the seide insurreccion. Wherefore that parliamente was contynuede unto the feste of seynte Hillary, in whiche parliamente hit was towchede of the manimission of natife men, whiche men supposede that the kynge wolde have confermede in this parliamente that he grawntede to the commune peple in that insurreccion. But that thynge was denyede, firste by the kynge, and after by alle the lordes. Syr William Ufforde duke off Sowthefolde dyede sodenly in that parliament, in the halle at Westmonastery. Anne, suster of the kynge of Boemia, Wals. Hist., ii. 46.
after qwene of Ynglonde, londed at Dovor abowte the feste of seynte Thomas þe apostle, with a noble company, wherefore the parliament begunne was dissolvede, for the mariage of the kynge, and for the feste of Criste folowynge. Syr Edmund Wals. Hist., ii. 49.
erle of Marche diede in Yrlonde the vj^te^ kalendes of Ianuarius, after noble victoryes, by a colde in rydenge over a water, and was beryede þer for a tyme in a cathedralle churche in the feste of seynte Iohn Evangeliste, unto that tyme his body was redacte unto powdre, and after that the bones were brou3te to Ynglonde, and beryede in the monastery of Wyggemore with his progenitors. Also his moder, the cowntesse, dyede in the nones of Ianuarius folowynge, whiche was beryede with her progenitors in priory of Chanons at Brusles-ham. And in the same yere pope Urban made maister William Courteney archebischop of Cawnterbery, John Fordham bischop of Dirham, and Robert Braybok bischop of London. Karolus de Pace, cosyn to the kynge of Hungary, was crownede into kynge of Sicille by pope Urban abowte the feste of Ester, whiche entrenge into that region with a grete hoste subduede hit to hym withowte effusion of bloode, and toke the qwene also. Men callede Gandavens expellede the erle of Wals. Hist., ii. 61.
Flandres from that cuntre, and toke the towne of Burges, and did sle xx. M. of the Flemmynges, and put sege to the towne of Owdenarde, whiche thei contynuede from the feste of the Invencion of the Holy Crosse unto Cristemasse. In whiche tyme the kynge of Fraunce commynge downe to that cuntre with a grete hoste, did sle men of the city Gandavens and of the companye unto the nowmbre of xxv. M. In whiche yere, abowte þe feste

of Seynte Iohn ante port Latyne, a parliamente was holden at London, in whiche parliament Iohn Wrawe, preste and capiteyne of the commune peple, was drawen and hongede at Bury, by the desire of þe commune peple. And in the same somer the duke of Andegavy toke his journey towarde Sicille, to depose the kynge of that cuntre, for the cursed pope Clement aforeseide hade crownede the seide duke into kynge of Sicille. In this yere, þe xij. kalendes of Iunius, a grete movynge of erthe was in Ynglonde, and an oþer in þe ix^te^ kalendes of the same moone. In whiche tyme a parliament was kepede at London, in whom oon xv^the^ was grawntede to the kynge of laymen; and after that the clergy grawnted oon dyme to the kynge in this condicion, that he wolde ȝiffe helpe to the churche ageyne heretykes folowynge the doctryne of Wyclif and his folowers. For the seide conclusions, whom thei prechede openly amonge the peple, examinate were founde erroneus, fulle of heresy, and repugnant to the state of the churche. Wherefore the archebischoppe of Cawnterbery condempnede alle the oppinions as erroneus, and cursede solennely alle men prechynge, techynge, or ȝiffynge favor to þe seide conclusions openly or prively, of whatsoever state or degre he were. Also the seide metropolitan commaunded alle bischoppes of the province off Cawnterbery that thei and every bischop of theim scholde expresse þe seide monicions and inhibicions in theire diocyse, and to make inquisicions for these men prechynge that heresy. For as hit was seide, they were accompanyede unto the nowmbre of cc., somme prechynge abowte Oxenforde and in diverse cuntres ageyne prelates of þe churche, and specially ageyne religious men possessionate, sevenge that hit were a meritorious dede to take temporalle goodes awey from theyme, exhortenge peple to do so in theire sermons. And withowte dowte if thei myȝhte have contynuede in theire purpose thei hade destroyede alle the churches of Ynglonde, and consequentely the realme also. The conclusions of heresy of þe seide doctor Wiclif folowe, repugnant to the determinacions of the churche. The firste conclusion, that the substaunce of materialle brede and wyne remayne in the sacrament after the consecracion. Also anoþer conclusion, that Criste is not in that sacramente ydemptifically, veryly and really in his propre presence corporealle. Also if a bischop or preste be in dedely synne he may not ȝiffe ordres, or baptize, or consecrate that blissede sacrament, and if he do eny of the misterys hit avaylethe not. Also he seide and if a man or woman were duely contrite in herte alle confession externalle were superfluous and unprofitable. Also he seide that Criste awe to obbey the develle. Also and if the pope be knowen afore a man of ylle disposicion, and by consequent the membre of the develle, he hathe noo powere ȝiffen to hym on

f. 409 b.

f. 410 a.

Cristen peple but peraventure of the emperoure. Also they seide that noo man awe to be made pope after pope Urban the vj^te^, but peple scholde lyve by theire awne lawes in the maner of Grekes. Also an oper conclusion was that hit scholde be ageyne scripture that men of the churche scholde have possessions temporalle. Also he seide that accidentes remaynede not withowte a subjecte after the consecracion in the same sacrament. The conclusions erroneous and repugnant to the determinacions of the churche folowe here. The firste, that noo prelate awe not to curse eny man withowte he knowe hym excommunicate of God afore. Also he seide that a prelate cursynge in that wise was an heretyke or excommunicate. Also he seide that a prelate cursynge a clerke þat hathe appellede to the kynge and to the cownsaile of the realme, is the traytor of God, of þe kynge and of the realme. Also he seide men were heretykes that wolde leve to preche and teche the gospelle of God for eny sentence of man. Also he seide hit was lawefull to a diacon or preste to preche the gospelle of God withowte auctorite of the pope or of eny other bischoppe, so that he hade abilite of sufficient intellect. Also he seide þer was noo lorde bischop or prelate while that he were in dedely synne. Also he seide that temporall lordes myȝhte take lawefully temporall goodes from men of the churche trespassynge habitually, and dispose theym at theire pleasure. Also he seide that tythes were pure, and that men myȝhte reteyne theyme for the synnes of theire curates, and dispose þeim at þeire pleasure. Also he seide that spirituall suffrages doen by prelates or religious men for a man, profite that man noo more then other men. Also he seide that a man entrenge a private religion is made more apte to the commaundementes of God to be observede. Also he seide that seyntes whiche ordeynede privates religions with possessions or withowte synne in that institucion. Also he seide that men lyvynge in private religions be not of the feithe of Criste. Also he seide
f. 410 b. that freres were bownde to gette theire lyvynge by the laboure of their hondes and not by beggynge. Also he seide that a man ȝiffynge almes to a frere beggynge or prechenge is acursede, and the frere also. And soone after þe nativite of seynte Iohn Baptiste, the archebischop of Cawnterbery citede somme of the seide heretykes, and somme of þeim apperede at London afore hym, and appellede from his sentence and excommunicacion unto the cowrte of Rome. Amonge whom mayster Iohn Aston was sende to be imprisonede at Seynte Alban, in that he wolde not answere to certeyn poyntes and articles objecte ageyne hym. Pope Urban committe in this yere powere to the duke off Lancastre to do persecucion ageyne the kynge of Speyne, and to rejoyce that realme by dewe enheritaunce, in that he hade maryede the lawefulle heire of

Speyne. Kynge of Fraunce entrenge into Flaundres ageyne abowte that tyme, did sle men of the cite Gaudanense by treason unto the nowmbre of xxv. M., and in returnynge from Flaundres mony of the cuntre abowte Parys rebellede ageyne the kynge of Fraunce, wherefore mony of theyme were sleyn and mony were honged, and grete hurte was doen to that cite. The kynge of Portyngalle seynge the helpe promysede to hym from Ynglonde not to comme, and thenkynge that he was not able to resiste the kynge of Speyne withowte moore socoure, toke peas with the seide kynge of Speyne in this condicion, that he scholde not lette men of Ynglonde beynge with hym to departe to theire cuntre, and take to theym schippes and sufficient goodes to theire exhibicion unto theire cuntre; and so the seide men of Ynglonde come into the seide londe abowte the ende of the monethe of October. A grete and mervellous reyne was in this yere abowte the feste of seynte Thomas apostell, insomoche þat the water was encreasede þro alle Ynglonde by iiij. foote moore then ever waters were seen afore in altitude, whiche drownede mony townes and bestes and cornes, withowte bernes and howses and mony mylles and grete brygges. In the same yere pope Urban sende to Henricus Despenser, bischop of Norwiche, that he scholde doe persecucion unto the seide cursede pope and his norischers, grawntynge to alle men goynge with hym in the seide viage plener remission of theire synnes, f. 411 a.
and men ȝiffynge eny of theire goodes towarde that viage. Also the pope ȝafe power to the seide bischoppe to dispense with alle men havynge benefices seculer or religions that thei myȝte be absente from theire benefices and dignites withowte licence obtente off theire prelates, with holle percepcion of the frutes of theire benefices, as and if thei were resident per personally. Also the seide bischop hade powere to compelle alle maner religious men and freres and þe governoures of theym, if the seide bischoppe thouȝhte that hit were expedient to the seide viage. In whiche yere the cursede pope ȝafe powere to the kynge off Scotlonde to do persecucion to the kynge of Ynglonde, in that he supportede pope Urban ageyne hym. Also the duke of Andegavy, chiefe enemy to the churche of Rome entrede into Ytaly with a grete multitude off peple to delyver the qwene of Sicille from prison, cursede by pope Urban and deposede, laborynge to restore here to that realme, and to ȝiffe batelle to the pope afterwarde. Kynge Richarde began to kepe a parliament that same yere at Westmonastery, sone after the feste of seynte Hillarius; in whom a xv was grawntede to the kynge by seculer and lay peple, and oon dyme of the cleregy. In whiche tyme the kynge of Fraunce come with a grete hoste to restore the erle of Flandres to his cuntre, whom men of the cite Gaudenens mette, and loste þe victory; and a grete multitude of theim was sleyne, and an esqwyer Philippe Nacerfelde, causer of that trowble and þeir capiteyn, was sleyne þer also. The

residu of that peple fledde unto the cite Gaudanense intendynge to kepe hit untille that thei hade somme socoure from Ynglonde. Kynge Richarde began to kepe an other parliamente in the same yere at Westemonastery in the begynnynge of the monethe of Maii, to make provision for an hoste to be sende into Fraunce to remove hym if he wolde be, for he lay nye to Caleys with a grete hoste, after that he hade restorede the erle of Flaundres into his cuntre; other whether the kynge scholde go in his awne person, other what oper lordes scholde take on theym that viage. For whiche mater a contraversy was hade betwene þe lordes and þe communes; for the lorde wolde that the duke of Lancastre scholde have bene governoure of þat hoste, but the commune peple wolde not so, desyrynge the bischoppe off Norwiche to be theire governoure after the desire of þe pope, seyenge that they grawntede the seide tallage to the kynge þerfore: and so þe communes obtenede theire desyre. Where hit was ordeynede that the seide tallage
f. 411 b. scholde be payede to the bischop, where with he scholde hire sufficient men of armes to ȝiffe batelle ageyne þe enemys of Criste, and to made redy that hoste in alle haste.

Capitulum quinquagesimum primum.

The bischop of Norwiche did londe in this yere at Calys with his hoste in the feste of the apostoles Petyr and Paule, havynge with hym Syr Hewe Calverly and but fewe moo men, proved and experte in batell, but the nowmbre of men of armes and specially of foote men encreasede dayly. For mony religious men, chanons, monkes and freres, and oþer benefycede men, wente to hym after hys departynge. Whiche bischoppe wente anoon to the towne off Gravenynge, and layde sege to hit; but þe men inhabitynge hit seide utterly thei wolde not delyver hit, for thei did not holde with pope Urban, and resiste myȝhtely the bischoppe and his hoste. But the bischoppe prevaylede, and entrede into the towne, and did sle alle men in hit; and after þat he wente to Dunkyrke, and recurede that towne also in schorte space. And as sodenly xxx. M. of the communes of Flaundres come into the pleynes nye to the seide towne erly, with certeyne capiteyns and governoures, whiche hade intendede to have taken the bischop sodenly, and to have sleyne hym and his hoste. But as God wolde, the bischop hade knowlege by a lytelle space that þei cowthe unnethe make theym redy in theire armore afore theire commynge. Whiche conflicte begunne a M. men of Ynglonde were not þer in nowmbre, but the moste parte of þeim were archers, but the nowmbre encreasede; whiche men spende theire arowes so that thei causede that other hoste to flee, folowynge theym allemoste unto nyȝhte. And after þe

estimacion of men of Ynglonde, men off Flaundres were sleyne allemoste unto the nowmbre of xj. M., and xv. men of Ynglonde were sleyne in that conflict. That doen thei toke the towne of Neuport with v. oper townes and the goodes in theyme, whereby men of Ynglonde beynge per gate grete habundance off goodes. Mony men in diverse partes of Ynglonde understondynge that the hoste there gate so grete goodes, a grete multitude of men wente to that cuntre. Whiche commyn into those costes wolde f. 412 a.
not be governede, and departede unto diverse costes; whiche peple were sleyne or taken. The bischop of Norwiche wente to the towne of Ypres sone after with his hoste, and brente the subarbes of that towne, and spoylede theyme: whiche hade recurede that towne also, but that diverse men of his hoste were corrupte with money of his adversaryes. Whiche thynge was lyke to be tru, for diverse of theym were convicte in Ynglonde after afore the kynge; and so moche labor wastede, the bischop departede from the sege. That doen the bischop wente to Gravenynge and repayrede hit, taryenge per with a certeyn nowmbre of men with hym; and the marescall and constable wente to the towne of Burbourghe, whom thei hade taken also, taryenge for moore helpe to be sende from Ynglonde. But theire hoste decreasede and departede to Ynglonde for the salvacion of goodes that thei hade geten per. And soone after the kynge of Fraunce come with a grete hoste, and fixede his tentes ageyne the towne of Burburghe and sette fyre in the towne, whiche fyre was so fervente that hit brente and consumede whatsoever thynge that hit towchede. That doen the duke of Briteyn, governoure of the fyrste warde, oppugned that towne soore, but the seide men of Ynglonde resiste hym manfully, and did sle and wounde mony of his warde, for they were disposed rather to dye manfully then to be sleyne cowardly by that cursede kynge of Fraunce. But that duke of Bryteyne seenge the manhode of theyme was lothe that thei scholde be put to dethe; whiche duke had maryede to his wife the suster of the kynge of Ynglonde. Wherefore he was mediator betwene the kynge of Fraunce and peim, unnethe gettynge grawnte of theire lyfes. And the bischop beynge in the towne of Gravenynge was commaundede to avoide from hit by the kynge of Fraunce by a certeyn tyme prefixede, and so he did, but he destroyede utterly pat towne before; and so that viage was ended with schame, and after that thei saylede to Ynglonde. In whiche tyme the Scottes toke the castell of Werke on the water of Twede, and robbede hit and sette fyre in hit. Wherefore hit was ordeynede by pe commune assente that the kynge scholde entre into Scotlonde with a regalle hoste, and depresse the pryde of the Scottes. Kynge Richarde did holde a parliamente at Westemonastery in that yere in the Moneday nexte afore the feste of Alle f. 412 b.

Seyntes. In whiche parliamente oon halfe[1] dyme was grawntede to the kynge by the clergy, and and halfe a xv^the^ of lay peple, to be payede in the begynnynge of the monethe of Marche, and as moche after Ester on a condicion. Pope Urban perceyvynge that Edmund Bromfelde, monke of Bury, of whom mencion is made of afore, cowthe not obteyne the favor of the kynge to be abbot of þe seide monastery, 3afe hym an other monastery of the Holy Crosse at Burdews, sendynge powere to the bischop of London to blesse that monke electe at Bery into abbot by the convente. But the seide Edmund wolde not receyve that benefice grawntede to hym by the pope, ne noon oþer, and so he was keped at Wyndeshore. In whiche yere abowte the Annunciacion off oure Lady, John duke of Lancastre, Thomas Wodestoke, brother to hym and erle of Bukkyngham, wente to Scotlonde with a my3hty hoste. But the Scottes hydde theyme in woodes, other ells saylede over the Scotte see, knowynge that theire hoste scholde peresche, what thro hungre and thro colde; and soe the seide lordes returnede ageyne to Ynglonde, mony of their hoste loste and destroyede, withowte eny frute or victory. That viage doen, a parliamente was holden at Salisbery, in whiche parliamente that other halfe dyme grawntede in the parliamente afore on a condicion was grawntede to be payede sone after the feste of seynte Michell absolutely withowte eny condicion. In whiche parliament a frere of the ordre of Carmelites, John Latimer by name, bachiler in divinite, come to þe kynge and spake with hym secretely, sayenge that the duke of Lancastre and oþer communes of the cite of London and of oþer diverse townes in Ynglonde hade conspirede his dethe, and that he scholde prove. Wherefore the kynge callede the duke to hym, and expressede this communicacion to hym, the frere stondynge secretely behynde a curtyn. The duke denyede utterly that accusacion, submyttynge hym to suffre accordynge to that offense as ageyne his sovereigne lorde, if that accusacion cowthe be provede tru. The frere herynge that, come furthe boldely afore the kynge, affermynge þose thynges rehersede of the duke to be tru, sayenge that he scholde prove those thynges to be tru in whatsoever maner hit scholde please the kynges goode grace to
f. 413 a. assigne hym, adjectynge perto and sayenge the lord Sowche of Harneworthe to be wyttenesse and knowynge of these premisses. This doen the frere was committe to warde, and the lorde Sowche was sende for, whiche commyn afore the kynge afermede openly þat he herde never of that treason afore that tyme, whiche treason the frere seide that he scholde knowe. The frere seenge that he cowthe not be helpede by hym, seide

[1] *halfe di*] MS.

that an oþer noble esqwyer of Oxenfordeschire was wittenesse of the seide premisses. Whiche presentede to the kynge excusede hym by an othe lyke as the lorde Sowche did. The frere seenge that he myȝhte not performe his purpose feynede hym as alienate of mynde and distract. But the seide ffrere was hongede with a grete peyce of lede tyede and made faste with a strynge to his prive membres and to his feete also, and a grete fyre under theyme, and soe he was tormentede a grete space, and drawen and heded afterwarde. But hit is to be mervaylede what cruellenesse scholde move the frere to expresse suche thynges. In whiche tyme Syr John Philipotte, knyȝhte and merchaunte of London, dyede, a trusty and specialle luffer to the realme of Ynglonde, and relevede moche the kynge and the realme, levynge but fewe men after hym of nobilite so feithefull to þe realme as he was. In whiche yere John of Northampton, a cytesynne of London, was convicte at Radyng in the presence of the kynge and of mony oþer noble men, by the accusacion of his awne preste, for grete and grevous offenses; where he was condempnede to perpetualle prison, and his goodes were eschete to the use of the kynge. Mony men say that cytesynne was accused falsely by the meanes of Nicholas Bambri, cytesynne of London also, and that he ȝafe a grete summe of goode to that preste to accuse his maister. In whiche tyme maister William Cowrtenay, metropolitan of Ynglonde, purchasede licence of the pope that he myȝhte visite certeyne diocyses in the province of Cawnterbery, whiche auctorite scholde endure oonly by the space of ij. yere. And so soone after Ester he began to visitte the bischop of Excestre, whiche visitacion the bischoppe admitte; but he began to resiste the archebischoppe, in that he ȝafe ordres within his diocyse within the tyme of the seide visitacion, and so a grete discorde was movede betwene theyme. f. 413 b.
For a man bryngynge a letter from the archebischop was compellede to eite the letter and seale also; and a man longynge to þe bischop of Excestre was compellede to eite the crawcows and leder of his schoone. Whiche thynges were doen, the archebischop and the bischop knowynge not of þeim, and pease was reformede betwene þeim by labor of theire frendes, and the bischop submitte hym mekely to þe visitacion of the metropolitan. That doen, the metropolitan contynuate his visitacion by the diocyse of Exestre, of Bathe, and of Worcestre, whom he visitte after personally, and departed at that tyme to London to the parliament. In tyme of whiche visitacion an oþer dissencion was movede betwene hym and the abbot of Evisham, by his men the enemys of peas. For the seide abbot mette the archebischop afore he come to his monasterye, preyenge hym entierly to vent his pleasure at a maner place of the seide monastery; that thynge grawntede by the archebischop he departede. But soone after his departynge, diverse men longynge

to the archebischop seide the abbot intended fraude, and wolde not admitte utterly that visitacion by certeyne privileges grawntede to hym by the lawe. Neverthelesse the seide archebischoppe commynge to that monastery was receyvede by the abbot and convente of þat place with grete solennite at the northe durre of that churche, where thabbot expressede openly that hit was not his wylle ne intencion to resiste the visitacion of his sovereyn and metropolitan in that monastery of Evisham, neiþer in eny oþer churche longynge to hit. And so the archebischop entrenge into that churche, and makynge his preyers afore the hye awter departede from that place unto that towne to his ynne. Also kynge Richarde began to holde his parliamente at London in the same yere in the day folowynge the feste of seynte Martyn, whom he contynuede by a certeyn season. In whiche parliamente the clergy of Ynglonde grawntede to þe kynge at his peticion halfe a dyme to be
f. 414 a. payede after Ester, and an oþer halfe dyme in this condicion, that he wold go in his awne person to depresse the pride of men of Fraunce, and] the lay peple grawntede ij. xv^the^ in the seide condicion. In whiche tyme a conflicte of ij. men was made þer betwene Iohn Walische esqwiere and a man of Navarria, but the seide man of Navarria faylenge in the probacion of his accusacion was drawen and hongede. Abowte whiche tyme the castelle of Berwyk was taken by treason of a Scotte, whiche dwellede with the capiteyn, a sqwyere of Ynglonde; whom the Scottes kepede myȝhtely ageyne men of Ynglonde. The erle of Northumbrelonde seenge that hyt cowthe not be delyverede withowte grete charge and costes, dredynge also the indignacion of the kynge, promysede to þeim a M. li. in this condicion, that thei wolde departe and delyver þe castelle withowte eny hurte. The Scottes receyvynge that summe departede from the castelle. Neverthelesse this mater objecte ageyne theym in a trety that thei brake pease and promyse of truse taken betwene þe realmes of Ynglonde and of Scotlonde, thei seide that men off Ynglonde brake promyse afore by takynge diverse of theire schippes on the see; wherefore thei seide thei wolde sette that oon ageyne that other. The duke of Andegavy, principalle enemy of the churche of Rome and of the realme of Ynglonde, dyede excommunicate and inpenitent, as hit is seide, þe xx^ti^ day of þe monethe of September in this yere, of the pestilence. In whiche yere kynge Richarde intended and ordeynede to holde a parliamente at Waltham, unto whom lordes were callede, unto whiche cownsaile and parliament the duke of Lancastre was desyrede to comme as chiefe cownseilloure to the kynge. But diverse men beynge nye to the kynge, and luffynge the seide duke, sende wrytynge to hym secretely that he scholde absente hym from þat parliamente, for an if he come thyder he was but a dedde man. The duke of Lancastre herynge that, sende wry-

tynge to the kynge, besechynge his hiheuesse to holde hym excusede if hit were his pleasure as for that tyme. But the kynge[1] to hym on his ligence that he scholde comme in eny wyse. The duke willynge to kepe his ligence and lyfe also, toke with hym a myȝhty hoste, and come to the kynge besechynge the kynges hyenes not to be displeasede in that he come with so moche peple, sayenge that he dredde to dye. Where the kynge made a protestacion by the confirmacion of an othe that he hade never knowlege of that treason afore f. 414 b. that tyme. And after that in Lente maister William Courteney, archebischop of Cawnterbery, rebukede the kynge for his insolent lyfe and ylle governaunce in the realme longe contynuede, as hit longede to the seide metropolitan to do, sayenge withowte he applyede hym to sadder governayle, somme inconvenientes wolde folowe with ynne schorte space, bothe to hym and to the realme. The kynge havynge grete indignacion perof, wolde have smyten the archebischop, but that Thomas Wodestoke, uncle to the kynge, causede hym to refreyne that passion of wrathe. Neverthelesse the kynge rehersede mony wordes of obprobry to the archebischop, and conceyved ageyne hym grete indignacion, and so the archebischop departed and wente into ferre costes from the kynge. Wherefore the seide archebischop apperede not at diverse cownsailes where that eny subsidy schole be grawntede to the kynge. In whiche yere and feste of seynte Thomas of Cawnterbery, archebishop and martir, the organ of the develle, the myrroure of ypocrites, the sawer of discorde, the promptuary of adulacion, maister Iohn Wiclif, was taken with a palisy horribly thro alle his body; neverthelesse he sende furthe his fals spiritte in the day of seynte Silvesters, and by meritte, for he hade despysede hym ofte with his tonge. In whiche yere Syr Edwarde le Bowser was made capiteyne of the cite Gaudanense, for the peple of that cite desyrede of kynge Richarde a capiteyne of Ynglonde; þro the prudence and circumspeccion of whom men of Fraunce were confusede, the oþer men not vexede in eny wyse. In whiche yere abowte the feste of Pentecoste, pope Urban the vj^te^ degraded vj. cardinalles: the cardinalle of Venyse; the cardinalle of Ynglonde, Syr Adam Aston, somme tyme monke of Norwiche; and the cardinalle of Janua; worschipfulle religious men and professors in divinite. Also the cardinall Zang, the cardinalle Corsiensis, and the cardinalle Tarentyn, men of noble bloode; and the vij. cardinalle was of Reatinensis, whom the pope seide to be mover and causer of alle that grete trowble. But withowte dowte that cardinalle was seide to have be a man of grete prudence and a doctor of lawes, also chieffe cownseloure of Charls of Peas, kynge of

[1] Sic in MS.

Sicille. And soone after a grete discorde was movede betwene
f. 415 a. the seide kynge and the pope, in that the pope keped not certeyn promisses made to that kynge: and the noble cite of Liceria, into whom the pope was fledde, was segede and taken and brente, the castelle excepte, into whom the pope was fledde. And so the pope was coacte to comme furthe, whether he wolde or nay, and to desyre pease of the seide kynge, whom he obtened with grete difficulte, and so he was suffrede to departe. In whiche yere Syr Robert Stretton, bischop of Coventre and off Lichefelde, dyede; whom maister Walter Shirawe, doctor of decrees, and bearer of the kynges prive seale, succedid by eleccion of chanons of Lichefelde and of monkes of Coventre. Whiche was consecrate solennely in the same yere, in the Sonneday nexte folowynge the festes of Hillarius and Remigius, of the archebischop of Cawnterbery at Westmonastery, with xij. oper bischoppes assistent, kynge Richarde, the kynge of Armeny, with the qwene of Ynglonde, mony dukes, erles, lordes, and oper noble men presente. In whiche yere a grete dissencion was movede betwene the kynge and the duke of Lancastre, by the instincte of yonge men drawynge to the kynge conspirynge into the dethe of the duke. But the seide duke havynge knowlege perof, withdrawede hym, and wente to his castelle of Powntefret, whom he instaurede with armes and vitells: whiche dissencion was reformede by the laudable labor of lady Iohan, moder to the kynge. In whiche yere a grete movynge of erthe was made abowte myddeny3hte of pe Invencion of the Holy Cross. In the same tyme a conjuncion of Jupiter and Saturn folowede in the monethe of May. Also abowte this tyme the Scottes hatynge pease, sende to the kynge of Fraunce, with whom thei be prompte ageyne the realme of Ynglonde, desyrynge helpe of hym, promittynge to hym moore then they were able to performe, seyenge that and if thei hade a lytelle helpe thei scholde destroye the kynge of Ynglonde. Wherefore the kynge of Fraunce sende to peim a M. and V. C. speres, with thynges necessary to theyme, and, as hit was seide, the Scottes and men off Fraunce gedrede togedre were X. M. in nowmbre, and so thei intendede to have entrede into the northe costes of Ynglonde, and the kynge of Fraunce in the sowthe partes of Ynglonde, with an oper hoste. Richarde kynge of Ynglonde understondynge perof, made grete haste unto Yorke, taryenge per unto that his hoste were gedrede, and
f. 415 b. by the tyme that kynge Richarde hade entrede into Scotlonde, the hoste of men of Ynglonde was seide to excede the nowmbre of a C. M. Where the kynge causede his baner to be displayede, makynge per allemoste iij. C. kny3htes, and anoon the men of Fraunce and Scottes were dispersede; somme of theyme lay in woodes and in marras, folowynge the hoste of men of Ynglonde,

oþer while sleenge men goynge for vytells and takynge diverse men of Ynglonde also. The residu of men off Scotlonde were fledde over the Scottes see and to mownteynes, and the kynge wente unto the Scottes see, and brente theire townes, corne and herbage, with the towne of Edinburghe and the abbey of Meuros of the ordre Cistercians; and mony men movede the kynge to have goen over the Scottes see, but he wolde not in eny wise, in that thei hade not vitells for the hoste, and so the kynge returnede into Ynglonde. In whiche viage toward Scotlonde Syr R. Stafforde, sonne and heire of þe erle of Stafforde, was sleyne by treason by John Holand, broþer to the kynge by reason of his moder. The kynge havynge knowlege þerof, was trowblede, takynge from his broþer alle londes, rentes, offices, and dignites; and the seide John Holand fledde to Beverlay to enjoy the privilege of that place. After that the kynge sende letters to his moder, commaundenge her that sche scholde not supporte John Holande here son, neiþer norische hym in eny wise. Wherefore the seide lady moder to the kynge toke soe grete sorowe that sche dyede with ynne þe space of iij. or iiij. dayes folowynge, and was beryede at Stafforde. The kynge of Fraunce disposede to have entred into the realme of Ynglonde, hade knowlege that men of the cite Gaudanense hade taken the towne of Ledam, in whom þei founde moche vitells and a M. and lxxx^{ti} tunnes of wyne, and so the purpose of the kynge of Fraunce was chaungede. Whiche kynge come with his hoste unto the seide towne, and segede hit, makynge mony sawtes ageyne the men in hit. The peple in hit seenge thei cowthe not prevayle, committe the kepynge off the towne to olde men and women whiche were in hit; and the men of the cite Gaudanensis brekynge the tunnes, departede prively unto theire cite, that oþer hoste havynge noo knowlege of þat departynge. The kynge of Fraunce entrede into that towne, perceyvede welle that he was mokede, for hit was as vacante or voide. Abowte the feste of the Exaltacion of the Holy Crosse, the schippes of the kynge of Fraunce commynge from Flandres were dispersed and broken by an horrible tempeste in the see, and revede in diverse places longynge to Ynglonde. For men of Caleys toke v. c. men that were commyn to londe and salvede. And in the thryd day folowynge, men of Caleys fauȝhte soore ageyne lxxij^{ti} schippes of men off Fraunce, and toke xviij. of theire schippes and oon grete barge in whom lxx. men of armes were sleyne and taken. And in the thrydde day folowynge the seide conflicte, men of Caleys fauȝhte ageyne xlv. schippes returnynge from Scluse, and causede alle theyme to fle, ij. schippes excepte and oon carykke, whom they toke with grete goodes, in whom ij. cardinalles off Fraunce were with cc. and xxvj. schippe men and sawdyours. In whiche yere also Barnabo the lorde Mediolaneuse was taken and committe to

f. 416 a.

prison by his sonne in lawe, whiche childe schewede grete liberte to þe peple of þat cuntre, and destroyede a grete multitude of dogges, whom ryche men of þat cuntre and poore men also did fynde to the use of his fader, whereby he was luffede moche of that peple. In whiche tyme þe kynge of Portyngall dyede, whiche was poysenede by hys qwene, and the maister of the Hospitall, a noble knyȝhte, was electe to be kynge ageyne his wylle, doynge mony grete victoryes ageyne the kynge of Speyne by helpe of fewe Ynglische men. But the kynge of Speyne knowynge men of Ynglonde to luffe golde, corrupte mony of theyme to betray the kynge of Portyngall. The seide treason expressede to the kynge of Portyngall, men of Ynglonde were taken and putte into prison. In whiche tyme pope Urban the vi^te^ was segede by Charls Pease, kynge of Sicille, whom the Ianuense did delyver, and brouȝhte hym to Ianua with grete honore. But thei wolde not suffre hym to departe from that cite untill that he hade payede to theym an inestimable summe of golde, whiche delyverede hym raþer for hit then for the luffe of God. The kynge of Speyne havynge
f. 416 b. with a pagan kynge of Garnade with a infinite multitude entrede into Portyngall to ȝiffe batell to the kynge, in that he norischede men of Ynglonde. Wherefore the kynge of Portyngall dredde soore to ȝiffe batell to theym with so fewe men as he hade in that tyme with hym. Neverthelesse men of Ynglonde comfortede hym moche, and desirede to have þe vowarde of that batelle, and so thei hade unnethe vj. c. men in nowmbre. The grete and myȝhty hoste of Speyne and of the Pagans seenge so fewe peple ageyne þeim, come hastily ageyne theyme; but men of Ynglonde spende theire arowes welle at that batell, in so moche that the kynge of Speyne was feyne to fle, xx. M. of his hoste sleyne afore. And soone after, the seide kynge of Portyngall hade a glorious victory ageyne the seide hoste of Speyne, sleynge of theyme unto the nowmbre of xv. M. men. In whiche yere sawdyours of Caleys entrenge into the see in the monethe of September toke xxij. schippes moore and lesse of men of Fraunce goynge to Scotlonde and returnynge from that cuntre, and the men in theym taken, sleyne, other drownede, of whom somme were chargede with vitells, somme with marchandyse, and somme with men of armes. Kynge Richarde began to holde his parliamente at Westemonastery in the xiij. kalendes of the monethe of November, in whiche parliamente a new dignite was create not seene in Ynglonde afore that tyme. For the kynge willenge to preferre the erle of Oxenforde, made hym markesse of Oxenforde, oþer mony noble men of the londe havynge grete indignacion þerof, in that he excellede not oþer noblemen in bloode, wisdome, neiþer in manhode. In whiche parliamente the kynge ordeynede also that the seide markesse scholde go to

Yrlonde with a grete powere to conquere alle Yrlonde from Yrysche men, and to make the londe subiecte to hym, and to gette what he myȝhte, reservynge to the kynge superiorite. Also the kynge did grawnte that the seide markesse scholde receyve of hym towarde his costes by v. yere folowynge in every yere v. M. marke. In whiche parliamente newe dukes were create. Also thauȝhe the kynge hade ȝiffen to theym that name in the precincte of Scottelonde. Thomas Wodestoke erle of Bukkyngham was callede duke of Glocestre, and syr f. 417 a.
Edmund Langley, erle of Cantebrigge, was callede duke off Yorke, ȝiffenge to either of londes and rentes unto the valoure of a M. li., willynge and grawntynge to theyme that theire heires male scholde be calede dukes for ever. Syr Michell Atte Poole, whiche was chaunceller of Ynglonde, was made erle of Sowthefolke, to whom the kynge ȝafe to þe valoure of a M. marke, a man moore apte to marchandyse then to chevallery. In whiche parliamente oon dyme was grawnted to the kynge of the clergy to the supportacion of his men, and oon xv^the^ and a halfe of seculer and lay men. In whiche tyme þer was a gentylle man at Cudlynton, Thomas Compereworthe by name, infecte with the erroure and heresy of doctor Wyclif, not usynge to pay tythes to the churche neiþer to be confessede. This gentille man was accusede to the bischop of Lincolne of the seide heresyes and errours, whom the bischop pursuede, but he cowthe not fynde hym in eny wise. Wherefore the seide bischop purchased of the kynge by his letters patent that what so ever man myȝhte take hym scholde make hym sure in the nexte castelle. The abbot of Oseney herynge that, made grete labor to take hym, in that he wolde not pay his tythes to the seide abbotte by mony yeres afore; whom the seide abbot toke at the laste in his awne place at Cudlynton, and causede hym to be brouȝhte to the castelle of Bannebery, where he taryede longe excommunicate, a competent processe made ageyne hym. Neverthelesse, a deliberacion hade betwene the archebischop of Cawnterbery and a bischop of Lincolne, the mater and charge and examinacion was committe to the chaunceller of Oxenforde and to oþer doctors. Afore whom the seide esqwyer apperede in the day prefixede at Oxenforde, whiche answerede to the inquisicions made to hym after the oppinions of maister Wyclif; and so he was convicte þer as an heretike of his awne confession. Whiche esqwyer brouȝhte afore the iugges did see mony of his secte and of his movers to that heresy, but they were dombe and durste not speke, and departede. The esqwyer perceyvynge that, thouȝhte veryly that thei hade inducede into a wronge way, whiche was a specialle cause of his conversion to the unyte of the churche, and to take penaunce for his offense. Wherefore he abiurede the thynges usede by hym afore as erroneous and full of heresy, promis- f. 417 b.

synge that he wolde not sustene eny oppinion erroneus after that tyme. Where he was condempnede in xl^{li} li to be payede to the abbot of Oseney for his expenses, whiche summe was pardonede by the abbot for x. li. But the seide gentilman brouȝte his tythes to the place of the seide abbot with in ij. dayes after that he come to his place. Also hit was injoynede to hym in parte of penaunce that he scholde go afore the generalle procession in the ende of the terme with a cerge or taper of wexe in his honde. But that penaunce was not fulle-fyllede, for he dyede longe afore þat tyme, what þro infirmite causede by sorowe and what for schame. In the somer folowynge the kynge of Armeny come into Ynglonde to trete for pease betwene the realmes of Ynglonde and of Fraunce, but truly þer was noo thynge doen þer to eny effecte, but that the seide kynge receyvede a M. marke of þe kynge of Ynglonde, and hade the letters patent of the same kynge that he scholde have a M. marke yerely by the tyme of his lyfe. For, as men seide, the kynge of Armeny was expulsede from his realme by the Tartarous, and so by that occasion he gate grete goodes of mony Cristen kynges, and lyvyde moore meryly then and if he hade bene in his awne realme. Charls de Pease, kynge of Sicille, doynge grete persecucion ageyne the pope, dyede in this yere excommunicate, whiche sentence of vengeaunce the pope usede moche that tyme, but withowte he wolde have venged hym by temporalle, if he hade accompanyde and geten a nombre of men sufficient. Somme men say that kynge of Sicille was sleyne by treason by a knyȝhte as he sate at meyte, in the day and howre in whom he hade intendede to have sleyne the pope. In whiche tyme Iohn duke of Lancastre obtenynge licence of the pope, toke with hym an hoste of men of Ynglonde to ȝiffe batell ageyne the kynge, for that realme was dewe to hym by reason of his wife, eldeste doȝhter of Petyr, some tyme kynge of Speyne. Wherefore the pope grawntede to alle mene goynge in that viage with hym plener remission of theire synnes, in that the kynge of Speyne was a pagan, havynge the seide privilegys grawntede to hym by the pope lyke as the bischop of Norwiche hade afore. But men hade lytelle devocion in that tyme to ȝiffe eny goodes
f. 418 a. to go in that viage, in that pardon was so habundant. Neverthelesse the seide duke toke his iourney to the see, but he was coacte to tary for pennury of wynde untille that he hade waste allemoste goodes brouȝhte with hym. And soone after thei hade a wynde whiche brouȝte theym into Briteyne nye to the castelle of Breste, where the Britons erecte ij. municions to prohibite the passage of the seide duke. Neverthelesse the seide duke of Lancastre was comfortede by his knyȝhtes, for diverse of theym goynge furthe with parte of that hoste, and toke that castell and oþer places of defense with

grete goodes, and destroyede theyme. Whiche goodes departede, and the wynde arysenge, they londede in the secunde tyme in Speyne in the haven of Groyn, in the vigille of St. Laurence, with alle theire schippes; whiche taryenge þer did noo thynge worthy commendacion, but that allemoste alle the lordes of Ynglonde toke theire leve þer and dyed, and lxxxx^ti kny3htes dyede þer of the flixe. And soone after that the duke returnede into Aquittanny with the residu of his peple, taryenge in the province Baiocense, abydenge for a condicion off pease to be made betwene hym and the kynge of Speyne: the prolocutor as for þat mater was syr Thomas Percy. In whiche yere maister John Harewell dyede, and maister Walterus Sharlowe, bischop of Lichefelde, reioycede that seete of Bathe, and maistyr Ricardus Scrope, doctor of lawes, was consecrate solennely into the bischop of Coventre and Lichefeld. Also in the same [1] in the duchery of Austrye fortune schewede mutabilite in victoryes betwene the duke and the communes of that cuntre. For the seide duke was a covetous man and contrarious to pope Urban, havynge envy that pilgremes scholde come by his costes to Rome, and so he wolde not suffre pilgremes to have passage by his cuntre withowte they payede to hym a tribute importable for þeim. The peple of that cuntre seynge that pilgremes my3hte not comme thro that cuntre, by whom thei hade grete lucre, compleynede to the duke, preyenge hym that thei my3hte enioye the liberte hade afore in the tyme of oþer men. Whiche despisede of the duke wente to theire places, and come with a grete hoste and 3afe batelle to the duke; but the commune peple not experte in batell was taken, sleyne, and put into captivite unto a grete nowmbre. Neverthelesse the commune peple wolde not f. 418 b. leve by that conflicte, but thei gedrede a newe hoste, and come to 3iffe batell to the duke ageyne. That duke trustynge moche in the victory hade afore, come boldely unto theyme, where he was sleyne anoon with alle the states of that cuntre. Abowte whiche tyme kynge Richarde hade wrytynge that the kynge of Fraunce intendede to sege Caleys, wherefore he sente to that towne of Caleys syr Henricus Percy, callede of þe Scottes for his manhode syr Henricus Haatespur, with a grete multitude of peple of the realme of Ynglonde. Whiche wente anoon into Pikardy, and toke grete prayes, and did grete hurte to that cuntre; whiche havynge knowlege that the kynge of Fraunce wolde entre into the realme of Ynglonde and not to sege Caleys, returnede to the realme of Ynglonde, that he my3hte mete the kynge of Fraunce þer. Men of London perceyvynge for trawthe that the kynge of Fraunce hade ordeynede a my3ty hoste and fleete of schippes to entre into the realme of Ynglonde, began to drede, and to seche places of refute, and

[1] Sic., *yere* should no doubt be supplied.

mony to hyde þeim, as and if the kynge of Fraunce hade be at the cite with his hoste. They did renne abowte lyke madde men, and pullede downe and destroyed howses contiguate or ioynede to the walles, when hit was so that noo man of Fraunce hade entrede schippes to comme to Ynglonde: whiche citesynnes schewe a grete mustre in pease not worthy to be commended in batell. But after that, men of Ynglonde kepynge the see, toke nye to the haven of Sandewich, of the enemyes of Ynglonde, v. grete schippes and vj. carrykes. And the Ianuenses so taken desyrede helpe of Michell Attepole chaunceller of Ynglonde, moore apt to marchandyse then to þe use of chevalery, whiche ȝafe to þeim for amendes a grete summe of the kynges treasure, and suffrede theym to departe. Whiche saylenge into Scluse, did sle mony pilgremes of Ynglonde, whiche hade entrede into theire schippes, and hade ȝiffen to theym certeyn wages to brynge theym to places of theire pilgremages. And soone after that, men of Ynglonde toke ij. grete schippes
f. 419 a. longynge to the kynge of Fraunce, in whom a grete parte of the walle of tre was whom the kynge of Fraunce hade intendede to have piȝhte in Ynglonde. Also the maister of that werke was taken also, whiche was a man of Ynglonde, and mony gunnes with grete plente of powdre; whiche walle of tre was sette up at Sandewiche ageyne men of Fraunce, whom they ordeynede to sette ageyne men of Ynglonde. And at the feste of seynte Michell folowynge a parliamente was holden at London; to whom men of armes and archers come from alle the costes of Ynglonde that they myȝhte be redy to resiste the kynge of Fraunce, whiche was redy with xij. dukes and xxvj: erles and oþer lordes to have entrede into Ynglonde, but allemyȝhty God schewede resistence, and did lette that iournay. In whiche parliamente kynge Ricardus made syr Robert le Vere, somme tyme erle of Oxenford, in that tyme markesse of Dublyn, into duke of Yrlonde, and afterwarde to be kynge, if fortune wolde favor, mony noble barons and governoures of the realme havynge grete indignacion þerof, in that he excelled not oþer men in nobilite of bloode, neiþer in prudence, neiþer in manhode. Michael Atte Pole, chaunceller of the realme, was convicte of the knyȝhtes of the parliamente of diverse articles of treason ageyne the kynge and the realme, for whiche cause he was deposede from the office of chauncellary and multed in xx. M. marke to be payede to the kynge, and was iuggede worthy dethe by iuggemente of the parliamente. But these doen were gretely ageyne the pleasure of the kynge, insomoche that he annullede that processe hade in the parliament ageyn Michell Atte Pole. Also the seide Michell hade intended by sovereigne supportacion to have desyrede his accusers unto a soper at London, and to have sleyne theyme sodenly with the duke of Glocester also. In

whiche tyme the kynge of Armeny, havynge experience of the liberalite of the kynge of Ynglonde, intendede to have commyn into the seide londe for a trety of pease betwene the realmes, when hit was so þat the kynge of Fraunce was redy to have entrede into the realme of Ynglonde. But with owte dowte he desyrede and luffed money moore then peas, and f. 419 b.
golde moore then the kynge or the realme. Wherefore the noble men of the realme wolde not condescende to the kynge that he scholde comme into the realme, knowynge that he was but a tryfuller. The kynge of Fraunce lyenge at the haven of Scluse from the kalendes of the monethe of Auguste unto þe vigill of Alle Seyntes, to tary for wynde, entrede into the see in the same vigill with a pleasant wynde, and departede from that haven. And when the schippes were in the grete see as xx^ti^ myle from that haven after estimacion, a contrarious wynde did aryse and compellede theyme to returne, causynge mony of the schippes to be broken in entrenge into that haven of Scluse. Thro whiche occasion Ynglonde was delyvered from trowble, and the kynge of Fraunce made soory, blasphemynge God and the holy seyntes in hevyn, in that they wolde not suffre hym to performe his wickede purpose. Unto this tyme the parliamente expressede afore was contynuede for these grete causes assignede, in whom oon halfe dyme was grawntede to the kynge by the clergy, and the halfe parte of oon xv^the^ by the lay peple. In whiche parliamente syr Thomas Arundell and bischop of Ely was made chaunceller of Ynglonde, a man preferrynge gold afore ry3hteousenesse. And syr Thomas Fordham, bischop of Dirham, was deposede from þe office of the treasurye; and Iohn Gilberte, frere of the ordre [of] Prechours, and bischoppe of Herforde, was subrogate into that office, a man that hade moore thryfte in tonge then in feythe. That doen, þe kynge causede Michael Attepole to dwelle in his cowrte with the duke of Yrlonde and Alexander Nevylle, archebischop off Yorke, ageyne the wylle of mony noble men of þe realme. After whiche tyme the seide lordes drawynge to the kynge, movede hym ageyne the noble lordes of the realme, seyenge that he was not kynge but oonly by name, and oþer lordes governede the realme. The kynge toke credence to theire sayenge, and began to have the lordes suspecte, and so from that tyme he eschewede theire company, and wente and toke his disportes with the archebischop of f. 420 a.
Yorke and with the duke of Yrlonde, and oþer diverse of that wicked cownesayle. In whiche yere in the monethe of Aprile Richard erle of Arundell, and Thomas erle of Notyngham, toke the see with a ryalle hoste, and soone after thai 3afe a sore conflicte to a grete navy of schippes of Speyne, of Fraunce, and of Normandy. And the seide erle of Arundell

with his hoste reioycede the victory, and toke lxxx^{ti} schippes, mony men of armes taken and sleyne. From whiche conflicte diverse schippes fledde, whom the seide erle pursuede ij. dayes, and toke theyme and brou3hte theyme to the schippes of Ynglonde. And so they toke schippes moore and lesse unto þe nowmbre of v^{xx}, which, were chargede with wynes and specially with whyte wynes, which, causede grete solace in mony costes to whom the erle of Arundell sende those wynes, The hoste of men of Ynglonde comme to gedre, and freshe men wagede for men that were sleyne and woundede, crossede theire sayles unto the castell of Breste, whiche is the keye of Briteyne, ageyne whom men of Fraunce hade erecte oon defense or municion, and were besy to erecte an other moore my3hty and stronge þen those municions were whom the duke of Lancastre destroyede in the laste yere afore goynge towarde Speyne. Whiche municions the seide erle toke and destroyed, and departede to Ynglonde with blissynges of mony peple. But the peple beynge with the kynge, as the duke of Yrlonde, Michael Atte Pole and Walterus Burley, depraved theire actes, seyenge that thei hade not doen eny thynge on the see worthy commendacion, but that they hade escapede certeyne merchauntez, sayenge that hit hade bene better to the realme of Ynglonde to have hade theire luffe then theire malyce. After that a certyne season paste, the seide cownselle procurede that Henricus Percy, sonne of the erle of Northumbrelonde, scholde be sende to the see to defende and repelle the irrupcions of enemyes, whiche were redy in the see for hurte doen to theym by men of Ynglonde but late afore. To whom thei assignede not a sufficiente nowmbre, neither
f. 420 b. dewe favore, but thei hade grete envy that the seide Henricus Percy hade geten so noble a name bothe in Scottelonde and in Fraunce. The seide Henricus Percy not understondynge theire fals ymaginacion, other ells despisynge hit, toke that iourney, and come ageyne withowte eny hurte. And, as mony men seide, diverse of that wickede company made letters to the kynge of Fraunce that he scholde have taken ly3htely Henricus Percy; whiche letters were delyverede to syr Iohn Beauchamp off Holt, steuard to the kynge, but the seide kny3hte sende not the letters ageyne Henricus Percy. Abowte whiche tyme þer was a frere in Ynglonde of þe ordre of the Carmelites, late confessor to the duke of Lancastre, Walterus Disse by name, whiche wente not into Speyne with the duke, as hit schalle be schewede and þe causes þerof. Pope Urban the vj^{te} knowynge the realme of Speyne to be of grete rychesse, thou3hte veryly that he scholde reioyce mony commodites if the duke of Lancastre my3hte reioyce that realme, grawntede to hym a newe pardon by the

seide frere Walter Disse, whereby goodes were taken to þat pardon as innumerable. This frere made oon specialle privilege, whom he toke to a ffrere of þe ordre of Austynes named Petyr Pasteschull. The frere havynge þat liberte, began to drawe soone to the folowers of maister Iohn Wiclif, whom somme men callede Lollardes. Amonge whom he lernede that he did welle in that he lefte a private religion and toke hym to a commune lyfe, whiche was moore holy and moore sure. And at the laste, what by the malice off theym and presumpcion of that ffrere, he was movede to preche openly the vices and synnes usede amonge ffreres. This ffrere come to the churche of Seynte Christofor in London, allemoste a c. of the Lollardes folowynge hym, where he expressede so moche of the lyfe of ffreres þat peple were aschamede to here theym expressede. And somme men presente þer at that prechynge went to the ffrere Austyns, and expressede to theym of that processe made ageyne theyme. And anoon xii. or xiii. of þe freres wente to here that sermon, whiche commynge to that churche and herynge that ffrere expresse so wickedely ageyne theyme, were trowblede gretely, and oon of theym seide openly that he seide falsely of that religion. The Lollardes bytoke f. 421 a.
that ffrere and trode hym under theire feete and bete hym surely, and put the oþer freres owte of the churche, and wolde have sleyne þeim utterly but that thei fledde, seyenge and cryenge, "Lete us departe these mansleers, let us brenne those "Sodomites, and let us honge those traytours to the kynge and "to þe realme." And so thei had entendede to have sette the place of ffreres on fyre, but they were lette by the meanes of frere Thomas AscheÞorne and of his felawe, bothe professors in divinite. Also mony noble men of the cite movede theyme to departe to theire places; but the seide Lollardes kepynge that frere with theyme, movynge hym, in that he was trowblede in a sermon but late, that he wolde drawe the articles in a byllet, and moo then he expressed if that he cowthe. This frere folowynge the sensualite of theyme, made a wrytynge in whom he accusede somme of his breþer off the dethe of diverse of that convent, assignenge the names of the freres whiche were sleyne and þe names of the freres that did slee þeim, and the places in whom thei were sleyne, and where they were beryede. Also he callede theyme Sodomytes, and traytours off the realme, and mony moo articles were wryten in that bylle, Þis wrytynge was sette openly on the churche dore at Seynte Paule in London unto the moore confusion of ffreres. In the begynnynge of whiche wrytynge the frere seide he thonkede pope Urban the vjte that he was delyverede from the neste of the develle, and that he myȝhte avoide the unhappy company of theym by the helpe of his ffrendes. Mony knyȝhtes of the same secte redynge that wrytynge seide utterly that thei were tru, and toke the copy of

the seide articles. The names of þe kny3htes folowe: William Nevyle, Candawicus Clifford, Iohn Clenbow, Ricardus Sturry, Thomas Latimer, and specially Iohn Mountegu; whiche putte awey alle ymages owte from his chapell, and putte theym in secrete places, but that oon ymage of seynte Kateryne hade a prerogatyve to stonde þer. And soone after a preste, oon speciall causer and governoure of þe Lollardes, knowynge that he scholde dye, compunct and penitent for his grevous offenses
f. 421 b. doen ageyne Allemy3hty God, desyrede to have a preste to whom he my3hte be confessed. Diverse men heynge nye to hym mervaylede þerof, and seide, "What is hit that ye desyre? "have not ye prechede alle confession exterialle to be super- "fluous, seyenge that hit was sufficient oonly to be confessede "to God." To him he seide, "I errede and did wronge, but "y beseche yow now that y may have a preste." Hit happede that tyme that Nicolas Herforde, doctor of divinite, was presente, to whom alle men of that wickede secte drawede after maister Iohn Wicliff. The seide doctor commynge to hym seide: "What meanes þow? what desires þow? confesse thy "synnes to God, whiche hathe moore powere to lose and bynde "then oþer prestes have, and þat confession is sufficiaunte to "the. Thow hase doen offense to hym, and not to the preste, "and he awe to for3iffe and remitte to whom the offense was "doen." The seide preste desyrynge to be confessede contynually, seide to the doctor: "I beseche Allemy3hty God that "the perell may falle to yow if that y dye afore that y speke "with a confessor;" and þerwith he dyede. In whiche tyme Robert Veer, prowde of his promocion by the kynge, refusede his wife, a noble gentylwoman, borne of noble blode, of Isabell do3ter of noble Edwarde, and marvede the do3hter of a sadeller, as hit was seide, whiche come with þe qwene of Boemia into Ynglonde, the name of whom, after the langage of þat cuntre, was called Lamicecena; by which mariage grete disclaunder of hurte come. And specially the duke of Gloucestre and mony other noblemen hade grete indignacion þerof, for the seide duke was uncle to his wyfe, whom Robert Veer hade refused; wherefore the duke of Gloucestre thou3hte to venge hym on the duke off Yrlonde. Neverthelesse the duke of Yrlonde by sovereigne supportacion intended to destroy the duke off Gloucestre, ffor kynge Ricardus wente with the duke of Yrlonde as to brynge hym to his schippes into Wales, that þer scholde be noo discorde betwene lordes. But moore truly the kynge kepede hym þer, havynge communicacion togeder how that þei my3hte putte to dethe the duke of Gloucestre, the erles of Arundell, of Warwyke, of Derby, and of Notyngham, and oþer trew men to the realme These men folowynge movede the kynge to the dethe of the seide lords: Michael Attepole, Robert Trisilian, iustice Alexander Nevile arche-

bischop of Yorke, and mony oþer. A grete tyme paste the kynge returnede to Notyngham with the duke of Yrlonde and the other lordes, also that they myȝhte make a finalle conclusion f. 422 a.
how they myȝhte destroye the true lordes of the realme. And abowte the nativite of seynte Iohn Baptiste the kynge commaundede mony off the citesynnes of London whom he knewe to be mutable schereffes and iustices of þe realme, causynge theyme to appere, that he myȝhte knowe what powere he myȝhte make ageyne barons and oþer noble men of the realme, and that thei scholde not suffre eny knyȝhte of towne or schire to be electe to the parliamente but whom hit pleasede the kynge. Then the schireffes seide to the kynge that the commune peple favorede moche the oþer lordes, seyenge that hit was not in theire powere to gedre an hoste þerto, and as for knyȝhtes to be electe to the parliamente, they seide peple wolde reioyce theire olde consuetude. This answere ȝiffen, the schireffes were suffrede to departe, and the iustices were callede. Robert Tresilian, chiefe iustice, and Robart Belknap, chiefe iustice of the commune banke, Iohn Holt, Roger Fulthrop, and William Burgh, knyȝhtes, iustices and felawes of the seide Robert Belknap, mette to geder at Notyngham in the xxv^ti^ day of the monethe of Auguste, the kynge requirede of theym by the feithe and ligence made to hym that thei scholde answere to certeyne questions movede by the kynge after trawthe and after the lawe. The firste question whether that newe statute, ordinacion, and commission made and hade in the laste parliament at Westmonastery, derogate the regaly and prerogatyve of the seide kynge, ffor he hade ȝiffen a commission to the duke of Glocestre and to the erle of Arundell in a parte contrarious to his wille, as hit was seide þer, to inquire here and to iugge as for certeyne offenses. The iustices answeredie seyenge, that thei derogate the regaly of the kynge in that hit was ageyne the kynges wylle. An other question how those men awe to be punyschede whiche procurede the statute, ordinacion and commission of the seide thynges. They seide that they were worthy dethe, withowte the kynge wolde grawnte to theyme grace. An other question how they were worthy to be punyschede that excitede þe kynge to consente to the seide thynges. Thei seide that thei were worthy dethe also. An oþer question how thei awe to be punyschede that compellede the kynge to that ordinacion or statute. They seide þai awe to be punyschede as traytors. An other question, how men f. 422 b.
awe to be punyschede whiche did lette the kynge that he myȝhte not exercyse thynges longynge to his regaly. They seide as traytours. An other question: If the parliament congregate, and causes of the seide parliament expressede by the kynge, the lordes and communes procede on oþer causes,

and not on the articles limite to theym by the kynge, untille that a diffinicion were made of theire peticions and articles, notwithstondynge that they were commaundede by the kynge to do the contrary, whe|per þe kynge awe to have governayle in that parte, and that they awe to procede firste in these articles commaunded to theym by the kynge or nay? Other ells whe|per that lordes and the commune peple awe to have an answere of the kynge afore of certeyn articles movede by theym? Those iustices answerede, sayenge that the kynge awe to have governayle of the parliamente in that parte untille that hit were finischede, and if eny man did contrary he were worthy to be puneschede as a traytor. An o|per question whe|per the kynge may not dissolve a parliamente at his pleasure, and commaunde the lordes and communes to departe thens. The iustices seide that the kynge hade powere soe to do, and if eny man made eny processe as of the parliamente after that tyme, he awe to be punyschede as a traytor. An other question, how those men awe to be punyschede, whiche movede in the parliamente that the kynge scholde sende for a statute of Edward Karnarvan, by the inspeccion of whom a newe statute, ordinacion and commission were conceyvyde þerby. They seide that the mover and brynger of that statute to þe parliament were to be punyschede as traytors. An o|per question whe|per the iuggemente in the laste parliamente ageyn Michael Atte Poole was erroneus and revocable or nay. They answerede and seide that the iuggemente was revocable. In the testimony of alle whiche thynges the iusticiaryes aforeseide, and Iohn Labenton, servaunte to the kynge, put to þese presentes theire seales, Alexander Nevile and Robert, archebischoppes off Yorke and of Dublyn, Iohn bischop of Dirham, Thomas bischop of Chestre, Robert duke off Yrlonde, Michell erle of Sowthefolke, Iohn Ripen, clerke, and Iohn Blike, esqwyere, wittenesse. This doen, the kynge and the duke of
f. 423 a. Yrlonde sende mony messyngers into diverse costes of Ynglonde to hire a grete multitude of peple, that thei scholde be redy to wayte on the kynge if that o|per lordes made eny resistence. This processe knowen amonge the duke of Glocestre and o|per noble men of þe realme were soory in that the kynge was movede so ageyne theym, and thei not gilty. Wherefore the duke of Glocestre, uncle to the kynge, wyllynge to mitigate his wrathe, made an othe afore the bischop of London over a masse booke, mony o|per noble men of the realme presente, that he ymagined not eny thynge to the hurte of the kynge in alle his lyfe. The bischoppe of London goynge to the kynge expressede that processe, and hade causede luffe and unyte, but that the erle of Sowthefolke causede the contrary. To whom the bischop seide in the presence of the kynge, "O "Michael, hit semethe not thow that art a man condempnede

" to dethe to speke, for hit is the kynges grace that thow hase " lyfe." The kynge herynge that was movede soore, and commaundede þe bischop to departe, whiche expressede to þe duke lyke as he hade herde, whereof rancor and grete tribulacion growede. Wherefore the duke of Glocestre sende worde to the erles of Arundell, of Warwyke and of Derby, how the ymaginacion of theire dethe was intendede by the kynge, and oþer lordes. Whiche lordes gedrede anoon a myȝhty hoste, and the kynge laborede how he myȝhte destroye the seide lordes, or that thei scholde ereete eny powere, sendynge men to the castell of Reygat to areste the erle of Arundell and the erle of Northumberlonde, syr Henricus Percy. Whiche commynge to that castelle, and seenge þer a grete multitude of peple, returnedde ageyne to the kynge, not fullefyllynge þeire commission. After the partynge of whom the erle of Arundell did ryde myȝhtely with his hoste, untille that he come to the woode of Harnegey, where he founde the duke of Glocestre and the erle of Warwyke with a grete hoste. The kynge knowynge these lordes to have a grete hoste, askede cownsaile what he scholde do to sease theire malice. Somme men seide that hit were beste to entrete theym in feire and honeste wise. Somme men seide that the kynge scholde gedre a myȝhty hoste and ȝiffe batell to theyme. But at the laste the kynge inquirede of a foole callede Hewe of Lynne what he scholde do ageyne the gentyllmen whiche were gedredde at Harnegey parke. The seide foole seide to the kynge with a hasty spiritte, " Lete us go and f. 423 b.
" slee every moders son of theym, and that doen, by the eien " of God, thow hase sleyne alle the tru men of the realme of " Ynglonde." But after that, by mediators, hit was brouȝte to this effecte, that the lordes scholde comme to Westemonastery and expresse theire greves afore the kynge, the bischop of Hely makynge promyse that there scholde be noo treason, but that thei scholde comme in suerte and go in suerte from the kynge. These lordes made redy to comme to London, the bischop of Hely sende worde to theym þat peple made wacche for theym at a place callede Muwes, nye to London, and þerfore thei cownsaylede thei scholde not comme to London but with a grete powere. The lordes herynge that, wolde not comme to the kynge, wherefore the kynge inquirede of the bischop of Ely why the lordes kepede not promisse. The bischop seide to the kynge that a M. men of armes keprede the way to have sleyne þeim. That treason avoided, the kynge sende to theyme the secunde tyme, promisynge to theym sure passage withowte trowble, whiche come anoon to Westmonastery with a grete powere, the kynge sittynge in the halle of Westemonastery in regalle apparaile, with his sceptre in his honde. These lordes entrede into the halle, the bischop of Ely and chaunceller off Ynglonde expressede this sentence: " The kynge underston-

" dynge that ye were gedrede at Harnigey parke oþerwise þen
" ye awe to have doen, and abhorrenge the effusion of bloode,
" wolde not gedre an hoste; for with owte dowte, and if hit
" hade bene to the pleasure of the kynge, he scholde have
" hade a moore myȝhty hoste. Wherefore the kynge de-
" sirethe to knowe the cause þerof." The lordes seide they mette þer for the utilite of þe kynge and of the realme, and to expelle traytours abowte the kynge from the realme. These were the men whom thei callede traytours, Robert Veer duke of Yrlonde, Alexander Nevyle archebischop of Yorke, Michael Pole erle of Sowthefolke, Roberte Trisilian, a fals iustice, and Nicholas Brambre, a fals knyȝhte, castynge theire gloves to prove the seide men traytours. Then the kynge seide that thei scholde not doe soe, but this mater scholde be discussede in the nexte parliamente, bothe parties beynge presente. This doen, the kynge with a bostynge and braggynge contenaunce seide to theym, " Ye supposede to have made me afrayede with
f. 424 a. " youre hoste. Truly I sette noo moore price thereby then
" y do by the laweste grome of my kechynne." And after that he toke the duke of Glocestre up from the erthe, whiche hade knelede unto that tyme, and commaunded oþer men to aryse. That doen, he toke theym to his chambre, where thei drunke frendely to gedre, and toke the duke of Yrlonde into his howseholde, and the duke of Gloucestre also, commaundynge theym that thei scholde not presume to gedre eny hoste afore the tyme prefixede by the kynge. These lordes returnede from the kynge wolde not departe in eny wyse, knowynge the mutabilite of the kynge and the falsenesse of the traytours abowte hym. For soone after, by consente off the kynge, the duke of Yrlonde gedrede a grete hoste of the costes off Chestre and of Wales, the governoure of whom was Thomas Molynes, constable of Chestre. But that treason was knowen soone after amonge the oþer lordes, how that the duke of Yrlonde come towarde London with a grete hoste. Neverthelesse the seide lordes sette men in diverse wayes, by whom thei supposede that the duke wolde comme. The seide duke of Yrlonde enhawnced in pride lyke Lucifer, and lookynge a lytelle on syde, see a grete hoste taryenge hym in a vale, and þerwith his herte began to drede, and seide to his men, " My frendes,
" as y thenke, hit is beste to me to flye and escape for a season,
" for theire hoste is moche more then this hoste; wherefore
" or that we mete to gedre y wylle returne, for thei desire
" me, and not yow. For and if y were departede thei wolde
" suffre yow to escape lyȝhtely." But somme of the knyȝhtes of that hoste seide to hym, " Thow movede us to goe from oure
" cuntre: we be redy to fiȝhte with the and gette the victory,
" if fortune be favorable, or ells to dye manfully with the."
Neverthelesse the seide duke returnede, but the seide

Thomas Molynes disposede hym to batell, for that tyme þer were noo lordes commyn to that place, but Henricus erle of Derby, son of the duke of Lancastre. And when they hade fauȝhte a certeyn season, a knyȝhte, syr Thomas Mortymare by name, seide to Thomas Molynes, "Take thyne horse, or "withowte dowte thow schalle dye in the water." Then Thomas Molynes seide, Wille þou save my lyfe and if y do so." The knyȝhte seide, "Y wylle not make that promyse;" and so as the seide Thomas Molynesse toke his horse, the knyȝhte toke aweye his salette, and persede his breyne with a dagger. f. 424 b.
The duke of Yrlonde fleynge, come to Rotcotebryge nye to Bampton, and that brygge was broken that he myȝhte not escape. And after that he wente to an other brygge, where archers were redy, and wolde not suffre hym to come by that brygge. Wherefore the seide duke toke þat water with his horse and escapede, in that hit was nye to nyȝhte; but his horse was founde with his breste plate and gantelettes, causynge mony men to suppose he hade bene drownede. But his ordinaunce and trussynge cofres were taken þer, in whom thei founde letters directe to hym by the kynge, contenynge that he scholde make haste and comme to London with a myȝhty hoste, and the kynge was redy to dye or to lyve with hym. These letters schewede to the lordes an evidente inconstance of the kynge and mutabilite. Michael Attepoole in that trowble fledde to Caleys by the governayle of a knyȝhte callede William Attehoo, whiche commyn þider brouȝte bryddes to be solde untylle that he comme to þe ȝates of the castell of Calys, where Edmund Attepole his broþer, under capiteyne of Calys, was; whiche wolde not receyve hym untylle that he hade licence of William Belcamp, chief capiteyne of Calis. Also Alexander Nevile archebischop of Yorke, and Robert Tresilian, iustice, dredynge the duke of Glocestre with his companye, fledde from the kynge. Abowte whiche tyme a messynger sende from the kynge of Fraunce, Lustracius by name, was taken, whiche brouȝhte wrytynge to the kynge of Ynglonde, that he scholde come to Bolony with the duke of Yrlonde and oþer certeyne men, where the kynge of Fraunce scholde have hade Caleys delyverede to hym and alle oþer castells and towres over see longynge to the crowne of Ynglonde. This knowen amonge the noble men, they made grete haste to London, where the kynge scholde kepe his Cristemasse, thenkynge that he myȝhte kepe the towre off London surely for alle his enemyes. And in the day of seynte Steven the lordes schewede theire hoste of xl^ti^ M. men in aray. In whiche tyme men of London were in grete dredde how they scholde dispose theym to please the kynge and the seide lordes. At the laste, the mayre wente to the duke of Glocestre, promysynge to him and to his hoste fre entre into the cite, and alle thynges necessary to theyme, with- f. 425 a.

owte fraude or treason, and ȝafe to the hoste brede, wyne, and chese; whiche thynge causede grete profite to the cite. The kynge herynge this processe, dissimilate as if he sette noo price by the multitude, seyenge to the archebischop of Cawnterbery, and to oper men that laborede for the reformacion of peas, in this wyse: "Lete theym lye here with theire hoste in the name of "God untille that they have dispende theire goodes; and that "paste, y schalle speke with oon of theym after an oyer." The lordes herynge this communicacion, made a protestacion that thei scholde not departe untille that thei hade spoken with the kynge; and so thei sende a grete nowmbre of men to kepe Thamys, that the kynge scholde not departe that way and skorne theyme. The kynge seenge that he was compellede abowte by theyme, began to speke moore mekely, seyenge þat he wolde trete with the lordes; whiche sende worde to the kynge that he scholde comme in the day nexte folowynge to Westmonastery, where thei wolde expresse diverse maters. The kynge seide he wolde not entrete with theyme at Westmonastery, but in þe towre. The gentyllemen sende worde to the kynge that the towre was a place suspecte as for treason. Neverthelesse a certeyn nowmbre of the hoste hade licence to entre into the towre, and to serche and to see that þer scholde be noo treason in the towre. That doen, the duke of Glocestre entrede into the towre, and havynge schorte communicacion with the kynge, entrede into his chambre, where they rehersede his conspiracion hade ageyne theyme, and schewede his letters, whom he directe to þe duke of Yrlonde, that he scholde brynge an hoste to London; and letters also how that he wolde have solde Calys unto þe kynge of Fraunce, where by his honore scholde have decreasede moche, and the realme also. The kynge, herynge þis processe rehersede, was gretely confusede; neverthelesse they departede from the kynge, this condicion made and promysede to be performed, that the kynge scholde comme in the morowe folowynge to Westmonastery, to here and trete of certeyne thynges for the honoure and profite of þe realme. Whiche thynge he promisede to fullefylle, kepynge the erle of Derby at soper with hym that ny3hte as a token off luffe.
f. 425 b. But the purpose of the kynge was chaungede afore he wente to bedde. The noble men, understondynge that þe kynge wolde not come to Westmonastery, were soory, and sende worde to the kynge, seyenge that and if he wolde not kepe his promyse they scholde electe a kynge whiche scholde obtemperate the cownsayle of lordes. The kynge havynge that in ure come to Westmonastery in the morowe folowynge, where the noble men of the realme seide to hym, that hyt were to his honour to avoyde fals traytours from his presence, and to take tru men to hym. The kynge grawnted. The noblemen movede that theso men, the names off whom folowe, scholde be avoidede from his

cownsaile: Alexander Nevyle, archebischop off Yorke, Iohn Fordham bischop off Dirham, frere John Rushok, confessor to the kynge and bischop of Chichestre. Also thei expelled the lorde Sowche of Harmworthe, Albrede Veer, Baldewyn Berford, Richardus Addurbury, Iohn Wurth, Thomas Clifforde and Iohn Lovell, kny3htes, not utterly dimitte, but to appere n the nexte Parliamente, and the lady off Powyggus, wife of John Wurth, as unprofitable to the courte. That doen they areste Symon Burle, William Chircham, Iohn Beuchamp of Holte, Iohn Salisbery, Thomas Trivette, Iamys Bermers, Nicholas Dagwurthe and Nicholas Brambre, kny3htes. Also thei toke Ricardus Clifforde, Iohn Lincolne, Ricardus Mydforde, and Nicholas Schak, decan of the kynges chapelle, and Iohn Blake, apprentice of lawe; whiche kny3tes and clerkes thei sende to diverse castells to be kepede suere to the nexte parliamente. The parliamente was begunne at London after the Purificacion of oure Lady, whom the kynge wolde have avoided and if hit wolde have bene; to whiche parliamente the lordes rehersede afore come with a grete hoste, dredynge treason. Whiche parliament was contynuede unto Pentecost; in whom Robert Tresilian was taken firste and drawen and honged by iuggemente of the lordes, and after that Nicholas Brambre, kny3hte, suffrede dethe in lyke wise. This doen Iohn Salisbery and Iamys Bermers, ij. yonge kny3htes and ij. traytours, were drawen and hongede by iuggemente of þe parliamente. After þat Iohn Beauchamp of Holt, stuarte to the kynge, fals to kynge Edwarde of Wyndeshore, and to Leonell his sonne, duke off Clarence, was drawen and hongede by iuggement of f. 426 a.
the parliamente. Iohn Blake, esqwyer, beynge gretely ageyne the seide lordes at Notyngham, was heded. Also Symon Burle was heded, thau3he that the erle of Derby laborede gretely for hym, whereby a grete dissencion was movede betwene the erle of Derby and the duke of Glocestre, but they were reduced soone to an unyte. The seide Symon Burle was keper of the castell of Dovor, whom he was redy to have delyverede to men off Fraunce at the commaundement of the kynge; whiche was an oppressor of poore men, a lechoure and an open advouterer. Also Roger Belknap, Iohn Holt, Robert Fulthorpe, and William Bourgh, iusticiaryes, were putte to exile, a certeyne summe grawntede to theim to theire exhibicion. And after the feste of Pentecoste the erle of Arundell wente to kepe the see with a my3hty hoste, whiche fau3hte nobly on the see, and toke, drownede, and brent lxxx. schippes. After that he entrede into the yle of Baas, whom he spoylede and brente, and the yles of Us, of Ree, of Lemnstre, of Rochele, of Olum, and of Olerum; in whom he spoylede and brente mony townes also, and takynges rawnson of mony townes, havynge victory ageyne men of Fraunce or of Briteyne that made eny resistence to hym;

returnynge to Ynglonde with grete ffelicite. In whiche tyme men of Fraunce, impaciente of peas, entrede the cuntre of the duchery of Gelre with a hoste as innumerable, causede specially in that the seide duke was a trusty frende to þe realme of Ynglonde. Neverthelesse the seide duke, havynge mony of Ynglonde with hym, ȝafe batell to the men of Fraunce, where noon of men of Fraunce escapede, but thei were other take or sleyne. Where men of Fraunce hadde experience that hit was perellous to wake an olde dogge from slepe. Also men of Flandres did sle in that tyme a grete multitude of men of Fraunce. And in the same yere, abowte the nativite of seynte Iohn Baptiste, the Scottes entrede into Ynglonde, brennynge townes in theire wey, withowte they were redemed by money, commynge nye to the Newe Castell on Tyne, and sette theire tentes þer; in whiche towne syr Henricus Persy þe yonger and syr Rawfe Persy, his broþer, were that tyme; but the Scottes dredde specially this syr Henricus Persy for his noble manhode. The seide sir Henricus havynge grete indignacion
f. 426 b. of þat presumpcion of the Scottes that they prevokede hym to fiȝhte promysede to mete with theym within thre dayes folowynge. And the seide syr Henricus Persy, takynge with hym but a lytelle nowmbre of men, come sodenly on þat grete hoste, and made a grete murdre of þeym, and did sle also with his awne hondes the Scotte of Scottes, William Duglas. But that doen, the erle of Dunbar come with a grete hoste, and toke syr Henry Percy with syr Rawfe his broþer; but allemoste alle the noble bloode of Scotlonde was sleyne by syr Henricus Persy afore. A parliamente was kepede at Cantebrigge after the Purificacion of oure Lady, in whom newe statutes were ordeynede of the wages of servauntez, of beggers, of armes not to be borne, of disportes not to be exercised excepte archery, and of the staple to be reducede from Mirbonrach to Caleys, and off laborers not to be receyvyde in an oþer towne withowte a seale of the hundrede. Also hit was ordeynede þer that men of þe churche scholde not go from this londe to laboure for eny benefice, with charge or withowte charge, withowte he have licence of the kynges awne person; and if thei brake this statute thei scholde not reioyce the proteccion off þe kynge. These statutes and mony oþer were made þer, whiche were not observede unto this tyme; but a tallage was grawntede to the kynge in the ende of the parliamente, oon dyme of the clergy and oon xv^te^ of the lay peple. Sir Thomas Trivette rydynge in glorious pryde in the tyme of this parliamente with the kynge unto his ynne at Barnewell, and spurrynge his horse gretely, hade a grete falle, in so moche that his horse braste the interialle partes of his body. Neverthelesse this knyȝhte lyvede unto þe day nexte folowynge, whiche tyme was ȝiffen to hym to pennance if that he wolde take hit; whos dethe causede

grete gladdenesse amonge moche peple, for as hit was seide he was fals to the bischop of Ely in that viage made by hym ageyne the enemyes of the churche. Also hit was seide that he movede the kynge moche ageyne the noble lordes of the realme in the yere laste afore. In whiche parliament Iohn Holande, broþer to the kynge by reason his moder, commyn late from Speyne from the duke of Lancastre, was made erle of Huntyngdon. In whiche yere the pope did translate Thomas Arundel, bischoppe of Ely, to be archebischop of Yorke, Alexander Nevyle, f. 427 a. traytour, beynge at Seynte Andrewes in Scotlonde; Iohn Fordham, bischop of Dirham, unto the sete of Ely; Walterus Shirlowe from the seete of Bathe unto the seete of Dirhem; maister Rawfe Ergon from Salisbery unto Bathe; and confermede Iohn Waltham, clerke of the prive seale, unto bischop of Salisbery. Mayster Walterus Shirlowe, bischop of Dirhem, Iohn Clenbowe and Nicholas Sagworthe, knyȝhtes, were sende on ambassiate unto the kynge off Fraunce, for peas or truse to be taken betwene the realmes of Ynglonde and of Fraunce, taryenge longe in þose costes withowte effecte. At the laste thei hade a finall answere that thei wolde not take truse withowte men of Speyne and Scottes scholde be contened in that same truse; and so that iourney was suspende, for men of Ynglonde seide that Scottes were subiecte to the kynge of Ynglonde, and lige men to hym, whiche hade causede grete trowble ageyn the kynge, wherefore thei awe to be punyschede as transgressors after the pleasure of the kynge of Ynglonde and of his cownsayle. The Scottes, despisynge the malyce of men of Ynglonde, entrede into Northumbrelonde, sleenge moche peple per, takenge mony men and grete prayes with theym into theire cuntre. In whiche tyme syr Thomas Mombray, erle of Notyngham, was sende to depresse the malice of Scottes, but hit profite not, in that his nowmbre of peple was not egalle unto theire hoste. In whiche yere the kynge, movede by the cownsayle of adulators, callynge and commaundynge mony noble men of the londe to appere afore hym, entrede as sodenly into the cownsaile howse, where gentylmen did tary for hym. Whiche sette þer inquirede of the noblemen how mony yere he hade in age, where hit was answerede he hade xx^ti yere in age. Then the kynge seide, "By that y may con-
" clude that y am of fulle age to governe my selfe, my howse-
" holde, and my realme, for me thenke hit is not ryȝhtefull
" that y scholde be of moore vile condicion then eny person
" in my realme. For every heire of my realme havynge xx^ti
" yere in age after the dethe of his fader is permitte to governe
" hym selfe and his londes." The barons seide that the kynge scholde reioyce alle thynges dewe to hym, and pertenynge to the crowne. The kynge seide, " Beholde ye knowe y have be
" governede unto this tyme by lordes and tutors that y myȝhte

" not do eny thynge withowte theym; wherefore from this
" tyme y ammove theyme from my cownsayle, and y wylle
" take to my cownsayle men after my wylle and pleasure as
f. 427 b. " an heire of lawefull age. Wherefore y commaunde firste
" that the chaunceller resigne to me his seale." The archebischop of Yorke delyverynge hit, the kynge putte hit in his bosom and wente furthe, returnynge soen ageyn. That doen he toke that seale to syr William Wikham bischop of Wynchestre, makynge hym chaunceller ageyne his wylle; where he create also mony newe officers, usynge and folowynge his propre sensualite, expellynge from his cownsayle the duke of Glocestre, the erle of Warwyke, and mony oper noble men. In this yere, abowte the feste of the nativite of seynte Iohn Baptiste, truse as for iij. yere was taken betwene the realmes of Ynglonde and of Fraunce; Iohn Clenbowe, kny3te, and Ricardus Ronhalle, clerke, receyvynge an othe of the parte of the kynge off Fraunce. And sone after, abowte the feste of seynte Laurence, the erle of Seynte Paule, whiche hade maryede the suster of kynge Ricardus, come into Ynglonde to receyve an othe of the kynge of Ynglonde for that truse to be kepede truly on his parte. In whiche tyme the Scottes entrede into Ynglonde, and did grete hurte abowte the costes of Tynnemowthe, desyrynge to speke with the capiteyn of the castell. Whiche commynge to theym, and promysynge to pay a certeyne summe to salve that towne, the Scottes wente sodenly and sette fyre in that towne. The sawdiours of the castelle, seenge that, schotte at the Scottes, and hurte soore oon grome amonge the Scottes, whereby the capiteyne was lyke to be sleyne, but that he promisede to norische that Scotte, and to sende hym to Scottelonde of his costes also, if that he recurede. That promysede the capiteyne was suffrede to departe. In whiche tyme somme off the messangers sende from Fraunce into Ynglonde wente to Scottelonde, 3iffynge eleccion to the Scottes whe|per thay wolde be conclusede under the seide truse or be excludede utterly from the proteccion of the kynge off Fraunce. The noble men of Scottelonde seide that thei wolde kepe the seide truse, but hit wolde be harde to move the commune peple perto. Wherefore thei preyede the messangers off Fraunce that thei wolde go with þeim and see what ordinaunce thei hade made for batell. The seide messangers off Fraunce goynge furthe, come to that hoste off the Scottes, and founde theyme sette in an ordre, and kepynge theire wardes as and if thei scholde have 3iffe batell in þat tyme. The Scottes, havynge knowlege of the comynge off men of Fraunce, and the cause of theire commynge, seide openly that thei wolde not loose that grete coste
f. 428 a. for whom thei hade solde alle theire goodes. Neverthelesse the seide melancoly was mitigate by men of Fraunce, and specially by the lordes in Scottelonde, whiche seide openly afore

the commune peple that thei wolde not be theire governoures into Ynglonde ; and if thei wolde goe nedely into Ynglonde thei scholde make governoures amonge theym selfe and stonde to theire owne aventure. And so the Scottes condescende to the seide truse taken. Abowte whiche tyme the feste of the dedicacion of the churche of Seynte Marye at Cantebrigge happede abowte the feste of the commemmoracion of seynte Paule, to the honoure of whiche feste the body of Criste was borne thro that peresche in procession in a schryne or pix, whom a childe of vij. yere in age myȝhte have borne withowte eny grevaunce. The prestes bare the seide sacramente thro the seide towne untylle that thei come afore a place off freres Austyns, nye to market place of the towne, where the seide schryne, beynge on theire schulders, began to departe from theym violentely, and was so hevy that unnethe thei myȝhte berre hit, neiþer gette hit downe to theire schulders. The prestes were vexede soore, and preyede seculer men to putte to theire hondes, whiche commynge to hyt feledе þer as noo weiȝhte. This trowble of the prestes indurede as so longe as thei wente afore the place of the seide freres, and that place apaste the schryne descended unto theire schulders, and was lyȝhte as hit was afore. In whiche tyme an unhappy man began to lepe and dawnce afore þe sacramente, and in that disporte he felle downe to the erthe and was dedde. The cause of these mervellous thynges were interpretate diverse wayes, whom we omitte at this tyme, levynge that iuggemente to oþer men. But thys y dar say of trawthe, that a pestilence to be mervaylede folowede soone after at Cantebrigge, causynge moche peple to dye as sodenly as madde men withowte the sacramentes of the churche. Abowte which tyme the freres Precheours in Fraunce kepede theire olde oppinion, sayenge and prechynge oure lady seynte Mary to have be conceyvede in originall synne : whiche freres were exalte so into pryde that thei wolde not obbey the bischopps puttynge theym to silence, neiþer the kynge ne oþer gentillemen of þe realme. Wherefore thei were expulsede from the proteccion of the kynge of f. 428 b.
Fraunce, and prohibite to go into that cuntre and preche, leste they scholde induce the commune peple into erroure. Also thei were compellede that thei scholde not passe þeire places, but lyve by the labor of theire hondes on peyne off dethe. The promptuary of falsenesse, the sawer of discorde, the artificialle detractor, Michael Attepoole, somme tyme erle of Sowthefolke and chaunceller of Ynglonde, but he was a wikkede and malicious cownseilloure, dyede in this yere at Parisius ; the rychesse of whom Robert Veer his felowe hade, somme tyme duke of Yrlonde, whiche were þer in exile to gedre. Pope Urban the vj^te^ considerynge this tyme the age of men to decrease, ordeynede this yere to be the yere of iubile, willynge

that hit scholde contynue in every xxx^ti^ yere folowynge. The Lollardes and folowers of maister Iohn Wyclif were excite into soe grete presumpcion and boldenesse that theire prestes create oper prestes after the consuetude of the gentyles, whiche seide that every preste hade so grete powere to solve and bynde as the pope. And mony create so by theyme seide masse, and execute other ministerys of the sacramentes; but at the laste oon of the prestes create by theyme was confessede to the bischoppe of Salysbery at his maner of Sunnynge, expressynge to hym the seide erroure. In whiche tyme the seide heretykes prechede that pilgremages scholde not be usede, and specially to Walsyngham and to the crosse at the northdore of Seynte Paule at London, seyenge þat þer was noo thynge of Godhede þer, but that thei were roten stokkes. Bischoppes of þe realme herde this communicacion, but somme of theyme stoppede theire eieres, levynge theire schepe with owte eny keper, that thei myȝhte be devourede off wulfes, the bytenges of whom were violente and dedely. But truly there was not oon dogge that wolde breke ageyne those vulfes but the bischop of Norwiche, whiche suffrede not his flok to be infecte with that wikkede peple. For he made a protestacion that and if eny of theyme prechede with ynne his diocyse thei scholde be hongede or brente. And so there was not oon of the seide heretykes that durste presume to comme to his diocyse and suffre martyrdome, and so the feithe off Criste was not contaminate in alle that province. In whiche tyme to the confirmacion of tru peple mony myracles were schewede at a crosse erecte in the hye way nye to the
f. 429 a. priory of Wynnemudham. Also there was in that same tyme in the place of Chanons at Bridlynton, in the diocyse of Yorke, suche open manifestacion of miracles schewede at the tumbe of seynte Iohn, somme tyme prior of that place, that alle peple of Ynglonde merveleyde of the seide miracles. For as mony men say he walkede on the see in his lyfe, schewynge mony miracles in his lyfe, insomoche that thro his preyer cornes or greynes semynge not to suffice that place by a monethe wolde be sufficiaunte by oon yere and moore. Abowte whiche tyme maister William Courteney, archebischop of Cawnterbery, visitte his province; whiche intendynge to visitte monkes of the blake ordre at Oxon, sende to the seide studentes that thei scholde be alle at the seide visitacion a certeyn day assignede. The scolers of monasterys exempte and not exempte were trowblede soore, in that thei see never afore; neiþer herde of suche an oþer visitacion; but the seide monkes laborede this processe folowynge to lette the seide visitacion. The abbot of Seynte Alban did wryte to the archebischop, preynge and movynge hym to chaunge his purpose as for that visitacion. The archebischop receyvynge the letters, toke þeim with goode chere, and causede the monke of that place, brynger of the seide

letters, to tary and to dyne with hym. And after meyte the bischop callede that monke to hym, and seide that he wolde mony thynges for the favor of þat prelate his specialle frende, but he wolde not derogate the privilege of his churche, and if the kynge of Ynglonde laborede þerfore, and seide, "Is not þer "a college? have ye not a prior that may kepe a chapitre and a "commune chapell?" The monke answerede and seide that there was noo colege þer of þeire ordre, sithe that the monkes beynge þer hade noo conventuall seale, and that place was not possessede with temporalites and spiritualites, and mony other thynges did wante whiche were requirede to a college. To whom the archebisschop seide, "We wylle comme and see, and inquire how "hit stondethe with yow." The monke seide, "My lorde, and if "ye comme þer ye have noo iurisdiccion to inquire of such "thynges, but in monkes not exempte, and thei be visitte in "theire propre monasterys, wherefore they awe not to be "visitte by yow in the secunde tyme." The archebischop seyde "Hit is certeyne that thei were not visitte by us in theire awne f. 429 b. "monasterys, ffor thei were excusede by theire abbottes, in that "they were at the universite, wherefore we intende to visitte "theym in that universite." A monke a Cawnterbery commynge with the archebischop seide, "My lorde, ye may visitte monkes "exempte þer so longe as they be in the universite, for they be "under the iurisdiccion of the cawnceller." That other monke of Seynte Alban answerede, that monkes exempte hade grete privilege þer, and were not under the iurisdiccion of eny bischop but of the pope of Rome, oþer of a legate a latere sende from þe pope. The archebischop seide, if hit were so, he wolde not trowble theym in eny thynge. And on the day of seynte Tecla virgyn, maister Symon Sowtherey, monke of Seynte Alban, apperede afore the metropolitan, preyenge and besechynge that he wolde chaunge his purpose from the seide visitacion, but he wolde not be in eny wyse. And in the Sonneday nexte folowynge, the seide Symon apperede afore the archebischop in the churche of Seynte Frydeswyde, with alle monkes exempte and not exempte, after þe goynge downe of the sonne. The archebischop seenge theym, inquirede whether that thei come to submitte theyme. They seide they come to obtene his ffavor and benevolence, and for noon oþer submission. The archebischoppe seide, "And y have yow excusede, and y intende "not to vexe yow after þis tyme in eny thynge;" and here was the ende of the seide visitacion. And in the departenge of the archebischop of Cawnterbery, beynge at Dunstaple soone after, the abbotte of Seynte Alban sende the prior of his monastery to Dunstaple to the archebischop, to desire hym to solace hym in the seide monastery, and to tary þer alle nyȝhte. The archebischop condescende and come to that monastery, and taryede there by that nyȝhte at the costes of thabbotte, and

departede in the morowe folowynge. And pope Urban the vj^te^ dyede in the same yere in the monethe of September; whom the cardinalle Neapolitan succedid by eleccion of the cardinalls, and was callede Boneface the ix^the^. Lorde Iohn duke of Lancastre come to Ynglonde in this yere abowte the begynnynge of the monethe off Novomber, after that he hade taryede by iij. yere in Speyne, Aquitanny and Gascoigne. Whiche suffrede mony infortunys in Speyne in the begynnynge, but after
f. 430 a. that he come to grete felicite: ffor in the begynnynge vitayles begynnynge to fayle, the hoste of Ynglische dyede off the pestilence and flix, insomoche þat xc. famose kny3htes of Ynglonde dyede per miserably. Wherefore the residu of Ynglische men coacte by necessite lefte the duke of Lancastre and wente to the hoste of men off Fraunce, whiche were per to helpe the kynge of Castell, where they were grete noryschede and cheryschede. The kynge of Portyngale beynge per that tyme with a grete hoste, seenge men of Ynglonde to have departede from theire lorde, seide to the duke, "Beholde youre "men of Ynglonde how thei have departede from yow and be "goen to youre adversaryes. I schalle goe and 3iffe batelle to "theyme, and y schalle not leve oon of theyme in lyfe." The duke of Lancastre seide to the kynge, "O my lorde, ye schalle "not do soe, for y knowe that thei do soe for theire lyvynge, "and not for treason." That seide, the duke began to wepe in his herte, and preyede allemy3hty God to be his gyde, promysynge to remembre his Maker afterwarde better then he did afore; and so Criste acceptynge his herte contrite, causede fortune to enioy and encrease to hym from that tyme. For his adversary the kynge of Castelle dredde not the powere men, but he was compellede by the dredde of God to trete with the duke for peas. Where hit was brou3hte to this conclusion, that the kynge scholde mary the do3hter of the duke of Lancastre to his sonne, the frute of whome scholde enioye the realme of Speyne, and if thei hade noo yssue that realme scholde be reioycede by the frute of the duke of Yorke, broþer to the duke of Lancastre, whiche hade maryede the do3ter of the kynge of Castell. The convencion made sure, the duke receyvede of the kynge of Castelle xx. M. li., and for a certeyne summe not payede, diverse borowes or plegges were taken to hym, that he scholde receyve of the seide kynge yerely the tyme of his lyfe endurynge x. M. li., and to lady Constaunce his wife iiij. M. li., for whiche summe of moneye to be payede iiij. goode townes were assignede to the seide lady Constaunce. Kynge Richarde kepede his Cristemasse in that yere with qwene Anne at the maner off Wodestoke. In whiche tyme the erle off Penbroke, of xvij. yere in age ,wyllynge to disporte and iuste with a spere, was smyten of an oþer kny3hte metynge
f. 430 b. hym in the flanke, his interialle partes were broken, and

dethe folowede anoon; for the dethe of whom lordes and moche peple of the realme were soory. For that erle was liberalle, affable, meke, and ientyll to alle peple, excedynge alle oper yonge lordes of his age in the realme. And hit is to be mervaylede of the auncesturs of that erle, for from Emery erle of Penbroke, oon of the assessours and iugges on the dethe of seynt Thomas of Lancastre, unto this Iohn Hasting, noon of the erles of Penbroke see ever theire fader, ne þe fader þe sonne. A parliamente was holden at Westemonastery in the Mooneday nexte folowynge the feste of seynte Hillary, in whom the commune peple desyrede that lyverys of lordes myȝhte be putte awey, for mony men werynge the lyverys of lordes usede grete extorcion and oppression of poore peple. Where the lordes and gentilmen made grawnte that noo man scholde have of theire clothynge with[1] he were of theire private howscholde, and toke a certeyne summe of þeim in þe yere. In whiche parliamente diverse men of Kente distrowblynge peas were taken, drawen, and hongede. Also a statute was made that noo man scholde passe this realme to Rome for provisions in churche, or in churches to be geten and purchased, and if that he did, he schold be imprisonede as a rebellion to the kynge. Also a statute was made þer þat the kynge scholde not graunte his chartre to thefes, robbers, or murdrers of men, and if eiþer duke or archebischop laborede for eny man of that disposicion, thei scholde pay to the kynge a M. li., a bischop or erle a M. marke, a knyȝhte v. c. marke, oþer men xx. li. Also hit was grawntede to the kynge in this parliamente that he scholde receyve for customes of wolle for every sakke þat men of Ynglonde hade 1.*s.*, and of straunge peple iij. li. Iohn Gawnte, duke of Lancastre, was erecte in this parliamente to the duke of Aquitanny; and Edward, son of the duke of Yorke, was made erle of Rutlonde, to whom the kynge ȝafe the castell of Okam. The duke of Gellerior come to London in the same yere, and in the monethe of Iulius, whiche was receyvede with grete honoure, and made hym oon of the knyȝhtes of the Garthur at Wyndeshore. Kynge Ricardus come to Leicestre in the same monethe of Iulius, where, at the instance of Iohn duke of Lancastre, Iohn Northampton, citesynne of London, and his felawes, banyschede but late afore, were restorede to theire state afore and liberte. In whiche tyme mony noble men come from Fraunce, from Selande, from Alemanny, and from oþer cuntres to the kynges courte for grete iustynges usede þer in that tyme, bryngynge with theyme ryalle horses and armor pertenynge perto, where the noble lyverey of the white herte, with a chene of golde, was ȝiffen firste. The kynge havynge cownsayle to schewe his f. 431 a.

[1] Sic., probably should be *without*.

excellent regaly to the lordes of straunge cuntrees, kepede the feste of seynte Edwarde at Kennynton, solennely crownede in that day, bothe at masse and meyte, and the qwene also. At whiche solennite the erle of Seynte Paule was, with his wife, suster to the kynge, and the erle of Ostrenaut, whiche was made þer kny3hte of the Garthur. A parliamente was holden at London in Westmonastery, the xx^ti^ day of the monethe of November, unto whom Damianus de Cathenesia, messanger of þe pope, for a revocacion of the statute made ageyne provisions of churches to be laborede; but the seide messanger reioycede not his purpose, neverthelesse the kynge made graunte that the pope scholde 3iffe alle benefices vacant in the courte of Rome. A bushell of whete was solde in thys yere at London for xx. *d.* and ij *s.* commynly, where hit was wonte to be solde for v. *d.* or vi. *d.* And Thomas Arundell, archebischop of Yorke, was made chawnceller of Ynglonde, and Iohn Waltham, bischop of Salisbery, treasurer of Ynglonde, in the begynnynge of October, and the erle of Stafforde maryede in that yere the do3hter off þe duke of Glocestre. A parliament was holden at Westmonastery in the thrydde day of the monethe of November, and durede unto December; in whom hit was ordeynede that alle possessions, londes, and tenementes of religious men scholde be escheate withowte thei were deducte unto a dedde honde afore the feste of seynte Michell nexte folowynge. Kynge Richarde kepede that tyme his Cristemasse at Langley, to whom men of Aquitanny come, seyenge that thei were wonte to be governede by the kynge of Ynglond, or by the prince his sonne, and by noon oþer, seyenge also that they wolde not take the duke of Lancastre as theire chiefe lorde, but as a governoure under the kynge. Iohn duke of Lancastre come to Ynglonde from Aquitanny in the vij^the^ day of the monethe of Maii, whiche was receyvede of the kynge with grete honore. A grete cownsayle was keped at Stanforde
f. 431 b. in the xxv^the^ day of þe monethe of Maii, where mony thynges were ordeynede; and amonge oþer constitucions, that gentylmen havynge londes unto þe valoure of xl^ti^ li. by yere scholde be kny3htes. Truse was taken betwene the kynges of Ynglonde and off Fraunce in this cownsaile for certeyne yeres, and alle the kynges courtes were translate from London to Yorke. That doen the kynge sende a wrytte to þe mayre of London, that he scholde appere at Notyngham with the shireffes with xxiiij^ti^ aldermen, and mony oþer noble men of the cite to answere afore the kynges cownsayle to thynges obiecte ageyne theyme. Iohn Hende, mayre of London, was deposede in the xj^the^ day of the monethe of Julius folowynge, and sende to the castell of Wyndeshore, and the shireffes were deposed also, and oon was sende to the castell of Walyngforde, and that oþer to the castelle of Okam, Edwarde Dalkigbrugge havynge gover-

nayle of that cite ffor the tyme. The duchesse of Yorke dyede in the same yere þe xxiij^{ti} day of the monethe of November, whom the kynge causede to be beryede at Langeley with grete solennite. Also in the same yere, the xx^{ti} day of the monethe of Ianivere, a parliamente was holden at Wynchestre, in whom syr Ambrey Veer was made erle of Oxenforde, and syr William Scroope was made chambreleyn of the kynge, and syr Thomas Persy stuarde of the kynge. And in the vij. day of Februarius folowynge, thefes brake the chapell of Oure Lady of Pewe at Westemonastery, and toke awey grete goodes with theyme. And in the vij^{the} ny3hte folowynge thei brake the churche of Seynte Iohn at Clerkenwell, and did grete hurte þer, and somme of those thefes were taken and honged at Oxenforde. Solenne diriges were hade in this yere at Seynte Paules churche in London for the sawle of Anne empresse, moder of Anne qwene of Ynglonde. Anne qwene of Ynglonde dyede in this yere at Schene, þe vij^{the} day of þe monethe of Iunius, on the day of Pentecoste; the dethe of whom the kynge sorowede insomoche that he causede the maner there to be pullede downe, and wolde not comme in eny place by oon yere folowynge where sche hade be, the churche excepte; whiche was beryede in the churche of Westemonastery, in the feste of seynte Anne nexte folowynge, with grete honoure and solennite. That qwene f. 432 a.
Anne purchased of the pope that the feste of seynte Anne scholde be solennysede in Ynglonde. The dethe of this qwene Anne induced grete hevynesse to noble men and to commune peple also, for sche causede noo lytelle profite to the realme. But mony abusions comme from Boemia into Englonde with this qwene, and specially schoone with longe pykes, insomoche that thei cowthe not go untylle that thei were tyede to theire legges, usenge that tyme cheynes of silvyr at the pykes of theire schoone. Kynge Ricardus toke his iourney to Yrlond abowte the feste of seynte Mathewe, taryenge þer in wynter with his hoste. And in the meane tyme the duke of Yorke kepede a parliamente at Westmonastery soone after the feste of seynte Hillary, to whiche parliamente the kynge sende his uncle, Thomas duke of Glocestre, to desyre of the clergy oon dyme, and oon xv^{the} of lay men, where that peticion was grawnte. Bartholomewe de Namera, messanger of þe pope, come to this parliamente for þe revocacion of the statute made afore ageyne provisors of churches, but he profite not of his message. Also maister Iohn Bloxham, governoure of Mertyn colege at Oxenforde, and doctor of divinite, was accusede of ij. felawes of the seide college in the same parliamente openly of a cryme not to be expressede, whiche men were movede to accuse hym by mony lordes of that parliament. But thei prevaylede not ageyne hym, in that thei cowthe not make sufficiaunte probacion. The kynge understondynge after of

þat wickede mater was movede soore ageyne the lordes and his accusers. Henricus Wakefelde, bischop of Worcestre, departede from that parliamente, dyede at Blokley in the monethe of Marche, whom Tidemannus, bischopp Landavense, did succede. Kynge Ricardus, makynge mony knyȝhtes of Yrlonde, ȝafe to theym grete fees to be receyvede of the chekker yerely to þeim, and oþer grete ȝiftes, and departede into Ynglonde with his hoste. The kynge departede from that cuntre thei were moore maliciously disposede then thei were afore, and did sle a noble knyȝhte of Ynglonde þer, syr Roger erle of Marche. And in that somer folowynge Constaunce duchesse of Lancastre dyed, and Mary cowntesse of Derby, and were beryede at Levercestre. Henricus erle of Derby gate of Mary hys wife iiij. sonnes, Henricus, Thomas, Iohn, and Umfrey, and ij. doȝhters, Blanche and Mary. And in succession of
f. 432 b. tyme Iohn of Gaunt, duke of Lancastre, maryede into his wyfe Kateryne Swynford, whom he kepede longe, his wife beynge in lyfe, of whom he gate iij. sonnes, Iohn Bewford, erle of Somersete, Henricus Bewford, bischop of Lincolne, Edmund Bewford, and ij. doȝhters, oon of whom was cowntesse of Westemarlonde, that oþer was cowntesse of Somersete; and alle these sonnes and doȝhters of Iohn duke of Lancastre were legittimate by the pope. In whiche yere, the vij^{the} day of the monethe of Auguste, Ricardus kynge of Ynglonde, purposynge to mary the doȝhter of the kynge off Fraunce, saylede unto Calys with a noble hoste, dukes, erles, barons, and mony oþer noblemen, taryenge þer unto the feste of Symon and Iude. Wherefore abowte the seide feste the kynges of Ynglonde and off Fraunce mette, with þe noble men of eiþer realme, on a pleyne nye to the castelle of Gynes, spekynge of the seide matrimony betwene kynge Ricardus and Isabelle doȝhter of the kynge of Fraunce, havynge viij. yere in age. And so at the laste the seide Isabell was delyverede to the kynge of Ynglonde; that doen, kynge Ricardus, takynge leve off the kynge of Fraunce, returnede to Calys with his companye, whom he maryede þer with grete solennite, in þe presence of the seide lordes, in the x^{the} day of the monethe of November. That doen thei come to Ynglonde with grete ioye and gladdenesse; but diverse of his schippes were drownede, havynge in theym moche clothe of Arras and mony other thynges for the apparayle of the kynges halle. This qwene come to London the xxiij. day of monethe of November, thro Sowthewerke unto Kenyngton, to whom mony peple wente to see, and in returnynge mony men and women were oppressed to dethe, amonge whom a prior of Estesex was oppressede to dethe, and a noble woman of Corunhell. This qwene was brouȝhte ageyne the thrydde day off the monethe of Ianiver by London brygge, by the Bruggestrete, thro the Towre strete and unto the towre, and in the morowe

folowynge sche was ledde thro Chepe unto Westmonastery, where sche was crownede with grete solennite in the vigill of the Epiphany by the archebischop of Cawnterbery. And a cownsayle was callede at Westmonastery in the monethe of February nexte folowynge, but the duke of Glocestre and the erle of Arundell, cited to appere there, excusede theym that infirmite oppressynge theym wolde not suffre his wylle to be f. 433 a.
performede. The kynge herynge that was movede soore ageyne theyme, whiche folowynge þe cownsayle of yonge peple malicious and indiscrete, and specially of Iohn Busch, commaunded Ricardus erle of Arundell to be areste, and Thomas erle of Warwyke, puttynge theyme in suere kepynge. That doen, the kynge takynge with him Iohn Busche and a certeyne nowmbre of men of armes, come to Plesch, and areste in his awne person his uncle, Thomas duke of Glocestre, beynge in bedde and laborynge in grete infirmite. Notwithstondynge the preyer of the duke, with mony teres of his wife and of his men, he was sende in the ny3hte to Tyllyngborne, after þat to Dovor, and soe to Calys, to the erle of Norfolke capiteyne there, that he scholde be sleyne, as hit schal be schewede hereafter. Maister William Courtenay, archebischop of Caunterbery, dyede in the same yere, the kalendes of Auguste; whom Thomas Arundelle, archebischop of Yorke, did succede. In whiche yere also William Mountegu, erle of Salisbery, dyede also, a noble man, tru to the kynge and to the realme, and fortunate in batell; Thomas Holand, erle of Kente, dyede in that yere also. In whiche tyme a pagan kynge of Turkeye reignede þer, Ambrot by name, ageyne whom mony men of Ynglonde, of Fraunce, and of other regions were gedrede; whiche were taken and sleyne þer in that þei were dispersede, and kepede not an ordre after the consuetude of batell. The kynge revolvynge in mynde how that he was coacte afore to graunte a certeyn commission to certeyne lordes to governe hym and the realme, thenkynge hym selfe of fulle age and discrecion, desirede gretely to do persecucion to theym. Wherefore the kynge thenkynge that he cowthe not punysche theyme withowte a parliamente were holden, sende messangers and wrytynge into þe costes of Ynglonde in the monethe of Iulius, that alle men scholde come to the parliamente that awe to be þer with owte eny excuse. Unto whiche parliamente a grete multitude of peple come, whiche began in October in the day of seynte Lambert, and contynuede untyll the conversion of seynte Paule. This parliamente was kepede in the myddes of his palyce at Westmonastery, where he made an halle betwene the towre and the dorre of the grete halle, that the seide kynge my3hte appere in his solennite; whiche place f. 433 b.
was taken awey after the parliament. In the firste day of that parliament the bischop of Ely and chauncellor of Ynglonde

made a pronunciacion in the maner of a sermon, begynnynge with this proposicion, "Rex unus erat omnibus," and concludynge at alle tymes that the powere of the kynge awe to be unyte and annexed to hymselfe, and men causynge the contrary be worthy to be punysched after the lawe. But this parliament was ordeynede to make inquisicion of those persons that trowbled þe regaly, and that trowble and discorde scholde not have predominy afterwarde. That collacion finisched, the kynge commawnded the communes that thei scholde acorde of the speker of the parliamente, and presente the man electe to hym in the day nexte folowynge. In whiche parliament þe kynge ȝafe pardon to alle peple that hade doen eny offence to hym, those persons excepte that scholde be correct in that parliament. And in Tyseday nexte folowynge syr Iohn Busche, knyȝhte, was chosen speker of þe parliamente and presentede to the kynge, whom þe kynge did accepte. The seide syr Iohn Busche, dewe protestacions made afore, expressed these wordes afore the kynges hihenesse:—"O, my "lorde kynge, we desyre that we may expresse þe names of "men causynge trowble ageyne your regaly. Firste, Thomas "duke of Glocestre, Ricardus erle of Arundell, whiche "causede yow to grawnte to þeim, in the ix^the^ yere of youre "reigne, oon soore commission, by the meanes of Thomas "Arundell, chauncellor of Ynglonde, to governe you and "þe realme of Ynglonde to þe preiudice of youre regaly." And that commission grawnted was revocate and annichilhate in that parliamente, with alle thynges dependynge of hit; neverthelesse a speciall grace and pardon was grawnted by the kynge to Ricardus erle of Arundell at þe instance of þe metropolitan, broþer to hym. Where the seide syr Iohn Busche spake, sayenge that þe seide pardon is as infecte with treason, and that the seide bischop purchasynge hit awe to iuggede as a traytour. The bischop willynge to aryse and answere to þat mater, was prohibite by the kynge. Neverthelesse that archebischoppe off Cawnterbury apperede not þer after that tyme. Also hit was ordeynede in this parliamente that the excesses of prelates scholde be terminate in the parliamente, and so licence hade þe prelates did departe with hevy chere. But in Wednesday nexte folowynge the seide statute ageyne prelates was revokede, where the seide prelates were charged, on peyne of the losse of þeire temporalites that thei scholde ordeyne a proctor in that day to condescende in theire names to thynges expedient in þat parliamente. And on Thursday nexte folowynge the archebischop of Cawnterbery come to þe kynges palyce to have apperede at þe parliamente. But the kynge sende to hym by the bischop of Caerliel þat he scholde returne ageyne to hys ynne. The prelates ȝafe to syr Thomas Percy, styward of the kynge, theire plener

f. 434 a

powere, and made hym theire proctor, promysynge to fulle-fylle alle thynges grawntede by hym in theire names in þat parliamente. This proccy redde and expressede, syr Iohn Busche, speker of the parliamente, rehersede þese wordes to the kynges, "My lorde, hit is so nowe that the secunde article awe "to be fullefyllede of þe peyne put to men trowblynge youre "regaly. Wherefore y beseche your hihenesse of speciall "pardon that y may goe and comme in suerte with my felawes "to prosecute by the weye of appellacion and of impeticion "ageyne certeyne persons." That grawntede by the kynge, the speker of the parliamente seide, "I accuse Thomas Arun-"dell, archebischop of Cawnterbery, of thre maners and articles "of treason. In the firste of the commission of the realme to "hym, to Thomas duke of Glocestre, and to his broþer Ricar-"dus erle of Arundell. In the secunde for the seide lordes "did holde solenne parliamentes by usurpacion of that pro-"ditorious commission into the grete preiudice of youre regaly. "In the thrydde, in that thei did slee proditoriously Iames "Bruels and Symon Burle, your tru knyȝhtes and lige men, "by the seide usurpacion. Wherefore we youre tru lige men "desyre your hihenesse to fulminate a sentence ageyne the "seide archebischoppe condigne to suche a traytoure." The kynge ansuerede and seide that he wolde take deliberacion as in þat mater, for the excellence of his person, unto the day folowynge. And on Friday nexte folowynge that tyme, on f. 434 b. the feste of seynte Mathewe, the duke of Rotland, the erle of Kente, the erle of Huntyndon, the erle of Notyngham, the erle of Somersette, the erle of Sarisbery, the lorde Despenser, and syr William Scrope entrede into the parliamente in a sute of gownes of redde sylke, brawdrede with white sylke and letters of golde, purposynge to the kynge the appellacion made but late afore at Notyngham. Where thei accusede Thomas duke of Gloucestre, Ricardus erle of Arundell, Thomas erle of War-wyke, and Thomas Mortymare knyȝhte, of treason and insur-reccion made ageyne the kynge at Harnegay parke, promys-ynge afore the kynge to prosecute the seide appellacion. When Ricardus erle of Arundell was brouȝhte to the parlia-mente in a roobe of scarlet, whiche was taken from hym by commaundemente of Iohn duke of Lancastre. And the articles of treason rehersede, the seide erle denyede utterly that he was a traytour, desyrynge his pardon grawntede by the kynge myȝhte have execucion. Then Iohn duke of Lancastre seide, "O þow traytour, þat pardon is revokede." To whom the erle seide, "Y am noo traytour, ne have not bene a traytour." Then the duke of Lancastre seide to hym, "If þow were not a "traytoure whereto desyres þow pardon?" The erle seide, "To "depresse thy fals langage and oþer moo." Then the kynge seide to hym, "Answere to thyne appellacion." The erle seide, "Y am

" noo traytour," desyrynge ofte to reioyce that pardon grawntede to hym by þe kynge. Iohn Busche, speker of the parliamente, seide to hym, "That pardon is revoked nowe by oure lorde " þe kynge, the lordes of þe realme, and by us his tru lige men." Then the erle seide, " Where be the tru commune peple and " his lige men: y knowe the welle and thy felawes, for þow " hase bene a traytour longe intendynge and ymaginynge my " dethe." Then Henricus erle of Derby did aryse, rehersynge this sentence: " Seide not þow to me at Huntyndon, where we " mette firste to make insurreccion, 'Lete us goe firste and take " 'the kynge'?" The erle of Arundell seide, "Thow lyes, " y seide not of the kynge in eny wyse but þat was for his " honore and worschippe in eny thynge to the or unto eny
f. 435 a. " other." Then the kynge seide to hym, " Seide not þow to me " in the tyme of thy parliamente, in a bathe behynde the white " halle, that Symon Burle was worthy dethe for mony causes? " and y seide to þat tyme that y cowthe not fynde eny cause " of dethe in hym. Neverþeles y and my qwene preyenge for " his lyfe, thow putte hym to dethe falsely and lyke a traytoure, and despiseste my preyere." Then the kynge seide to the stuarde, " ȝiffe to hym his iuggemente." Then the duke of Lancastre seide in this wyse: " Richarde, I Iohn stywarde of " Ynglonde iugge þe a traytoure, and condempne that thow be " drawen, honged, and quartert, and alle thy londes taylede " and not taylede to be applyede to the use of the kynge for " ever." Neverthelesse the kynge grauntede that he scholde be but heded, for the reverence of his blode, and so he was brouȝhte to Chepe and heded þer, and beryede after at the freres Austyn in London. And on Seturday nexte folowynge, at proclamacion was made that syr Thomas Mortymare scholde presente hym to the kynge within vj. ¦dayes folowynge immediately, in peyne of treason and perpetuall exile. And in Monday nexte folowynge a certificatory sende from Caleys from the duke of Sowthefolke, that tyme capiteyne þer, was redde. In whom hit was contenede that that Thomas dūke of Glocestre myȝhte not appere afore the kynge, in that he was dedde in kepynge. Neverthelesse the same sentence was fulminate ageyne hym lyke as hit was to the erle off Arundell; and the goodes temporall of Thomas Arundell archebischop of Cawnterbery eschete, he was putte into exile. And in the Tyseday nexte folowynge the cowntee of Chestre was exaltede unto a duchery and augmentede by the hondes of Ricardus erle of Arundell. Also hit was ordeynede in that day that alle men ȝiffynge comfort, cownsayle, or helpe to the sonnes of men dampnede in þat parliamente, and to be dampned, that thei scholde suffre dethe as traytours. Also an ordinaunce was made in this parliament, that alle lordes spirituall and temporall scholde swere that thei scholde observe alle

thynges ordeynede in the seide parliamente. And on Fryday nexte folowynge Thomas erle of Warwyke was presentede; whiche herynge that appellacion made ageyne hym wepede soore, and denyede hit not, submyttynge hym to the mercy and grace of the kynge. Then the kynge inquiredc of hym by whom f. 435 a he was movede perto. The erle answerede and seide by Thomas duke of Glocestre, by thabbot of Seynte Alban pat tyme, and by a monke reclused in Westemonastery, besechynge with grete wepynge pe kynge of mercy and of grace. The noblemen beynge presente and seenge hym to make so grete lamentacion movede the kynge to schewe grace to hym. And so the kynge grawntede to him lyfle, and sende hym to the yle of Man, grawntynge to hym and to his wyfe v. c. marke, to be payede yerely. In whiche tyme Henricus Lancastre, erle of Derby, was made duke of Herford, and Thomas Holand, erle of Kente, into the duke of Surrey, Iohn Holande, erle of Huntyndon, into duke of Excestre, Thomas Mowbray, erle of Notyngham, into the duke of Northefolke, Iohn Bewforde, erle of Somersete, into markesse of Dorsette, lorde Thomas Despenser into pe duke of Glocestre, lorde Rawfe Nevyle in to the erle of Westemarlond, syr Thomas Percy into erle of Worcestre, and William lorde Scrope into the erle of Wylteschire. This doen the parliamente was contynuate with alle lordes spirituall and temporalle, and to be terminate at Schrobbesbury by consente of the parliamente at the feste of seynte Hillary nexte folowynge; and so the kynge ȝafe licence to alle peple that thei scholde departe to theire cuntre. But in the feste of seynte Ierom the lordes spirituall and temporall made an othe by commaundemente of the kynge afore the schryne of seynte Edwarde that thei scholde holde and sustene alle statutes, iuggementes, and ordinaunces made in that parliamente; that doen, thei wente unto the hye awter, where the prelates seide, "We, the prelates and ordinaryes of the provinces of Cawnter-"bery and of Yorke, ordeyne, monysche, and require that the "seide provinces, on peyne of the grete sentence of excommu-"nicacion, to procede ageyne men that breke hit." After that the kynge made a grete feste to his lordes spirituall and temporall metynge at Schrobbesbury in the tyme assignede to finische pe seide parliamente; where hit was ordeynede that the heires male or female of the lordes condempnede afore scholde not reioyce eny of theire londes, taylede or not taylede, but thay scholde be excluded for ever from eny accion to hyt or theyme or eny other clayme; and so Thomas Arundell, son of Ricardus somme tyme erle of Arundell, was sende over see into exile; and the heire of Thomas somme tyme duke of Gloucestre, putte into the towre of London, was taken pens prively by a merchaunte and brouȝhte over see. Also hit was ordeynede in that parliamente on Tyseday nexte folowynge

that the heires of theyme whiche were convicte of hye treason scholde not ioye eny londes or possessions of theire progenitors, but thei scholde be excluded from theym for ever. This was the firste article, if eny man of whatsoever condicion or dignite hade ymagined the dethe of the kynge. The secunde, if eny man hade laborede to depose the kynge in eny wise. The thrydde if eny man hade ryden in armoure in the realme to move eny gwerre ageyne the kynge. The iiij^{the}, if eny man disclamede the homage of the kynge. In whiche tyme Iohn lord Cobham was presented to answere to ij. articles obiecte ageyne hym. The firste article was that he ȝafe cownseile to make the foreseide commission ageyne the kynge and his astate, and also that he usede the seide commission in iuggementes in his awne person ageyne the pleasure off the kynge and of his regaly grete preiudice. The secunde article was that the seide lorde Cobham sate in iuggement to iugge Symon Burle and Iamys Berners, knyζhtes, in the absence of the kynge and ageyne his wylle; wherefore he was convicte and sende to the yle of Gersey, to be kepede þer by the tyme of his lyfe. And in the Wednesday nexte folowynge, hit was ordeynede that an if eny man did agene the promisses and statutes made in the seide parliamente he scholde be iuggede as a traytour. And in Thursday nexte folowynge alle lordes spirituall and temporalle þer at that tyme did swere on the crosse of Cawnterbury that thei scholde observe the statutes, constitucions, and ordinaunces made in that parliamente durynge the tyme of theire lyfe after theire powere. And the statutes made sommetyme ageyne syr Hewe Despenser
f. 436 b. were redde and revokede by þe wylle of the kynge and consente of the lordes and oþer peple in that parliament. In whiche parliamente oon xv^{the} and the halfe of an oþer xv^{the} was grawntede to be payede to the kynge, at Michellmasse nexte folowynge oon parte, that oþer parte at Ester nexte folowynge, the thrydde parte at Michelmasse after, and l^{ti} s. for a sakke of wolle of men of Ynglonde as for custom, and iij.li. of aliaunteζ. And the kynge grawntynge a generall pardon to alle peple þer, that thei scholde not be in dowte as for eny thynge doen afore that tyme unto his person, ȝafe theyme licence to departe, and so that terrible and grete parliamente was dissolvede. And Thomas Arundell, archebischop of Cawnterbery, was deposede by that parliamente, and sende to exile into Scotlonde, abowte the feste of the purificacion of oure Lady; whom Iohn Walden, treasurer of Ynglonde, did succede. This parliamente doen, the kynge visitte mony costes of Ynglonde, as Herforde, Worcestre, Hanley, Hayleys, Wynchecombe, Gloucestre, and Bristowe, whére he made listes for a conflicte to be made betwene an esqwyer of Ynglonde appellynge and a knyζhte borne in Scotlonde, but he was sworn to be tru to Ynglonde, defendynge that appellacion. And so the man refusynge his appel-

lacion was drawen and hongede. And in the same yere abowte the feste of Ad vincula sancti Petri, the kynge caused myȝhty lystes to be made at Cowentre for an oþer conflicte to be hade betwene the duke of Herforde and the duke of Northfolke. And this was þe mater and cause: these duke rydynge to geder, and havynge communicacion of the kynge, the duke of Northfolke seide to that other duke, "Beholde how mutable and variable "is the kynge ys; y drede that he wylle peresche us hereafter "lyke as he hathe doen oþer lordes afore." Then the duke of Herford seide, "Y have noo diffidence in the wordes of "my sovereign, and y wylle not withdrawe me from his "presence tylle that y be commaunded by hym, for y "have not doen eny thynge to the displeasure of my sove- f. 437 a.
"reigne." These wordes were rehersede to the kynge, wherefore the kynge inquirede of theyme to knowe the trawthe; oon of theym affermede that hit was soe, that other of theyme seyde nay; and so the day of theire fiȝhte was assignede to be in the feste and day of seynte Lamberte bischop and martir. In whiche day a grete multitude of peple come to see that conflicte. These dukes beynge with ynne lystes and redy to fiȝhte, the kynge beynge in his tente in regall apparayle, commaunded theyme to sease, and toke that mater in his iuggemente, commaundynge a proclamacion to be made that Henricus duke of Herforde scholde be putte into exile for certeyne inobedience doen ageyne the kynge by x. yere. And Thomas Mowbray, duke of Northfolke, scholde be in exile by the tyme of his lyfe, receyvynge yerely to his exhibicion a M. marke untylle that the towne of Calys were repayrede. For the seide duke was capiteyne by certeyne yeres of the towne of Calyȝ, and did hurte to the towne, doynge lytell reparacion or noon on hit, and puttynge hit in grete dette. And in the feste of seynte Michel nexte folowynge, the kynge commaundede xvj. schires in Ynglonde to be condempnede, and eiche of theyme payede to the kynge a M. marke or a M. li., puttynge theire bodyes in the grace off the kynge. Also alle religious men, gentylmen, and other commune peple thro alle the realme putte to theire seales on white chartres made by the commaundemente of the kynge. Mony men suppose that thynge to be doen for money to be gedrede, for diverse men drawynge to the kynge movede hym to gette goodes, seyenge that and if he hade goodes sufficiaunte he scholde not have eny cause to drede, but alle men scholde drede hym. And so he borowede of lordes and of prelates a summe of goode as innumerable, whiche was not payede ageyn after. But O thou covetyse, moder of vices, that never dose replete the appetite of men desyrynge þe, comparable to a man havynge the dropesy, whiche is moore athurste after that he hathe drunke, and so in lyke wyse a man havynge grete treasures is infecte þe moore with f. 437 b.

avaryce. Iohn Gawnte, duke of Lancastre, dyede in this yere at Cristemasse, at the castelle of Leycestre, and was beryede with grete solennite at the churche of Seynte Paule in London, Henricus his sonne beynge that tyme in exile over see. Kynge Richarde kepede this Cristemasse at Lichfeld, with whom mony straunge lordes were, as the broper of the emperoure of Constantinopole and syr Petyr de Bristo, with the bischop Aquensis, messanger of the pope, sende into Ynglonde for the revocacion of the statute made ageyne provisours of churches, and for oper diverse causes. Whiche hade powere to dispense with alle prestes entrede to theire benefices by symony, and to grawnte or ȝiffe the seide benefices newly to theyme, and mony other privilegys, by the pretexte of whom he gate treasure as innumerable. In this Cristemasse grete iustynges were hade in every day, where so grete a multitude of peple hade resorte that xxviij^{ti}, ꝙxen or xxvij^{ti} ccc. schepe, and wildefooles as innumerable were spende dayly. And after the feste of Pentecoste, kynge Ricardus toke his iourneye to Yrlonde with a grete glory and multitude of peple, thenkynge noo man so myȝhty; but fortune ȝafe hym a grete falle soone after. For abowte the feste of seynte Iohn Baptiste he hade worde that Henricus duke of Herforde, þen duke of Lancastre by the dethe of his fader, whom he hade put into exile, was commen into Ynglonde. The kynge made grete haste with his hoste to mete hym, thenkynge to have hade victory lyȝhtely. The seide kynge commynge from Yrlonde londed in Wales at Hertlouȝhe, nye to þe castelle, abowte the feste of seynte Iames apostole, taryenge by a lytelle season in that castell, departenge from that place to Chestre, that he myȝhte take with hym men of that cuntre, in whom he hade moste confidence and truste. But the seide kynge hade worde for a trawthe that alle castelles from the costes of Bristowe unto the northe partes of Ynglonde were delyverede to the seide duke. And also that alle lordes spiritualle and temporall and the communes of Ynglonde did aryse with hym ageyne the kynge, and how syr William Scrope, erle of Wilteschire and treasurer
f. 438 a. of Ynglonde, syr Henricus Grey, and syr Iohn Busche, knyȝhtes, were hevede at Bristowe. The kynge herynge that sorowede moche, commaundynge the hoste, whiche was of xx. M. men in nowmbre, to comme afore hym, to whom he ȝafe licence to departe. But that hoste comforte the kynge moche, seyenge that thei wolde not leve hym, but they scholde lyve or dye in his parte ageyne the seide duke. Neverthelesse he toke with hym the bischop of Kaerliel, the erle of Salysbery, and oþer þersons unto the nowmbre of xx^{ti}, and wente in the nyȝhte prively from his hoste unto the castell of Flynte. The marcialle of the hoste understondynge of þe departynge of the kynge, brake his rodde afore the hoste into a signe of

hevynesse þat men scholde departe, but the seide hoste was spoylede or that thei cowthe departe from Wales, after that hyt was dispersede, insomoche that mony kny3htes were feyne to go home on foote unto theire cuntres. But what schall the kynge do nowe with alle his treasure and rychesse, for whom he hathe vexede moche the costes of Ynglonde, truly hit schall not cause hym to avoide perelle folowynge. The seide duke of Herforde and heire of Iohn Gawnte, late dedde, somme tyme duke of Lancastre, come to Ynglonde, as hit is seide afore, abowte the feste of seynte Iohn Baptiste, with lx. persons in nowmbre. Amonge whom Thomas archebischop of Cawnterbery was putte but late afore into exile; Thomas, heire of the erle of Arundell, the confessor of þe kynge, the lorde Cobham, Thomas Herpyngham, and Thomas Remston, kny3htes; Iohn Norbury, Robert Waturton, Franciscus Court, esqwyers, and oþer moo, whiche londed in the northe costes of Ynglonde in Yorkeschyre, betwene Hull and Brydlyngton. Whiche were receyvyde with gladde chere of the lordes and communes of þat cuntre, and gedrenge a grete hoste þer made grete haste unto the sowthe partes of Ynglonde, turnynge by Evysham unto Berkeleye, where alle castells longynge to the kynge were delyverede to hym with in thre dayes. Then Edmund Langley, duke off Yorke, and uncle to hym, gedrede f. 438 b.
a multitude of men, but þer was not oon of theym that wolde fi3hte ageyne the duke off Lancastre. This duke of Yorke wente towarde Wales, abidynge the commynge of the kynge from Yrlonde, taryenge at Berkeleye; but the duke of Lancastre commynge with my3hty men and with a grete hoste, the seide dukes spake togedre and were acordede abowte the feste of seynte Iame in the churche with owte the castelle of Berkeley. And the bischop of Norwich, the lorde of Berkeley, and of Seymor, and mony other kny3htes come with the duke of Yorke, Thomas Arundelle, archebischop of Cawnterbery, the abbot of Leicestre, the erle off Northumbrelonde and of Westmarelonde, the heire of Ricardus erle off Arundell, late dedde, the baron of Greystocke, the lorde Wilby, and the lorde Roos, with mony other kny3htes, come with the duke of Lancastre. And in the same day the bischop of Norwyche was areste, syr William Elman and syr Walterus Burtley, kny3htes, Lawrence Dren, and Iohn Golafre, esqwyers, and were putte in streyte kepynge. That doen the seide dukes toke theire iourneye to Bristowe, schewynge theire hoste afore the towne and a castelle of a c.m. peple in nowmbre. In whiche tyme syr William Scrope, erle of Wilteschire, lorde Henricus Grey, and syr Iohn Busche, speker of the laste parliamente, specialle cownsaillour of þe kynge, intendynge the destruccion of the realme; whiche were taken at the laste and brou3te into the feldes to theym arestede firste, and after pre-

sented to the iugges, the constable, and marciall, where thei were convicte and heded for treason and ylle governaunce of the realme. And in the nexte day folowynge the duke of Lancastre toke his iourney towarde Berkeley, and the duke of Yorke taryede at Bristowe, and after that the duke of Lancastre toke his iourney towarde Schrobbesbery, where syr Iohn Alye and syr Roberte Alye, kny3htes, mette hym, preyenge hym to schewe favor to the province of Chestre in that thei submitte theym holly to his governayle. After that he removede to the cite of Chestre, where he schewede his hoste afore the cite, whom alle the religious men of that cite receyved with solenne procession. The seide duke sende anoon over see for the sonne and heire of Thomas somme tyme duke of Glocestre, but allas that noble yonge man was drownede in the see or he my3hte gette to londe. The duchesse of Glocestre and moder to hym,
f. 439 a. herynge of his dethe, toke so grete sorowe that sche dyed also with in fewe dayes folowynge. The kynge beynge in the castell of Flynte, sende Iohn Holand, duke of Excestre, to Chestre, to entrete for peas with the duke of Lancastre to the duke of Aumarlye, the duke of Surrey, syr Thomas Percy, erle of Worcestre. The lorde Lovell and syr Iohn Stanley come in that tvme. And in the Sonneday nexte folowynge the Assumpcion of oure Lady Thomas Arundell, late archebischop of Cawnterbery, the erle of Northumbrelonde, the erle of Westmerlonde, and syr Henricus Percy, wente to the kynge from the parte of the duke of Lancastre, and spake with him, 3iffynge hym an answere of the purpose of þat duke. That doen the kynge was brou3te to the stronge castell of Conwey, where the seide duke of Lancastre apperede, schewynge his hoste that the kynge my3hte see hym and the towne also. After that the duke ly3hte of his horse and wente over the brygge, taryenge in the firste warde of the castell tylle that he did see the kynge. The bischop of Caerlicl comme þat tyme with the kynge, the erle of Salisbery, and syr Steven Scrope berynge the kynges swerde, with fewe oþer men, syttynge in a place ordeynede for hym. The seide duke seenge the kynge 3afe honor to hym onys, twyes, and in the thrydde tyme the kynge toke hym up. To whom he seide, "My lorde kynge, my commynge into the "londe at þis tyme is to reioyce oure enheritaunce and patri-"mony by youre licence." The kynge seide, "Dere cosynne, "y grawnte that ye reioyce hit in fulle prosperite with owte "eny contradiccion." This doen thei drunke a bolle of wyne togedre. And so thei toke theire horses and did ryde to Chestre, and so to London, and so faste as thei cowthe, insomoche that kynge Ricardus was not suffrede to chaunge his clothes, but rode in symple apparayle thro the cuntre: and hit is seide that this kynge Ricardus hade oon garmente of golde, perles, and of precious stonys, havynge in valoure iij. M. marke.

But, O goode Iesu, thy coote was not of soe grete price, and hit was moore vertuous and moore precious! The kynge was brouȝhte to Westmonastery, and the duke was receyvede of the cite of London with grete solennite, taryenge in the palyce of the bischop of London. In the morowe nexte folow- f. 439 b.
ynge, the kynge was brouȝte to the towre of London and put in sure kepynge. That doen the seide duke of Lancastre ordeynede that a parliamente scholde be kepede thro the cownsaile of lordes drawynge to hym in the name of kynge Richarde. Wherefore wrytynges were sende thro the realme that alle peple longynge to be at þe parliamente scholde appere at Westmonastery in the day nexte folowynge the feste of seynte Michael. In whiche parliamente and in the firste, the kynge resignede his crowne, title, and ryȝhte, absolvynge archebischoppes, bischoppes, alle lordes spiritualle and temporall, and alle þe peple of Ynglonde, from his ligence and obedience made to hym in eny maner of wyse, makynge a solenne protestacion on a masse booke, and swerynge that he wolde never desire ne labor prively ne openly to reioyce the crowne of Ynglonde, confessynge by his awne person that he was worthy by his demerytes and insolente lyfe to be deposede. That doen he kyssede the masse booke, wrytynge under the resignacion his submission, in whom he did submitte hym to his trusty cosyn Henricus duke of Lancastre, and to reverende faders Thomas Arundelle archebischop of Cawnterbery, Ricardus archebischop of Yorke, Iohn bischop of Herforde, and to oþer noble men, Henry erle of Northumbrelonde, Ricardus erle of Westmerlonde, Thomas Arundell, and mony other barons and knyȝhtes. Also the seide kynge Richarde desirede that he myȝhte reioyce certeyne lyvelode bouȝhte afore, whiche he intendede to distribnte for his sawle to the monastery of Westmonastery. Whiche kynge desyrede and seide openly that hit was his wylle that the seide duke of Lancastre, cosyn to hym, scholde succede in that realme of Ynglonde and reioyce his crowne. That resignacion redde openly in the parliamente and admitte by the lordes and commune peple also, kynge Ricardus deposede and the trone vacante, þe lordes movenge for the successioun of þe realme, the commune peple cryede and desirede Henry duke of Lancastre to be kynge. The duke herynge that did aryse and ascended unto the kynges trone, and makynge a crosse seide in this wyse :—" I Henricus, duke and lawefulle heire of the f. 440 a.
" honorable fader Iohn late duke off Lancastre, clayme and
" take in the name of þe Fader, and the Sonne, and of the Holy
" Goste the kynges trone and the crowne of Ynglonde with
" the pertinence as by lawefull enheritaunce and linealle de-
" scence from kynge Henricus the thrydde." This doen he sate downe in the seete, havynge this communicacion :—" I

" thonke my God and Kynge, my frendes alle, oper lordes
" spirituall and temporall, and the commune peple also, that ye
" have exaltede me unto so excellente a governayle as unable
" perto. Neverthelesse y intende thro youre hollesome coun-
" sayle and supporte that the realme schalle contynue in pease
" and tranquillite, whiche hathe bene longe in trowble for fawte
" and wontynge of sadde governayle. Where y wylle that alle
" men knowe that my wylle was not in eny wyse to expelle
" eny man from his enheritaunce, but men that wolde have
" destroyede the sadde governayle of the realme." And so this parliamente was dissolvede in the same day, and a newe parliamente assignede to be kepede in the name of kynge Henricus þe iiij^the, whiche scholde begynne in the day folowynge the feste of the translacion of seynte Edward Confessor. In whiche day kynge Henricus, the iiij^the after the conqueste, was crownede with grete solennite, syr Henricus Persy, erle of Northumbrelonde, presente, and mony other noblemen of the londe. And in the day nexte folowynge thei wente into the parliamente, where a certificacioun was hade of the dethe of Thomas somme tyme duke of Glocestre, how maliciously he was put to dethe by Thomas Moubray, duke of Northefolke, and capiteyne that tyme of Calys, by commaundemente of kynge Richarde. Whiche story we schalle expresse here in parte, whiche was taken at Plesch by kynge Ricardus and sende to Calys, as hit is schewede afore. But a mervellous processe folowethe nowe and a wickede, how he was putte to dethe; for hit is to be mervaylede that a kynges sonne, a noble kny3hte, and so gentylle a duke scholde dye in so vile a dethe. This
f. 440 b. duke laborynge in grete infirmite was brou3hte to Calys and put into streyte kepynge with grete peynes and mony, ffor the kynge sende to Calys oftetymes .prively that thei scholde schorte his dayes with owte effusion of bloode. And at the laste they brou3hte hym furthe in a ny3hte unto a chambre with owte eny ly3hte, where they hade made redy a feþer-bedde, seyenge to hym "Make haste and dispose for thy sawle,
" for the tyme of thy dethe drawethe nere, by the precepte of
" kynge Richard." The duke seide: "Allas, frendes! God have
" mercy on yow; wylle my lorde and kynge that y dye in this
" wyse lyke a swyne? Neverthelesse y take me to the wylle
" and mercy of Criste my maker, preyenge yow that y may
" 3iffe certeyn lawde to hym afore my dethe." That doen, he seide, "Performe that ye have intended: y truste in the
" Trinite, y schalle not drede whatsoever thynge that a man
" dothe to me." Then thei toke and put hym on a feder-bedde, puttenge on hym an oper, and tredynge on hym unto the tyme that he was dedde; and per were v. men at the puttynge of hym to dethe, whiche escapede not withowte vengeaunce, God be thonkede! And the body of the seide duke was sende

to Ynglonde, and beryede at London in the churche of Seynte Paule with grete honoure. Thomas Arundell, archebischop somme tyme of Cawnterbery, was restorede to that seete by the pope, and Iohn Walden was deposede; and alle lordes ereete by kynge Ricardus in þe xxj. yere of his reigne into markesse, dukes, or into erles, were redacte in this parliamente unto theire olde state. And Thomas late erle of Warwyke was cal̃lede from exile to his enheritaunce, and Thomas Arundell, sonne and heire of Ricardus erle of Arundell, was restorede to his londes and enheritaunce. Also the lorde Cobham, putte to exile in to þe yle of Gersey, was restorede to his enheritaunce; and alle oþer lordes putte into exile in þe xxj^ti yere of þe reigne of kynge Richarde were restorede unto theire enheritaunces, excepte that thei scholde not make eny cleyme ageyne the occupyers of theire possessions in the meane tyme. And that parliamente of kynge Ricardus was made voyde and as of noo valoure, with alle thynges dependynge of hit. Also kynge Henricus þe iiij^the made a constitucion that eny man resortynge to hym from his commynge into Ynglonde unto þe tyme and f. 441 a.
day of his coronacion, for eny dethe of man, trespasse, or offense, in the kynges presence or absence, scholde not be vexede or grevyde in eny wyse. But he commaunded that and if eny man hade doen eny offence after the tyme of the coronacion of the kynge, withowte he hade a specialle precept of the kynge.[1] After a constitucion was made in the same parliamente that archebischop, bischop, abbot, prior, or eny other spirituall lorde or temporall of whatsoever condicion or state, that he scholde not ȝiffe eny lyvery of clothe but to peple of the private howscholde, and to men of theire cownsayle which be instructe in the lawes, whiche statute was ordeynede to take vertu and begynnynge at the feste of the Purificacion of oure Lady nexte folowynge. In whiche parliamente the commune peple desyrede instantely diverse lordes to be iuggede for treason and wykked governaunce of the realme and of the kynge; but the kynge preyede the peple to suffre as for a season. That parliament dissolvede, diverse lordes hade ymaginede to have sleyne kynge Henricus prively, the names of whom schall be expressede soon after [it].[1] Neverthelesse, the mayre of London havynge certeyne knowlege þereof wente in grete haste to Wyndeshore to þe kynge, and causede hym to comme to London, and so he escapede þeire hondes. And abowte the Epiphanye nexte folowynge, the erle off Kente and the erle of Salisbery sorowede moche that thei myȝhte not performe theire purpose, and thenkynge if þey myȝhte in eny wyse that thei wolde delyver kynge Ricardus from prison. And so thei come to Farinton, into Barkeschire, movynge the peple to aryse and to

[1] Sic in MS.

helpe theire kynge from prison, goynge to Cirencestre that same day, where thei made the same proclamacion. But the men of that towne tru to the kynge and to the realme fau3te soore ageyn the lordes and theire men, where the lordes were taken and putte in sure kepynge in the monastery. Then the seide lordes dredynge the seide peple, commaundyd diverse of þeire men to sette fyre in diverse places of the towne, thenkynge þat the men of the towne wolde avoide from þeim, and by þat thei my3hte escape. But men of that towne knowynge þat treason toke the lordes from the monastery and causede theyme to be hedede in the markete place in the thrydde day after þe Epi-
f. 441 b. phany. In whiche tyme a kny3hte of the northe, syr Rawfe Lumpney, was heded þer also. And syr Thomas Despenser was heded in the nexte weke folowynge in this maner. The seide lorde Despenser beynge in his castell at Kaerdef, the kynge sende a certeyne nowmbre of peple to those costes that thei scholde brynge hym to London wheþer he wolde or nay. But he knowynge hym selfe suspecte fledde with his goodes into a schippe, intendynge to fle into Fraunce. But the maister of the schippe corrupte with money hade hydde prively in the body of þe schippes under hacches a xx^ti men of armes. And so thei saylynge in the myddes of þe water the maister of þe schippe inquirede whider he intended to sayle; the lorde seide into Fraunce; the maister of the schippe seide, "Truly þe moste sayle to Bristowe." The lorde seide, "Pre-
"sume not to do so, for thow schalle dye raþer with thys
"swerde." The men beynge under hacches did aryse and come to take the seide lorde. Neverthelesse the seide lorde fi3ht-ynge soore, and woundynge mony of theyme, was taken at the laste and brou3te to Bristowe, and putte hym in the mayres prison. And in the secunde day folowynge the peple come to the mayre, cryenge and seyenge, "Brynge furthe that
"traytour to the kynge and to the realme, that he may be
"sleyne." And so at the laste they drawede hym from prison and heded hym at the crosse in the market place; the hedde of whom was sette on London brigge, beryede afterwarde at Tewkysbery at the instaunce off his moder. And soone after Iohn Holant, erle of Huntyndon, broþer to kynge Ricardus by reason of his moder, was taken at Plaschet in Estesex by the cowntesse of Herford, and was heded; and after that syr Walterus Brocas, kny3hte, and oþer ij. clerkes, were drawen and hongede at London. Also the bischop of Karliell was convicte and condempnede for treason, and so by grete laboure he was suffrede to departe to his monastery, whiche cowthe not reioyce eny benefice in the tyme of kynge Henricus þe iiij^the. But O thow fortune, whiche scheweste pleasaunte aspecte to men in prosperite and chaunges thy whele in so schorte tyme, suffrenge men to falle from hye places to lawe! what

presumpcion of audacite causede these lordes beynge in tran-
quillite in the northe partes to come to the sowthe and suffre f. 442 a.
dethe there. But a man may answere and say that they did
aryse ageyne theire hedde and kynge, wherefore thei loste
theire hedes by theire demerytes. Kynge Richarde herynge
of the dethe of those lordes in whom alle his confidence was,
dyede in prison for sorowe in the feste of seynte Valentyne, in
the yere of oure Lorde Godde a M.CCC.XCIX. But y suppose
that the oppinion of commune peple is moore tru whiche re-
hersethe that he dyede in prison for hungre, and by the iuste
iuggemente of God, wyllynge that he scholde dye with the
swerde of hungre, whiche hade causede mony noble men to be
sleyne insolentely with a swerde materiall in his tyme. This
kynge Ricardus was of a commune stature, with yelowe heires,
white in face lyke to a woman, havynge a grete impedimente
in eloquency; inconstant of promysses, despysynge the cown-
saile and company of olde men, drawynge to yonge men, ex-
cessive in pride, ȝiffen gretely to leechery, infortunate in bateli,
takynge in alle his lyfe mony taxes and tallages of the peple
of his realme, excedynge in festes and in ȝiftes. But alle the
goodes that he myȝhte gette were unnethe sufficiaunte to hym,
for thei were spende by grete insolence. Neverthelesse the
seide kynge luffede the churche of God, and promotede men of
the churche, specially monkes of the blake ordre, and ȝafe to
þe of Westmonastery unto the valoure of v. c. marke by yere
to pray for hym: on the sawle of whom Iesu have mercy,
Amen. And abowte the feste of þe Annunciacion of oure Lady,
the kynge sende letters to diverse places of the northe that
all men of the churche, freres excepte, scholde appere in armes
defensive afore certeyne prelates ordeynede to see þeyme.
Whiche answerede and seide that they were redy at all tymes
to fullefyll the pleasure of the kynge. And abowte the feste
of seynte Iohn Baptiste nexte folowynge, the kynge toke his
iourneye towarde Scottelonde, but that iourneye prevaylede
lytell or nouȝhte, a certeyne truse and fals pease taken
betwene the realmes for a certeyne season. And so the kynge
returnede from Scottelonde and commen to Leicestre herde
straunge tythynges, how that men of Wales were gedrede in a
grete multitude, and hade erecte into theire prince an esqwyer
Owyn Glyndor by name, and trowbled the pease. The cause
of that insurreccion folowethe. When that the kynge wente
into Scottelonde, he sende letters to the seide Owyn Glyndor,
in that he was a esqwyer of grete fame, that he scholde comme
to hym in eny wise. The lorde Grey of Ruthyn was assignede f. 442 b.
to bere the letters, whiche delyverede not the letters to the
seide Owen untylle the day afore that the kynge toke his
iourney unto Scotlonde. The letters taken and redde he
excusede hym, seyenge that he hade not a competente monicion

for suche a iourney. And so the lorde Grey levynge hym in Wales made grete haste unto the kynge, þat tyme in Scottelonde, sayenge to hym that the seide Owyn despisynge his letters wolde not come in eny wyse. And so the kynge beynge stylle as for the tyme, made provision to go to that cuntre after his departynge from Scottelonde. And so the kynge entrede into Wales cowthe not fynde hym and his men, for they were hydde in caves and in mowntanes. Then the kynge seenge that he cowthe not prevayle, and þat his hoste pereschede for hungre, ȝafe to the lorde Gray the tenementes and londes of that esqwyer Owyn Glyndor, and returnede into Ynglonde. But the grawnte of þat londe caused grete trowble and hurte, as hit schalle be schewede hereafter, ffor after the departynge of þe kynge from Wales, Owyn Glyndor did aryse with his companye and wente to Ruthyn, a towne in Wales longynge to the seide lorde Gray, whom he spoylede firste, and that doen he destroyede hit utterly by fyre. Grete insolence of vesture began to encrease in the begynnynge of this kynge, and specially of gownes with longe pokus, made in the maner of a bagpype, usede indifferentely by ryche men and poore, whiche myȝhte be callede welle the receyvynge places of the develle; for men hydde in theym that they myȝhte gette, for somme of theyme were so longe that they were extente unto the grownde, and somme to þe knees. Whiche were demersede and maide moiste when men scholde serve theire lordes of potage or of sawce, tastynge of that liquore afore theire lordes, wherefore men say God to have punyschede and to punysche unto this tyme the realme of Ynglonde for insolente pride by Scottes, by men of Fraunce, and by men of Wales. Neverthelesse, peple awe to drede that with owte thei returne from pride inordinate that God wille schewe to theyme moore vengeaunce. A parliamente was holden in this yere after the feste of Cristemasse at Westemonastery, where a man, Walterus Sawtry by name, a Lollarde, and after his abiuracion defecte in heresy, was brente miserably. In whiche yere the emperoure of Constantinopole come into Ynglonde, desirynge helpe of the kynge ageyne the paganes; whiche taryenge with the kynge by a certeyne tyme, and gretely rewardede, departyde unto his awne cuntre, desyrynge and besechynge the helpe of God, for he wonted the helpe of man; preyenge also that God wolde schewe somme token unto the Cristen sleyne in that batell, whereby they myȝhte be knowen. And so in the nyȝhte afore the day of batelle a voyce apperede to hym, and bade that he scholde not drede, for God hade ordeynede a glorious victory to hym. The hostes mette to gedre on Goode Friday, and as innumerable peple of the pagans were sleyne, and oþer causede to flee. That batelle doen, the emperoure wente into the felde to see the peple that were sleyne of his parte, whiche founde

f. 443 a.

Cristen men sleyne þer lyenge on theire ryȝhte syde, and an hoste in theire mowthe, in a signe of the blissede communion, sende from hevyn by the powere of God. The emperoure seenge þat enioyede gretely, ȝiffenge grete lawde to allemyȝhty Godde, commaundynge þeim to be beryede after the maner of Cristen peple: whiche narracion y committe to the wylle of þe reder as to the credence of hit, neverthelesse scripture affermethe alle thynges to be possible to a man belevynge, and eny thynge is not impossible as anendes Godde. The kynge purposynge to correcte the men of Wales, causynge grete trowble come in the same yere to Evisham in the secunde tyme with a grete companye of knyȝhtes and oþer peple, taryenge þer into the thrydde day after dyner, and after that to Worcestre, and so into Wales. Whiche taryenge þer by a monethe, profite lytelle for the cause of his commynge, but that he did sle oon man of Wales whiche promysede to brynge the kynge to Owen Glendor, and he performede not his promyse. The man inquirede why that he fullefyllede not the promise made to the kynge, answerede sayenge he hade lever suffre dethe then to detecte the secrete cownsayle of the seide Owyn, in that he had ij. sonnes with hym. In whiche tyme the kynge made poore þe monastery of Stretflur, insomoche that he lefte not oon monke in hit; where oon of the monkes was heded in that he bare armoure ageyne the kynge and pease. Neverthelesse the kynge see not the seide Owyn Glyndor neiþer hade understondynge where he was or in what place; and so certeyne f. 443 b.
men putte in diverse castells of Wales, the kynge returnede to London with his hoste. Owyn Glyndor understondynge the departynge of the kynge, spoylede a towne callede Poole, and did grete hurte, and brente mony places of hyt. Tidemannus bischop of Worcestre diede in this tyme, whom Ricardus Clifford succedid by eleccion. And Isabell, wife of kynge Ricardus, and somme tyme qwene of Ynglonde, departede from Ynglonde to the kynge of Fraunce, her fader, abowte þe nativite of seynte Iohn Baptiste. A grete derthe of cornes was in this tyme in Ynglonde, insomoche that a buschell of whete was solde by oon yere for ij. s., or oþer while for ij. s. vj. d. Also the kynge goynge to his bedde at Westemonastery abowte the Nativite of oure Lady, founde an horrible instrumente wherwith he scholde have bene sleyne if that he hade goen to bedde hastely. But as God wolde he escapede with owte eny hurte, schewynge hit to mony peple, and seyenge, "Beholde, frendes, "y am beholden to my Lorde Godde, whiche wolde not that y "scholde dye ȝitte in suche dethe." The smyth was taken anoon by commaundemente of the kynge, whiche inquirede by the kynge wheþer þat he made þat instrumente, confessede openly that he made that instrumente by the meane and movynge of a man longynge to Isabell the qwene. That man was areste anoon, whiche denyede utterly that he commaundede

to make that instrumente, and soe by longe continuacion a verey prove cowthe not be hade in that mater, wherefore the kynge grawntede to þeim bothe theire lyves, and were suffrede to departe. The kynge intendynge to destroye the seide Owyn Glyndor wente towarde Wales in the thrydde tyme, and come to Evysham, taryenge þer by thre dayes, and after that he wente to Worchestre in the viij^the^ day of October, taryenge þer by ix. dayes. Neverthelesse hit was not seen afore that tyme, a kynge of Ynglonde to have taryede thryes in þat monastery in oon yere afore that tyme. Where diverse noble men movede the kynge that he scholde commaunde lordes and oþer gentyll men that hade eny lyvelode þer to kepe þat cuntre for theire awne
f. 444 a. avayle; that doen the kynge departede unto London. A blasynge sterre was seene in the weste in this yere abowte the feste of the Purificacion of oure Lady, contynuynge and apperynge in diverse tymes unto Ester nexte folowynge. And in the same yere in Lente the lorde Gray of Ruthyn, beynge in his castelle at Ruthyn in Wales, hade knowlege that Owyn Glyndor was nye to hym with fewe men, and so he made hym redy with a certeyne nowmbre of men, and wente to fi3hte with hym. The seide Owyn Glyndor seenge hym, fledde untylle þat he was by a certeyne space from the castell, that the lorde scholde not escape, for he lade mony men of Wales secretely in diverse places, and so that lorde Grey was compassede abowte by his enemyes, and taken and bownde faste in cheynes and brou3hte unto Snawdon hilles. And so the seide lorde Grey intendynge to have hade a grete pray, was made a pray to his adversaryes. Also syr Edmund Mortymere, kny3hte, was taken by the seide Owyn Glendor; for the seide kny3hte beynge in Ludlowe hade worde that the seide Owyn Glyndor was on a hylle nye to Ludlowe, with a fewe men in his companye. Wherefore the seide kny3hte sende to his tenaunte3 of Milenythe in Wales, that thei scholde comme to hym in armes in alle haste. Those men commen the kny3te wente to that hille boldely, and 3afe batell to þeim, but the seide men of Wales that come with hym returnede to Owyn Glendor, and fau3hte ageyne theire lorde, and so he was taken þer and mony other with hym. But þer was oon man of Wales þer soe my3hty and cruell, that was callede Rees, a Gythe, whiche did sle, wounde, or take into captivite every man þat 3afe resistence to hym. In whiche conflicte iiij. men of Ynglonde were sleyne, and iiij. kny3htes: where men lay dedde in theire awne bloode under the feete of horses, and were prohibite to be beryede by a certeyne season. And a certeyne signe schewede in the byrthe of the seide syr Edmunde semede to be fullefyllede in that tyme, for when he come into this worlde from the wombe of his moder, the horses in the stable stode in bloode unto the knees. Neverthelesse Owyn Glendor entretede hym lyke a gentylman, thenkynge

that he scholde reioyce the crowne of Ynglonde after kynge Henricus þe iiij^the. And from that tyme Owyn Glendor encreasede in powere and in myȝhte, and the power of men of Ynglonde decreasede. Blanche, the firste doȝhter of kynge Henricus, saylede over see in this yere to be maryede to the sonne of the emperoure of Alemayne, for whiche mariage the kynge desyrede and hade xx^ti s. of every knyȝhtes see in Ynglonde. In whiche yere a prior at Lawnde deposede for his demerite, and after chapeleyne to the pope, havynge ix. freres of þe ordre of Minors with hym, prechede openly that kynge Ricardus was on lyve, to excite the peple ageyne kynge Henricus; wherefore thei were drawen and honged at Westmonastery, and ij. oþer freres at Leicestre for þe same mater. Edmund Langley, duke of Yorke, dyede abowte the feste of the Assumpcion of oure Lady. And kynge Henricus wente into Wales ageyne with a grete powere abowte the feste of the Decollacion of seynte Iohn Baptiste, and taryede þer xx^ti dayes, losynge mony men of his hoste, and returnede into Ynglonde with owte eny victory. And in the same yere abowte the feste of the Exaltacion of the Holy Crosse, the Scottes, luffynge trowble and gwerre, were gedred in xij. or xiij. M. in nowmbre, and xxx^ti spere men of Fraunce, intendynge to spoyle the northe costes of Ynglonde, but as God wolde thei hade a grete falle. For men of Ynglonde havynge knowlege þerof, were gedred unto the nowmbre of xx^ti M. of speeres and archers, the capiteynes of whom were the erle of Dunbar, the erle of Northumbrelonde, syr Henricus Persy the elder, and syr Henricus Persy the yonger, the lorde Fiȝhehewy, syr Rawfe Ewre, and the baron of Greystok, noble men and experte of marte or batell. The hostes mette, men of Ynglonde spende theire arowes well, after the cownsayle of the erle of Dunbarre, naylynge faste the salettes of the Scottes to theire hedes, insomoche that v. erles were taken þer with in the space of an howre, the erles of Duglas, of Vyf, of Murrey, of Anguys, and of Orkeneye. Also viij. barons and baronettes were taken. lorde Thomas Erskyn, þe lorde Mungumrey, Iohn lorde Styward of Andrenethe, the lorde Patryk of Graym, syr Iames Duglas of Daweth, syr Robert Logan of Bestabrythe, Adam Forster, and syr William Styward, a man of Ynglonde and a traytoure, and xxx^ti knyȝhtes, with ix. c. men of armes and xxx^ti speeremen of Fraunce. In whiche conflicte syr Iohn Swynton, knyȝhte, of Gurdon, with oþer vij. c. men, were sleyne, whom men of Ynglonde pursuede into Scotlonde, where a M. Scottes were drownede, as hit was reportede, and v. men of Ynglonde were sleyne in this conflicte. A parliamente was begunne þis yere at Westmonastery in the firste day of the monethe of October, and was contynuede unto the feste of seynte Kateryne, in whom oon dyme and an halfe was grawn-

f. 444 b.

f. 445 a.

tede to the kynge by the cleregy, and oon xv^the^ of the commune peple, to be payede at thre tymes by egall porcions, at Ester, at Myddesomer, and at the feste of seynte Michael nexte folowynge. Also H. Bowette bischop of Bathe, was amovede from the office of the treasury in this parliamente, and the bischop of London was subrogate into that office. But þer was noo provision made in this parliamente for men of Wales, causynge moche peple to mervayle, in that thei supposede the subsidy to have bene askede þerfore. And in the same yere, abowte the feste of seynte Martyne bischop, the seide Grey of Ruthyn was delyverede from Owyn Glendor, v. M. marke payede afore, and ij. of his sonnes lefte in the kepynge of the seide Owyn for oþer v. M. marke to be payede to hym. In whiche yere syr Edmund Mortymere, of whom we have made mencion afore, maryede the doȝhter of Owyn Glendor abowte þe feste of seynte Andrewe thapostle, with grete solennite; and so that knyȝhte turnede holly to men of Wales, as hit was seide. In whiche yere on þe xvij. kalendes of Ianuarius, the schryne of Hayles was robbed, in whom the precious bloode of Criste was putte, havynge hurte doen þer unto þe valoure of a M. marke, after the estimacion of men; for hit was accompted at that tyme the rycheste schryne in Ynglonde, that schryne of seynte Thomas of Cawnterbery excepte. And soone after the shryne of seynte Edward at Westmonastery was spoylede of grete rychesse and iewells, and specially of oon table of golde.

Laus summo Regi.

Kynge William Conqueroure.

This myȝhty William duke of Normandy,
As bookes olde makethe mencion,
By iuste title and by his chevalrye
Made kynge by conqueste of Brutes Albyon,
Put Harolde owte of possession,
Bare his crowne fulle oon and twenty yere;
Buryede at Cane, thus seithe the croniclere.

Kynge Willyam Rufus.

Nexte in ordre by succession,
Wyllyam Rufus his sonne nexte crownede kynge,
Whiche tó Godward hade litell devocion;
Destroyede churches of newe and olde byldynge
To make a foreste pleasaunte for huntynge.
Fouretene yere bare he his crowne in dede;
Beryede at Wynchestre in cronicle ye may rede.

Kynge Henry the Firste. f. 447 a.

His brother nexte, callede the firste Henry,
Was at London crownede, as y fynde ;
Whos broþer Roberte duke of Normandy
Gan hym werre, the cronicle makeþ ende ;
Reconsilede alle rancoure sette behynde.
Thre and thretty yere, as recordethe wrytynge,
Reignede fully, and buryede at Rydynge.

Kynge Stephen.

Hys cosyn Stephen, when Henry was dedde,
Towarde Englonde gan crosse his sayle.
The archebischop sette on his hedde
A ryche crowne, beynge of his cownsayle.
Xix. yere with sorowe and grete travayle
He bare his crowne, but hade noo reste ;
At Faversham lythe buryede in a cheste.

Kynge Henry the Secund.

Henry the secunde, sonne of the empresse,
Was crownede nexte; a manly kny3hte,
As bookes olde pleynly expresse.
That same Henry by froward my3hte
Did sle seynte Thomas for the churche ry3hte.
Yeres xxxv^ti reignede, as hit is made mynde ;
At Fonte Ebrard lythe buryede, as y fynde.

Kynge Richard þe Firste.

Richard his sonne nexte by succession,
Firste of that name, stronge, hardy, and notable,
Was crownede kynge, callede Cour de Lyon.
With Saresones hedes servede at his table.
Sleyne at Galyarde, with dethe full lamentable.
The space he reignede fulle of x. yere.
His herte buryede at Roone at þe highe awtere.

Kynge Iohn. f. 447 b.

Nexte kynge Richard reignede his brother Ion.
After soone entrede into Fraunce.
Loste alle Angeye and Normandy anon,
This londe entertyted by his misgovernaunce.
And alle this putte in remembraunce,
Xviij. yere kynge of this region ;
Lyethe at Worcestre, and dyde on poyson.

Kynge Henry the Thrydde.

Henry the thrydde, his sonne of ix. yere age,
Was at Gloucestre crownede, as y rede.
Longe werre hade he with his baronage;
Gretely delytede in almes dede.
Sex and fyfty yere reignede he in dede;
Buryede at Westmynstre by recorde of wrytynge,
The day of seynte Edward, maide martir and kynge.

Kynge Edwarde the Firste.

The firste Edwarde with the shankes longe,
Was after crownede, that was so goode a kny3hte;
Wan Scotlonde, magre the Scottes stronge,
And Wales also, despite of alle theire my3hte.
Durynge his lyfe mayntenede trawþe and ry3hte.
Xxxv^ti^ yere he was here kynge;
Lyethe at Westmynstre with owte lesynge.

f. 448 a.

Kynge Edward the Secunde.

Edward hys sonne, callede of Carnarvan,
Succedid after; to make his aliaunce,
As the cronicle welle reherse can,
Wedded Isabell, do3ter of the kynge of Fraunce.
On Thomas of Lancastre he toke vengeaunce.
Xix. yere helde he the regalye;
Buryede at Gloucestre, as bookes specifye.

Kynge Edward the thrydde.

The thrydde Edward borne at Wyndeshore,
Whiche in kny3htehode hadde so grete pryse;
Enheritore of Fraunce, withowte moore,
Bare in his armes quarterlette thre floure de lyse,
And he gate Caleys by his prudence devyse.
Reignede in Englonde lij^ti^ yere;
Lycthe at Westmynstre, suche is the croniclere.

Kinge Richard þe Secunde.

Sonne of prince Edwarde, Richarde kynge þe secounde,
In whos tyme was peas and grete plente;
Wedded qwene Anne of Beme, as hit is founde,
And after Isabell of Fraunce, who luste to se,
Xxij^ti^ yere reignede he harde.
At Langeley buryede firste, so stode þe cas,
After to Westmynstre his body caryede was.

Kynge Henry the iiij^{the}. f. 448 b.

Henry the iiij^{the}, crownede in certeyne,
A famose kny3hte and of grete semelynesse,
From his exile when he come home ageyne,
Travaylede after with werre and grete sekenesse;
Xiiij. yere reignede he in sothenesse;
Buryede at Cawnterbery, in that holy place:
God for his mercy do his sawle goode grace.

Kynge Henry the v^{the}.

The fifthe Henry, of kny3htehode the lodesterre,
Wyse and fulle manly, pleynly to termyne,
Ry3hte fortunate provede in alle maner werre,
Grete experte in merciable disciplyne,
Worthy to stonde amonge the worthy nyne;
Reignede ix. yere and halfe, who luste have rewarde;
Buryede at Westmynstre, not ferre from seynte Edwarde.

Kynge Henry the Sixte.

The sixte Henry brou3te furthe in alle vertu,
By iuste titull borne to enheritaunce,
Afore provided by Criste Iesu
To were ij. crownes of Ynglonde and of Fraunce,
To whom Gode hathe 3iffe sovereigne sufficiaunce
With vertuous life, and chose hym to his kny3hte,
Longe to reioyce and reigne here in his ry3hte.

Amen.

APPENDIX.

THE EIGHTH BOOK OF THE POLYCHRONICON FROM CAXTON.*

INCIPIT LIBER ULTIMUS.

THENNE folowyng this fore wreton booke of Prolicronycon I have emprysed to ordeyne this newe booke by the suffraunce of Almyghty God to contynue the sayd werk bryefly, and to sette in hystoriall thynges, suche as I have conne gete, from the tyme that he lefte, that was in the yere of oure Lord a thousand thre honderde and seven and fyfty, vnto the yere of our sayd Lord thousand four honderd and syxty, and to the fyrst yere of the regne of kynge Edward the fourth.

Capitulum primum.

IN the yere of oure Lord a Thousand thre honderd eyght and fyfty, in October, Robert Knolles, a Capytayne of a greete companye of Englysshe men and other, helde and had won many
Wals., i. 286. fortresses in Fraunce by Orleaunce in Brytayne and in Normandye. And in the same monethe he lefte his garnysons, and cam tofore Parys, and there bytoke a stronge place named Amblanullers. And they of Parys sente out men of warre ageynste them, but they were anone overthrowen and beten into the toune ageyn. And dayly they assaylled the Frensshmen vnto the yates of Parys, and helde them of Parys soo strayte that atte laste they were constreyned to bye that place of hym, & to yeve to hym large moneye to departe. And after they destroyed many places in Champayne ; and in Marche after they toke the Cyte of Anserre and the Castel; at whiche pryse were made thre knyghtes, that is to saye, Robert Knolles, Tomelyn Fonque, and another, whiche thre were Capytaynes of grete foyson of Englysshmen. And they pylled that toune, which was ryche as was sayd, they hadde as moche good and Jewellys, as was valewyd to fyve honderde thousand motons of Golde. And the Raunsonne of prysonners of synguler personnes was an over grete somme. And whan

* The marginal references are to Walsingham's *History* so far as there is anything common to the two, and to the *Fasciculus Temporum*, one of the authorities to which Caxton acknowledges himself indebted.

the Englysshmen had seen the lordes of the toune and had pylled it viij. dayes during, they said they wold brenne the toun, so that they that were left dwelling in the toun agreeed to gyve them to save it forty thousand motons of golde, and syxty perles valewyd at ten thousand motons of golde. And that Englysshemen sholde bere aweye with them aboue that as moche goode as they wold, excepte the Jewellys of the chirche of saynt Germayn, the whiche they shold have in pledge for theyr payemente vnto mydsomer, and as to the wallys, they sholde breke them doune, and brenne the gates, and soo they dyde.

In this yere of oure Lorde a thousande thre honderd syxty, and fyve and thyrtty yere of the regne of kynge Edward the thirde, the pees was fynysshed and acorded bytwene bothe kynges of Fraunce and of Englonde, as it is afore sayd. And at Alhalowen tyde after bothe two kynges metten togeder at Caleys with bothe theyr counseyls; and there were shewyd the Artycles and condicions of the pees and acorde, to whiche both partyes agreed, and promysed to observe and kepe, where forthwith was songe a solempne masse. And after the thyrde Agnus Dei vppon Goddes bodye, and also on the myssale, bothe kynges, her sonnes and the grettest lordes of both Royames beyng tho there presente, swore to holde, observe, and kepe the sayd pees and acorde, and alle other covenauntes that were ordeyned bytwene hem. Wals., i. 289.

Aboute this tyme saynt Brygytte, an hooly wydow of the Royamme of Swethen had many revelacions to bee enformed vnto alle thastate of the chirche, and Instytued and founded an ordre newe of women and of men, wherof she is Patrones: her feste is kepte the two and twentyest day of Juyll. Fasc. Temp., 85 b.

In the same yere were grete and sodayne tempestes and strong lyghtnynge and thondrynge, by whiche howsynge, beestes and trees were perysshed. And the devyl appered in mannys lykenesse to moche peple in dyverse places, and spak to hem. Wals., i. 290.

Also in dyverse places of the worlde were erthe quaves, in soo moche that Basyle the Cyte fylle doune with many Castels aboute hit. That tyme men dwellyd in woodes as beestes, and durste not entre in to Cytees. That tyme were many bataylles, Pestylence and honger in many places. Also in dyverse places the Erthe caste oute whyte water and stynkynge, whiche overthrewe and made to falle Castels and stronge places on many places of the worlde. In this yere, in the feste of Conversion of saynt Poule, kynge Edward helde a parlamente at Westmynstre. In whiche was shewyd the pees and acorde made bytwene the two kynges. Fasc. Temp., 85 b. Wals., i. 294.

Item.—In the same yere in the Ascencion even was seen Eclypse of the Sonne, wherupon fyll a grete droughte, and Wals., i. 295.

that for defaute of rayn fyll grete derth of corne and heye.
Wals., i. 295. Also this same yere the same monethe fylle Rayne in Burgoyne almoost lyke to blood. And a crosse almoost reede was seen in the ayer there. Also in the same tyme was seen in Fraunce, in Englond, and in many other places appyere two castels, oute of whiche yssued oute two hoostes of armed men; that one was clothed in whyte, that other in black. And whan the bataylle was bygonne bytwene them the white overcome the black. And soone after the black overcome the whyte. And thenne they retourned in to theyr castels, and soo vanysshed awey. In this yere was an huge pestylence, and this yere
Wals., i. 296. deyde Syre Harry duck of Lancastre. In the same yere Edward prynce of Wales maryed the countesse of Kente, that was Syr Thomas Holandes wyf, which was somtyme dyvorsed fro the Erle of Salysbury for cause of the same knyght.
Wals., i. 295. Aboute this tyme a grete company of dyverse nacions assemblyd theym to gyder, of whome the governours and leders were Englysshmen, whiche dyde moche harme in Fraunce. Anone after aroos another companye of dyverse nacions that were callyd the whyte companye, whiche in the countrayes of
Wals., i. 295. Lombardy dyde moche harme. This same yere Syre Johan of Gaunt, sone to kynge Edward the thyrde, was made duk of Lancastre by hys wyf, doughter and heyr of Henry duk of Lancastre that deyde.
Wals., i. 296. Also this yere was a grete wynde which overthrewe houses,
Wals., i. 297. Trees, and many a steple in Englond. Item in this yere kynge Edward made Syre Leonel his sonne duc of Clarence, and Edmond his other sonne Erle of Cambrydge. In this yere was ordeyned by a parlament that men of lawe shold
Wals., i. 299. plete in theyr moder tongue. In that yere cam in to Englond the kynges of Fraunce, Cypres, and Scotland, which were worshipfully receyved. And after they had ben here long tyme, two of hem wente in to theyr countrayes ageyne. But the kynge of Fraunce, for grete sekenesse that he had, abode stylle in Englond.

Sequitur Capitulum Secundum.

Capitulum secundum.

Wals., i. 299. This yere was an huge froste lastyng fro saynt Andrews tyde vnto the fourtenthe kalendas of Apryll. In this yere ther was a scoler whiche slepte contynuelly by the terme of seven yere in Lubyke. And after he awoke and lyved long tyme.
Wals., i. 300. Also this year was a grete batayll bytwene Syre Johan of Mountford, duc of Brytayne, and Syre Charles de Bloys, but the vyctorye fylle to syre Johan thurgh helpe and socoure of

Englysshmen. This same yere deyde at the maner of Savoye kynge Johan of Fraunce, and after was caryed to saynt Denys in Fraunce & there buryed. After Innocent, the fyfth Urban was pope eyght yere. This was abbot of Massylyenne of saynt Benettes ordre, doctour of decrees, and reputed an hooly man; he made to be preched grete pardon to warre ageynst the Turkes: vnto him seint Brygytta was sente from Cryst for confermacion of her Rule & ordre. Atte laste he was poysoned and deyde. In this yere seynt Katheryn of Senys was in her floures, an hooly vyrgyn of the ordre of the frere prechours; she had the stygmates in her handes and feete and side: whiche deyde the yere of our lord MCCC. & four score. This yere was ordeyned that Peter pens from thens forth sholde not be payd, whiche of old tyme was graunted for contynuynge of scole in Rome. In this yere was borne at Bourdeaux Rychard, prynce Edwardys sonne; whiche after the deth of his fader and of kyng Edward also was crowned kyng in the enleventhe yere of his age by ryght lygne and assent of al the comunes of the royame. This yere fyl a grete variaunce in Spayn & grete warre bytwene Peter ryghtful kyng of Spayne & Henry his bastarde broder, in soo moche that kynge Peter cam to prynce Edward to Bordeux to axe socour and helpe of hym, on whome he had grete compassion & pyte. And by lycence of kyng Edward his fader he pourveyed for his ayde and helpe. In this tyme was seen thre dayes durynge in the Scottyssh see two Egles, one comyng out of the south and that other out of the north, which fought fyerfly to geder, & the south fyrst scomfyted the north egle, & he than fled home ageyne to his own costys; & anon after were seen many sterrys gadred to geder on one hepe, which fyl doun to therth leming with fire lemes in maner of lightnynges, whos flames brente mens clothes & heris walkyng on the ground. In this yere prince Edward & the duk of Lancastre, his broder, with a grete armee went in to Spayn, and had a batayll at Nazers ageynst Syre Harry the Bastard whiche had putte doune kynge Peter, & wan the bataylle and had the vyctorye, and put the bastard and his men to flyght, and there were slayne a syx thousand of the bastardes partye, and a two thousande prysonners taken, of whome the Erle of Dene, Syre Bertram Claykyn, and many other lordes were prysoners; & the noble Prynce Edward restored the sayd kyng Peter to his Royamme ageyne. In the same yere was seen a blasyng sterre named Cometa bytwene the north & south, with bemes toward Fraunce. In this yere sir Leonel, kynge Edwardes sone due of Clarence, wente to Melane and maryed the doughter of Galoys. And in the natyvyte of oure Lady he deyde. In this yere the bastard of Spayne reentryd ageyne, and slewe the kyng Peter, the two and twentyest day of August.

Wals., i. 300.

Fasc. Temp., 85 b.

Wals., i. 302.

Wals., i. 303.

Wals., i. 304.

Wals., i. 306.

Wals., i. 305.

Wals., i. 306. In this same yere the Frensshmen brake the pees rydyng in Guyan and Pontiew, takynge castels and townes, surmysynge on the Englysshe men subtylly and vntruly that they were cause
Wals., i. 309. of the brekynge of the pees. In this same yere deyde the Duchesse of Lancastre, and is buryed at Powlys in London.

Capitulum tercium.

Wals., i. 309. In this yere, xliiij. of the kynge, was a gete pestylence and a grete moreyn of beestes. And there fylle soo grete waters that it caused greete destruction of corne, in soo moche that the nexte yere followyng a busshel of whete was worth thre schyllynges & four pens. In the laste day of May was holden a parlemente at Westmynstre for the brekynge of the pees of the Frensshmen, and how the wronges myght be redressyd and avengyd. In this sayd yere in thassumpcion of oure Lady
Wals., i. 307. deyde quene Philyp, and is buryed at Westmynstre. At mydsomer this same yere the duc of Lancastre and the Erle of Herford with a grete companye of men of warre wente over see toward Fraunce, & on Chalkhylle bytwene saynt Omers & Guynes was an huge hooste of Frensshmen, & the hoost of Englysshe men fast by the same, whiche hadde long leyn there, & dyverse Englysshe men yaf counseyll for to fyght with the Frensshmen, but the lorde & capitaynes wold not. Anone after
Wals., i. 308. it happed that therle of Warwyck come thyderward. And whanne the Frensshmen herde of his comynge, er he cam fully to londe, they lefte theyr tentes and pavylons with all theyr vytayl, and fledde theyr weye. And whan therle was londed he hasted toward Normandy, and in his comyng ageyne toward Caleys he deyde on the pestylence.

Wals., i. 310. In this yere at mydsomer was made an hooste, and Syre Robert Knollys was made governour, and whanne they cam in to Fraunce, as longe as they helde hem togeder the Frensshmen durst not come neygh them. But atte last for envye and covetyse that was among them they discorded and sundryd them in to dyverse companyes, whiche couraged the Frensshmen in soo moche that they cam frely on our Englysshmen,
Wals., i. 311. and for the moste part toke and slewe hem. In the same yere Pope Urban cam fro Rome to Avynyon, purposynge to have made a fynal pees bytwene Englond and Fraunce. But er he beganne his traytye he deyde. Somme saye he was poysoned. After Urban, the enleventhe Gregory was pope eyght yere.
Fasc. Temp., 86 a. This pope was callyd tofore Petrus de Bello forte, he was deken Cardynal, and deyde in Rome in Goddes pees. After hym folowed grete trybulacion in the chirche, which God shewyd by Revelacion to saynt Brygytte for the synnes of men

of the chirche. In the same yere Prynce Edward leynge at Burdeux by thavys of his counseyl byganne to sette Inposicions and taxes vpon the duchye of Guyan, wherfore the Cyte of Lymoge rebellyd & fought ageynst hym & other moo also, and torned from hym to the Frensshe kynge. Wherfore he toke and destroyed that Cyte, and slough al that was therynne. Sone after Prynce Edward cam in to Englonde levynge behynde hym in Gascoyne the duck of Lancastre and Syre Edmond, Erle of Cambrydge, with other worthy men of armes. In the parlement at Westmynstre was graunted to the kynge a subsydye of fyfty thousand pound to be payd of the laye fee. And thenne in hatered of men of the chirche the lordes putte oute of offyce the chaunceler, the Tresorer, and the pryve Seal, and in theyr sted were putte seculer men. In the eyght and fourtyest yere of the regne of kynge Edward, the duk of Lancastre and the Erle of Cambrydge, the kynges sones, cam oute of Guyan in to Englond, and were maryed to two susters, doughters & heyres of kyng Peter of Spayne. That same yere Frensshmen besyeged Rochel, wherfore the Erle of Penbroke was sente in to Gascoyn with a greete company of men of armes, And er they couthe entre in the haven of Rochel ther cam vppon hem a stronge navye of Spayne, whiche scomfyted the Englysshe men, and toke the Erle with grete tresour and many other noble men. Thenne the kynge with a grete hoost entryd the see to have revenged the siege of Rochel, but the wynde wold not serve hym, wherfore he taryed longe at the see cost, abydynge after a good wynde, but it cam not, and soo he retourned home ageyne. Thenne the duc of Lancastre with a grete hoost wente in to Flaundree and passyd thurgh Pycardye to Parys and soo thurgh alle Fraunce till he cam to Burdeux withoute ony resystence. Aboute this tyme Wenzelaus, sone of Charles kyng of Boheme, his fader yet lyvyng, was electe and chosen to be Emperour, he beyng a childe, of whiche empyre he toke none heede, ne rought not, wherfore, after he had regned four and twenty yere, and after many warnynges, he was deposed: his lecherous lyf defouled hys noble wytte, and his ende was withoute worshippe, for he was never crowned with a dyademe.

Wals., i. 311.

Wals., i. 312.

Wals., i. 313.

Wals., i. 314.

Wals., i. 315.

In this yere were sent fro the pope two bisshops, one of Ravenne & one of Carpentras, for to treate bytwene two kynges of Fraunce & of Englond, & day was holden at Brugys in Flaundres, & ther were for the kyng of Englond the duc of Lancastre the bisshop of London, and many other; and for the Frensshe kynge, the Duc of Burgoyne, his broder the bisshop of Amyens, and many other, but they concluded no thyng.

Wals., i. 317.

Capitulum quartum.

Wals., i. 321. In the fyftyest yere of kynge Edwardes regne, on Trynyte Sondaye, that yere the eyghte daye of Juyn, deyde the noble Prynce Edward at Kenyngton, and brought to Westmestre, wher he had his obsequye, and fro thens caryed to Caunterburye and there worshipfully beryed besyde saynt Thomas shryne. Aboute this tyme, Bartholus & Baldus, greete doctours of lawe, were in her floures. After the deth of pope Gregory the xj., began the worst scysme that ever was in the chirche, whiche
Fasc. Temp. 86 a. dured xl. yere. For at Rome was Urban the syxthe, chosen by force & strength of the Romaynes. And this dyde the Cardynals for drede, ageynste theyr entente and wyll, therfore they fledde to the cyte Fundorum, saynge hym not to be pope, And chose in his place Robertum de Gebennis the same yere, which was named the seventh Clement. And thus beganne the scysme. In the fyfthe yere the mayre of London Adam Stable was discharged the xxj. day of Marche, and Nicholas Brembre chosen by vertu of a lettre that cam from the kyng.
Wals., i. 320. The same yere was a grete parlemente at Westmynstre, in whiche the kynge axyd a grete subsydye, but the Commynes answerd that they myght no lenger bere suche charges, and sayde they knewe wel that the kynge had good ynowgh for hymself and for savyng of his royame yf the royamme were well governed, but it hadde be longe evyl ruled by evyl offycers, that the londe myght not be plentiuous of chaffare, marchaundyse ne ryches, & shewyd many complayntes of dyvers officers of the royamme. And namely on the lord Latemer the kynges chamberlayn, and on dame Alyce Pyers, for grete wronges that mysgovernaunce that were done by theyr counseylle, desyrynge that they sholde be remevyd, and other putte in theyr stede, suche as were wyse, true, wel proved, and of
Wals., i. 321. good governaunce. And soo amonge all other they chees Syre Pyers Delamare, a wyse knyght and eloquent, for to be speker for the commynes. And bycause the same Syre Pyers tolde and publysshed the trouthe, rehersynge the wronges don by dyverse personnes of the kynges hous, anone after the deth of the good prynce Edward he was putte in to perpetuel
Wals., i. 323. prysonne. The same yere anone after Candelmasse, durynge the sayd parlement, a subsydye was graunted to the kynge bothe of the clergye and of the temporalyte, that is to saye, of the temporalyte of every persone passynge fourten yere of age he shold have four pens, except poure beggers; And of every man of hooly Chirche benefyced or promoted twelve pens, and
Wals., i. 321. vnpromoted foure pens, excepte the four ordres of Freres. The same Rychard, Prynce Edwardys sonne, was made prynce of Wales; And to hym the kynge gafe the Ducherye of Corne-

wayle and the Erldome of Chestre. In the lij. yere of kynge Edwardes regne, the xj. kalendys of Iuyn, the sayd kynge Edward deyde in his maner at Shene, and from thens brought to Westmynstre, and there buryed worshipfully atte southe syde of saynt Edwardes shryne. On whoos soule God have mercy. Amen. Wals., i. 326.

Capitulum quintum.

After kyng Edward the thyrd regned Rychard the second, that was the noble prynce Edwardes sone of Wales; which kyng Rychard was borne at Bourdeux; he was crouned at Westmestre the enleventh yere of his age. In the second yere of his regne the lord Latemer and Syre Rauf Ferys, stryvyng and leyng at debate with Syre Robert Hawle and one Shakleys for the Erle of Dene theyr prysoner, cam in to Westmynstre chirch, and there slough atte hye masse tyme the sayd Hawle, and Shakle was arestyd and putte in the Toure of London. It is sayd that this was done by commaundemente of the duc of Gloucetre, wherfore he cam and was assoylled at Westmynstre, and made greete amendes and gafe grete gyftes and Iewellys therfore to the sayd chirche. Aboute this tyme the fest of the vysytacion of our Lady was bygonne by pope Urban the enleventh, after the forme and also the same pardon that is yeven to the feste of the Sacramente, whiche feste is holden the second daye of Juyll. In this tyme the grete maystre of Rhodes entryd in to Turquye with a grete companye, and there by the Grekes that were with the Turkes he was discomfyted and taken, and the remenaunt of his peple deed and taken to fore a castel callid Sayette. In the thyrde yere of his regne cam certayne galeyes of warre oute of Fraunce into dyverse portis of Englond, and robbed, brente, and slue moche peple, in so moche that they cam to Gravysende and brente a grete part of the toune. Wals., i. 332. Wals., i. 375. Wals., i. 375

In the same yere was ordeyned at a parlement at Westmynstre that every man and woman past fourtene yere of age shold paye to the talage four pens, wherfor fyl afterward moch meschyef. For in the fourth yere of his regne the comons aroos in dyverse partyes in Englond, and dyde moche harme, and it was callyd the hurlyng tyme. And they of Kente and of Estsex made hem two capytayns callyd Iac Strawe and Watte Tyler. And they assembled on Blacheth, and on Corpus Christi day they cam in to Southwerk, and lete oute all the prysoners of the kynges benche and Marchalsee, and cam in to London and robbed alle the alyens and straungers, and sloughe and made havoke. On the morne after they cam to the Toure of London, where the kynge was presente the same tyme, and toke out the Archebisshop of Caunterbury and the pryour of saynt Iohans and a whyte frere confessour to the kyng, and smote of theyr Wals., i. 454. Wals., i. 456. Wals., i. 459.

hedes atte Tour hyll; thenne come they ageyne to London, and slewe men of lawe and other worthy men in dyverse partyes of
Wals., i. 457. the toune. Thenne wente they to the duc of Lancastres place callyd Savoye, and destroyed it doune, and bare awey the goodes that they might fynde, and brente the place; thenne wente they to Westmestre and saynt Martyns the graunt, and delyverd them all oute of sayntuarye that were therynne for ony maner grythe. Thenne cam they to the Temples and to all other Innes of mén of lawe, and despoylled and brente theyr bookes. Thenne came they to London ageyne, and toke oute al the prysonners, felons and other, oute of Newgate and both Countours, and destroyed theyr bookes. Thenne on the Monday, kyng Rychard
Wals., i. 465. sent for the mayr of London, William Walworth, and his aldermen, and they wente to speke and knowe thentencion of thyse rebellous peple. Thenne this Iac Strawe lete make an oye in the felde that all his peple shold come nere and here his crye and wyll. Thenne the lordes, the mayer & aldermen havyng indignacion of his presumpcion and covetyse, and the mayer seenge that he dyd noo reverence to the kynge, starte to
Wals., ii. 10. hym and slewe the sayd Jac Straw, Capytayne of the Rebellys, and anone his hede was smyten of, and the hede reysed vp that all myght see hit. And forthwith incontynent alle tho Rysers and mysgoverned peple fledde awey. Thenne the kyng forthwith dubbyd the mayer knyght, and fyve of his bretheren Aldermen, that is to saye Syr William Walworth, Mayer, Syre Nychol Brambre, Syr Iohan Phylpot, Syre Nychus Twyford, Syre Robert Laundre, and Syre Robert Gayton. And after this, as they myght take and gete thyse rebellys and mysgoverned people, they henge hem vp by ten, by twelve, twenty, &c. In the fyfth yere was a grete erth quave thurgh oute al the world the one and twentyest day of Maye, of whiche al maner peple was sore
Wals., ii. 47. aferd. This yere quene Anne cam in to Englond, and was maryed vnto kyng Richard at Westmynstre. In the syxth yere
Wals., ii. 88. Syre Henry Spencer, bisshop of Norwiche, wente over see with a Croysye in to Flaundres, and gate the townes of Gravenyng, Burburgh, and Dunkyrke. And ther he dyde do lade one and fyfty shippes with pillage and goodes whiche sholde have comen into Englond. But the bisshop lete brenne the shippes with
Wals., ii. 90. alle the pyllage in the same haven. And he had a grete batayl with the Flemynges at Dunkyrke, and there were slayn an huge multitude of Flemynges. The bisshop with his retenue wente and besyeged Ipre longe tyme, but he couthe not gete it. And bycause many of his men deyde there of the flux he cam ageyne into Englond.

The same yere was a bataylle done within the kynges palays at Westmynstre, for certayne poyntes of treasoune, bytwene Syre Johan Ansley, knyght, defendaunt, and Garton Squyer, appellaunt, and the defendaunt discomfyted thappellaunt.

Alle this tyme dured the Scysme. For Urban at Rome was chosen Petrus de Thomacellys, and was named Bonefacius Nonus, 13 yere. And after Clemens was chosen in Avynyon Petrus de Luna, whiche was named Benedictus xiij., and he abode pope there two and twenty yere. And after Boneface was Innocencius septimus two yere. And after hym Gregorius 12us xij. yere, and after hym Alexander Grecus one yere. And thenne after hym Iohannes visesimus tercius, and thenne at Counseyll of Constance was chosen Martinus quintus: and soo of alle thyse forsayd popes, from Gregorius vndecimus vnto Martinus Quintus, endured the scysme by the space of fourty yere, that it was not knowen who was the very and vndoubted pope. Fasc. Temp. 86 b. Fasc. Temp., 87 a. Wals., ii. 302.

Capitulum sextum.

In the eyght yere of kyng Rychardes regne, Syr Edmond of Langely, Erle of Cambrydge, the kynges vncle, wente in to Portyngale with a grete companye of men of armes and archers, in strengthyng and helpyng the kynge of Portyngale ageynst the kynge of Spayne. And there the kynge of Portyngale had the vyctorye. That done, the Erle of Cambrydge cam home ageyne with his armye in to Englond. The same yere kyng Rychard helde his Crystemasse at Eltham. The kyng of Ermonye the same tyme fledde oute of his owne londe, and cam vnto kynge Rychard for socour and ayde, for the Turkys had devoured & destroyed moche of his londe. The kyng havyng grete pyte & compassion of his grete myschyef, toke counseyl herupon. And it was concluded that the kyng shold yeve hym some good, for taventure his peple so ferre it were a grete ieopardye. And so the kyng gaf hym gold and sylver and many ryche yeftes, and betaught hym to God, and soo he departed oute of Englond. This same yere kynge Rychard with a grete and puissaunt armee wente toward Scotland. And the Scottys sente to the kynge, and desyred and made grete labour for to have a tryeus, soo a tryeus was taken and made; and thenne the kyng retorned to York, and there Syre Iohan Holond, therle of Kentis broder, slewe therlys sone of Stafford, wherfore the kyng was sore meved and retorned to London. In the nynthe yere of his regne was a parlement at Westmynstre, in whiche the kynge made and created two Dukes, fyve Erlys, and a marquys. Syr Edmond of Langley, the kynges vncle, Erle of Cambrydge, was mad duc of York. Syre Thomas of Wodestoke, his other vncle, that was Erle of Bokyngham, was made duc of Gloucetre. Syre Leonel Vere, Erle of Oxenford, was made marquys of Develyn. Harry Bolyngbroke, the dukes sonne of Lancastre, was made erle of Derby. Syre Edward, the dukes sone of York, was made erle Wals., i. 453.

of Ruthlond. Syre Iohan Holond, the Erle of Kentys broder, was made erle of Huntyngdon. Syr Thomas Moobray, erle of Notyngham, was made erle marchal of Englond. Syre Mychel de la Pole, knyght, was made Erle of Suffolk, and Chaunceler of Englond. Atte this same parlement therle of Marche was proclamed heyre apparaunte to the crowne of Englond after kynge Rychard. The sayd Erle of Marche wente over see into Irlond vnto his lordship therldome of Ulster, whiche was hys by enherytaunce. And there as he lay on a tyme in a castel of his, there cam vppon hym greete multitude of wylde Irysshe men, and he cam oute of his Castell fyersly with his peple and fought with hem manly, and there he was slayne. In the tenth yere the erle of Arondel went to the See with a greete navye, and there he met an hoole flete comynge fro the Rochel laden with wyn, whiche were enemyes goodes, whiche flete he toke and brought in to dyverse havens in Englond, and somme vnto London, where men myght bye a tonne of Rochel wyn for twenty schyllynges. In the enleventh yere of his regne was tharysyng of certayn lordes in Englond in destruction of rebellys, Syre Rychard erle of Arundele, Syre Richard erle of Warwyk, Syre Harry of Bolyngbroke, erle of Derby, and Syre Thomas Moubray, erle marchal. These fyve lordes vnderstode the myschyef & governaunce of the kynges counceylle, wherfor they that were that tyme of the kynges counseyll fled out of the londe; that is to saye, mayster Alysaunder Nevel, Archebisshop of York, Syre Mychel de la Pole, Erle of Suffolk & chaunceler of Englond, and the marquys of Develyn, Syr Robert le Vere: these thre lordes cam never ageyne into Englond, for they deyde beyonde the see. These fyve lordes above sayd made a parlement at Westmestre, and there they toke Syre Robert Tresylyon, Justyce, Syre Nychol Brembre, knyght and cyteseyne of London, Syre Iohan Salesbury, knyght and Uske sergeaunt, with other moo, whiche were Iuged to deth and were drawe to Tyburn, and there hanged. Also in the same parlement Syre Symon Beverley, knyght of the Garter, Syre Iohan Beauchamp, knyght, styward of the kynges hous, and syr Iohan Berneis were byhedid atte Toure hylle. Also Robert Bealknap, Iohan Holte, Iohan Cary, William Burgh, Robert Fulthorp, and Iohan Lokton, Justyses, were exyled into Irlond, ther for to dwelle all her lyf tyme. In the twellifth yere, duryng the sayd parlement, was holden a general Justys in Smythfelde of lordes, knyghtes, and squyers for all maner straungers that wolde come, holdyng open housholde to hem and alle other. And alle they of the kyngys hous were of one sute, theyr cotys, theyr armys, theyr sheldes, and theyr trappours were browdrid all with whyte hertis, with crownes of gold about theyr neckes, and cheynes of gold hangyng theron;

whiche hertys was the kynges leverey that he yaf to lordes, ladyes, knyghtes, and squyers, to knowe his houshold pepel from other. Thenne four and twenty ladyes comynge to the iustys ladde four and twenty lordes with cheynes of gold, and alle in the same sute of hertes as is afore sayd, from the tour on horsbak thurgh the Cyte of London in to Smythfeld. To this feste cam many grete lordes, straungers, oute of Fraunce, Henaud, Holond, and of other contreyes: whiche feste and iustes endured four and twenty dayes vppon the kynges cost. Whanne the feste was ended and iustys, the king thankyng the straungers yave to them grete yeftes. And thenne they toke their leve and so departed. In the thirtenth yere was a bataille done in the palays at Westmestre bitwene a squyer of Naverne, that was with the kinge, and a squyer callid Iohan Walssh, for pointes of treasonne that he of Naverne put vppon this Walssh; but in the ende he of Naverne was overcome and disconfyted in the felde, & yelded hym. And anon he was despoylled of his armure, and drawen oute of the palays vnto Tyburne and there hanged.

Capitulum septimum.

In the fourtenthe yere Sir Iohan of Gaunt, duk of Lancastre, with a grete hooste wente in to Spayne, to clayme and chalenge his right by his wyves tytle vnto the Crowne of Spayne, and he had with hym the Duchesse his wyf and his thre doughters. And therafter grete commynycacion herupon had they were acorded, and concluded that the kynge of Spayne shold marye the duck of Lancastres doughter. And he shold yeve to the duck of Lancastre gold and sylver, whiche was casten in to grete wedgys, and soo many other Iewellys, as moche as eyght charyottis myght carye. And every yere after, durynge the lyf of the duc, and his wyf ten thousand marc of gold. Of whiche golde they of Spayne sholde adventure and bere the ieopardye therof, and brynge yerly vnto Bayon to the dukes assygnees by surete made. Also the duc of Lancastre dyde doo marye another of his doughters to the kyng of Portyngale the same tyme. And thenne he retourned and cam ageyne in to Englond with his wyf. In this yere the Turkes made grete warre ageynste Crystendome vnto the cyte of Iene. Wherfore the Ienewayes sente to the kynge of Fraunce for ayde, and also to the kynge of Englond. And soo ther wente oute of Fraunce fyften honderd knyghtes, with the duc of Borbon, and the Erle of Ewe, and other. And oute of Englond went the Erle of Alby, a valyaunt man, with certayne Archers. And they shipped at Marcellis, and wente and besyged Thunes in Barbarye, and made there many skarmuches, and putte oute ofte the Sarasyns: but in thende the Turke fered, and made trewes for a seasonne,

and delyverd alle the Crysten men prysonners, and payd ten thousand ducatis; and soo the Crysten men retorned home ageyne. In the fyftenth yere of kynge Rychardes regne he helde his Crystemas at Wodestok, where therle of Penbroke, a yonge lorde and tendre of age, wolde lerne iuste with a knyght called Syre Iohan saynt Iohan, and rode togeder in the parke, and there the Erle was slayn with the knyghtes spere as he cast it from hym whanne they hadde coped. This yere Iohan Hynde, beynge that tyme mayer of London, & Iohan Shadeworth and Henry Vanner shereves, were dysharged of theyr offyces byfore saynt Iohans day Baptyst, and the kyng seased the fraunchyse and lybertees of the cyte of London, And ordeyned and constitued Syr Edward Dalyngredge wardeyn of the cyte, and endured in his offyce vnto the fyrst day of Juyll the yere xvj. And thenne Syr Bowdwyn Radyngton was made wardeyne to Saynt Symons daye and Iude. The cause therof was for a bakers man beryng a basket with hors brede into Fletestrete, there come a man of the bisshop of Salesburyes that toke oute an hors loof oute of the baskette, wherfore the bakers man strove with the yoman, so that the Bisshops man brake the bakers mans hede. Thenne neyghbours come aboute to have rescowed hym, and to have arestyd the Bisshops man. But he scope fro hem in to his lordes place. The constable cam and wold have had hym out, but they withynne the place kept it that they myght not come in. And thenne come the mayer with moche peple, and sayde they wold have hym oute, or brenne the place and all that were therin. The Bisshop beynge tresorer of Englond, and the archebisshop of Caunterbury, wente togeder to Wyndesore to the kynge, and made a grete complaynte to the kyng and his counseylle of the cyte of London. And the kynge sente for the mayer and shereves and yaf hem grete rebukes for thoffence that they hadde done ageynst hym and his offycers in his Chambre of London, and deposed the mayer and shereves, and made a wardeyne of the cyte as afore is sayd. In the syxtenth yere the kyng withdrewe his courtes from Westmynstre to Yorke, whiche were there holden and kepte fro the feste of Saynt Iohan Baptyst vnto Crystemasse after. Thenne atte requeste of the goode Quene Anne & of the bisshop of London, thenne callyd Gravesende, the kyng graunted the Fraunchyse and lybertees to the cyte of London; and they of London gaf to seynt Edwards shryne a table of sylver and enameled stondyng on the awter. And after this the mayer, aldermen, and sherevys mette with the kyng, submyttynge them humbly to hym as they ought to do, and resseyvyng the kyng thurgh the cyte with grete tryumphe, and brought hym to Westmynstre. And on the morne after the mayer, aldermen, and shreves presentyng the sayd table &

other yeftes, prayd the kynge of his good and speciall grace to have theyr lybertees and Fraunchyses as they hadde tofore tyme. And soo the kyng graunted to them alle theyr askynge, and wente home ageyne. In this same yere the duc of Lancastre was sente in to Fraunce to demaunde a myllion of scutes whiche was due for the raunson of kyng Iohan, and dyverse places as Peytowe, Rochell and a parte of Guyan. And he was answerd by the counseylle of Fraunce that the men of warre of Englond hadde done harme in Fraunce above the trewes to the somme of thre mylions, whiche oughte to be repayred fyrst, and so departed ageyne. In the sevententhe yere come oute of Scotlande certayne lordes in to Englonde to gete worship by fete of armes. Therle of Moreyf chalengid the Erle marchal of Englond to iuste with hym on hors back with sharpe speres. And soo they roode to geder certayne courses, but not the full chalenge. For the Scottish Erle was cast, bothe hors & man, & two of his rybbes broken with the same falle, and soo borne home in to his inne, & anone after was caryed homewarde in a littyer, and at York he deide. Syre William Darel, banerer of Scotlande, and Syre Pyers Courtney, the kynges banerer of Englond, ryden togeder certain courses of warre hitte & assayed. The Scottysshe knyght seyng he myght not have the beter, yave it over, and wold no moo of the chalenge. Thenne one Cokburn Squyer of Scotland,and Syre Nychol Hauberk, rode fyve coursys, and at every cours the Scot was caste bothe hors and man. This same yere the sevententh day of Iuyn deyde the good quene Anne, kynge Rychardes wyf, and lyeth buryed at Westmynstre by saynt Edwardes shryne.

Capitulum octauum.

In the yere 1494 were trewes taken bytwene the kyng of Fraunce and the kynge of Englonde for foure yere. Also this same yere, aboute Crystemasse, kynge Rychard wente fyrst in to Irlond. After Wenzelaus, Rupertus alias Robertus was Emperour nyne yere. This Robertus duk of Bayer and Count Palatyn on the Ryn, a juste and trewe man and a catholyke, he was crowned of the nynthe Boneface the Pope. He entryd in to Ytalye with a grete armye ageynst duk Galyace, but he retorned with grete losse. About this tyme was that cursyd heresye of Iohan Wyclyf in Englond, and Iohan Hus in Bohemye, and Ierome of Praghe, which heresye enfected moch peple, and vnder the habyte of a lambe hydynge wolvysshe cruelte had purposed to subverte alle the state of the chirche; and the sklaunderous scysme whiche was in this evyll tyme was a grete helpe to them. Also this tyme the heresyee Adamitarum begaune to growe in Boheme, but it was putte

Fasc. Temp., 86 b.

Fasc. Temp., 86 b. doune by the Hussytys. That was over grosse and vnshamefast. For they wente naked, and indyfferently dyde theyr lecherye with wommen. Petrus de Elyaco and Iohan Gerson his disciple, both doctours of dyvynyte of Parys, were in her floures this tyme. In this yere were merveyllous grete wyndes thre monethes contynuelly, and specially in September, that overthrewe greete trees with fruyte, howses, chymeneyes and steples. And there was seen in Langedok in Fraunce a grete sterre, and fyve lytell sterres assayllynge the grete, and poursyewed it by the space of an houre, and a voys cryenge fro hevene. And after was seen a man semyng of copper, holdyng a spere in his handes, by the greete sterre, and smote hit. And after that it was no more seen. In other places were herde the noyse of harneysed men fyghtynge.

Fasc. Temp., 87 a.

In the nynetenthe yere of kyng Rychard, he wente to Calays, and maryed there quene Isabel, the kynges doughter of Fraunce. At whiche tyme the Frensshe lordes were sworen on a booke that alle covenauntes, forwardys, and composicions ordeyned and made on both sydes shold be truly holden and kept withoute contradiction or dylaye in ony maner wyse. And whanne this ryal maryage was done and fynysshed, kynge Rychard with dame Isabel his quene cam in to Englond. And the mayer of London with all his bretheren, with grete multitude of the comons of the cyte & the craftys resseyved hem worshipfully atte Blacheth, and brought hem to saynt Georges barre. And there takynge theyr leve, the kynge and the Quene roode to Kenyngton. And after that, withynne a whyle, the quene cam to the Toure of London, at whoos comyng was moche harme done. For on London brydge were nyne personnes crowded to deth. Of whome the pryour of Typtre was one. And from the Tour she wente thurgh the cyte of London to Westmynstre, and there she was crowned. And after this kyng Rychard by appoyntemente delyvered the toun of Brest to the duc of Brytayne, wherof bygon moche trouble and sorowe, whiche dured vnto his deth. In the twentyest yere kyng Rychard dyde holde a grete feste at Westmynstre. At whiche feste arryved the sowdyours that hadde kepte Breste, and sate atte dyner in the hall; and after dyner the Duc of Gloucetre sayd to the kynge, "Syre, have "ye not seen the felawes that sate at dyner in your halle?" And the kynge demaunded who they were. And he sayd, "these "ben youre folk that have servyd yow, and ben come from "Breste, and now wote not what to doo, and have ben evyl "payd." Thenne the kynge sayd that they shal be payed. Thenne answerd the duc of Gloucetre in a grete furye, "Syre, ye "ought fyrste to putte youre bodye in devoyre to gete a toune "or a castel by fayt of warre vpon your enemyes, er ye "sholde selle or delyver ony tounes that your predecessours

" kynges of Englond have goten and conquerd." To the whiche the kynge answerd ryght angrely, " How saye ye that ?" Thenne the duk his vncle sayd it ageyn. Thenne the kyng bygamne to wexe wrothe, and sayde, " Wene ye that I be a " marchaunt or a foole to selle my londe ? by saynt Iohan " Baptist, nay ; but trouthe it is that our cosyn of Britayne hath " rendryd and payd to vs the somme that my predecessours " hadde lente vppon the sayd toune of Brest ; and syth he " hath payed, it is reasonne that this toune be delyverd to hym " ageyne." Thus begamne the wrath bytwene the kynge and his vncle. And afterward at Arondele was a counseylle of certayne lordes, as the duck of Gloucetre, the Archebisshop of Caunterbury, The Erles of Arondele, Warwyk and Marchal, and other, for to refourme the rewle aboute the kynge ; whiche lordes promysed eche to byde by other, and soo departed ; and anone after the Erle marchal, whiche was Capytayne of Calays, bewrayed and lete the kynge have knowleche of all theyr counseylle. Wherupon the fyve and twentyest daye of August the duke of Gloucetre was arrestyd at Plasshey in Estsex and brought to the Tour of London, and from thennes sente to Calays, and there murthred and slayne withoute processe of lawe or Justyce, and therle of Arondel, the Erle of Warwyk, Syr Iohan Cobham, Syre Iohan Cheyne, knyghtes, were arestyd and putte in holde. Save therle of Arondel fonde seurte tanswere, and wente at large tyl the parlement tyme. In the one & twentyest yere of kyng Rycharde, at the parlement holden at Westmynstre, therle of Arondel was brought tofore alle the lordes, and there was iuged to deth, that he shold goo on fote fro Westmynstre thurgh the cyte of London to the Tour hylle. And there to have his heede smyten of. And syxe lordes roode with hym to see that execucion sholde be doo, with grete multitude of peple, of men at armes and archers. For they dredde leste he shold be rescowed by men of London. And on the morne tharchebisshop of Caunterbury his broder was banysshed for evermore. And Syre Thomas Mortemer was banysshed also. And Syre Rychard, Erle of Warwyk, cam to fore the parlemente, and was iuged to the same deth, but by cause of his age he was releced to perpetuel prysonne. The Mondaye after, Syre Iohan Cobham and Syre Iohan Cheyne were iuged to be drawen & hanged, but at the instaunce of the lordes that iugement was releced vnto perpetuel prysonne. And this done kyng Rychard made a ryal feste and helde open Courte. In whiche feste he made fyve Dukes, a marqueys and fyve Erles ; that is to saye, the Erle of Derby was made duc of Herford ; the erle of Ruthlond was made Duc of Aumarle ; the Erle of Kente, Duck of Surrey ; the Erle Huntyngdon, Duck of Excetre ; the Erle Marchal, Duck of Norfolke ; the Erle of Somersete, Marqueys of Dorsete ; the lorde Spencer, Erle of

Gloucetre; the Lord Nevyll, Erle of Westmerlonde; Syre Thomas Percy, Erle of Worcetre; Syre William Scrope, Erle of Wylshyre; Syre Iohan Montague, Erle of Salysbury. And thus there was a greete feste to al these lordes and to all other that wold come. In the same yere fylle a greete debate and dyssencyon bytwene the Duck of Herford, Erle of Derby, on that one partye, And the Duke of Norfolke, Erle Marchal, on that other partye, in so moche that they waged bataylle and cast downe theyr gloves, whiche were taken vp byfore the kynge and ensealed, and the daye and place assygned at Coventre. To whiche place the kynge cam; the Duk of Lancastre, and other lordes. And whanne bothe partyes were in the felde redy for to fyghte, the kynge toke the matere in his owne honde, and forthwith he exyled and banysshed the Duke of Herford for ten yere, and the duke of Norfolke for ever. The Duc of Norfolke deyde at Venyse. In the two and twentyest yere of kyng Rychard there were made blank charters, to whiche all the ryche men of the royamme were compellyd to sette to theyr seales. And it was noysed thurgh the royamme that he hadde sette Englond to ferme to Syre William Scrope, Erle of Wylshyre, sir Iohan Busshe, Syre Johan Grene, and sir Johan Bagot; and he ordeyned his vncle Syr Edmond of Langley, duk of Yorcke, to be his lyeutenaunt whiles he shold be in Irlond in his absence. In this yere deyde the duc of Lancastre, and is buryed at Powlus in London. Thenne kynge Rychard wente in to Irlonde with many lordes and grete ordenaunce, and there he was wel resseyved; And the wilde Irysshemen cam downe to hym with theyr capytaynes, and yelded them to hym, and swore to be his true lyege men, and dyde hym hommage and feawte. Thus he conquerd Irlond the moost part in a lytel whyle. Whyles kynge Rychard was in Irlond thus occupied, Syre Harry of Bolyngbrooke, Erle of Derby, the duc of Lancastres sonne, whome kynge Rychard hadde made Duk of Herford, and had exyled hym for certayn causes, & with hym tharchebishop also, londed at Ravenspore in the north contre, and by the coloure of his tytle to the Duchye of Lancastre he reysed and assembled the people ever as he wente, in soo moche as he hadde greete multitude of peple. For the peple were soo oppressyd with the offycers of kyng Rychard, that almoost all the commyns of the londe were redy to awayte on the Erle of Derby, hopynge to be relevyd by hym. Incontynent tydynges cam to kynge Rychard beyng in Irlond how he was landed, and that the comons drewe faste to hym. Anone he made hym redy and cam over see into Englond with alle his hooste, and arryved in Mylford haven; and there taryed a two dayes for to refresshe hym and his hooste. And in the mene whyle the lordes and mooste part of the peple vnderstode that the Erle of Derby bycam strenger and strenger, began to murmure and to grutche. That seynge Syr Thomas

Percy called them togeder, brake the roode of his offyce, for he was styward, and badde every man goo his wey, vnwetyng the kynge. And so in the nyght every man wente his weye levynge the kynge allone, save two or thre lordes with a fewe men, whiche lordes for sewerte, and by counseyll of the styward, brought the kynge to the castel of Flynt, where he was taken and delyvered to therle of Derby, whiche brought hym to London. And thenne were taken at Brystowe Syre William Scrope, Syr Iohan Bussh, Sir Harry Grene, & Syr Iohan Bagot ; but Syre Iohan Bagot escaped. And the other that were take were byheded. And thus as he was comyng to London warde, tydynges cam to the cyte that kynge Rycharde was comen to Westmynstre; And anon the peple of London in their furye and wodenesse, as people maliciously sette ageinst king Richard, their soveraine lorde, roose and purposed yf they myght have founden to have destroyed hym. But the mayer and aldermen with the sadde men of the toune with moche werke tourned hem hoome ageyne to London ; yet they toke Syre Iohan Slake, dene of the kynges chapel, and putte hym in Ludgate, and Syre Johan Bagot that escaped from Bristowe was take in Irlond and brought to London and sette in Newegate. Sone after this kynge Rychard was broughte to the Tour of London, and thenne was there a parlement, in whiche kynge Rychard was deposed of his crowne, and kynge Henry chosen and taken for the kynge ; to whome kynge Rychard resygned the crowne and the Royamme of Englond. And thenne from the Tour he was had to the castel of Ledes in Kente, and from thennes he was had to the castel of Pountfret.

Capitulum nonum.

Thenne the duc of Lancastre, Erle of Derby, named Henry Bolyngbroke, was crowned kyng of Englond at Westmynstre on sayut Edwardes day Confessour. Thenne made the kynge his oldest sonne Henry prynce of Wales, Duke of Cornewayle and Erle of Chestre ; he made Syre Thomas of Arondel Archebisshop of Caunterbury as he was byfour. And he that was made Archebisshop by kynge Rychard, he made hym Bisshop of London, and he made the Erlis sonne of Arondel to be put in possession of all his londes. In the fyrst yere of his regne he helde his Crystemas at Wyndesore. And on the twelvthe even the duk of Aumarle tolde the kyng how the duc of Surrey, the Duc of Excetre, the erle of Salesbury, & therle of Gloucetre, with other of theyr affynyte, were accorded to make a mommynge to the kyng, and soo for to slee hym in the revelynge. Wherfore the kyng the same nyght cam prively to London, and anon these lordes that had purposed to have

made this mommery, vnderstode that theyr counseylle was bewrayed, anone with theyr people wente westward. And at Sysseter the duke of Surrey and the erle of Salesbury were taken and biheded, & their heedes sette on London brydge; and at Oxenford were taken two knyghtes, Blount and sir Benette Sely, and Wintercele a squyer, whiche were byheded and quartred, and their heedes sette on London bridge, and the quartres sente to other goode townes. And at Prithwell in Estsex, Sire Iohan Holonde, Duck of Excetre, was taken with the comons of the countreye, and his heede smyten of, and sente to London, and sette on London bridge. Also at Bristowe was take the lorde Spencer, that was made by kinge Richard erle of Gloucetre, and biheded, and his heede sent to London and sette on London bridge. In the same yere Sire Bernarde Brokeis, Sir Iohan Selley, Syr Iohan Mawdelyn and Syr William Ferby were taken and sette in the Tour. And after by iugemente were hanged and byheded, and theyr heedes sette on London bridge. Whanne kyng Henry sawe that these lordes thus hadde rysen, and assemblyd greete peple to have putte hym to deth, and for to restore kynge Richard ageyne to his crowne and to his royamme, thoughte teschue suche peryls, anone commaunded Sir Pyers of Exton that he shold goo strayte to Pountfreyte and delyver the worlde of kynge Rychard. And soo he departed fro the kynge, and wente to the castel of Pountfret, where as kynge Rychard was in prysonne, the whiche was sette at table for to dyne. And anone after Syre Pyers cam in to the chambre where the kynge was, and eyghte men with hym, and eche man an axe in his hond. Trouth it is, whan the kyng sawe Sir Pyers with his felaushippe entre in to the chambre defensably arayed, he shoof the table from hym, and sprange into the myddes of hem, & raughte an axe oute of one of theyr hondes, and sette hym self valyauntly at defence. And hym self defendynge, he slowe foure of the eyghte. And whanne the sayde Syre Pyers sawe the kynge soo defende hym, he was soore abasshed and gretely aferde. And forthwith sterte vpon the place where as kyng Rychard was wonte to sytte. And as kynge Rychard foughte and defended hym self goynge bacwarde, the sayd Syre Pyers smote hym on the heede with his axe that he fyll to grounde. Thenne cryed kynge Rychard God mercy. And thenne he gafe hym yet another stroke on the heede, and soo he deyde. And thus was thys noble kynge slayne and murthred. And whanne the kynge was deede the knyght that hadde thus slayne hym sette hym doune by the deede bodye of kynge Rychard, and byganne to wepe, saynge, "Alas! what thynge "have we doone? we have putte to deth hym that hath ben "oure kynge and soverayne lord two and twenty yere. Now "have I lost myn honour. Ne I shal never come in place but

I shal be reproched. For I have done ageynst myn honour." After this the twelvest daye of Marche was the bodye of the noble kyng Rychard broughte thurgh London to Powlus, whiche corps was leyd on a charyotte coveryd with black and four baners, wherof tweyne were of the armes of saynt George, and tweyne of the armes of Saynt Edward. And there were an honderd men clothed in black, eche berynge a torche. And the cyte of London hadde thyrtty men in whyte, eche beryng also a torche. And the corps was leyd open the vysage, that every man myght see and knowe that it was hys body, and that he was soo deede. For many men bylevyd it not. And from thennes he was caryed to the Frerys at Langley, and there he was buryed. On whoos sowle God have mercy. Amen.

The comyn oppynyon of Englysshmen is that kynge Rychard deyde not after the maner a foresayd, but that he deyde other wyse. That is to wete that whanne he herde saye that his brother the Duc of Excetre, the Duc of Surrey, the Erle of Salysbury, and the other lordes were deede, he was soo angry and soo sorowfull that he swore that he wolde never eete meete, and soo abode foure dayes withoute etynge as they saye. And whanne that kynge Henry vnderstode that he wolde not ete, he sent to hym two prelates for to comforte hym. And whan they were come he confessyd hym to one of them, the whiche gaf hym in penaunce that he sholde ete his mete. And whanne he supposed to have eten, the meete myght not goo doune ne avale in to his stomake; For the conduytes of his bodye were shronken to geder And thenne sayde the noble kynge Rychard that it was done, and that he muste nedes deye; and soo he deyde. But certes, whether he deyde this waye or that other, certaynly he deyde, and was buryed at Langley. God have mercy on his sowle. Amen.

And thenne was kynge Harry peasly kyng. Thenne he fonde in kynge Rychardes tresorye nyne honderd thousande noblis, withoute iewellys and vessels, whiche was as moche worth or more. And ther was founden in the tresorers kepynge of Englonde an honderde and fyfty thousand nobles, and iewels and vessell as moche or more. And thus kynge Henry hadde all his goodes.

Item. This same yere kynge Harry sente hoome ageyne kynge Rychardys wyf Quene Isabel vnto the kynge of Fraunce, her fader, and he putte her from her dowayre.

Capitulum decimum.

In the second yere of kynge Harry the fourth, Sire Rogyer of Clarvngton, knyght, and two of his men, and the priour of

Launde with eyght frere mynours, were drawen and hanged for treasonne. In this yere beganne a grete debate in Walys bytwene the lorde Gray Rethyn and Ewayn of Glyndor, Squyer of Wales. This Ewayn reysed grete nombre of Walsshmen, and kepte the countrey with strength, and dyde moche harme, and destroyed the kynges townes and lordshippes in Walys, robbyng and sleyng the kynges peple, whiche contynued longe tyme. And toke the lord Gray prysoner, and made hym to marye his doughter, and helde hym stylle there with his wyf; and sone after, the lord Gray deyde. Thenne kynge Harry with a grete power wente into Wales for to take and destroy the sayd Ewayn; but he and all his company fledde to the montayns, where the kyng myght not hurte hem for the montaynes. And soo the kynge retourned and cam ageyn in to Englonde, for losynge of his men. In the same yere was a grete scarcete of whete in Englond; a quarter was worth sixten shyllynges, wherfor marchandise was sente in to Normandy for whete, and from thennes cam grete plente. Also Syre William Sawtry, preest, was degraded of his presthode. Aboute this tyme the Duc of Orleaunce sente an herowde of armes with lettres vnto kynge Harry, by whiche he chalengyd for to fyght with hym withynne lystes at Bourdeux, or in some other metely place, with an honderd gentylmen withoute reproche ageynste as many gentyll men withoute reproche. Wherto the kynge answerd ageyne by lettres wershipfully, rehersynge that at suche tyme as it shold plese hym he wolde come with suche nombre as it apperteyneth to a kynge, and conquere his ryght; at whiche tyme he shold be answerd atte full. And soo the mater fynysshed. In the thyrde yere was kynge Henry wedded to dame Jane, Duchesse of Britain. And they were maryed at Wynchestre, and fro thens she cam to London, and so forth to Westmynstre, And there she was crowned Quene. In the same yere was dame Blaunche, oldest doughter to kynge Harry, wedded in Coleyn to the dukes sonne of Bayer with grete solempnyte. In the seventh yere was seen a sterre that is called stella Comata, and anone after was the batayl of Shrewesbury on Mary Magdalens even, in whiche bataylle was slayne Syre Harry Percy, and Syr Thomas Percy taken, and kept two dayes, and after he was hanged, byheded and quartred, and his heede sette on London brydge. And in thys batayl was the prynce shotte in to the heede with an arowe. And the Erle of Stafford was slayne vnder the kynges baner. And many other lordes, knyghtes, squyers and gentyls were put to deth in the sayd batayl. In the fourth yere cam the Emperour of Constantynople with many grete lordes and knyghtes in to Englond, to see the kynge, the peple, and the royamme and the commodytees therof. The same yere the lord Castel, with a grete multitude

of Brytons & of Normans, landed a myle out of Plymouthe, on saynt Laurence day at after none, and cam in to the toune on the bakhalf; and there they abode al that day and al that nyght till it was on the morne ten of the clock, and robbed and despoylled al that was in the toune, and bare hit awey at her owne wylle. In the fyfthe yere was a grete batayllé on the see at Blackpole, two myle oute of Dertmouth, bytwene Englysshmen & Brytons, where, thanked be God, Englysshemen had the vyctorye, & there were taken, slayne, and drowned moo than fyve honderd gentyls of Frensshemen and Brytons, On whome the lord Castel was pryncipal leder and Capitayne, which there was taken and slayne. Also this same yere William Serle, the whiche was one of hem that murtherd the good duke of Gloucetre at Caleys, was taken in the marche of Scotlande, and broughte to London, and there he was drawen, hanged and byheded, and his heede sette on London brydge, and his quarters sette vp in foure good townes. In the syxthe yere was a iustys in Smythfeld bytwene the Erle of Morryf in Scotland and Syre Edmond Erle of Kente, vpon a chalenge made by therle of Morryf to iuste certayn courses of warre with sharp sperys on horsbak. And the Erle of Kente had the felde, and gate hym there grete worship. This same yere Syre Rychard Scrope, Archebisshop of York, and the lorde Moubraye, that was Erle marcial of Englond, assemblyd grete power ageynst kyng Harry. And the kyng met with hem and toke hem, and smote of bothe theyr heedes. And soone after God shewyd and wrought many myracles for the worthy clerke Archebisshop of Yorke, that was soo putte to deth. In the seventh yere the mayer of London, Iohan Wodecok, and the comynalte dyde do brake vp al the weerys that were bytwene Medewey and Kyngeston, bycause they were sette ageynst the fraunchyse of the cyte of London. In the eyght yere of kyng Henry, dame Lucye, the dukes suster of Melayn, come into Englonde, and soo forth to London, and there was she ryally maryed to Syr Edmond Holond, Erle of Kent, in the pryory of saynt Marye Overayes in Southwerk. The same yere syr Robert Knollys, knyght, a grete warryour in his tyme, dyde doo make the brydge at Rochestre, and a chapel atte brydges fote: the whiche Syre Robert deyde, and lyeth buryed in the whyte freres in London, by his wyf dame Constaunce. In the same yere Syr Thomas Rampton, kyght, constable of the Tour of London, was drowned at London brydge as he come fro Westmynstre toward the Tour in a barge. The same yere dame Phelyp, the yonger, doughter of kyng Henry, was maryed to the kyng of Denmark. In the same yere a man that was callyd the Walssh clerk, appelled a knyght callyd Syre Percyval of treasonne. And they fought within lystes in Smythfeld, where the knyght scomfyted the clerk, and there the clerk

was despoylled of his armure, and drawen out of the feld to Tyburn, and there hanged. In the same yere Syr Henry Percy erle of Northumberland, and the lord Bardolf, comyng oute of Scotland togeder with a grete company, were taken by them of the north, that fought with them, and smote of theyr heedes and brought hem to London, and sette hem on London brydge. In the ix. yere was Syre Edmond Erle of Kente made Ameral of the see, whiche kepte the see worthyly with many ryall shippes. And atte laste he londed at the Costes of Brytayne, in the Ile of Bryak, and besyged the castel and sawted hit, and with a quarel he was slayne, but nevertheles the Castel was goten. And thenne his meyne come home ageyne with therles body, whiche was buryed with his Auncestryes worshipfully. Also this same yere was a grete frost that duryed fyftene wekys; whiche frost destroyed for the moost parte alle the smal byrdes.

Capitulum undecimum.

This yere, Lowys duc of Orleauns was slayn meschevously at Parys atte commaundement of the duc of Burgoyne. For it was soo that the duc of Orleaunce hadde ben to vysyte the Quene. And as he retorned to his Inneward, certayne personnes ordeyned by the sayd duc of Burgoyne laye in awayte, and fylle on him and slewe hym cruelly, smytynge the brayn oute of his heede; and one of his gentylmen was slayne with hym: wherfor on the morn was a grete counseyll, and the yates of Parys were closed, and alle the grete lordes thenne beyng at Parys were assemblyd. Among whome was the sayd duc that commysed this murdre, and there was gyven strayte commaundemente to the prouost of Parys that he shold make strayte serche to knowe who hadde commised this grete murdre. For as soone as the murdres hadde slayne the duk they sette an hous a fyre. And whyle the people cam for to stanuche the fyer, they had their horses redy, and soo escaped, and roode in to Flaundrys. And on the nexte daye, whanne al the lordes were reassembled, there was moche axynge and serchyng, who myght doo this murdre. Thenne the sayd Duc of Burgoyne stode vp and sayde that he hym self hadde doo putte hym to deth for certayne causes whiche he wold justyfye, and forthwith he departed oute of the counseil and wente to his lodgyng, and toke his hors with a pryvy meyney, and rode strayt to Lyle; and after cam al his other meyny, and so departed he from Parys. Wherupon after cam the duchesse of Orleaunce his wyf, the Dukes doughter of Melan, with her sonnes, and her oldest sones wyf, suster to the kyng, whiche had ben tofore quene of Englonde, kynge Rychardys wyf, and requyred humbly iustice of the kynge, whiche thenne was in

gode heele, and sate in the chayer of iustyce. To whome the kynge sayde that he wold doo iustyce on them that commysed that horryble crysme on his seul and only broder, and that they sholde veryly knowe it in al hast possible. Thenne after this the duc of Burgoyn made requestys that he myght come to fore the kyng and his counseyll for to justyfye the deth of the duc of Orleaunce, whiche was graunted, and soo cam with a grete armye into Parys. And there tofore the Dolphyn and al the counseylle of the kynges in playn parlemente, by a doctour of dyvynyte callyd mayster Iohan Petyte, he made his justificacion. And after at another daye assygned, the duchesse of Orleaunce dide by another doctoure of divinite make a replicacion. And so that mater henge longe; whiche mater was occasion of infynyte sorowe in the royamme of Fraunce. Aboute this tyme the counseylle of Pyse was, in which was bygonne the maner to make unyon in the chirche, but it prevayled not. In the tenth yere cam the Seneschal of Henawd with many other gentil men in to Englond for to doo armes and to geete honoure and worship. The Seneschal chalengyd therle of Somersete. And therle delyverd hym manly of his chalengys, and wanne thonoure of the felde. The next day after cam in to the felde another man of the Seneschallys partye, & ageynst hym cam Syre Rychard of Arondele, knyght. And the Henewer had the better of hym, for he brought hym on his knees. The thyrdde day cam in another, and ageyne hym cam Syre Iohan Cornewayle, knyght, and manly quytte hym in the felde, and hadde the beter of his adversarye. On the fourth day cam in to the feld another Henewer, and ageynste hym cam Syre Iohan Cheynes sonne, and he cast doune hors & man. And therfor the kyng dubbyd hym knyght. The fyfthe daye cam in another Henewer, and to hym cam Syre Iohan Styward, knyght, whiche quytte hym manly and hadde the better. The Syxthe daye cam another Henewer, and to hym cam William Porter, Squyer. And he hadde the better of the Henewer, and the kyng dubbyd hym knyght. The seventhe day cam in another Henewer, and to hym cam Iohan Standysshe, squyer, and he hadde the better, and the kynge dubbyd hym knyght. The same day cam another Henewer, and to hym cam a squyer of Gascoyne, whiche hadde the better and was dubbed knyght. The eyght daye cam in two Henewers, and to hem cam two sowdyours of Calays that were bretheren, whiche had the better in the felde. And thus ended this chalenge with moche worship. The kynge thenne fested the straungers ryally, And at theyr departynge yafe hym ryche yeftes; and soo they departed and wente home. In the enleventh yere was a batayll done in Smythfelde bytwene two squyers, one callyd Gloucetre, and that other Arthure, whiche well and manly foughte togeder

longe tyme. And the kynge for theyr manlynes toke theyr quarel in to hys honde, and made hem goo oute of the felde togyder attones. And soo they were dyvyded of theyr bataylle, and the kynge yaf hem grace.

This same yere the comons putte vp a bylle in the parlement to the kynge as for the temporalytees beynge in the handes of the spirituelte; but there was none answer gyven at that tyme, for the kyng wold be advysed. After Rupertus, Sygismundus was electe and chosen emperiour this same yere, and was emperour seven and twenty yere. This Sygysmundus was kynge of Hongary, whiche was a very crysten and meke man, also devoute and hooly, and after thoppynyon of somme persones worthy to be canonysed. This was a special socour to hooly chirche, whiche he fonde soore afflycte and desolate by the scysme; but he by his merveyllous wysedome and industrye socoured it gretely. For he spared not hym self, ne his, vnto the tyme that there was a very and full unyon in the chirche. He hadde nyne bataylles ageynst the Turkes, which he al gate tryumphyng. What shal I saye more, but alle the lawde that hath be gyven to Constantyn, Theodosio, to Charles, to Ottone, and all other emperours worthy to be preysed, maye surely be applyed to this Sygysmunde: he was crowned of Eugenye. After this the royamme of Boheme was a grete parte destroyed by Sygismunde and the prynces of Almayne for the heresye of the Hussytes. And the pope gaf oute a croysye ageynst them. A croysye gyven by the pope is whanne he giveth playne indulgence to them that make warre ageynste hethen men, Turkes or heretykes, or them that be not obedyente to the chirche of Rome. In the same yere Iohan of Badby, a fals Lollar and heretyke, was brente in Smythfeld, whiche bylevyd that the Sacrament was not Goddes bodye.

Fasc. Temp., 87 b.

Capitulum Duodecimum.

In the twellyfth yere of kyng Harry was taken a Squyer of Wales that hadde ben a rebelle and supporter of Owen of Glyndor, and he was iuged to deth at London, where he was drawen, hangyd, & quartred, & his four quartres sette vp in four gode townes, and his hede on London brydge. In the thyrtenth yere of his regne deyde Sire Iohan Beauford, Erle of Somersete, capytayne of Calays, and lyeth buryed in the Abbaye of the Tour hylle. The same yere cam the ambassatours of Fraunce from the duc of Burgoyne to the prynce kynge Henryes sonne for helpe and socour ageynst the duc of Orleaunce. Thenne wente over the Erle of Arondele, the Erle of Kyme, and the lord Cobham, with many other knyghtes and squyers, and had a grete retenew ageynste the duc of

Orleaunce. And at Sayntclo, besyde Parys in Fraunce, they mette and had vyctory of the Frensshmen, and of the Armynaks. And the duc rewarded rychely our Englyssh men, and they come ageyne. Not longe after the duc of Orleaunce sente ambassatours to kynge Harry to have helpe and socour ageynst the duc of Burgoyne. At whiche tyme the kynge made Thomas his sonne duc of Clarence, and Iohan his sone duc of Bedford, and his sonne Umfrey Duke 'of Gloucetre, Syre Thomas Beauford Erle of Dorsete. And the duc of Anmarle he made Duck of York. Thenne he ordeyned the Duc of Clarence, and the Erle of Dorsete, and Syre Iohan Cornewayle with a grete retenue to passe over in to Fraunce to helpe and strengthe the duck of Orleaunce, and thenne the lordes with theyr retenue sayled in to Normandye. And at theyr londynge mette ageynste hem the lord Hambo with seven thousand men of armes of Frensshmen, whiche were putte to flyght, and taken of hem seven honderd men of Armes of Frensshmen, and toke many prysonners. And soo they rode forth thurgh Fraunce, takyng castels and townes, and slewe moche peple of Frensshmen, and toke many prysonners, and soo passed forthe tyll they come to Bourdeux, there restyng them a whyle. And sette the countray in peas and reste, and thenne come hoome ageyne. In this yere the coyne was lyghted both of golde and of silver, and weyed lasse syn than it dyde before. In the xiiij. yere of the regne of kynge Harry ther were made galeys of warre, for the kynge purposed to have passed the see, and soo forth vnto Ierusalem, but God vysyted hym with grete and fervent infyrmytees, and on a day he was brought to saynt Edward shryn to make his offryng and to take his leve. And there beynge, he becam soo seeke that they were about hym supposed he shold have deyd there; & thenne they toke & bare hym in to the abbots place in to a fayre large chambre, and leyde hym vppon a paylet to fore the fyre. And whanne he was comen to hym self ageyn, and wyst not where he was, he axyd of his chamberlayn where he was, and how the chambre was callyd that he was inne. And he told hym that he was in thabbots place, and that the chambre was named Ierusalem. Thenne he sayde that his tyme was come, and that it was propheeyed of hym that he shold dye in Ierusalem, and there disposed hym to Godwarde and made hym redy, & sone after deyde in the same chambre. On whoos soule God have mercy. Amen. Thenne was the bodye caryed from thennes in a barge by water to Feversham, and from thennes to Caunterbury by londe, & there by saynt Thomas shryne in Cristys chirche he is buryed. Thus ended kyng Harry the fourth aboute mydlente Sonday, in the yere of oure Lorde a thousand four honderd and twelve.

Capitulum xiij.

After kynge Harry the fourth regned Harry his sonne, borne at Monmouthe in Walys. This Harry, whiche was the fyfth, after the Conquest, was a noble and wyse man. For after his faders dethe, whanne he hadde take vpon hym to be kynge, he chaunged al his condicions, and was sodenly chaunged, and lefte al his olde wyld maners, and charged alle them that had ben conversaunt in his wylde lyvynge that they shold avoyde his presence and come no more therynne. This man dyde many greete thynges in his dayes, and regned not fully ten yere. For in the tenth yere of his regne, and syx & thyrtty yere of his age, he deyde, and is buryed worshipfully at Westmynstre. In his fyrst yere, anone after he was crowned, whiche was the nynthe day of Apryll, he sente to the Frerys at Langley, where the body of kyng Rychard was buried, and lete the body take oute of therth ageyne, and dyde do bryng it to Westmynstre in a ryal chare coverd with black velvet and baners of dyvers armes about. And alle the horses in the chare were coverd with blac, and beten with dyverse armes, and many a torche brennyng by the chaar till they cam to Westmynstre. And there he lete make a ryall terment, and buryed hym by quene Anne his wyf, as his desyre was. Aboute whoos sepulcre ther stande foure grete tapers contynuelly brennynge. And one day in the weke perpetuelly he hath a Dirige with nyne lessons. And on the morne a masse, bothe by note solempnly, on whiche day is gyven also wekely in pens to poure peple enleven schyllynges & viij.*d.*, all ordeyned by this kyng vpon grete payne. And on the day of his annyversary is yerly gyven twenty pond in pens to pour peple. Also this kynge ordeyned by his lyf and founded the Chartrous at Shene. And the hous of Syon of saynt Brygyttes ordre, and dyde moche good to the newerke[1] of Westmynstre, where he lyeth buryed, and ordeyned thre masses perpetuelly to be songen over hym dayly, & also certayne lyghtes dayly to brenne atte hye masse and at evensong, & twenty pound to be deled in pens yerly at his annyversarye. Al this ordeyned he by his lyve besyde all his warre in Fraunce and other greete actes. On whoos sowle Ihesus have mercy. Amen.

Also in this fyrste yere Syre Iohan Oldecastell, lord Cobham, was take and dampned for an heretyk by al hooly chirche, and commyted to the Tour, and from thennes he brake prysonne and escaped. And anone after, he and his complyses conspyreden the kynges deth and his bretheren, and also the destruction of hooly chirche, For they hadde purposed to have assemblyd by nyght in saynt Gyles felde for tachyevyd

[1] Sic.

theyr evyll purpose. But blessyd be God, the kynge and lordes had knowleche of theyr entente, and toke the felde to fore them, and awayted on theyr comyng, and toke many preestes, clerkys, and other lewd men that were of theyr sect fro alle the partyes of Englond, wenyng to have founden theyr Capitayne there, Syre Iohan Oldecastel, but they were deceyved. For there were take many of them, and nyne and thyrtty were hanged on one day vppon a newe payr galowes new made fast by the same felde by the hye waye. And seven of the gretteste heretykes were brente hangyng on the galowes. And anone Syre Rogyer Acton knyght was taken, drawe, and hanged vppon the same galowes for the same cause. In the seconde yere of his regne byganne the generall counseylle at Counstaunce for the unyon of hooly Chirche, and for to depose theym that were scysmatykes, and to chose one very heede and undubytate pope. Also the same yere Iohan Claydon, skynnar, and Rychard Baker of Lombard strete, were brent in Smythfelde for heresye. Also this same yere by thadvys of hys counseyle, the kynge sente lettres vnto the kyng of Fraunce that he shold rendre & delyver to hym his enherytaunce whiche his predecessours had holden and had to fore hym, or ellys he wolde do his devoyre to geete it by the helpe of God and of his subgettys with the swerde. To whome it was answerd that the kyng was over yong and tendre of age to vse the warre ageynste hem, and in derysyon sente to hym a tonne full of tenyse balles to playe with. And whanne the kynge vnderstode his answer, anone he lete doo calle a counseylle, and there shewed them this mater. And there it was concluded by the sayd counseylle, and in especiall by the spirituelte, that he sholde goo and geete Normandye, and they wold helpe hym to theyr power. It is sayde that the spyritualte fered soore that yf he hadde not hadde to doo withoute the londe, that he wolde have laboured for to have taken fro the chirche the temporal possessions. And therfor they concluded amonge hem self that they shold stire hym for to goo and make warre over see in Fraunce for to conquere his ryghtful enherytaunce. And soo it was concluded and acorded that the kynge and lordes with al theyr power sholde mete at Southhampton at Lammasse next after. And soo the eyghtenth day of Iuyn the kyng roode thurgh London with all his hooste ryally toward Southhampton. And there beynge redy for to passe, and alle his lordes assembled, there was taken and arestyd for hye treasonne Syre Rychard, Erle of Cambrydge, brother to the duc of York, the lord Scrope, Tresorer of Englond, and Syre Thomas Gray, knyght, whiche sholde ymagyne the kynges deth. For whiche cause they were iuged and dampned to deth. And there the nyne and twentyest day of Iuyll they were byheded. And thenne the kyng and alle the lordes with theyr armee

toke the see with fyften honderd sayllys, and arryved at Kydkaws in Normandy. And fro thennes went and leyd syege to Harflete be lande and by water, and leyd his ordenaunce to the toune. And the twoo and twentyest daye of September the toune was gyven over to hym. Thenne ordeyned he there capytayne his vncle the Erle of Dorsete, and putte oute the Frensshmen, and stuffyd it with Englisshmen. Thenne the kynge sente in to Englond, and lete crye in every good towne that what crafty man wolde come theder for to dwelle and enhabyte the toune there sholde have hows and houshold to hym and his heyres for evermore. Thenne come theder many craftes men and enhabyte them there. The kynge seynge the toune wel stuffyd with vytaylle and men, he passyd forthe by lande toward Calays. Thenne the Frensshmen heerynge of his comyng brake the brydges, that he sholde not come over the ryver of Somme. Thenne the kynge wente soo fer vpward that he gate over and cam in to Pycardye. And thenne were the Frensshmen at Agyncourt, Rolandcourt and Blangy, wyth all the ryal power of Fraunce, excepte the duc of Burgoyne, whiche wolde nòt come theder, ne suffre his sonne the lord Chareyles to come theder. And whanne the kynge sawe that he myght not passe, he toke his felde with suche peple as he hadde, whiche were not passynge seven thousand fyghtynge men. And the mooste parte of hem were seeke of the flyxe, and the yemanry hadde theyr hosen terven or bounden bynethe the knee, havynge long iackys. But every man had a good bowe, a sheef arowys, and a swerd. Thenne he sette his felde, and sette the duc of York in the vauntward, and ordeyned in the nyght tofor the bataylle, that eche man sholde make a stake sharp on both thendes, and pytche it a slope in the grounde to fore hym. And soo on the morne he hadde his confessour, that made hem to saye a general confession, and gaf them general absolusion. And thenne the kynge roode thurgh the felde and comforted hem, promysynge to them that he wold rather deye that day than yelde hym. And thenne every man toke good herte and courage, and soo abode the comynge of Frensshmen, whome they resseyved on her stakys, stomblynge and fallynge doune hors and man, in suche wyse that our men shotte on hem, and soo fought that thurgh the grace of God the vyctorye abode with the kyng, and the Frensshmen overthrowen, and were slayn of them enleven thousand and moo, and many grete lordes and gentyls take prysouners. And whanne the kynge hadde thus goten the felde, tydynges cam that ther was comynge a newe batayll of Frensshmen towardes hym. And thenne he dyde doo crye, and comaunded that every man shold slee his prysonners. And whanne the duc of Orleaunce herde that, and other greete lordes, they sente worde to the Frensshmen that yf they cam

on they shold be slayne. And thenne the Frensshmen for savacion of the prysonners lyves withdrewe them. And soo the kynge hadde and kepte the felde, and wanne the worshippe of the bataylle. And there were slayne in the felde thre Dukes, nyne Erlys, and Barons nyghe an honderde, and gentylmen in cote armoure xlv. C. And of the Englysshe partye, the Duc of Yorke and therle of Suffolke, and not twenty personnes moo, blessyd be God; the duc of Braban was taken alyve, but whan the kynge commaunded that every man shold slee his prysonner, he was slayne, on whos sowle and alle other God have mercy. Amen. Thus by the helpe of Almyghty God, the kynge of Englond with vij. M. Englysshmen won the felde vpon the Frensshmen, whiche were nombred moo than foure score thousand men, with all the ryall lordes of Fraunce except the kynge and Dolphyn. And whanne al was done, the kynge demaunded the herowdes the name of the next place to the felde. And they answerde, Agyncourt. Thenne sayd he, we wille that the bataylle be callyd and named the bataylle of Agyncourt. Thenne the kynge kepynge the felde with his hoost al nyghte after, on the morne departed towarde Caleys with his prysonners, that is to wete, the Duck of Orleaunce, the Duck of Borbon, the erles of Ewe and of Vendon, Burcicaught the marchal of Fraunce, with many other lordes and gentill men, whome he brought alle in to Englonde with hym, where he was receyved in every place worshipfully with alle the honoure, ioy, and solempnyte that myght be. And the foure and twentyeste daye of Novembre the kyng cam to London; and it is to wete that every Englisshman that had ben in that bataylle gate good prysoners or good iewellis. For the Frensshmen were richely and costlew arrayed, wherof oure peuple had good pyllage.

Capitulum 14.

In the thyrde yere of his regne the emperour of Almayne, Sygysmund, cam in to Englonde, and was receyved worshipfully at Dover by the duc of Gloucetre. And the cyte of London as the mayer, aldermen, and alle the craftes in the moost best wise resseyved hym at Blackheth the seventhe daye of Maye. And at saynt Thomas wateryng the kyng him self with his lordys mette hym and welcomed hym in the moost goodlyest wyse, and toke hym by the honde, and roode forthe with him thurgh the cite, and offrid at Powlis, and thenne rode forth vnto Westmestre, where the king lodged him in his owne palays, and there abode a grete whyle at the kinges coste.

Thenne come the Duc of Holonde in to Englonde, whome the king resseived worshipfully, and lodged him in the bisshop

of Elyes place in Holburne. Whanne the Emperour hadde seen the manere of this londe and the commodytees therof, he was electe and chosen to be a broder of the garter, whiche he toke and receyved gladly, and ware it ever after. And thenne the kynge brought hym to Calays. And theder cam to hym the duk of Burgoyne for to doo hommage to themperour for the counte of Alst in Flaundres, whome the kynge receyved worshipfully. And thenne after themperour toke leve of the kynge, and departed, and soo eche toke leve of other, and the kyng retourned ageyne in to Englond. And the Emperour wente to Zierixsee in Zeland, and thenne into Dordrecht in Holonde.

In the fourthe yere the duc of Bedford, therle of Marche, and other certayne lordes, with theyr retenue, foughten on the see ageynst seven carryks of Gene, and fyfty other vessels, as hulkes, barges, galeys and galyetis. Of whome were taken thre grete caryks with the patrons, and drowned a grete hulke callyd the black hulk of Flaundres; and the remenaunt fledde aweye; and this was done on our Lady day Assumpcion. Also this yere at a parlement holden at Westmynstre was graunted to the kynge an hoole fyftenthe, and a dyme to mayntene with his warrys. And this yere the kynge sayled with al his retenewe over see in to Normandye ageyne, and landed on Lammas day at Toke; and there at landynge the kynge made eyght and fourty knyghtes. And anone the kynge wanne the toune of Toke and the castel withoute strooke; and he made Syre Iohan Kygley capytayne therof. And thenne the kynge sente therle marchal vnto Louers, whiche they sawted, and anon it was yolden, and therle brought the keyes to the kynge, and the kyng delyverd hym the keyes ageyne, and made hym capytayn of Louers. Thenne the kyng wente to Cane and besyeged it, and with asawte entryd the toune and gate it; but the castel helde, and the capytayne desyred respyte of fourten dayes for tabyde rescows, and yf none cam than to delyvere it. The kynge graunted it hym, and vnder the same apooyntement was the cyte of Bayows, with other townes and fortresses vnto the nombre of fourtene: vppon the hyll to fore the castel of Cane the kynge pyght alle his tentes and pavyllons, whiche semed a toune as moche as Cane. And whanne tydynges cam that noo rescowes wolde come, at fourten dayes ende the capytayne delyverd the keyes and castel vnto the kynge. And in lyke wyse was Bayous with other fourtene townes delyverd also. Of whiche townes and castels the kynge made the duk of Clarence capytayne and governour. In Cane the kyng heelde his feste of saynt George, where he made fyftene knyghtes of the bathe. And thenne, er he departed, he gate Valeys, and sente the duc of Gloucetre to Chyrburgh for to geete it, whiche he besyeged, and lay long there. And thus the kyng sente to dyverse

townes, and gate dayly many townes, in soo moche that he gate alle the tounes, castels, pyles, strengthes, and abbeyes vnto Pount Alarche, and fro thens to Roan. Aboute this tyme contynued the counseylle of Constaunce, in whiche was ended the scysme of fourty yere, and ther was dampned the heresyes, and two heretyks, that is to wete, Iohan Hus and Iherome, were brente. And many good thynges institued and ordeyned; there was determyned decreed by the hooly synode that the counseyll lawfully gadred and assembled, representyng the chirche, hath vnyversal power immedyatly of Cryst. To whome every astate, aswel the papal astate as other, is bounden and holde to obey in tho thynges that toucheth the general reformacion of the chirche, that is to wete, in feyth and maners, as wel in the heede as in the membrys. Item, that from thenne forth on, sholde alwey the general counseyl be holden fro ten yere to ten yere. In this counseyll was chosen for to be pope Martyn, whiche was Martinus quintus, and was pope fourten yere. And there was the vnyon which was desyred long yhad for the defence of the feyth. This was a myghty Pope, above alle other ryche, and a man of grete iustyce; he helde the stretes and the weyes sewrly and in pees. He destroyed heretyks; he dyde many goode thynges by helpe of the noble Emperour Sygysmunde. And for to recover the Holy lond, he gadryd moche tresoure, but by deth that cam vpon hym, it was lette, and a lytel to fore his deth ordeyned a general counseyll to be assemblid in Basyle. In the fyfth yere of the regne of kynge Harry the fyfthe, Syre Iohan Oldcastel, lord Cobham, was taken and convycte by the clergye for heresye, and dampned to fore the temporal iuges for tresonne. And soo he was drawen and hanged in saynt Gyles felde vpon a newe payr of galows, with a cheyne of yron; and vnder the galewes was made a grete fyre whiche brente galowes and alle. In the syxthe yere the kyng besyged the cyte of Roan, whiche endured half yere and more, and atte laste the cyte beyng in grete famyne, putte oute moche peple, as women and children, whiche deyde for honger, moo than thyrtty thousand; & also seyng that noo rescowe cam, appoynted with the kyng, & gaf over the toun vnto hym, which he receyved. And anone after that Roan was goten, Deepe and many other tounes in Baas Normandye gaf them over withoute strook or syege, whanne they vnderstode that the kynge had goten Roan.

Fasc. Temp 87 b.

Capitulum xv.

Also this same yere hadde ben a pees made and sworne bytwene the duc of Burgoyne and the Dolphyn, whiche were sworn vpon our Lordes body, that they shold love and assyste eche other ageynst theyr enemyes. And after this, contrary to this othe, the Duc Iohan of Burgoyne was slayne and

pytously murthred in the presence of the Dolphyn. Wherfore the Frensshemen were gretely devyded and of veray necessyte labouryd to have a trayte with the kynge of Englond. For the kynge of Englond wanne dayly on them townes, castels, and fortresses. Also this same yere was Quene Iane arestyd and brought to the castel of Ledys in kente. And one Frere Randolf, a doctour of divynyte, her confessour, whiche afterward was slayne by the person of the Tour fallynge at wordes and debate. And afterward Quene Iane was delyverd. In the seuenth yere both kynges of Fraunce and of Englond were acorded, and kyng Harry was made heyr and regente of Fraunce, And wedded dame Kateryne the kynges doughter of Fraunce, atte Troyes in Champayne, on Trynyte Sondaye. And this was made by the meene of Phelyp, newely made duke of Burgoyne, whiche was sworne to kynge Harry, and for tavenge his faders deth he was become Englysshe. And thenne the kyng with his newe wyf wente to Parys, where he was ryally receyvyd. And from thens he with his lordes and the duc of Burgoyne and many other lordes of Fraunce leyd syege to dyuerse townes and castels that helde of the Dolphyns partye, wan them, but the toune of Melun helde long, for therin were good defendours. In the viij. yere the kyng and the quene cam ouer see, & londed on Candelmasse by the morow at Douer, & the xiiij. day of Feverer the kyng cam to London, & the xxj. day of the same moneth the quene cam, & the xxiiij. day of the same she was crowned at Westmestre. Also the same yere anon after Ester the kyng helde a parlement at Westmestre, at whiche parlement it was ordeyned that the gold in Englysshe coyne shold be weyed, and none resseyved but by weyght. And anone after Whitsontyde the king sayled to Caleys, and passyd soo forth in to Fraunce. And in Marche the two and twentyest daye byfore the king cam over, the duc of Clarence was slayne in Fraunce, and dyverse other lordes taken prysoners, as the erle of Huntyngdon, the erle of Somersete, with dyverse other. And al was bycause they wold not with hem Archers, but thought to have doo with the Frensshmen them self withoute them. And yet whanne he was slayn tharchers cam and rescowed the body of the duc, whiche they wold have caryed with them. God have mercy on his soule, he was a valyaunt man. And the same yere bytwene Crystemasse and Candelmasse the toune of Melun was yolden to the kynge. In the nynth yere on saynt Nycholas day in December was borne Harry the kynges first begoten sonne at Wyndesore, whoos godfaders at fontstone was Harry, bisshop of Wynchestre, and Iohan duke of Bedforde, And the duchesse of Holond was godmoder; and Harry Chychely, archebisshop of Caunterbury, was godfader atte confermyng. And in the tenth yere the cyte of Mews in Brye was goten, whiche

had ben longe besyeged. And this same yere the Quene shipped at Hampton, and sayled over to the kynge in Fraunce, where she was worshipfully receyved of the kyng, and also of the kyng of Fraunce her fader, and of her moder: and thus kyng Harry wan faste in Fraunce, and helde grete astate, and sate at dyner at a grete feste in Parys crowned, and the quene also, whiche hadde not ben seen tofore; and alle peple resorted vnto his courte. But as to the kyng of Fraunce, he helde none astate ne rule, but was left almoost allone. Also this yere the whethercock was sette vpon Powlus steple at London.

And this yere in the moneth of August kynge Harry wexe seke at Boys de Vyncent. And whanne he sawe he sholde deye, he made his testament, and ordeygned many thynges nobly for his sowle, and devoutly resseyved alle the ryghtes of hooly chirche, in soo ferforth that whanne he was enoynted he sayd the seryvyse with the preeste; and whanne the vers of the Psalme, Miserere mei, Deus, &c., that was Benigne fac, Domine, in bona voluntate tua Syon, vt edificentur muri Ierusalem, was sayd, he bade tarye there, and sayd thus: "O "good Lord thou knowest that myn entent hath ben and yet "is yf I myght lyve to reedefye the wallys of Ierusalem," and thenne the preest proceded forth and made an ende. And anone after this mooste noble prynce, vyctoryous kynge, flour in his tyme of Crysten chyvalrye, whome all the world doubted, gaf his soule into the handes of God, & deyde & made an ende of his naturel lyf atte sayd Boys de Vyncent besyde Parys, the syx and thryttyest yere of his age: on whoos soule god have mercy, Amen. Thenne was the bodye enbamed and cered and leyde in a ryall chare, and an ymage lyke vnto hym was leyde vpon the corps open, with dyvers baners and horse covered rychely with tharmes of Englonde and Fraunce, And also the old armes, as saynt Edwardys, saynt Edmonds, and other; with grete multitude of torchys; with whome wente the kyng of Scotlande and many other lordes, whiche accompanyed the body till it cam vnto Westmynstre by London in Englonde. And in every toune by the waye he hadde solempnly his dirige atte even and masse on the morn, and moche Almesse was gyven to poure people. And the seventhe daye of Novembre after the corps was brought thurgh London with grete reverence and solempnyte vnto the monasterye of Westmynstre, where as he nowe resteth. On whoos tombe is a ryche ymage lyke hym self of sylver and gylt, where he is dayly remembrid and praid for. On whoos sowle, and all Crysten, God have mercy. Amen.

Capitulum decimum sextum.

Here is to be noted that this kynge Harry the fyfthe was a moche noble prynce after he was kyng and crowned. How be

it to fore in his yongthe he hadde ben wylde, recheles, and spared nothyng of his lustes ne desyres, but accomplisshid them after his lykynge. But as soone as he was crowned, enoynted, and sacred, anone sodaynly he was chaunged into a new man, and set al his entente to lyve vertuously in mayntenynge of hooly chirche, destroyng of heretykes, kepynge iustyce, and defendynge his royamme and subgettis. And for as moche as his fader hadd deposyd by his labour the good kynge Rychard, and pytously made hym to deye, and for thoffence doo to hym ageynst his lyegeaunce he hadde sente to Rome to be assoylled therof. For whiche offence the pope oure hooly fader enioyned hym to make hym be prayd fore perpetuelly; and lyke as he had done to be taken from hym his naturell lyf, therfore he sholde doo founde four tapers to brenne perpetuelly aboute his body; that for the extynction of his bodyly lyf his sowle may ever be remembryd, and lyve in heven in spyrytuel lyf. And also that he sholde every weke on the daye as it cometh aboute of his dethe have a solempne masse of requiem, and on the even to fore a dirige with nyne lessons, and a dole to pour people alwaye on that daye of enleven schyllynges eyght pens, to be delyd penymele. And ones in the yere at his annyversarye his terment to be holden in the moost honest wyse, and to be deled that day twenty li in pens to pour peple, and to every monke to have twenty schillynges: whiche alle these thynges performed this noble kyng for his fader. For kynge Harry the fourth his fader performed hit not duryng his lyf, whome, as it is sayde God touchyd, and was a lepre er he deyde. Also thenne this noble Prynce leete doo calle alle thabbottes and pryours of saynt Benets ordre in Englond, & had them in the chapytre hous of Westmynstre for the reformacion of thordre, wherynne he had comynycacion, and also with Bisshoppes & men of the spyritualte, in soo ferforth that they doubted soore that he wold have had the temporaltees oute of their handes; wherfor by thadvis, labour and procuring of the spyrytualte encouraged the kynge to chalenge Normandy and his ryght that he hadde in Fraunce, to thende to sette hym a werke there that he sholde not seeke occasions to entre in to suche maters. And soo alle his lyf after he labouryd in the warrys in conquerynge grete parte of the royamme of Fraunce, that by thagrement of the kynge Charlys hadde alle the governaunce of the Royamme of Fraunce, And was proclamed regent and heyr of Fraunce. And soo notwithstandyng alle this grete warre that he had, yet he remembryd his soule, and also that he was mortal and must deye. For whiche he ordeyned by his lyf the place of his sepulcre where he is now buryed, and every day thre masses perpetuelly to be songen in a fayr chapel over his sepulcre. Of whiche the myddel masse and the fyrst and the laste masse

shal be as it is assygned by hym, as it appereth by thyse verses folowynge :—

Henrici misse quinti sunt hic tabulate,
Que successive sunt per monachos celebrate.

Die dominica.—Prima sit assumpte de festo virginis alme
Poscit postremam Cristus de morte resurgens.

Feria ij.—Prima salutate de festo virginis extat.
Nunciat angelicis laudem postrema choreis.

Feria 3.—Esse Deum natum de virgine prima fatetur,
Commemorat natam sic vltima missa Mariam.

Feria 1.—Prima celebretur ad honorem neupmatis almi,
Ultima conceptam denunciat esse Mariam.

Feria 5.—Semper prima coli debet de corpore Cristi,
Ultima sit fata de virgine purificata.

Feria 6.—Condecet vt prima celebretur de cruce sancta,
Atque salutate fiet postrema Marie.

Sabbato.—Omnes ad sanctos est prima colenda supernos,
Vltima de requie pro defunctis petit esse;
Semper erit media de proprietate Dei.

And yet this noble kyng Harry the fyfthe founded two howses of relygion : One callyd Syon, besyde Braynford, of the ordre of saynt Brygytte, both of men and wymmen ; And on that other syde of the ryver of Tamyse an hows of monkes of the Chartrehous, in whiche two places he is contynuelly prayd fore nyghte and day. For ever whanne they of Syon rest they of the Chartrehous done theyr servyce ; And in lyke wyse whanne they of the Chartrous rest, the other goon to : and by the ryngyng of the bellys of eyther place, eche knoweth whanne they ende theyr servyse : whiche ben nobly endowed ; and done dayely there grete almesse dedes, as in the Chartrehous certayne children ben founde to scole, and at Syon certayne almesse gyven dayly. And yet besyde all this he hath founded a recluse, whiche shal be alwey a preeste, to praye for hym by the sayde Chartrehous, whiche preeste is wel & sufficiently endowed for hym and a servaunt. Loo here maye all prynces take ensample by this noble prynce, that regnynge so lytel tyme, not fully x. yere, dyd so many noble actes, as wel for his sowle to be perpetuelly remembryd & prayde fore, as in his wordly conquestys ; and he beynge in his moost lusty age despysed and eschewyd synne, and was vertuous and a grete iustyser, in soo moche that alle the prynces of Crystendom dradde hym, & also of hethenes. And had determyned in hym self, yf God wolde have sparyd hym, that he wold have warryd agayne the Sarasyns : and for to knowe the ayde of other prynces, & all the passages in

that iourney, he sent a knyght of Henawd, named syr Hugh de Lanoye, vnto Jerusalem, but er he retorned he deyd at Boys du Vincent in the xxxvj. yere of his age : on whos soule God have mercy.

How kyng Harry the syxth regned, beynge a childe not one yere of age, and of the batayllle of Vernoyl in Perche.

Capitulum 17.

After kyng Harry the fyfthe regned Harry his sonne, a childe, and not fully a yere old, whoos regne began the fyrst daye of September the yere of our Lord a thousand four honderd and two and twenty. This kyng beyng in his Cradel, was moche doubted and dradde by cause of the grete Conquest of his fader, and also the wysedome and guydynge of his vncles, the duck of Bedford and the duc of Gloucetre. This yere the xxj. day of Octobre ; deyde Charles kyng of Fraunce, and lyeth buryed at saynt Denys ; and thenne was the duc of Bedford made regent of Fraunce, and the duc of Gloucetre was made protectour and defendour of Englond. And the fyrst day of Marche after was Syr Wylliam Tayllour, preest, degraded of his preesthode, and on the morne after he was brente in Smythfeld for heresye. This yere Syre Iames Styward, kynge of Scottes, maryed dame Iane, the duchesse doughter of Clarence, of her fyrst husbond therle of Somersete, at saynt Mary Overays. Also this yere, the sevententh day of August, was the batayllle of Vernayl in Perche, bytwene the duc of Bedford, regent of Fraunce, and the Duc of Alaunson, whiche was a greete batayllle. The duc of Bedford hadde on his syde with hym therle of Salesbury Mountagu, the lord Talbotte, and alle the power that they coude make in Normandy, the garnysons kepte, and also many Capytayns with moche peple of the duc of Burgoyns. And on that other syde was the Duc of Alaunson, the duc of Turon that was therle Douglas, therle of Bougham, with many lerdes of Fraunce, and greete companye of Scottes and Armynakes. And thenne therle Douglas callyd the duc of Bedford Iohan with the leden swerde, and he sente hym worde ageyne that he shold fynde that daye that his swerde was of stele. And soo the batayllle ioyned on bothe sydes, and fought longe, that ther wyst no man who shold have the better a grete whyle ; but at last, as God wold, the vyctory fyll on thenglysshe partye. For ther were slayne therle Douglas, whiche a lytel byfore was made duc of Turone, therle of Bowhayn, therle of Almarre, the erle of Tonnar, therle of Vauntedore, and the vysecounte of Nerbonne, whiche was one of them that slewe duk Iohan of Burgoyne knelyng to fore the Dolphyn, and many mo vnto the nombre of ten thousand and moo. And ther was taken pry-

sonner the duc of Alaunson and many other lordes and gentyls of Fraunce; but Scottys that day were slayne doune ryght the substaunce of them alle. In the thyrde yere of kyng Harry the syxth the duke of Gloucetre maryed the duchesse of Holond, and wente over see with her in to Henawde for to take possession of his wyves enherytaunce, where he was honorably receyvyd, and taken for lord of the lond. But soone after he was fayne to retorne hoome ageyne, and lefte his wyf and his tresour that he brought with hym in a toune callyd Mounse in Henawd, whiche promysed for to be trewe to hym. Not withstandyng they delivered the lady to the duc of Burgoyne, whiche sente her to Gaunt. And from thens she escaped in a mannes arraye, and came into Zeland to a toune of her owne callyd Zierixee; And from thens she wente to a toune in Holond called the Ghowde, and there she was stronge ynough, and wythstode the sayd Duc of Burgoyne, and sone after this the duc of Gloucetre sente over in to Zeland the lord Fytzwater, with certayne men of warre and archers, for to helpe and socour the sayd duchesse of Holond, whiche londed at a place in Zeland callid Brewers haven, where the lordes of the countre cam doune and fought with hym, and in conclusion was fayne to withdrawe hym and his meyne to the see ageyne, but yet he slewe and hurte divers lordes and moche peple of the countreye, and soo retorned home ageyne and prevayled noo thyng. Also this same yere therle of Salysbury, therle of Suffolke, the lord Wylby and the lord Scalys, with theyr retenue, leyd syege to the Cyte of Mauns, the whiche Cyte was yolden to them in shorte tyme, with many other stronge townes and Castels to the nombre of syx and thyrtty. This tyme all Normandye and a grete parte of Fraunce vnto Orleaunce was vnder thobeysaunce of the kynge of Englond. And alle the remenaunt of Fraunce was in grete trybulacion and meschyef.

Capitulum xviii.

In the fourth yere, the same nyght that the mayer of London Johan Coventre had taken his charge, was a grete watche in London, for affraye that was bytwene the bisshop of Wynchestre and the duc of Gloucetre, protectour. For the mayer with the peple of the cyte wold al yde by the duc of Gloucetre as protectoure of the royamme, but by labour of lordes that wente bytwene, and in especial by the labour of the prynce of Portyngale, ther was appoyntement taken that there was no harme don. And after the batayll of Vernoyll in Perche, the Duc of Bedforde cam over in to Englond. And on Whitsondaye this yere, at Leyceter, he dubbed kynge Harry knyght; And forthwith the sayd Harry dubbed alle these knyghtes whoos

names folowe, that is to wete : Rychard duc of York, also the sone and heyr of the duc of Norfolk, therle of Oxenford, therle of Westmerlond, the sone and heyr of therle of Northumberlond, the sonne and heyr of therle of Urmond, The lord Roes, Syr Iames Buteler, the lord Matravas, Syr Harry Gray of Tankervyle, Syr William Nevyl lorde Fauconbrydge, Syr George Nevyl lord Latymer, the lord Wellys, the lord Barkley, the sonne and heyr of the lord Talbot, Sir Rauf Gray of Werk, Syr Robert Veer, Syr Rychard Gray, Sir Edmond Hongerford, Syr Robert Wynkefeld, Syre Iohan Boteller, Syr Raynold Cobham, Syr Iohan Passhely, Syre Thomas Tunstal, Syr Iohan Chydyock, Syre Rauf Langford, Syre William Drury, Syre William Apthomas, Syre Rychard Carbonel, Syre Rychard Wydenvylle, Sire Iohan Shyrdelowe, Syr Nychol Blonket, Syre Rauf Ratteclyf, Syre Edmond Trafford, Syre William Cheyne, Syre William Babyngton, Syre Iohan Iune, Syr Gilbert Beauchamp. Item, In the fyfthe yere the duc of Bedford with the duchesse his wyf wente over see to Calays, and a lytel to fore wente over Harry Bisshop of Wynchestre. And on our Lady day Annunciation in our lady chirche at Calays, the Bisshop of Wynchestre, whanne he had songe masse, was made Cardynal. And he knelyng to fore the hye auter, the duc of Bedford sette the hatte on his heede, and ther were his bulles redde, as wel of his charge as the reioysyng of his benefyces spirituel and temporel. Also this yere was greete habundáunce of rayn, that the substance of heye and corne was destroyed, for it rayned almoost every other day. This yere the goode erle of Salesbury, Syre Thomas Montagu, leyd syege vnto Orleaunce. At which syege he was slayne with a gonne whiche cam oute of the toune. On whoos sowle God have mercy, Amen. For syth that he was slayne Englisshmen never gate ne prevayled in Fraunce, but ever after beganne to lese lytel and lytel tyl all was loste. Also this same yere a Breton murthred a good wydowe in her bedde withoute Algate, whiche wedowe fonde hym for almesse, and he bare awey al that she hadde. And after this he toke the gryth of hooly chirche at seynt Georges in Southwerke, and there toke the crosse and forswore this lond. And as he wente it happened that he cam by the place where he dyde this cursyd dede in the subarbys of London. And the women of the same paryssh cam oute with stones & canel dunge, and slewe and made an ende of hym, notwithstandynge the conestables and many other men beyng there present to kepe hym, for ther were many women, and had noo pyte. Also this yere the duck of Norfolk, with many gentilmen and yomen, toke his barge the eyght day of Novembre, at saynt Mary Overayes, for to have goon thurgh London brydge; and thurgh mysguydyng of the barge it ouerthrewe on the pyles, and many men drowned; but the duc hym self with twoo or thre leepe vpon

gode heele, and sate in the chayer of iustyce. To whome the kynge sayde that he wold doo iustyce on them that commyssed that horryble crysme on his seul and only broder, and that they sholde veryly knowe it in al hast possible. Thenne after this the duc of Burgoyn made requestys that he myght come to fore the kyng and his counseyll for to justyfye the deth of the duc of Orleaunce, whiche was graunted, and soo cam with a grete armye into Parys. And there tofore the Dolphyn and al the counseylle of the kynges in playn parlemente, by a doctour of dyvynyte callyd mayster Iohan Petyte, he made his justificacion. And after at another daye assygned, the duchesse of Orleaunce dide by another doctoure of divinite make a replicacion. And so that mater henge longe; whiche mater was occasion of infynyte sorowe in the royamme of Fraunce. Aboute this tyme the counseylle of Pyse was, in which was bygonne the maner to make unyon in the chirche, but it prevayled not. In the tenth yere cam the Seneschal of Henawd with many other gentil men in to Englond for to doo armes and to geete honoure and worship. The Seneschal chalengyd therle of Somersete. And therle delyverd hym manly of his chalengys, and wanne thonoure of the felde. The next day after cam in to the felde another man of the Seneschallys partye, & ageynst hym cam Syre Rychard of Arondele, knyght. And the Henewer had the better of hym, for he brought hym on his knees. The thyrdde day cam in another, and ageyne hym cam Syre Iohan Cornewayle, knyght, and manly quytte hym in the felde, and hadde the beter of his adversarye. On the fourth day cam in to the feld another Henewer, and ageynste hym cam Syre Iohan Cheynes sonne, and he cast doune hors & man. And therfor the kyng dubbyd hym knyght. The fyfthe daye cam in another Henewer, and to hym cam Syre Iohan Styward, knyght, whiche quytte hym manly and hadde the better. The Syxthe daye cam another Henewer, and to hym cam William Porter, Squyer. And he hadde the better of the Henewer, and the kyng dubbyd hym knyght. The seventhe day cam in another Henewer, and to hym cam Iohan Standysshe, squyer, and he hadde the better, and the kynge dubbyd hym knyght. The same day cam another Henewer, and to hym cam a squyer of Gascoyne, whiche hadde the better and was dubbed knyght. The eyght daye cam in two Henewers, and to hem cam two sowdyours of Calays that were bretheren, whiche had the better in the felde. And thus ended this chalenge with moche worship. The kynge thenne fested the straungers ryally. And at theyr departynge yafe hym ryche yeftes; and soo they departed and wente home. In the enleventh yere was a batayll done in Smythfelde bytwene two squyers, one callyd Gloucetre, and that other Arthure, whiche well and manly foughte togeder

longe tyme. And the kynge for theyr manlynes toke theyr quarel in to hys honde, and made hem goo oute of the felde togyder attones. And soo they were dyvyded of theyr bataylle, and the kynge yaf hem grace.

This same yere the comons putte vp a bylle in the parlement to the kynge as for the temporalytees beynge in the handes of the spirituelte; but there was none answer gyven at that tyme, for the kyng wold be advysed. After Rupertus, Sygismundus was electe and chosen emperiour this same yere, and was emperour seven and twenty yere. This Sygysmundus was kynge of Hongary, whiche was a very crysten and meke man, also devoute and hooly, and after thoppynyon of somme persones worthy to be canonysed. This was a special socour to hooly chirche, whiche he fonde soore afflycte and desolate by the scysme; but he by his merveyllous wysedome and industrye socoured it gretely. For he spared not hym self, ne his, vnto the tyme that there was a very and full unyon in the chirche. He hadde nyne bataylles ageynst the Turkes, which he al gate tryumphyng. What shal I saye more, but alle the lawde that hath be gyven to Constantyn, Theodosio, to Charles, to Ottone, and all other emperours worthy to be preysed, maye surely be applyed to this Sygysmunde: he was crowned of Eugenye. After this the royamme of Boheme was a grete parte destroyed by Sygismunde and the prynces of Almayne for the heresye of the Hussytes. And the pope gaf oute a croysye ageynst them. A croysye gyven by the pope is whanne he giveth playne indulgence to them that make warre ageynste hethen men, Turkes or heretykes, or them that be not obedyente to the chirche of Rome. In the same yere Iohan of Badby, a fals Lollar and heretyke, was brente in Smythfeld, whiche bylevyd that the Sacrament was not Goddes bodye.

Fasc. Temp., 87 b.

Capitulum Duodecimum.

In the twellyfth yere of kyng Harry was taken a Squyer of Wales that hadde ben a rebelle and supporter of Owen of Glyndor, and he was iuged to deth at London, where he was drawen, hangyd, & quartred, & his four quartres sette vp in four gode townes, and his hede on London brydge. In the thyrtenth yere of his regne deyde Sire Iohan Beauford, Erle of Somersete, capytayne of Calays, and lyeth buryed in the Abbaye of the Tour hylle. The same yere cam the ambassatours of Fraunce from the duc of Burgoyne to the prynce kynge Henryes sonne for helpe and socour ageynst the duc of Orleaunce. Thenne wente over the Erle of Arondele, the Erle of Kyme, and the lord Cobham, with many other knyghtes and squyers, and had a grete retenew ageynste the duc of

Orleaunce. And at Sayntclo, besyde Parys in Fraunce, they mette and had vyctory of the Frensshmen, and of the Armynaks. And the duc rewarded rychely our Englyssh men, and they come ageyne. Not longe after the duc of Orleaunce sente ambassatours to kynge Harry to have helpe and socour ageynst the duc of Burgoyne. At whiche tyme the kynge made Thomas his sonne duc of Clarence, and Iohan his sone duc of Bedford, and his sonne Umfrey Duke of Gloucetre, Syre Thomas Beauford Erle of Dorsete. And the duc of Anmarle he made Duck of York. Thenne he ordeyned the Duc of Clarence, and the Erle of Dorsete, and Syre Iohan Cornewayle with a grete retenue to passe over in to Fraunce to helpe and strengthe the duck of Orleaunce, and thenne the lordes with theyr retenue sayled in to Normandye. And at theyr londynge mette ageynste hem the lord Hambo with seven thousand men of armes of Frensshmen, whiche were putte to flyght, and taken of hem seven honderd men of Armes of Frensshmen, and toke many prysonners. And soo they rode forth thurgh Fraunce, takyng castels and townes, and slewe moche peple of Frensshmen, and toke many prysonners, and soo passed forthe tyll they come to Bourdeux, there restyng them a whyle. And sette the countray in peas and reste, and thenne come hoome ageyne. In this yere the coyne was lyghted both of golde and of silver, and weyed lasse syn than it dyde before. In the xiiij. yere of the regne of kynge Harry ther were made galeys of warre, for the kynge purposed to have passed the see, and soo forth vnto Ierusalem, but God vysyted hym with grete and fervent infyrmytees, and on a day he was brought to saynt Edward shryn to make his offryng and to take his leve. And there beynge, he becam soo seeke that they were about hym supposed he shold have deyd there; & thenne they toke & bare hym in to the abbots place in to a fayre large chambre, and leyde hym vppon a paylet to fore the fyre. And whanne he was comen to hym self ageyn, and wyst not where he was, he axyd of his chamberlayn where he was, and how the chambre was callyd that he was inne. And he told hym that he was in thabbots place, and that the chambre was named Ierusalem. Thenne he sayde that his tyme was come, and that it was propheeyed of hym that he shold dye in Ierusalem, and there disposed hym to Godwarde and made hym redy, & sone after deyde in the same chambre. On whoos soule God have mercy. Amen. Thenne was the bodye caryed from thennes in a barge by water to Feversham, and from thennes to Caunterbury by londe, & there by saynt Thomas shryne in Cristys chirche he is buryed. Thus ended kyng Harry the fourth aboute mydlente Sonday, in the yere of oure Lorde a thousand four honderd and twelve.

Capitulum xiij.

After kynge Harry the fourth regned Harry his sonne, borne at Monmouthe in Walys. This Harry, whiche was the fyfth, after the Conquest, was a noble and wyse man. For after his faders dethe, whanne he hadde take vpon hym to be kynge, he chaunged al his condicions, and was sodenly chaunged, and lefte al his olde wyld maners, and charged alle them that had ben conversaunt in his wylde lyvynge that they shold avoyde his presence and come no more therynne. This man dyde many greete thynges in his dayes, and regned not fully ten yere. For in the tenth yere of his regne, and syx & thyrtty yere of his age, he deyde, and is buryed worshipfully at Westmynstre. In his fyrst yere, anone after he was crowned, whiche was the nynthe day of Apryll, he sente to the Frerys at Langley, where the body of kyng Rychard was buried, and lete the body take oute of therth ageyne, and dyde do bryng it to Westmynstre in a ryal chare coverd with black velvet and baners of dyvers armes about. And alle the horses in the chare were coverd with blac, and beten with dyverse armes, and many a torche brennyng by the chaar till they cam to Westmynstre. And there he lete make a ryall terment, and buryed hym by quene Anne his wyf, as his desyre was. Aboute whoos sepulcre ther stande foure grete tapers contynuelly brennynge. And one day in the weke perpetuelly he hath a Dirige with nyne lessons. And on the morne a masse, bothe by note solempnly, on whiche day is gyven also wekely in pens to poure peple enleven schyllynges & viij.*d.*, all ordeyned by this kyng vpon grete payne. And on the day of his annyversary is yerly gyven twenty pond in pens to pour peple. Also this kynge ordeyned by his lyf and founded the Chartrous at Shene. And the hous of Syon of saynt Brygyttes ordre, and dyde moche good to the newerke[1] of Westmynstre, where he lyeth buryed, and ordeyned thre masses perpetuelly to be songen over hym dayly, & also certayne lyghtes dayly to brenne atte hye masse and at evensong, & twenty pound to be deled in pens yerly at his annyversarye. Al this ordeyned he by his lyve besyde all his warre in Fraunce and other greete actes. On whoos sowle Ihesus have mercy. Amen.

Also in this fyrste yere Syre Iohan Oldecastell, lord Cobham, was take and dampned for an heretyk by al hooly chirche, and commyted to the Tour, and from thennes he brake prysonne and escaped. And anone after, he and his complyses conspyreden the kynges deth and his bretheren, and also the destruction of hooly chirche, For they hadde purposed to have assemblyd by nyght in saynt Gyles felde for tachyevyd

[1] Sic.

theyr evyll purpose. But blessyd be God, the kynge and lordes had knowleche of theyr entente, and toke the felde to fore them, and awayted on theyr comyng, and toke many preestes, clerkys, and other lewd men that were of theyr sect fro alle the partyes of Englond, wenyng to have founden theyr Capitayne there, Syre Iohan Oldecastel, but they were deceyved. For there were take many of them, and nyne and thyrtty were hanged on one day vppon a newe payr galowes new made fast by the same felde by the hye waye. And seven of the gretteste heretykes were brente hangyng on the galowes. And anone Syre Rogyer Acton knyght was taken, drawe, and hanged vppon the same galowes for the same cause. In the seconde yere of his regne byganne the generall counseylle at Counstaunce for the unyon of hooly Chirche, and for to depose theym that were scysmatykes, and to chose one very heede and undubytate pope. Also the same yere Iohan Claydon, skynnar, and Rychard Baker of Lombard strete, were brent in Smythfelde for heresye. Also this same yere by thadvys of hys counseyle, the kynge sente lettres vnto the kyng of Fraunce that he shold rendre & delyver to hym his enherytaunce whiche his predecessours had holden and had to fore hym, or ellys he wolde do his devoyre to geete it by the helpe of God and of his subgettys with the swerde. To whome it was answerd that the kyng was over yong and tendre of age to vse the warre ageynste hem, and in derysyon sente to hym a tonne full of tenyse balles to playe with. And whanne the kynge vnderstode his answer, anone he lete doo calle a counseylle, and there shewed them this mater. And there it was concluded by the sayd counseylle, and in especiall by the spirituelte, that he sholde goo and geete Normandye, and they wold helpe hym to theyr power. It is sayde that the spyritualte fered soore that yf he hadde not hadde to doo withoute the londe, that he wolde have laboured for to have taken fro the chirche the temporal possessions. And therfor they concluded amonge hem self that they shold stire hym for to goo and make warre over see in Fraunce for to conquere his ryghtful enherytaunce. And soo it was concluded and acorded that the kynge and lordes with al theyr power sholde mete at Southhampton at Lammasse next after. And soo the eyghtenth day of Iuyn the kyng roode thurgh London with all his hooste ryally toward Southhampton. And there beynge redy for to passe, and alle his lordes assembled, there was taken and arestyd for hye treasonne Syre Rychard, Erle of Cambrydge, brother to the duc of York, the lord Scrope, Tresorer of Englond, and Syre Thomas Gray, knyght, whiche sholde ymagyne the kynges deth. For whiche cause they were iuged and dampned to deth. And there the nyne and twentyest day of Iuyll they were byheded. And thenne the kyng and alle the lordes with theyr armee

toke the see with fyften honderd sayllys, and arryved at Kydkaws in Normandy. And fro thennes went and leyd syege to Harflete be lande and by water, and leyd his ordenaunce to the toune. And the twoo and twentyest daye of September the toune was gyven over to hym. Thenne ordeyned he there capytayne his vncle the Erle of Dorsete, and putte oute the Frensshmen, and stuffyd it with Englisshmen. Thenne the kynge sente in to Englond, and lete crye in every good towne that what crafty man wolde come theder for to dwelle and enhabyte the toune there sholde have hows and houshold to hym and his heyres for evermore. Thenne come theder many craftes men and enhabyte them there. The kynge seynge the toune wel stuffyd with vytaylle and men, he passyd forthe by lande toward Calays. Thenne the Frensshmen heerynge of his comyng brake the brydges, that he sholde not come over the ryver of Somme. Thenne the kynge wente soo fer vpward that he gate over and cam in to Pycardye. And thenne were the Frensshmen at Agyncourt, Rolandcourt and Blangy, wyth all the ryal power of Fraunce, excepte the duc of Burgoyne, whiche wolde not come theder, ne suffre his sonne the lord Chareyles to come theder. And whanne the kynge sawe that he myght not passe, he toke his felde with suche peple as he hadde, whiche were not passynge seven thousand fyghtynge men. And the mooste parte of hem were seeke of the flyxe, and the yemanry hadde theyr hosen terven or bounden bynethe the knee, havynge long iackys. But every man had a good bowe, a sheef arowys, and a swerd. Thenne he sette his felde, and sette the duc of York in the vauntward, and ordeyned in the nyght tofor the bataylle, that eche man sholde make a stake sharp on both thendes, and pytche it a slope in the grounde to fore hym. And soo on the morne he hadde his confessour, that made hem to saye a generál confession, and gaf them general absolusion. And thenne the kynge roode thurgh the felde and comforted hem, promysynge to them that he wold rather deye that day than yelde hym. And thenne every man toke good herte and courage, and soo abode the comynge of Frensshmen, whome they resseyved on her stakys, stomblynge and fallynge doune hors and man, in suche wyse that our men shotte on hem, and soo fought that thurgh the grace of God the vyctorye abode with the kyng, and the Frensshmen overthrowen, and were slayn of them enleven thousand and moo, and many grete lordes and gentyls take prysonners. And whanne the kynge hadde thus goten the felde, tydynges cam that ther was comynge a newe batayll of Frensshmen towardes hym. And thenne he dyde doo crye, and comaunded that every man shold slee his prysonners. And whanne the duc of Orleaunce herde that, and other greete lordes, they sente worde to the Frensshmen that yf they cam

on they shold be slayne. And thenne the Frensshmen for savacion of the prysonners lyves withdrewe them. And soo the kynge hadde and kepte the felde, and wanne the worshippe of the bataylle. And there were slayne in the felde thre Dukes, nyne Erlys, and Barons nyghe an honderde, and gentylmen in cote armoure xlv. C. And of the Englysshe partye, the Duc of Yorke and therle of Suffolke, and not twenty personnes moo, blessyd be God; the duc of Braban was taken alyve, but whan the kynge commaunded that every man shold slee his prysonner, he was slayne, on whos sowle and alle other God have mercy. Amen. Thus by the helpe of Almyghty God, the kynge of Englond with vij. M. Englysshmen won the felde vpon the Frensshmen, whiche were nombred moo than foure score thousand men, with all the ryall lordes of Fraunce except the kynge and Dolphyn. And whanne al was done, the kynge demaunded the herowdes the name of the next place to the felde. And they answerde, Agyncourt. Thenne sayd he, we wille that the bataylle be callyd and named the bataylle of Agyncourt. Thenne the kynge kepynge the felde with his hoost al nyghte after, on the morne departed towarde Caleys with his prysonners, that is to wete, the Duck of Orleaunce, the Duck of Borbon, the erles of Ewe and of Vendon, Burcicaught the marchal of Fraunce, with many other lordes and gentill men, whome he brought alle in to Englonde with hym, where he was receyved in every place worshipfully with alle the honoure, ioy, and solempnyte that myght be. And the foure and twentyeste daye of Novembre the kyng cam to London; and it is to wete that every Englisshman that had ben in that bataylle gate good prysoners or good iewellis. For the Frensshmen were richely and costlew arrayed, wherof oure peuple had good pyllage.

Capitulum 14.

In the thyrde yere of his regne the emperour of Almayne, Sygysmund, cam in to Englonde, and was receyved worshipfully at Dover by the duc of Gloucetre. And the cyte of London as the mayer, aldermen, and alle the craftes in the moost best wise resseyved hym at Blackheth the seventhe daye of Maye. And at saynt Thomas wateryng the kyng him self with his lordys mette hym and welcomed hym in the moost goodlyest wyse, and toke hym by the honde, and roode forthe with him thurgh the cite, and offrid at Powlis, and thenne rode forth vnto Westmestre, where the king lodged him in his owne palays, and there abode a grete whyle at the kinges coste.

Thenne come the Duc of Holonde in to Englonde, whome the king resseived worshipfully, and lodged him in the bisshop

of Elyes place in Holburne. Whanne the Emperour hadde seen the manere of this londe and the commodytees therof, he was cleete and chosen to be a broder of the garter, whiche he toke and receyved gladly, and ware it ever after. And thenne the kynge brought hym to Calays. And theder cam to hym the duk of Burgoyne for to doo hommage to themperour for the counte of Alst in Flaundres, whome the kynge receyved worshipfully. And thenne after themperour toke leve of the kynge, and departed, and soo eche toke leve of other, and the kyng retourned ageyne in to Englond. And the Emperour wente to Zierixsee in Zeland, and thenne into Dordrecht in Holonde.

In the fourthe yere the duc of Bedford, therle of Marche, and other certayne lordes, with theyr retenue, foughten on the see ageynst seven carryks of Gene, and fyfty other vessels, as hulkes, barges, galeys and galyetis. Of whome were taken thre grete caryks with the patrons, and drowned a grete hulke callyd the black hulk of Flaundres; and the remenaunt fledde aweye; and this was done on our Lady day Assumpcion. Also this yere at a parlement holden at Westmynstre was graunted to the kynge an hoole fyftenthe, and a dyme to mayntene with his warrys. And this yere the kynge sayled with al his retenewe over see in to Normandye ageyne, and landed on Lammas day at Toke; and there at landynge the kynge made eyght and fourty knyghtes. And anone the kynge wanne the toune of Toke and the castel withoute strooke; and he made Syre Iohan Kygley capytayne therof. And thenne the kynge sente therle marchal vnto Louers, whiche they sawted, and anon it was yolden, and therle brought the keyes to the kynge, and the kyng delyverd hym the keyes ageyne, and made hym capytayn of Louers. Thenne the kyng wente to Cane and besyeged it, and with asawte entryd the toune and gaté it; but the castel helde, and the capytayne desyred respyte of fourten dayes for tabyde rescows, and yf none cam than to delyvere it. The kynge graunted it hym, and vnder the same apooyntement was the cyte of Bayows, with other townes and fortresses vnto the nombre of fourtene: vppon the hyll to fore the castel of Cane the kynge pyght alle his tentes and pavyllons, whiche semed a toune as moche as Cane. And whanne tydynges cam that noo rescowes wolde come, at fourten dayes ende the capytayne delyverd the keyes and castel vnto the kynge. And in lyke wyse was Bayous with other fourtene townes delyverd also. Of whiche townes and castels the kynge made the duk of Clarence capytayne and governour. In Cane the kyng heelde his feste of saynt George, where he made fyftene knyghtes of the bathe. And thenne, er he departed, he gate Valeys, and sente the duc of Gloucetre to Chyrburgh for to geete it, whiche he besyeged, and lay long there. And thus the kyng sente to dyverse

townes, and gate dayly many townes, in soo moche that he gate alle the tounes, castels, pyles, strengthes, and abbeyes vnto Pount Alarche, and fro thens to Roan. Aboute this tyme contynued the counseylle of Constaunce, in whiche was ended the scysme of fourty yere, and ther was dampned the heresyes, and two heretyks, that is to wete, Iohan Hus and Iherome, were brente. And many good thynges institued and ordeyned; there was determyned decreed by the hooly synode that the counseyll lawfully gadred and assembled, representyng the chirche, hath vnyversal power immedyatly of Cryst. To whome every astate, aswel the papal astate as other, is bounden and holde to obey in tho thynges that toucheth the general reformacion of the chirche, that is to wete, in feyth and maners, as wel in the heede as in the membrys. Item, that from thenne forth on, sholde alwey the general counseyl be holden fro ten yere to ten yere. In this counseyll was chosen for to be pope Martyn, whiche was Martinus quintus, and was pope fourten yere. And there was the vnyon which was desyred long yhad for the defence of the feyth. This was a myghty Pope, above alle other ryche, and a man of grete iustyce; he helde the stretes and the weyes sewrly and in pees. He destroyed heretyks; he dyde many goode thynges by helpe of the noble Emperour Sygysmunde. And for to recover the Holy lond, he gadryd moche tresoure, but by deth that cam vpon hym, it was lette, and a lytel to fore his deth ordeyned a general counseyll to be assemblid in Basyle. In the fyfth yere of the regne of kynge Harry the fyfthe, Syre Iohan Oldcastel, lord Cobham, was taken and convycte by the clergye for heresye, and dampned to fore the temporal iuges for tresonne. And soo he was drawen and hanged in saynt Gyles felde vpon a newe payr of galows, with a cheyne of yron; and vnder the galewes was made a grete fyre whiche brente galowes and alle. In the syxthe yere the kyng besyged the cyte of Roan, whiche endured half yere and more, and atte laste the cyte beyng in grete famyne, putte oute moche peple, as women and children, whiche deyde for honger, moo than thyrtty thousand; & also seyng that noo rescowe cam, appoynted with the kyng, & gaf over the toun vnto hym, which he receyved. And anone after that Roan was goten, Deepe and many other tounes in Baas Normandye gaf them over withoute strook or syege, whanne they vnderstode that the kynge had goten Roan. Fasc. Temp. 87 b.

Capitulum xv.

Also this same yere hadde ben a pees made and sworne bytwene the duc of Burgoyne and the Dolphyn, whiche were sworn vpon our Lordes body, that they shold love and assyste eche other ageynst theyr enemyes. And after this, contrary to this othe, the Duc Iohan of Burgoyne was slayne and

pytously murthred in the presence of the Dolphyn. Wherfore the Frensshemen were gretely devyded and of veray necessyte labouryd to have a trayte with the kynge of Englond. For the kynge of Englond wanne dayly on them townes, castels, and fortresses. Also this same yere was Quene Iane arestyd and brought to the castel of Ledys in kente. And one Frere Randolf, a doctour of divynyte, her confessour, whiche afterward was slayne by the person of the Tour fallynge at wordes and debate. And afterward Quene Iane was delyverd. In the seuenth yere both kynges of Fraunce and of Englond were acorded, and kyng Harry was made heyr and regente of Fraunce, And wedded dame Kateryne the kynges doughter of Fraunce, atte Troyes in Champayne, on Trynyte Sondaye. And this was made by the meene of Phelyp, newely made duke of Burgoyne, whiche was sworne to kynge Harry, and for tavenge his faders deth he was become Englysshe. And thenne the kyng with his newe wyf wente to Parys, where he was ryally receyvyd. And from thens he with his lordes and the duc of Burgoyne and many other lordes of Fraunce leyd syege to dyuerse townes and castels that helde of the Dolphyns partye, wan them, but the toune of Melun helde long, for therin were good defendours. In the viij. yere the kyng and the quene cam ouer see, & londed on Candelmasse by the morow at Douer, & the xiiij. day of Feverer the kyng cam to London, & the xxj. day of the same moneth the quene cam, & the xxiiij. day of the same she was crowned at Westmestre. Also the same yere anon after Ester the kyng helde a parlement at Westmestre, at whiche parlement it was ordeyned that the gold in Englysshe coyne shold be weyed, and none resseyved but by weyght. And anone after Whitsontyde the king sayled to Caleys, and passyd soo forth in to Fraunce. And in Marche the two and twentyest daye byfore the king cam over, the duc of Clarence was slayne in Fraunce, and dyverse other lordes taken prysoners, as the erle of Huntyngdon, the erle of Somersete, with dyverse other. And al was bycause they wold not with hem Archers, but thought to have doo with the Frensshmen them self withoute them. And yet whanne he was slayn tharchers cam and rescowed the body of the duc, whiche they wold have caryed with them. God have mercy on his soule, he was a valyaunt man. And the same yere bytwene Crystemasse and Candelmasse the toune of Melun was yolden to the kynge. In the nynth yere on saynt Nycholas day in December was borne Harry the kynges first begoten sonne at Wyndesore, whoos godfaders at fontstone was Harry, bishop of Wynchestre, and Iohan duke of Bedforde, And the duchesse of Holond was godmoder; and Harry Chychely, archebisshop of Caunterbury, was godfader atte confermyng. And in the tenth yere the cyte of Mews in Brye was goten, whiche

had ben longe besyeged. And this same yere the Quene shipped at Hampton, and sayled over to the kynge in Fraunce, where she was worshipfully receyved of the kyng, and also of the kyng of Fraunce her fader, and of her moder: and thus kyng Harry wan faste in Fraunce, and helde grete astate, and sate at dyner at a grete feste in Parys crowned, and the quene also, whiche hadde not ben seen tofore; and alle peple resorted vntò his courte. But as to the kyng of Fraunce, he helde none astate ne rule, but was left almoost allone. Also this yere the whethercock was sette vpon Powlus steple at London.

And this yere in the moneth of August kynge Harry wexe seke at Boys de Vyncent. And whanne he sawe he sholde deye, he made his testament, and ordeygned many thynges nobly for his sowle, and devoutly resseyved alle the ryghtes of hooly chirche, in soo ferforth that whanne he was enoynted he sayd the seryvyse with the preeste; and whanne the vers of the Psalme, Miserere mei, Deus, &c., that was Benigne fac, Domine, in bona voluntate tua Syon, vt edificentur muri Ierusalem, was sayd, he bade tarye there, and sayd thus: "O "good Lord thou knowest that myn entent hath ben and yet "is yf I myght lyve to reedefye the wallys of Ierusalem," and thenne the preest proceded forth and made an ende. And anone after this mooste noble prynce, vyctoryous kynge, flour in his tyme of Crysten chyvalrye, whome all the world doubted, gaf his soule into the handes of God, & deyde & made an ende of his naturel lyf atte sayd Boys de Vyncent besyde Parys, the syx and thryttyest yere of his age: on whoos soule god have mercy, Amen. Thenne was the bodye enbamed and cered and leyde in a ryall chare, and an ymage lyke vnto hym was leyde vpon the corps open, with dyvers baners and horse covered rychely with tharmes of Englonde and Fraunce, And also the old armes, as saynt Edwardys, saynt Edmonds, and other; with grete multitude of torchys; with whome wente the kyng of Scotlande and many other lordes, whiche accompanyed the body till it cam vnto Westmynstre by London in Englonde. And in every toune by the waye he hadde solempnly his dirige atte even and masse on the morn, and moche Almesse was gyven to poure people. And the seventhe daye of Novembre after the corps was brought thurgh London with grete reverence and solempnyte vnto the monasterye of Westmynstre, where as he nowe resteth. On whoos tombe is a ryche ymage lyke hym self of sylver and gylt, where he is dayly remembrid and praid for. On whoos sowle, and all Crysten, God have mercy. Amen.

Capitulum decimum sextum.

Here is to be noted that this kynge Harry the fyfthe was a moche noble prynce after he was kyng and crowned. How be

it to fore in his yongthe he hadde ben wylde, reckeles, and spared nothyng of his lustes ne desyres, but accomplisshid them after his lykynge. But as soone as he was crowned, enoynted, and sacred, anone sodaynly he was chaunged into a new man, and set al his entente to lyve vertuously in mayntenynge of hooly chirche, destroyng of heretykes, kepynge iustyce, and defendynge his royaumme and subgettis. And for as moche as his fader hadd deposyd by his labour the good kynge Rychard, and pytously made hym to deye, and for thoffence doo to hym ageynst his lyegeaunce he hadde sente to Rome to be assoylled therof. For whiche offence the pope oure hooly fader enioyned hym to make hym be prayd fore perpetuelly; and lyke as he had done to be taken from hym his naturell lyf, therfore he sholde doo founde four tapers to brenne perpetuelly aboute his body; that for the extynction of his bodyly lyf his sowle may ever be remembryd, and lyve in heven in spyrytuel lyf. And also that he sholde every weke on the daye as it cometh aboute of his dethe have a solempne masse of requiem, and on the even to fore a dirige with nyne lessons, and a dole to pour people alwaye on that daye of enleven schyllynges eyght pens, to be delyd penymele. And ones in the yere at his annyversarye his terment to be holden in the moost honest wyse, and to be deled that day twenty li in pens to pour peple, and to every monke to have twenty schillynges: whiche alle these thynges performed this noble kyng for his fader. For kynge Harry the fourth his fader performed hit not duryng his lyf, whome, as it is sayde God touchyd, and was a lepre er he deyde. Also thenne this noble Prynce leete doo calle alle thabbottes and pryours of saynt Benets ordre in Englond, & had them in the chapytre hous of Westmynstre for the reformacion of thordre, wherynne he had comynycacion, and also with Bisshoppes & men of the spyritualte, in soo ferforth that they doubted soore that he wold have had the temporaltees oute of their handes; wherfor by thadvis, labour and procuring of the spyrytualte encouraged the kynge to chalenge Normandy and his ryght that he hadde in Fraunce, to thende to sette hym a werke there that he sholde not seeke occasions to entre in to suche maters. And soo alle his lyf after he labouryd in the warrys in conquerynge grete parte of the royamme of Fraunce, that by thagrement of the kynge Charlys hadde alle the governaunce of the Royamme of Fraunce, And was proclamed regent and heyr of Fraunce. And soo notwithstandyng alle this grete warre that he had, yet he remembryd his soule, and also that he was mortal and must deye. For whiche he ordeyned by his lyf the place of his sepulcre where he is now buryed, and every day thre masses perpetuelly to be songen in a fayr chapel over his sepulcre. Of whiche the myddel masse and the fyrst and the laste masse

shal be as it is assygned by hym, as it appereth by thyse verses folowynge :—

Henrici misse quinti sunt hic tabulate,
Que successive sunt per monachos celebrate.

Die dominica.—Prima sit assumpte de festo virginis alme
Poscit postremam Cristus de morte resurgens.

Feria ij.—Prima salutate de festo virginis extat.
Nunciat angelicis laudem postrema choreis.

Feria 3.—Esse Deum natum de virgine prima fatetur,
Commemorat natam sic vltima missa Mariam.

Feria 4.—Prima celebretur ad honorem neupmatis almi,
Ultima conceptam denunciat esse Mariam.

Feria 5.—Semper prima coli debet de corpore Cristi,
Ultima sit fata de virgine purificata.

Feria 6.—Condecet vt prima celebretur de cruce sancta,
Atque salutate fiet postrema Marie.

Sabbato.—Omnes ad sanctos est prima colenda supernos,
Vltima de requie pro defunctis petit esse :
Semper erit media de proprietate Dei.

And yet this noble kyng Harry the fyfthe founded two howses of relygion : One callyd Syon, besyde Braynford, of the ordre of saynt Brygytte, both of men and wymmen ; And on that other syde of the ryver of Tamyse an hows of monkes of the Chartrehous, in whiche two places he is contynuelly prayd fore nyghte and day. For ever whanne they of Syon rest they of the Chartrehous done theyr servyce ; And in lyke wyse whanne they of the Chartrous rest, the other goon to : and by the ryngyng of the bellys of eyther place, eche knoweth whanne they ende theyr servyse : whiche ben nobly endowed ; and done dayely there grete almesse dedes, as in the Chartrehous certayne children ben founde to scole, and at Syon certayne almesse gyven dayly. And yet besyde all this he hath founded a recluse, whiche shal be alwey a preeste, to praye for hym by the sayde Chartrehous, whiche preeste is wel & sufficiently endowed for hym and a servaunt. Loo here maye all prynces take ensample by this noble prynce, that regnynge so lytel tyme, not fully x. yere, dyd so many noble actes, as wel for his sowle to be perpetuelly remembryd & prayde fore, as in his wordly conquestys ; and he beynge in his moost lusty age despysed and eschewyd synne, and was vertuous and a grete iustyser, in soo moche that alle the prynces of Crystendom dradde hym, & also of hethenes. And had determyned in hym self, yf God wolde have sparyd hym, that he wold have warryd agayne the Sarasyns : and for to knowe the ayde of other prynces, & all the passages in

that iourney, he sent a knyght of Henawd, named syr Hugh de Lanoye, vnto Jerusalem, but er he retorned he deyd at Boys du Vincent in the xxxvj. yere of his age : on whos soule God have mercy.

How kyng Harry the syxth regned, beynge a childe not one yere of age, and of the bataylle of Vernoyl in Perche.

Capitulum 17.

After kyng Harry the fyfthe regned Harry his sonne, a childe, and not fully a yere old, whoos regne began the fyrst daye of September the yere of our Lord a thousand four honderd and two and twenty. This kyng beyng in his Cradel, was moche doubted and dradde by cause of the grete Conquest of his fader, and also the wysedome and guydynge of his vncles, the duck of Bedford and the duc of Gloucetre. This yere the xxj. day of Octobre ; deyde Charles kyng of Fraunce, and lyeth buryed at saynt Denys ; and thenne was the duc of Bedford made regent of Fraunce, and the duc of Gloucetre was made protectour and defendour of Englond. And the fyrst day of Marche after was Syr Wylliam Tayllour, preest, degraded of his preesthode, and on the morne after he was brente in Smythfeld for heresye. This yere Syre Iames Styward, kynge of Scottes, maryed dame Iane, the duchesse doughter of Clarence, of her fyrst husbond therle of Somersete, at saynt Mary Overays. Also this yere, the sevententh day of August, was the bataylle of Vernayl in Perche, bytwene the duc of Bedford, regent of Fraunce, and the Duc of Alaunson, whiche was a greete bataylle. The duc of Bedford hadde on his syde with hym therle of Salesbury Mountagu, the lord Talbotte, and alle the power that they coude make in Normandy, the garnysons kepte, and also many Capytayns with moche peple of the duc of Burgoyns. And on that other syde was the Duc of Alaunson, the duc of Turon that was therle Douglas, therle of Bougham, with many lerdes of Fraunce, and greete companye of Scottes and Armynakes. And thenne therle Douglas callyd the duc of Bedford Iohan with the leden swerde, and he sente hym worde ageyne that he shold fynde that daye that his swerde was of stele. And soo the bataylle ioyned on bothe sydes, and fought longe, that ther wyst no man who shold have the better a grete whyle ; but at last, as God wold, the vyctory fyll on thenglysshe partye. For ther were slayne therle Douglas, whiche a lytel byfore was made duc of Turone, therle of Bowhayn, therle of Almarre, the erle of Tonnar, therle of Vauntedore, and the vysecounte of Nerbonne, whiche was one of them that slewe duk Iohan of Burgoyne knelyng to fore the Dolphyn, and many mo vnto the nombre of ten thousand and moo. And ther was taken pry-

sonner the duc of Alaunson and many other lordes and gentyls of Fraunce; but Scottys that day were slayne doune ryght the substaunce of them alle. In the thyrde yere of kyng Harry the syxth the duke of Gloucetre maryed the duchesse of Holond, and wente over see with her in to Henawde for to take possession of his wyves enherytaunce, where he was honorably receyvyd, and taken for lord of the lond. But soone after he was fayne to retorne hoome ageyne, and lefte his wyf and his tresour that he brought with hym in a toune callyd Mounse in Henawd, whiche promysed for to be trewe to hym. Not withstandyng they delivered the lady to the duc of Burgoyne, whiche sente her to Gaunt. And from thens she escaped in a mannes arraye, and came into Zeland to a toune of her owne callyd Zierixee; And from thens she wente to a toune in Holond called the Ghowde, and there she was stronge ynough, and wythstode the sayd Duc of Burgoyne, and sone after this the duc of Gloucetre sente over in to Zeland the lord Fytzwater, with certayne men of warre and archers, for to helpe and socour the sayd duchesse of Holond, whiche londed at a place in Zeland callid Brewers haven, where the lordes of the countre cam doune and fought with hym, and in conclusion was fayne to withdrawe hym and his meyne to the see ageyne, but yet he slewe and hurte divers lordes and moche peple of the countreye, and soo retorned home ageyne and prevayled noo thyng. Also this same yere therle of Salysbury, therle of Suffolke, the lord Wylby and the lord Scalys, with theyr retenue, leyd syege to the Cyte of Mauns, the whiche Cyte was yolden to them in shorte tyme, with many other stronge townes and Castels to the nombre of syx and thyrtty. This tyme all Normandye and a grete parte of Fraunce vnto Orleaunce was vnder thobeysaunce of the kynge of Englond. And alle the remenaunt of Fraunce was in grete trybulacion and meschyef.

Capitulum xviii.

In the fourth yere, the same nyght that the mayer of London Johan Coventre had taken his charge, was a grete watche in London, for affraye that was bytwene the bisshop of Wynchestre and the duc of Gloucetre, protectour. For the mayer with the peple of the cyte wold abyde by the duc of Gloucetre as protectoure of the royamme, but by labour of lordes that wente bytwene, and in especial by the labour of the prynce of Portyngale, ther was appoyntement taken that there was no harme don. And after the batayll of Vernoyll in Perche, the Duc of Bedforde cam over in to Englond. And on Whitsondaye this yere, at Leyceter, he dubbed kynge Harry knyght; And forthwith the sayd Harry dubbed alle these knyghtes whoos

names folowe, that is to wete : Rychard duc of York, also the sone and heyr of the duc of Norfolk, therle of Oxenford, therle of Westmerlond, the sone and heyr of therle of Northumberlond, the sonne and heyr of therle of Urmond, The lord Roes, Syr Iames Buteler, the lord Matravas, Syr Harry Gray of Tankervyle, Syr William Nevyl lorde Fauconbrydge, Syr George Nevyl lord Latymer, the lord Wellys, the lord Barkley, the sonne and heyr of the lord Talbot, Sir Rauf Gray of Werk, Syr Robert Veer, Syr Rychard Gray, Sir Edmond Hongerford, Syr Robert Wynkefeld, Syre Iohan Botellr, Syr Raynold Cobham, Syr Iohan Passhely, Syre Thomas Tunstal, Syr Iohan Chydyock, Syre Rauf Langford, Syre William Drury, Syre William Apthomas, Syre Rychard Carbonel, Syre Rychard Wydenvylle, Sire Iohan Shyrdelowe, Syr Nychol Blonket, Syre Rauf Ratteclyf, Syre Edmond Trafford, Syre William Cheyne, Syre William Babyngton, Syre Iohan Iune, Syr Gilbert Beauchamp. Item, In the fyfthe yere the duc of Bedford with the duchesse his wyf wente over see to Calays, and a lytel to fore wente over Harry Bisshop of Wynchestre. And on our Lady day Annunciation in our lady chirche at Calays, the Bisshop of Wynchestre, whanne he had songe masse, was made Cardynal. And he knelyng to fore the hye auter, the duc of Bedford sette the hatte on his heede, and ther were his bulles redde, as wel of his charge as the reioysyng of his benefyces spirituel and temporel. Also this yere was greete habundaunce of rayn, that the substance of heye and corne was destroyed, for it rayned almoost every other day. This yere the goode erle of Salesbury, Syre Thomas Montagu, leyd syege vnto Orleaunce. At which syege he was slayne with a gonne whiche cam oute of the toune. On whoos sowle God have mercy, Amen. For syth that he was slayne Englisshmen never gate ne prevayled in Fraunce, but ever after beganne to lese lytel and lytel tyl all was loste. Also this same yere a Breton murthred a good wydowe in her bedde withoute Algate, whiche wedowe fonde hym for almesse, and he bare awey al that she hadde. And after this he toke the gryth of hooly chirche at seynt Georges in Southwerke, and there toke the crosse and forswore this lond. And as he wente it happened that he cam by the place where he dyde this cursyd dede in the subarbys of London. And the women of the same paryssh cam oute with stones & canel dunge, and slewe and made an ende of hym, notwithstandynge the conestables and many other men beyng there present to kepe hym, for ther were many women, and had noo pyte. Also this yere the duck of Norfolk, with many gentilmen and yomen, toke his barge the eyght day of Novembre, at saynt Mary Overayes, for to have goon thurgh London brydge; and thurgh mysguydyng of the barge it ouerthrewe on the pyles, and many men drowned; but the duc hym self with twoo or thre leepe vpon

the pyles, and soo were saved with helpe of men that were above the brydge, which cast doune Ropes by which they saved hem self. This yere, on saynt Leonards daye. kynge Harry, beynge seven yere of age, was crowned at Westmynstre; at whos Coronacion were made syx and thyrtty knyghtes. This yere, on saynt Georges day, he passyd over see to Calays toward Fraunce. Aboute this tyme and afore, the Royamme beynge in grete myserye and trybulacion, the Dolphyn with his partye beganne to make warre and gete certayne places and make destrusses vpon Englysshmen, by the mene of his capytaynes, that is to wete, La Heer and Poton de Sentraylles, And in especial a mayde which they named La Pucelle de Dieu: this mayde roode lyke a man, and was a valyaunt capytayne among them, and toke vpon her many and grete enterpryses, in soo moche that they had a byleve to have recoverd al theyr losses by her. Notwithstandyng at last, after many grete feates, by helpe and prowesse of sir Iohan Luxemburgh, whiche was a noble capytayne of the dukes of Burgoyne, and many Englysshmen, Pycardys and Bourgoygnons whiche were of oure partye, byfore the toune of Compyne, the thre and twentyest daye of Maye, the sayd Pucelle was taken in the felde armed lyke a man, and many other capytayns with her, and all brought to Roan, and there she was putte in prysonne, and there she was iuged by the lawe to be brente. And then she sayd that she was with childe, wherby she was respyted a whyle; but in conclusion it was founde that she was not with childe, and thenne she was brente in Roan. And the other capytaynes were putte to raunsonne, and entreated as men of warre ben acustommed. This same yere, aboute Candelmasse, Rychard Hounden, a wolle packer, was dampned for an heretyke, and brente at Tourhylle. And aboute Midlente Syr Thomas Baggely, preeste and vycary of Mavenden in Estsex besydes Walden, was disgrated and dampned for an heretyke, and brente in Smythfeld. Also in this yere, while the kyng was in Fraunce, ther were many heretykes and Lollars that hadde purposed to have made a rysyng, and caste bylles in many places: but blessyd be God, the capytayne of hem was taken, whoos name was William Mandevyle, a wevar of Abendon and bayly of the same toune, whiche named hym self Iak Sharp of Wygmorysland in Wales. And afterward he was byheded at Abendon, in the Whitson weke, on the Tewisdaye.

This yere, the seuenth day of December, kynge Harry the syxthe was crowned kyng of Fraunce at Parys, in the chirche of our Lady, with grete solempnyte, there beyng present the Cardynal of Englonde, the Duc of Bedforde, and many other lordes of Fraunce and of Englonde. And after this Coronacion and grete feste holden at Parys, the kyng retourned from thens to Roan, and soo towarde Calays, And the

nynthe daye of Feverer londed at Douer, whome alle the Comyns of Kente mette at Beramdoun, bytwene Caunterbury and Dover, alle in reede hoodes, and soo cam forth till he cam to Blackheth, where he was mette with the mayer Iohan Wellys with alle the craftys of London cladde alle in whyte. And soo they brought hym to London the one and twentyest daye of the same moneth. This yere was a restraynt of the wollys at Calays made by the sowdyours, by cause they were not payed of their wages, wherfor the duc of Bedford, regente of Fraunce, being thenne capitayn, cam to Caleis the Tewsday in the Esterweke, & on the morne after many sowdiours of the toun were arested and putte in warde. And in the same weke he roode to Terewyn, And by the mene of the bisshop of Terewyn he wedded therles doughter of saint Poul, and cam ageine to Caleis. And the enlevenst daye of Iuin, on saint Barnabes daye, there were foure soudyours of Calays, that were chyef causers of the restraynt, byheded, that is to wete, Iohan Maddeley, Iohan Landaye, Thomas Palmer, and Thomas Talbot, And an cx. banysshed the toune that same tyme, And byfore were banysshed sixe score soudyours. And on mydsomer even after cam the lord Regent and his wyf to London.

Capitulum 19.

Fasc. Temp., 88 a. ABOUTE this tyme Pope Martyn deyde, and after hym Eugenye the fourthe was pope. This was pesybly chosen in Rome by the Cardynals, and was very and indubytate pope. But shortly after he was putte and expulsed oute of Rome in such wyse that he was fayne to flee naked. In this tyme was the counseylle of Basyle, to whiche counseylle he was cyted to come, and bycause he cam not they deposed hym ; but he rought not ne sette not therby, but gate the cyte of Rome, and abode stil pope seventene yere. This yere, aboute Whitsontyde, the Heretyks of Praghe were destroyed For at two iourneyes there were destroyed of them moo than two and twenty thousande with her capytayns, that is to wete, Procapius, Saplico, and Lupus presbiter. Also ther was taken alyve mayster Pyers, clerk, an Englysshman and heretyke. Also this same yere was a grete froste and a stronge duryng enleven wekes, for it beganne on saynt Katheryns even, and lasted vnto saynt Scolasticais day in Feverer, in which tyme the vyntage that cam from Bordeux came over Shoters hylle. This yere was the counseyl of Aras, and a greete traytye bytwene the kyng of Englonde and the Frensshe kynge. Where was assemblyd grete many of lordes of bothe partyes. At whiche counseylle was offryd to the kyng of Englond many grete thynges by the moyen of a legate that cam from Rome, which was Cardynal of saynt Crosse, which offres were refused by the Cardynal of

Englond and other lordes that were there for the kyng; wherfor the duke of Burgoyne, whiche had ben longe Englysshe, worne forsoke oure partye, and retourned Frensshe by the meene of the same legate, and made a pees with the Frenssh kyng, receyvynge of the kynge, for recompensynge of his faders deth, the counte of Pontieu, the lordship of Macon, with moche other, as is specyfyed in the sayd trayttye. And soo oure ambassadours cam hoome ageyne in werse caas than they wente. For they lost there the duc of Burgoyne, whiche had ben with his Bourgonyons and Pycardes a syngler helpe in all the conquest of Normandy and of Fraunce. This same yere was a grete batayll on the see bytweene the Ieneweys and the kyng of Aragon, of whiche bataylle the Ieneweys had the vyctorye. For they toke the kyng of Aragon, the kyng of Nauern, and the greete mayster of saynt Iames in Galyse, with thre honderd knyghtes and squyers, and moche other peple. And this was on saynt Domynyks day. This yere were seen thre sonnes attones, and anone folowyd the threfolde rule and gouernaunce in the chirche, that is to wete, of Eugenye, of the counseyle, and of the neutralyte. Also this same yere, 1431, was a passyng grete wynde, by whiche steples, howses, and trees were overthrowen. Aboute this tyme was an hooly mayde in Holond callyd Lydwith, whiche lyved long only by myracle, not etyng ony mete. This yere the duc of Burgoyne byganne his ordre at Lyle of the Golden Flyes, and ordeygned certayne knyghtes of thordre, and made statutes and ordenaunces moche acordynge vnto thordre of the Garter. Also this yere the Frensshmen hadde enterprysed to have stolen Calays in the fysshyng tyme. For many bootys of Fraunce had sauf conduytes to come to Calays for to take heeryng. And the soudyours of the toune hadde a customme to come to the chirche and leve theyr stavys stondynge at the chirche dore, whiche stavys the Frensshmen, which were arayd lyke fysshers, hadde purposed to have taken soo theyr wepen, and wynne the toune; but one of them laye with a comyn woman the nyght byfore, and told to her theyr counseylle; And she on the morne told the lyeutenaunt, whiche forthwith commanded that every man shold kepe his wepen in his hond, sacryng tyme and other. And whanne they appereeyved this, that they were myspoynted, they sayled strayte to Depe, and stale and toke that toune. And on New yers euen after they toke Harflete. And thus Englysshmen byganne to lose a lytel and a lytel in Normandye.

Capitulum vicesimum.[1]

This yere was a grete noyse thurgh al Englond, how the duck of Burgoyne wolde come and besyege Calays: wherfor

[1] Sic.

the Erle of Mortayn, with his armye that he hadde for to have goone with in to Fraunce, was countremaunded, and charged that he shold go to Calais, whiche was at that tyme wel vitailled and manned. For sire Iohan Ratclif was lyeutenant of the kynge in that toune, and the baron of Dudeley lyeutenaunt of the castel; and the nynthe daye of Iuill the duke of Burgoyne with al the power of Flaundres and moch other peple cam before Calais, and sette his syege aboute the toune; and every toune of Flaundres had their tentes by them self. And this syege endured thre wekes. In the mene while the duc of Gloucetre, beyng protectour of Englond, toke the moost parte of the lordes of Englond, and wente over the see to Calays for to rescowe the toun, or to fyghte with the duke and his hoost, yf they wolde have byden. This tyme London and every good toune of Englond sente ouer see to this rescowe certayne peple well arayd, of the best and chosen men for the warre. And the second day of August the sayd duke of Gloucetre areyved at Calays with alle his armye and fyve shippes and moo. And the duke and alle his hoost that laye in the syege, as sone as they espyed the sayllys in the see, before they approched Calays haven, sodaynly in a mornynge departed fro the syege, levyng behynde them moche stuffe & vytalle, and fledde in to Flaundres and Pycardye, and in lyke wyse dyde the syege that laye to fore Guynes. Where as they of Guynes toke the grete gonne of brasse whiche was called dygeon, and many other grete gonnes and serpentyns. And thenne whanne the duke of Gloucetre was arryved with all his hoost he wente in to Flaundres, and was therynne enleven dayes, and dyde but lytel harme, excepte he brente two fayr vyllages, Poperyng and Belle, and other howses, whiche were of no strengthe, and soo retourned home ageyne. Also this same yere the kyng of Scottys besyeged Rokesburgh with moche peple, but sir Rauf Gray departed fro the castel, and ordeyned for rescows; but as sone as the kynge vnderstode his departyng, he sodaynly brake his syege, and wente his weye, levenge moche ordenaunce behynde hym, where he gate no worship. This yere, the second daye of Ianyver, quene Katheryn, whiche was the kynges moder, and wyf to kynge Harry the fyfthe, deyde and departed oute of thys worlde, and there lyeth buryed worshipfully in oure Lady chapel. Also this same yere, the fourtenthe daye of Ianyver, fyl doune the gate with a toure on hit on London brydge, toward Southwerk, with twoo arches and all that stode theron. This yere was a grete trayttye holden bytwene Gravenyng and Calays, bytwene the kyng and ducke of Burgoyne; where for the kyng was the Cardynall of Englond, the duck of Norfolke, & many other lordes; and for the ducke was the Duchesse, havyng full power of her lord as regent and ladye of his londes; where was taken by thadvys

of bothe partyes an abstynence of warre for a certeyne tyme in the name of the Duchesse, and not of the duke, by cause he hadde goon from his oth and lygeaunce that he had made to kyng Harry; therfor the kynge never wolde wryte ne appoynte ne have to do with hym after, but all in the duchesse name. Also this yere quene Iane deyde, the second daye of Iuyll, whiche had ben kynge Harry the fourthys wyf, and was caryed fro Bermondesey vnto Caunterbury, where she lyeth buryed by kynge Harry the fourth her husbond. This yere deyde alle the lyons in the Toure of London, the whiche hadde not be seen in many yeres byfore oute of mynde.

Capitulum 21.

In the xvj. yere of kyng Harry deyde Sygysmund Emperour of Almayne and knyght of the garter, whose terment the kynge kepte at Pawlys in London ryally, where was made a ryal herse, and the kynge in his astate cladd in blewe was at even at dirige, and on the morne at masse. And after hym was elect & chosen Albert duke of Ostryche, whiche had wedded Sygysmundus doughter, for to be Emperour. This was taken and resseyved to be kyng of Boheme and Ungary by cause of hys wyf that was Sigismundus doughter, whiche lefte after hym none other heyer. This Albert was emperour but one yere, for he was poysond, and soo he deyde; somme saye he deyde of a flyxe, but he was a vertuouse man and pytefulle, soo moche that alle the peple that knewe hym sayde that the worlde was not worthy to have hys presence. In this yere was the kyng of Scottys murthred in his chambre by nyght pytously, whiche kynge had be prysoner xv. yere in Englonde; And they that slewe hym were taken afterward & had cruel iustyce: this yere one Owayn, a squyer of Wales, a man of lowe byrthe, whiche had many a day to fore secretely weddyd quene Katheryn, & had by her thre sones & a doughter, was taken and commaunded to Newgate to prysonne by my lord of Gloucetre, protectour of the royame. And this yere he brake pryson by the mene of a preest that was hys chappelayn: and after he was taken ageyne by my lord Bemond, and brought ageyne to Newegate: whiche afterward was delyverd at large, and one of his sones afterward was made Erle of Rychemond, & another erle of Penbroke, and the thyrde a monk of Westmynstre; whiche monke deyde sone after. This yere also on newyersday at Baynardys castel fyl doune a stak of wode sodeynly at after none, and slewe thre men meschyvously, and foule hurte other. Also at Bedford on a shyreday were eyghten men murthred withoute stroke by fallynge doune of a steyr, as they cam oute of theyr comyn halle, and many foule hurte. In the eyghtenth yere sir Rychard Beauchamp, the good erle of

Fasc. Temp., 88 b.

Warwyck, deyde at Roan, he beynge that tyme lyeutenaunt of the kyng in Normandye; and from thennes his bodye was brought to Warwyk, where he lyeth worshipfully in a newe chapel on the south syde of the quyre. Also this yere was a grete derthe of Corne in al Englond, for a busshel of whete was worth fourty pens in many places of Englond, & yet men myght not have ynough; wherfor Steven Broun, that tyme mayer of London, sente into Pruse, and brought in to London certayne shippes laden with rye, which easyd and dyd moche good to the peple. For corne was so skarce in Englond that in some places of Englond poure peple made hem brede of fern rotes. This yere the general counseyle of Basyle deposed pope Eugenye; And they chese Felyx, whiche was duc of Savoye. And thenne byganne the scysme whiche endured vnto the yere of our lord MCCCC. & xlviij. This Felyx was a devoute prynce, and sawe the sones of his sones, and after lyved a devoute and hooly lyf, and was chosen pope by the counseylle of Basyle, Eugenye deposed, and soo the scysme was long tyme; and this Felyx had not moche obedyence bycause of the neutralyte; for the moost parte and wel nygh al Cristendom obeyed & reputed Eugenye for veray pope. God knoweth who was the veray pope of them both, for both occupyed durynge the lyf of Eugenye.

Fasc. Temp., 88 b.

This yere Syr Rychard Wiche, vycary of Hermettesworth, was degrated of his prysthode at Powlys, and brente at Toure hylle as for an heretyk on saynt Botolphus day. How well at his deth he deyde a good Cristen man, wherfore after his dethe moche people cam to the place where he hadde be brente, and offryd and made a heepe of stones, and sette vp a crosse of tree, and helde hym for a saynt, till the mayer and shreves, by commaundement of the kynge and bisshops, destroyed it, and made there a donghyll. Also this same yere the shreves of London fette oute of Saynt Martyns the graunte the sayntuarye fyve personnes, whiche afterward were restored ageyne to the sayntuarye by the kynges Iustyces. After Alberte, the thyrde Frederyk was chosen Emperour. This Frederyk duke of Ostryche was longe Emperour, and differyd for to be crowned at Rome by cause of the scysme, but after that vnyon was had, he was crowned with Imperyal dyademe, with grete glorye and tryumphe, of pope Nycholas the fourth. This was a man pesyble, quyete and of synguler pacyence, not hatyng the chirche: he wedded the kyng of Portyngales doughter.

Fasc. Temp., 89 a.

Capitulum 22.

In this yere dame Elyanore Cobham, duchesse of Gloucetre, was arestyd for certayne poyntes of treasonne leyd ageyn her; wherupon she was examyned in saynt Stevens chapel at West-

mynstre byfore tharchebisshop of Caunterbury, and ther she was enioyned to open penaunce, for to goo thurgh Chepe, berynge a taper in her honde, and after to perpetuel prison in to the Ile of Man, vnder the kepynge of sir Thomas Stanley. Also that same tyme was arestyd mayster Thomas Southwel, a chanon of Westmynstre, mayster Iohn Hum, a chappellayn of the sayd ladyes, mayster Rogyer Bolyngbroke, a Clerk vsynge nygromancye, and one Margery Iurdemayn, callyd the wytche of Eye, besyde Westmynstre. These were arestyd as for beyng of counseyll with the sayd duchesse of Gloucetre. And as for mayster Thomas Southwel, he deyde in the toure the nyght before he shold have be reyned on the morne. For soo he sayd hym self, that he shold dye in his bedde, and not by Iustyce. And in the yere twenty mayster Iohan Hum and mayster Rogyer Bolyngbroke were brought to the guydhalle in London, and ther byfore the mayer, the lordes, and chyef Iustyce of Englond were rayned and dampned to be drawen, hanged, and quartred; but maystre Iohn Hum had his chartre and was pardoned by the kynge; but mayster Rogyer was drawen to Tyburne, where he confessyd that he deyde gyltles, and never had trespaced in that he deyd fore. Notwithstandyng he was hanged, heded and quartred; on whos soule God have mercy. And Margery Iurdemayne was brente in Smythfeld. Also this yere the lord Talbotte had leyde syege to Dyepe, but the Dolphyn rescowed it, and wan the bastyle that Englysshmen had made. Also this yere was a greete effraye in Fletestrete by nyghtes tyme, bytwene men of Courte and men of London, and dyverse men slayne and somme hurte; and one Herbotel was chyef cause of the mysgovernaunce and effraye. Also this yere, at the chesyng of the mayer of London, the comons named Robert Clopton and Rawlyn Holond, Taylour. And the Aldermen toke Robert Clopton & brought hym at the ryght honde of the mayer, as the customme is. And thenne certeyne tayllours and hande crafty men cryed, "nay, naye, " not this man, but Rawlyn Holonde:" wherfore the mayer that was Padysley sente tho that cryed to Newgate, where they abode a grete while, and were punysshed. In this yere were dyverse ambassadours sente in to Guyan for a maryage for the kynge for the erles doughter of Armynak, whiche was concluded, but by the mene of therle of Suffolk it was lette & put a part. And after this the sayd erle of Suffolk wente ouer the see in to Fraunce, and there treated the maryage bytwene the kynge of Englond and Margarete, the kynges doughter of Secyle and of Ierusalem. And the next yere it was concluded fully that maryage, by whiche maryage the kynge shold delyver to her fader the Duchye of Angeo and the Erldome of Mayne, whiche was the keye of Normandye. Thenne departed the Erle of Suffolk with his wyf and dyverse

lordes and knyghtes, in the moost ryal astate that myghte be, oute of Englonde, with newe chares and palfrayes, whiche wente thurgh Chepe, and soo wente over the see, and resseyved her, and syth brought her in the Lente after to Hampton, where she landed, and was ryally resseyved. And on Candelmasse even byfore, by a greete tempeste of thonder and lyghtnyng at after none, Paulus steple was sette a fyre on the myddes of the shaft in the tymbre, whiche was quenchyd by force of labour, and specially by the labour of the morowe masse preeste of the Bowe in Chepe, whiche was thought inpossyble, sauf only the grace of God. This yere was the erle of Stafford made and create Duke of Bokyngham; the Erle of Warwyck, Duk of Warwyck; therle of Dorsete, marquys of Dorsete; and the erle of Suffolk was made marquys of Suffolk.

Capitulum 23.

In this yere kyng Harry maryed at Southwerke quene Margrete; And she cam to London the eyghtenth day of Maye; And by the waye alle the lordes of Englonde resseyved her worshipfully in dyverse places, and in especial the duc of Gloucetre. And on Blackheth the mayer, Aldermen, and alle the craftes, in blewe gownes browdred with the devyse of his crafte that they myght be byknowen, mette wyth her with reede hoodes, and brought her to London, where were dyverse pagentis and countenaunces of dyverse historyes shewyd in dyverse places of the cyte ryally and costlewe. And the thyrttyest daye of Maye the sayd quene was crowned at Westmynstre. And there was Iustys thre dayes duryng within the sayntuarye to fore thabbay. This yere the pryour of Kylmayn appeled therle of Urmond of treasonne, whiche hadde a day assygned to them for to fyghte in Smythfeld, and the lystys were made and feelde dressyd. But whanne it cam to poynt the kynge commaunded that they shold not fyghte, but toke the quarels in to his owne honde; and this was doone at the instaunce and labour of certayne prechours & doctours of London, as mayster Gylbert Worthyngton, parson of saynt Andrews in Holborne and other. Also this yere cam a grete ambassate in to Englonde oute of Fraunce, for to have concluded a perpetuel pees; but in conclusion it torned vnto a triews of a yere. Aboute this tyme deyde saynt Bernardyn, a gray frere, whiche beganne the newe reformacion of that ordre in many places, in so moche that they that were reformed ben callyd observauntes, whiche observauntes ben encreaced gretely in Italye and in Almayne. This Bernardyn was canonysed by pope Nycholas the fyfthe, in the yere thousand foure c. and fyfty. Iohannes de Capestrano was his disciple, whiche

Fasc. Temp. 88 *b*.

prouflyted moche to the reformacion of that ordre, for whome God shewyd many myracles also. Here is to be noted that from this tyme forward kyng Harry never prouflyted ne wente forward, but fortune beganne to tourne from hym on all sydes, as well in Fraunce, Normandye, Guyan, as in Englonde. Somme men holde oppynyon that kyng Harry gaf commyssion plenerly to sire Edward Hulle, Syre Robert Roos, the dene of saynt Seueryns & other, to conclude a maryage for hym with therle of Armynaks suster, whiche was promysed as it was sayd and concluded. But afterward it was broken; for by the mene of the marquys of Suffolke it was broken, and he wedded Quene Margrete as afore is said, whiche was a dere maryage for the royamme of Englonde. For it is knowen veryly that for to haue her was delyverd the duchye of Angeo, and the erldom of Mayne which was the keye of Normandy for the Frensshmen tentre. And above this the sayd marquys of Suffolke axyd in playne parlement a fyfteuth and an half for to fetche her oute of Fraunce. Lo what a maryage was this as to the comparysone of that other maryage of Armynak! For ther sholde have ben delyverd so many castels and townes in Guyan, and so moche good sholde have ben yoven with her that all Englond shold have ben therby enryched; but contrarye wyse fylle. Wherfore every grete prynce ought to kepe his promyse. For bycause of brekyng of this promyse, and for maryage of quene Margrete, what losse hath hadde the Royamme of Englond, by losyng of Normandye and Guyan, by dyvysion in the royame, the rebellyng of comons ayenst theyr prynce and lordes, what dyvysyon among the lordes, what murdre & sleyng of them, what feldes foughten & made! In conclusion that many a man hath lost his lyf, the kyng deposed, the quene with her sone fayne to flee into Scotland, and from thens into Fraunce, and so to Lorayn, the place that she cam first fro. Many men deme that the brekyng of the kynges promyse to the suster of therles of Armynack was cause of this grete losse and adversyte. Fasc. Temp., 88 b.

Capitulum 24.

In the yere xxv. of kynge Harry was a parlement at Bury, callyd saynt Edmondesburye, aboute whiche was commanded alle the comyns of the contre to bee there in theyr most defensable araye for to awayte vpon the kyng. To whiche parlement cam the duc of Gloucetre, Humfreye, the kynges vncle whiche hadd ben protectour of Englonde alle the nonage of the kyng. And anone after he was in his lodgyng, he was arestyd by the vysecounte Bemond, the conestable of Englonde, whome accompanyed the Duc of Bokyngham and many other lordes. And forthwith alle his servauntes were comaunded

for to departe fro hym, and two & thyrtty of the chyeef of hem were also arestyd and sente to dyverse prysons. And v. or vj. dayes after this sayd arest the sayd duke was deede, on whoos sowle God have mercy; But how he deyde and in what manere the certaynte is not to me knowen. Somme sayde he deyde for sorowe; somme sayde he was murthred bytwene two fetherbeddes; other sayd than an hote spyt was putte in his fundament: but how he deyde God knoweth, to whome is no thyng hydde. And thenne whanne he was soo deed, he was leyd open that al man myght see hym. And so both lordes and knyghtes of the shyres with bourgeyses cam & sawe hym lye deede, but wounde ne token coude they not perseyve how he deyde. Here may men marke what this world is. This duk was a noble man and a grete clerke, and hadde worshipfully ruled this Royamme to the kynges behoef, and never coude be founde fawte with hym: but envye of them that were governours, and hadde promysed to delyver the Duchye of Angeo & the Erldome of Mayn, caused the destruction of this noble man. For they drad hym that he wolde have enpesshyd that delyveraunce. And after they sente his body to saynt Albons with certayne lyghtes for to be buryed. And soo Syre Gervays of Clyfton hadde the charge to conveye the corps, and soo it was buryed at saynt Albons in thabbay. And fyve persones of his houshold were sent to London, and ther were rayned and iuged to be drawen, hanged, and quartred, of whome the names were Syre Rogyer Chamberlayne, knyght, and Myddelton, Squyer; Herbard, a squyer; Arthur, a squyer, and Rychard Nedham: whiche fyve personnes were drawen from the Tour of London thurgh Chepe vnto Tiburne, and there hanged and lete doune quyck, and thenne strypt for to have ben heded and quartred. And thenne the marquys of Suffolk shewyd ther for them the kynges pardon vnder his grete seal; and soo they were pardonned of the remenaunt of the execucion, and had theyr lyves; And soo they were brought ageyne to London, and after frely delyverd. Thus beganne the trouble in Englond for the deth of this noble duke. Alle the comons of the royamme
Fasc. Temp., 89 a. beganne for to murmure, and were not content. After that pope Eugenye was deed, Nycholas the fyfth was electe pope. This Nycholas was chosen for Eugenye yet havyng the scisme, Notwithstondyng he gate the obedyence of all cristen royammes. For after he was electe and sacred pope, certayne lordes of Fraunce and of Englond weere sente in to Savoye to pope Felyx for to entreate hym to cesse of the papacye. And by the specyall labour of the bisshop of Norwyche, and the lord of saynt Iohans, he cessyd the second yere after that Nycholas was sacred; and the sayd Felyx was made legate of Fraunce and cardynal of Savoye, and resygned the hoole papacye to, and after lyved a hooly lyf, and deyd an hooly

man. And, as it is sayd, God shewyd myracles for hym. This was the thre and twentyeste seysme bytwene Eugenye and Felyx, and dured sixtene yere. The cause was this: the generalle counseylle of Basylle deposed Eugenye, whiche was only pope and indubytate, for as moche as he observed not and kept the decrees and statutes of the counseylle of Coustance, as it is sayd, nether he rought not to gyve obedyence to that general counseyll; wherof roose a greete altercacion amonge wrytars of this mater pro and contra, whiche can not acorde vnto this day. One partye seyth that the counseylle is above the pope; that other party sayth Nay, but the pope is above the counseyll. God blessyd above alle thynges gyve and sende his pees in hooly chirche, spouse of Cryst. Amen. This Nycholas was of Iene, comen of lowe byrth, a doctour of dyvynyte, an actyf man; he reedefyed many places that were broken and ruynous, and dyde do make a grete walle aboute the palays, and made the walle newe aboute Rome for drede of the Turkes. And the peple wondred of the cesynge and resygnynge of Felyx to hym, consyderyd that he was a man of so lowe byrthe, and that other was of affynyte to alle the moost part of Crysten prynces; wherof there was a verse publysshed in Rome in this maner: Lux fulsit mundo; cessyd Felyx Nycholao. Fasc. Temp., 89 a.

Capitulum 24.

In the yere of kyng Harry xxvij., beynge trewes bytwene Fraunce and Englond, a knyght of the Englysshe partye named Sir Fraunceys Aragonys toke a towne of Normandy named Fogyers, ageynst the trewes, of whiche takynge byganne moche sorowe and losse. For this was the occasion by whiche the Frensshe men gate all Normandy. This yere a squyer of Englond named Chalons dyde armes with a knyght of Fraunce named Syre Lowys de Buyel to fore the Frensshe kynge, and ranne the Frensshe knyght thurgh with a spere, and slewe hym in the felde.

In the yere xxviij. was a parlement holden at Westmynstre, and from thennes adiourned to the black Frerys at London, and after Crystemasse to Westmynstre ageyne. And this same yere Robert of Cane, a man of the west contre, with a fewe ships toke an hole flote of shippes comynge oute of the baye laden with salt, whiche shippes were of Pruys, Flaundrys, Holand, and Zeland, and brought hem to Hampton. Wherfor the marchauntis of Englond beynge in Flaundres were arestyd in Brugys, Ipre, and other places, and myght not be delyvered ner theyr dettys dyscharged till they had made apoyntement for to paye for the amendes and hurtes of tho shippes, which was payd by the marchauntes of the staple every peny. And in lyke wyse

the marchauntes and godes beyng in Danske were also arestyd and made grete amendes. This same yere the Frensshmen in a mornynge toke by a trayne the toune of Pountal arche, and therynne the lord Fawconbrydge was taken prysonner. And after that in Decembre Roan was taken and lost, beyng therynne the duc of Somersete, Edmund therle of Shrewsbury, whiche by appoyntement left pledgys, and lost all Normandye, and cam home. And duryng the sayd parlement the duck of Suffolk was arestyd and sente in to the Tour, and ther was a monethe, and after the kyng dyd doo fetche hym oute. For whiche cause alle the comyns of Englond were in a grete rumour, what for the delyveraunce of Angeo and Mayn, and after for losynge of al Normandye, and in especial for the deth of the good duke of Gloucetre, in soo moche that in somme places men gadred to geders and made hem capytaynes, as Bleweberd and other, whiche were resysted and taken, and had iustyce and deyd. And thenne the sayd parlement was adiourned to Leycetre. And thider the kyng brought with hym the duke of Suffolke. And whanne the comon hows vnderstode that he was oute of the Tour and comen theder, they desyred to have execucion on them that were cause of the delyveraunce of Normandy, and had ben cause of the deth of the duc of Gloucetre, and had solde Gascoyne and Guyan; of whiche they named to be gylty the duc of Suffolk as chyef, the lord Saye; the Bisshop of Saslebury, Danyel, and many moo. And for to pease the comons, the duck of Suffolke was exyled oute of Englond fyve yere. And soo durynge the parlement he wente into Norfolke, and there toke shippyng for to goo oute of the royame in to Fraunce. And this yere as he sayled on the see a shippe of warre callyd the Nycholas of Towr mette with his ship, and fonde hym therin; whome they toke oute and brought hym into theyr shippe to fore the mayster and capytayns. And ther he was examyned, and atte last iuged to the deth. And so they putte hym in a cabon, and his chappellayne for to shryve hym. And that done they brought hym in to Dover roode, and there sette hym in to the boot, and there smote of his heede, and brought the bodye a londe vpon the sondes, and sette the heede therby. And this was done the fyrst day of Maye. Loo what avayleth hym now this delyveraunce of Normandye. And here ye may see how he was rewarded for the deth of the duck of Gloucetre. Thus beganne sorowe vppon sorowe, and deth for deth.

Capitulum 26.[1]

Fasc. Temp., 89 a. THIS yere of our Lord a thousand four honderd & fyfty was the grete grace of the Iubilee at Rome, where was greete

[1] 25 is omitted in the numbering.

pardonne, in soo moche that from alle places of Crystendome grete multitude of peple resorted theder. This yere Syre Thomas Cryell was overthrowen at Fermygny, and many Englysshemen slayne and taken prysonners. This same yere was a grete assemblyng and gaderyng togeder of the comons of Kente in greete nombre, and made an insurrection and rebellyd ageynste the kynge and his lawes, and ordeyned hem a capytayne callyd Iohan Cade, an Irysshe man, whiche named hym self Mortymer, cosyn to the ducke of Yorke. And this capytayne helde these men togeder and made ordenaunces among them, & brought hem to Blackheth, where he made a bylle of petycions to the kyng and hys counseyll, and shewyd what inyuryes and oppressions the poure comyns suffryd, and alle vnder coloure for to come to his aboue. And he had a grete multitude of peple. And the sevententh day of Iuyn the kynge with many lordes, Capytayns, and men of warre wente towarde hym to the Blackheth. And whan the captayne of Kente vnderstode the comyng of the kynge with so grete a puyssaunce, he withdrewe hym with his peple to Sevenok, a lytil vyllage. And xxviij. daye of Iuyn, beynge withdrawen and goon, the kynge cam with his armye sette in ordre and enbataylled to the Blackheth, and by advys of his counseyll sente sir Umfrey Stafford knyght, and William Stafford Squyer, two valyaunt capytains, with certayne peple to fight with the capytayne and to take hym, and brynge hym and his accessaryes to the kynge; whiche wente to Sevenok, and there the capytayne with his felaushyp mette with hem, and fought ayenst hem, and in conclusion slewe them bothe and as many as abode and wolde not yelde hem nor flee. Duryng these scarmuche fyll a grete varyaunce among the lordes men and comyn peple beyng on Blackheth ageynst theyr lordes and capytayns, sayng playnly that they wolde goo to the capytayne of Kente to assyste and helpe hym, but yf they myghte have execucion on the traytours beyng aboute the kyng: wherto the kyng sayd nay. And they sayd playnly that the lord Saye tresorer of Englond, the Bisshop of Salysbury, the abbot of Gloucetre, Danyel and Trevylyan, and many moo were traytours, and worthy to be ded: wherfor for to plese the lordes meyne, and also somme of the kynges hows, the lord Saye was arestyd and sente to the Toure of London. And thenne the kynge herynge tydynges of the dethe and overthrowynge of the Staffords withdrewe hym to London, and fro thennes to Kyllyngworth; for the kyng ne the lordes durste not truste theyr owne houshold meyne. Thenne after that the capytayne had hadde this victorye vpon the Staffordes, anone he toke sire Umfrayes salade and his brygantyns smyten ful of gylt nayles, and also his gylt spores, and arayed hym lyke a lord and a capytayne, and resorted with al his meyne, and also mo than he had to

fore, to the Blackheth ageyne, to whome cam tharchebisshop of Caunterbury and the duck of Bokyngham to the Blacketh, and spake with hym. As it was sayde they fonde hym wytty in his talkyng and his requestys, and so they departed. And the thyrdde day of Iuyll he cam and entryd in to London with alle his peple, and there dyde make cryes in the kynges name and his that no man shold robbe ne take noo mannes good, but yf he payd for it, and cam rydynge thurgh the cyte in grete pryde, and smote his swerde vpon London stone in Canwyck strete; and he beyng in the cyte sente to the Tour for to have the lord Saye, and soo they sette hym and brought hym to the Guyldhalle before the mayer and Aldermen, where he was examyned, and he sayd he wold and ought to be iuged by his peres. And the comons of Kent toke hym by force from the mayer and offycers that kept hym, and toke hym to a pryeste to shryve hym. And er he myght be half shryven they brought hym to the standard in Chepe, and there smote of his hede; on whoos soule God have mercy, Amen. And thus deyde the lord Saye, tresorer of Englond. After this they sette his heede on a spere, and bare it aboute in the cyte. And the same day at Myle ende Crowmer was byheded. And the same day byfore at after none the capytayne with certayne of his mayne wente to Phelyp Malpas hows, and robbyd hym, and toke away moche goode. And fro thennes he wente to saynt Margrete patyns to one Gherstys hows, and robbyd hym also. At which robbyng dyverce men of London of theyr neyghbours were at it, and toke part with theym. For this robbyng the peples hertes fyll from hym, and every thryfty man was aferd for to be servyd in lyke wyse. For ther was many a man in London that awayted and wolde feyne have seen a comyn robberye, whiche God forbede. For it is to suppose yf he hadde not robbed he myght have gon fer er he had bee withstonde. For the kyng and alle the lordes of the Royame were departed, excepte the lord Scales, that kepte the Toure. And the fyfthe day of Iuyll he dyde do smyte of a mans heede in Southwerke. And the nyght after, the mayre of London, the aldermen, and the comons of the cyte, concluded to dryve awey the capytayne and his hooste, and sente to the lord Scales, to the Tour, and to Mathew Gogh, a capytayne of Normandye, that they wolde that nyghte assayle the capytayne with them of Kente. And so they dyde, and cam to London brydge in to Southwerke, er the capytayne had ony knowlege therof. And they fought with them that kepte the brydge. And the Kentysshmen wente to harnoys, and cam to the brydge, and shot and fought with hem, and gate the brydge, and made them of London to flee, and slowe many of hem. And this endured all the nyght to and fro tyll nyne of the clock on the morne. And atte laste they brent the drawe-

brydge, where many of them of London were drouned. In whiche nyght Sutton an alderman was slayne, Rogyer Beysaunt, and Mathew Gogh, and many other. And after this the chaunceler of Englond sente to the capytayne a pardone general for him, and another for alle his meyne. And thenne they departed from Southwerke, every man home to his hows. And whanne they were al departed and goone ther were proclamaciones made in Kente, Southsex, and in other places, that what man coude take the capytayne, quyck or deede, should have a thousande marck. And after this, one Alysaunder Iden, squyer of Kente, toke hym in a gardyn in Southsex, and in the takynge the capytayne Iohan Cade was slayne, and after byheded, and his heede sette on London brydge. And anone after thenne the kyng cam in to Kente, and dyde his iustyces sytte at Caunterbury and enquyre who were accessaryes and chyef cause of this insurrection. And ther were eyght men iuged to deth in one day, and in other places moo. And fro thennes the kyng wente in to Southsex, and in to the weste countre, where a lytell byfore was slayne the bisshop of Salysbury. And this same yere were so many iuged to deth that thre and twenty hedes stode on London bridge attones.

Capitulum 27.

In the yere thyrtty the duck of York cam oute of the march of Wales with therle of Devenshyre and the lord Cobham with grete puyssaunce, for reformacion of certayne iniuryes and wronges, and also to have iustyce on certayne lordes beynge aboute the kyng, and toke a felde at Brentheth besyde Dertford in Kent, whiche was a stronge felde; for whiche cause the kyng with alle the lordes of the lande went vnto the Blackheth with a grete multitude of peple armed and ordeyned for the warre in the best wyse. And whanne they had musteryd on the Blackheth, certayne lordes were sente to hym for to treate and make appoyntement with hym, whiche were the Bisshop of Ely and the Bisshop of Wynchestre, and the erles of Salysbury and of Warwyk. And they concluded that the duck of Somersete sholde be hadde to ward, and to answere to suche artycles as the duk of York sholde putte to hym, And thenne the duc of York shold breke his felde and come to the kyng, whiche was all promysed by the kyng. And soo the kyng commaunded that the duke of Somersete sholde be had in warde. And thenne the duck of York brake vp his felde, and cam to the kynge; and whanne he was come, contrary to the promyse a fore made, the duke of Somersete was presente in the felde awaytyng and chyef aboute the kyng, and made the duke of York ryde tofore as a prysoner thurgh London, and after they

wolde have putte hym in holde, but a noyse aroos that the erle of Marche his sonne was comynge with ten thousande men to London warde, wherof the kynge and his counseyl fered, and thenne concluded that the duc of Yorke sholde departe at his wyl. About this tyme byganne greete dyvysyon in Spruse bytwene the grete maystre and the knyghtes of the Duche ordre, whiche were lordes of that countre. For the comons and townes rebellyd ageynste the lordes, and made so grete warre that at last they callyd the kynge of Pole to be theyr lord, whiche cam and was receyvyd, and layde syege to the castel of Maryenburgh, whiche was the chyef castel and strength of alle the lond, and wanne it, and droofe oute the mayster of Danske, and alle other places of that lond. And so they that had ben lordes many yeres lost all theyr seygnorye and possessions in tho landes.

In the yere of oure lorde a thousand four honderd and thre and fyfty, the cyte of Constantynople, themperyal cyte of Grece, was taken by the Turke, the Emperour slayne, and innumerable Crysten peple destroyed and put in captyvyte; by whiche pryse Crysten feyth perysshed in Grece, and the Turke enhaunced gretely in pryde. And the yere of our lord a thousand four honderd and thre and fyfty, on saynt Edwardes day, the quene Margaret was delyverd of a fayre prynce, whiche was named Edward. That same day Iohan Norman was chosen for to be mayer of London. And the day that he shold take his othe at Westmynstre, he went thyder by water with alle the craftes; where afore tyme, the mayer, aldermen and al the craftes rode a horsback, whiche was never vsyd after. For syn that tyme they have ever goone by water in barges. Ye have wel vnderstande tofore how that, contrarye to the promyse of the kynge and the duke of York at Brentheth, the duke of Somersete wente not to ward, but abode about the kyng, and hadde grete rewle, and was made capytayne of Calays, and rewlyd the kynge and the royamme as he wolde; wherfore the grete lordes of the royamme and also the comons were not plesyd; for whiche cause the duke of York, the Erles of Warwyck and of Salysbury, with many knyghtes and squyers and moch peple, cam for to remeve the sayd duke of Somersete and other fro the kynge. And the kynge, heryng of theyr comyng, thought by his counseylle for to have gone westward, and not for to mete with hem. And hadde with hym the Duke of Somersete, the Ducke Bokyngham, the erle of Stafford, therle of Northumberlond, the lord Clyfford, and many other. And what tyme that the Duk of York and his felawship vnderstode that the kynge was departed with these sayd lordes from London, anone he chaunged his wey, and costed the countrey, & cam to saynt Albons the thre and twentyest daye of Maye, and ther mette

with the kyng; to whome the kyng sente certayne lordes and desyred hem to kepe the pees and departe; but in conclusion, whiles they treated on that one syde, therle of Warwik with the Marche men and other entrid the toune on that other, and fought ageynst the kyng and his partye, and soo byganne the bataylle and fyghtyng, whiche endured a good whyle; but in conclusion the duck of York obteyned and had the victorye of that Iourneye. In whiche was slayne the duke of Somersete, therle of Northumberlond, the lord Clyfford, and many knyghtes and squyers, and many moo hurt. And on the morne after they brought the kyng in grete astate to London, whiche was lodged in the bisshops palays of London. And anon after was a grete parlament. In whiche parlement the duke of York was made protectour of Englond, And therle of Warwik Capytayne of Calays, And therle of Salysbury chaunceler of Englond, and alle suche personnes as had the rewle to fore aboute the kynge were sette apart, and myght not rewle as they dyde to fore. In this yere deyde pope Nycholas the fyfthe, and after hym was Calyxte the thyrdde. This Calyxte was a Catalane, & an old man whanne he was chosen, and continuelly seke; wherfor he myghte not performe his zele and desyre that he had ageynste the Turkes conceyved; and the cause of lettynge therof was his age and sekenesse. This Calyxte institued and ordeyned the feste of the Transfyguracion of our Lord to be halowed on saint Sixtes day in August, by cause of the grete victorye that they of Hungary had ageynste the Turkes that same day: he was chosen pope the yere of our Lord thousand four honderd and fyve & fyfty, And deyde the yere thousand four honderd and eyght and fifty, that same day that he ordeyned the feste of the Transfyguracion to be halowed. In this yere fyll a grete affraye in London ageynst the Lombardes. The cause bygan bycause a yong man toke a daggar from a Lombard and brake it; wherfor the yong man on the morn was sente for to come to fore the mayer and aldermen; and there, for the offence, he was commytted to warde. And thenne the mayer departed from the Gyldhalle forto goo home to his dyner, but in Chepe the yonge men of the mercerye, for the most parte prentyses, helde the mayer and shreves styll in Chepe, and wold not suffre hym to departe vnto the tyme that theyr felaw, whiche was commytted to warde, were delyverd; and soo by force they rescowed theyr felawe from prysonne, and that done the mayer and shrevys departed, and the prysoner delyverd, which yf he had be put to pryson had ben in ieopardy of his lyf, & thus beganne a rumour in the cyte ageynst the Lombardes; and the same evenyng the handcrafty peple of the toune aroos, and ranne to the Lombardes howses, and despoylled and robbed dyverse of hem: wherfor the mayer and aldermen cam with the honest people of the toune, and droof them thens,

Fasc. Temp. 89 a.

and sente somme of them that had stolen to Newgate. And the yong man that was rescowed by his felaws sawe this grete rumour, affraye and robberye ensiewed of his fyrst mevyng to the Lombard, departed and went to Westmynstre to sayntuarye, or ellys it had costed hym his lyf. For anone after cam doune one Oyer determyne, for to doo iustyce on alle them that soo rebellyd in the cyte ageynst the Lombardes; on which satte with the mayer, that tyme William Marowe, the duke of Bokyngham and many other lordes for to see the execucion done. But the comyns of the cyte secretely made them redy, and dyde arme them in theyr howses, and were in purpose for to have rongen the comyn belle, whiche is named Bowe belle. But they were lette by sad men: whiche cam to the knowleche of the ducke of Bokyngham and other lordes, and incontynent they aroos, for they durste noo lenger abyde. For they doubted that the hoole cyte wolde have arysen ageynste them. But yet nevertheles, two or thre of the cyte were iuged to deth for this robbery, and were hanged at Tyburne. And anone after the kynge, the Quene, and other lordes rode to Coventre, and withdrewe hem from London for these causes. And a lytel to fore the duke of Yorke was sente fore to Grenewych, and there was dyschorged of the protectourshippe, and my lord of Salysbury of his chauncelership. And after this they were sente fore by prevy seal for to come to Coventre, where they were almoost deceyved, and therle of Warwyck also, and shold have ben destroyed yf they had not seen well to, &c.

Capitulum 28.

This yere were taken four grete fysshes bytwene Eerethe and London: that one was callyd mors maryne, the second a swerd fysshe, the other tweyne were whales. In this yere, for certayne effrayes done in the north countre bytwene the lord Egremond and therle of Salysburyes sones, the sayd lord Egremonde whom they had taken, was condempned in a grete somme of money to the sayd erle of Salysbury, and therfor commysed to prison in Newgate in London, where whanne he hadde ben a certayne space, brake pryson, and thre prysoners with hym, and escaped, & went his way. Also this yere therle of Warwyk and his wyf wente to Calays with a fayr felawship & toke possession of hys offyce. Aboute this tyme was a grete reformacion of many monasteryes of relygyon in dyverse partyes of the world, whiche were reformed after the fyrst institucion, and continued in many places. Also about this tyme the crafte of enpryntyng was fyrst founde in Magounce in Almayne, whiche crafte is multyplyed thurgh the

world in many places, & bookes ben had grete chepe and in grete nombre by cause of the same craft.

This yere was a grete batayll in the marches bytwene Hongary and Turkye at a place callyd Septegrade, where innumerable Turkes were slayn, more by myracle than by mannes hond. For only the honde of God smote them; Seint Iohn of Capestrane was there presente, & provoked the cristen peple, beyng thenne aferd to poursiewe the Turkes, where an infynyte multitude were slayn and destroyed: the Turkes sayd that a grete nombre of armed men folowed them, that they were aferd to tourne ageyne; they were holy angels. This yere the prysonners of Newgate in London brake theyr prysonne, and wente vpon the leedes, and fought ageynst them of the cyte, and kept the gate a long while; but atte last the toune gate the prysonne on them, and than they were put in fetherys and yrons, and were soore punysshed in ensample of other. In this yere also was a grete erthquave in Naples, in soo moche that there perysshed fourty thousand peple that sanke there in to therthe. Item, In the yere six and thyrtty saynt Osmond, somtyme bisshop of Salysbury, was canonysed at Rome by pope Calyxt; And the sixtenthe daye of Iuyll he was translated at Salysbury by the Archebisshop of Caunterbury and many other bisshops. And in August after, Syre Pyers de Bresey, seneschal of Normandy, with the capitayne of Depe, and many other capytaynes and men of war, went to the see with a grete navye, and cam in to the downes by nyght; and on the morne erly byfore day they londed, and cam to Sandwyche both by land and water, and toke the towne and ryfled and despoilled it, and toke many prysoners, and left the toune al bare, whiche was a ryche place and moche good therynne, and ladde with hem many rych prysoners. In this yere in many places of Fraunce, Almayne, Flaundres, Holond, and Zelond, children gadred them by grete companyes for to goo on pylgremage to saynt Mychels mount in Normandye, whiche cam fro fer contreyes, wherof the peple merveylled, and many supposyd that somme wycked spryte mevid them to soo doo: but it endured not longe by cause of the longe way, and also for lack of vytayll as they wente. In this yere Raynold Pecok, Bisshop of Chychestre, was founden an heretyke, and the thyrrde day of December was abiured at Lambhyth, in the presence of the Archebisshop of Caunterbury and many Bisshops and doctours and lordes temporall, and his bookes brente at Poulus crosse. Ye have herde to fore how certayne lordes were slayne at saynt Albons, wherfore was alwey a grutche and wrath had by the eyres of them that were soo slayne ageynst the Duke of Yorke, the Erles of Warwyck and of Salysbury, wherfor the kyng by thadvys of his counseylle sente for them to London. To whiche place the Duke of York

Fasc. Temp., 89 b.

cam the syx and twentyest day of Ianyver with four honderd men, and lodge at Barnardys castel in his owne place. And the fyfteenth day of Ianyver cam therle of Salysbury with five honderd men, and was lodged in therber in his owne place. And thenne cam the dukes of Excetre and of Somersete with eyght honderd men, and lay withoute Tempelbarre. And the Erle of Northumberland, the lorde Egremond, and the Lord Clyfford with fyftene honderd men, and lodged withoute toun. And the mayer that tyme Gefferey Boleyn kept grete watche with the comyns of the cyte, and rode aboute the cyte by Holburn and Fletestrete with a fyve thousand men wel armed and arayd for to kepe the pees. And the fourtenth day of Fevrer therle of Warwyck cam to London from Calays, wel beseen and worshipfully, with six honderd men in reede iaquettys browdryd with a ragged staf behynde and afore, and he was lodged atte grey Freres. And the sevententhe day of Marche the kynge cam to London and the quene, and there was a concorde and pees made amonge these lordes, and they were sette in pees. And on oure Lady day, the xxv. day of Marche a thousand four honderd and eyght and fyfty, the kyng, quene, and all these lordes wente on procession at Powlus in London; and anone after the kynge and lordes departed. In this yere was a grete affray in Fletestrete bytwene men of court and men of the same strete. In whiche affray the quenes attorney was slayne.

Capitulum 29.

Also this same yere, as the Erle of Warwyk was at a counseyll at Westmynstre, alle the kynges houshold meyny gadred them to geder for to have slayne the sayd erle; but by helpe of god and his frendes he recoveryd his barge, and escaped theyr evyll enterpryse. How wel the coques cam rennynge oute with spyttes and pestels ageynst hym. And the same day he roode toward Warwyk, and sone after he gate hym a commyssion, and wente ouer see to Calays. Sone after this therle of Salysbury, comyng to London, was encountrid at Blorcheth with the lord Audeley, & moche other peple ordeyned for to have destressid him; but he havynge knowleche that he shold be mette with, was accompanyed with his twoo sonnes, sir Thomas and Johan Neuyll, and a greete felawship of good men. And soo they mette and foughte togeders, where therle of Salysbury wanne the feld. And the lord Audeley was slayn, and many gentill men of Chesshyre, and moche peple hurte. And therles twoo sonnes were hurte, and goynge homeward afterward they were taken, and had to Chestre by the quenes meyne. After Calyxte, Pius was pope, and was chosen this yere 1458. And he was callyd to fore Eneas, an eloquent man and a poete

Fasc. Temp., 89 b.

laureate. He was Ambassatour of the Emperours afore tyme, and he wrote in the counseylle of Basylle a noble trayttye for thauctoryte of the same. Fasc. Temp., 89 b.

Also he canonysed saynt Katheryne of Senys. This pope ordeyned grete Indulgences and pardonne to them that wolde go warre ageynst the Turke, and wrote an epystle to the grete Turke, exortynge hym to become Crysten. And in the ende he ordeyned a passage ageynst the Turke at Ankone, whiche moche peple drewe out of all partyes of Crystendome; of whiche peple he sente many hoome ageyne by cause they suffysed not. And anone after he deyde at the same place of Ancone, the yere of our Lord a thousand four honderd and lvij., the xiiij. day of August. In the yere eyght and thyrtty of kyng Harry, the duke of Yorke, the Erles of Warwyck and Salysbury, sawe the governaunce of the royamme stode moost by the quene and her counseylle, and how the grete prynces of the londe were not callyd to counseylle, but sette aparte; & not only soo, but that it was sayd thurgh the royame that tho sayde lordes shold be destroyed vtterly, as it openly was shewed atte Bloreheth by them that wold have slayne the Erle of Salesburye. Thenne they for savacion of theyr lyves, and also for the comyn wele of the royame, thought for to remedye thyse thynges, assemblyd them to gyder with moche peple, and toke a feld in the West countray, to whiche the Erle of Warwyck cam from Calays with many of thold soudyours, as Andrew Trollop and other, in whos wysedomes as for the warre he moche trusted; and whanne they were thus assemblyd and made theyr felde, the kynge sente oute his commissyons and prevy sealys vnto alle the lordes of his royamme to come and awayte on hym in theyr mooste defensable wyse; and soo every man cam, in suche wyse that the kynge was strenger and hadde moche more peple than the duc of York and the Erles of Warwyck and Salysbury. For it is here to be noted that euery lord in Englond at this tyme durst not dysobey the quene. For she rewlyd peasybly all that was done aboute the kynge, which was a good symple and innocent man. And thenne whanne the kyng was comen to the place where as they were, the duck of Yorke and his felawship had made theyr feld in the strengest wyse, and hadde purposed veryly to abyden and have foughten. But in the nyght Andrew Trollop and all the olde Soudyours of Calays, with a greete felawshippe, sodaynly departed oute of the dukes hooste, and wente strayte vnto the kynges felde, where they were resseyved ioyously. For they knewe the entente of the other lordes, and also the maner of theyr feld. And thenne the duck of York with the other lordes, seynge them so deceyved, toke a counseylle shortly in that same nyghte, and departed from the felde, levynge behynde them the mooste part of theyr people to kepe the felde till on

the morne. Thenne the Duke of Yorke with his seconde sonne departed thurgh Walys toward Irlond, levynge his oldest sone, therle of Marche, with the Erles of Warwyck and of Salesbury, which, togeder with thre or foure personnes, roode strayte in to Devenshyre, and there by helpe and ayde of one Denham, a squyer, whiche gate for them a shippe, whiche coste enleven score noblys, & with the same shippe sailed fro thens in to Garneseye, and there refresshyd them, and from thennes sayled to Calays, where they were receyved in to the castel by the postern er they of the toune knewe of hit. And the duk of Yorke toke shippynge in Wales, and sayled over in to Irlond, where he was well resseyved.

Capitulum trisesimum.

Thenne kynge Harry beynge with his hooste in the felde, not knowynge of this sodayne departynge, on the morne fonde none in the felde of the sayde lordes, sente oute in all haste men to folowe and poursiewe after to take hem, but they mette not with them, as God wold; and thenne the kyng wente to Ludlowe, and dispoylled the castel and the toune, and sent the duchesse of York with her children to my lady of Bokyngham her suster, where she was kepte longe after. And forthwith the kynge ordeyned the duc of Somersete capytayne of Calays. And these other lordes, soo departed as afore is sayd, were proclamed rebellys and grete traytours. Thenne the duke of Somersete toke to hym alle the soudyours that departed fro the felde, and made hym redy in alle haste to goo to Calys and take possession of his offyce. And whanne he cam he fonde the Erle of Warwyck therin as capytayne, And therles of Marche and Salysbury also. And thenne he londed by Scales, and wente to Guysnes, and there he was resseyved. And it fortuned that somme of tho shippis that cam over with hym came in to Calays haven by theyr free wylle, for the shipmen ought more favoure to the Erle of Warwyck than to the Duke of Somersete.

In whiche shippes were taken dyverse men, as Ienyn Fynkhyll, Iohan Felaw, Kaylles and Purser, whyche were byheded sone after in Calays. And after this dayly cam men over see to thyse lordes to Calays, and byganne to wexe strenger and strenger. And they borowed moche good good[1] of the staple. And on that other syde the duc of Somersete beyng in Guysnes gate people to hym, whiche cam oute and scarmusshed with them of Calays, and they of Calays with them, whiche endured many dayes: duryng thus this dayly scarmuchynge, moche people dayly cam over vnto thyse lordes. Thenne on a tyme

[1] Sic.

by thadvys of counseylle the lordes at Calays sente over Mayster Denham with a grete felawship to Sandwyche, whiche toke the toune, and therynne the lord Ryvers and the lord Scales his sonne, and toke many shippes in the haven, and brought hem alle to Calays, with whiche shippes many maronners of theyr free wylle cam to Calays to serve the Erle of Warwyck. And after this the Erle of Warwyk by thadvys of the lordes toke alle his shippis and mannyd them wel, and sayled him self in to Irlond for to speke with the duke of Yorke, and to take his advys how they sholde entre in to Englond ageyne. And whanne he hadde ben there and done his erandes, he retourned ageyne toward Calays, and brought with hym his moder the Countesse of Salysbury. And comyng in the west countraye vpon the see, the duk of Excetre, admyral of Englond, beyng in the Grace a Dieu accompanyed with many shippes of warre, met with therle of Warwyck and his flote, but they fought not. For the substaunce of the peple beynge with the duke of Excetre ought better wyll and more favour to therle of Warwyck than to hym. And soo they departed and cam to Calays in saefte, blessyd be God.

Thenne the kynges counseylle seynge that these lordes had goten these shippes from Sandwiche to abyde and kepe the toune, and made one Mountford capytayne of the Toune, and that noo man ne vytaylle ne marchaunt that sholde goo in to Flaundres shold not goo to Calys. Thenne they of Calays seynge this, made out mayster Denham and many other to goo to Sandwiche. And soo they dyde, and assaylled the toune by water and by lande, and gate it, and brought Mountford theyr Capytayne over see to Rysebank, and there smote of his heede. And yet dayly men cam over to them oute of alle partyes of Englond.

Capitulum Trisesimum Primum.

And after this the sayd erles of Marche, Warwyk, and of Salysbury cam over soe to Dover with moche peple, and there landed, to whome al the countray drewe, and cam to London armed. And for to late the lordes of the kynges counseylle knowe theyr trouth, and also theyr entente, assemblyd them and told them, that they entended no harme vnto the kynges personne, sauf that they wold putte fro hym suche persones as were aboute hym. And soo departed fro London with a grete puyssaunce toward Norhampton, where the kynge was accompanyed with many lordes, and had made a stronge felde withoute the toun. And there both partyes mette, and was foughten a grete batayll̄e. In which batayll̄ were slayne the duck of Bokyngham, therle of Shrowesbury, the vysecounte Beamond, the lorde Egremond, and many knyghtes and Squyers and other

also. And the kyng hym self taken in the felde, and afterward brought to London. And anone afterward was a parlament at Westmynstre, duryng whiche parlament the duck of York cam oute of Irlond with therle of Rutland, rydyng with a grete felawship in to the palays at Westmestre, and toke the kynges palays, and cam into the parlament chambre, and there toke the kynges place, and claymed the croune as his propre enherytaunce and ryght, and cast forth in wrytyng his tytle, and also how he was ryghtful eyer; wherfore was moche to doo, but in conclusion it was appoynted and concluded that kynge Harry sholde regne and be kyng durynge his naturel lyf, for as moche as he had ben so long kyng, and was possessyd. And after his deth the duke of Yorke shold be kynge, and his eyres after hym, and forthwith shold be proclamed eyr apparaunt, and sholde be also protectour and regente of Englonde durynge the kynges lyf, with many other thynges ordeyned in the same parlament. And if kyng Harry duryng his lyf wente from this appoyntement, or ony artycle concluded in the sayd parlement, he shold be deposed, & the duke sholde take the crowne and be kyng: all whiche thynges were enacted by thauctorite of the sayd parlament. At whiche parlament the comons of the royamme beyng assemblyd in the comon hows comenynge and treatyng vpon the tytle of the sayd duc of Yorke, sodaynly fyll downe the crowne whiche henge thenne in the myddes of the sayd hows, whiche is the fraytour of thabbay of Westmynstre, whiche was taken for a prodyge or token that the regne of kyng Harry was ended: and also the crowne whiche stode on the hyest tour of the stepel in the castel of Dover fyll doun this same yere.

Capitulum 32.

THENNE for as moche as the quene with the prynce was in the northe, and absented her from the kyng, and wolde not obeye suche thynges as was concluded in the parlement, hit was ordeyned that the duck of York as protectour shold go norward for to brynge in the quene, and subdue suche as wold not obeye; with whome wente the erle of Salysbury, Syre Thomas Nevylle his sonne, with moche peple. And at Wakefelde in Crystemasse weke they were alle overthrowen and slayn by the lordes of the quenes partye, that is to wete the duk of York slayn, therle of Rutland, Syre Thomas Nevyll and many moo. Therle of Salysbury was taken a lyve, and other, as Iohan Harow of London, capytayne of the foote men, and Hanson of Hulle, whiche were brought to Pountfret, and there after byheded and theyr hedes sente to Yorke and sette vpon the yates. And thus was that noble prynce slayne the duke of Yorke, on whoos sowle & on alle Crysten sowles God have

mercy, Amen. And this tyme therle of Marche beyng in Shrewesbury, heeryng the deth of his fader, desyred assistence and ayde of the toune for to avenge his faders deth. And from thennes went to Walys, where at Candelmasse after he had a batayl at Mortemers crosse ageynst therles of Penbroke and of Wylshyre, where the erle of Marche had the vyctorye. Thenne the quene with tho lordes of the north, after they had distressyd and slayne the duck of Yorke and his felaushiip, came southward with a grete multitude and puyssaunce of peple for to come to the kynge, and defete suche conclusions as had ben taken byfore by the parlement. Ageynste whoos comynge the Duke of Norfolke, the erle of Warwycke, with moche peple and or[dena]unce, wente vnto saynt Albons, and ladde kyng Harry with hem. And there encountryd to geder in such wyse and foughte, that the duke of Norfolke and therle of Warwyk with other of theyr partye fledde, and lost that iourneye ; where kynge Harry was taken, and wente with the quene and prynce and his sonne, whiche tho had goten that felde. Thenne the quene and her partye beynge at theyr aboue sente anone to London, whiche was on Assh Wednesday, the fyrste day of Lente, for vytaylle ; whiche the mayer ordeyned by thadvys of the aldermen that certayne cartes laden with vytaylle shold be sente to saynt Albons to them. And whanne the cartes cam to Crepylgate, the comons of the cyte that kepte that gate toke the vytaylles from the cartes, and wold not suffre it to passe. Thenne were ther certayne aldermen and comeners appoynted to goo to Barnet for to speke with the quenes counseylle, for to entrete that the northern men shold be sente home ageyne into theyr countraye ageyne. For the cyte of London dredde soore to be robbed and despoylled, yf they had come. And thus duryng thys trayttye tydynges cam that the Erle of Warwyk had mett with therle of Marche on Cotteswold comyng oute of Wales with many Wallshmen, and that they both were comyng to Londonward. Anone as these tydynges were knowen the trayttye was broken, for the kyng, quene, prynce, and all the other lordes that were with hem departed from saynt Albons northward with alle theyr peple : yet er they departed they byheded the lord Boneyle and Syr Thomas Cryel, whiche were taken in the iourneye done in the Shroftewysday. Thenne the duchesse of Yorke beyng at London, and herynge of the losse of the felde of saynt Albons, sente over see her twoo yonge sonnes, George and Rychard, whiche wente to Utrecht. And Phelyp Malpas a ryche marchaunt of London, Thomas Vaghan squyer, and mayster Wylliam Hatteclyf, and many other feryng the comyng of the quene to London, toke a shippe of Andwerp for to have goone in to Zeland. And on that coost were taken of one Colompne a Frensshman, a shippe of warre, and he toke hem prysoners,

and brought hem in to Fraunce, where they payd grete good for theyr raunsonne, and ther was moche good and rychesse in that shippe.

Capitulum Trisesimum Tercium.

Thenne whanne the Erle of Marche and therle of Warwyk hadde mette to geder on Cottiswold, incontynent they concluded to go to London, and sente worde anone to the mayer and to the cyte that they shold come. Anone the cyte was gladde of theyr comynge, hopynge to be relyevyd by them. And soo they cam to London: and whanne they were comen and hadde spoken with the lordes and astates, thenne beyng there, concluded, for as moche as kynge Harry was gone with them northward, that he had forfayted his crowne and ought to be deposed, acordyng vn to the actes made and passed in the last parlement. And soo by thadvys of the lordes spirituel and temporel thenne beynge at London, the erle of Marche Edward, by the grace of God oldest sone of Rychard duke of Yorke, as ryghtful heyr and next enherytour to his fader, the fourthe day of Marche the yere of oure lorde Lix., toke possession of the royamme of Englond at Westmynstre in the grete halle, and after in the chirche of the abbay, and offryd as kynge, berynge the septre royall; to whom alle the lordes, bothe spirituel and temporell, dyde hommage and obeyssaunce as to theyr soverayne, lyege, and lawful lord and kynge. And forthwith it was proclamed thurgh the cyte, kyng Edward the fourthe of that name. And anone after the kyng rode in his ryall astate norward with all his lordes for to subdue his subgettis that tyme beyng in the north, and tavenge his faders deth. And on Palmsonday after he hadde a grete bataylle in the northe countrey, at a place callyd Towton, not fer fro Yorke, where, with the helpe of God, he gate the felde and had the vyctorye; where were slayne of his adversaryes xxx. thousand men & moo, as it was sayd by men that were there. In whiche bataylle was slayne the erle of Northumberlond, the lord Clyfford, Syr Iohan Nevyll, the Erle of Westmerlandes brother, Andrewe Trollop, and many other knyghtes and squyers. Thenne kyng Harry that had ben kynge, beynge with the quene and prynce at Yorke, heerynge the losse of that feld and soo moche peple slayn and overthrowen, anone forthwith departed al thre, with the duc of Somersete, the lord Roos and other, toward Scotland. And the next daye kynge Edward with all his armye entryd in to Yorke, and was there proclamed kyng, and obeyed as he ought to be. And the mayer, aldermen and comyns sworne to be his lyege men, and whanne he hadde taryed a while in the north, and that alle the countrey there had tourned to him, he retorned southwarde, levynge the Erle of Warwyck in tho partyes for to kepe and governe that countrey. And about mydsomer after, the yere

of oure Lord God a thousande four honderd and syxty, and the fyrste yere of his regne, he was crowned at Westmynstre, and enoynted kynge of Englond, havynge the hoole possession of all the hoole royamme: whome I praye God save and kepe, and sende hym thaccomplysshement of the remenaunt of his rightfull enherytaunce byyonde the see, and that he may regne in them to the playsyre of Almyghty God, helthe of his sowle, honoure and worshippe in this presente lyf, and wele and prouffyte of alle his subgettis; and that there may be a veray fynal pees in al crysten royames, that the infydeles and myscreauntes may be withstanden and destroyed, and our feyth enhaunced, whiche in thyse dayes is sore mynnysshed by the puyssaunce of the Turkes and hethen men, and that after this presente and short lyf we maye come to the everlastyng lyf in the blysshe of heven: Amen.

And here I make an end of this lytel werke, as nygh as I can fynde after the forme of the werk tofore made by Ranulph monk of Chestre. And where as ther is fawte, I beseche them that shal rede it to correcte it, for yf I coude have founden moo storyes I wold have sette in hit moo; but the substaunce that I can fynde and knowe I have shortly sette hem in this book, to thentente that such thynges as have ben done syth the deth or ende of the sayd boke of Polychronycon shold be had in remembraunce and not putte in oblyvyon ne forgetynge; prayenge all them that shall see this symple werke to pardone me of my symple and rude wrytynge. Ended the second day of Iuyll, the xxij. yere of the regne of kynge Edward the fourth, & of the incarnacion of oure Lord a thousand four honderd four score and tweyne.

Fynysshed per Caxton.

533002

LONDON:
Printed by GEORGE E. EYRE and WILLIAM SPOTTISWOODE,
Printers to the Queen's most Excellent Majesty.
For Her Majesty's Stationery Office.
[16310.—750.—2/82.]

n ed.) v. 8
15408

POLYCHRONICON RANULPHI HIGDEN MONACHI CESTRENSIS.

DA
25
.B8
v.41
IMS

LIBRARY
Pontifical Institute of Mediaeval Studies
113 ST. JOSEPH STREET
TORONTO, ONT., CANADA M5S 1J4